

*Introduction to Robust Estimation
and Hypothesis Testing*

Introduction to Robust Estimation and Hypothesis Testing

4th Edition

Rand R. Wilcox



AMSTERDAM • BOSTON • HEIDELBERG • LONDON
NEW YORK • OXFORD • PARIS • SAN DIEGO
SAN FRANCISCO • SINGAPORE • SYDNEY • TOKYO

Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier



Academic Press is an imprint of Elsevier
125 London Wall, London EC2Y 5AS, United Kingdom
525 B Street, Suite 1800, San Diego, CA 92101-4495, United States
50 Hampshire Street, 5th Floor, Cambridge, MA 02139, United States
The Boulevard, Langford Lane, Kidlington, Oxford OX5 1GB, United Kingdom

Copyright © 2017, 2012, 2005, 1997 Elsevier Inc. All rights reserved.

No part of this publication may be reproduced or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or any information storage and retrieval system, without permission in writing from the publisher. Details on how to seek permission, further information about the Publisher's permissions policies and our arrangements with organizations such as the Copyright Clearance Center and the Copyright Licensing Agency, can be found at our website: www.elsevier.com/permissions.

This book and the individual contributions contained in it are protected under copyright by the Publisher (other than as may be noted herein).

Notices

Knowledge and best practice in this field are constantly changing. As new research and experience broaden our understanding, changes in research methods, professional practices, or medical treatment may become necessary.

Practitioners and researchers must always rely on their own experience and knowledge in evaluating and using any information, methods, compounds, or experiments described herein. In using such information or methods they should be mindful of their own safety and the safety of others, including parties for whom they have a professional responsibility.

To the fullest extent of the law, neither the Publisher nor the authors, contributors, or editors, assume any liability for any injury and/or damage to persons or property as a matter of products liability, negligence or otherwise, or from any use or operation of any methods, products, instructions, or ideas contained in the material herein.

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

A catalog record for this book is available from the Library of Congress

British Library Cataloguing-in-Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN: 978-0-12-804733-0

For information on all Academic Press publications
visit our website at <https://www.elsevier.com>



Working together
to grow libraries in
developing countries

www.elsevier.com • www.bookaid.org

Publisher: Nikki Levy

Acquisition Editor: Graham Nisbet

Editorial Project Manager: Susan Ikeda

Production Project Manager: Mohanapriyan Rajendran

Designer: Victoria Pearson Esser

Typeset by VTeX

Preface

This book focuses on the practical aspects of modern, robust statistical methods. The increased accuracy and power of modern methods, versus conventional approaches to the analysis of variance (ANOVA) and regression, is remarkable. Through a combination of theoretical developments, improved and more flexible statistical methods, and the power of the computer, it is now possible to address problems with standard methods that seemed insurmountable only a few years ago.

The most common approach when comparing two or more groups is to compare means, assuming that observations have normal distributions. When comparing independent groups, it is further assumed that distributions have a common variance. Conventional wisdom is that these standard ANOVA methods are robust to violations of assumptions. This view is based in large part on studies, published before the year 1960, showing that if groups do not differ (meaning that they have identical distributions), then good control over the probability of a type I error is achieved. However, if groups differ, hundreds of more recent journal articles have described serious practical problems with standard techniques and how these problems might be addressed. One concern is that the sample mean can have a relatively large standard error under slight departures from normality. This in turn can mean low power. Another problem is that probability coverage, based on conventional methods for constructing confidence intervals, can be substantially different from the nominal level, and undesirable power properties arise as well. In particular, power can go down as the difference between the means gets large. The result is that important differences between groups are often missed, and the magnitude of the difference is poorly characterized. Put another way, groups probably differ when null hypotheses are rejected with standard methods, but in many situations, standard methods are the least likely to find a difference, and they offer a poor summary of how groups differ and the magnitude of the difference. Yet another fundamental concern is that the *population* mean and variance are not robust, roughly meaning that under arbitrarily small shifts from normality, their values can be substantially altered and potentially misleading. Thus, even with arbitrarily large sample sizes, the sample mean and variance might provide an unsatisfactory summary of the data.

When dealing with regression, the situation is even worse. That is, there are even more ways in which analyses, based on conventional assumptions, can be misleading. The very foundation of standard regression methods, namely estimation via the least squares principle, leads to practical problems, as do violations of other standard assumptions. For example, if the error term in the standard linear model has a normal distribution, but is heteroscedastic, the least squares estimator can be highly inefficient, and the conventional confidence interval for the regression parameters can be extremely inaccurate.

In 1960, it was unclear how to formally develop solutions to the many problems that have been identified. It was the theory of robustness developed by P. Huber and F. Hampel that paved the road for finding practical solutions. Today, there are many asymptotically correct ways of substantially improving on standard ANOVA and regression methods. That is, they converge to the correct answer as the sample sizes get large, but simulation studies have shown that when sample sizes are small, not all methods should be used. Moreover, for many methods, it remains unclear how large the sample sizes must be before reasonably accurate results are obtained. One of the goals in this book is to identify those methods that perform well in simulation studies, as well as those that do not.

This book does not provide an encyclopedic description of all the robust methods that might be used. While some methods are excluded because they perform poorly relative to others, many methods have not been examined in simulation studies, so their practical value remains unknown. Indeed, there are so many methods, a massive effort is needed to evaluate them. Moreover, some methods are difficult to study with current computer technology. That is, they require so much execution time that simulations remain impractical. Of course, this might change in the near future, but what is needed now is a description of modern robust methods that have practical value in applied work.

Although the goal is to focus on the applied aspects of robust methods, it is important to discuss the foundations of modern methods, so this is done in Chapters 2 and 3, and to some extent in Chapter 4. One general point is that modern methods have a solid mathematical foundation. Another goal is to impart the general flavor and aims of robust methods. This is important because misconceptions are rampant. For example, some individuals firmly believe that one of the goals of modern robust methods is to find better ways of estimating μ , the population mean. From a robust point of view, this goal is not remotely relevant, and it is important to understand why. Another misconception is that robust methods only perform well when distributions are symmetric. In fact, both theory and simulations indicate that robust methods offer an advantage over standard methods when distributions are skewed.

A practical concern is applying the methods described in this book. Many of the recommended methods have been developed in only the last few years and are not available in standard statistical packages. To deal with this problem, easy-to-use R functions are supplied.

They can be obtained as indicated in Section 1.8 of Chapter 1. With one command, all of the functions described in this book become a part of your version of R. Illustrations, using these functions, are included.

The book assumes that the reader has had an introductory statistics course. That is, all that is required is some knowledge about the basics of ANOVA, hypothesis testing, and regression. The foundations of robust methods, described in Chapter 2, are written at a relatively nontechnical level, but the exposition is much more technical than the rest of the book, and it might be too technical for some readers. It is recommended that Chapter 2 be read or at least skimmed, but those who are willing to accept certain results can skip to Chapter 3. One of the main points in Chapter 2 is that the robust measures of location and scale that are used are not arbitrary, but were chosen to satisfy specific criteria. Moreover, these criteria eliminate from consideration the population mean, variance, and the usual correlation coefficient.

From an applied point of view, Chapters 4–12, which include methods for addressing common problems in ANOVA and regression, form the heart of the book. Technical details are kept to a minimum. The goal is to provide a simple description of the best methods available, based on theoretical and simulation studies, and to provide advice on which methods to use. Usually, no single method dominates all others, one reason being that there are multiple criteria for judging a particular technique. Accordingly, the relative merits of the various methods are discussed. Although no single method dominates, standard methods are typically the least satisfactory, and many alternative methods can be eliminated.

Many individuals have made many numerous suggestions and contributions that have substantially improved the presentation of the material as well as the R functions that accompany this book. I am especially indebted to James Algina, Gui Bao, Xiao He, James Jaccard, H. Keselman, Boaz Levy, J. Magadia, Patrick Mair and Felix Schönbrodt.

Introduction

Introductory statistics courses describe methods for computing confidence intervals and testing hypotheses about means and regression parameters based on the assumption that observations are randomly sampled from normal distributions. When comparing independent groups, standard methods also assume that groups have a common variance, even when the means are unequal, and a similar homogeneity of variance assumption is made when testing hypotheses about regression parameters. Currently, these methods form the backbone of most applied research. There is, however, a serious practical problem: Many journal articles have illustrated that these standard methods can be highly unsatisfactory. Often the result is a poor understanding of how groups differ and the magnitude of the difference. Power can be relatively low compared to recently developed methods, least squares regression can yield a highly misleading summary of how two or more random variables are related as can the usual correlation coefficient, the probability coverage of standard methods for computing confidence intervals can differ substantially from the nominal value, and the usual sample variance can give a distorted view of the amount of dispersion among a population of participants. Even the population mean, if it could be determined exactly, can give a distorted view of what the typical participant is like.

Although the problems just described are well known in the statistics literature, many textbooks written for non-statisticians still claim that standard techniques are completely satisfactory. Consequently, it is important to review the problems that can arise and why these problems were missed for so many years. As will become evident, several pieces of misinformation have become part of statistical folklore resulting in a false sense of security when using standard statistical techniques. The remainder of this chapter focuses on some basic issues related to assuming normality, as well as some basic issues associated with the classic ANOVA test and least squares regression. But it is stressed that there are additional issues that will be discussed in subsequent chapters. One appeal of modern robust methods is that under general conditions they can have substantially higher power compared to more traditional techniques. But from a broader perspective, the main message is that a collection of new and improved methods is now available that provides a more accurate and more nuanced understanding of data.

1.1 Problems with Assuming Normality

To begin, distributions are never normal. For some this seems obvious, hardly worth mentioning, but an aphorism given by Cramér (1946) and attributed to the mathematician Poincaré remains relevant: “Everyone believes in the [normal] law of errors, the experimenters because they think it is a mathematical theorem, the mathematicians because they think it is an experimental fact.” Granted, the normal distribution is the most important distribution in all of statistics. But in terms of approximating the distribution of any continuous distribution, it can fail to the point that practical problems arise, as will become evident at numerous points in this book. To believe in the normal distribution implies that only two numbers are required to tell us everything about the probabilities associated with a random variable: the population mean μ and population variance σ^2 . Moreover, assuming normality implies that distributions must be symmetric.

Of course, non-normality is not, by itself, a disaster. Perhaps a normal distribution provides a good approximation of most distributions that arise in practice, and there is the central limit theorem, which tells us that under random sampling, as the sample size gets large, the limiting distribution of the sample mean is normal. Unfortunately, even when a normal distribution provides a good approximation to the actual distribution being studied (as measured by the Kolmogorov distance function described later) practical problems arise. Also, empirical investigations indicate that departures from normality, that have practical importance, are rather common in applied work (e.g., Hill & Dixon, 1982; Micceri, 1989; Wilcox, 1990a). Even over a century ago, Karl Pearson and other researchers were concerned about the assumption that observations follow a normal distribution (e.g., Hand, 1998, p. 649). In particular, distributions can be highly skewed, they can have heavy tails (tails that are thicker than a normal distribution), and random samples often have outliers (unusually large or small values among a sample of observations). Skewed distributions turn out to be a much more serious concern than once thought. Details are summarized in Chapters 4 and 5.

The immediate goal is to indicate some practical concerns associated outliers and heavy-tailed distributions. Outliers and heavy-tailed distributions are a serious practical problem because they inflate the standard error of the sample mean, so power can be relatively low when comparing groups. Fisher (1922), for example, was aware that the sample mean could be inefficient under slight departures from normality. Even two centuries ago, Laplace was aware that the sample median can be more efficient than the sample mean (Hand, 1998). The earliest empirical evidence that heavy-tailed distributions occur naturally stems from Bessel (1818). Data analyzed by Newcomb (1886) again indicated that heavy-tailed distributions are common. Modern robust methods provide an effective way of dealing with these problems.

A classic way of illustrating the effects of slight departures from normality is with the *contaminated* or *mixed normal* distribution (Tukey, 1960). Let X be a standard normal random

variable having distribution $\Phi(x) = P(X \leq x)$. Then for any constant $K > 0$, $\Phi(x/K)$ is a normal distribution with standard deviation K . Let ϵ be any constant, $0 \leq \epsilon \leq 1$. The *mixed normal* distribution is

$$H(x) = (1 - \epsilon)\Phi(x) + \epsilon\Phi(x/K), \quad (1.1)$$

which has mean 0 and variance $1 - \epsilon + \epsilon K^2$. (Stigler, 1973, finds that the use of the mixed normal dates back at least to Newcomb, 1882, p. 382.) In other words, the mixed normal arises by sampling from a standard normal distribution with probability $1 - \epsilon$; otherwise sampling is from a normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation K .

To provide a more concrete example, consider the population of all adults, and suppose that 10% of all adults are at least 70 years old. Of course, individuals at least 70 years old might have a different distribution from the rest of the population. For instance, individuals under 70 might have a standard normal distribution, but individuals at least 70 years old might have a normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation 10. Then the entire population of adults has a mixed (or contaminated) normal distribution with $\epsilon = 0.1$ and $K = 10$. In symbols, the resulting distribution is

$$H(x) = 0.9\Phi(x) + 0.1\Phi(x/10), \quad (1.2)$$

which has mean 0 and variance 10.9. Moreover, Eq. (1.2) is not a normal distribution, verification of which is left as an exercise.

To illustrate problems that arise under slight departures from normality, we first examine Eq. (1.2) more closely. Figure 1.1 shows the standard normal and the mixed normal probability density function corresponding to Eq. (1.2). Notice that the tails of the mixed normal are above the tails of the normal, so the contaminated normal is said to have heavy tails. It might seem that the normal distribution provides a good approximation of the contaminated normal, but there is an important difference. The standard normal has variance 1, but the mixed normal has variance 10.9. The reason for the seemingly large difference between the variances is that σ^2 is very sensitive to the tails of a distribution. In essence, a small proportion of the population of participants can have an inordinately large effect on its value. Put another way, even when the variance is known, if sampling is from the mixed normal, the length of the standard confidence interval for the population mean, μ , will be over three times longer than it would be when sampling from the standard normal distribution instead. What is important from a practical point of view is that there are location estimators other than the sample mean that have standard errors that are substantially less affected by heavy tailed distributions. By “measure of location” is meant some measure intended to represent the typical participant or object, the two best-known examples being the mean and the median. (A more

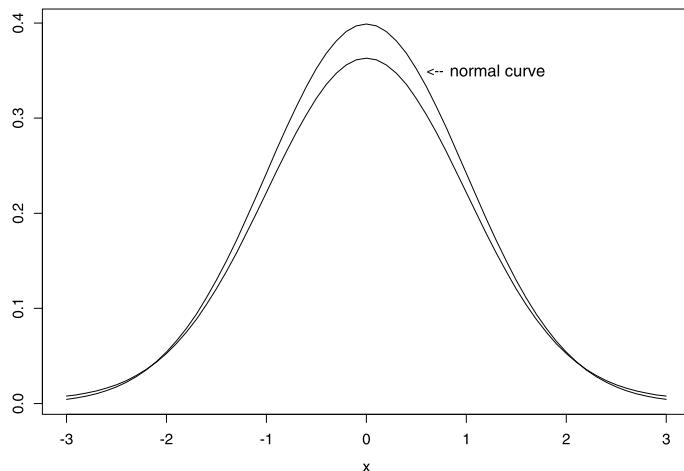


Figure 1.1: Normal and contaminated normal distributions.

formal definition is given in Chapter 2.) Some of these measures have relatively short confidence intervals when distributions have a heavy tail, yet the length of the confidence interval remains reasonably short when sampling from a normal distribution instead. Put another way, there are methods for testing hypotheses that have good power under normality, but that continue to have good power when distributions are non-normal, in contrast to methods based on means. For example, when sampling from the mixed normal given by Eq. (1.2), both Welch's and Student's method for comparing the means of two independent groups have power approximately 0.278 when testing at the 0.05 level with equal sample sizes of 25 and when the difference between the means is 1. In contrast, several other methods, described in Chapter 5, have power exceeding 0.7.

In an attempt to salvage the sample mean, it might be argued that in some sense the mixed normal represents an extreme departure from normality. The extreme quantiles of the two distributions do differ substantially, but based on various measures of the difference between two distributions, they are very similar as suggested by Figure 1.1. For example, the *Kolmogorov distance* between any two distributions, F and G , is the maximum value of

$$\Delta(x) = |F(x) - G(x)|,$$

the maximum being taken over all possible values of x . (If the maximum does not exist, the supremum or least upper bound is used.) If distributions are identical, the Kolmogorov distance is 0, and its maximum possible value is 1, as is evident. Now consider the Kolmogorov distance between the mixed normal distribution, $H(x)$, given by (1.2), and the standard normal distribution, $\Phi(x)$. It can be seen that $\Delta(x)$ does not exceed 0.04 for any x . That is, based on a Kolmogorov distance function, the two distributions are similar. Several alternative

methods are often used to measure the difference between distributions. (Some of these are discussed by [Huber & Ronchetti, 2009](#).) The choice among these measures is of interest when dealing with theoretical issues, but these issues go beyond the scope of this book. Suffice it to say that the difference between the normal and mixed normal is again small. [Gleason \(1993\)](#) discusses the difference between the normal and mixed normal from a different perspective and also concludes that the difference is small.

Even if it could be concluded that the mixed normal represents a large departure from normality, concerns over the sample mean would persist, for reasons already given. In particular, there are measures of location having standard errors similar in magnitude to the standard error of the sample mean when sampling from normal distributions, but that have relatively small standard errors when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution instead. Moreover, experience with actual data indicates that the sample mean does indeed have a relatively large standard error in some situations. In terms of testing hypotheses, there are methods for comparing measures of location that continue to have high power in situations where there are outliers or sampling is from a heavy-tailed distribution. Other problems that plague inferential methods based on means are also reduced when using these alternative measures of location. For example, the more skewed a distribution happens to be, the more difficult it is to get an accurate confidence interval for the mean, and problems arise when testing hypotheses. Theoretical and simulation studies indicate that problems are reduced substantially when using certain measures of location discussed in this book.

When testing hypotheses, a tempting method for reducing the effects of outliers or sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution is to check for outliers, and if any are found, throw them out and apply standard techniques to the data that remain. This strategy cannot be recommended, however, because it yields incorrect estimates of the standard errors, for reasons given in Chapter 3. Indeed, the estimate of the standard error based on this approach can differ substantially from an estimate that is technically correct, as will be illustrated at the end of Section 3.3.2. (Also see [Bakker & Wicherts, 2014](#).) Generally, the method for down weighting or eliminating extreme values must be taken into account when estimating a standard error.

Yet another problem needs to be considered. If distributions are skewed enough, doubts begin to rise about whether the population mean is a satisfactory reflection of the typical participant under study. [Figure 1.2](#) shows a graph of the probability density function corresponding to a mixture of two chi-squared distributions. The first has four degrees of freedom and the second is again chi-squared with four degrees of freedom, only the observations are multiplied by 10. This is similar to the mixed normal already described, only chi-squared distributions are used instead. Observations are sampled from the first distribution with probability 0.9, otherwise sampling is from the second. As indicated in [Figure 1.2](#), the population mean is 7.6,

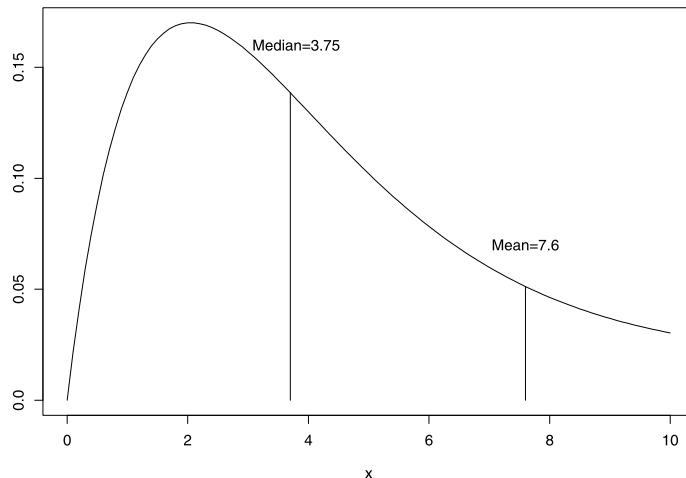


Figure 1.2: Mixed chi-squared distribution.

a value that is relatively far into the right tail. In contrast, the population median is 3.75, and this would seem to be a better representation of the typical participant under study.

A seemingly natural strategy is to test the assumption that a distribution is normal and if not statistically significant, assume normality. But numerous papers indicate that this strategy in particular, and the general strategy of testing assumptions, is unsatisfactory. A related strategy is to test for normality and if non-normality is detected, test hypotheses based on some alternative parametric family of distributions, such as the family of lognormal or exponential distributions. In particular, one might choose a family of distributions based on which family of distributions offers the best fit to the observed data. But in the context of a general linear model, extant results do not support this approach (e.g., [Keselman, Othman, & Wilcox, 2016](#)). Perhaps there are situations where this approach performs reasonably well, but this remains to be determined.

1.2 Transformations

Transforming data has practical value in a variety of situations. [Emerson and Stoto \(1983\)](#) provide a fairly elementary discussion of the various reasons one might transform data and how it can be done. The only important point here is that simple transformations can fail to deal effectively with outliers and heavy-tailed distributions. For example, the popular strategy of taking logarithms of all the observations does not necessarily reduce problems due to outliers, and the same is true when using Box–Cox transformations instead (e.g. [Rasmussen, 1989](#); [Doksum & Wong, 1983](#)). Other concerns were expressed by [Thompson and Amman \(1990\)](#). Better strategies are described in subsequent chapters.

Skewness can be a source of concern when using methods based on means, as will be illustrated in subsequent chapters. Transforming data is often suggested as a way of dealing with skewness. More precisely, the goal is to transform the data so that the resulting distribution is approximately symmetric about some central value. There are situations where this strategy is reasonably successful. But even after transforming data, a distribution can remain severely skewed. In practical terms, this approach can be highly unsatisfactory, and assuming that it performs well can result erroneous and misleading conclusions. When comparing two independent groups with say a Student's t test, the assumption is that the same transformation applied to group 1 is satisfactory when transforming the data associated with group 2. A seemingly better way to proceed is to use a method that deals well with skewed distributions even when data are not transformed and when the distributions being compared differ in the amount of skewness.

Perhaps it should be noted that when using simple transformations on skewed data, if inferences are based on the mean of the transformed data, then attempts at making inferences about the mean of the original data, μ , have been abandoned. That is, if the mean of the transformed data is computed and we transform back to the original data, in general we do not get an estimate of μ .

1.3 The Influence Curve

This section gives one more indication of why robust methods are of interest by introducing the influence curve as described by [Mosteller and Tukey \(1977\)](#). It bears a close resemblance to the *influence function*, which plays an important role in subsequent chapters, but the influence curve is easier to understand. In general, the *influence curve* indicates how any statistic is affected by an additional observation having value x . In particular it graphs the value of a statistic versus x .

As an illustration, let \bar{X} be the sample mean corresponding to the random sample X_1, \dots, X_n . Suppose we add an additional value, x , to the n values already available, so now there are $n + 1$ observations. Of course this additional value will in general affect the sample mean, which is now $(x + \sum X_i)/(n + 1)$. It is evident that as x gets large, the sample mean of all $n + 1$ observations increases. The influence curve plots x versus

$$\frac{1}{n+1}(x + \sum X_i), \quad (1.3)$$

the idea being to illustrate how a single value can influence the value of the sample mean. Note that for the sample mean, the graph is a straight line with slope $1/(n + 1)$, the point being that the curve increases without bound. Of course, as n gets large, the slope decreases, but in practice there might be two or more unusual values that dominate the value of \bar{X} .

Now consider the usual sample median, M . Let $X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ be the observations written in ascending order. If n is odd, let $m = (n + 1)/2$, in which case $M = X_{(m)}$, the m th largest order statistic. If n is even, let $m = n/2$ in which case $M = (X_{(m)} + X_{(m+1)})/2$. To be more concrete, consider the values

2 4 6 7 8 10 14 19 21 28.

Then $n = 10$ and $M = (8 + 10)/2 = 9$. Suppose an additional value, x , is added, so that now $n = 11$. If $x > 10$, then $M = 10$, regardless of how large x might be. If $x < 8$, $M = 8$ regardless of how small x might be. As x increases from 8 to 10, M increases from 8 to 10 as well. The main point is that in contrast to the sample mean, the median has a bounded influence curve. In general, if the goal is to minimize the influence of a relatively small number of observations on a measure of location, attention might be restricted to those measures having a bounded influence curve. A concern with the median, however, is that its standard error is large relative to the standard error of the mean when sampling from a normal distribution, so there is interest in searching for other measures of location having a bounded influence curve, but that have reasonably small standard errors when distributions are normal.

Also notice that the sample variance, s^2 , has an unbounded influence curve, so a single unusual value can inflate s^2 . This is of practical concern because the standard error of \bar{X} is estimated with s/\sqrt{n} . Consequently, conventional methods for comparing means can have low power and relatively long confidence intervals due to a single unusual value. This problem does indeed arise in practice, as illustrated in subsequent chapters. For now the only point is that it is desirable to search for measures of location for which the estimated standard error has a bounded influence curve. Such measures are available that have other desirable properties as well.

1.4 The Central Limit Theorem

When working with means or least squares regression, certainly the best-known method for dealing with non-normality is to appeal to the central limit theorem. Put simply, under random sampling, if the sample size is sufficiently large, the distribution of the sample mean is approximately normal under fairly weak assumptions. A practical concern is the description sufficiently large. Just how large must n be to justify the assumption that \bar{X} has a normal distribution? Early studies suggested that $n = 40$ is more than sufficient, and there was a time when even $n = 25$ seemed to suffice. These claims were not based on wild speculations, but more recent studies have found that these early investigations overlooked two crucial aspects of the problem.

The first is that early studies looking into how quickly the sampling distribution of \bar{X} approaches a normal distribution focused on very light-tailed distributions where the expected

proportion of outliers is relatively low. In particular, a popular way of illustrating the central limit theorem was to consider the distribution of \bar{X} when sampling from a uniform or exponential distribution. These distributions look nothing like a normal curve, the distribution of \bar{X} based on $n = 40$ is approximately normal, so a natural speculation is that this will continue to be the case when sampling from other non-normal distributions. But more recently it has become clear that as we move toward more heavy-tailed distributions, a larger sample size is required.

The second aspect being overlooked is that when making inferences based on Student's t, the distribution of T can be influenced more by non-normality than the distribution of \bar{X} . In particular, even if the distribution of \bar{X} is approximately normal based on a sample of n observations, the actual distribution of T can differ substantially from a Student's t distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. *Even when sampling from a relatively light-tailed distribution,* practical problems arise when using Student's t as will be illustrated in Section 4.1. When sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, even $n = 300$ might not suffice when computing a 0.95 confidence interval via Student's t.

1.5 Is the ANOVA F Robust?

Practical problems with comparing means have already been described, but some additional comments are in order. For many years, conventional wisdom held that standard analysis of variance (ANOVA) methods are robust, and this point of view continues to dominate applied research. In what sense is this view correct? What many early studies found was that if groups have *identical* distributions, Student's t test and more generally the ANOVA F test are robust to non-normality in the sense that the actual probability of a Type I error would be close to the nominal level. Tan (1982) reviews the relevant literature. Many took this to mean that the F test is robust when groups differ. In terms of power, some studies seemed to confirm this by focusing on standardized differences among the means. To be more precise, consider two independent groups with means μ_1 and μ_2 and variances σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 . Many studies have investigated the power of Student's t test by examining power as a function of

$$\delta = \frac{\mu_1 - \mu_2}{\sigma},$$

where $\sigma = \sigma_1 = \sigma_2$ is the assumed common standard deviation. What these studies failed to take into account is that small shifts away from normality, toward a heavy-tailed distribution, lowers δ , and this can mask power problems associated with Student's t test. The important point is that for a given difference between the means, $\mu_1 - \mu_2$, modern methods can have substantially more power.

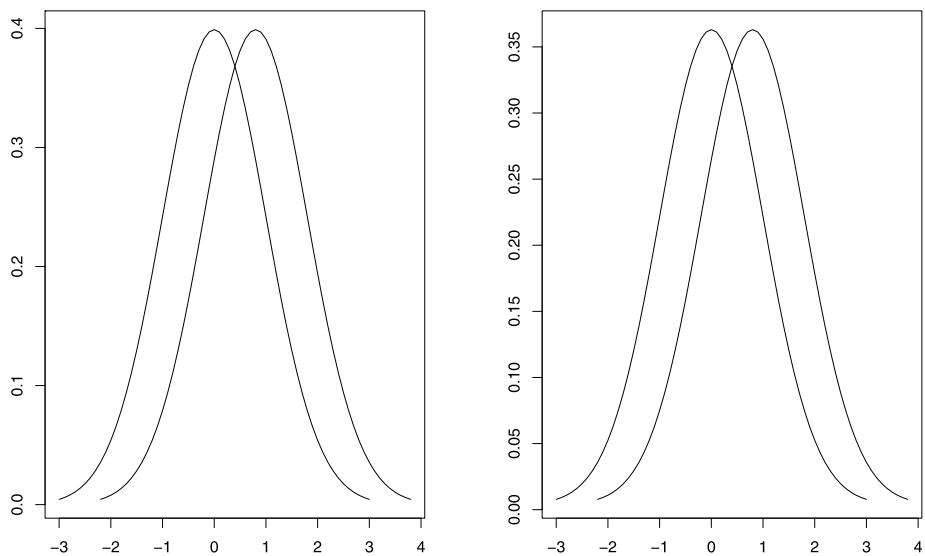


Figure 1.3: Small changes in the tails of distributions can substantially lower power when using means. In the left panel, Student's t has power approximately equal to 0.94. But in the right panel, power is 0.25.

To underscore concerns about power when using Student's t, consider the two normal distributions in the left panel of Figure 1.3. The difference between the means is 0.8 and both distributions have variance 1. With a random sample of size 40 from both groups, and when testing at the 0.05 level, Student's t has power approximately equal to 0.94. Now look at the right panel. The difference between the means is again 0.8, but now power is 0.25, despite the obvious similarity to the right panel. The reason is that the distributions are mixed normals, each having variance 10.9.

More recently it has been illustrated that standard confidence intervals for the difference between means can be unsatisfactory and that the F test has undesirable power properties. One concern is that there are situations where, as the difference between the means increases, power goes down, although eventually it goes up. That is, the F test can be *biased*. For example, Wilcox (1996a) describes a situation involving lognormal distributions where the probability of rejecting is 0.18, when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level, even though the means are equal. When the first mean is increased by 0.4 standard deviations, power drops to 0.096, but increasing the mean by 1 standard deviation, power increases to 0.306. Cressie and Whitford (1986) show that for unequal sample sizes, and when distributions differ in skewness, Student's t test is not even asymptotically correct. More specifically, the variance of the test statistic does not converge to one as is typically assumed, and there is the additional problem that the null distribution is skewed. The situation improves by switching to heteroscedastic methods, but problems remain (e.g., Algina, Oshima, & Lin, 1994). Yet another concern

has to do with situations where distributions differ in skewness. This can result in inaccurate confidence when using methods based on means, as illustrated in Section 5.2. The modern methods described in this book address these problems.

1.6 Regression

Outliers, as well skewed or heavy-tailed distributions, also affect the ordinary least squares regression estimator. In some ways the practical problems that arise are even more serious than those associated with the ANOVA F test.

Consider two random variables, X and Y , and suppose

$$Y = \beta_1 X + \beta_0 + \lambda(X)\epsilon,$$

where ϵ is a random variable having variance σ^2 , X and ϵ are independent, and $\lambda(X)$ is any function of X . If ϵ is normal and $\lambda(X) \equiv 1$, standard methods can be used to compute confidence intervals for β_1 and β_0 . However, even when ϵ is normal but $\lambda(X)$ varies with X , probability coverage can be poor, and problems get worse under non-normality. There is the additional problem that under non-normality, the usual least squares estimate of the parameters can have relatively low efficiency, and this can result in relatively low power. In fact, low efficiency occurs even under normality when λ varies with X . There is also the concern that a single unusual Y value, or a usual X value, can greatly distort the least squares estimate of the slope and intercept. Illustrations of these problems and how they can be addressed are given in subsequent chapters.

1.7 More Remarks

Problems with means and the influence of outliers have been known since at least the 19th century. Prior to the year 1960, methods for dealing with these problems were ad hoc compared to the formal mathematical developments related to the analysis of variance and least squares regression. What marked the beginning of modern robust methods, resulting in mathematical methods for dealing with robustness issues, was a paper by [Tukey \(1960\)](#) discussing the mixed normal distribution. A few years later, a mathematical foundation for addressing technical issues was developed by a small group of statisticians. Of particular importance is the theory of robustness developed by [Huber \(1964\)](#) and [Hampel \(1968\)](#). These results, plus other statistical tools developed in recent years, and the power of the computer, provide important new methods for comparing groups and studying the association between two or more variables.

1.8 R Software

Software for most of the methods described in this book is not yet available in standard statistical packages. Consequently, a library of over 1200 easy-to-use R functions has been supplied for applying them. The (open source) software R ([R Development Core Team, 2010](#)) is free and can be downloaded from www.R-project.org. There are many books that cover the basics of R (e.g., [Crawley, 2007](#); [Venables & Smith, 2002](#); [Verzani, 2004](#); [Zuur, Ieno, & Meesters, 2009](#); also see [Becker, Chambers, & Wilks, 1988](#)). The book by Verzani is available on the web at

<http://cran.r-project.org/doc/contrib/Verzani-SimpleR.pdf>.

A manual for R is also available at

<http://www.cran.r-project.org/doc/manuals/R-intro.pdf>.

Books that describe S-PLUS (e.g., [Becker et al., 1988](#); [Krause & Olson, 2002](#); [Chambers, 1998](#); [Chambers & Hastie, 1992](#); [Fox, 2002](#); [Venables & Ripley, 2000](#)) can be useful when using R.

The R functions written for this book are available in an R package, or they can be downloaded from the author's web page. Seemingly, the easiest way to install the R functions is to go to the web page

<http://college.usc.edu/labs/rwilcox/home>

and download the file Rallfun. (Currently, the most recent version is Rallfun-v31.) Then use the R command

```
source('Rallfun-v31')
```

or

```
source(file.choose()).
```

When using the latter command, a window will come up. Click on the file you want to source. Now all of the functions written for this book are part of your version of R until you remove them. The file WRSC.txt, also stored on this web site, contains C++ versions of some of the functions stored in Rallfun.

A second way of gaining access is via the R package WRS (maintained by Felix Schönbrodt). Go to

<https://github.com>.

At the top of the web page you will see Search GitHub. Type WRS and hit return. You can either download the Rallfun file, or you can install the WRS package using the R commands indicated on this web page. These R commands can also be located at

<https://github.com/nicebread/WRS>.

Copy and paste the R commands into R. Then use the R command

```
library(WRS)
```

to gain access to the functions.

A subset of the R package WRS is available in the CRANS R package WRS2 (created by Patrick Mair). A possible appeal of this package is that it contains help files and it is easily installed by using the R command

```
install.packages('WRS2').
```

The R command

```
library(WRS2)
```

provides access to the functions and it lists the functions that are available. A negative feature is that WRS2 does not contain most of the functions described and illustrated in this book.

Nearly all of the R functions written for this book have fairly low execution time. But when the sample size is large and a bootstrap method is used in conjunction with certain multivariate methods, execution time can be relatively high. To reduce this problem, some of the R functions include the ability of taking advantage of a multicore processor, if one is available, via the R package parallel. In addition, C++ versions of some functions, beyond those stored in WRSC.txt, are available thanks to Xiao He, which are stored in the R package WRScpp. (More information is supplied when the need arises.) It is recommended that these WRScpp be installed via R Studio (www.rstudio.com), which is a free user interface for R. (Using the standard R interface is likely to result in an error.) To gain access to WRScpp, first install the R package devtools, which can be accomplished with the R command `install.packages`. When using a MAC, the R commands

```
library(devtools)  
install_github('WRScpp', 'mrxiaohe')
```

install the R package WRScpp. The command

```
library(WRScpp)
```

provides access to the functions. When using a PC, install this package with the R command

```
install_github('WRScppWin', 'mrxiaohe').
```

Currently, the functions in this library are:

- ancGLOB_pv_C
- ddepGMC_C
- fdepthv2_C
- mgvar_C
- outmgv_C
- outpro_C
- skip_C
- stsreg_C
- tshdreg_C
- tsreg_C (See comments about this function in Section 10.2.1.)
- tstsreg_C

Here is a list of the R packages, available from CRANS, that are utilized in this book:

- akima
- cobs
- MASS
- mgcv
- multicore
- parallel
- plotrix
- pwr
- quantreg
- robust
- robustbase
- rrcov
- scatterplot3d
- stats

All of these packages can be installed with the `install.packages` command (assuming you are connected to the web). For example, the R command

```
install.packages('akima')
```

will install the R package `akima`, which is used when creating three dimensional plots.

1.9 Some Data Management Issues

Some of the R functions written for this book are aimed at manipulating and managing data in a manner that might be helpful, some of which are summarized in this section. Subsequent chapters provide more details about when and how the functions summarized here might be used.

A common situation is where data are stored in columns with one of the columns indicating the group to which a participant belongs and one or more other columns contain the measures of interest. For example, the data for eight participants might be stored as

```
10 2 64
4 2 47
8 3 59
12 3 61
6 2 73
7 1 56
8 1 78
15 2 63
```

where the second column indicates to which group a participant belongs. There are three groups because the numbers in column 2 have one of three distinct values. For illustrative purposes, suppose that for each participant, two measures of reduced stress are recorded in columns 1 and 3. Then two of the participants belong to group 1, on the first measure of reduced stress their scores are 7 and 8, and on the second their scores are 56 and 78. Some of the R functions written for this book require sorting this data into groups and then storing it in either a matrix (with columns corresponding to groups) or in list mode. The R function

```
fac2list(x,g)
```

is supplied for accomplishing this goal, where x is an R variable, typically the column of some matrix or a data frame containing the data to be analyzed, and g is an R variable indicating the levels of the groups to be compared. For a one-way ANOVA, g is assumed to be a single column of values. For a 2-way ANOVA, g would have two columns, and for a 3-way ANOVA it would have three columns, each column corresponding to a factor. A maximum of four columns is allowed. The built-in R function

```
split(x,g)
```

can be used as well. (In some situations, fac2list is a bit more convenient than split.)

■ Example

R has a built-in data set, stored in the R variable `ChickWeight`, which is a matrix containing four columns of data. The first column contains the weight of chicks, column 4 indicates which of four diets was used, and the second column gives the number of days since birth when the measurement was made, which were 0, 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 12, 14, 16, 18, 20, 21. So for each chick, measurements were taken on 12 different days. Imagine that the goal is to sort data on weight into four groups based on the four groups indicated in column 4 and that the results are to be stored in list mode. This is accomplished with the R command

```
z=fac2list(ChickWeight[,1],ChickWeight[,4]).
```

The data for group 1 are stored in `z[[1]]`, the data for group 2 are stored in `z[[2]]`, and so on. If the levels of the groups are indicated by numeric values, `fac2list` puts the levels in ascending order. If the levels are indicated by a character string, the levels are put in alphabetical order.



An alternative to the functions `fac2list` and `split` is the built-in R function

```
unstack(x,...) z=fac2list(ChickWeight[,1],ChickWeight[,4]).
```

It uses the formula convention that is probably familiar to readers who already know R. In the last example, the R command would now look like this:

```
z=unstack(ChickWeight,ChickWeight[,1] ~ ChickWeight[,4])
```

The R function

```
fac2Mlist(x,grp.col,lev.col,pr=T)
```

is like the R function `fac2list`; it can be useful when dealing with a multivariate analysis of variance (MANOVA) design using the methods in Section 7.10. Roughly, it sorts data into groups based on the data in column of `x` indicated by the argument `grp.col`. See Section 7.10.3 for more details. When dealing with a between-by-between MANOVA design, the function

```
fac2BBMlist(x,grp.col,lev.col,pr=T)
```

can be used.

Now consider a between-by-between or a between-by-within ANOVA design. Some of the functions written for this book assume that the data are stored in list mode, or a matrix with columns corresponding to groups, and that the data are arranged in a particular order: the first K groups belong to the first level of the first factor, the next K belong to the second level of the second factor, and so on.

■ Example

For a 2-by-4 design, with the data stored in the R variable `x`, having list mode, the data are assumed to be arranged as follows:

	Factor B			
Factor	<code>x[[1]]</code>	<code>x[[2]]</code>	<code>x[[3]]</code>	<code>x[[4]]</code>
A	<code>x[[5]]</code>	<code>x[[6]]</code>	<code>x[[7]]</code>	<code>x[[8]]</code>

The R function `fac2list` can be useful for such situations.

Suppose, for example, the following data are stored in the R matrix `m` having 13 rows and 4 columns.

```
10 2 64 1
4 2 47 1
8 3 59 1
12 3 61 2
6 2 73 2
7 1 56 2
8 1 78 2
15 2 63 2
9 3 71 1
2 3 81 1
4 1 68 1
5 1 53 1
21 3 49 2
```

The goal is to perform a 3-by-2 ANOVA, where the numbers in column 2 indicate the levels of the first factor, and the numbers in column 4 indicate the levels of the second. Further assume that the values to be analyzed are stored in column 1. The first row of data indicates that the value 10 belongs to level 2 of the first factor and level 1 of the second. Similarly, the third row indicates that the value 8 belongs to the third level of the first factor and the first level of the second. Chapter 7 describes R functions for comparing the groups. Using these functions

requires storing the data in list mode or a matrix, and the function fac2list can help accomplish this goal with the R command

```
dat=fac2list(m[,1],m[,c(2,4)]).
```

The output stored in dat is

```
[[1]]  
[1] 4 5
```

```
[[2]]  
[1] 7 8
```

```
[[3]]  
[1] 10 4
```

```
[[4]]  
[1] 6 15
```

```
[[5]]  
[1] 8 9 2
```

```
[[6]]  
[1] 12 21
```

The R variable dat[[1]] contains the data for level 1 of both factors. The R variable dat[[2]] contains the data for level 1 of the first factor and level 2 of the second. The function also prints the values associated with the levels corresponding to each factor. For the situation at hand it prints:

```
[1] "Group Levels:"  
     [,1] [,2]  
[1,]    1    1  
[2,]    1    2  
[3,]    2    1  
[4,]    2    2  
[5,]    3    1  
[6,]    3    2
```

For example, the third row has 2 in the first column and 1 in the second column meaning that for level 2 of the first factor and level 1 of the second, the data are stored in m[[3]]. It is note that the data are stored in the form expected by the ANOVA functions covered in Chapter 7. One of these functions is called t2way. In the illustration, the command

```
t2way(dat=fac2list2(m[,1],m[,c(2,4)]),tr=0)
```

would compare means using a heteroscedastic method appropriate for a 3-by-2 ANOVA design, where the outcome measure corresponds to the data in column 1 of the R variable m. To perform a 3-by-2 ANOVA for the data in column 3, first enter the command

```
m=fac2list2(m[,3],m[,c(2,4)])
```

and then

```
t2way(3,2,m,tr=0).
```

A three way ANOVA can be handled in a similar manner. Variations of some of the R functions written for this book make it possible to avoid using both the R function fac2list. They will be described in subsequent chapters.

■ Example

Consider again the example dealing with the R variable ChickWeight, only now the goal is to store the data in list mode. The R command

```
z=fac2list(ChickWeight[,1],ChickWeight[,c(4,2)])
```

accomplishes this goal.

Look closely at the argument ChickWeight[,c(4,2)] and note the use of c(4,2). The 2 comes after the 4 because column 2 corresponds to the within group factor, which in this book always corresponds to the second factor. If ChickWeight[,c(2,4)] had been used, functions in this book aimed at a between-by-within design would assume that column 4 corresponds to the within group factor, which is incorrect.

Another goal that is sometimes encountered is splitting a matrix of data into groups based on the values in one of the columns. For example, column 6 might indicate whether participants are male or female, denoted by the values 0 and 1, and it is desired to store the data for females and males in separate R variables. This can be done with the R function

```
matsplit(m,coln=NULL),
```

which sorts the data in the matrix m into separate R variables corresponding to the values indicated by the argument coln. The function is similar to fac2list, only now two or more

columns of a matrix can be sorted into groups rather than a single column of data, as is the case when using `fac2list`. Also, `matsplit` returns the data stored in a matrix rather than list mode.

The R function

```
mat2grp(m,coln)
```

also splits the data in a matrix into groups based on the values in column `coln` of the matrix `m`. Unlike `matsplit`, `mat2grp` can handle more than two values. That is, the column of `m` indicated by the argument `coln` can have more than two unique values. The results are stored in list mode.

The R function

```
qspli(x,y,split.val=NULL)
```

splits the data in `x` into three groups based on a range of values stored in `y`. The length of `y` is assumed to be equal to the number of rows in the matrix `x`. (The argument `x` can be a vector rather than a matrix.) If `split.val=NULL`, the function computes the lower and upper quartiles based on the values in `y`. Then the corresponding rows of data in `x` that correspond to `y` values less than or equal to the lower quartile are returned in `qspli$lower`. The rows of data for which `y` has a value between the lower and upper quartiles are returned in `qspli$middle`, and the rows for which `y` has a value greater than or equal to the upper quartile are returned in `qspli$upper`. If two values are stored in the argument `split.val`, they will be used in place of the quartiles.

■ Example

R has a built-in data set stored in the R variable `ChickWeight` (a matrix with 4 columns) that deals with weight gain over time and based on different diets. The amount of weight gained is stored in column 1. For illustrative purposes, imagine the goal is to separate the data in column 1 into three groups. The first group is to contain those values that are less than or equal to the lower quartile, the next is to contain the values between the lower and upper quartiles, and the third group is to contain the values greater than or equal to the upper quartile. The command

```
qspli(ChickWeight[,1],ChickWeight[,1])
```

accomplishes this goal.



Two other functions are provided for manipulating data stored in a matrix:

- `bw2list`
- `bbw2list`.

These two functions are useful when dealing with a between-by-within design and a between-between-by-within design and will be described and illustrated in Chapter 8.

To illustrate the next R function, consider data reported by [Potthoff and Roy \(1964\)](#) dealing with an orthodontic growth study where for each of 27 children, the distance between the pituitary and pterygomaxillary fissure was measured at ages 8, 10, 12, and 14 years of age. The data can be accessed via the R package `nlme` and are stored in the R variable `Orthodont`. The first 10 rows of the data are:

	distance	age	Subject	Sex
1	26.0	8	M01	Male
2	25.0	10	M01	Male
3	29.0	12	M01	Male
4	31.0	14	M01	Male
5	21.5	8	M02	Male
6	22.5	10	M02	Male
7	23.0	12	M02	Male
8	26.5	14	M02	Male
9	23.0	8	M03	Male
10	22.5	10	M03	Male

It might be useful to store the data in a matrix where each row contains the outcome measure of interest, which is distance in the example. For the orthodontic growth study, this means storing the data in a matrix having 27 rows corresponding to the 27 participants, where each row has 4 columns corresponding to the four times that measures were taken. The R function

```
long2mat(x,Sid.col,dep.col)
```

accomplishes this goal. The argument `x` is assumed to be a matrix or a data frame. The argument `dep.col` is assumed to have a single value that indicates which column of `x` contains the data to be analyzed. The argument `Sid.col` indicates the column containing a participant's identification. So for the orthodontic growth study, the command `m=long2mat(Orthodont,3,1)` would create a 27×4 matrix with the first row containing the values 26, 25, 29 and 31, the measures associated with the first participant.

The R function

```
longcov2mat(x, Sid.col, dep.col)
```

is like the function `long2mat`, only the argument `dep.col` can have more than one value and a matrix of covariates is stored in list mode for each of the n participants. Continuing the last example, the command `m=long2mat(Orthodont,3,1)` would result in `m` having list mode, `m[[1]]` would be a 4×1 matrix containing the values for the first participant, `m[[2]]` would be the values for the second participant, and so on.

Here are a few other R functions that might be useful. The R function

`m2l(x)`

stores the data in the J columns of a matrix in list mode having length J . So the command `m=m2l(x)` would store the data in column one of the matrix `x` in `m[[1]]`, the data in column two would be stored in `m[[2]]`, and so forth. (The R function `matrix2list` accomplishes the same goal.) The R function

`list2mat(x)`

takes data stored in list mode having length J and stores it in a matrix that has J columns. That is, `x[[1]]` becomes column 1, `x[[2]]` becomes column 2, and so on. The R function

`l2v(x)`

converts data in list mode into a single vector of values.

Consider the following data:

```
1 1 1 easy 6
1 1 2 easy 3
1 1 3 easy 2
1 1 4 hard 7
1 1 5 hard 4
1 1 6 hard 1
1 2 1 easy 2
1 2 2 easy 2
1 2 3 easy 7
1 2 4 hard 7
1 2 5 hard 3
1 2 6 hard 2
2 1 1 easy 1
2 1 2 easy 4
2 1 3 easy 4
2 1 4 hard 7
2 1 5 hard 7
2 1 6 hard 6
2 2 1 easy 2
2 2 2 easy 3
```

```
2 2 3 easy 1
2 2 4 hard 7
2 2 5 hard 5
2 2 6 hard 5
```

Imagine that column 2 indicates a participants identification number, columns 1, 3 and 4 indicate categories, and column 5 is some outcome of interest. Further imagine it is desired to compute some measure of location for each category indicated by the values in columns 1 and 4. This can be accomplished with the R function

`M2m.loc(m, grpc, col.dat, locfun = tmean, ...),`

where the argument `locfun` indicates the measure of location that will be used, which defaults to a 20% trimmed mean, `grpc` indicates the columns of `m` that indicate the categories (or levels of a factor), and `col.dat` indicates the column containing the outcome measure of interest. For the situation at hand, assuming the data are stored in the data frame `x`, the command `M2m.loc(x,c(1,4),5,locfun=mean)` returns

```
V1      V4      loc
1 easy  3.666667
1 hard  4.000000
2 easy  2.500000
2 hard  6.166667
```

So, for example, participants who are in both category 1 and category easy, the mean is 3.67.

1.9.1 Eliminating Missing Values

From a statistical point of view, a simple strategy for handling missing values is to simply eliminate them. There are other methods for dealing with missing values (e.g., [Little & Rubin, 2002](#)), a few of which are covered in subsequent chapters. Here it is merely noted that for convenience, when data are stored in a matrix or a data frame, say `m`, the R function

`na.omit(m)`

will eliminate any row having missing values.

1.10 Data Sets

The methods in this book are illustrated with data from a wide range of situations. Most of these data sets can be downloaded from the author's personal web page, which was given near the beginning of Section 1.8. (Alternatively, do a web search for Rand Wilcox and follow the links.)

A Foundation for Robust Methods

Measures that characterize a distribution, such as measures of location and scale, are said to be *robust* if slight changes in a distribution have a relatively small effect on their value. As indicated in Chapter 1, the population mean and standard deviation, μ and σ , as well as the sample mean and sample standard deviation, \bar{X} and s^2 , are not robust. This chapter elaborates on this problem by providing a relatively nontechnical description of some of the tools used to judge the robustness of parameters and estimators. Included are some strategies for identifying measures of location and scale that are robust. The emphasis in this chapter is on finding robust analogs of μ and σ , but the results and criteria described here are directly relevant to judging estimators as well, as will become evident. This chapter also introduces some technical tools that are of use in various situations.

This chapter is more technical than the remainder of the book. When analyzing data, it helps to have some understanding of how robustness issues are addressed, and providing a reasonably good explanation requires some theory. Also, many applied researchers, who do not religiously follow developments in mathematical statistics, might still have the impression that robust methods are ad hoc procedures. Accordingly, although the main goal is to make robust methods accessible to applied researchers, it needs to be emphasized that modern robust methods have a solid mathematical foundation. It is stressed, however, that many mathematical details arise that are not discussed here. The goal is to provide an indication of how technical issues are addressed without worrying about the many relevant details. Readers interested in mathematical issues can refer to the excellent books by [Huber and Ronchetti \(2009\)](#) as well as [Hampel, Ronchetti, Rousseeuw, and Stahel \(1986\)](#). The monograph by [Reider \(1994\)](#) is also of interest. For a book written at an intermediate level of difficulty, see [Staudte and Sheather \(1990\)](#).

2.1 Basic Tools for Judging Robustness

There are three basic tools that are used to establish whether quantities such as measures of location and scale have good properties: qualitative robustness, quantitative robustness, and infinitesimal robustness. This section describes these tools in the context of location measures,

but they are also relevant to measures of scale as will become evident. These tools not only provide formal methods for judging a particular measure, they can be used to help derive measures that are robust.

Before continuing, it helps to be more formal about what is meant by a measure of location. A quantity that characterizes a distribution, such as the population mean, is said to be a measure of location if it satisfies four conditions, and a fifth is sometimes added. To describe them, let X be a random variable with distribution F , and let $\theta(X)$ be some descriptive measure of F . Then $\theta(X)$ is said to be a measure of location if for any constants a and b ,

$$\theta(X + b) = \theta(X) + b \quad (2.1)$$

$$\theta(-X) = -\theta(X) \quad (2.2)$$

$$X \geq 0 \text{ implies } \theta(X) \geq 0 \quad (2.3)$$

$$\theta(aX) = a\theta(X). \quad (2.4)$$

The first condition is called *location equivariance*. It simply requires that if a constant b is added to every possible value of X , a measure of location should be increased by the same amount. Let $E(X)$ denote the expected value of X . From basic principles, the population mean is location equivariant. That is, if $\theta(X) = E(X) = \mu$, then $\theta(X + b) = E(X + b) = \mu + b$. The first three conditions, taken together, imply that a measure of location should have a value within the range of possible values of X . The fourth condition is called *scale equivariance*. If the scale by which something is measured is altered by multiplying all possible values of X by a , a measure of location should be altered by the same amount. In essence, results should be independent of the scale of measurement. As a simple example, if the typical height of a man is to be compared to the typical height of a woman, it should not matter whether the comparisons are made in inches or feet.

The fifth condition that is sometimes added was suggested by [Bickel and Lehmann \(1975\)](#). Let $F_x(x) = P(X \leq x)$ and $F_y(x) = P(Y \leq x)$ be the distributions corresponding to the random variables X and Y . Then X is said to be stochastically larger than Y if for any x , $F_x(x) \leq F_y(x)$ with strict inequality for some x . If all the quantiles of X are greater than the corresponding quantiles of Y , then X is stochastically larger than Y . Bickel and Lehmann argue that if X is stochastically larger than Y , then it should be the case that $\theta(X) \geq \theta(Y)$ if θ is to qualify as a measure of location. The population mean has this property.

2.1.1 Qualitative Robustness

To understand qualitative robustness, it helps to begin by considering any function $f(x)$, not necessarily a probability density function. Suppose it is desired to impose a restriction on this

function so that it does not change drastically with small changes in x . One way of doing this is to insist that $f(x)$ be continuous. If, for example, $f(x) = 0$ for $x \leq 1$, but $f(x) = 10,000$ for any $x > 1$, the function is not continuous, and if $x = 1$, an arbitrarily small increase in x results in a large increase in $f(x)$.

A similar idea can be used when judging a measure of location. This is accomplished by viewing parameters as functionals. In the present context, a functional is just a rule that maps every distribution into a real number. For example, the population mean can be written as

$$T(F) = E(X),$$

where the expected value of X depends on F . The role of F becomes more explicit if expectation is written in integral form, in which case this last equation becomes

$$T(F) = \int x dF(x).$$

If X is discrete and the probability function corresponding to $F(x)$ is $f(x)$,

$$T(F) = \sum xf(x),$$

where the summation is over all possible values x of X .

One advantage of viewing parameters as functionals is that the notion of continuity can be extended to them. Thus, if the goal is to have measures of location that are relatively unaffected by small shifts in F , a requirement that can be imposed is that when viewed as a functional, it is continuous. Parameters with this property are said to have *qualitative robustness*.

Let \hat{F} be the usual empirical distribution. That is, for the random sample X_1, \dots, X_n , $\hat{F}(x)$ is just the proportion of X_i values less than or equal to x . An estimate of the functional $T(F)$ is obtained by replacing F with \hat{F} . For example, when $T(F) = E(X) = \mu$, replacing F with \hat{F} yields the sample mean, \bar{X} . An important point is that qualitative robustness includes the idea that if \hat{F} is close to F , in a sense to be made precise, then $T(\hat{F})$ should be close to $T(F)$. For example, if the empirical distribution represents a close approximation of F , then \bar{X} should be a good approximation of μ , but this is not always the case.

One more introductory remark should be made. From a technical point of view, continuity leads to the issue of how the difference between distributions should be measured. Here, the Kolmogorov distance is used. Other metrics play a role when addressing theoretical issues, but they go beyond the scope of this book. Readers interested in pursuing continuity, as it relates to robustness, can refer to [Hampel \(1968\)](#).

To provide at least the flavor of continuity, let F and G be any two distributions and let $D(F, G)$ be the Kolmogorov distance between them, which is the maximum value of $|F(x) - G(x)|$, the maximum being taken over all possible values of x . If the maximum does

not exist, the supremum or least upper bound is used instead. That is, the Kolmogorov distance is the least upper bound on $|F(x) - G(x)|$ over all possible values of x . More succinctly, $D(F, G) = \sup |F(x) - G(x)|$, where the notation \sup indicates *supremum*. For readers unfamiliar with the notion of a *least upper bound*, the Kolmogorov distance is the smallest value of A such that $|F(x) - G(x)| \leq A$. Any A satisfying $|F(x) - G(x)| \leq A$ is called an upper bound on $|F(x) - G(x)|$ and the smallest (least) upper bound is the Kolmogorov distance. Note that $|F(x) - G(x)| \leq 1$ for any x , so for any two distributions, the maximum possible value for the Kolmogorov distance is 1. If the distributions are identical, $D(F, G) = 0$.

Now consider any sequence of distributions, $G_n, n = 1, 2, \dots$. For example, G_n might be the empirical distribution based n observations randomly sampled from some distribution F . Another sequence of distributions is the contaminated normal with $\epsilon = 1/n$. The functional T is said to be continuous at F if for *any* sequence G_n , such that $D(G_n, F)$ approaches 0 as n gets large, $|T(G_n) - T(F)|$ approaches 0. In particular, the functional evaluated at the empirical distribution, $T(\hat{F})$, should approach $T(F)$, the functional evaluated at the distribution from which observations are being sampled. Under random sampling, the empirical distribution approaches the true distribution as n gets large, and from standard results the sample mean approaches the population mean as well. However, there are sequences of distributions for which $D(G_n, F)$ approaches 0 for any F , but the mean of the empirical distribution, the sample mean, does not approach the mean of the true distribution, $T(F) = \mu$, as n gets large. Details are given by [Staudte and Sheather \(1990, p. 66\)](#). Thus, for the Kolmogorov metric, $T(F) = E(X)$ is not continuous. That is, if we require a measure of location that has a continuous functional, the population mean, μ , is ruled out.

An example of a continuous functional, that plays a central role in this book, is the γ -trimmed mean, $0 < \gamma \leq 0.5$. A γ -trimmed mean is the mean of a distribution after the distribution has been transformed in a particular way. More specifically, it is trimmed by truncating the distribution at the γ and $1 - \gamma$ quantiles. Note that if a probability density function is trimmed, it no longer qualifies as a probability density function because the area under the curve is no longer equal to 1, it is equal to $1 - 2\gamma$. Consequently, dividing the trimmed probability density function by $1 - 2\gamma$, the resulting function is again a probability density function. Here, two-sided trimming is assumed unless stated otherwise. (Some authors, when referring to a γ -trimmed mean, assume one-sided trimming, but others assume two-sided trimming instead.) In general then, when referring to a trimmed distribution, this means that the probability density function, $f(x)$, is transformed to

$$\frac{1}{1 - 2\gamma} f(x), x_\gamma \leq x \leq x_{1-\gamma},$$

where x_γ and $x_{1-\gamma}$ are the γ and $1 - \gamma$ quantiles. In essence, trimming results in focusing on the middle portion of a distribution.

As a simple example, consider a standard normal distribution after it has been trimmed 20% ($\gamma = 0.2$) and rescaled so that the area under the curve is equal to one. The 0.2 and 0.8 quantiles of the standard normal distribution are -0.84 and 0.84 , respectively. Thus, the 20% trimmed analog of the standard normal distribution is defined for $-0.84 \leq x \leq 0.84$. The standard normal probability density function is

$$\frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-x^2/2), \quad -\infty \leq x \leq \infty,$$

so the 20% trimmed analog of the standard normal probability density function is

$$f(x) = \frac{1}{0.6} \frac{1}{\sqrt{2\pi}} \exp(-x^2/2), \quad -0.84 \leq x \leq 0.84. \quad (2.5)$$

2.1.2 Infinitesimal Robustness

To provide a relatively simple explanation of infinitesimal robustness, it helps to again consider the situation where $f(x)$ is any function, not necessarily a probability density function. Once more consider what restrictions might be imposed so that small changes in x do not result in large changes in $f(x)$. One such condition is that it be differentiable and that the derivative be bounded. In symbols, if $f'(x)$ is the derivative, it is required that $|f'(x)| < B$ for some constant B . The function $f(x) = x^2$, for example, does not satisfy this condition because its derivative, $2x$, increases without bound as x gets large.

Analogs of derivatives of functionals exist and so a natural way of searching for robust measures of location is to focus on functionals that have a bounded derivative. In the statistics literature, the derivative of a functional, $T(F)$, is called the *influence function* of T at F , which was introduced by [Hampel \(1968, 1974\)](#). Roughly, the influence function measures the relative extent a small perturbation in F has on $T(F)$. Put another way, it reflects the (normed) limiting influence of adding one more observation, x , to a very large sample.

To provide a more precise description of the influence function, let Δ_x be a distribution where the value x occurs with probability one. As is fairly evident, if Y has distribution Δ_x , then $P(Y \leq y) = 0$ if $y < x$, and the mean of Y is $E(Y) = x$.

Next, consider a mixture of two distributions where an observation is randomly sampled from distribution F with probability $1 - \epsilon$, otherwise sampling is from the distribution Δ_x . That is, with probability ϵ , the observed value is x . The resulting distribution is

$$F_{x,\epsilon} = (1 - \epsilon)F + \epsilon\Delta_x. \quad (2.6)$$

It might help to notice the similarity between $F_{x,\epsilon}$ and the contaminated or mixed normal described in Chapter 1. In the present situation, F is any distribution, including normal distributions as a special case. Also notice the similarity with the influence curve in Chapter 1.

Here, interest is in how the value x affects the value of some functional when x occurs with probability ϵ . For example, if F has mean μ , then $F_{x,\epsilon}$ has mean $(1 - \epsilon)\mu + \epsilon x$, and the difference between the mean of $F_{x,\epsilon}$ and the mean of F is $\epsilon(x - \mu)$.

Notice that when ϵ is small, $F_{x,\epsilon}$ is similar to F , as measured by the Kolmogorov distance function. To see this, first note that if the distributions are evaluated at any value, say y ,

$$|F_{x,\epsilon}(y) - F(y)| = |-\epsilon[F(y) - \Delta_x(y)]|.$$

But F and Δ_x are distributions, so $|F(y) - \Delta_x(y)| \leq 1$. Consequently, the Kolmogorov distance between $F_{x,\epsilon}$ and F is at most ϵ . Moreover, $F_{x,\epsilon}$ and F can be made arbitrarily close by choosing ϵ sufficiently small.

The relative influence on $T(F)$ of having the value x occur with probability ϵ is

$$\frac{T(F_{x,\epsilon}) - T(F)}{\epsilon},$$

and the *influence function* of T at F is

$$IF(x) = \lim \frac{T(F_{x,\epsilon}) - T(F)}{\epsilon}, \quad (2.7)$$

where the limit is taken as ϵ approaches 0 from above. Roughly, $IF(x)$ is the relative influence of x on some measure that characterizes a distribution, $T(F)$, when the probability of observing the value x is arbitrarily close to 0. $T(F)$ is said to be *B robust*, or to have *infinitesimal robustness*, if $IF(x)$ is bounded. The *gross error sensitivity* of $T(F)$ is $\sup_x |IF(x)|$.

As already indicated, if $T(F) = E(X)$, $T(F_{x,\epsilon}) - T(F) = \epsilon(x - \mu)$, so $(T(F_{x,\epsilon}) - T(F))/\epsilon = x - \mu$. Thus, the influence function of the population mean is

$$IF(x) = x - \mu,$$

which *does not* depend on F . Especially important is that the influence function is unbounded in x . That is, μ does not have infinitesimal robustness. And its gross error sensitivity is ∞ .

2.1.3 Quantitative Robustness

The third approach to judging some quantity that characterizes a distribution is the *breakdown point*, which addresses the notion of quantitative robustness. The general idea is to describe quantitatively the effect a small change in F has on some functional $T(F)$.

Again consider $F_{x,\epsilon} = (1 - \epsilon)F + \epsilon\Delta_x$, which has mean $(1 - \epsilon)\mu + \epsilon x$. Thus, for any $\epsilon > 0$, the mean goes to infinity as x gets large. In particular, even when ϵ is arbitrarily close to 0, in which case the Kolmogorov distance between $F_{x,\epsilon}$ and F is small, the mean of $F_{x,\epsilon}$ can be made arbitrarily large by increasing x . The minimum value of ϵ , for which a functional goes

to infinity as x gets large, is called the *breakdown point*. When necessary, the minimum value is replaced by the infimum or greatest lower bound. (This definition oversimplifies technical issues, but it suffices for present purposes. See [Huber, 1981](#), Section 1.4 for more details.) In the illustration, any $\epsilon > 0$ causes the mean to go to infinity, so the breakdown point is 0. In contrast, the median of a distribution has a breakdown point of 0.5, and more generally the γ -trimmed mean, μ_t , has a breakdown point of γ .

When searching for measures of dispersion, the breakdown point turns out to have considerable practical importance. In some cases the breakdown point is more important than the efficiency of any corresponding estimator. For the moment, it is merely noted that the standard deviation, σ , has a breakdown point of 0, and this renders it unsatisfactory in various situations.

2.2 Some Measures of Location and Their Influence Function

There are many measures of location. (See [Andrews et al., 1972](#).) This section describes some that are particularly important based on what is currently known. (And a few additional measures of location are introduced in Chapters 3 and 6.)

2.2.1 Quantiles

It is convenient to begin with quantiles. For any random variable X with distribution F , the q th quantile, x_q say, satisfies $F(x) = P(X \leq x_q) = q$, where $0 < q < 1$. For example, if X is standard normal, the 0.8 quantile is $x_{0.8} = 0.84$ and $P(X \leq 0.84) = 0.8$.

In the event that there are multiple x values such that $F(x) = q$, the standard convention is to define the q th quantile as the smallest value x such that $F(x) \geq q$. For completeness, it is sometimes necessary to define the q th quantile as $x_q = \inf\{x : F(x) \geq q\}$, where \inf indicates infimum or greatest lower bound, but this is a detail that is not important here.

The q th quantile has location and scale equivariance and it satisfies the other conditions for a measure location given by Eqs. (2.1)–(2.4), plus the Bickel–Lehmann condition. In so far as it is desired to have a measure of location that reflects the typical subject under study, the median, $x_{0.5}$, is a natural choice. The breakdown point of the median is 0.5, and more generally the breakdown point of the q th quantile is $1 - q$ (e.g., [Staudte & Sheather, 1990](#), p. 56).

For some distributions x_q has qualitative robustness, but for others, including discrete distributions, it does not. In fact, even if x_q has qualitative robustness at F , it is not qualitative robust at $F_{x,\epsilon}$. That is, there are distributions that are arbitrarily close to F for which x_q is not qualitative robust.

Letting $f(x)$ represent the probability density function, and assuming $f(x_q) > 0$ and that $f(x_q)$ is continuous at x_q , the influence function of x_q is

$$IF_q(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{q-1}{f(x_q)}, & \text{if } x < x_q \\ 0, & \text{if } x = x_q \\ \frac{q}{f(x_q)}, & \text{if } x > x_q. \end{cases} \quad (2.8)$$

This influence function is bounded, so x_q has infinitesimal robustness.

2.2.2 The Winsorized Mean

One problem with the mean is that the tails of a distribution can dominate its value, and this is reflected by an unbounded influence function, a breakdown point of 0, and a lack of qualitative robustness. Put in more practical terms, if a measure of location is intended to reflect what the typical subject is like, the mean can fail because its value can be inordinately influenced by a very small proportion of the subjects who fall in the tails of a distribution. One strategy for dealing with this problem is to give less weight to values in the tails and pay more attention to those near the center. One specific strategy for implementing this idea is to *Winsorize* the distribution.

Let F be any distribution, and let x_γ and $x_{1-\gamma}$ be the γ and $1 - \gamma$ quantiles. Then a γ -Winsorized analog of F is the distribution

$$F_w(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & \text{if } x < x_\gamma \\ \gamma, & \text{if } x = x_\gamma \\ F(x), & \text{if } x_\gamma < x < x_{1-\gamma} \\ 1, & \text{if } x \geq x_{1-\gamma}. \end{cases}$$

In other words, the left tail is pulled in so that the probability of observing the value x_γ is γ , and the probability of observing any value less than x_γ , after Winsorization, is 0. Similarly, the right tail is pulled in so that, after Winsorization, the probability of observing a value greater than $x_{1-\gamma}$ is 0. The mean of the Winsorized distribution is

$$\mu_w = \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} x dF(x) + \gamma(x_\gamma + x_{1-\gamma}).$$

In essence, the Winsorized mean pays more attention to the central portion of a distribution by transforming the tails. The result is that μ_w can be closer to the central portion of a distribution. It can be shown that μ_w satisfies Eqs. (2.1)–(2.4), so it qualifies as a measure of location and it also satisfies the Bickel–Lehmann condition.

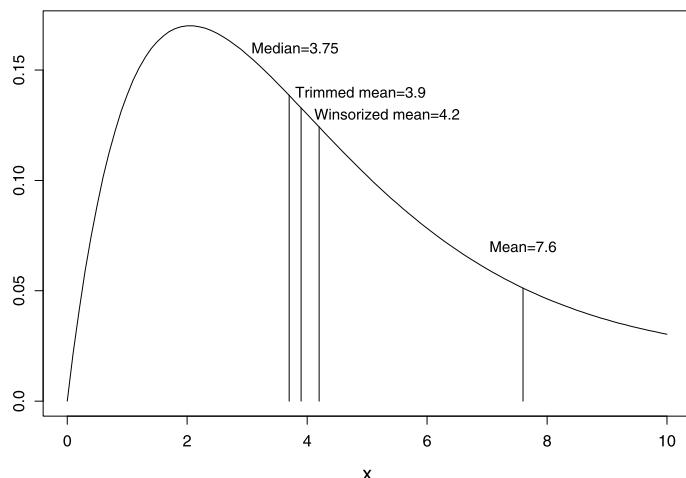


Figure 2.1: Mixed chi-square distribution.

For the mixed chi-square distribution described in Chapter 1, the 20% Winsorized mean is approximately $\mu_w = 4.2$, based on simulations with 10,000 replications. Figure 2.1 shows the position of the Winsorized mean relative to the median, $x_{0.5} = 3.75$, and the mean, $\mu = 7.6$. As is evident, Winsorization results in a measure of location that is closer to the bulk of the distribution. For symmetric distributions, $\mu_w = \mu$.

Like quantiles, there are distributions arbitrarily close to any distribution F for which the Winsorized mean is not qualitative robust. On the positive side, its breakdown point is γ . This suggests choosing $\gamma = 0.5$ to achieve the highest possible breakdown point, but there are some negative consequences if γ is too far from 0, as will become evident in Chapter 3.

Let

$$C = \mu_w - \frac{\gamma^2}{f(x_\gamma)} - \frac{\gamma^2}{f(x_{1-\gamma})},$$

where again f is the probability density function corresponding to F . The influence function of the Winsorized mean is

$$IF_w(x) = \begin{cases} x_\gamma - \frac{\gamma}{f(x_\gamma)} - C, & \text{if } x < x_\gamma \\ x - C, & \text{if } x_\gamma < x < x_{1-\gamma} \\ x_{1-\gamma} + \frac{\gamma}{f(x_{1-\gamma})} - C, & \text{if } x > x_{1-\gamma}. \end{cases}$$

Notice that the influence function is bounded but not smooth; it has jumps at x_γ and $x_{1-\gamma}$. (Also see Wu & Zuo, 2009.)

2.2.3 The Trimmed Mean

Rather than Winsorize, another strategy for reducing the effects of the tails of a distribution is to simply remove them, and this is the strategy employed by the trimmed mean. The γ -trimmed mean is

$$\mu_t = \frac{1}{1-2\gamma} \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} x dF(x).$$

In words, μ_t is the mean of a distribution after it has been trimmed as described in Section 2.1.1. The trimmed mean is both location and scale equivariant, more generally it satisfies Eqs. (2.1)–(2.4), and it also satisfies the Bickel–Lehmann condition for a measure of location.

The influence function of the trimmed mean is

$$IF_t(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{1-2\gamma}(x_\gamma - \mu_w), & \text{if } x < x_\gamma \\ \frac{1}{1-2\gamma}(x - \mu_w), & \text{if } x_\gamma \leq x \leq x_{1-\gamma} \\ \frac{1}{1-2\gamma}(x_{1-\gamma} - \mu_w), & \text{if } x > x_{1-\gamma}. \end{cases}$$

The influence function is bounded, but it is discontinuous at x_γ and $x_{1-\gamma}$. As already indicated, μ_t is qualitative robust when $\gamma > 0$, and its breakdown point is γ . It can be seen that $E[IF(X)] = 0$.

For the mixed chi-square distribution described in Chapter 1, the 20% trimmed mean is $\mu_t = 3.9$, and its position relative to the mean, median, and 20% Winsorized mean is shown in Figure 2.1.

It should be noted that the influence function of the trimmed mean can be derived under very general conditions which include both symmetric and asymmetric distributions (Huber, 1981). Staudte and Sheather (1990) derive the influence function assuming distributions are symmetric, but their results are easily extended to the asymmetric case.

2.2.4 M-Measures of Location

M-measures of location form a large class of location measures that include the population mean, μ , as a special case. Typically, μ is viewed as $E(X)$, the expected value of the random variable X . However, to gain some insight into the motivation for M-measures of location, it helps to first view μ in a different way.

When searching for a measure of location, one strategy is to use some value, say c , that is in some sense close, on average, to all the possible values of the random variable X . One way of quantifying how close a value c is from all possible values of X is in terms of its expected

squared distance. In symbols, $E(X - c)^2$ represents the expected squared distance from c . If c is intended to characterize the typical subject or thing under study, a natural approach is to use the value c that minimizes $E(X - c)^2$. Viewing $E(X - c)^2$ as a function of c , the value of c minimizing this function is obtained by differentiating, setting the result equal to 0, and solving for c . That is, c is given by the equation

$$E(X - c) = 0, \quad (2.9)$$

so $c = \mu$. In other words, μ is the closest point to all possible values of X in terms of expected squared distance. But μ is not robust and in the present context the problem is that $E(X - c)^2$ gives an inordinate amount of weight to values of X that are far from c . Put another way, the function $(x - c)^2$ increases too rapidly as x moves away from c .

The approach just described for deriving a measure of location can be improved by considering a class of functions for measuring the distance from a point and then searching for a function within this class that has desirable properties. To this end, let $\xi(X - \mu_m)$ be some function that measures the distance from μ_m , and let Ψ be its derivative with respect to μ_m . Attention is restricted to those functions for which $E[\xi(X - \mu_m)]$, viewed as a function of μ_m , has a derivative. In the previous paragraph, $\xi(X - \mu_m) = (X - \mu_m)^2$ and $\Psi(X - \mu_m) = -2(X - \mu_m)$. Then a measure of location that is closest to all possible values of X , as measured by its expected distance, is the value μ_m that minimizes $E[\xi(X - \mu_m)]$. This means that μ_m is determined by the equation

$$E[\Psi(X - \mu_m)] = 0. \quad (2.10)$$

Typically the function Ψ is assumed to be odd, meaning that $\Psi(-x) = -\Psi(x)$ for any x . (The reason for this will become clear in Chapter 3.) The value μ_m that satisfies Eq. (2.10) is called an *M-measure of location*. Obviously the class of odd functions is too large for practical purposes, but this problem can be corrected, as will be seen. Huber (1981) describes general conditions under which M-measures of location have both quantitative and qualitative robustness.

M-measures of location are estimated with M-estimators obtained by replacing F in Eq. (2.10) with the empirical distribution \hat{F} . (Details are given in Chapter 3.) It should be remarked that many books and journal articles do not make a distinction between M-measures and M-estimators. Ordinarily, the term M-estimator is used to cover both situations.

Of course, to make progress, criteria are needed for choosing ξ or Ψ . One criterion for a robust measure of location is that its influence function be bounded. It turns out that when μ_m is determined with Eq. (2.10), its influence function has a relatively simple form:

$$IF_m(x) = \frac{\Psi(x - \mu_m)}{E[\Psi'(X - \mu_m)]},$$

Table 2.1: Some Choices for ξ and Ψ .

Criterion	$\xi(x)$	$\Psi(x)$	Range
Huber	$\frac{1}{2}x^2$	x	$ x \leq K$
	$ x K - \frac{1}{2}K^2$	$K \text{ sign}(x)$	$ x > K$
Andrews	$a[1 - \cos(x/a)]$	$\sin(x/a)$	$ x \leq a\pi$
	$2a$	0	$ x > a\pi$
Hampel	$\frac{1}{2}x^2$	x	$ x \leq a$
	$a x - \frac{1}{2}a^2$	$a \text{ sign}(x)$	$a < x \leq b$
	$\frac{a(c x - \frac{1}{2}x^2)}{c-b} - \frac{7}{6}a^2$	$\frac{a \text{ sign}(x)(c- x)}{c-b}$	$b < x \leq c$
	$a(b+c-a)$	0	$ x > c$
Biweight		$x(1-x^2)^2$	$ x < 1$
		0	$ x \geq 1$

where $\Psi'(X - \mu_m)$ is the derivative of Ψ . That is, the influence function is Ψ rescaled by the expected value of its derivative, $E[\Psi'(X - \mu_m)]$. Thus, to obtain a bounded influence function, attention can be restricted to those Ψ that are bounded. From results already given, this rules out the choice $\Psi(X - \mu_m) = X - \mu_m$, which yields $\mu_m = \mu$.

Table 2.1 lists some choices for ξ and Ψ that have been proposed. The function $\text{sign}(x)$ in Table 2.1 is equal to $-1, 0$, or 1 according to whether x is less than, equal to, or greater than 0 . The constants a, b, c , and K can be chosen so that the resulting measure of location has desirable properties. A common strategy is to choose these constants so that when estimating μ_m , the estimator has reasonably high efficiency when sampling from a normal distribution, but continues to have high efficiency when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution instead. For now, these constants are left unspecified. As will be seen, further refinements can be made that make it a relatively simple matter to choose Ψ in applied work.

Figure 2.2 shows a graph of Ψ for the Huber, Andrews, Hampel, and biweight given in Table 2.1. (The biweight also goes by the name of Tukey's bisquare.) Notice that all four graphs are linear, or approximately so, for an interval around 0 . This turns out to be desirable when properties of estimators are considered, but the details are postponed for now. Also notice that the biweight and Andrews' Ψ redescend to 0 . That is, extreme values are given less weight in determining μ_m , and x values that are extreme enough are ignored.

As a measure of location, μ_m , given with by Eq. (2.10), satisfies Eqs. (2.1)–(2.3), but it does not satisfy Eq. (2.4), scale equivariance, for the more interesting choices for Ψ , including those shown in Table 2.1. This problem can be corrected by incorporating a measure of scale into Eq. (2.10), but not just any measure of scale will do. In particular, a measure of scale

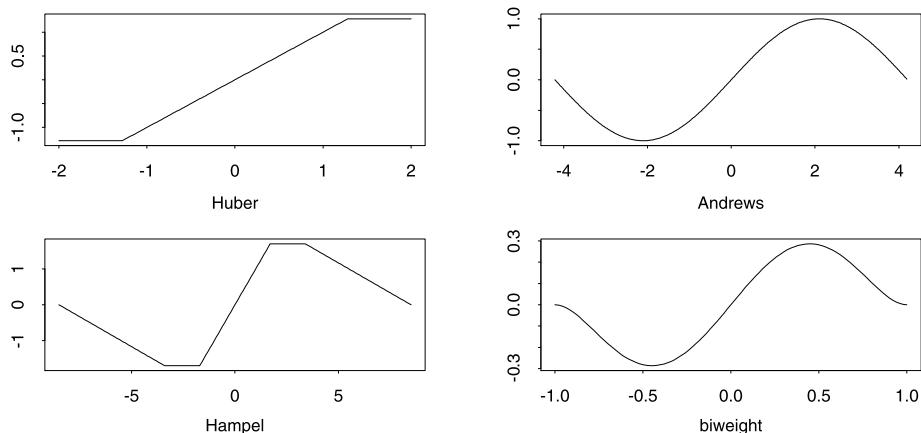


Figure 2.2: Possible choices for influence functions.

with a high breakdown point is needed if the M-measure of location is to have a reasonably high breakdown point as well. The standard deviation, σ , has a breakdown point of 0, so some other measure must be used. A method of dealing with scale equivariance is described in Section 2.4.

2.2.5 R-Measures of Location

R-measures of location do not play a role in this book, but for completeness they are briefly described here. Generally, R-measures of location are derived by inverting tests of hypotheses based on ranks. Let J be some specified function. In functional form, an R-measure of location, μ_r , satisfies

$$\int J\{0.5[q + 1 - F(2\mu_r - x_q)]\}dq = 0.$$

A common choice for J is $J(x) = x - \frac{1}{2}$. This leads to the Hodges–Lehmann estimator, but no details are given here. For symmetric distributions, the Hodges–Lehmann estimator has a well behaved influence function, it is bounded and smooth (Staudte & Sheather, 1990). However, for asymmetric distributions, the denominator of the influence function can be very small (Huber, 1981, p. 65) suggesting that practical problems might arise.

Another concern was pointed by Bickel and Lehmann (1975). For any R-estimator, which estimates an R-measure of location, there are distributions such that the asymptotic efficiency of the R-estimator relative to \bar{X} is zero. Again it is skewed distributions that create problems. For more on R-estimators, including the Hodges–Lehmann estimator, see Hettmansperger (1984). For a description of situations where R-estimators exhibit practical concerns even when sampling from a symmetric distribution, see Morgenthaler and Tukey (1991).

2.3 Measures of Scale

This section briefly describes some measures of scale that play an important role in robust methods, plus some popular measures of scale that are not robust. (Some additional measures of scale are described in Chapter 3.) As with measures of location, it helps to start with a precise definition of what constitutes a measure of scale.

Any nonnegative functional, $\tau(X)$, is said to be a *measure of scale* if for any constants $a > 0$ and b ,

$$\tau(aX) = a\tau(X) \quad (2.11)$$

$$\tau(X + b) = \tau(X) \quad (2.12)$$

$$\tau(X) = \tau(-X) \quad (2.13)$$

The first of these conditions is called *scale equivariance*, the second is called *location invariance*, and the third is *sign invariance*. From basic principles, σ qualifies as a measure of scale.

Suppose X and Y have a symmetric distribution and that the distribution of $|X|$ is stochastically larger than the distribution of $|Y|$. [Bickel and Lehmann \(1976\)](#) call a measure of scale a *measure of dispersion* if $\tau(X) \geq \tau(Y)$. It can be seen that σ is a measure of dispersion, but as already mentioned, σ has a breakdown point of 0, and its influence function is unbounded.

Currently, there are two general approaches to measuring scale that are of particular importance: L-measures and M-measures. L-measures are estimated with linear combinations of the order statistics, and M-measures are similar to M-measures of location in the sense that τ is defined by the equation

$$E \left[\chi \left(\frac{X}{\tau} \right) \right] = 0,$$

where χ is some specified function. Typically χ is an even function, meaning that $\chi(-x) = \chi(x)$.

Mean Deviation from the Mean. A reasonable choice for a measure of scale is

$$\tau(F) = E|X - \mu|.$$

However, its breakdown point is 0 and its influence function is unbounded. On the positive side, the natural estimate of this measure of scale is relatively efficient when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions.

Mean Deviation from the Median. Another popular choice for a measure of scale is

$$\tau(F) = E|X - x_{0.5}|.$$

It might appear that this measure of scale is robust because it uses the median, $x_{0.5}$, but its breakdown point is 0 and its influence function is unbounded.

Median Absolute Deviation. The median absolute deviation, ω , is defined by

$$P(|X - x_{0.5}| \leq \omega) = 0.5.$$

In other words, ω is the median of the distribution associated with $|X - x_{0.5}|$, the distance between X and its median. This measure of scale is an M-measure of scale with $\chi(x) = \text{sign}(|x| - 1)$. The breakdown point is 0.5, and this makes it attractive for certain purposes, as will be seen. Its influence function is

$$IF_\omega(x) = \frac{\text{sign}(|x - x_{0.5}| - \omega) - \frac{f(x_{0.5} + \omega) - f(x_{0.5} - \omega)}{f(x_{0.5})} \text{sign}(x - x_{0.5})}{2[f(x_{0.5} + \omega) + f(x_{0.5} - \omega)]}, \quad (2.14)$$

where $f(x)$ is the probability density function associated with X . Assuming $f(x_{0.5})$ and $2[f(x_{0.5} + \omega) + f(x_{0.5} - \omega)]$ are not equal to 0, IF_ω is defined and bounded. (Alternatives to the median absolute deviation measure of variation were studied by [Rousseeuw & Croux, 1993](#).)

The q -Quantile Range. The q -quantile range is an L-measure of scale given by

$$\tau(F) = x_{1-q} - x_q, \quad 0 < q < 0.5.$$

A special case in common use is the interquartile range where $q = 0.25$, so τ is the difference between the 0.75 and 0.25 quantiles. Its breakdown point is 0.25. Recalling that the influence functions of $x_{0.75}$ and $x_{0.25}$ are given by Eq. (2.8), the influence function of the interquartile range is $IF_{0.75} - IF_{0.25}$. Letting

$$C = q \left\{ \frac{1}{f(x_q)} + \frac{1}{f(x_{1-q})} \right\},$$

a little algebra shows that the influence function of the q -quantile range is

$$IF_{\text{range}} = \begin{cases} \frac{1}{f(x_q)} - C & \text{if } x < x_q \\ -C & \text{if } x_q \leq x \leq x_{1-q} \\ \frac{1}{f(x_{1-q})} - C & \text{if } x > x_{1-q}. \end{cases}$$

The Winsorized Variance. The γ -Winsorized variance is

$$\sigma_w^2 = \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} (x - \mu_w)^2 dF(x) + \gamma[(x_\gamma - \mu_w)^2 + (x_{1-\gamma} - \mu_w)^2].$$

In other words, σ_w^2 is the variance of F after it has been Winsorized. (For a standard normal distribution, and with $\gamma = 0.2$, $\sigma_w^2 = 0.4129$.) It can be shown that σ_w^2 is a measure of scale, it

is also a measure of dispersion, and it has a bounded influence function. [Welsh and Morrison \(1990\)](#) report the influence function of a large class of L-measures of scale that contains the Winsorized variance as a special case.

2.4 Scale Equivariant M-Measures of Location

M-measures of location can be made scale equivariant by incorporating a measure of scale in the general approach described in Section 2.2.4. That is, rather than determine μ_m with Eq. (2.10), use

$$E \left[\Psi \left(\frac{X - \mu_m}{\tau} \right) \right] = 0, \quad (2.15)$$

where τ is some appropriate measure of scale.

When considering which measure of scale should be used in Eq. (2.15), it helps to notice that τ plays a role in determining whether a value for X is unusually large or small. To illustrate this, consider Huber's Ψ which, in the present context, is given by

$$\Psi \left(\frac{x - \mu_m}{\tau} \right) = \begin{cases} -K, & \text{if } (x - \mu_m)/\tau < -K \\ \frac{x - \mu_m}{\tau}, & \text{if } -K \leq (x - \mu_m)/\tau \leq K \\ K, & \text{if } (x - \mu_m)/\tau > K. \end{cases}$$

Then according to Ψ , the distance between x and μ_m , $|x - \mu_m|$, is not unusually large or small if $-K \leq (x - \mu_m)/\tau \leq K$. In this case, the same Ψ used to define the population mean, μ , is being used. If $x - \mu_m > K\tau$, Ψ considers the distance to be relatively large, and the influence of x on μ_m is reduced. Similarly, if $x - \mu_m < -K\tau$, x is considered to be unusually far from μ_m .

For the special case where X is normal, and τ is taken to be the standard deviation, σ , x is considered to be unusually large or small if it is more than K standard deviations from μ . A problem with σ is that its value is inflated by heavy-tailed distributions, and this can mask unusually large or small x values. For example, suppose $K = 1.28$, the 0.9 quantile of the standard normal distribution. Then if X has a standard normal distribution, $K\sigma = 1.28$, so $x = 3$ is considered to be unusually large by Ψ . Now suppose X has the contaminated normal distribution shown in [Figure 1.1](#) of Chapter 1. Then $x = 3$ is still fairly far into the right tail, it should be considered unusually large, but now $K\sigma = 1.28 \times 3.3 = 4.224$, so $x = 3$ is not labeled as being unusually large. What is required is a measure of scale that is relatively insensitive to heavy-tailed distributions so that unusual values are not masked. In particular, a measure of scale with a high breakdown point is needed. Among the measures of scale described in Section 2.5, the median absolute deviation, ω , has a breakdown point of 0.5. This is the highest possible breakdown point, and it is higher than any other measure of scale described in Section 2.5. This suggests using ω in Eq. (2.15) and this choice is typi-

cally made. There are other considerations when choosing τ in Eq. (2.15), such as efficiency, but ω remains a good choice. M-measures of location, defined by Eq. (2.15), satisfy the four requirements for measures of location given by Eqs. (2.1)–(2.4).

The influence function of M-measures of location, defined by Eq. (2.15), takes on a more complicated form versus the influence function associated with Eq. (2.10). Moreover, it depends on the choice of scale, τ . As an illustration, suppose $\tau = \omega$ is used, where ω is the median absolute deviation measure of scale introduced in Section 2.5. Let $y = (x - \mu_m)/\omega$. Then if Eq. (2.15) is used to define a measure of location, the influence function is

$$IF_m(x) = \frac{\omega\Psi(y) - IF_\omega(x)\{E[\Psi'(y)y]\}}{E[\Psi'(y)]},$$

where IF_ω is given by Eq. (2.14). Note that because the influence function of ω , IF_ω , is bounded, IF_m is bounded as well.

The breakdown point depends on the choice for K and the measure of scale, τ . For the common choice $\tau = \omega$, the breakdown point does not depend on K and is equal to 0.5. Despite this, μ_m can have a value that is further from the median than the 20% trimmed mean. For example, with Huber's Ψ and the common choice of $K = 1.28$, $\mu_m = 4.2$, approximately, for the mixed chi-square distribution in Figure 2.1. In contrast, $\mu_t = 3.9$ and the median is $x_{0.5} = 3.75$. Lowering K to 1, μ_m drops to 4.0.

2.5 Winsorized Expected Values

One final tool is introduced that has practical value in various situations: *Winsorized expected values*. What will be needed is a generalization of $E(X)$ that maintains standard properties of expected values.

Let $g(X)$ be any function of the continuous random variable X . When working with a single random variable, the γ -Winsorized expected value of $g(X)$ is defined to be

$$E_w[g(X)] = \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} g(x)dF(x) + \gamma[g(x_\gamma) + g(x_{1-\gamma})].$$

That is, the expected value of $g(X)$ is defined in the usual way, only with respect to the Winsorized distribution corresponding to F . However, a generalization of E_w is needed which provides Winsorized expected values of linear combinations of random variables.

Let X and Y be any two continuous random variables with joint distribution F and probability density function $f(x, y)$. What is needed is an analog of Winsorization for any bivariate distribution. Note that any point (x, y) falls in one of nine regions shown in Figure 2.3, where the corners of the rectangle are determined by the γ and $1 - \gamma$ quantiles of X and Y . That is, the rectangle is given by the four points (x_γ, y_γ) , $(x_\gamma, y_{1-\gamma})$, $(x_{1-\gamma}, y_\gamma)$, and $(x_{1-\gamma}, y_{1-\gamma})$. Win-

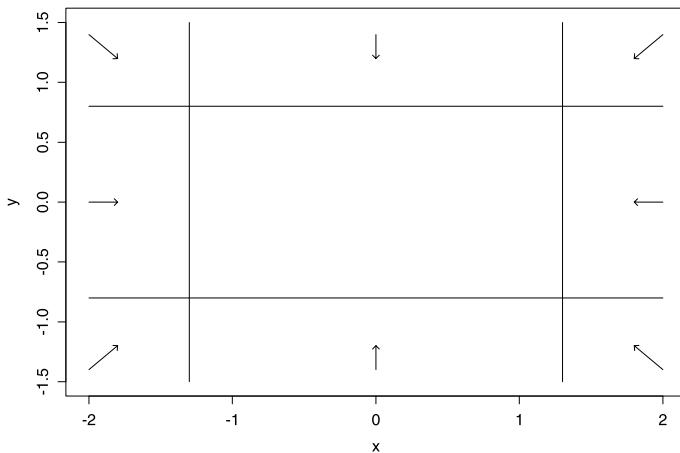


Figure 2.3: Winsorization of a bivariate distribution.

sorization of any bivariate distribution consists of pulling in any point outside the rectangle formed by these four points, as indicated by the arrows in Figure 2.3. For any point inside this rectangle, the Winsorized distribution has probability density function $f(x, y)$. The corners of the rectangle become discrete distributions, even when working with continuous random variables. For example, the point (x_γ, y_γ) has probability $P(X \leq x_\gamma, Y \leq y_\gamma)$. Similarly, the point $(x_\gamma, y_{1-\gamma})$ has probability equal to the probability that $X \leq x_\gamma$ and $Y \geq y_{1-\gamma}$, simultaneously. However, the sides of the rectangle, excluding the four corners, have a continuous distribution when X and Y are continuous. Taking expected values with respect to this Winsorized distribution provides the generalization of E_w that will be needed.

More formally, let X and Y be any two random variables with joint distribution F , and let $g(X, Y)$ be any function of X and Y . Following Wilcox (1993b, 1994b), the *Winsorized expected value* of $g(X, Y)$ is defined to be

$$\begin{aligned} E_w[g(X, Y)] &= \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} \int_{y_\gamma}^{y_{1-\gamma}} g(x, y) dF(x, y) \\ &\quad + \int_{-\infty}^{x_\gamma} \int_{y_\gamma}^{y_{1-\gamma}} g(x_\gamma, y) dF(x, y) + \int_{-\infty}^{x_\gamma} \int_{-\infty}^{y_\gamma} g(x_\gamma, y_\gamma) dF(x, y) \\ &\quad + \int_{-\infty}^{x_\gamma} \int_{y_{1-\gamma}}^{\infty} g(x_\gamma, y_{1-\gamma}) dF(x, y) + \int_{x_{1-\gamma}}^{\infty} \int_{y_\gamma}^{y_{1-\gamma}} g(x_{1-\gamma}, y_\gamma) dF(x, y) \\ &\quad + \int_{x_{1-\gamma}}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{y_\gamma} g(x_{1-\gamma}, y_\gamma) dF(x, y) + \int_{x_{1-\gamma}}^{\infty} \int_{-\infty}^{y_{1-\gamma}} g(x_{1-\gamma}, y_{1-\gamma}) dF(x, y) \\ &\quad + \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} \int_{-\infty}^{y_\gamma} g(x, y_\gamma) dF(x, y) + \int_{x_\gamma}^{x_{1-\gamma}} \int_{-\infty}^{y_{1-\gamma}} g(x, y_{1-\gamma}) dF(x, y). \end{aligned}$$

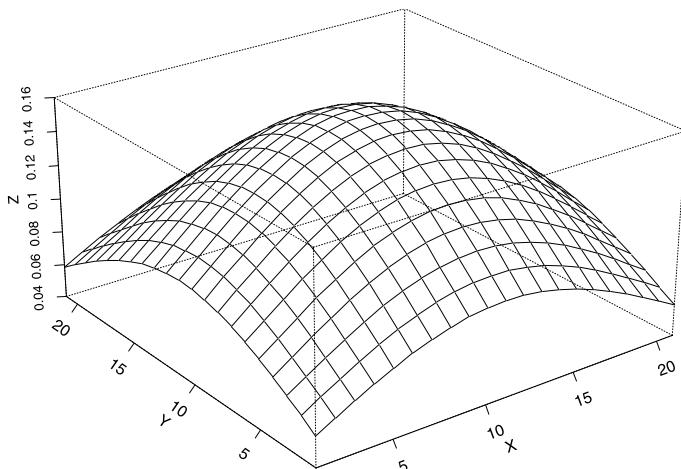


Figure 2.4: Winsorization of a bivariate normal distribution.

Figure 2.4 illustrates the first step when Winsorizing a bivariate distribution. The bivariate distribution of X and Y is trimmed by removing any points outside the rectangle formed by the four points (x_γ, y_γ) , $(x_\gamma, y_{1-\gamma})$, $(x_{1-\gamma}, y_\gamma)$, and $(x_{1-\gamma}, y_{1-\gamma})$.

A Winsorized covariance is $\text{COV}_w(X, Y) = E_w[(X - \mu_{wx})(Y - \mu_{wy})]$. If X and Y are independent, $\text{COV}_w(X, Y) = 0$. The Winsorized variance of $X - Y$ is $\sigma_{wx}^2 + \sigma_{wy}^2$, the sum of the Winsorized variances. For a random sample X_1, \dots, X_n , and constants c_1, \dots, c_n ,

$$E_w\left(\sum c_i X_i\right) = \sum c_i E_w(X_i).$$

Finally, the definition of E_w makes it a simple matter to find estimates of Winsorized parameters. For a random sample, X_1, \dots, X_n , suppose

$$E_w[g(X_1, \dots, X_n)] = \xi. \quad (2.16)$$

This indicates that ξ be estimated with $\hat{\xi}_w = g(W_1, \dots, W_n)$, where

$$W_i = \begin{cases} X_{(k+1)}, & \text{if } X_i \leq X_{(k+1)} \\ X_i, & \text{if } X_{(k+1)} < X_i < X_{(n-k)} \\ X_{(n-k)}, & \text{if } X_i \geq X_{(n-k)}, \end{cases}$$

$X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ are the order statistics, and $k = [\gamma n]$, the greatest integer less than or equal to γn . When Eq. (2.16) holds, $\hat{\xi}_w$ is said to be a Winsorized unbiased estimate of ξ . For example, $\bar{W} = \sum W_i / n$ is a Winsorized unbiased estimate of μ_w , and $s_w^2 = \sum (W_i - \bar{W})^2 / (n - 1)$ is a Winsorized unbiased estimate of σ_w^2 .

Estimating Measures of Location and Scale

This chapter describes methods for estimating the measures of location and scale introduced in Chapter 2, and it introduces some additional measures of location and scale that have practical importance. Also, two general approaches to estimating standard errors are described and illustrated. One is based on estimating expressions for the standard errors of estimators, which is perhaps the more common strategy to employ, and the other is based on a so-called bootstrap method. As will be seen, estimating standard errors is often done in a way that is not intuitive nor obvious based on standard statistical training. Another goal is to introduce some outlier detection methods plus some graphical methods for summarizing data that will be used in later chapters.

This chapter is less technical than Chapter 2, but it is important at least to touch on theory so that readers understand why common strategies in applied research turn out to be inappropriate. For example, why is it incorrect to discard outliers and apply standard techniques using the remaining data? Although this chapter gives the reader some indication of how theoretical problems are addressed, mathematical details are kept to a minimum. Readers interested in a more rigorous description of mathematical issues can refer to [Huber and Ronchetti \(2009\)](#) as well as [Hampel, Ronchetti, Rousseeuw, and Stahel \(1986\)](#). For a book written at an intermediate level of difficulty, see [Staudte and Sheather \(1990\)](#).

3.1 A Bootstrap Estimate of a Standard Error

It is convenient to begin with a description of the most basic bootstrap method for estimating a standard error. Let $\hat{\theta}$ be any estimator based on the random sample X_1, \dots, X_n . The goal is to estimate $\text{VAR}(\hat{\theta})$, the squared standard error of $\hat{\theta}$. The strategy used by the bootstrap method is based on a very simple idea. Temporarily assume that observations are randomly sampled from some *known* distribution, F . Then for a given sample size, n , the sampling distribution of $\hat{\theta}$ could be determined by randomly generating n observations from F , computing $\hat{\theta}$, randomly generating another set of n observations, computing $\hat{\theta}$, and repeating this

process many times. Suppose this is done B times and the resulting values for $\hat{\theta}$ are labeled $\hat{\theta}_1, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B$. If B is large enough, the values $\hat{\theta}_1, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B$ provide a good approximation of the distribution of $\hat{\theta}$. In particular, they provide an estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\theta}$, namely,

$$\frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\theta}_b - \bar{\theta})^2,$$

where

$$\bar{\theta} = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\theta}_b.$$

That is, $\text{VAR}(\hat{\theta})$ is estimated with the sample variance of the values $\hat{\theta}_1, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B$. If, for example, $\hat{\theta}$ is taken to be the sample mean, \bar{X} , the squared standard error would be found to be σ^2/n , approximately, provided B is reasonably large. Of course when working with the mean, it is known that its squared standard error is σ^2/n , so the method just described is unnecessary. The only point is that a reasonable method for estimating the squared standard error of $\hat{\theta}$ has been described.

In practice F is not known, but it can be estimated with

$$\hat{F}(x) = \frac{\#\{X_i \leq x\}}{n},$$

the proportion of observations less than or equal to x , which provides a nonparametric maximum likelihood estimate of F . The empirical distribution assigns probability $1/n$ to each X_i , so the estimated probability of observing the value X_i is f_i/n , where f_i is the number of times the value X_i occurred among the n observations. All other possible values (values not observed) have an estimated probability of zero. The bootstrap estimate of the standard error is obtained as described in the previous paragraph, except that \hat{F} replaces F . In practical terms, a *bootstrap sample* is obtained by resampling with replacement n observations from X_1, \dots, X_n . This is easily done with the R command

```
sample(x, size=length(x), replace=T)
```

To estimate the sampling distribution of $\hat{\theta}$, generate a bootstrap sample from the observations X_1, \dots, X_n and compute $\hat{\theta}$ based on the obtained bootstrap sample. The result will be labeled $\hat{\theta}^*$ to distinguish it from $\hat{\theta}$, which is based on the observed values X_1, \dots, X_n . Repeat this

process B times yielding $\hat{\theta}_1^*, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B^*$. These B values provide an estimate of the sampling distribution of $\hat{\theta}$ and in particular an estimate of its squared standard error given by

$$S^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\theta}_b^* - \bar{\theta}^*)^2,$$

where $\bar{\theta}^* = \sum \hat{\theta}_b^*/B$.

How many bootstrap samples should be used? That is, how should B be chosen? This depends, of course, on the goals and criteria that are deemed important. Suppose, for example, estimated standard errors are used to compute a confidence interval. One perspective is to choose B so that the actual probability coverage is reasonably close to the nominal level. Many of the methods in this book are based on this view. However, another approach is to choose B so that if a different collection of bootstrap samples were used, the results would change by a negligible amount. That is, choose B to be sufficiently large so that if the seed in the random number generator is altered, essentially the same conclusions would be obtained. [Booth and Sarkar \(1998\)](#) derived results on choosing B from this latter point of view, and with the increased speed of computers in recent years, some of the newer methods in this book take this latter view into account.

While the bootstrap estimate of the sampling distribution of a statistic can be argued to be reasonable, it is not immediately clear the extent to which it has practical value. The basic bootstrap methods covered in this book are not a panacea for the many problems that confront the applied researcher, as will become evident in subsequent chapters. But with over 1000 journal articles on the bootstrap, including both theoretical and simulation studies, all indications are that it has great practical value, particularly when working with robust measures of location and scale, as will be seen. Also, there are many proposed ways of possibly improving upon the basic bootstrap methods used in this book, summaries of which are given by [Efron and Tibshirani \(1993\)](#). Some of these look very promising, but the extent to which they have practical value for the problems considered here has not been determined. When testing hypotheses or computing confidence intervals, for some problems a bootstrap method is the only known method that provides reasonably accurate results.

3.1.1 R Function bootse

As explained in Section 1.7 of Chapter 1, R functions have been written for applying the methods described in this book. The software written for this book is free, and a single command incorporates them into your version of R. Included is the function

```
bootse(x,nboot=1000,est=median),
```

which can be used to compute a bootstrap estimate of the standard error of virtually any estimator covered in this book. However, an important exception is when dealing with quantile estimators based on only one or two order statistics and there are tied (duplicated) values. The convergence of bootstrap variance estimators of order statistics to the true variance has been demonstrated by Ghosh, Parr, Singh, and Babu (1985) and Babu (1986) assuming that sampling is from a continuous distributions, so in particular tied values occur with probability zero. However, when tied values can occur, estimates of the standard errors can be highly inaccurate. Some tied values can be tolerated, but at some point this is no longer the case. Methods for dealing with this issue are described in subsequent sections.

Regarding the R function `bootse`, the argument `x` is any R variable containing the data. The argument `nboot` represents B , the number of bootstrap samples, which defaults to 1000 if not specified. (As is done with all R functions, optional arguments are indicated by `an =` and they default to the value shown. Here, for example, the value of `nboot` is taken to be 1000 if no value is specified by the user.) The argument `est` indicates the estimator for which the standard error is to be computed. If not specified, `est` defaults to the median. That is, the standard error of the usual sample median will be estimated. So, for example, if data are stored in the R variable `blob`, the command `bootse(blob)` will return the estimated standard error of the usual sample median.

3.2 Density Estimators

Before continuing with the main issues covered in this chapter, it helps to first touch on a related problem that plays a role here as well as in subsequent chapters. The problem is estimating $f(x)$, the probability density function, based on a random sample of observations. Such estimators play an explicit role when trying to estimate the standard error of certain location estimators to be described. More generally, density estimators provide a useful perspective when trying to assess how groups differ and by how much.

Generally, kernel density estimators take the form

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{1}{nh} \sum_{i=1}^n K\left(\frac{x - X_i}{h}\right),$$

where K is some probability density function and h is a constant to be determined. The constant h has been given several names including the span, the window width, the smoothing parameter, and the bandwidth. Some explicit choices for h are discussed later in this section.

Often K is taken to be a distribution symmetric about zero, but there are exceptions. A particular choice that has been found to be relatively effective is Epanechnikov kernel:

$$\begin{aligned} K(t) &= \frac{3}{4}(1 - \frac{1}{5}t^2)/\sqrt{5}, & |t| < \sqrt{5} \\ &= 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{aligned} \quad (3.1)$$

There is a vast literature on kernel density estimators (Silverman, 1986; Scott, 1992; Wand & Jones, 1995; Simonoff, 1996). (For some more recent results, see for example Clements, Hurn, & Lindsay, 2003; Devroye & Lugosi, 2001; Messer & Goldstein, 1993; Yang & Marzon, 1999; cf. Liu & Brown, 1993; Harpole, Woods, Rodebaugh, Levinson, & Lenze, 2014.) Here, four types of kernel density estimators are summarized for later reference.

3.2.1 Silverman's Rule of Thumb

The first kernel density estimator is based on the Epanechnikov kernel given by Eq. (3.1). Following Silverman (1986), as well as the recommendation made by Venables and Ripley (2002, p. 127), the span is taken to be

$$h = 1.06 \min(s, \text{IQR}/1.34)n^{-1/5},$$

where s is the usual sample standard deviation and IQR is some estimate of the interquartile range. That is, IQR estimates the difference between the 0.75 and 0.25 quantiles. (Here, the interquartile range is estimated as described in Section 3.12.5, using what are called the ideal fourths.) This choice for the span has been labeled Silverman's rule of thumb method.

3.2.2 Rosenblatt's Shifted Histogram

The second method, Rosenblatt's shifted histogram estimator, employs results derived by Scott (1979) and Freedman and Diaconis (1981). The computational details are as follows. Set

$$h = \frac{1.2(\text{IQR})}{n^{1/5}}.$$

Let A be the number of observations less than or equal $x + h$. In symbols,

$$A = \#\{X_i \leq x + h\},$$

where the notation $\#\{X_i \leq x + h\}$ indicates the cardinality of the set of observations satisfying $X_i \leq x + h$. Similarly, let

$$B = \#\{X_i < x - h\},$$

the number of observations less than $x - h$. Then the estimate of $f(x)$ is

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{A - B}{2nh}.$$

3.2.3 The Expected Frequency Curve

The next estimator, the *expected frequency curve*, is basically a variation of what is called the naive density estimator, and it is related to certain regression smoothers discussed later in this book. It also has similarities to the nearest neighbor method for estimating densities as described in [Silverman \(1986\)](#). The basic idea when estimating $f(x)$, for a given value x , is to use the proportion of observed values among X_1, \dots, X_n that are “close” to x .

The method begins by computing the median absolute deviation (MAD) statistic, which is just the sample median of the n values $|X_1 - M|, \dots, |X_n - M|$, where M is the usual sample median described in Section 1.3. (For relevant asymptotic results on MAD, see [Hall & Welsh, 1985](#).) Let $\text{MADN} = \text{MAD}/z_{0.75}$, where $z_{0.75}$ is the 0.75 quantile of a standard normal distribution. Then x is said to be close to X_i if $|X_i - x|/\text{MADN} \leq h$, where h again plays the role of a span. Typically $h = 0.8$ gives good results. (As is evident, there is no particular reason here to use MADN rather than MAD; it is done merely to follow certain conventions covered in Section 3.6 where MAD is introduced in a more formal manner.) Let N_x be the number of observations close to x in which case N_x/n estimates the probability that a randomly sampled value is close to x . An estimate of the density at x is

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{N_x}{2hn\text{MADN}}.$$

In contrast is the naive density estimator discussed by [Silverman \(1986, Section 2.3\)](#) where essentially MADN is replaced by the value 1. That is, the width of the interval around each point when determining N_x depends in no way on the data, but only on the choice for h .

On rare occasions, data are encountered where MAD is zero. In the event this occurs when computing an expected frequency curve, here MAD is replaced by IQR (the interquartile range) estimated via the ideal fourths, as described in Section 3.12.5, and MADN is replaced by IQRN, which is IQR divided by $z_{0.75} - z_{0.25}$, where again $z_{0.75}$ and $z_{0.25}$ are the 0.75 and 0.25 quantiles, respectively, of a standard normal distribution. Now an estimate of the density at x is taken to be

$$\hat{f}(x) = \frac{N_x}{2hn\text{IQRN}}.$$

A criticism of the expected frequency curve is that it can miss bimodality when the span is set to $h = 0.8$. This can be corrected by lowering h to say 0.2, but a criticism of routinely using

$h = 0.2$ is that it often yields a rather ragged approximation of the true probability density function. With $h = 0.8$ and n small, again a rather ragged plot can result, but an appealing feature of the method is that often it improves upon the normal kernel in terms of capturing the overall shape of the true distribution.

3.2.4 An Adaptive Kernel Estimator

With large sample sizes, the expected frequency curve typically gives a smooth approximation of the true density, but with small sample sizes a rather ragged approximation can be had. A possible method for smoothing the estimate is to use an adaptive kernel estimate that is known to compete well with other estimators that have been proposed (Silverman, 1986; cf. Politis & Romanoff, 1997). There are, in fact, many variations of the adaptive kernel estimator, but only one is described here. Following Silverman (1986), let $\tilde{f}(X_i)$ be an initial estimate of $f(X_i)$. Here, $\tilde{f}(X_i)$ is based on the expected frequency curve. Let

$$\log g = \frac{1}{n} \sum \log \tilde{f}(X_i)$$

and

$$\lambda_i = (\tilde{f}(X_i)/g)^{-a},$$

where a is a *sensitivity parameter* satisfying $0 \leq a \leq 1$. Based on comments by Silverman (1986), $a = 0.5$ is used unless stated otherwise. Then the adaptive kernel estimate of f is taken to be

$$\hat{f}(t) = \frac{1}{n} \sum \frac{1}{h\lambda_i} K\{h^{-1}\lambda_i^{-1}(t - X_i)\},$$

where $K(t)$ is the Epanechnikov kernel given by Eq. (3.1). Following Silverman (1986, pp. 47–48), the span is

$$h = 1.06 \frac{A}{n^{1/5}},$$

where

$$A = \min(s, \text{IQR}/1.34),$$

s is the standard deviation, and IQR is the interquartile range. Again the interquartile range is estimated as described in Section 3.12.5 (using what are called the ideal fourths).

When using an adaptive kernel estimator, perhaps there are advantages to using some initial estimator other than the expected frequency curve. The relative merits of this possibility have not been explored. One reason for using the expected frequency curve as the preliminary es-

timate is that it reduces problems due to a restriction in range that are known to be a concern when using the normal kernel as described in Section 3.2.1.

Harpole et al. (2014) compared several kernel density estimators in terms of mean squared error and bias. Their simulation results were based on five distributions. Four of these distributions were based on combinations of normal distributions. The resulting distributions included skewed and bimodal distributions. The fifth distribution was a lognormal distribution. No single estimator dominated, but a rough guide is that for a sample size $n \leq 100$, the method in Section 3.2.1 performs relatively well among the situations they considered. For larger sample sizes, the adaptive kernel density estimator in this section performs relatively well. However, a concern with the method in Section 3.2.1 arises when dealing with variables that have a bounded range: the density estimate can indicate positive probabilities well outside the range of possible values as illustrated in Section 3.2.5. The adaptive kernel density estimator in this section avoids this problem. Also see Malec and Schienle (2014).

3.2.5 R Functions *skerd*, *kerSORT*, *kerden*, *kdplot*, *rdplot*, *akerd* and *splot*

It is noted that R has a built-in function called *density* that computes a kernel density estimate based on various choices for K . (This function also contains various options not covered here.) By default, K is taken to be the standard normal density. Here, the R function

```
skerd(x,op=T,kernel="gaussian")
```

is supplied in the event there is a desire to plot the data based on this collection of estimators. When *op*=T, the function uses the default density estimator employed by R; otherwise it uses the method recommended by Venables and Ripley (2002, p. 127). To use the Epanechnikov kernel, set the argument *kernel*="epanechnikov". For convenience, the function

```
kerSORT(x,xlab=",ylab")
```

is supplied, which defaults to using the Epanechnikov kernel in conjunction with Silverman's rule of thumb rule in Section 3.2.1.

Letting x_q denote the q th quantile, the function

```
kerden(x, q=0.5, xval=0),
```

written for this book, computes the kernel density estimate of $f(x_q)$ based on the data stored in the R vector x using the Rosenblatt shifted histogram method, described in Section 3.2.2. (Again see Section 1.7 on how to obtain the functions written for this book.) If unspecified, *q* defaults to 0.5.. The argument *xval* is ignored unless *q*=0, in which case the function esti-

mates $f(x)$ when x is equal to the value specified by the argument xval. The function

```
kdplot(x, rval=15)
```

plots the estimate of $f(x)$ based on the function kerden, where the argument rval indicates how many quantiles will be used. The default value, 15, means that $f(x)$ is estimated for 15 quantiles evenly spaced between 0.01 and 0.99, and then the function plots the estimates to form an estimate of $f(x)$.

The R function

```
rdplot(x,fr=NA,plotit=T,pts=NA,pyhat=F)
```

computes the expected frequency curve. The argument fr is the span, h . If not specified, fr=0.8 is used in the univariate case, otherwise fr=0.6 is used. By default, pts=NA (for not available) in which case a plot of the estimated density is based on the points $(X_i, \hat{f}(X_i))$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. If values are stored in pts, the plot is created based on these points. For example, the command rdplot(mydat,pts=c(0,mydat)) will create a plot based on all of the points in mydat plus the point $(0, \hat{f}(0))$. If pyhat=T, for true, the function returns the \hat{f} values that were computed. So rdplot(mydat,pts=0,pyhat=T) returns $\hat{f}(0)$, and rdplot(mydat,pts=c(1,2),pyhat=T) returns $\hat{f}(1)$ and $\hat{f}(2)$. Setting plotit=F (for false) suppresses the plot. (The function can handle multivariate data and produces a plot in the bivariate case. The computational details are outlined in Chapter 6.)

The R function

```
akerd(x,hval=NA,aval=0.5,op=1,fr=0.8,pts=NA,pyhat=F)
```

applies the adaptive kernel estimate as described in Section 3.2.4, where the argument hval is the span, h , aval is a , the sensitivity parameter, and fr is the span used by the initial estimate based on the expected frequency curve. If the argument op is set to 2, the Epanechnikov kernel is replaced by the normal kernel. The argument hval defaults to NA meaning that if not specified, the span h is determined as described in Section 3.2.4, otherwise h is taken to be the value given by hval. Setting pyhat=T, the function returns the $\hat{f}(X_i)$ values. If pts contains values, the function returns \hat{f} for values in pts instead. (The function can be used with multivariate data and produces a plot in the bivariate case.)

For convenience, when working with discrete data, the function

```
splot(x,op=T,xlab="X",ylab="Rel. Freq.")
```

is supplied which plots the relative frequencies of all distinct values found in the R variable x. With op=T, a line connecting points marking the relative frequencies is added to the plot.

Table 3.1: The Effect of Alcohol.

Group 1:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	2	2
	3	3	6	9	11	11	11	18	32	41
Group 2:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	0
	0	0	0	0	1	2	3	8	12	32

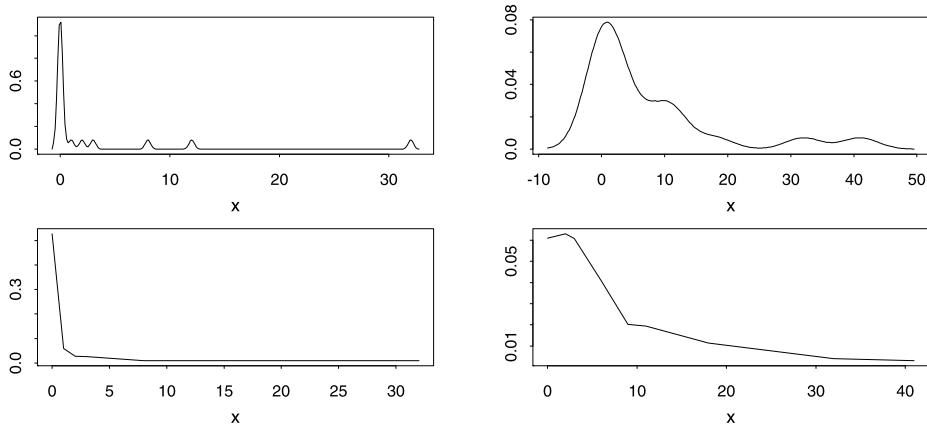


Figure 3.1: An example comparing four plots of data. The upper left panel shows a kernel density estimate using a normal kernel based on the Group 2 data in [Table 3.1](#). The upper right panel is the estimate using the Group 1 data. The bottom left panel used the same data as in the upper left panel, only the adaptive kernel density estimator was used. The lower right panel used the adaptive kernel density estimate with the Group 1 data.

■ Example

[Table 3.1](#) shows data from a study dealing with hangover symptoms for two groups of individuals: sons of alcoholics and a control group. Note that for both groups, zero is the most common value, and it is fairly evident that the data do not have a bell-shaped distribution. The top two panels of [Figure 3.1](#) show an estimate of the distributions using the R function `skerd`. (The plots are based on the data for Group 1.) Switching to the R function `kerSORT` (the method in [Section 3.2.1](#)) gives virtually the same results. This illustrates a well-known problem with certain kernel density estimators: a restriction in the range of possible values can lead to highly unsatisfactory results. This is clearly the case here because values less than zero are impossible, in contrast to what is suggested, particularly in the top right panel. The bottom two panels are plots of the data using the adaptive kernel density estimator in [Section 3.2.4](#). The method handles the restriction in range reasonably well and provides what seems like a much more satisfactory summary of the data.

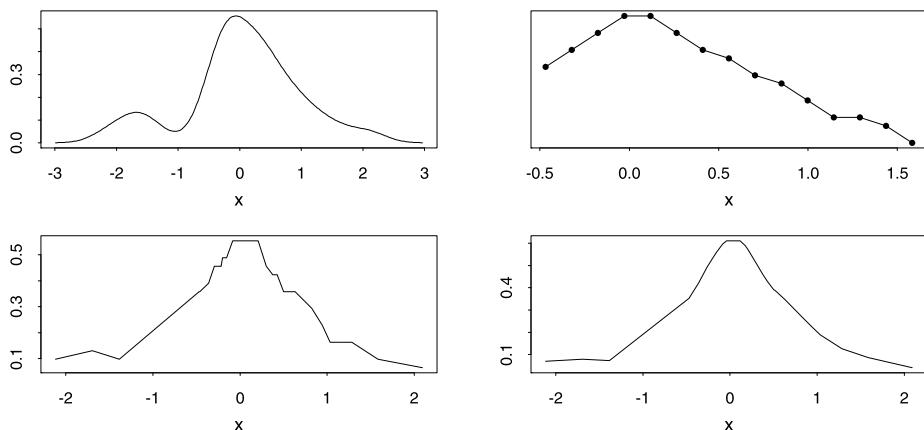


Figure 3.2: Another example comparing four plots of data. The upper left panel shows a kernel density estimate using a normal kernel based on $n = 30$ observations sampled from a standard normal distribution. The upper right panel is the plot (based on the same data) using Rosenblatt's shifted histogram. The lower left panel is the expected frequency curve and lower right panel is based on the adaptive kernel estimator.

■ Example

Figure 3.2 shows the plots created by the R functions just described for $n = 30$ observations randomly sampled from a standard normal distribution. The upper left panel was produced by the function `skerd`, the upper right panel shows the curve produced by `kdplot` (which uses the method in Section 3.2.2), the lower left panel is the expected frequency curve (using the function `rdplot`), and the lower right panel (created by the function `akerd`) is based on the adaptive kernel estimator in Section 3.2.4. Plots based on `akerd` are typically smoother than the plot returned by `rdplot`, particularly when using small sample sizes.

■ Example

To add perspective, 500 observations were generated from the lognormal distribution shown in Figure 3.3. This particular distribution is defined only for $X \geq 0$. That is, $P(X < 0) = 0$. The upper left panel of Figure 3.4 shows the plot created by R using the kernel density estimator described in Section 3.2.1. The upper right panel is based on Rosenblatt's shifted histogram (described in method in Section 3.2.2), the lower left panel is based on the expected frequency curve (using the function `kdplot`), and the

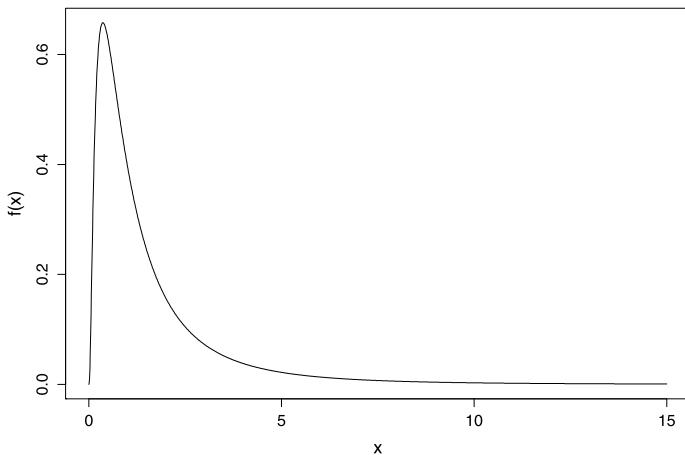


Figure 3.3: A lognormal distribution.

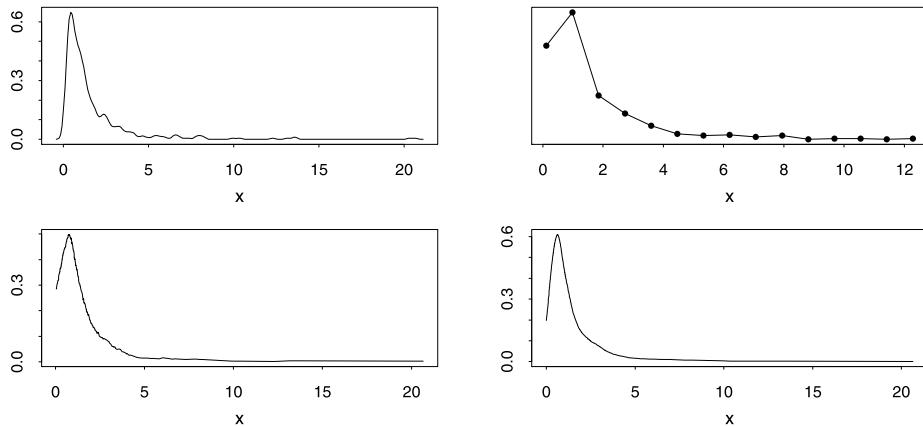


Figure 3.4: Some kernel density estimators can perform poorly when the variable under study is bounded, even with large sample sizes. The upper left panel is a plot based on the function `skerd` and $n = 500$ randomly sampled observations from the lognormal distribution in Figure 3.3. The upper right panel is Rosenblatt's shifted histogram (using on the function `kdplot`), the lower left panel shows the plot created by `rdplot`, and the lower right panel is based on the adaptive kernel estimator.

lower right panel is the plot based on the adaptive kernel estimator described in Section 3.2.4. Notice that both `rdplot` and `kdplot` do a better job of capturing the shape of the true density. The output from `skerd` is too Gaussian on the left (for $x \leq 5$), meaning that it resembles a normal curve when it should not, and it performs rather poorly for $X < 0$. The R function `kerSORT` gives very similar results. (A similar problem arises

when sampling from an exponential distribution.) Setting op=F when using skerd, the restriction in range associated with the lognormal distribution is less of a problem, but the plot becomes rather ragged. Increasing the sample size to $n = 1000$ and changing the seed in the R random number generator, produces results very similar to those in [Figure 3.4](#). The R function density has optional arguments that replace the normal kernel with other functions, several of these were considered for the situation at hand, but similar results were obtained. So although situations are encountered where the R function skerd produces a smoother, more visually appealing plot versus rdplot, kdplot and akerd, blind use of this function can be misleading.

3.3 The Sample Trimmed Mean

As already indicated, the standard error of the sample mean can be relatively large when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution, and the sample mean estimates a nonrobust measure of location, μ . The sample trimmed mean addresses these problems.

The sample trimmed mean, which estimates the population trimmed μ_t (described in [Section 2.2.3](#)), is computed as follows. Let X_1, \dots, X_n be a random sample and let $X_{(1)} \leq X_{(2)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ be the observations written in ascending order. The value $X_{(i)}$ is called the *i*th *order statistic*. Suppose the desired amount of trimming has been chosen to be γ , $0 \leq \gamma < 0.5$. Let $g = [\gamma n]$, where $[\gamma n]$ is the value of γn rounded down to the nearest integer. For example, $[10.9] = 10$. The sample trimmed mean is computed by removing the g largest and g smallest observations and averaging the values that remain. In symbols, the sample trimmed mean is

$$\bar{X}_t = \frac{X_{(g+1)} + \dots + X_{(n-g)}}{n - 2g}. \quad (3.2)$$

In essence, the empirical distribution is trimmed in a manner consistent with how the probability density function was trimmed when defining μ_t . As indicated in [Chapter 2](#), two-sided trimming is assumed unless stated otherwise.

The definition of the sample trimmed mean given by Eq. (3.2) is the one most commonly used. However, for completeness, it is noted that the term trimmed mean sometimes refers to a slightly different estimator (e.g., [Reed, 1998](#); cf. [Hogg, 1974](#)), namely,

$$\frac{1}{n(1-2\gamma)} \left(\sum_{i=g+1}^{n-g} X_{(i)} + (g - \gamma n)(X_{(g)} + X_{(n-g+1)}) \right).$$

Also see [Patel, Mudholkar, and Fernando \(1988\)](#) as well as [Kim \(1992a\)](#). Here, however, the definition given by (3.2) is used exclusively.

For the trimmed mean to have any practical importance, a value for γ must be chosen. One approach is to choose γ so that \bar{X}_t tends to have a relatively small standard error among commonly occurring situations, and a related restriction might be that little accuracy is lost when sampling from a normal distribution. Based on this view, and other criteria to be described, a good choice for general use is $\gamma = 0.2$. If γ is too small, the standard error of the trimmed mean, $\sqrt{\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)}$, can be drastically inflated by outliers or sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution. If γ is too large, the standard error can be relatively large compared to the standard error of the sample mean when sampling from a normal distribution. (Some illustrations are given in Section 3.11.) Empirical investigations based on data from actual studies suggest that the optimal amount of trimming, in terms of minimizing the standard error, is usually between 0 and 0.25 (e.g., [Hill & Dixon, 1982](#); [Wu, 2002](#)). While $\gamma = 0.1$, for example, might be more optimal than $\gamma = 0.2$ in certain situations, one argument for using $\gamma = 0.2$ is that it can result in a standard error that is much smaller than the standard error associated with $\gamma = 0.1$ or $\gamma = 0$, but the reverse is generally untrue. That is, $\gamma = 0.2$ guards against complete disaster but sacrifices relatively little in situations where $\gamma = 0.1$ and $\gamma = 0$ are more optimal. In some cases, however, more than 20% trimming might be desirable.

Another approach is to determine γ empirically according to some criterion such as the standard error. That is, estimate the standard error of \bar{X}_t when, for example, $\gamma = 0, 0.1$, and 0.2 and then use the value of γ corresponding to the smallest estimate. These so-called adaptive trimmed means have been studied by [Léger and Romano \(1990a, 1990b\)](#) and [Léger, Politis, and Romano \(1992\)](#). Or one could determine the amount of trimming based on some measure of skewness and heavy-tailedness. For a comparison of such methods, see [Reed \(1998\)](#) as well as [Reed and Stark \(1996\)](#). The properties of this approach, in the context of testing hypotheses and computing confidence intervals, have not been studied to the extent where γ is chosen to be a prespecified constant. In particular, the practical utility of adaptive trimmed means needs further investigation, so they are not discussed here, but further investigation seems warranted. It should be remarked, however, that empirically determining how much trimming to do is fraught with difficulties that are not always obvious. Interested readers can read the discussions of a paper by [Hogg \(1974\)](#), especially the comments by P. Huber. For some results on so-called hinge estimators, regarding control over the probability of a Type I error, see [Keselman, Wilcox, Lix, Algina, and Fradette \(2003\)](#).

■ Example

[Dana \(1990\)](#) conducted a study dealing with self-awareness and self-evaluation. One segment of his study measured the time subjects could keep a portion of an apparatus

Table 3.2: Self-Awareness Data.

77	87	88	114	151	210	219	246	253	262
296	299	306	376	428	515	666	1310	2611	

in contact with a specified target. **Table 3.2** shows some data for one of the groups. The sample mean and the sample trimmed means with $\gamma = 0.1$ and 0.2 are 448, 343, and 283 respectively. In this particular case there is an obvious difference between the three measures of location. However, even if they had been nearly equal, this is not necessarily an indication that the sample mean is satisfactory because the standard error of the trimmed mean can be substantially smaller than the standard error of the mean. ■

It might seem that $\gamma = 0.2$ is equivalent to randomly throwing away 40% of the data, but this is not the case. To see why, notice that the order statistics are dependent even though the observations X_1, \dots, X_n are independent. This result is covered in basic texts on mathematical statistics. For readers unfamiliar with this result, a brief explanation will help shed some light on other practical problems covered in this chapter.

If the random variables X and Y are independent, then the probability function of X is not altered given the value of Y . This means in particular that the range of possible values of X cannot depend on the value of Y . Suppose X_1, \dots, X_n is a random sample, and for the sake of illustration, suppose the value of each random variable can be any of the integers between 1 and 10 inclusive, each value occurring with some positive probability. Then knowing that $X_2 = 3$, say, tells us nothing about the probability of observing a particular value for X_1 . However, suppose $X_{(2)} = 3$. Then the smallest value, $X_{(1)}$, cannot be 4. More generally, $X_{(1)}$ cannot be any number greater than 3. In contrast, if we do not know the value of $X_{(2)}$, or any of the other order statistics, $X_{(1)}$ could have any of the values 1, 2, ..., 10, and these values occur with some positive probability. Thus, knowing the value of $X_{(2)}$ alters the probabilities associated with $X_{(1)}$. That is, $X_{(1)}$ and $X_{(2)}$ are dependent and dependence occurs because knowing the value of $X_{(2)}$ restricts the range of possible values for $X_{(1)}$. More generally, any two order statistics, say $X_{(i)}$ and $X_{(j)}$, $i \neq j$, are dependent.

3.3.1 R Functions *mean*, *tmean* and *lloc*

R has a built-in function that evaluates the trimmed mean. If observations are stored in the vector x , the R command

```
mean(x,trim=0)
```

computes the γ -trimmed mean where the argument trim determines the amount of trimming. By default, the amount of trimming is 0. For example, `mean(x,0.2)` returns the 20% trimmed mean. The value 283 is returned for the data in [Table 3.2](#), assuming the data are stored in the R variable `x`. Because it is common to use 20% trimming, for convenience the R function

```
tmean(x,tr=0.2)
```

has been supplied, which computes a 20% trimmed mean by default using the data stored in the R variable `x`. The amount of trimming can be altered using the argument `tr`. So `tmean(blob)` will compute a 20% trimmed mean for the data stored in `blob`, and `tmean(blob,tr=0.3)` will use 30% trimming instead. For convenience, the function

```
lloc(x,est=tmean,...)
```

is supplied for computing a trimmed mean when data are stored in list mode, in a data frame, or a matrix. If `x` is a matrix or data frame, `lloc` computes the trimmed mean for each column. Other measures of location can be used via the argument `est`. (For example, `est=median` will compute the median.) The argument `...` means that an optional argument associated with `est` can be used.

3.3.2 Estimating the Standard Error of the Trimmed Mean

To have practical value when making inferences about μ_t , properties of the sampling distribution of \bar{X}_t need to be determined. This subsection takes up the problem of estimating $\sqrt{\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)}$, the standard error of the sample trimmed mean.

At first glance the problem might appear to be trivial. The standard error of the sample mean is σ/\sqrt{n} , which is estimated with s/\sqrt{n} , where

$$s^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum (X_i - \bar{X})^2$$

is the usual sample variance. A common mistake in applied work is to estimate the standard error of the trimmed mean by simply computing the sample standard deviation of the untrimmed observations, and then dividing by $\sqrt{n-2g}$, the square root of the number of observations left after trimming. That is, apply the usual estimate of the standard error using the untrimmed values. To see why this simple idea fails, let X_1, \dots, X_n be any random variables, possibly dependent with unequal variances, and let a_1, \dots, a_n be any n constants. Then the variance of $\sum a_i X_i$ is

$$\text{VAR}\left(\sum a_i X_i\right) = \sum_{i=1}^n \sum_{j=1}^n a_i a_j \text{COV}(X_i, X_j), \quad (3.3)$$

where $\text{COV}(X_i, X_j)$ is the covariance between X_i and X_j . That is,

$$\text{COV}(X_i, X_j) = E\{(X_i - \mu_i)(X_j - \mu_j)\},$$

where $\mu_i = E(X_i)$. When $i = j$, $\text{COV}(X_i, X_j) = \sigma_i^2$, the variance of X_i . When the random variables are independent, Eq. (3.3) reduces to

$$\text{VAR}(\sum a_i X_i) = \sum_{i=1}^n a_i^2 \sigma_i^2. \quad (3.4)$$

Under random sampling, in which case the variance of each of the n random variables has a common value σ^2 , the variance of \bar{X} can be seen to be σ^2/n by taking $a_i = 1/n$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, in (3.4). The problem with the sample trimmed mean is that it is a linear combination of dependent random variables, namely a linear combination of the order statistics, so Eq. (3.4) does not apply, Eq. (3.3) must be used instead. For $i \neq j$, there are asymptotic results that can be used to estimate $\text{COV}(X_{(i)}, X_{(j)})$, the covariance between the i th and j th order statistics, this suggests a method for estimating the standard error of a trimmed mean, but a simpler method for estimating $\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)$ is typically used and has been found to give good results.

The influence function of the trimmed mean, $IF_t(x)$, introduced in Chapter 2, provides a convenient and useful way of dealing with the dependence among the order statistics. It can be shown that

$$\bar{X}_t = \mu_t + \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n IF_t(X_i), \quad (3.5)$$

plus a remainder term that goes to zero as n gets large. Moreover, $E(IF_t(X_i)) = 0$. In words, the sample trimmed mean can be written as μ_t plus a sum of independent, identically distributed random variables (assuming random sampling) having mean 0, plus a term that can be ignored provided n is not too small. The central limit theorem, applied to (3.5), shows that the distribution of \bar{X}_t approaches a normal distribution as $n \rightarrow \infty$. Fortunately, all indications are that the error term can be ignored even when n is as small as 10. Because $IF_t(X)$ has mean 0, Eq. (3.4) can be used to show that

$$\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t) = \frac{1}{n^2} \sum E\{(IF_t(X_i))^2\}, \quad (3.6)$$

ignoring the error term. From Chapter 2,

$$(1 - 2\gamma)IF_t(X) = \begin{cases} x_\gamma - \mu_w, & \text{if } x < x_\gamma \\ X - \mu_w, & \text{if } x_\gamma \leq X \leq x_{1-\gamma} \\ x_{1-\gamma} - \mu_w, & \text{if } x > x_{1-\gamma}, \end{cases}$$

Table 3.3: Winsorized Values for the Self-Awareness Data.

114	114	114	114	151	210	219	246	253	262
296	299	306	376	428	515	515	515	515	

where μ_w is the Winsorized population mean, and x_γ is the γ quantile. The main point here is that an estimate of $E\{(IF_t(X_i))^2\}$ yields an estimate of $\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)$ via Eq. (3.6). Note that

$$\begin{aligned} P\left(IF_t(X) = \frac{x_\gamma - \mu_w}{1 - 2\gamma}\right) &= \gamma \\ P\left(IF_t(X) = \frac{x_{1-\gamma} - \mu_w}{1 - 2\gamma}\right) &= \gamma. \end{aligned}$$

The first step in estimating $E\{(IF_t(X_i))^2\}$ is estimating the population Winsorized mean, μ_w . This is done by Winsorizing the empirical distribution and computing the sample mean of what results. *Winsorization of a random sample* consists of setting

$$W_i = \begin{cases} X_{(g+1)}, & \text{if } X_i \leq X_{(g+1)} \\ X_i, & \text{if } X_{(g+1)} < X_i < X_{(n-g)} \\ X_{(n-g)}, & \text{if } X_i \geq X_{(n-g)}. \end{cases} \quad (3.7)$$

The *Winsorized sample mean* is

$$\bar{X}_w = \frac{1}{n} \sum W_i,$$

which estimates μ_w , the population Winsorized mean introduced in Chapter 2. In words, Winsorization means that the g smallest values are pulled in and set equal to $X_{(g+1)}$, and the g largest values are pulled in and set equal to $X_{(n-g)}$. The sample mean of the resulting values is the Winsorized sample mean. (For a detailed study of the sample Winsorized mean when sampling from a skewed distribution, see [Rivest, 1994](#).) Put another way, Winsorization consists of estimating the γ and $1 - \gamma$ quantiles with $X_{(g+1)}$ and $X_{(n-g)}$, respectively, and estimating the population Winsorized distribution, described in Chapter 2, with the resulting W_i values. Also, results on the Winsorized expected value provide a more formal way of justifying \bar{X}_w as an estimate of μ_w . In particular, it is readily verified that $E_w(\bar{X}) = \mu_w$, so \bar{X}_w is a Winsorized unbiased estimate of μ_w .

[Table 3.3](#) shows the Winsorized values for the data in [Table 3.2](#) when $\gamma = 0.2$, in which case $g = [0.2(19)] = 3$. Thus, Winsorizing the observations in [Table 3.2](#) consists of replacing the three smallest observations with $X_{(4)} = 114$. Similarly, because $n - g = 19 - 3 = 16$, the three largest observations are replaced by $X_{(16)} = 515$. The sample mean of the values in [Table 3.3](#) is 293 and this is equal to the 20% Winsorized sample mean for the data in [Table 3.2](#).

The expression for the influence function of the trimmed mean involves three unknown quantities: x_γ , $x_{1-\gamma}$ and μ_w . As already indicated, these three unknown quantities are estimated with $X_{(g+1)}$, $X_{(n-g)}$, and \bar{X}_w , respectively. A little algebra shows that an estimate of $E[IF_t(X_i)]$ is $(W_i - \bar{W})/(1 - 2\gamma)$, so an estimate of $E\{(IF(X_i))^2\}$ is $(W_i - \bar{W})^2/(1 - 2\gamma)^2$. Referring to Eq. (3.6), the resulting estimate of $\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)$ is

$$\frac{1}{n^2(1 - 2\gamma)^2} \sum (W_i - \bar{W})^2.$$

When there is no trimming, this last equation becomes

$$\frac{n-1}{n} \times \frac{s^2}{n},$$

but typically s^2/n is used instead. Accordingly, to be consistent with how the standard error of the sample mean is usually estimated,

$$\frac{1}{n(n-1)(1-2\gamma)^2} \sum (W_i - \bar{W})^2 \quad (3.8)$$

will be used to estimate $\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)$.

The quantity

$$s_w^2 = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum (W_i - \bar{W})^2 \quad (3.9)$$

is called the *sample Winsorized variance*. A common way of writing (3.8) is in terms of the Winsorized variance:

$$\frac{s_w^2}{(1-2\gamma)^2 n}. \quad (3.10)$$

In other words, to estimate the squared standard error of the trimmed mean, compute the Winsorized observations W_i using Eq. (3.7), compute the sample variance using the resulting values, then divide by $(1-2\gamma)^2 n$. It can be seen that $E_w\{(IF(X_i))^2\} = \sigma_w^2/(1-2\gamma)^2$, and this provides another way of justifying (3.10) as an estimate of $\text{VAR}(\bar{X}_t)$. Consequently, the standard error of the sample trimmed mean is estimated with

$$\sqrt{\frac{s_w^2}{(1-2\gamma)^2 n}} = \frac{s_w}{(1-2\gamma)\sqrt{n}}.$$

Table 3.4 summarizes the calculations used to estimate the standard error of the trimmed mean.

Table 3.4: Summary of How to Estimate the Standard Error of the Trimmed Mean.

To estimate the standard error of the trimmed mean based on a random sample of n observations, first Winsorize the observations by transforming the i th observation, X_i , to W_i using Eq. (3.7). Compute the sample variance of the W_i values yielding s_w^2 , the Winsorized sample variance. The standard error of the trimmed mean is estimated to be

$$\frac{s_w}{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}},$$

where γ is the amount of trimming chosen by the investigator.

■ Example

For the data in Table 3.3, the sample variance is 21,551.4 and this is the Winsorized sample variance for the data in Table 3.2. Because 20% trimming was used, $\gamma = 0.2$, and the estimated standard error of the sample trimmed mean is

$$\frac{\sqrt{21,551.4}}{(1 - 2(0.2))\sqrt{19}} = 56.1$$

In contrast, the standard error of the sample mean is $s/\sqrt{n} = 136$, a value that is approximately 2.4 times larger than the standard error of the trimmed mean.



As previously noted, it might seem that the standard error of a trimmed mean could be estimated by simply computing the standard error of the mean using the data left after trimming. For example, if $h = n - 2g$ observations are left after trimming, compute the mean and standard deviation, s , based on these h values and estimate the standard error with s/h . In the last example, this yields 30.2. However, this can result in a highly inaccurate estimate of the standard error of a trimmed mean that can differ substantially from a theoretically sound method. For the situation at hand, the theoretically sound method in Table 3.4 yields 56.1, which is nearly twice as large as the technically unsound estimate (cf. Bakker & Wicherts, 2014).

3.3.3 Estimating the Standard Error of the Sample Winsorized Mean

An estimate of the standard error of the sample Winsorized mean, \bar{X}_w , can be derived from the influence function of the population Winsorized mean given in Section 2.2.2. Dixon and Tukey (1968) suggest a simpler estimate:

$$\frac{n - 1}{n - 2g - 1} \times \frac{s_w}{\sqrt{n}},$$

where $g = [\gamma n]$ is the number of observations Winsorized in each tail, so $n - 2g$ is the number of observations that are not Winsorized.

3.3.4 R Functions *winmean*, *winvar*, *trimse* and *winse*

Included in the R functions written for this book is a function called *winmean* that computes the Winsorized mean. If the data are stored in the R variable *x*, it has the form

$$\text{winmean}(x, \text{tr}=0.2).$$

The optional argument *tr* is the amount of Winsorizing to be used, which defaults to 0.2 if unspecified. (The R function *win* also computes the Winsorized mean.) For example, the command *winmean(dat)* computes the 20% Winsorized mean for the data in the R vector *dat*. The command *winmean(x,0.1)* computes the 10% Winsorized mean. If there are any missing values (stored as NA in R), the function automatically removes them.

The function *winvar* computes the Winsorized sample variance, s_w^2 . It has the form

$$\text{winvar}(x, \text{tr}=0.2).$$

Again, *tr* is the amount of Winsorization which defaults to 0.2 if unspecified. The function

$$\text{trimse}(x, \text{tr}=0.2)$$

estimates the standard error of the trimmed mean and

$$\text{winse}(x, \text{tr}=0.2)$$

estimates the standard error of the Winsorized mean. For example, the R command *trimse(x,0.1)* estimates the standard error of the 10% trimmed mean for the data stored in the vector *x*, and *winvar(x,0.1)* computes the Winsorized sample variance using 10% Winsorization. The R command *winvar(x)* computes s_w^2 using 20% Winsorization.

3.3.5 Estimating the Standard Error of the Sample Median

Trimmed means contain the usual sample median, M , described in Section 1.3, as a special case where the maximum amount of trimming is used. When using M and the goal is to estimate its standard error, alternatives to Eq. (3.10) should be used. Many methods have been

proposed, comparisons of which were made by [Price and Bonett \(2001\)](#). In terms of hypothesis testing, an effective and fairly simple estimate appears to be one derived by [McKean and Schrader \(1984\)](#). To apply it, compute

$$k = \frac{n+1}{2} - z_{0.995} \sqrt{\frac{n}{4}},$$

where k is rounded to the nearest integer and $z_{0.995}$ is the 0.995 quantile of a standard normal distribution. Put the observed values in ascending order yielding $X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$. The McKean–Schrader estimate of the squared standard error of M is

$$\left(\frac{X_{(n-k+1)} - X_{(k)}}{2z_{0.995}} \right)^2. \quad (3.11)$$

([Price & Bonett, 2001](#), recommend a slightly more complicated estimator, but when computing a confidence interval for the median, currently it seems that their method offers little or no advantage.)

It is stressed that when there are tied values, all known methods for estimating the standard error of the sample median, M , can be highly inaccurate. Methods for making inferences about the population median, when there are tied values, have been derived and are described in subsequent sections.

3.3.6 R Function `msmedse`

The R function

`msmedse(x)`

estimates the standard error of the sample median based on Eq. (3.11).

3.4 The Finite Sample Breakdown Point

Before describing additional measures of location, it helps to introduce a technical device for judging any estimator that is being considered. This is the *finite sample breakdown point* of a statistic, which refers to the smallest proportion of observations that, when altered sufficiently, can render the statistic meaningless. More precisely, the finite sample breakdown point of an estimator refers to the smallest proportion of observations that when altered can cause the value of the statistic to be arbitrarily large or small. The finite sample breakdown point of an estimator is a measure of its *resistance* to contamination. For example, if the i th

observation among the observations X_1, \dots, X_n goes to infinity, the sample mean \bar{X} goes to infinity as well. This means that the finite sample breakdown point of the sample mean is only $1/n$. In contrast, the finite sample breakdown point of the γ trimmed mean is γ . For example, if $\gamma = 0.2$, about 20% of the observations can be made arbitrarily large without driving the sample trimmed mean to infinity, but it is possible to alter 21% of the observations so that \bar{X}_t becomes arbitrarily large. Typically, the limiting value of the finite sample breakdown point is equal to the breakdown point, as defined in Chapter 2, of the parameter being estimated. For example, the breakdown point of the population mean, μ , is 0, which equals $1/n$ as n goes to infinity. Similarly, the breakdown point of the trimmed mean is γ .

Two points should be stressed. First, having a high finite sample breakdown point is certainly a step in the right direction when trying to deal with unusual values that have an inordinate influence, but it is no guarantee that an estimator will not be unduly influenced by even a small number of outliers. (Examples will be given when dealing with robust regression estimators.) Second, various refinements regarding the definition of a breakdown point have been proposed (e.g., [Genton & Lucas, 2003](#)), but no details are given here.

3.5 Estimating Quantiles

When comparing two or more groups, the most common strategy is to use a single measure of location, and the median or 0.5 quantile is an obvious choice. It can be highly advantageous to compare other quantiles as well, but the motivation for doing this is best explained in Chapter 5. For now attention is focused on estimating quantiles and the associated standard error.

There are many ways of estimating quantiles, comparisons of which are reported by [Parrish \(1990\)](#), [Sheather and Marron \(1990\)](#), [Sfakianakis and Verginis \(2008\)](#), as well as [Dielman, Lowry, and Pfaffenberger \(1994\)](#). Here, two are described and their relative merits are discussed.

For any q , $0 < q < 1$, let x_q be the q th quantile. For a continuous random variable, or a distribution with no flat spots, x_q is defined by the equation $P(X \leq x_q) = q$. This definition is satisfactory in the sense that there is only one value that qualifies as the q th quantile, so there is no ambiguity when referring to x_q . However, for discrete random variables or distributions with flat spots, special methods must be used to avoid having multiple values that qualify as the q th quantile. There are methods for accomplishing this goal, but they are not directly relevant to the topics of central interest in this book, at least based on current technology, so this issue is not discussed.¹

¹ The usual method for defining quantiles is as follows. If F is the distribution of the random variable X , then the q th quantile is the greatest lower bound, or infimum, for the set of values $\{x : F(x) \geq q\}$. Usually this is written as $x_q = \inf\{x : F(x) \geq q\}$.

Setting $m = [qn + 0.5]$, where $[qn + 0.5]$ is the greatest integer less than or equal to $qn + 0.5$, the simplest estimate of x_q is

$$\hat{x}_q = X_{(m)}, \quad (3.12)$$

the m th observation after the data are put in ascending order. For example, if the goal is to estimate the median, then $q = 1/2$, and if $n = 11$, then $m = [11/2 + 0.5] = 6$, and the estimate of $x_{0.5}$ is the usual sample median, M . Of course, if n is even, this estimator does not yield the usual sample median, it is equal to what is sometimes called the *upper empirical cumulative distribution function estimator*.

3.5.1 Estimating the Standard Error of the Sample Quantile

Assuming that observations are randomly sampled from a continuous distribution, and that $f(x_q) > 0$, the influence function of the q th quantile is

$$IF_q(x) = \begin{cases} \frac{q-1}{f(x_q)}, & \text{if } x < x_q \\ 0, & \text{if } x = x_q \\ \frac{q}{f(x_q)}, & \text{if } x > x_q, \end{cases} \quad (3.13)$$

and

$$\hat{x}_q = x_q + \frac{1}{n} \sum IF_q(X_i)$$

plus a remainder term that goes to zero as n gets large. That is, the situation is similar to the trimmed mean in the sense that the estimate of the q th quantile can be written as x_q , the population parameter being estimated, plus a sum of independent identically distributed random variables having a mean of zero, plus a term that can be ignored as the sample size gets large. Consequently, the influence function of the q th quantile can be used to determine the (asymptotic) standard error of \hat{x}_q . The result is

$$\text{VAR}(\hat{x}_q) = \frac{q(1-q)}{n[f(x_q)]^2}. \quad (3.14)$$

For example, when estimating the population median with $\hat{x}_{0.5}$, the variance of $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ is

$$\frac{1}{4n[f(x_{0.5})]^2},$$

so the standard error of $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ is

$$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{n} f(x_{0.5})}.$$

Moreover, for any q between 0 and 1,

$$2\sqrt{n}f(x_q)(\hat{x}_q - x_q)$$

approaches a standard normal distribution as n goes to infinity.

Using Eq. (3.14) to estimate the standard error of \hat{x}_q requires an estimate of $f(x_q)$, the probability density function of X evaluated at x_q , and this can be done using one of the methods described in Section 3.2. It is suggested that the adaptive kernel estimator be used in most cases, but all four kernel density estimators can be used with the software provided in case there are known reasons for preferring one kernel density estimator over another.

■ Example

The data in Table 3.2 are used to illustrate how the standard error of $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ can be estimated when using Rosenblatt's shifted histogram estimate of $f(x)$. There are 19 observations, so $[0.25n + 0.5] = 5$, $[0.75n + 0.5] = 14$, and an estimate of the interquartile range is $X_{(14)} - X_{(5)} = 376 - 151 = 225$, so

$$h = \frac{1.2(225)}{19^{1/5}} = 149.8.$$

The sample median is $M = \hat{x}_{0.5} = X_{(10)} = 262$, so $x_{0.5} + h = 411.8$, and the number of observations less than or equal to 411.8 is $A = 14$. The number of observations less than $\hat{x}_{0.5} - h = 112.2$ is $B = 3$, so

$$\hat{f}(\hat{x}_{0.5}) = \frac{14 - 3}{2(19)(149.8)} = 0.00193.$$

Consequently, an estimate of the standard error of the sample median is

$$\frac{1}{2\sqrt{19}(0.00193)} = 59.4.$$

3.5.2 R Function qse

The R function

```
qse(x,q=0.5,op=3)
```

estimates the standard error of \hat{x}_q using Eq. (3.11). As indicated, the default value for q is 0.5. The argument op determines which density estimator is used to estimate $f(x_q)$. The choices

are:

- op=1, Rosenblatt's shifted histograms
- op=2, expected frequency curve
- op=3, adaptive kernel method.

For example, storing the data in [Table 3.2](#) in the R vector x , the command `qse(x,op=1)` returns the value 64.3. In contrast, using `op=2` and `op=3`, the estimates are 58.94 and 47.95, respectively. So the choice of density estimator can make a practical difference.

3.5.3 The Maritz–Jarrett Estimate of the Standard Error of \hat{x}_q

[Maritz and Jarrett \(1978\)](#) derived an estimate of the standard error of sample median, which is easily extended to the more general case involving \hat{x}_q . That is, when using a single order statistic, its standard error can be estimated using the method outlined here. It is based on the fact that $E(\hat{x}_q)$ and $E(\hat{x}_q^2)$ can be related to a beta distribution. The beta probability density function, when a and b are positive integers, is

$$f(x) = \frac{(a+b+1)!}{a!b!} x^a (1-x)^b, \quad 0 \leq x \leq 1. \quad (3.15)$$

Details about the beta distribution are not important here. Interested readers can refer to [Johnson and Kotz \(1970, Chapter 24\)](#).

As before, let $m = [qn + 0.5]$. Let Y be a random variable having a beta distribution with $a = m - 1$ and $b = n - m$, and let

$$W_i = P\left(\frac{i-1}{n} \leq Y \leq \frac{i}{n}\right).$$

Many statistical computing packages have functions that evaluate the beta distribution, so evaluating the W_i values is relatively easy to do. In R, there is the function `pbeta(x,a,b)` that computes $P(Y \leq x)$. Thus, W_i can be computed by setting $x = i/n$, $y = (i-1)/n$, in which case W_i is `pbeta(x,m-1,n-m)` minus `pbeta(y,m-1,n-m)`.

Let

$$C_k = \sum_{i=1}^n W_i X_{(i)}^k.$$

When $k = 1$, C_k is a linear combination of the order statistics. Linear sums of order statistics are called *L-estimators*. Other examples of L-estimators are the trimmed and Winsorized means already discussed. The point here is that C_k can be shown to estimate $E(X_{(m)}^k)$, the k th

moment of the m th order statistic. Consequently, the standard error of the m th order statistic, $X_{(m)} = \hat{x}_q$, is estimated with

$$\sqrt{C_2 - C_1^2}.$$

Note that when n is odd, this last equation provides an alternative to the McKean–Schrader estimate of the standard error of M described in Section 3.3.4. Based on limited studies, it seems that when computing confidence intervals or testing hypotheses based on M , the McKean–Schrader estimator is preferable.

3.5.4 R Function mjse

The R function

`mjse(x,q=0.5)`

computes the Maritz–Jarrett estimate of the standard error of $\hat{x}_q = X_{(m)}$, the m th order statistic, where $m = [qn + 0.5]$. If unspecified, q defaults to 0.5. The command `mjse(x,0.4)`, for example, estimates the standard error of $\hat{x}_{0.4} = X_{(m)}$. If the data in Table 3.2 are stored in the R variable `xv`, and if the median is estimated with $X_{(10)}$, the command `mjse(xv)` reports that the Maritz–Jarrett estimate of the standard error is 45.8. Using instead the method in Section 3.5.1, based on the adaptive kernel density estimator, the estimate is 43.95. Note that both estimates are substantially less than the estimated standard error of the sample mean, which is 136.

All indications are that the Maritz–Jarrett estimator is more accurate than the method based on Eq. (3.11) used in conjunction with Rosenblatt’s shifted histogram described in Section 3.2.2. There are some weak indications that the Maritz–Jarrett estimator remains more accurate when Rosenblatt’s shifted histogram is replaced by the adaptive kernel estimator, but an extensive study of this issue has not been conducted. Regardless, the kernel density estimator plays a useful role when dealing with M-estimators of location or when summarizing data.

3.5.5 The Harrell–Davis Estimator

A concern when estimating the q th quantile with $\hat{x}_q = X_{(m)}$, $m = [qn + 0.5]$, is that its standard error can be relatively high. The problem is of particular concern when sampling from a light-tailed or normal distribution. A natural strategy for addressing this problem is to use all of the order statistics to estimate x_q , as opposed to a single order statistic, and several methods have been proposed. One such estimator was derived by [Harrell and Davis \(1982\)](#). To

compute it, let Y be a random variable having a beta distribution with parameters $a = (n+1)q$ and $b = (n+1)(1-q)$. That is, the probability density function of Y is

$$\frac{\Gamma(a+b)}{\Gamma(a)\Gamma(b)}y^{a-1}(1-y)^{b-1}.$$

(Γ is the gamma function, the details of which are not important for present purposes.) Let

$$W_i = P\left(\frac{i-1}{n} \leq Y \leq \frac{i}{n}\right).$$

Then the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile is

$$\hat{\theta}_q = \sum_{i=1}^n W_i X_{(i)}. \quad (3.16)$$

This is another example of an L-estimator. Asymptotic normality of $\hat{\theta}_q$ was established by [Yoshizawa, Sen, and Davis \(1985\)](#) for $q = 0.5$, only.

In some cases the Harrell–Davis estimator is much more efficient than \hat{x}_q and this can translate into substantial gains in power when testing hypotheses, as illustrated in Chapter 5. This is not to say, however, that the Harrell–Davis estimator always dominates \hat{x}_q in terms of its standard error. In fact, if the tails of a distribution are heavy enough, the standard error of \hat{x}_q can be substantially smaller than the standard error of $\hat{\theta}_q$, as is illustrated later in this chapter. The main advantage of $\hat{\theta}_q$ is that it guards against extremely poor efficiency under normality, but as the sample size gets large, it seems that this becomes less of an issue ([Sheather & Maron, 1990](#)). A criticism of $\hat{\theta}_q$ is that its finite sample breakdown point is only $1/n$ because all of the order statistics have some positive weight. There are kernel density estimators of quantiles, but they are not discussed because they seem to behave in a manner very similar to the Harrell–Davis estimator used here. (For comparisons of various quantile estimators, see [Par-rish, 1990; Dielman, Lowry, & Pfaffenberger, 1994](#), as well as [Sfakianakis & Verginis, 2008](#).)

3.5.6 R Functions `qest` and `hd`

The R function

```
qest(x,q=0.5)
```

estimates the q th quantile using Eq. (3.12). The R function

```
hd(x,q=0.5)
```

computes $\hat{\theta}_q$, the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile. Both functions automatically remove missing values (stored as NA). The default value for q is 0.5. Storing the data in [Table 3.2](#) in the R vector x , the command `hd(x)` returns the value $\hat{\theta}_{0.5} = 271.7$ as the estimate of the median. Similarly, the estimate of the 0.4 quantile is computed with the command `hd(x,0.4)`, and for the data in [Table 3.2](#) it returns the value 236.

3.5.7 A Bootstrap Estimate of the Standard Error of $\hat{\theta}_q$

The influence function of the Harrell–Davis estimator has not been derived and there is no simple equation giving its standard error. However, its standard error can be obtained using the bootstrap method in Section 3.1. That is, in Section 3.1, simply replace $\hat{\theta}$ with $\hat{\theta}_q$.

3.5.8 R Function `hdseb`

The R function

```
hdseb(x,q=0.5,nboot=100)
```

computes the bootstrap estimate of the standard error of the Harrell–Davis estimator for the data stored in the vector x . Of course, the R function `bootse` in Section 3.1.1 could be used as well; the function `hdseb` is provided merely for convenience. If, for example, the R command `bootse(x,nboot=100,est=hd)` is used, this yields the same estimate of the standard error returned by `hdseb`. When using `hdseb`, the default value for q is 0.5 and the default value for $nboot$, which represents B , the number of bootstrap samples, is 100. (But the default estimate when using `bootse` is $nboot=1000$.) For example, `hdseb(x)` uses $B = 100$ bootstrap samples to estimate the standard error when estimating the median. For the data in [Table 3.2](#), this function returns the value 50.8. This is a bit smaller than the estimated standard error of the 20% trimmed mean, which is 56.1, it is a bit larger than the Maritz–Jarrett estimate of the standard error of $\hat{x}_{0.5}$, 45.8, and it is substantially smaller than the estimated standard error of the sample mean, 136. With $B = 25$, the estimated standard error of $\hat{\theta}_{0.5}$ drops from 50.8 to 49.4. When using the Harrell–Davis estimator to estimate the q th quantile, $q \neq 0.5$, an estimate of the standard error is obtained with the command `hdseb(x,q)`, and $B = 100$ will be used. The command `hdseb(x,0.3,25)` uses $B = 25$ bootstrap samples to estimate the standard error when estimating the 0.3 quantile.

3.6 An M-Estimator of Location

The trimmed mean is based on a predetermined amount of trimming. That is, you first specify the amount of trimming that is desired, after which the sample trimmed mean, \bar{X}_t , can be

computed. Another approach is to empirically determine the amount of trimming. For example, if sampling is from a light-tailed distribution, or even a normal distribution, it might be desirable to trim very few observations or none at all. If a distribution is skewed to the right, a natural reaction is to trim more observations from the right versus the left tail of the empirical distribution. In essence, this is what the M-estimator of location does. There are, however, some practical difficulties that arise when using M-estimators of location, and in some cases trimmed means have important advantages. But there are also important advantages to using M-estimators, especially in the context of regression.

Before describing how an M-estimator is computed, it helps to elaborate on the line of reasoning leading to M-estimators (beyond what was covered in Chapter 2) and to comment on some technical issues. Chapter 2 put μ in the context of minimizing the expected squared difference between X and some constant c , and this was used to provide some motivation for the general approach used to define M-measures of location. In particular, setting $c = \mu$ minimizes $E(X - c)^2$. One practical concern was that if a measure of location is defined as the value of c minimizing $E(X - c)^2$, extreme X values can have an inordinately large effect on the resulting value for c . For a skewed distribution, values of X that are extreme and relatively rare can “pull” the value of μ into the tail of the distribution. A method of addressing this concern is to replace $(X - c)^2$ with some other function that gives less weight to extreme values. In terms of estimators of location, a similar problem arises. The sample mean is the value of c minimizing $\sum(X_i - c)^2$. From basic calculus, minimizing this sum turns out to be equivalent to choosing c such that $\sum(X_i - c) = 0$, and the solution is $c = \bar{X}$. The data in Table 3.2 illustrate that the sample mean can be quite far into the tail of a distribution. The sample mean is 448, yet 15 of the 19 observations have values less than 448. In fact the data suggest that 448 is somewhere near the 0.8 quantile. M-estimators of location address this problem by replacing $(X_i - c)^2$ with some function that gives less weight to extreme X_i values (cf. [Martin & Zamar, 1993](#)).

From Chapter 2, an M-measure of location is the value μ_m such that

$$E \left\{ \Psi \left(\frac{X - \mu_m}{\tau} \right) \right\} = 0, \quad (3.17)$$

where τ is some measure of scale and Ψ is an odd function meaning that $\Psi(-x) = -\Psi(x)$. (This approach to estimating a measure of location dates back to at least [Ellis, 1844](#).) Some choices for Ψ are listed and described in Table 2.1. Once a random sample of observations is available, the M-measure of location is estimated by replacing expected value with summation in Eq. (3.17). That is, an M-estimator of location is the value $\hat{\mu}_m$ such that

$$\sum \Psi \left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\tau} \right) = 0. \quad (3.18)$$

If $\Psi\{(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)/\tau\} = (X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)/\tau$, $\hat{\mu}_m = \bar{X}$.

There are three immediate problems that must be addressed if M-measures of location are to have any practical value: Choosing an appropriate Ψ , choosing an appropriate measure of scale, τ , and finding a method for estimating μ_m once a choice for Ψ and τ has been made.

First consider the problem of choosing Ψ . There are many possible choices, so criteria are needed for deciding whether a particular choice has any practical value. Depending on the choice for Ψ there can be 0, 1, or multiple solutions to Eq. (3.18), and this helps to limit the range of functions one might use. If there are zero solutions, this approach to estimation has little value, as is evident. If there are multiple solutions, there is the problem of choosing which solution to use in practice. A reasonable suggestion is to use the solution closest to the median, but estimation problems can persist. One of the more important examples of this (see Freedman & Diaconis, 1982) arises when Ψ is taken to be the so-called biweight:

$$\Psi(x) = \begin{cases} x(1-x^2)^2, & \text{if } |x| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{if } |x| \geq 1. \end{cases} \quad (3.19)$$

All indications are that it is best to limit attention to those Ψ that yield a single solution to Eq. (3.17). This can be done by limiting attention to Ψ that are monotonic increasing.

Insisting on a single solution to Eq. (3.18) provides a criterion for choosing Ψ , but obviously more is needed. To make progress, it helps to replace Eq. (3.18) with an equivalent approach to defining an estimator of location. First note that from basic calculus, defining a measure of location with Eq. (3.18) is equivalent to defining $\hat{\mu}_m$ as the value minimizing

$$\sum \xi\left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\tau}\right), \quad (3.20)$$

where Ψ is the derivative of ξ . Now, if sampling is from a normal distribution, the optimal estimator, in terms of minimum variance, is the sample mean \bar{X} , and the sample mean can be viewed as the value minimizing $\sum(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)^2$. That is, using

$$\xi\left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\tau}\right) = (X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)^2 \quad (3.21)$$

yields $\hat{\mu}_m = \bar{X}$, which is optimal under normality. As already indicated, the problem with this function is that it increases too rapidly as the value of X_i moves away from $\hat{\mu}_m$, and this can cause practical problems when sampling from non-normal distributions for which extreme values can occur. But because this choice of ξ is optimal under normality, a natural strategy is to search for some approximation of Eq. (3.21) that gives nearly the same results when sampling from a normal distribution. In particular, consider functions that are identical to Eq. (3.21) provided X_i is not too extreme.

To simplify matters, temporarily consider a standard normal distribution, and take τ to be σ , the standard deviation, which in this case is 1. Then the optimal choice for ξ is $(x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2$, as

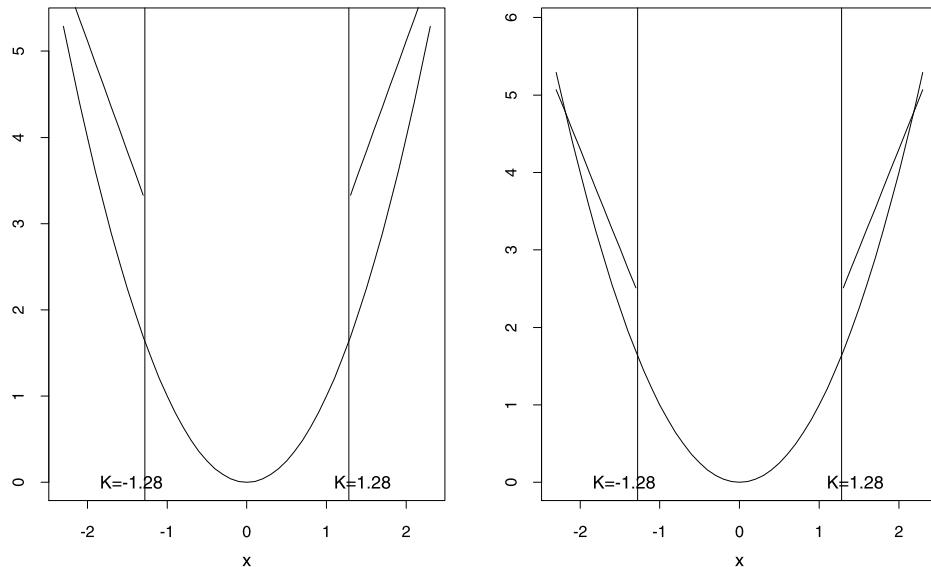


Figure 3.5: An approximation of the optimal function.

already explained. Suppose instead that ξ is taken to be

$$\xi(x - \hat{\mu}_m) = \begin{cases} -2K(x - \hat{\mu}_m), & \text{if } x < -K \\ (x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2, & \text{if } -K \leq x \leq K \\ 2K(x - \hat{\mu}_m), & \text{if } x > K, \end{cases} \quad (3.22)$$

where K is some constant to be determined. Thus, when sampling from a normal distribution, the optimal choice for ξ is being used provided an observation is not too extreme, meaning that its value does not exceed K or is not less than $-K$. If it is extreme, ξ becomes a linear function, rather than a quadratic function, this linear function increases less rapidly than Eq. (3.21), so extreme values are having less of an influence on $\hat{\mu}_m$.

The strategy for choosing ξ , outlined earlier, is illustrated in the left panel of Figure 3.5 which shows a graph of $\xi(x - \hat{\mu}_m) = (x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2$ when $\hat{\mu}_m = 0$, and this is the optimal choice for ξ when sampling from a standard normal distribution. Also shown is the approximation of the optimal ξ , given by Eq. (3.22), when $K = 1.28$. When $-1.28 \leq x \leq 1.28$ the approximation is exact. When $x < -1.28$ or $x > 1.28$ the straight line above the curve is used to approximate ξ . Because $K = 1.28$ is the 0.9 quantile of a standard normal distribution, there is a 0.8 probability that a randomly sampled observation will have a value between $-K$ and K . Note how Figure 3.5 suggests that Eq. (3.22) with $K = 1.28$ is a reasonable approximation of $\xi(x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2 = (x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2$.

The left panel of Figure 3.5 suggests lowering the straight lines to get a better approximation of ξ . The right panel shows what happens when the lines are lowered by $K^2/2$. That is, Eq. (3.22) is replaced by

$$\xi(x - \hat{\mu}_m) = \begin{cases} -2K(x - \hat{\mu}_m) - \frac{K^2}{2}, & \text{if } x < -K \\ (x - \hat{\mu}_m)^2, & \text{if } -K \leq x \leq K \\ 2K(x - \hat{\mu}_m) - \frac{K^2}{2}, & \text{if } x > K. \end{cases}$$

However, this modification yields the same equation for determining $\hat{\mu}$, as given by Eq. (3.22) in the next paragraph.

Now, $\hat{\mu}_m$ is the value minimizing Eq. (3.20). Taking the derivative of this equation, with ξ given by Eq. (3.22), and setting the result equal to zero, $\hat{\mu}_m$ is determined by

$$2 \sum \Psi(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m) = 0, \quad (3.23)$$

where

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-K, \min(K, x)] \quad (3.24)$$

is Huber's Ψ . (For a graph of Huber's Ψ , see Chapter 2.) Of course, the constant 2 in Eq. (3.23) is not relevant to solving for $\hat{\mu}_m$, and typically (3.23) is simplified to

$$\sum \Psi(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m) = 0. \quad (3.25)$$

There remains the problem of choosing K . One strategy is to choose K so that the large sample (asymptotic) standard error of $\hat{\mu}_m$ is reasonably close to the standard error of the sample mean when sampling from a normal distribution, yet the standard error of $\hat{\mu}_m$ is relatively unaffected when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution. A common choice is $K = 1.28$, the 0.9 quantile of the standard normal distribution, and this will be used unless stated otherwise. For a more detailed discussion about choosing K , see Huber (1981). In a given situation some other choice might be more optimal, but $K = 1.28$ guards against relatively large standard errors while sacrificing very little when sampling from a normal distribution. A more efficacious choice might be made based on knowledge about the distribution being sampled, but the extent to which this strategy can be recommended is unclear.

One more technical issue must be addressed. From Chapter 2, a requirement of a measure of location is that it be scale equivariant. In the present context, this means that if μ_m is the M-measure of location associated with the random variable X , aX should have $a\mu_m$ as a measure of location for any constant a . If $\hat{\mu}_m$ is estimated with Eq. (3.25), this requirement is not met, Eq. (3.18) must be used instead. Using Eq. (3.18) means in particular that a measure of scale, τ , must be chosen. It turns out that the measure of scale need not be efficient in order for $\hat{\mu}_m$ to be efficient. The main concern is that it be reasonably resistant. In particular, it should have a finite sample breakdown point that is reasonably high. A common choice for

a measure of scale is the value of ω determined by

$$P(|X - x_{0.5}| < \omega) = \frac{1}{2},$$

where $x_{0.5}$ is the population median. That is, ω is the 0.5 quantile of the distribution of $|X - x_{0.5}|$. If, for example, sampling is from a standard normal distribution, in which case $x_{0.5} = 0$, ω is determined by

$$P(-\omega \leq Z \leq \omega) = 0.5,$$

where Z has a standard normal distribution. That is, ω is the 0.75 quantile of the standard normal distribution, which is approximately equal to 0.6745.

The standard estimate of ω is the median absolute deviation statistic given by

$$\text{MAD} = \text{MED}\{|X_1 - M|, \dots, |X_n - M|\},$$

where M is the usual sample median, which is computed as described in Section 1.3. That is, MAD is the sample median of the n values $|X_1 - M|, \dots, |X_n - M|$, and its finite sample breakdown point is approximately 0.5. (For more details about the finite sample breakdown point of MAD, see [Gather & Hilker, 1997](#).)

If observations are randomly sampled from a normal distribution, MAD does not estimate σ , the standard deviation, it estimates $z_{0.75}\sigma$, where $z_{0.75}$ is the 0.75 quantile of the standard normal distribution. To put MAD in a more familiar context, it is typically rescaled so that it estimates σ when sampling from a normal distribution. In particular

$$\text{MADN} = \frac{\text{MAD}}{z_{0.75}} \approx \frac{\text{MAD}}{0.6745}$$

is used, and this convention will be followed here. Then for a random sample, Eq. (3.17) says that an M-estimator of location is the value $\hat{\mu}_m$ satisfying

$$\sum \Psi\left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\text{MADN}}\right) = 0. \quad (3.26)$$

3.6.1 R Function mad

The R function

`mad(x)`

computes MADN. That is, R assumes that MAD is to be rescaled to estimate σ when sampling from a normal distribution. To use R to compute MAD, simply use the command `qnorm(0.75)*mad(x)`. The command `qnorm(0.75)` returns the 0.75 quantile of a standard normal random variable.

Table 3.5: How to Compute the M-Estimator of Location $\hat{\mu}_m$.

Set $k = 0$, $\hat{\mu}_k = M$, the sample median, and choose a value for K . A common choice is $K = 1.28$.

Step 1. Let

$$A = \sum \Psi\left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_k}{\text{MADN}}\right).$$

Here, Ψ given by Eq. (3.24) is used.

Step 2. Let

$$B = \sum \Psi'\left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_k}{\text{MADN}}\right),$$

where Ψ' is the derivative of Ψ given by Eq. (3.27). B is just the number of observations X_i satisfying $-K \leq (X_i - \hat{\mu}_k)/\text{MADN} \leq K$.

Step 3. Set

$$\hat{\mu}_{k+1} = \hat{\mu}_k + \frac{\text{MADN} \times A}{B}.$$

Step 4. If $|\hat{\mu}_{k+1} - \hat{\mu}_k| < 0.0001$, stop and set $\hat{\mu}_m = \hat{\mu}_{k+1}$. Otherwise, increment k by one and repeat steps 1–4.

3.6.2 Computing an M-Estimator of Location

Solving Eq. (3.26) for $\hat{\mu}_m$ is usually accomplished with an iterative estimation procedure known as the Newton–Raphson method. It involves the derivative of Ψ , which is given by

$$\Psi'(x) = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } -K \leq x \leq K \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases} \quad (3.27)$$

The steps used to determine $\hat{\mu}_m$ are shown in Table 3.5. Typically $K = 1.28$ is used, and this choice is assumed henceforth unless stated otherwise.

■ Example

For the data in Table 3.2, $\hat{\mu}_0 = M = 262$ and $\text{MADN} = 169$. Table 3.6 shows the resulting values of $\Psi\{(X_i - \mu_0)/\text{MADN}\}$ corresponding to each of the 19 values. The sum of the values in Table 3.6 is $A = 2.05$. The number of Ψ values between -1.28 and 1.28 is $B = 15$, so the first iteration using the steps in Table 3.5 yields

$$\hat{\mu}_1 = 262 + \frac{169 \times 2.05}{15} = 285.1.$$

The iterative estimation process consists of using $\hat{\mu}_1$ to recompute the Ψ values, yielding a new value for A and B , which in turn yields $\hat{\mu}_2$. For the data at hand, it turns out that there is no difference between $\hat{\mu}_2$ and $\hat{\mu}_1$, so the iterative process stops and $\hat{\mu}_m = 285.1$.

Table 3.6: Values of Huber's Ψ for the Self-Awareness Data.

-1.09	-1.04	-1.04	-0.88	-0.66	-0.31	-0.25	-0.09	-0.05	0.0
0.20	0.22	0.26	0.67	0.98	1.28	1.28	1.28	1.28	

If there had been a difference, the Ψ values would be computed again using $\hat{\mu}_2$, and this would continue until $|\hat{\mu}_{k+1} - \hat{\mu}_k| < 0.0001$. ■

When computing the M-estimator of location as described in [Table 3.5](#), the measure of scale, MADN, does not change when iterating. There are also M-estimators where a measure of scale is updated. That is, a measure of scale is simultaneously determined in an iterative fashion. (See [Huber, 1981](#), p. 136.) Currently, it seems that this alternative estimation procedure offers no practical advantage, so it is not discussed. In fact, if a measure of scale is estimated simultaneously with a measure of location, using Huber's Ψ , the Bickel–Lehmann condition for a measure of location is no longer satisfied ([Bickel & Lehmann, 1975](#)).

Notice that the M-estimator in [Table 3.5](#) empirically determines whether an observation is unusually large or small. In the first step where $\hat{\mu}_0 = M$, the sample median, X_i is considered unusually small if $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} < -1.28$, where the typical choice of $K = 1.28$ is being used, and it is unusually large if $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} > 1.28$. This becomes clearer if the first step in the iterative process is written in a different form. Let i_1 be the number of observations X_i for which $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} < -1.28$, and let i_2 be the number of observations such that $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} > 1.28$. Some algebra shows that the value of $\hat{\mu}_1$ in [Table 3.5](#) is

$$\frac{1.28(\text{MADN})(i_2 - i_1) + \sum_{i=i_1+1}^{n-i_2} X(i)}{n - i_1 - i_2}, \quad (3.28)$$

the point being that the sum in this expression is over only those values that are not too large or too small.

To conclude this section, it is noted that there are more formal methods for motivating Huber's Ψ , but no details are given here. Readers interested in technical issues can refer to [Huber \(1981\)](#) or [Huber and Ronchetti \(2009\)](#).

3.6.3 R Functions mest

The R function

```
mest(x,bend=1.28)
```

performs the calculations in [Table 3.5](#). The argument `bend` corresponds to K in Huber's Ψ and defaults to 1.28 if unspecified. For example, the command `mest(x)` computes the M-estimator of location for the data in the vector x using $K = 1.28$. The command `mestx(x, 1.5)` uses $K = 1.5$. Increasing K increases efficiency when sampling from a normal distribution, but it increases sensitivity to the tails of the distribution, and efficiency can be lower as well when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution. To illustrate sensitivity to the tail of a distribution, the mean, median, 20% trimmed mean, M-estimator, with $K = 1.28$, and MOM (described in [Section 3.10](#)) are equal to 448, 262, 282.7, 258.1 and 245.4, respectively, for the data in [Table 3.2](#). With $K = 1.2$, the M-estimator is 281.6, and with $K = 1$, the M-estimator is equal to 277.4. Note that MOM has a value less than the median, in contrast to the other location estimators that were used. This illustrates a curious property about the population value of MOM. Suppose a distribution is skewed to the right. Then the population value of MOM can lie between the median and the mode of this distribution, in contrast to any trimmed mean or M-estimator which typically lie to the right of the median.

3.6.4 Estimating the Standard Error of the M-Estimator

This subsection describes the first of two methods for estimating the standard error of the M-estimator of location. The method here is based on the influence function of μ_m and the other uses a bootstrap.

As was the case with the trimmed mean and \hat{x}_q , the justification for the non-bootstrap estimate of the standard error follows from the result that

$$\hat{\mu}_m = \mu_m + \frac{1}{n} \sum I F_m(X_i),$$

plus a remainder term that goes to zero as n gets large. That is, an M-estimator can be written as its population value plus a sum of independent random variables having mean zero.

The influence function of the M-measure of location has a somewhat complicated form. It depends in part on the measure of scale that is used in Ψ , and here this is $\omega_N = \omega/0.6745$. The influence function of ω , which is estimated by MAD, is given in [Chapter 2](#). The influence function of ω_N is just the influence function of ω divided by 0.6745. Let

$$A(x) = \text{sign}(|x - \theta| - \omega),$$

where θ is the population median and $\text{sign}(x)$ equals -1 , 0 or 1 according to whether x is less than, equal to, or greater than 0 . Let

$$B(x) = \text{sign}(x - \theta),$$

and

$$C(x) = A(x) - \frac{B(x)}{f(\theta)} \{f(\theta + \omega) - f(\theta - \omega)\}.$$

The influence function of ω_N is

$$IF_{\omega_N}(x) = \frac{C(x)}{2(0.6745)\{f(\theta + \omega) + f(\theta - \omega)\}}.$$

Estimating $IF_{\omega_N}(X_i)$, the value of the influence function of ω_N at X_i , requires an estimate of the probability density function, and this can be done as described in Section 3.2. Here, the adaptive kernel estimator in Section 3.2.4 will be used unless stated otherwise. Denoting the estimate of the probability density function $f(x)$ with $\hat{f}(x)$, and computing

$$\hat{A}(X_i) = \text{sign}(|X_i - M| - \text{MAD}),$$

$$\hat{B}(X_i) = \text{sign}(X_i - M),$$

$$\hat{C}(X_i) = \hat{A}(X_i) - \frac{\hat{B}(X_i)}{\hat{f}(M)} \{\hat{f}(M + \text{MAD}) - \hat{f}(M - \text{MAD})\},$$

an estimate of $IF_{\omega_N}(X_i)$ is

$$V_i = \frac{\hat{C}(X_i)}{2(0.6745)\{\hat{f}(M + \text{MAD}) + \hat{f}(M - \text{MAD})\}}. \quad (3.29)$$

Letting $y = (x - \mu_m)/\omega_N$, the influence function of μ_m is

$$IF_m(x) = \frac{\omega_N \Psi(y) - IF_{\omega_N}(x)\{E[\Psi'(y)y]\}}{E[\Psi'(y)]}. \quad (3.30)$$

Having described how to estimate $IF_{\omega_N}(X_i)$, and because MADN estimates ω_N , all that remains when estimating $IF_m(X_i)$ is estimating $E[\Psi'(Y)Y]$ and $E[\Psi'(Y)]$, where $Y = (X - \mu_m)/\omega_N$. Set

$$Y_i = \frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\text{MADN}},$$

and

$$D_i = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } |Y_i| \leq K \\ 0, & \text{otherwise.} \end{cases}$$

Then $E[\Psi'(y)]$ is estimated with

$$\bar{D} = \frac{1}{n} \sum D_i.$$

Finally, estimate $E[\Psi'(y)y]$ with

$$\bar{C} = \frac{1}{n} \sum D_i Y_i.$$

The sum in this last equation is just the sum of the Y_i values satisfying $|Y_i| \leq K$. The value of the influence function of μ_m , evaluated at X_i , is estimated with

$$U_i = \{(\text{MADN})\Psi(Y_i) - V_i \bar{C}\}/\bar{D}. \quad (3.31)$$

The squared standard error of $\hat{\mu}_m$ can now be estimated from the data. The estimate is

$$\hat{\sigma}_m^2 = \frac{1}{n(n-1)} \sum U_i^2. \quad (3.32)$$

Consequently, the standard error, $\sqrt{VAR(\hat{\mu}_m)}$, is estimated with $\hat{\sigma}_m$. Note that the sum in Eq. (3.32) is divided by $n(n-1)$, not n^2 as indicated by Eq. (3.6). This is done because if no observations are flagged as being unusually large or small by Ψ , $\hat{\mu}_m = \bar{X}$, and Eq. (3.32) reduces to s^2/n , the estimate that is typically used.

The computations just described are straightforward but tedious, so no detailed illustration is given. Interested readers can use the R function mestse, which is describe in the next subsection.

3.6.5 R Function mestse

The R function

```
mestse(x,bend=1.28,op=2)
```

estimates the standard error of the M-estimator using the method just described. The argument bend corresponds to K in Huber's Ψ and defaults to 1.28 if not specified. The argument op indicates which density estimator is used to estimate the influence function. By default (op=2), the adaptive kernel estimator is used, otherwise Rosenblatt's shifted histogram is employed. If the data in Table 3.2 are stored in the R variable x, the command mestse(x) returns the value 54.1, and this is reasonably close to 56.1, the estimated standard error of the trimmed mean. The 20% trimmed mean and M-estimator have similar influence functions, so reasonably close agreement was expected. A difference between the two estimators is that the M-estimator identifies the four largest values as being unusually large. That is,

$(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)/\text{MADN}$ exceeds 1.28 for the four largest values, while the trimmed mean trims the three largest values only, so the expectation is that $\hat{\mu}_m$ will have a smaller standard. Also, the M-estimator does not identify any of the lower values as being unusual, but the trimmed mean automatically trims three values.

3.6.6 A Bootstrap Estimate of the Standard Error of $\hat{\mu}_m$

The standard error can also be estimated using a bootstrap method. The computational details are essentially the same as those described in Section 3.1. Begin by drawing a bootstrap sample, X_1^*, \dots, X_n^* from the observed values X_1, \dots, X_n . That is, randomly sample n observations with replacement from X_1, \dots, X_n . Compute the value of $\hat{\mu}_m$ using the bootstrap sample and label the result $\hat{\mu}_m^*$. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\mu}_{m1}^*, \dots, \hat{\mu}_{mB}^*$. Let

$$\bar{\mu}^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\mu}_{mb}^*,$$

in which case the bootstrap estimate of the squared standard error is

$$\hat{\sigma}_{m\text{boot}}^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\mu}_{mb}^* - \bar{\mu}^*)^2. \quad (3.33)$$

Using $B = 25$ might suffice, while $B = 100$ appears to be more than adequate in most situations (Efron, 1987).

A negative feature of the bootstrap is that if n is large, execution time can be high, even on a mainframe computer, when working with various software packages designed specifically for doing statistics. The accuracy of the bootstrap method versus the kernel density estimator has not been examined when n is small. Early attempts at comparing the two estimators, via simulations, were complicated by the problem that the kernel density estimator that was used can be undefined because of division by zero. Yet another problem is that the bootstrap method can fail when n is small because a bootstrap sample can yield $\text{MAD} = 0$, in which case $\hat{\mu}_m^*$ cannot be computed because of division by zero. A few checks were made with $n = 20$ and $B = 1000$ when sampling from a normal or lognormal distribution. Limited results suggest that the bootstrap is more accurate, but a more detailed study is needed to resolve this issue.

3.6.7 R Function mestseb

The R function

```
mestseb(x,nboot=1000,bend=1.28)
```

computes the bootstrap estimate of the standard error of $\hat{\mu}_m$ for the data stored in the R variable `x`. The argument `nboot` is B , the number of bootstrap samples to be used, which defaults to $B = 100$ if unspecified. The default value for `bend`, which corresponds to K in Huber's Ψ , is 1.28. For example, `mestseb(x,50)` will compute a bootstrap estimate of the standard error using $B = 50$ bootstrap replications, while `mestseb(x)` uses $B = 100$. For the data in [Table 3.2](#), `mestseb(x)` returns the value 53.7, which is in reasonable agreement with 53.2, the estimated standard error using the influence function. The function `mestseb` sets the seed of the random number generator in R so that results will be duplicated if `mestseb` is executed a second time with the same data. Otherwise, if `mestseb` is invoked twice, slightly different results would be obtained because the bootstrap method would use a different sequence of random numbers.

3.7 One-Step M-Estimator

Typically, when computing $\hat{\mu}_m$ with the iterative method in [Table 3.5](#), convergence is obtained after only a few iterations. It turns out that if only a single iteration is used, the resulting estimator has good asymptotic properties ([Serfling, 1980](#)). In particular, for large sample sizes, it performs in a manner very similar to the fully iterated M-estimator. An expression for the first iteration was already described, but it is repeated here for convenience, assuming $K = 1.28$. Let i_1 be the number of observations X_i for which $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} < -1.28$, and let i_2 be the number of observations such that $(X_i - M)/\text{MADN} > 1.28$. The one-step M-estimate of location is

$$\hat{\mu}_{os} = \frac{1.28(\text{MADN})(i_2 - i_1) + \sum_{i=i_1+1}^{n-i_2} X_{(i)}}{n - i_1 - i_2}. \quad (3.34)$$

While the one-step M-estimator is slightly easier to compute than the fully iterated M-estimator, its influence function has a much more complicated form when distribution are skewed ([Huber, 1981](#), p. 140). In terms of making inferences about the corresponding population parameter, it seems that there are no published results suggesting that the influence function plays a useful role when testing hypotheses or computing confidence intervals. Consequently, details about the influence function are not given here. As for estimating the standard error of the one-step M-estimator, only the bootstrap method will be used. The basic strategy is the same as it was when working with $\hat{\mu}_m$ or the Harrell–Davis estimator already discussed. In particular, draw a bootstrap sample by resampling n observations with replacement from the n observations available and compute $\hat{\mu}_{os}$. Consistent with previous notation, the result will be labeled $\hat{\mu}_{os}^*$ to distinguish it from $\hat{\mu}_{os}$ based on the original observations

X_1, \dots, X_n . Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\mu}_{\text{os}1}^*, \dots, \hat{\mu}_{\text{os}B}^*$. Let

$$\bar{\mu}_{\text{os}}^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\mu}_{\text{os}b}^*,$$

in which case the bootstrap estimate of the squared standard error is

$$\hat{\sigma}_{\text{osboot}}^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\mu}_{\text{os}b}^* - \bar{\mu}_{\text{os}}^*)^2. \quad (3.35)$$

Again $B = 25$ might suffice, while $B = 100$ appears to be more than sufficient.

3.7.1 R Function onestep

The R function

```
onestep(x,bend=1.28)
```

computes the one-step M-estimator given by Eq. (3.31).

3.8 W-Estimators

W-estimators of location are closely related to M-estimators and usually they give identical results. However, when extending M-estimators to regression, the computational method employed by W-estimators is typically used. This method is just another way of solving Eq. (3.26). For completeness, W-estimators are briefly introduced here.

Let

$$w(x) = \frac{\Psi(x)}{x}.$$

In this last equation, Ψ could be any of the functions associated with M-estimators, and the generic measure of scale τ , used to define the general class of M-estimators, could be used. If for example τ is estimated with MADN, then $\hat{\mu}_m$ is determined by solving Eq. (3.26), which becomes

$$\sum \left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\text{MADN}} \right) w \left(\frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_m}{\text{MADN}} \right) = 0. \quad (3.36)$$

Rearranging terms in Eq. (3.36) yields

$$\hat{\mu}_m = \frac{\sum X_i w\{(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)/\text{MADN}\}}{\sum w\{(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)/\text{MADN}\}}.$$

This last equation does not yield an immediate value for $\hat{\mu}_m$ because $\hat{\mu}_m$ appears on both sides of the equation. However, it suggests an iterative method for obtaining $\hat{\mu}_m$ that has practical value.

Set $k = 0$ and let $\hat{\mu}_0$ be some initial estimate of $\hat{\mu}_m$. For example, $\hat{\mu}_0$ could be the sample mean. Let

$$U_{ik} = \frac{X_i - \hat{\mu}_k}{\text{MADN}}.$$

Then the iteration formula is

$$\hat{\mu}_{k+1} = \frac{\sum X_i w(U_{ik})}{\sum w(U_{ik})}.$$

That is, given $\hat{\mu}_k$, which is an approximate value for $\hat{\mu}_m$ that solves (3.36), an improved approximation is $\hat{\mu}_{k+1}$. One simply keeps iterating until $|\hat{\mu}_{k+1} - \hat{\mu}_k|$ is small, say less than 0.0001.

The iterative method just described is an example of what is called *iteratively reweighted least squares*. To explain, let $\hat{\mu}$ be any estimate of a measure of location and recall that $\hat{\mu} = \bar{X}$ is the value that minimizes $\sum(X_i - \hat{\mu})^2$. In the context of regression, minimizing this sum is based on the least squares principle taught in every introductory statistics course. Put another way, the sample mean is the ordinary least squares (OLS) estimator. Weighted least squares, based on *fixed* weights, w_i , determines a measure of location by minimizing $\sum w_i(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m)^2$, and this is done by solving $\sum w_i(X_i - \hat{\mu}_m) = 0$, which yields

$$\hat{\mu} = \frac{\sum w_i X_i}{\sum w_i}.$$

The problem in the present context is that the weights in Eq. (3.33) are not fixed, they depend on the value of $\hat{\mu}_m$ which is not known but updated with each iteration, so this last equation for $\hat{\mu}$ does not apply. Instead, the weights are recomputed according to the value of $\hat{\mu}_k$.

3.8.1 Tau Measure of Location

A variation of the W-estimator just described plays a role in some settings. Called the *tau measure of location*, it is computed as follows: Let

$$W_c(x) = \left(1 - \left(\frac{x}{c}\right)^2\right)^2 I(|x| \leq c)$$

where the indicator function $I(|x| \leq c) = 1$ if $|x| \leq c$; otherwise $I(|x| \leq c) = 0$. The weights are

$$w_i = W_c \left(\frac{X_i - M}{\text{MAD}} \right),$$

and the resulting measure of location is denoted by

$$\hat{\mu}_\tau = \frac{\sum w_i X_i}{\sum w_i}.$$

Following [Maronna and Zamar \(2002\)](#), $c = 4.5$ is used unless stated otherwise.

3.8.2 R Function *tauloc*

The R function

```
tauloc(x,cval=4.5)
```

computes the tau measure of location.

3.8.3 Zuo's Weighted Estimator

Yet another approach to choosing the weights when computing a W-estimator was suggested by [Zuo \(2010\)](#). (It is related to a class of multivariate W-estimators introduced in Section 6.3.7.) Let

$$D_i = 1/(1 + |X_i - M|/\text{MAD}).$$

The weights are taken to be

$$w_i = I_{D_i \geq c} + \frac{e^{-k(1-D_i^2/c^2)^2} - e^{-k}}{(1 - e^{-k})I_{D_i < c}},$$

where the indicator function $I_{D_i \geq c} = 1$ if $D_i \geq c$, otherwise $I_{D_i \geq c} = 0$. The constant c satisfies $0 \leq c \leq 1$ and $k > 0$. Zuo suggests using $k = 3$ and $c = 0.2$. The practical advantages of this estimator, relative to the many other robust location estimators that have been studied extensively, are unclear.

3.9 The Hodges–Lehmann Estimator

Chapter 2 mentioned some practical concerns about R-measures of location in general and the [Hodges and Lehmann \(1963\)](#) estimator in particular. But the Hodges–Lehmann estimator plays a fundamental role when applying standard rank-based methods (in particular the Wilcoxon signed rank test), so for completeness the details of this estimator are given here.

The *Walsh averages* of n observations refers to all pairwise averages: $(X_i + X_j)/2$, for all $i \leq j$. The Hodges–Lehmann estimator is the median of all Walsh averages, namely,

$$\hat{\theta}_{\text{HL}} = \text{med}_{i \leq j} \frac{X_i + X_j}{2}.$$

3.10 Skipped Estimators

Skipped estimators of location refer to the natural strategy of checking the data for outliers, removing any that are found, and averaging the values that remain. The first skipped estimator appears to be one proposed by Tukey (see [Andrews et al., 1972](#)) where checks for outliers were based on a boxplot rule. (Boxplot methods for detecting outliers are described in Section 3.13.) The one-step M-estimator given by Eq. (3.32) is almost a skipped estimator. If we ignore the term $1.28(\text{MADN})(i_2 - i_1)$ in the numerator of Eq. (3.32), an M-estimator removes the value X_i if

$$\frac{|X_i - M|}{\text{MADN}} > 1.28$$

and averages the values that remain. In essence, X_i is declared an outlier if it satisfies this last equation. But based on how the M-estimator is defined, the term $1.28(\text{MADN})(i_2 - i_1)$ arises.

When testing hypotheses, a slight variation of the skipped estimator, just described, has practical value. This *modified one-step M-estimator* (MOM) simply averages values not declared outliers, but to get reasonably good efficiency under normality, the outlier detection rule used by the one-step M-estimator is modified. Now X_i is declared an outlier if

$$\frac{|X_i - M|}{\text{MADN}} > 2.24$$

(which is a special case of a multivariate outlier detection method derived by [Rousseeuw & van Zomeren, 1990](#)). This last expression is known as the *Hampel identifier*, only Hampel used 3.5 rather than 2.24. When using 3.5, this will be called the Hampel version of MOM (HMOM).

3.10.1 R Functions *mom* and *bmean*

The R function

```
mom(x,bend=2.24)
```

computes the MOM estimate of location, where the argument bend is the constant used in the Hampel identifier. The function

```
bmean(x,mbox=TRUE)
```

computes a skipped estimator where outliers are identified by a boxplot rule covered in Section 3.13. The default value for mbox is TRUE, indicating that Carling's method (described in Section 3.13.3) is used, and mbox=FALSE uses the boxplot rule based on the ideal fourths.

3.11 Some Comparisons of the Location Estimators

Illustrations given in the previous sections of this chapter, based on data from actual studies, demonstrate that the estimated standard errors associated with robust estimates of location can be substantially smaller than the standard error of the sample mean. It has been hinted that these robust estimators generally compete well with the sample mean when sampling from a normal distribution, but no details have been given. There is also the concern of how estimators compare under various non-normal distributions, including skewed distributions as a special case. Consequently, this section briefly compares the standard error of the robust estimators to the standard error of the sample mean for a few distributions.

One of the non-normal distributions considered here is the lognormal shown in Figure 3.3. The random variable X is said to have a lognormal distribution if the distribution of $Y = \ln(X)$ is normal. It is a skewed distribution for which standard methods for computing confidence intervals for the mean can be unsatisfactory, even with $n = 160$. (Details are given in Chapters 4 and 5.) Consequently, there is a general interest in how methods based on alternative measures of location perform when sampling from this particular distribution. The immediate concern is whether robust estimators have relatively small standard errors for this special case.

Table 3.7 shows the variance of several estimators for a few distributions when $n = 10$. (Results for MOM, HMOM, and the Harrell–Davis estimator are based on simulations with 10,000 replications.) As can be seen, the small-sample efficiency of the tau measure of location does not compete well with a 20% trimmed, MOM and the one-step M-estimator.

Table 3.7: Variances of Selected Estimators, $n = 10$.

Estimator	Distribution			
	Normal	Lognormal	One-Wild	Slash
Mean	0.1000	0.4658	1.0900	∞
$\bar{X}_t (\gamma = 0.1)$	0.1053	0.2238	0.1432	∞
$\bar{X}_t (\gamma = 0.2)$	0.1133	0.1775	0.1433	0.9649
Median	0.1383	0.1727	0.1679	0.7048
$\hat{\mu}_m$ (Huber)	0.1085	0.1976	0.1463	0.9544
$\hat{\theta}_{0.5}$	0.1176	0.1729	0.1482	1.4731
MOM	0.1243	0.2047	0.1409	0.7331
HMOM	0.1092	0.2405	0.1357	1.0272
$\hat{\mu}_\tau$	0.1342	0.3268	2.1610	

A more detailed study came to the same conclusion (Özdemir & Wilcox, 2010). The distribution *one-wild* refers to sampling from a normal distribution and multiplying one of the observations by 10. Observations are generated from the *slash* distribution by generating an observation from the standard normal distribution and dividing by an independent uniform random variable on the interval (0, 1). Both the one-wild and slash distributions are symmetric distributions with heavier than normal tails. The slash distribution has an extremely heavy tail. In fact it has infinite variance. The motivation for considering these distributions, particularly the slash distribution, is to see how an estimator performs under extreme conditions. It is unclear how heavy the tails of a distribution might be in practice, so it is of interest to see how an estimator performs for a distribution that represents an extreme departure from normality that is surely unrealistic. If an estimator performs reasonably well under normality and continues to perform well when sampling from a slash distribution, this suggests that it has practical value for any distribution that might arise in practice by providing protection against complete disaster, disaster meaning standard errors that are extremely large compared to some other estimator that might have been used.

The ideal estimator would have a standard error as small or smaller than any other estimator. None of the estimators in Table 3.7 satisfies this criterion. When sampling from a normal distribution, the sample mean has the lowest standard error, but the improvement over the 10% trimmed mean ($\gamma = 0.1$), the 20% trimmed mean, the Harrell–Davis estimator, and the M-estimator using Huber’s Ψ , $\hat{\mu}_m$, is relatively small. Using the sample median is relatively unsatisfactory. For heavy-tailed distributions the sample mean performs poorly and its performance can be made as bad as desired by making the tails of the distribution sufficiently heavy. The two estimators that do reasonably well for all of the distributions considered are the 20% trimmed mean and $\hat{\mu}_m$. Note that even the standard error of the Harrell–Davis estimator, $\hat{\theta}_{0.5}$, becomes relatively large when the tails of a distribution are sufficiently heavy. Again, there is the possibility that in practice, $\hat{\theta}_{0.5}$ competes well with the 20% trimmed mean and the

M-estimator, but an obvious concern is that exceptions might occur. In situations where interest is specifically directed at quantiles, and in particular the population median, the choice between the sample median and the Harrell–Davis estimator is unclear. The Harrell–Davis estimator has a relatively small standard error when sampling from a normal distribution, but as the tails of a distribution get heavier, eventually the sample median performs substantially better. Although MOM has a lower standard error than the median under normality, all other estimators have a lower standard error than MOM for this special case. Switching to the Hampel identifier when using MOM (HMOM), efficiency now competes well with a 20% trimmed mean and the M-estimator based on Huber’s Ψ , but for the lognormal distribution, HMOM performs rather poorly, and it is substantially worse than MOM when sampling from the slash distribution. The tau measure of location does not perform all that well, particularly when dealing with the slash distribution. In exploratory studies one might consider two or more estimators, but in the context of testing hypotheses, particularly in a confirmatory study, some might object to using multiple estimators of location because this will inflate the probability of at least one Type I error. There are methods for adjusting the individual tests so that the probability of at least one Type I error does not exceed a specified value, but such an adjustment might lower power by a substantial amount.

If a skipped estimator is used where outliers are detected via a boxplot rule (described in Section 3.13), good efficiency can be obtained under normality, but situations arise where other estimators offer a distinct advantage. For the situations in Table 3.7, under normality, the variance of this skipped estimator is 0.109 when using Carling’s modification of the boxplot method to detect outliers, and switching to the boxplot rule based on the ideal fourths, nearly the same result is obtained. For the lognormal distribution, however, the variances of the skipped estimators are 0.27 and 0.28, approximately, making them the least accurate estimators, on average, excluding the sample mean. They perform the best for the one-wild distribution, but for the slash, they are the least satisfactory excluding the 10% mean and mean.

It cannot be stressed too strongly that no single measure of location always has the lowest standard error. For the data in Table 3.2, the lowest estimated standard error was 45.8, obtained for $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ using the Maritz–Jarrett method. (A bootstrap estimate of the standard error is 42.) The appeal of the 20% trimmed mean and M-estimator of location is that they guard against relatively large standard errors. Moreover, the potential reduction in the standard error using other estimators is relatively small compared to the possible reduction using the 20% trimmed mean or M-estimator instead.

Based purely on achieving a high breakdown point, the median and an M-estimator (based on Huber’s Ψ) are preferable to a 20% trimmed or the Hodges–Lehmann estimator. (For an analysis when sample sizes are very small, see Rousseeuw & Verboven, 2002.) But in terms

of achieving accurate probability coverage, methods based on a 20% trimmed mean often are more satisfactory.

3.12 More Measures of Scale

While measures of location are often the focus of attention versus measures of scale, measures of scale are of interest in their own right. Some measures of scale have already been discussed, namely ω estimated by MAD and the Winsorized variance σ_w^2 . Many additional measures of scale appear in the literature. Two additional measures are described here, which play a role in subsequent chapters.

To begin, it helps to be precise about what is meant by a *scale estimator*. It is any nonnegative function, $\hat{\zeta}$, such that for any constants a and b ,

$$\hat{\zeta}(a + bX_1, \dots, a + bX_n) = |b|\hat{\zeta}(X_1, \dots, X_n). \quad (3.37)$$

From basic principles, the sample standard deviation, s , satisfies this definition. In words, a scale estimator ignores changes in location and it responds to uniform changes in scale in a manner consistent with what is expected based on standard results related to s . In the terminology of Chapter 2, $\hat{\zeta}$ should be location-invariant and scale-equivariant.

A general class of measures of scale, that has been found to have practical value, stems from the influence function of M-estimators of location when distributions are symmetric. For this special case, the influence function of μ_m takes on a rather simple form:

$$\begin{aligned} IF_m(X) &= \frac{E(\Psi^2(Y))}{\{E(\Psi'(Y))\}^2}, \\ Y &= \frac{X - \mu_m}{K\tau}, \end{aligned} \quad (3.38)$$

where τ and Ψ are as in Section 3.6. The (asymptotic) variance of $\sqrt{n}\hat{\mu}_m$ is

$$\zeta^2 = \frac{K^2\tau^2 E(\Psi^2(Y))}{\{E(\Psi'(Y))\}^2} \quad (3.39)$$

and this defines a broad class of measures of scale. (In case it is not obvious, the reason for considering the variance of $\sqrt{n}\hat{\mu}_m$, rather than the variance of $\hat{\mu}_m$, is that the latter goes to 0 as n gets large, and the goal to define a measure of scale for the distribution under study, not the sampling distribution of the M-estimator that is being used.) Included as a special case among the possible choices for ζ is the usual population standard deviation, σ . To see this, take $\Psi(x) = x$, $K = 1$ and $\tau = \sigma$, in which case $\zeta = \sigma$.

3.12.1 The Biweight Midvariance

There is the issue of choosing Ψ when defining a measure of scale with Eq. (3.39). For reasons to be described, there is practical interest in choosing Ψ to be the biweight given by Eq. (3.19). The derivative of the biweight is $\Psi'(x) = (1 - x^2)(1 - 5x^2)$ for $|x| < 1$, otherwise it is equal to 0.

Let K be any positive constant. For reasons given later, $K = 9$ is a common choice. Also, let τ be ω , which is estimated by MAD. To estimate ζ , set

$$Y_i = \frac{X_i - M}{K \times \text{MAD}},$$

$$a_i = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } |Y_i| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{if } |Y_i| \geq 1, \end{cases}$$

in which case the estimate of ζ is

$$\hat{\zeta}_{bi} = \frac{\sqrt{n} \sqrt{\sum a_i (X_i - M)^2 (1 - Y_i^2)^4}}{|\sum a_i (1 - Y_i^2)(1 - 5Y_i^2)|}. \quad (3.40)$$

The quantity $\hat{\zeta}_{bi}^2$ is called a *biweight midvariance*. It appears to have a finite sample breakdown point of approximately 0.5 (Goldberg & Iglewicz, 1992), but a formal proof has not been found.

Explaining the motivation for $\hat{\zeta}_{bi}$ requires some comments on methods for judging estimators of scale. A tempting approach is to compare the standard errors of any two estimators, but this can be unsatisfactory. The reason is that if $\hat{\zeta}$ is a measure of scale, so is $b\hat{\zeta}$, a result that follows from the definition of a measure of scale given by Eq. (3.37). But the variance of $\hat{\zeta}$ is larger than the variance of $b\hat{\zeta}$ if $0 < b < 1$, and in fact the variance of $b\hat{\zeta}$ can be made arbitrarily small by choosing b appropriately. What is needed is a measure for comparing scale estimators that is not affected by b . A common method for dealing with this problem (e.g., Lax, 1985; Iglewicz, 1983) is to compare two scale estimators with $\text{VAR}(\ln(\hat{\zeta}))$, the variance of the natural logarithm of the estimators being considered. Note that $\ln(b\hat{\zeta}) = \ln(b) + \ln(\hat{\zeta})$ for any $b > 0$ and scale estimator $\hat{\zeta}$, so $\text{VAR}(\ln(b\hat{\zeta})) = \text{VAR}(\ln(\hat{\zeta}))$. That is, the variance of the logarithm of $\hat{\zeta}$ is not affected by the choice of b .

Another method of comparing scale estimators is in terms of the variance of $\hat{\zeta}/\zeta$. Note that if $\hat{\zeta}$ and ζ are replaced by $b\hat{\zeta}$ and $b\zeta$ for any $b > 0$, the ratio $\hat{\zeta}/\zeta$ remains unchanged, so the problem mentioned in the previous paragraph has been addressed.

Lax (1985) compared over 150 methods of estimating measures of scale, several of which belong to the class of measures defined by Eq. (3.39). Comparisons were made in terms of what

Table 3.8: How to Compute the Biweight Midvariance, $\hat{\xi}_{\text{bimid}}^2$.

Set

$$Y_i = \frac{X_i - M}{9 \times MAD},$$

$$a_i = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } |Y_i| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{if } |Y_i| \geq 1, \end{cases}$$

in which case

$$\hat{\xi}_{\text{bimid}} = \frac{\sqrt{n} \sqrt{\sum a_i (X_i - M)^2 (1 - Y_i^2)^4}}{|\sum a_i (1 - Y_i^2)(1 - 5Y_i^2)|}, \quad (3.41)$$

and the biweight midvariance is $\hat{\xi}_{\text{bimid}}^2$.

is called the *triefficiency* of an estimator. To explain, let V_{\min} be the smallest known value of $\text{VAR}(\ln(\hat{\zeta}))$ among all possible choices for an estimator of scale, $\hat{\zeta}$. Then

$$E = 100 \times \frac{V_{\min}}{\text{VAR}(\ln(\hat{\zeta}))}$$

is a measure of *efficiency*. For some measures of scale V_{\min} can be determined exactly for a given distribution, while in other situations V_{\min} is replaced by the smallest variance obtained, via simulations, among the many estimators of scale that are being considered. For example, when sampling from a normal distribution with $n = 20$, the smallest attainable value of $\text{VAR}(\ln(\hat{\zeta}))$ is 0.026 which is attained by s , the sample standard deviation. Thus, for normal distributions, s has efficiency $E = 100$, the best possible value. The main point is that the efficiency of many estimators has been determined for a variety of distributions. Moreover, three distributions have played a major role: normal, one-wild, and slash, already described. The smallest efficiency of an estimator, among these three distributions, is called its *triefficiency*. For example, if $n = 20$, s has efficiency 100, 0, and 0 for these three distributions, the smallest of these three efficiencies is 0, so its triefficiency is 0. Using $K = 9$ in Eq. (3.40) when defining $\hat{\xi}_{\text{bi}}$, the efficiencies corresponding to these three distributions are 86.7, 85.8, and 86.1, so the triefficiency is 85.8, and this is the highest triefficiency among the measures of scale considered by Lax (cf. Croux, 1994).

Because the choice $K = 9$ in the scale estimator $\hat{\zeta}$, given by Eq. (3.40), yields the highest triefficiency of any of the estimators studied by Lax, the term biweight midvariance will assume $K = 9$ unless stated otherwise. Table 3.8 summarizes how to compute this measure of scale, which will be labeled $\hat{\xi}_{\text{bimid}}^2$.

3.12.2 R Function bivar

The R function

$$\text{bivar}(x)$$

computes the biweight midvariance as described in [Table 3.8](#) using the data stored in the R variable x . For the data in [Table 3.2](#), the function bivar returns the value 25,512 as the estimated biweight midvariance.

3.12.3 The Percentage Bend Midvariance and Tau Measure of Variation

Two other measures of scale should be mentioned. The first, replaces Ψ , the biweight in Eq. [\(3.39\)](#), with Huber's Ψ . Following [Shoemaker and Hettmansperger \(1982\)](#), the particular form of Huber's Ψ used here is

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-1, \min(1, x)]. \quad (3.42)$$

Also, rather than use $\tau = \omega$ when defining Y in Eq. [\(3.39\)](#), a different measure is used instead. Again let θ be the population median. For any β , $0 < \beta < 0.5$ define ω_β to be the measure of scale determined by

$$P(|X - \theta| < \omega_\beta) = 1 - \beta.$$

Thus, ω_β is the $1 - \beta$ quantile of the distribution of $|X - \theta|$. If X has a standard normal distribution, then ω_β is the $1 - \beta/2$ quantile. For example, if $\beta = 0.1$, $\omega_{0.1} = 1.645$, the 0.95 quantile. Note that when $\beta = 0.5$, ω_β is just the measure of scale ω already discussed and estimated by MAD.

The parameter ω could be rescaled so that it estimates the population standard deviation, σ , when sampling from a normal distribution. That is,

$$\omega_{N,\beta} = \frac{\omega_\beta}{z_{1-\frac{\beta}{2}}}$$

could be used where $z_{1-\beta/2}$ is the $1 - \beta/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution. When $\beta = 0.5$, $\omega_{N,\beta}$ is just ω_N which is estimated by MADN. [Shoemaker and Hettmansperger \(1982\)](#) do not rescale ω , and this convention is followed here. Shoemaker and Hettmansperger choose $\beta = 0.1$, but here $\beta = 0.2$ is used unless stated otherwise. The resulting measure of scale given by Eq. [\(3.39\)](#), with $K = 1$, is called the *percentage bend midvariance* and labeled ζ_{pb}^2 . When $\beta = 0.1$ and sampling is from a standard normal distribution,

Table 3.9: How to Compute the Percentage Bend Midvariance, $\hat{\zeta}_{pb}^2$.

Set $m = [(1 - \beta)n + 0.5]$, the value of $(1 - \beta)n + 0.5$ rounded down to the nearest integer. For good efficiency, under normality, versus the usual sample variance, $\beta = 0.1$ is a good choice, in which case $m = [0.9n + 0.5]$. For example, if $n = 56$, $m = [0.9 \times 56 + 0.5] = [50.9] = 50$. Let $W_i = |X_i - M|$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, and let $W_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq W_{(n)}$ be the W_i values written in ascending order. But a concern with $\beta = 0.1$ is that the breakdown point is a bit low, in which case something like $\beta = 0.2$ might be preferable. The estimate of ω_β is

$$\hat{\omega}_\beta = W_{(m)},$$

the m th largest of the W_i values. Put another way, $W_{(m)}$ is the estimate of the $1 - \beta$ quantile of the distribution of W .

Next, set

$$Y_i = \frac{X_i - M}{\hat{\omega}_\beta},$$

$$a_i = \begin{cases} 1, & \text{if } |Y_i| < 1 \\ 0, & \text{if } |Y_i| \geq 1, \end{cases}$$

in which case the estimated percentage bend midvariance is

$$\hat{\zeta}_{pb}^2 = \frac{n\hat{\omega}_\beta^2 \sum \{\Psi(Y_i)\}^2}{(\sum a_i)^2}, \quad (3.43)$$

where

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-1, \min(1, x)].$$

$\zeta_{pb}^2 = 1.03$, while for $\beta = 0.2$, $\zeta_{pb}^2 = 1.05$. A method of estimating ζ_{pb}^2 is shown in Table 3.9.

There are two reasons for including the percentage bend midvariance in this book. First, [Bickel and Lehmann \(1976\)](#) argue that if both X and Y have symmetric distributions about zero, and if $|X|$ is stochastically larger than $|Y|$, then it should be the case that a measure of scale should be larger for X than it is for Y . That is, if ζ_x is some proposed measure of scale for the random variable X , it should be the case that $\zeta_x > \zeta_y$. Bickel and Lehmann define a measure of scale that satisfies this property to be a *measure of dispersion*. The bi-weight midvariance is not a measure of dispersion ([Shoemaker & Hettmansperger, 1982](#)). In contrast, if Huber's Ψ is used in Eq. (3.39) with $K = 1$, the resulting measure of scale, the percentage bend midvariance, is a measure of dispersion. However, if Huber's Ψ is used with $K > 1$, the resulting measure of scale is not a measure of dispersion ([Shoemaker & Hettmansperger, 1982](#)). (The Winsorized variance is also a measure of dispersion.) The second reason is that a slight modification of the percentage bend midvariance yields a useful

measure of association (a robust analog of Pearson's correlation coefficient) when testing for independence.

The inclusion of the biweight and percentage bend midvariance is motivated by results in Lax (1985). Note that Lax refers to these measures of variation as *A-estimators*, but here, following Shoemaker and Hettmansperger (1982), the terms biweight and percentage bend midvariance are used. More recently, Randal (2008) compared these measures of scale to more recently proposed estimators and again concluded that the biweight and percentage bend midvariances perform relatively well. Two measures of scale not included in the study by Randal are Rocke's (1996) TBS estimator, which is introduced in Section 6.3.3 in the more general setting of multivariate data, and the tau measure of scale described in Yohai and Zamar (1988). Checks on the efficiency of these estimators indicate that under normality, the percentage bend midvariance and the tau measure of variation perform relatively well. For the one-wild distribution and the contaminated normal distribution in Section 1.1, the biweight and percentage bend midvariances are best. But for a sufficiently heavy-tailed distribution (the slash distribution), the tau measure of scale offers an advantage.

Finally, the other measure of variation that should be mentioned is the *tau measure of variation* given by

$$\xi_{\tau}^2 = \frac{\text{MAD}^2}{n} \sum \rho_c \left(\frac{X_i - \mu_{\text{tau}}}{\text{MAD}} \right),$$

where $\rho_c = \min(x^2, c^2)$ and μ_{tau} is the tau measure of location introduced in Section 3.8.1. Following Maronna and Zamar, $c = 3$ is used unless stated otherwise.

3.12.4 R Functions *pbvar*, *tauvar*

The R function

```
pbvar(x,beta=0.2)
```

computes the percentage bend midvariance for the data stored in the vector x . The default value for the argument beta, which is β in Table 3.9, is 0.2. An argument for using beta=0.1 is that the resulting estimator is about 85% as efficient as the sample variance under normality. With beta=0.2, it is only about 67% as efficient, but a concern about beta=0.1 is that the breakdown point is only 0.1. For the data in Table 3.2, the function returns the value 54,422 with beta=0.1, while with beta=0.2 the estimate is 30,681, beta=0.5 the estimate is 35,568. In contrast, the biweight midvariance is estimated to be 25,512. In terms of resistance, beta=0.5 is preferable to beta=0.1 or 0.2, but for other goals discussed in subsequent chapters, beta=0.1

or 0.2 might be preferred for general use. The R function

```
tauvar(x,cval=3)
```

computes the tau measure of variation.

3.12.5 The Interquartile Range

The population interquartile range is the difference between the 0.75 and 0.25 quantiles, $x_{0.75} - x_{0.25}$; it plays a role when dealing with a variety problems to be described. As previously noted, many quantile estimators have been proposed, so there are many ways the interquartile range might be estimated. A simple quantile estimator, \hat{x}_q , was described in Section 3.3, this leads to a simple estimate of the interquartile range, but for various purposes alternative estimates of the interquartile range have been found to be useful. In particular, when checking data for outliers, results in Frigge, Hoaglin, and Iglewicz (1989) suggest using what are called the *ideal fourths* (cf. Carling, 2000; Cleveland, 1985; Hoaglin & Iglewicz, 1987; Hyndman & Fan, 1996).

The computations are as follows. Let $j = [(n/4) + (5/12)]$. That is, j is $(n/4) + (5/12)$ rounded down to the nearest integer. Let

$$h = \frac{n}{4} + \frac{5}{12} - j.$$

Then the estimate of the lower quartile (the 0.25 quantile) is given by

$$q_1 = (1 - h)X_{(j)} + hX_{(j+1)} \quad (3.44)$$

Letting $k = n - j + 1$, the estimate of the upper quartile, is

$$q_2 = (1 - h)X_{(k)} + hX_{(k-1)}. \quad (3.45)$$

So the estimate of the interquartile range is

$$\text{IQR} = q_2 - q_1.$$

3.12.6 R Functions *idealf* and *idrange*

The R function

```
idealf(x)
```

computes the ideal fourths for the data stored in the R variable x. The R function

`idrange(x,na.rm=FALSE),`

as well as the R function

`idealfIQR(x),`

compute the interquartile range based on the ideal fourths. By default, `idrange` does not remove missing values. Setting `na.rm=TRUE` when using `idrange`, missing values are removed. The R function `idealfIQR` removes missing value automatically.

3.13 Some Outlier Detection Methods

This section summarizes some outlier detection methods, two of which are variations of so-called boxplot techniques. One of these methods has, in essence, already been described, but it is convenient to include it here along with a description of relevant software.

3.13.1 Rules Based on Means and Variances

We begin with a method for detecting outliers that is known to be unsatisfactory, but it is a natural strategy to consider, so its limitations should be made explicit. The rule is to declare X_i an outlier if

$$\frac{|X_i - \bar{X}|}{s} > K,$$

where K is some constant. Basic properties of normal distributions suggest appropriate choices for K . For illustrative purposes, consider $K = 2.24$. (For a modification that is based in part on fitting a g-and-h distribution to the data, see [Xu, Iglewicz, & Chervoneva, 2014](#).) A concern about this rule, and indeed any rule based on the sample mean and standard deviation, is that it suffers from *masking*, meaning that the very presence of outliers masks their detection. Outliers affect the sample means, but in a certain sense they have a bigger impact on the standard deviation.

■ Example

Consider the values 2, 2, 3, 3, 3, 4, 4, 4, 100,000, 100,000. Obviously the value 100,000 is an outlier and surely any reasonable outlier detection method would flag the value 100,000 as being unusual. But the method just described fails to do so.

3.13.2 A Method Based on the Interquartile Range

The standard boxplot approach to detecting outliers is based on the interquartile range. As previously noted, numerous quantile estimators have been proposed, and when checking for outliers, a good method for estimating the quartiles appears to be the ideal fourths, q_1 and q_2 , described in Section 3.12. Then a commonly used rule is to declare X_i an outlier if

$$X_i < q_1 - k(q_2 - q_1) \text{ or } X_i > q_2 + k(q_2 - q_1), \quad (3.46)$$

where $k = 1.5$ is used unless stated otherwise.

3.13.3 Carling's Modification

One useful way of characterizing an outlier detection method is with its *outside rate per observation*, p_n , which refers to the expected proportion of observations declared outliers. So if m represents the number of points declared outliers based on a sample of size n , $p_n = E(m/n)$. A common goal is to have p_n reasonably small, say approximately equal to 0.05, when sampling from a normal distribution. A criticism of the boxplot rule given by Eq. (3.46) is that p_n is somewhat unstable as a function of n ; p_n tends to be higher when sample sizes are small. To address this, [Carling \(2000\)](#) suggests declaring X_i an outlier if

$$X_i < M - k(q_2 - q_1) \text{ or } X_i > M + k(q_2 - q_1), \quad (3.47)$$

where M is the usual sample median, q_1 and q_2 are given by Eqs. (3.44) and (3.45), respectively, and

$$k = \frac{17.63n - 23.64}{7.74n - 3.71} \quad (3.48)$$

(cf. [Schwertman & de Silva, 2007](#)).

3.13.4 A MAD-Median Rule

Henceforth, the MAD-Median rule for detecting outliers will refer to declaring X_i an outlier if

$$\frac{|X_i - M|}{\text{MAD}/0.6745} > K,$$

where K is taken to be $\sqrt{\chi_{0.975,1}^2}$, the square root of the 0.975 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with one degree of freedom, which is approximately 2.24 (cf. [Davies & Gather, 1993](#)). This rule is a special case of a multivariate outlier detection method proposed by [Rousseeuw and van Zomeren \(1990\)](#).

Detecting outliers based on MAD and the median has the appeal of being able to handle a large number of outliers because both MAD and the median have the highest possible breakdown, 0.5. We will see, however, that for certain purposes, the choice between a boxplot rule and a MAD-Median rule is not always straightforward.

3.13.5 R Functions *outbox*, *out* and *boxplot*

The R function

```
outbox(x,mbox=FALSE,gval=NA)
```

checks for outliers using one of two boxplot methods just described. As usual, the argument x is any vector containing data. Using $mbox=FALSE$ results in using the method in Section 3.13.2. Setting $mbox=TRUE$ results in using Carling's modification in Section 3.13.3. The argument $gval$ can be used to alter the constant k . If unspecified, $k = 1.5$ when using the method in Section 3.13.2, and k is given by Eq. (3.48) when using the method in Section 3.13.3.

The R function

```
out(x)
```

checks for outliers using the MAD-Median rule in Section 3.13.4. (This function contains additional arguments that are related to detecting outliers among multivariate data, but the details are postponed for now.)

The built-in R function

```
boxplot(x)
```

creates the usual graphical version of the boxplot, examples of which are shown in Figure 3.6 and Figure 3.7. (But this function does not use the ideal fourths.) Several variations of this method for plotting data have been proposed that were recently summarized by Marmolejo-Ramos and Tian (2010).

It should be noted that the boxplot rule for detecting outliers has been criticized on the grounds that it might declare too many points outliers when there is skewness. More precisely, if a distribution is skewed to the right, among the larger values that are observed, too many might be declared outliers. Hubert and Vandervieren (2008) review the literature and suggest

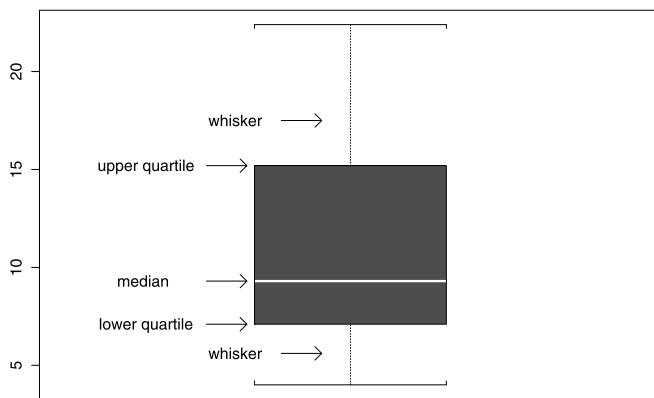


Figure 3.6: An example of a boxplot when there are no outliers.

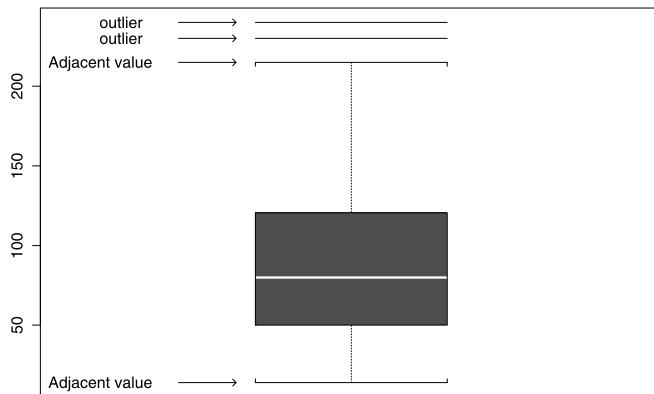


Figure 3.7: An example of a boxplot when there are outliers.

a modification of the boxplot rule that is based in part on a robust measure of skewness, called the *medcouple*, which was introduced by [Brys, Hubert, and Struyf \(2004\)](#) and is given by

$$MC = \text{med}(h(X_i, X_j)), \quad X_i \leq M \leq X_j,$$

where for all $X_i \neq X_j$,

$$h(X_i, X_j) = \frac{(X_j - M) - (M - X_i)}{X_j - X_i}.$$

If $MC > 0$, declare X_i values outside the interval

$$[q_1 - 1.5e^{-4MC}(q_2 - q_1), q_2 + 1.5e^{3MC}(q_2 - q_1)]$$

as potential outliers. If $MC < 0$, declare X_i values outside the interval

$$[q_1 - 1.5e^{-3MC}(q_2 - q_1), q_2 + 1.5e^{4MC}(q_2 - q_1)]$$

as potential outliers.

There is, however, a feature of this adjusted boxplot rule that should be mentioned. Imagine a distribution that is skewed to the right. Among the larger values, the adjusted boxplot rule might declare fewer points outliers, as intended, but among the lower values it might declare points outliers that are not flagged as outliers by the boxplot rule. [Bruffaerts, Verardi, and Vermandele \(2014\)](#) raise other concerns about this outlier detection method and suggest a more involved approach.

3.13.6 R Functions *adjboxout* and *adjbox*

The R function

`adjboxout(x)`

applies the adjusted boxplot rule just described. The function returns the values flagged as outliers. It also returns values stored in \$cl and \$cu, which are the lower and upper ends of the interval used to determine whether a value is an outlier. To create a boxplot, the R function

`adjbox(x)`

can be used, which is stored in the R library robustbase.

■ Example

Consider the values

12, 33, 47, 55, 85, 87, 87, 96, 97, 99, 113, 118, 128, 138, 165, 202, 213, 218, 275, 653.

Both the boxplot rule and the adjusted boxplot rule declare the value 653 to be an outlier, which certainly seems reasonable based on a casual inspection of the data. But unlike the boxplot rule, the adjusted boxplot rule declares the values 12, 33 and 47 outliers as well.

3.14 Exercises

- Included among the R functions written for this book is the function `ghdist(n,g=0,h=0)`. It generates n observations from a so-called g-and-h distribution, which is described in more detail in Chapter 4. The command `ghdist(30,0,0.5)` will generate thirty observations from a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution. Generate thirty observations in this manner, create the density estimates using the functions `skerd`, `kdplot`, `rdplot` and `akerd`. Repeat this twenty times and comment on the pattern of results.
- In the study by [Dana \(1990\)](#) on self-awareness, described in this chapter (in connection with [Table 3.2](#)), a second group of subjects yielded the observations

59 106 174 207 219 237 313 365 458 497 515 529 557 615 625 645 973 1065 3215.

Compute the sample median, the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median, the M-estimate of location (based on Huber’s Ψ), and the 10% and 20% trimmed means. Estimate the standard errors for each location estimator and compare the results.

- For the data in Exercise 1, compute MADN, the biweight midvariance, and the percentage bend midvariance. Compare the results to those obtained for the data in [Table 3.2](#). What do the results suggest about which group is more dispersed?
- For the data in Exercise 1, estimate the deciles using the Harrell–Davis estimator. Do the same for the data in [Table 3.2](#). Plot the difference between the deciles as a function of the estimated deciles for the data in Exercise 1. What do the results suggest? Estimate the standard errors associated with each decile estimator.
- Comment on the strategy of applying the boxplot to the data in Exercise 2, removing any outliers, computing the sample mean for the data that remain, and then estimating the standard error of this sample mean based on the sample variance of the data that remain.
- [Cushny and Peebles \(1904\)](#) conducted a study on the effects of optical isomers of hyoscyamine hydrobromide in producing sleep. For one of the drugs, the additional hours of sleep for ten patients were

0.7, -1.6, -0.2, -1.2, -0.1, 3.4, 3.7, 0.8, 0, and 2.

Compute the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median, the mean, the 10% and 20% trimmed means, and the M-estimate of location. Compute the corresponding standard errors.

- Use results on Winsorized expected values in Chapter 2 to show that if the error term in Eq. (3.4) is ignored, \bar{X}_t is a Winsorized unbiased estimate of μ_t .
- Use results on Winsorized expected values in Chapter 2 to show that \bar{X}_w is a Winsorized unbiased estimate of μ_w .
- Set $X_i = i$, $i = 1, \dots, 20$, and compute the 20% trimmed mean and the M-estimate of location based on Huber’s Ψ . Next set $X_{20} = 200$ and compute both estimates of location. Replace X_{19} with 200 and again estimate the measures of location. Keep doing this until

the upper half of the data is equal to 200. Comment on the resistance of the M-estimator versus 20% trimming.

10. Repeat the previous exercise, only this time compute the biweight midvariance, the 20% Winsorized variance, and the percentage bend midvariance. Comment on the resistance of these three measures of scale.
11. Set $X_i = i$, $i = 1, \dots, 20$ and compute the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median. Repeat this, but with X_{20} equal to 1000 and then 100,000. When $X_{20} = 100,000$, would you expect $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ or the Harrell–Davis estimator to have the smaller standard error? Verify your answer.
12. Argue that if Ψ is taken to be the biweight, it approximates the optimal choice for Ψ under normality when observations are not too extreme.
13. Verify that Eq. (3.29) reduces to s^2/n if no observations are flagged as being unusually large or small by Ψ .
14. Using R, generate $n = 20$ observations from a standard normal distribution, compute the mean, 20% trimmed mean, median and one-step M-estimate, and repeat this 10,000 times. Compare the results using a boxplot.
15. Using R, generate $n = 20$ observations from the mixed normal distribution in [Figure 1.1](#). This can be done with the R function cnorm stored in Rallfun. Compute the mean, 20% trimmed mean, median and one-step M-estimate, and repeat this 10,000 times. Compare the results using a boxplot.

Confidence Intervals in the One-Sample Case

A fundamental problem is testing hypotheses and computing confidence intervals for the measures of location described in Chapters 2 and 3. As will be seen, a method that provides accurate probability coverage for one measure of location can perform poorly with another. That is, the recommended method for computing a confidence interval depends in part on which measure of location is of interest. An appeal of the methods in this chapter is that when computing confidence intervals for robust measures of location, it is possible to get reasonably accurate probability coverage in situations where no known method for the mean gives good results.

4.1 Problems when Working with Means

It helps to first describe problems associated with Student's t. When testing hypotheses or computing confidence intervals for μ , it is assumed that

$$T = \frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X} - \mu)}{s} \quad (4.1)$$

has a Student's t distribution with $v = n - 1$ degrees of freedom. This implies that $E(T) = 0$, and that T has a symmetric distribution. From basic principles, this assumption is correct when observations are randomly sampled from a normal distribution. However, at least three practical problems can arise. First, there are problems with power and the length of the confidence interval. As indicated in Chapters 1 and 2, the standard error of the sample mean, σ/\sqrt{n} , becomes inflated when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution, so power can be poor relative to methods based on other measures of location, and the length of confidence intervals, based on Eq. (4.1), become relatively long – even when σ is known. (For a detailed analysis of how heavy-tailed distributions affect the probability coverage of the t test, see Benjamini, 1983.) Second, the actual probability of a Type I error can be substantially higher or lower than the nominal α level. When sampling from a symmetric distribution, generally

the actual level of Student's t test will be less than the nominal level. When sampling from a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution the actual probability of Type I error can be substantially lower than the nominal α level, and this further contributes to low power and relatively long confidence intervals. From theoretical results reported by [Basu and DasGupta \(1995\)](#), problems with low power can arise even when n is large. When sampling from a skewed distribution with relatively light tails, the actual probability coverage can be substantially less than the nominal $1 - \alpha$ level resulting in inaccurate conclusions and this problem becomes exacerbated as we move toward (skewed) heavy-tailed distributions. Third, when sampling from a skewed distribution, T also has a skewed distribution, it is no longer true that $E(T) = 0$, and the distribution of T can deviate enough from a Student's t distribution so that practical problems arise. These problems can be ignored if the sample size is sufficiently large, but given data it is difficult knowing just how large n has to be. When sampling from a lognormal distribution, it is known that $n > 160$ is required ([Westfall & Young, 1993](#)). If, for example, a confidence interval is considered to be reasonably accurate when the actual probability coverage is between 0.925 and 0.975, given the goal of computing a 0.95 confidence interval, $n > 200$ is required. As we move away from the lognormal distribution toward skewed distributions where outliers are more common, $n > 300$ might be required. Problems with controlling the probability of a Type I error are particularly serious when testing one-sided hypotheses. And this has practical implications when testing two-sided hypotheses because it means that a biased hypothesis testing method is being used, as will be illustrated.

Problems with low power were illustrated in Chapter 1, so further comments are omitted. The second problem, that probability coverage and Type I error probabilities are affected by departures from normality, is illustrated with a class of distributions obtained by transforming a standard normal distribution in a particular way. Of course, the seriousness of a Type I error depends on the situation. Presumably there are instances where an investigator does not want the probability of a Type I error to exceed 0.1, otherwise the common choice of $\alpha = 0.05$ would be replaced by $\alpha = 0.1$ in order to increase power. [Bradley \(1978\)](#) argues that if a researcher makes a distinction between $\alpha = 0.05$ and $\alpha = 0.1$, the actual probability of a Type I error should not exceed 0.075, the idea being that otherwise it is closer to 0.1 than 0.05, and he argues that it should not drop below 0.025.

Suppose Z has a standard normal distribution, and for some constant $h \geq 0$, let

$$X = Z \exp\left(\frac{hZ^2}{2}\right).$$

Then X has what is called an h distribution. When $h = 0$, $X = Z$, so X is standard normal. As h gets large, the tails of the distribution of X get heavier, and the distribution is symmetric about 0. (More details about the h distribution are described in Section 4.2.) Further suppose sampling is from an h distribution with $h = 1$, which has very heavy tails. Then with

$n = 20$ and $\alpha = 0.05$, the actual probability of a Type I error, when using Student's t to test $H_0: \mu = 0$, is approximately 0.018 (based on simulations with 10,000 replications). Increasing n to 100, the actual probability of a Type I error is approximately 0.019. So even now, Bradley's criterion is not satisfied. A reasonable suggestion for dealing with this problem is to inspect the empirical distribution to determine whether the tails are relatively light. There are various ways this might be done, but there is no known empirical rule that reliably indicates whether the Type I error probability will be substantially lower than the nominal level when attention is restricted to using Student's t test.

To illustrate the third problem, and provide another illustration of the second, consider what happens when sampling from a skewed distribution with relatively light tails. In particular, suppose X has a lognormal distribution, meaning that for some normal random variable, Y , $X = \exp(Y)$. This distribution is light-tailed in the sense that the expected proportion of values declared an outlier, using the MAD-Median rule used to define the MOM estimator in Section 3.7, is relatively small. (Gleason, 1993, also argues that a lognormal distribution is light tailed.)

For convenience, assume Y is standard normal in which case $E(X) = \sqrt{e}$, where $e = \exp(1) \approx 2.71828$, and the standard deviation is approximately $\sigma = 2.16$. Eq. (4.1) assumes that $T = \sqrt{n}(\bar{X} - \sqrt{e})/s$ has a Student's t distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. The left panel of Figure 4.1 shows a (kernel density) estimate of the actual distribution of T when $n = 20$; the symmetric distribution is the distribution of T under normality. As is evident, the actual distribution is skewed to the left, and its mean is not equal to 0. Simulations indicate that $E(T) = -0.54$, approximately. The right panel shows an estimate of the probability density function when $n = 100$. The distribution is more symmetric compared to $n = 20$, but it is clearly skewed to the left.

Let μ_0 be some specified constant. The standard approach to testing $H_0: \mu \leq \mu_0$ is to compute T with $\mu = \mu_0$ and reject H_0 if $T > t_{1-\alpha}$, where $t_{1-\alpha}$ is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = n - 1$ degrees of freedom, and α is the desired probability of a Type I error. If $H_0: \mu \leq \sqrt{e}$ is tested when X has a lognormal distribution, H_0 should not be rejected, and the probability of a Type I error should be as close as possible to the nominal level, α . If $\alpha = 0.05$ and $n = 20$, the actual probability of a Type I error is approximately 0.008 (Westfall & Young, 1993, p. 40). As indicated in Figure 4.1, the reason is that T has a distribution that is skewed to the left. In particular, the right tail is much lighter than the assumed by Student's t distribution, and this results in a Type I error probability that is substantially smaller than the nominal 0.05 level. Simultaneously, the left tail is too thick. The 0.05 quantile of Student's t distribution with 19 degrees of freedom is -1.73 . Consequently, when testing $H_0: \mu \geq \sqrt{e}$ at the 0.05 level, the actual probability of rejecting is 0.153. Increasing n to 160, the actual

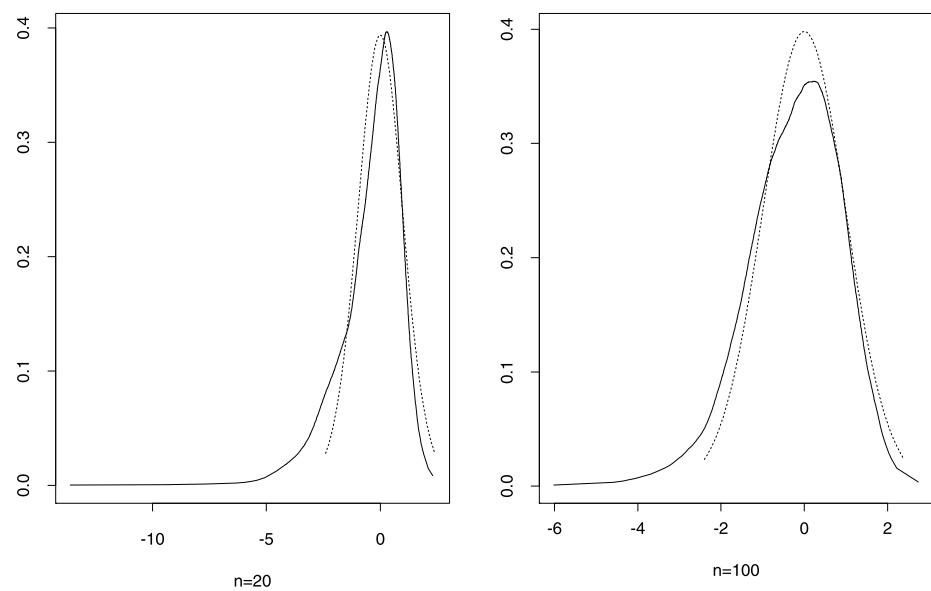


Figure 4.1: Nonnormality can seriously affect Student's t. The left panel shows an approximation of the actual distribution of Student's t when sampling from a lognormal distribution and $n = 20$ and the right panel is when $n = 100$.

probability of a Type I error is 0.022 and 0.109 for the one-sided hypotheses being considered. And when observations are sampled from a heavier tailed distribution, control over the probability of a Type I error deteriorates.

The results just summarized illustrate an important fact. Even when the sample mean has, to a close approximation, a normal distribution, Student's t test can be unsatisfactory. For example, when sampling from a lognormal distribution, the sample mean has approximately a normal distribution with a sample size of 40. But suppose the goal is to test some two-sided hypothesis so that the Type I error probability is 0.05. To satisfy Bradley's criterion for the situation at hand, a sample size of at least 200 is needed when using Student's t.

Generally, as we move toward a skewed distribution with heavy tails, the problems illustrated by Figure 4.1 become exacerbated. As an example, suppose sampling is from a squared lognormal distribution that has mean $\exp(2)$. (That is, if X has a lognormal distribution, $E(X^2) = \exp(2)$.) Figure 4.2 shows plots of T values based on sample sizes of 20 and 100. (Again, the symmetric distributions are the distributions of T under normality.)

It is noted that when testing $H_0: \mu < \mu_0$, and when a distribution is skewed to the right, improved control over the probability of a Type I error can be achieved using a method derived by Chen (1995). However, even for this special case, problems with controlling the probability of a Type I error remain in some situations, and power problems plague any method

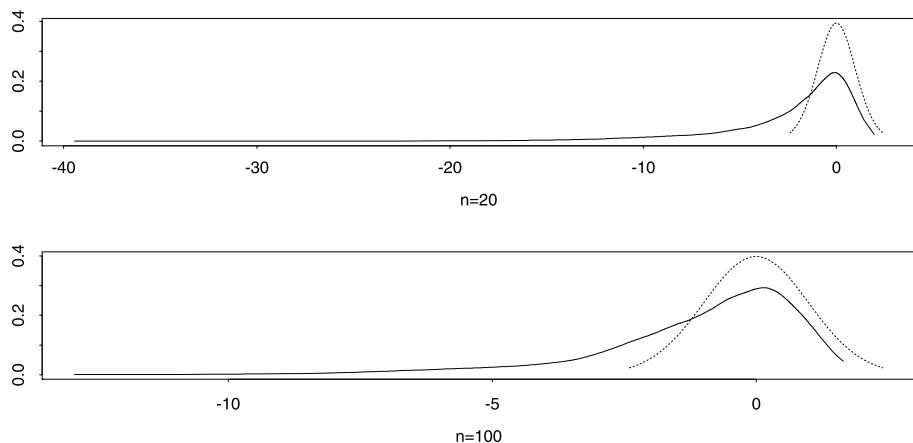


Figure 4.2: The same as Figure 4.1, only now sampling is from a squared lognormal distribution. This illustrates that as we move toward heavy-tailed distributions, problems with nonnormality are exacerbated.

based on means. (A generalization of this method to some robust measure of location might have some practical value, but this has not been established as yet.) [Banik and Kibria \(2010\)](#) compared numerous methods for computing a (two-sided) confidence interval for the mean. In terms of probability coverage, none of the methods were completely satisfactory when the sample size is small. For $n \geq 50$, Chen's method performed reasonably well among the distributions considered, including situations where sampling is from a lognormal distribution. But the lognormal distribution is relatively light-tailed. How well Chen's method performs when sampling from a skewed, heavy-tailed distribution, or even a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution (such as the contaminated normal), appears to be unknown.

4.2 The g-and-h Distribution

One of the main goals in this chapter is to recommend certain procedures for computing confidence intervals and testing hypotheses, and to discourage the use of others. These recommendations are based in part on simulations, some of which generate observations from a so-called g-and-h distribution. This section is included for readers interested in the motivation and details of such studies. Readers primarily concerned with how methods are applied, or which methods are recommended, can skip or skim this section.

A basic problem is establishing whether a particular method for computing a confidence interval has probability coverage reasonably close to the nominal $1 - \alpha$ level when the sample size is small or even moderately large. When investigating the effect of non-normality, there is the issue of deciding which non-normal distributions to consider when checking the properties of

a particular procedure via simulations. One approach, which provides a partial check on how a method performs, is to consider four types of distributions: normal, symmetric with a heavy tail, asymmetric with a light tail, and asymmetric with a heavy tail. But how heavy tailed and asymmetric should they be? A natural approach is to use distributions that are similar to those found in applied settings. But coming to terms with what constitutes a reasonable range of values is difficult at best. Several papers have been published with the goal of characterizing the range of heavy-tailedness and skewness that a researcher is likely to encounter (e.g., [Pearson & Please, 1975](#); [Sawilosky & Blair, 1992](#); [Micceri, 1989](#); [Hill & Dixon, 1982](#); [Wilcox, 1990a](#)). The most striking feature of these studies is the extent to which they differ. For example, some papers suggest that distributions are never extremely skewed, while others indicate the exact opposite. In a sexual attitude study by [Pedersen, Miller, Putcha-Bhagavatula, and Yang \(2002\)](#), the skewness and kurtosis, based on 105 participants, is 15.9 and 256.3, respectively. In a related study based on 16,288 participants, the ten variables had estimated skewness that ranged between 52.1 and 115.5, and kurtosis that ranged between 3290 and 13,357. In a review of 440 large-sample psychological studies, [Micceri \(1989\)](#) reported that 97% (35 of 36 studies) “of those distributions exhibiting kurtosis beyond the double exponential (3.00) also showed extreme or exponential skewness.” Moreover, 72% (36 of 50) distributions that exhibited skewness greater than two also had tail weights that were heavier than the double exponential.

One way of attempting to span the range of skewness and heavy tailedness that one might encounter is to run simulations where observations are generated from a g-and-h distribution. An observation X is generated from a g-and-h distribution by first generating Z from a standard normal distribution and then setting

$$X = \frac{\exp(gZ) - 1}{g} \exp(hZ^2/2),$$

where g and h are nonnegative constants that can be chosen so that the distribution of X has some characteristic of interest. When $g = 0$ this last equation is taken to be

$$X = Z \exp(hZ^2/2).$$

When $g = h = 0$, $X = Z$, so X has a standard normal distribution. When $g = 0$, X has a symmetric distribution. As h increases, the tails of the distribution get heavier. As g increases, the distribution becomes more skewed. The case $g = 1$ and $h = 0$ corresponds to a lognormal distribution that has been shifted to have a median of zero. Note that within the class of g-and-h distributions, the lognormal is skewed with a relatively light tail. [Hoaglin \(1985\)](#) provides a detailed description of various properties of the g-and-h distribution, but only a few properties are listed here. (For results on estimating g and h based on a random sample, see [Xu & Gen-ton, 2015](#).) [Table 4.1](#) summarizes the skewness and kurtosis values for four selected situations

Table 4.1: Some Properties of the g-and-h Distribution.

<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	κ_1	κ_2	$\hat{\kappa}_1$	$\hat{\kappa}_2$	μ	μ_t (20%)	μ_m
0.0	0.0	0.00	3.00	0.0	3.00	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
0.0	0.5	0.00	—	0.00	11,986.2	0.0000	0.0000	0.0000
0.5	0.0	1.75	8.9	1.81	9.7	0.2653	0.0541	0.1047
0.5	0.5	—	—	120.10	18,393.6	0.8033	0.0600	0.0938

that have been used in published studies and are considered at various points in this book. In [Table 4.1](#), skewness and kurtosis are measured with $\kappa_1 = \mu_{[3]}/\mu_{[2]}^{1.5}$ and $\kappa_2 = \mu_{[4]}/\mu_{[2]}^2$, where $\mu_{[k]} = E(X - \mu)^k$. When $g > 0$ and $h \geq 1/k$, $\mu_{[k]}$ is not defined and the corresponding entry is left blank.

A possible criticism of simulations based on the g-and-h distribution is that observations generated on a computer have skewness and kurtosis that are not always the same as the theoretical values listed in [Table 4.1](#). The reason is that observations generated on a computer come from some bounded interval on the real line, so $\mu_{[k]}$ is finite even when in theory it is not. For this reason, [Table 4.1](#) also reports $\hat{\kappa}_1$ and $\hat{\kappa}_2$, the estimated skewness and kurtosis based on 100,000 observations. (Skewness is not estimated when $g = 0$ because it is known that $\kappa_1 = 0$.) The last three columns of [Table 4.1](#) show the value of μ , the 20% trimmed mean, μ_t , and μ_m , the M-measure of location, which were determined via numerical quadrature. For completeness, it is noted that for the lognormal distribution, $\kappa_1 = 6.2$, $\kappa_2 = 114$, the 20% trimmed mean is $\mu_t = 1.111$, and $\mu_m = 1.1857$. (For recent results on properties of the g-and-h distribution, see [Headrick, Kowalchuk, & Sheng, 2008](#).)

Ideally, a method for computing a confidence interval will have accurate probability coverage when sampling from any of the four g-and-h distributions in [Table 4.1](#). It might be argued that when g or h equals 0.5, the corresponding distribution is unrealistically non-normal. The point is that if a method performs well under seemingly large departures from normality, this offers some reassurance that it will perform well for distributions encountered in practice. Of course, even if a method gives accurate results for the four distributions in [Table 4.1](#), this does not guarantee accurate probability coverage for any distribution that might arise in practice. In most cases, there is no known method for proving that a particular technique always gives good results.

Another possible criticism of the four g-and-h distributions in [Table 4.1](#) is that perhaps the skewed, light-tailed distribution ($g = 0.5$ and $h = 0$) does not represent a large enough departure from normality. In particular, [Wilcox \(1990a\)](#) found that many random variables he surveyed had estimated skewness greater than 3, but the skewness of this particular g-and-h distribution is only 1.8, approximately. For this reason, it might also be important to consider the lognormal distribution when studying the small-sample properties of a particular method.

Table 4.2: One-Sided Type I Error Probabilities when Using Student's t, $n = 12$, $\alpha = 0.025$.

<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	$P(T > t_{0.975})$	$P(T < t_{0.025})$
0.0	0.0	0.025	0.025
0.0	0.5	0.015	0.016
0.5	0.0	0.000	0.420
0.5	0.5	0.000	0.295

[Table 4.2](#) shows the estimated probability of a Type I error (based on simulations with 10,000 replications) when using Student's t to test $H_0: \mu = 0$ with $n = 12$ and $\alpha = 0.05$. (The notation $t_{0.025}$ refers to the 0.025 quantile of Student's t distribution.) For example, when sampling from a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0.5$ and $h = 0$, the estimated probability of a Type I error is $0.000 + 0.420 = 0.420$, which is about eight times as large as the nominal level. Put another way, if $H_0: \mu < 0$ is tested with $\alpha = 0.025$, the actual probability of rejecting when $\mu = 0$ is approximately 0.42, over 16 times larger than the nominal level. Note that for fixed g , as the tails get heavier (h increases from 0 to 0.5), the probability of a Type I error decreases. This is not surprising because sampling from a heavy tailed distribution inflates s which in turn results in longer confidence intervals. A similar result, but to a lesser extent, is found when using robust measures of location.

Multivariate g-and-h Distributions

It is noted that multivariate distributions having some specified correlation matrix \mathbf{R} can be generated as follows. Generate \mathbf{X} where the marginal distributions are independent. Form the Cholesky decomposition $\mathbf{U}'\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{R}$, where \mathbf{U} is the matrix of factor loadings of the principal components of the square-root method of factoring a correlation matrix, and \mathbf{U}' is the transpose of \mathbf{U} . Then $\mathbf{X}\mathbf{U}$ produces a matrix of data that has population correlation matrix \mathbf{R} .

4.2.1 R Functions *ghdist*, *rmul*, *rngh* and *ghtrim*

The R function

```
ghdist(n,g=0,h=0)
```

generates n observations from a g-and-h distribution. By default, observations are generated from a standard normal distribution ($g = h = 0$). The R function

```
rmul(n, p = 2, cmat = diag(rep(1, p)), rho = NA, mar.fun = rnorm,...)
```

generates n vectors of observations from a p -variate normal distribution having correlation matrix specified by the argument cmat. It then transforms the marginal distributions as specified by the argument mar.fun. By default, data are generated from a bivariate normal distribution with Pearson's correlation equal to 0. If the argument rho is specified, all pairs of variables will have correlation rho. The command

```
rmul(30, p = 3, rho = 0.4, mar.fun = ghdist, g=1, h=0.2)
```

would first generate data from a trivariate normal distribution having a common correlation equal to 0.4 and then it would transform the marginal distributions to g-and-h distributions, where $g = 1$ and $h = 0.2$. It should be noted that changing the correlation via the argument rho can alter the marginal measures of location when $g > 0$, in which case the marginal distributions are skewed.

A possible criticism of the R function rmul is that after it transforms the marginal distributions, the correlation among the resulting variables is not necessarily equal to the value indicated by the argument rho ([Kowalchuk & Headrick, 2010](#)). The R function

```
rngh(n,rho=0,p=2,g=0,h=0,ADJ=TRUE)
```

deals with this issue. It begins by generating data from a multivariate normal distribution but with the correlation adjusted so that after transforming the marginal distributions to a g-and-h distribution, the resulting variables have a common correlation indicated by the argument rho.

The function

```
ghtrim(tr=0.2, g = 0.2, h = 0)
```

computes the population trimmed mean of a g-and-h distribution.

4.3 Inferences About the Trimmed and Winsorized Means

When working with the trimmed mean, μ_t , an analog of Eq. (4.1) is

$$T_t = \frac{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_t - \mu_t)}{s_w}. \quad (4.2)$$

When $\gamma = 0$, $T_t = T$ given by Eq. (4.1). Tukey and McLaughlin (1963) suggest approximating the distribution of T_t with a Student's t distribution having $n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom, where, as in Chapter 3, $g = [\gamma n]$ is the integer portion of γn . Then $n - 2g$ is the number of

observations left after trimming. The resulting two-sided $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_t is

$$\bar{X}_t \pm t_{1-\alpha/2} \frac{s_w}{(1-2\gamma)\sqrt{n}}, \quad (4.3)$$

where $t_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom. Let μ_0 be some specified constant. Then under the null hypothesis

$$H_0 : \mu_t = \mu_0,$$

T_t becomes

$$T_t = \frac{(1-2\gamma)\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_t - \mu_0)}{s_w}, \quad (4.4)$$

and H_0 is rejected if $|T_t| > t_{1-\alpha/2}$. One-sided tests can be performed in the usual way. In particular, reject $H_0: \mu_t \leq \mu_0$ if $T_t > t_{1-\alpha}$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom. Similarly, reject $H_0: \mu_t \geq \mu_0$ if $T_t < t_\alpha$.

Of course, a simple way of characterizing the extent μ_t differs from some hypothesized value is with $\mu_t - \mu_0$, which is estimated with $\bar{X}_t - \mu_0$. Another approach is to use

$$d = k \frac{\bar{X}_t - \mu_0}{s_w}, \quad (4.5)$$

where the constant k is chosen so that under normality, s_w/k estimates the standard deviation σ . When using a 20% trimmed mean, $k = 0.642$. This is a one-sample version of the robust measure of effect size derived by [Algina, Keselman, and Penfield \(2005\)](#). For normal distributions, d estimates

$$\delta = \frac{\mu - \mu_0}{\sigma}.$$

Before continuing, it might help to comment on the common goal of testing for exactly equality. [Tukey \(1991\)](#) argued that this is nonsensical because surely μ_t differs from μ_0 at some decimal place. [Jones and Tukey \(2000\)](#) suggest dealing with this issue using Tukey's three decision rule. If the null hypothesis is rejected and $\bar{X}_t < \mu_0$, decide that $\mu_t < \mu_0$. If the null hypothesis is rejected and $\bar{X}_t > \mu_0$, decide that $\mu_t > \mu_0$. If the null hypothesis is not rejected, make no decision. So the goal is not to test for exact equality, but determine whether it is reasonable to make a decision about whether μ_t is greater or less than μ_0 . Even if exact equality can be argued to be a reasonable possibility, such as when dealing with a discrete distribution and μ_t is taken to be the population median, this perspective on hypothesis testing would seem to be useful. Note that from this perspective, a p-value quantifies the strength of the empirical evidence that a decision can be made. Certainly a p-value is limited in the information it conveys, but from the perspective of Tukey's three decision rule, it seems useful.

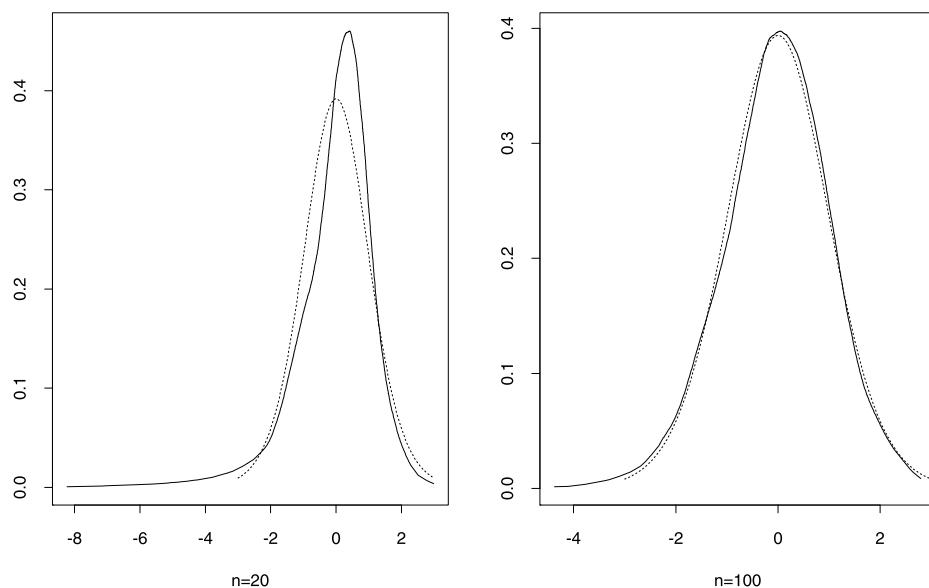


Figure 4.3: The distribution of T_t with 20% trimming when sampling from a lognormal distribution. Compare this to the distribution of T shown in Figure 4.1.

Based on various criteria, plus a slight variation of the sample trimmed mean used here, Patel, Mudholkar, and Fernando (1988) found the Tukey–McLaughlin approximation to be reasonably accurate when sampling from various distributions. They also report that for $\gamma = 0.25$, a better approximation is a Student's t distribution with $n - 2.48g - 0.15$ degrees of freedom. For $n < 18$, they suggest a more refined approximation, but another method, to be described, gives more satisfactory results.

Additional support for using a Student's t distribution with $n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom is reported by Wilcox (1994a). Using a Winsorized analog of a Cornish–Fisher expansion of T_t , a correction term for skewness was derived and compared to the correction term used when there is no trimming. As the amount of trimming increases, the magnitude of the correction term decreases indicating that the probability coverage using Eq. (4.3) should be closer to the nominal level than the probability coverage when $\gamma = 0$. Numerical results for the lognormal distribution indicate that as γ increases, the magnitude of the correction term decreases rapidly up to about $\gamma = 0.2$.

The left panel of Figure 4.3 shows the probability density function of T_t with 20% trimming when $n = 20$ and sampling is from a lognormal distribution. The symmetric distribution is the assumed distribution of T_t when testing hypotheses. The actual distribution is skewed to the left, but the tail of the distribution is not as heavy as the tail of the distribution shown in Figure 4.1. The result is that when testing $H_0: \mu_t > 0$, the probability of a Type I error

Table 4.3: Average LSAT Scores for 15 Law Schools.

545	555	558	572	575	576	578	580
594	605	635	651	653	661	666	

will be greater than the nominal level, but not as much versus no trimming. For example, if $\alpha = 0.025$, the actual probability of a Type I error is approximately 0.062 with 20% trimming versus 0.132 when using the mean to test $H_0: \mu > \sqrt{e}$. The right panel of Figure 4.3 shows the distribution of T_t when n is increased to 100. Note that the distribution is reasonably symmetric, as is assumed when using T_t , versus the right panel of Figure 4.1 which is clearly skewed to the left. This illustrates the general expectation that when using the 20% trimmed mean, probability coverage will improve more rapidly as the sample size increases, versus confidence intervals based on means. If a distribution is both skewed and sufficiently heavy-tailed, problems with controlling the probability of a Type I error can persist unless n is fairly large. That is, as the amount of trimming increases, problems with controlling the probability of a Type I error decrease, but even with 20% trimming, not all practical problems are eliminated using the method in this section. Increasing the amount of trimming beyond 20%, such as using a median, could be used, but at the risk of low power if indeed a distribution is normal or relatively light-tailed. A better strategy seems to be to use a bootstrap method described in Section 4.4.

It was previously noted that when sampling from a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution (an h distribution with $h = 1$), the actual probability of a Type I error can be as low as 0.018 when testing $H_0: \mu = 0$ with Student's t test, $n = 20$, and $\alpha = 0.05$. In contrast, with 20% trimming, the probability of a Type I error is approximately 0.033. Generally, if a symmetric distribution is sufficiently heavy-tailed, roughly meaning that the expected proportion of values declared outliers is relatively high, actual Type I error probabilities can drop below the nominal level. In some situations it currently seems that this problem can persist no matter which location estimator is used.

■ Example

Table 4.3 shows the average LSAT scores for the 1973 entering classes of 15 American law schools. (LSAT is a national test for prospective lawyers.) The sample mean is $\bar{X} = 600.3$ with an estimated standard error of 10.8. The 20% trimmed mean is $\bar{X}_t = 596.2$ with an estimated standard error of 14.92, and with $15 - 6 - 1 = 8$ degrees of freedom, the 0.95 confidence interval for μ_t is (561.8, 630.6). In contrast, the 0.95 confidence interval for μ is (577.1, 623.4), assuming T given by Eq. (4.1) does indeed have a Student's t distribution with 14 degrees of freedom. Note that the length of the confidence interval for μ is smaller, and in fact is a subset of the confidence interval

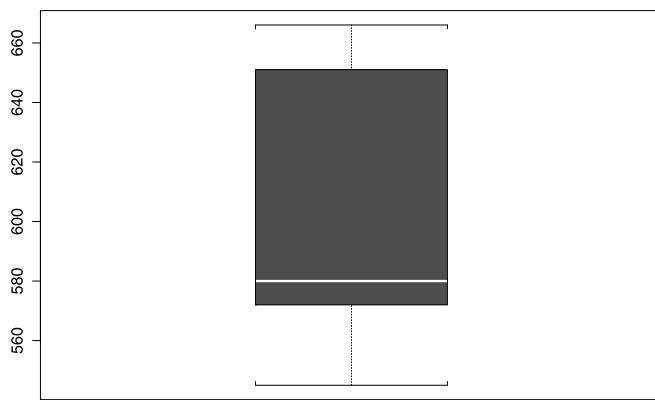


Figure 4.4: A boxplot of the LSAT scores.

for μ_1 . This might seem to suggest that the sample mean is preferable to the trimmed mean for this particular set of data, but closer examination suggests the opposite conclusion. As already illustrated, if sampling is from a light-tailed, skewed distribution, the actual probability coverage for the sample mean can be smaller than the nominal level. For the situation at hand, the claim that (577.1, 623.4) is a 0.95 confidence interval for the mean might be misleading and overly optimistic. Figure 4.4 shows a boxplot of the data, which indicates that the central portion of the data is skewed to the right. Moreover, there are no outliers suggesting the possibility that sampling is from a relatively light-tailed distribution. Thus, the actual probability coverage of the confidence interval for the mean might be too low – a longer confidence interval might be needed to achieve 0.95 probability coverage. It is not being suggested, however, that if there had been outliers, there is reason to believe that probability coverage is not too low. For example, boxplots of data generated from a lognormal distribution frequently have values flagged as outliers, and as already noted, sampling from a lognormal distribution can result in a confidence interval for μ that is too short.

As for computing a confidence interval for the population Winsorized mean, results in Dixon and Tukey (1968) suggest using

$$\bar{X}_w \pm t_{1-\alpha/2} \left(\frac{n-1}{n-2g-1} \right) \left(\frac{s_w}{\sqrt{n}} \right),$$

where again the degrees of freedom are $n - 2g - 1$. It appears that the accuracy of this confidence interval, when sampling from a skewed distribution, has not been studied.

4.3.1 R Functions *trimci*, *winci* and *D.akp.effect*

The R function

```
trimci(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05, null.value = 0, pr = TRUE)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_t using Eq. (4.3) based on the data stored in the R vector x , where x is any R variable containing data, tr is the desired amount of trimming (the value of γ), and α is α . The default amount of trimming is $\gamma = 0.2$ (20%), and the default value for α is 0.05. For example, the command `trimci(w,0.1,0.025)` returns two values: the lower and upper end of the 0.975 confidence interval for the 10% trimmed mean using the data stored in w . The command `trimci(w)` returns a 0.95 confidence interval for the 20% trimmed mean. The function also returns a p-value when testing $H_0 : \mu_t = \mu_0$, where the hypothesized value μ_0 is indicated by the argument `null.value`. Setting the argument `pr=FALSE` suppresses the message printed by the function.

The R function

```
trimciv2(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,null.value=0,pr=TRUE)
```

is exactly the same as `trimci`, only the measure of effect size d given by Eq. (4.5) is reported as well. The R function

```
D.akp.effect(x,null.value=0,tr=0.2)
```

also computes the effect size d given by Eq. (4.5).

The R function

```
winci(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

computes a confidence interval for the population Winsorized mean.

4.4 Basic Bootstrap Methods

The method used to compute a confidence interval for a trimmed mean, described in Section 4.3, is based on the fundamental strategy developed by Laplace about two centuries ago:

When using $\hat{\theta}$ to estimate some parameter of interest, θ , estimate the standard error of $\hat{\theta}$ with say \hat{Y} , and try to approximate the distribution of

$$\frac{\hat{\theta} - \theta}{\hat{Y}}.$$

Laplace accomplished this by appealing to his central limit theorem, which he publicly announced in 1810. That is, assume this last equation has a standard normal distribution.

An alternative approach is to use some type of bootstrap method. There are many variations; see [Efron and Tibshirani \(1993\)](#), [Chernick \(1999\)](#), [Davison and Hinkley \(1997\)](#), [Hall and Hall \(1995\)](#), [Lunneborg \(2000\)](#), [Mooney and Duval \(1993\)](#) and [Shao and Tu \(1995\)](#). Here attention is focused on two basic types (with some extensions described in subsequent chapters). Alternative methods are not considered because either they currently seem to have no practical advantage for the problems considered here, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error or yielding accurate probability coverage, or the practical advantages of these alternative methods have not been adequately investigated when sample sizes are small or moderately large.

4.4.1 The Percentile Bootstrap Method

The first basic version is the so-called percentile bootstrap. It begins by obtaining a *bootstrap sample* of size n . That is, values are obtained by randomly sampling with replacement n values from X_1, \dots, X_n yielding X_1^*, \dots, X_n^* .

Let $\hat{\theta}^*$ be an estimate of θ based on this bootstrap sample. Of course, a new bootstrap sample can be generated to yield a new bootstrap estimate of θ . Repeating this process B times yields B bootstrap estimates: $\hat{\theta}_1^*, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B^*$. Let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$. Letting $\hat{\theta}_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\theta}_{(B)}^*$ represent the B bootstrap estimates written in ascending order, an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for θ is

$$(\hat{\theta}_{(\ell+1)}^*, \hat{\theta}_{(u)}^*).$$

An outline of the theoretical justification of the method is as follows. Imagine that the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta = \theta_0,$$

where θ_0 is some given constant. Let $p^* = P(\hat{\theta}^* < \theta_0)$. That is, p^* is the probability that a bootstrap estimate of θ is less than the hypothesized value, θ_0 . The value of p^* is not known, but it is readily estimated with

$$\hat{p}^* = \frac{A}{B},$$

where A is the number of bootstrap estimates among $\hat{\theta}_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\theta}_{(B)}^*$ that are less than θ_0 . Under fairly general conditions, if the null hypothesis is true, the distribution of \hat{p}^* approaches a uniform distribution as n and B get large (e.g., Liu & Singh, 1997; Hall, 1988a, 1988b). This suggests rejecting H_0 when $\hat{p}^* \leq \alpha/2$ or $\hat{p}^* \geq 1 - \alpha/2$. A little algebra shows that this leads to the percentile bootstrap confidence interval described in the previous paragraph. A (generalized) p-value is $2 \min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*)$.

A practical problem is choosing B . If the goal is to control the probability of a Type I error, $B = 500$ suffices for some problems, even with n very small, but $B = 2000$ or larger might be needed for other situations. And in some instances – such as when making inferences about the population mean, the method performs poorly even when both B and n are fairly large. A rough characterization is that if a location estimator has a low finite sample breakdown point, the percentile method might be unsatisfactory, but with a relatively high finite sample breakdown, it performs reasonably well, even with small sample sizes, and in fact appears to be the method of choice in many situations. More details are provided as we consider various parameters of interest. Also, when dealing with regression, we will see situations where even with a low finite sample breakdown point, a percentile bootstrap method performs relatively well.

4.4.2 R Functions `onesampb` and `hdpb`

The R function

```
onesampb(x,est=onestep, alpha=0.05, nboot=2000, SEED=TRUE, nv=0,
         null.value=NULL,...)
```

can be used to compute a percentile bootstrap $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval when using virtually any estimator available through R. When testing hypotheses, the null value can be indicated via the argument `nv`, which defaults to zero. (The argument `null.value` can also be used to indicate the null value.) A p-value, based on the null value, is returned. (Using `SEED=TRUE` sets the seed of the random number generator so that results are always duplicated when using the same data.) The argument `est` indicates the estimator to be used, which defaults to the one-step M-estimator. The argument `...` can be used to supply values for any additional parameters associated with the estimator indicated by the argument `est`. For example, to compute a 0.9 confidence interval based on a 10% trimmed means, using 1000 bootstrap samples, use the command

```
onesampb(x,est=mean,alpha=0.1,nboot=2000,tr=0.1).
```

(When using a trimmed mean, the R function trimpb in Section 4.4.6 can be used as well.)
The command

```
onesampb(x,est=pbvar)
```

computes a 0.95 confidence based on the percentage bend midvariance.

The R function

```
hdpb(x, est = hd, tr=0.2, nboot = 2000, SEED = TRUE, nv = 0, q=0.5,...)
```

computes a confidence interval for quantiles using the Harrell–Davis estimator. The argument *q* indicates the quantile to be used and defaults to the median. This function is essentially the same as onesampb and is supplied merely for convenience.

4.4.3 Bootstrap-t Method

The main alternative to the percentile bootstrap is the *bootstrap-t* method, which also has been called a *percentile-t* technique. When working with means, for example, the strategy is to use the observed data to approximate the distribution of

$$T = \frac{\sqrt{n}(\bar{X} - \mu)}{s}$$

by proceeding as follows:

1. Generate a bootstrap sample X_1^*, \dots, X_n^* .
2. Compute \bar{X}^* , s^* and $T^* = \sqrt{n}(\bar{X}^* - \bar{X})/s^*$ based on the bootstrap sample generated in step 1.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 B times yielding T_b^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$.

The T_b^* values provide an approximation of the distribution of T and in particular an estimate of the $\alpha/2$ and $1 - \alpha/2$ quantiles.

When testing $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$, there are two variations of the bootstrap-t method that deserve comment. The first is the *equal-tailed* method. Let $T_{(1)}^* \le \dots \le T_{(B)}^*$ be the T_b^* values written in ascending order, let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$. Then H_0 is rejected if

$$T \le T_{(\ell)}^* \text{ or } T \ge T_{(u)}^*.$$

Rearranging terms, a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ is

$$\left(\bar{X} - T_{(u)}^* \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X} - T_{(\ell)}^* \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}} \right). \quad (4.6)$$

This last equation might appear to be incorrect because $T_{(u)}^*$, the estimate of the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of the distribution of T , is used to compute the lower end of the confidence interval. Simultaneously, $T_{(\ell)}^*$, an estimate of the $\alpha/2$ quantile is used to compute the upper end of the confidence interval. It can be seen, however, that this last equation follows from the decision rule that rejects $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$ if $T \leq T_{(\ell)}^*$ or $T \geq T_{(u)}^*$. Also, when computing the upper end of the confidence interval, $T_{(\ell)}^*$ will be negative, which is why the term $T_{(\ell)}^* \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}$ is subtracted from \bar{X} .

The second variation of the bootstrap-t method, which yields a *symmetric confidence interval*, uses

$$T^* = \frac{\sqrt{n}|\bar{X}^* - \bar{X}|}{s^*}.$$

Let $c = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Now a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ is

$$\bar{X} \pm T_{(c)}^* \frac{s}{\sqrt{n}}.$$

Asymptotic results ([Hall, 1988a, 1988b](#)) suggest that it tends to have more accurate probability coverage than the equal-tailed confidence interval, but some small-sample exceptions are noted later.

An interesting theoretical property of the bootstrap-t method is that it is second order correct. Roughly, when using T , as the sample size increases, the discrepancy between the actual probability coverage and the nominal level goes to zero at the rate $1/\sqrt{n}$ as n gets large, meaning that the method is first order correct. But when using the bootstrap-t method, the discrepancy goes to zero at the rate $1/n$. That is, the discrepancy goes to zero faster versus methods that rely on the central limit theorem.

Again there is the practical issue of choosing B , the number of bootstrap samples. The default choices for B used by the R functions in this book are based on the goal of achieving reasonably good control over the probability of a Type I error. But arguments can be made that perhaps a larger value for B has practical value, the concern being that otherwise there might be some loss of power. [Racine and MacKinnon \(2007a\)](#) discuss this issue at length and proposed a method for choosing the number of bootstrap samples. (Also see [Jöckel, 1986](#)). [Davidson and MacKinnon \(2000\)](#) proposed a pretest procedure for choosing B . Theoretical results derived by [Olive \(2010\)](#) suggest using $B \geq n \log(n)$.

4.4.4 Bootstrap Methods when Using a Trimmed Mean

As previously indicated, the 20% trimmed mean can be expected to provide better control over the probability of a Type I error and more accurate probability coverage, versus the mean, in various situations. In some cases, however, even better probability coverage and control of Type I error probabilities might be desired, particularly when the sample size is small. Some type of bootstrap method can make a substantial difference, with the choice of method depending on how much trimming is done.

First it is noted that the bootstrap methods in Sections 4.4.1 and 4.4.2 are readily applied when using a trimmed mean. When using the percentile bootstrap method, generate a bootstrap sample and compute the sample trimmed mean yielding \bar{X}_{t1}^* . Repeat this process B times yielding $\bar{X}_{t1}^*, \dots, \bar{X}_{tB}^*$. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_t is given by

$$(\bar{X}_{t(\ell+1)}^*, \bar{X}_{t(u)}^*),$$

where again ℓ is $\alpha B/2$ rounded to the nearest integer, $u = B - \ell$, and $\bar{X}_{t(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \bar{X}_{t(B)}^*$ are the B bootstrap trimmed means written in ascending order.

The bootstrap-t extends to trimmed means in a straightforward manner as well, and to be sure the details are clear, they are summarized in Table 4.4. In the context of testing $H_0: \mu_t = \mu_0$ versus $H_1: \mu_t \neq \mu_0$, reject if $T_t < T_{t(\ell)}^*$ or $T_t > T_{t(u)}^*$, where

$$T_t^* = \frac{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}(\bar{X}_t^* - \bar{X}_t)}{s_w^*}. \quad (4.7)$$

As for the symmetric, two-sided confidence interval, now use

$$T_t^* = \frac{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}|\bar{X}_t^* - \bar{X}_t|}{s_w^*}, \quad (4.8)$$

in which case a two-sided confidence interval for μ_t is

$$\bar{X}_t \pm T_{t(c)}^* \frac{s_w}{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}}. \quad (4.9)$$

The choice between the percentile bootstrap versus the bootstrap-t, based on the criterion of accurate probability coverage, depends on the amount of trimming. With no trimming, all indications are that the bootstrap-t is preferable (e.g., Westfall & Young, 1993). Consequently, early investigations based on means suggested using a bootstrap-t when making inferences about a population trimmed mean, but more recent studies indicate that as the amount of

Table 4.4: Summary of the Bootstrap-t Method for a Trimmed Mean.

To apply the bootstrap-t (or percentile-t) method when working with a trimmed mean, proceed as follows:

1. Compute the sample trimmed mean, \bar{X}_t .
2. Generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling with replacement n observations from X_1, \dots, X_n , yielding X_1^*, \dots, X_n^* .
3. When computing an equal-tailed confidence interval, use the bootstrap sample to compute T_t^* given by Eq. (4.7). When computing a symmetric confidence interval, compute T_t^* using Eq. (4.8) instead.
4. Repeat steps 2 and 3 yielding $T_{t1}^*, \dots, T_{tB}^*$. $B = 599$ appears to suffice in most situations when $n \geq 12$.
5. Put the $T_{t1}^*, \dots, T_{tB}^*$ values in ascending order yielding $T_{t(1)}^*, \dots, T_{t(B)}^*$.
6. Set $\ell = \alpha B/2$, $c = (1 - \alpha)B$, round both ℓ and c to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$.

The equal-tailed $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_t is

$$\left(\bar{X}_t - T_{t(u)}^* \frac{s_w}{\sqrt{n}}, \bar{X}_t - T_{t(\ell)}^* \frac{s_w}{\sqrt{n}} \right), \quad (4.10)$$

and the symmetric confidence interval is given by Eq. (4.9).

trimming increases, at some point the percentile bootstrap method offers an advantage. In particular, simulation studies indicate that when the amount of trimming is 20%, the percentile bootstrap confidence interval should be used rather than the bootstrap-t (e.g., Wilcox, 2001a). Perhaps with slightly less trimming the percentile bootstrap continues to give more accurate probability coverage in general, but this issue has not been studied extensively.

One issue is whether Eq. (4.6) yields a confidence interval with reasonably accurate probability coverage when sampling from a light-tailed, skewed distribution. To address this issue, attention is again turned to the lognormal distribution, which has $\mu_t = 1.111$. First consider what happens when the bootstrap-t is not used. With $n = 20$ and $\alpha = 0.025$, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_t > 1.111$ when using Eq. (4.4) is approximately 0.065, about 2.6 times as large as the nominal level. In contrast, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_t < 1.111$ is approximately 0.010. Thus, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_t = 1.111$ when testing at the 0.05 level is approximately $0.065 + 0.010 = 0.075$. If the bootstrap-t method is used instead, with $B = 599$, the one-sided, Type I error probabilities are now 0.035 and 0.020, so the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_t = 1.111$ is approximately 0.055 when testing at the 0.05 level. (The reason for using $B = 599$, rather than $B = 600$, stems from results in Hall, 1986, showing that B should be chosen so that α is a multiple of $(B + 1)^{-1}$. On rare occasions this small adjustment improves matters slightly, so it is used here.) As we move toward heavy-tailed distributions, generally the actual probability of a Type I error tends to decrease.

For completeness, when testing a two-sided hypothesis or computing a two-sided confidence interval, asymptotic results reported by Hall (1988a, 1988b) suggest modifying the bootstrap-t

Table 4.5: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$ Corresponding to Three Critical Values, $n = 12$, $\alpha = 0.025$.

g	h	$P(T_t < -t)$	$P(T_t > t)$	$P(T_t < T_{t(\ell)}^*)$	$P(T_t > T_{t(u)}^*)$	$P(T_t < -T_{t(c)}^*)$	$P(T_t > T_{t(c)}^*)$
0.0	0.0	0.031	0.028	0.026	0.030	0.020	0.025
0.0	0.5	0.025	0.022	0.024	0.037	0.012	0.024
0.5	0.0	0.047	0.016	0.030	0.023	0.036	0.017
0.5	0.5	0.040	0.012	0.037	0.028	0.025	0.011

method by replacing T_t^* with

$$T_t^* = \frac{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}|\bar{X}_t^* - \bar{X}_t|}{s_w^*}. \quad (4.11)$$

Now the two-sided confidence interval for μ_t is

$$\bar{X}_t \pm T_{t(c)}^* \frac{s_w}{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{n}}, \quad (4.12)$$

where $c = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. This is an example of a *symmetric* two-sided confidence interval. That is, the confidence interval has the form $(\bar{X}_t - \hat{c}, \bar{X}_t + \hat{c})$, where \hat{c} is determined with the goal that the probability coverage be as close as possible to $1 - \alpha$. In contrast, an *equal-tailed* two-sided confidence interval has the form $(\bar{X}_t - \hat{a}, \bar{X}_t + \hat{b})$, where \hat{a} and \hat{b} are determined with the goal that $P(\mu_t < \bar{X}_t - \hat{a}) \approx P(\mu_t > \bar{X}_t + \hat{b}) \approx \alpha/2$. The confidence interval given by Eq. (4.10) is equal-tailed. In terms of testing $H_0: \mu_t = \mu_0$ versus $H_1: \mu_t \neq \mu_0$, Eq. (4.12) is equivalent to rejecting if $T_t < -1 \times T_{t(c)}^*$, or if $T_t > T_{t(c)}^*$. When Eq. (4.12) is applied to the lognormal distribution with $n = 20$, a simulation estimate of the actual probability of a Type I error is 0.0532 versus 0.0537 using (4.10). Thus, in terms of Type I error probabilities, there is little separating these two methods for this special case, but in practice, the choice between these two methods can be important, as will be seen.

Table 4.5 summarizes the values of $\hat{\alpha}$, an estimate of the probability of a Type I error when performing one-sided tests with $\alpha = 0.025$, and when the critical value is estimated with one of the three methods described in this section. The first estimate of the critical value is t , the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom. That is, reject if T_t is less than $-t$ or greater than t depending on the direction of the test. The second estimate of the critical value is $T_{t(\ell)}^*$ or $T_{t(u)}^*$ (again depending on the direction of the test), where $T_{t(\ell)}^*$ and $T_{t(u)}^*$ are determined with the equal-tailed bootstrap-t method. The final method uses $T_{t(c)}^*$ resulting from the symmetric bootstrap-t as used in Eq. (4.12). Estimated Type I error probabilities are reported for the four g-and-h distributions discussed in Section 4.2. For example, when sampling is from a normal distribution ($g = h = 0$), $\alpha = 0.025$, and when H_0 is rejected because $T_t < -t$ the actual probability of rejecting is approximately 0.031. In contrast, when $g = 0.5$ and $h = 0$, the probability of rejecting is estimated to be 0.047,

about twice as large as the nominal level. (The estimates in [Table 4.5](#) are based on simulations with 1000 replications when using one of the bootstrap methods, and 10,000 replications when using Student's t.) If sampling is from a lognormal distribution, not shown in [Table 4.5](#), the estimate increases to 0.066, which is 2.64 times as large as the nominal 0.025 level. For $(g, h) = (0.5, 0.0)$ and $\alpha = 0.05$, the tail probabilities are 0.094 and 0.034.

Note that the choice between Eq. (4.10) and Eq. (4.12), the equal-tailed and symmetric bootstrap methods, is not completely clear based on the results in [Table 4.5](#). An argument for Eq. (4.12) is that the largest estimated probability of a Type I error in [Table 4.5](#), when performing a two-sided test, is $0.036 + 0.017 = 0.053$, while when using Eq. (4.10) the largest estimate is $0.037 + 0.028 = 0.065$. A possible objection to Eq. (4.12) is that in some cases it is too conservative – the tail probability can be less than half the nominal 0.025 level. Also, if one can rule out the possibility that sampling is from a skewed distribution with very heavy tails, [Table 4.5](#) suggests using Eq. (4.10) over Eq. (4.12), at least based on probability coverage.

There are other bootstrap techniques that might have a practical advantage over the bootstrap-t method, but at the moment this does not appear to be the case when γ is close to zero. However, extensive investigations have not been made, so future investigations might alter this view. One approach is to use a bootstrap estimate of the actual probability coverage when using T_t with Student's t distribution and then adjust the α level so that the actual probability coverage is closer to the nominal level ([Loh, 1987a, 1987b](#)). When sampling from a lognormal distribution with $n = 20$, the one-sided tests considered above now have actual Type I error probabilities approximately equal to 0.011 and 0.045, which is a bit worse than the results with the bootstrap-t. [Westfall and Young \(1993\)](#) advocate yet another method that estimates the p-value of T_t . For the situation considered here, simulations (based on 4000 replications and $B = 1000$) yield estimates of the Type I error probabilities equal to 0.034 and 0.017. Thus, at least for the lognormal distribution, these two alternative methods appear to have no practical advantage when $\gamma = 0.2$, but of course a more definitive study is needed. Another interesting possibility is the ABC method discussed by [Efron and Tibshirani \(1993\)](#). The appeal of this method is that accurate confidence intervals might be possible with a substantially smaller choice for B , but there are no small-sample results on whether this is the case for the problem at hand. Additional calibration methods are summarized by [Efron and Tibshirani \(1993\)](#).

■ Example

Consider again the law data in [Table 4.3](#) which has $\bar{X}_t = 596.2$ based on 20% trimming. The symmetric bootstrap-t confidence interval, based on Eq. (4.12), is (541.6, 650.9), which was computed with the R function `trimcibt` described in [Section 4.4.6](#). As previously indicated, the confidence interval for μ_t , based on Student's t distribu-

tion and given by Eq. (4.3), is (561.8, 630.6), which is a subset of the interval based on Eq. (4.12). In fact, the length of this confidence is 68.8 versus 109.3 using the bootstrap-t method. The main point here is that the choice of method can make a substantial difference in the length of the confidence interval, the ratio of the lengths being $68.8/109.3 = 0.63$. This might seem to suggest that using Student's t distribution is preferable, because the confidence interval is shorter. However, as previously noted, it appears that sampling is from a light-tailed, skewed distribution, and this is a situation where using Student's t distribution can yield a confidence interval that does not have the nominal probability coverage – the interval can be too short. The 0.95 confidence interval for μ is (577.1, 623.4), which is even shorter and probably very inaccurate in terms of probability coverage. If instead the equal-tailed bootstrap-t method is used, given by (4.10), the resulting 0.95 confidence interval for the 20% trimmed mean is (523.0, 626.3), which is also substantially longer than the confidence interval based on Student's t distribution. To reiterate, all indications are that trimming, versus no trimming, generally improves probability coverage when using Eq. (4.3) and sampling is from a skewed, light-tailed distribution, but the percentile bootstrap or bootstrap-t method can give even better results, at least when n is small.

4.4.5 Singh's Modification

Consider a random sample where say 15% of the observations are outliers. Of course, if a 20% trimmed mean is used, these outliers do not have an undue influence on the estimate as well as the standard error. Note, however, that when generating a bootstrap sample, by chance the number of outliers could exceed 20% which can result in a relatively long confidence interval. Singh (1998) derived theoretical results showing that this problem can be addressed by Winsorizing the data before taking a bootstrap sample, provided the amount of Winsorizing does not exceed the amount of trimming. So if inferences based on a 20% trimmed are to be made, theory allows taking bootstrap samples from the Winsorized data provided the amount of Winsorizing does not exceed 20%. When using a percentile bootstrap method, for example, confidence intervals are computed in the usual way. That is, the only difference from the basic percentile bootstrap method in Section 4.4.1 is that observations are resampled with replacement from the Winsorized data.

Although theory allows the amount of Winsorizing to be as large as the amount of trimming, if we Winsorize as much as we trim, probability coverage can be unsatisfactory, at least with small to moderate sample sizes (Wilcox, 2001a). However, if for example 10% Winsorizing is done when making inferences based on a 20% trimmed mean, good probability coverage is obtained.

Singh's results extend to the bootstrap-t method. But all indications are that achieving accurate probability coverage is difficult. Presumably this problem becomes negligible as the sample size increases, but just how large the sample must be to obtain reasonably accurate probability coverage is unknown.

4.4.6 R Functions *trimpb* and *trimcibt*

The R function *trimpb* (written for this book) computes a 0.95 confidence interval using the percentile bootstrap method. It has the general form

```
trimpb(x, tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,WIN=F,plotit=F,win=0.1,pop=1),
```

where *x* is any R vector containing data, *tr* again indicates the amount of trimming, *alpha* is α , and *nboot* is *B* which defaults to 2000. The argument *WIN* controls whether Winsorizing is done. If *plotit* is set to *T* (for true), a plot of the bootstrap trimmed means is created, and the type of plot created is controlled by the argument *pop*. The choices are:

- *pop*=1, expected frequency curve
- *pop*=2, kernel density estimate (using a normal kernel)
- *pop*=3, boxplot
- *pop*=4, stem-and-leaf
- *pop*=5, histogram
- *pop*=6, adaptive kernel density estimate

The function

```
trimcibt(x, tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599,WIN=F,plotit=F,win=0.1,op=1)
```

performs the bootstrap-t method. Now if *plotit*=*T*, a plot of the $T_{t1}^*, \dots, T_{tB}^*$ values is created based on the adaptive kernel estimator if *op*=1. If *op*=2, an expected frequency curve is used.

4.5 Inferences About M-Estimators

A natural way of computing a confidence interval for μ_m , an M-measure of location, is to estimate the standard error of $\hat{\mu}_m$ with $\hat{\sigma}_m$, as described in Chapter 3, and consider intervals having the form $(\hat{\mu}_m - c\hat{\sigma}_m, \hat{\mu}_m + c\hat{\sigma}_m)$ for some appropriate choice for *c*. This strategy seems to have merit when sampling from a symmetric distribution, but for asymmetric distributions it can be unsatisfactory (Wilcox, 1992a). If, for example, *c* is determined so that the probability coverage is exactly $1 - \alpha$ when sampling from a normal distribution, the same *c* can yield

a confidence interval with probability coverage substantially different from $1 - \alpha$ when sampling from asymmetric distributions instead. Moreover, it is unknown how large n must be so that the resulting confidence interval has probability coverage reasonably close to the nominal level.

One alternative approach is to apply a bootstrap-t method, but simulations do not support this approach, at least when $n \leq 40$. Could the bootstrap-t method be improved by using something like the adaptive kernel density estimator when estimating the standard of $\hat{\mu}_m$? All indications are that probability coverage remains unsatisfactory. Currently, the most effective method is the percentile bootstrap (but direct comparisons with the method studied by [Kuonen, 2005](#), have not been made).

As before, generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling n observations, with replacement, from X_1, \dots, X_n , yielding X_1^*, \dots, X_n^* . Let $\hat{\mu}_m^*$ be the M-estimator of location based on the bootstrap sample just generated. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\mu}_{m1}^*, \dots, \hat{\mu}_{mB}^*$. The $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_m is

$$(\hat{\mu}_{m(\ell+1)}^*, \hat{\mu}_{m(u)}^*) \quad (4.13)$$

where $\ell = \alpha B / 2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = B - \ell$, and $\hat{\mu}_{m(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\mu}_{m(B)}^*$ are the B bootstrap values written in ascending order.

The percentile bootstrap method appears to give fairly accurate probability coverage when $n \geq 20$ and $B = 399$, but for smaller sample sizes the actual probability coverage can be less than 0.925, with $\alpha = 0.05$. Increasing B to 599 does not appear to improve the situation very much. Another problem is that the iterative method of computing $\hat{\mu}_m$ can break down when applying the bootstrap and n is small. The reason is that if more than half of the observations have a common value, $MAD = 0$ resulting in division by zero when computing $\hat{\mu}_m$. Because the bootstrap is based on sampling with replacement, as n gets small, the probability of getting $MAD = 0$, within the bootstrap sample, increases. Of course, problems might also arise in situations where some of the X_i have a common value. Similar problems arise when using $\hat{\mu}_{os}$ instead. This might suggest abandoning the M-estimator, but as noted in Chapter 3, there are situations where it might be preferred over the trimmed mean.

Table 4.6 shows the estimated probability of observing $\hat{\mu}_{m(\ell)}^* > 0$, and the probability of $\hat{\mu}_{m(u)}^* < 0$, when observations are generated from a g-and-h distribution that has been shifted so that $\mu_m = 0$. For example, when sampling from a normal distribution, the probability of a Type I error, when testing $H_0: \mu_m = 0$, is $0.030 + 0.034 = 0.064$. If sampling is from a lognormal distribution, the two tail probabilities are estimated to be 0.019 and 0.050, so the probability of a Type I error when testing $H_0: \mu_m = 0$ is 0.069. Increasing B to 599, the estimated probability of a Type I error is now 0.070. Thus, there is room for improvement, but

**Table 4.6: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$ when Using
Eq. (4.13), $B = 399$, $\alpha = 0.05$, $n = 20$.**

g	h	$P(\hat{\mu}_{m(\ell)}^* > 0)$	$P(\hat{\mu}_{m(u)}^* < 0)$
0.0	0.0	0.030	0.034
0.0	0.5	0.029	0.036
0.5	0.0	0.023	0.044
0.5	0.5	0.023	0.042

probability coverage and control over the probability of a Type I error might be deemed adequate in some situations.

Tingley and Field (1990) suggest yet another method for computing confidence intervals based on *exponential tilting* and a *saddlepoint approximation* of a distribution. (Also see Gatto & Ronchetti, 1996, as well as Robinson, Ronchetti, & Young, 2003, for related results.) They illustrate the method when dealing with M-estimators, but their results are quite general and might have practical interest when using other measures of location. While preparing this chapter, the author ran a few simulations to determine how their method performs when working with M-estimators. When sampling from a standard normal distribution, with $n = 25$ and simulations based on 10,000 replications, the estimated Type I error probability was $\hat{\alpha} = 0.078$ when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level. In contrast, $\hat{\alpha} = 0.064$ when using the percentile bootstrap. Perhaps there are situations where the Tingley–Field method offers a practical advantage, but this has not been established as yet.

From an efficiency point of view, the one-step M-estimator (with Huber's Ψ) given by Eq. (3.25) can be a bit more satisfactory than the modified one-step M-estimator (MOM) in Section 3.10. (With sufficiently heavy tails, MOM can have better efficiency.) However, with very small sample sizes, it seems that reasonably accurate confidence intervals are easier to obtain when using MOM.

4.5.1 R Functions `mestci` and `momci`

The R function `onesampb` can be used to compute confidence intervals based on MOM or an M-estimator. This function also returns a p-value based on the null value indicated by the argument `nv`. For convenience, the R function

```
mestci(x,alpha=0.05,nboot=399,bend=1.28,os=F)
```

is supplied for the special case where the goal is to compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_m (an M-measure of location based on Huber's Ψ) using the percentile bootstrap method. The default value for α (0.05, `nboot`) is the number of bootstrap samples to be used,

which defaults to 399, and bend is the bending constant used in Huber's Ψ , which defaults to 1.28. (See Chapter 3.) The argument os is a logical variable that defaults to F, for false, meaning that the fully iterated M-estimator is to be used. Setting os=T causes the one-step M-estimator, $\hat{\mu}_{os}$, to be used. The R function

```
momci(x,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,bend=2.24,SEED=TRUE,null.value=0)
```

is supplied for situations where there is specific interest in the modified one-step M-estimator. (The argument bend refers to the constant used by the Hampel identifier described in Section 3.10.) The function also reports a p-value based on the null value indicated by the argument null.value.

■ Example

If the law data in Table 4.3 are stored in the R variable x, the command mestci(x) returns a 0.95 confidence interval for μ_m equal to (573.8, 629.1). For this data, the function also prints a warning that because the number of observations is less than 20, division by zero might occur when computing the bootstrap M-estimators, but in this particular case this problem does not arise. Note that the length of the confidence interval is shorter than the length of the confidence interval for the trimmed mean, based on Eq. (4.3), but with such a small sample size, and because sampling appears to be from a light-tailed distribution, the probability coverage of both confidence intervals might be less than 0.95. The command mestci(x,os=T) computes a 0.95 confidence interval using the one-step M-estimator. This yields (573.8, 629.5), which is nearly the same as the 0.95 confidence interval based on $\hat{\mu}_m$.

4.6 Confidence Intervals for Quantiles

This section addresses the problem of computing a confidence interval for x_q , the q th quantile. Many strategies are available, but only a few are listed here.

Consider the interval $(X_{(i)}, X_{(j)})$. As a confidence interval for the q th quantile, the exact probability coverage of this interval is

$$\sum_{k=i}^{j-1} \binom{n}{k} q^k (1-q)^{n-k} \quad (4.14)$$

(e.g., Arnold, Balakrishnan, & Nagaraja, 1992). An issue is whether alternative methods might give shorter confidence intervals, but it seems that among the alternatives listed here,

little is known about this possibility. Imagine that a confidence interval is sought that has probability coverage at least 0.95, say. If n is small and fixed, as q goes to zero or one, it becomes impossible to achieve this goal. For example, if $n = 30$ and $q = 0.05$, the highest possible probability coverage is 0.785. So an issue is whether other methods can be found that perform reasonably well in this case.

Next consider techniques based on the Harrell–Davis estimator, $\hat{\theta}_q$. A simple method that seems to be reasonably effective, at least for $\alpha = 0.05$ and $n \geq 20$, is to use the percentile bootstrap. Another approach that appears to be about as effective as the percentile bootstrap is described here. It continues to give good results in situations covered in Chapter 5, where the percentile bootstrap can be unsatisfactory, but there are situations where the reverse is true as well. (For other methods that have been considered, see Wilcox, 1991b.)

Let $\hat{\sigma}_{\text{hd}}$ be the bootstrap estimate of the standard error of $\hat{\theta}_q$, which is described in Chapter 3. Here, $B = 100$ bootstrap samples are used to compute $\hat{\sigma}_{\text{hd}}$. Temporarily assume that sampling is from a normal distribution and suppose c is determined so that the interval

$$(\hat{\theta}_q - c\hat{\sigma}_{\text{hd}}, \hat{\theta}_q + c\hat{\sigma}_{\text{hd}}) \quad (4.15)$$

has probability coverage $1 - \alpha$. Then simply continue to use this interval when sampling from non-normal distributions. There is the practical problem that c is not known, but it is easily estimated by running simulations on a computer. Suppose c is to be chosen with the goal of computing a 0.95 confidence interval. For normal distributions, simulations indicate that for n fixed, c does not vary much as a function of the quantile being estimated, provided $n \geq 11$ and attention is restricted to those quantiles between 0.3 and 0.7. For convenience, c was determined for $n = 11, 15, 21, 31, 41, 61, 81, 121$, and 181, and then a regression line was fitted to the resulting pairs of points yielding

$$\hat{c} = 0.5064n^{-0.25} + 1.96, \quad (4.16)$$

where the exponent, -0.25 , was determined using the half-slope ratio of Tukey's resistant regression line. (See, for example, Velleman & Hoaglin, 1981; Wilcox, 1996a.) When dealing with the 0.2 or 0.8 quantile, (4.16) gives reasonably good results for $n > 21$. For $11 \leq n \leq 21$, use

$$\hat{c} = \frac{-6.23}{n} + 5.01.$$

Critical values have not been determined for $n < 11$. For the 0.1 and 0.9 quantiles, use

$$\hat{c} = \frac{36.2}{n} + 1.31$$

when $11 \leq n \leq 41$, otherwise use Eq. (4.16).

**Table 4.7: Values of
 $\hat{\alpha}$ when Using (4.17),
 $n = 13$ and $\alpha = 0.05$.**

g	h	$\hat{\alpha}$
0.0	0.0	0.067
0.0	0.5	0.036
0.5	0.0	0.062
0.5	0.5	0.024

As a partial check on the accuracy of the method, it is noted that when observations are generated from a lognormal distribution, the actual probability coverage when working with the median, when $n = 21$ and $\alpha = 0.05$, is approximately 0.959, based on a simulation with 10,000 replications. For the 0.1 and 0.9 quantiles it is 0.974 and 0.928, respectively. However, with $n = 30$ and $q = 0.05$, this method performs poorly. A negative feature of this approach is that it might perform poorly when there are tied values. (More details regarding tied values are given in Section 4.6.1 and subsequent chapters.)

Another approach is to use \hat{x}_q to estimate the q th quantile as described in Section 3.5, estimate the standard error of \hat{x}_q with $\hat{\sigma}_{mj}$, the Maritz–Jarrett estimator described in Section 3.4, and then assume that

$$Z = \frac{\hat{x}_q - x_q}{\hat{\sigma}_{mj}}$$

has a standard normal distribution. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the q th quantile is

$$(\hat{x}_q - z_{1-\alpha/2}\hat{\sigma}_{mj}, \hat{x}_q + z_{1-\alpha/2}\hat{\sigma}_{mj}), \quad (4.17)$$

where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of the standard normal distribution. Table 4.7 shows $\hat{\alpha}$, the estimate of one minus the probability coverage, for the four g-and-h distributions discussed in Section 4.2 when $q = 0.5$, $\alpha = 0.05$ and $n = 13$. The estimates are based on simulations with 10,000 replications. When sampling from a lognormal distribution, $\hat{\alpha} = 0.067$.

A variation of this last method is to replace the Maritz–Jarrett estimate of the standard error with an estimate based on Eq. (3.11), which requires an estimate of $f(x_q)$, the probability density function evaluated at x_q . If $f(x_q)$ is estimated with the adaptive kernel method in Section 3.2.4, a relatively accurate 0.95 confidence interval can be had with $n = 30$ and $q = 0.05$. In fact, this is the only method known to perform reasonably well for this special case. As we move from normality toward heavy-tailed distributions, this method continues to perform tolerably well up to a point (a g-and-h distribution with $g = h = 0.2$), but eventually it will fail. For example, with $g = h = 0.5$, the probability coverage is approximately 0.92, but increasing n to 40, the probability coverage is approximately 0.95.

4.6.1 Beware of Tied Values when Making Inferences About Quantiles

When making inferences about quantiles, tied values can create serious practical problems when computing confidence intervals and testing hypotheses. For the special case where the goal is to compute a confidence interval for the population median, the method in the next section can be used when tied values occur. But when comparing the median of two or more distributions, techniques based on estimates of the standard error of M , which simultaneously assume M has a normal distribution, can be highly unsatisfactory, even with large sample sizes. The first general problem is getting a reasonably accurate estimate of the standard error. As noted in Section 3.3.4, all known estimates of the standard error of the sample median can be extremely inaccurate. The second difficulty is that the sampling distribution of M can be poorly approximated by a normal distribution, even with a large sample size.

More generally, when using any quantile estimator that is based on only one or two order statistics, methods for estimating the standard error can be highly inaccurate and asymptotic normality cannot be assumed. With very few tied values, methods based on estimates of the standard error might continue to perform well. But at some point this is no longer true. The safest strategy at the moment is to use a method that does not require an estimate of the standard error. The distribution-free method based on Eq. (4.14) is one possibility. Another is to use a percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. This approach can yield shorter confidence intervals compared to the method based on Eq. (4.14). But when dealing with quantiles close to zero or one, it is unclear when this approach becomes unsatisfactory.

To underscore why tied values can cause problems when working with the median, and to illustrate a limitation of the central limit theorem, imagine a random sample X_1, \dots, X_n , where each X_i has the binomial probability function

$$\binom{15}{x} 0.3^x 0.7^{15-x}.$$

So, for example, the probability that a randomly sampled participant responds with the value 13 is 0.09156. As is evident, with a sample size of $n = 20$, tied values are guaranteed since there are only 16 possible responses. The left panel of Figure 4.5 shows a plot of the relative frequencies associated with 5000 sample medians, with each sample median based on $n = 20$ randomly sampled observations. The plot resembles somewhat a normal curve, but note that only five values for the sample median occur. Now look at the right panel, which was created in the same manner as the left panel, only with a sample size of $n = 100$ for each sample median. Blind reliance on the central limit theorem would suggest that the plot will look more like a normal distribution than the left panel, but clearly this is not the case. Now only three values for the sample median are observed. In practical terms, methods for making inferences

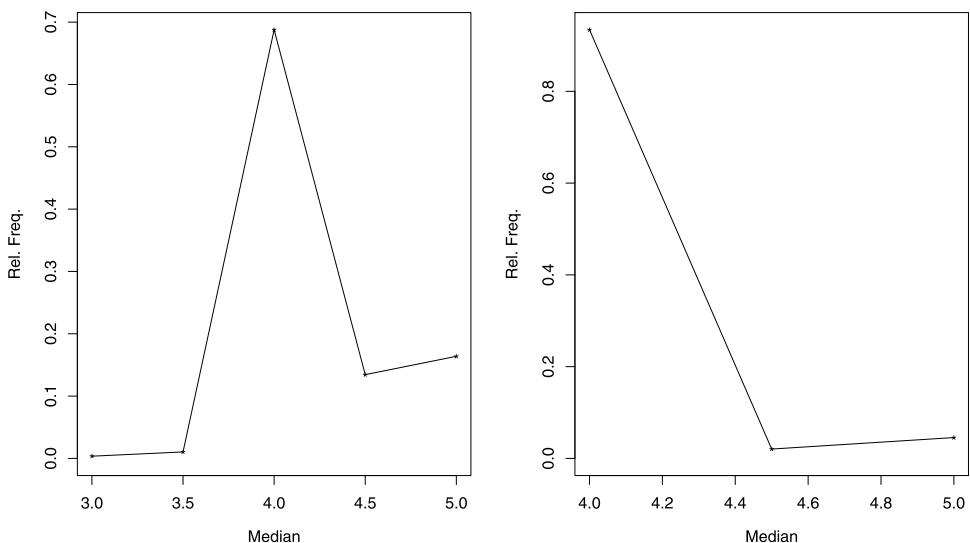


Figure 4.5: When tied values can occur, the sample median might not be asymptotically normal. The left panel shows the sampling distribution of the median with $n = 20$. The right panel is the sampling distribution with $n = 100$.

about the median, which assume the sample median has a normal distribution, can be disastrous when tied values can occur.

4.6.2 A Modification of the Distribution-Free Method for the Median

When the goal is to compute a confidence interval for the population median, the following method can be used even when there are tied values. Suppose W is a binomial random variable with probability of success $p = 0.5$ and n trials. For any integer k greater than 0 and less than $[n/2]$, let $\gamma_k = P(k \leq W \leq n - k)$, the probability that the number of successes, W , is between k and $n - k$, inclusive. Then a distribution-free γ_k confidence interval for the median is

$$(X_{(k)}, X_{(n-k+1)}).$$

That is, the probability coverage is exactly γ_k under random sampling (e.g. Hettmansperger & McKean, 1998; also see Yohai & Zamar, 2004). This is just a special case of the first method described in the previous section based on Eq. (4.14).

Because the binomial distribution is discrete, it is not possible, in general, to choose k so that the probability coverage is exactly equal to $1 - \alpha$. For example, if $n = 10$, a 0.891 and 0.978 confidence interval can be computed, but not a 0.95 confidence interval as is often desired.

However, linear interpolation can be used along the lines suggested by [Hettmansperger and Sheather \(1986\)](#) so that the probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. First determine k such that $\gamma_{k+1} < 1 - \alpha < \gamma_k$. Next, compute

$$I = \frac{\gamma_k - (1 - \alpha)}{\gamma_k - \gamma_{k+1}}$$

and

$$\lambda = \frac{(n - k)I}{k + (n - 2k)I}.$$

Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval is

$$(\lambda X_{(k+1)} + (1 - \lambda)X_{(k)}, \lambda X_{(n-k)} + (1 - \lambda)X_{(n-k+1)}). \quad (4.18)$$

Results reported by [Sheather and McKean \(1987\)](#), as well as [Hall and Sheather \(1988\)](#), support the use of this method.

4.6.3 R Functions *qmjci*, *hdci*, *sint*, *sintv2*, *qci*, *qcipb* and *qint*

The R function

```
qmjci(x,q=0.5,alpha=0.05,op=1)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the q th quantile using Eq. (4.17) and the data stored in the R vector x . The function returns the lower and upper values of the confidence interval. The default value for q is 0.5 and the default value for alpha (α) is 0.05. (The accuracy of this confidence interval for $q \neq 0.5$ and n small has not been studied.) With op=1, the Maritz–Jarrett estimate of the standard error is used, and with op=2, the McKean–Schrader estimate (described in Section 3.3.4) is used instead. (With op=2, only q=0.5 is allowed.) With op=3, the function estimates the standard error via the adaptive kernel estimate of $f(x_q)$. The function

```
qci(x,q=0.5,alpha=0.05)
```

returns the same confidence interval as qmjci with op=3 and is provided in case it is convenient.

The R function

```
hdci(x,q=0.5,nboot=100)
```

computes a 0.95 confidence interval using the Harrell–Davis estimator and Eq. (4.15). As indicated, the default value for q is 0.5, and the default number of bootstrap samples, nboot,

is 100. The R function

```
qcipb(x,q=0.5,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,SEED=TRUE,nv=0)
```

uses the Harrell–Davis estimator in conjunction with a percentile bootstrap method. Unlike the R function `hdci`, `qcipb` is not restricted to 0.95 confidence intervals.

The function

```
sint(x,alpha=0.05)
```

computes a confidence interval for the median using Eq. (4.18), where α is taken to be 0.05 if not specified. To get a p-value when testing the hypothesis that the population median is equal to some specified value, use the R function

```
sintv2(x,alpha=0.05,nullval=0),
```

where the null value is specified by the argument `nullval`, which defaults to 0. Confidence intervals for other quantiles, based on Eq.(4.14) in Section 4.6, which do not use interpolation, are computed by the function

```
qint(x,q=0.5,alpha=0.05).
```

The exact probability coverage is reported as well.

■ Example

[Staudte and Sheather \(1990\)](#) illustrate the use of Eq. (4.18) with data from a study on the lifetimes of EMT6 cells. The values are 10.4, 10.9, 8.8, 7.8, 9.5, 10.4, 8.4, 9.0, 22.2, 8.5, 9.1, 8.9, 10.5, 8.7, 10.4, 9.8, 7.7, 8.2, 10.3, 9.1. Both the sample median, M , and $\hat{x}_{0.5}$ are equal to 9.1. The resulting 0.95 confidence interval reported by `sint` is (8.72, 10.38). In contrast, the confidence interval based on Eq. (4.17), as computed by the R function `qmjci`, is (8.3, 9.9). The length of the confidence intervals are about the same. The main difference is that the confidence interval based on (4.17) is centered about the sample median, 9.1, while the confidence interval based on Eq. (4.18) is not. The Harrell–Davis estimate of the median is 9.26, and a 0.95 confidence interval based on Eq. (4.15), computed with the R function `hdci`, is (8.45, 10.08).

4.7 Empirical Likelihood

Empirical likelihood methods (Owen, 2001) represent another nonparametric approach for computing a confidence interval for the population mean that should be noted. Asymptotic results suggest that a Bartlett corrected empirical likelihood approach is superior to using a bootstrap-t method (DiCiccio, Hall, & Romano, 1991).

The empirical likelihood method can be used to construct a confidence interval for μ , but for simplicity it is described in terms of testing $H_0: \mu = \mu_0$. Consider distributions F_p , $p = (p_1, \dots, p_n)$ supported on the sample X_1, \dots, X_n , where X_i is assigned mass p_i . For a specified value of μ , the empirical likelihood $L(\mu)$ is defined to be the maximum value of Πp_i over all such distributions that satisfy $\sum X_i p_i = \mu$. Because Πp_i attains its overall maximum when $p_i = n^{-1}$, it follows that the empirical likelihood is maximized when $\mu = \bar{X}$. The empirical likelihood ratio for testing H_0 is

$$W = -2 \log\{L(\mu_0)/L(\bar{X})\}.$$

When the null hypothesis is true, W has approximately a chi-squared distribution with 1 degree of freedom. In particular, reject H_0 at the α level if $W \geq c$, where c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with 1 degree of freedom.

4.7.1 Bartlett Corrected Empirical Likelihood

The Bartlett corrected empirical likelihood method is applied as follows. Let $\hat{\mu}_j = n^{-1} \sum (X_i - \bar{X})^j$ and

$$a = \frac{1}{2} \hat{\mu}_4 \hat{\mu}_2^{-2} - \frac{1}{3} \hat{\mu}_3^2 \hat{\mu}_2^{-3}.$$

Then the null hypothesis is rejected if $W(1 - an^{-1}) \geq c$.

Table 4.8 reports simulation estimates (based on 1000 replications) of the Type I error probability for the empirical likelihood (EL) method, the Bartlett corrected empirical likelihood (BCEL), the equal-tailed bootstrap-t (BEQ) and the symmetric bootstrap-t (BSYM). The distributions considered are normal, chi-squared with 1 degree of freedom (χ_1^2), a Student's t with 5 degrees of freedom (t_5), a lognormal distribution (LogN), the contaminated normal (cnorm) shown in Figure 1.1, and some g-and-h distributions. Glenn and Zhao (2007) derived theoretical results indicating that the empirical likelihood methods can be unsatisfactory when sampling from contaminated normal. And the results in Table 4.8 illustrate that they can indeed be highly unsatisfactory.

Table 4.8: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities.

n	Distribution	EL	BCEL	BEQ	BSYM
20	Normal	0.074	0.064	0.058	0.045
	χ^2_1	0.117	0.103	0.068	0.080
	t_5	0.075	0.059	0.067	0.036
	LogN	0.137	0.120	0.099	0.104
	Cnorm	0.169	0.138	0.116	0.010
	(g,h)=(0.2,0.0)	0.090	0.072	0.083	0.035
	(g,h)=(0.2,0.2)	0.094	0.080	0.083	0.047
	(g,h)=(0.5,0.5)	0.270	0.241	0.231	0.186
50	Normal	0.052	0.050	0.055	0.049
	χ^2_1	0.074	0.069	0.055	0.059
	t_5	0.062	0.058	0.072	0.048
	LogN	0.068	0.062	0.058	0.054
	Cnorm	0.137	0.125	0.145	0.011
	(g,h)=(0,0.2)	0.061	0.057	0.073	0.037
	(g,h)=(0.2,0.2)	0.074	0.066	0.080	0.050
	(g,h)=(0.5,0.5)	0.215	0.203	0.207	0.194

EL=empirical likelihood.

BCEL=Bartlett corrected empirical likelihood.

BEQ=bootstrap-t, equal-tailed.

BSYM=bootstrap-t, symmetric.

As previously noted, Bradley (1978) has suggested that generally, at a minimum, the actual Type I error probability should be between 0.025 and 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level. Based on this criterion, none of the methods are satisfactory. However, for skewed distributions for which the median proportion of outliers does not exceed 0.05, the symmetric bootstrap method gives satisfactory results. The symmetric bootstrap method can be too conservative when sampling from a symmetric heavy-tailed distribution, but this might be judged to be less serious than having an actual Type I error greater than 0.075, as is the case when using the empirical likelihood methods. Note that with $n = 20$, the symmetric bootstrap method has a Type I error probability of 0.080 when sampling from a chi-squared distribution with 1 degree of freedom. Increasing the sample size to $n = 25$, the estimate drops to 0.065, and for $n = 30$ it is 0.059.

Some additional simulations were run with $n = 100$ and it was found that the empirical likelihood methods continue to perform poorly when sampling from the heavy-tailed distributions considered here. With $n = 200$ they perform well when sampling from the contaminated normal but estimates exceed 0.15 when sampling from the g-and-h distribution when $g = h = 0.5$.

Recent results on how to improve the empirical likelihood method, when working with the mean, are reported by [Vexler, Liu, Kang, and Hutson \(2009\)](#), but control over the Type I error probability remains rather poor when dealing with non-normal distributions. Also see [Glenn and Zhao \(2007\)](#). For a review of empirical likelihood methods when dealing with regression, see [Chen and Van Keilegom \(2009\)](#).

As for $n = 50$, the empirical likelihood methods compete better with the bootstrap-t methods, but the symmetric bootstrap-t performs well in situations where the empirical likelihood methods are unsatisfactory based on Bradley's criterion. Again a criticism of the symmetric bootstrap-t is that for a symmetric heavy-tailed distribution (the contaminated normal), the Type I error probability drops below 0.025. But the other three methods have estimates greater than 0.12. So for general use, the symmetric bootstrap-t seems best.

Some additional simulations were run with $n = 100$ and it was found that the empirical likelihood methods continue to perform poorly when sampling from the heavy-tailed distributions considered here. With $n = 200$ they perform well when sampling from the contaminated normal but estimates exceed 0.15 when sampling from the g-and-h distribution when $g = h = 0.5$.

4.8 Concluding Remarks

To summarize a general result in this chapter, there is a plethora of methods one might use to compute confidence intervals and test hypotheses. Many methods can be eliminated based on published studies, but several possibilities remain. As noted in Chapter 3, there are arguments for preferring trimmed means over M-estimators, and there are arguments for preferring M-estimators instead, so the choice between the two is not particularly obvious. In terms of computing confidence intervals, all indications are that when working with the 20% trimmed, reasonably accurate probability coverage can be obtained over a broader range of situations versus an M-estimator or mean. As already stressed, the 20% trimmed mean can have a relatively small standard error when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution, but other criteria can be used to argue for some other measure of location. If the sample size is at least 20, M-estimators appear to be a viable option based on the criterion of accurate probability coverage. An advantage of the modified one-step M-estimator (MOM) is that accurate confidence intervals can be computed with small sample sizes in situations where methods based on M-estimators are not quite satisfactory, and it is flexible about how many observations are trimmed, in contrast to a trimmed mean. From an efficiency point of view, M-estimators based on Huber's Ψ generally have a bit of an advantage over MOM, when sampling from a normal distribution or a distribution where the expected proportion of outliers is less than 0.1. However, as the expected proportion of outliers increases, MOM can have a smaller standard

error than the one-step M-estimator (Özdemir & Wilcox, 2010). And in terms of controlling Type I error probabilities, it seems that using MOM in conjunction with a percentile bootstrap method is a bit more satisfactory than using a one-step M-estimator, particularly when dealing with skewed, relatively light-tailed distributions. Inferences about quantiles might appear to be rather uninteresting at this point, but they can be used to address important issues that are ignored by other measures of location, as will be seen in Chapter 5. Put more generally, different methods for summarizing data can reveal important and interesting features that other methods miss.

4.9 Exercises

1. Describe situations where the confidence interval for the mean might be too long or too short. Contrast this with confidence intervals for the 20% trimmed mean and μ_m .
2. Compute a 0.95 confidence interval for the mean, 10% mean, and 20% mean using the data in Table 3.1 of Chapter 3. Examine a boxplot of the data and comment on the accuracy of the confidence interval for the mean. Use both Eq. (4.3) and the bootstrap-t method.
3. Compute a 0.95 confidence interval for the mean, 10% mean, and 20% mean using the lifetime data listed in the example of Section 4.6.2. Use both Eq. (4.3) and the bootstrap-t method.
4. Use the R functions qmjci, hdcI, and sint to compute a 0.95 confidence interval for the median based on the LSAT data in Table 4.3. Comment on how these confidence interval compare to one another.
5. The R function rexp generates data from an exponential distribution. Use R to estimate the probability of getting at least one outlier, based on a boxplot, when sampling from this distribution. Discuss the implications for computing a confidence interval for μ .
6. If the exponential distribution has variance $\mu_{[2]} = \sigma^2$, then $\mu_{[3]} = 2\sigma^3$ and $\mu_{[4]} = 9\sigma^4$. Determine the skewness and kurtosis. What does this suggest about getting an accurate confidence interval for the mean?
7. Do the skewness and kurtosis of the exponential distribution suggest that the bootstrap-t method will provide a more accurate confidence interval for μ_t versus the confidence interval given by Eq. (4.3)?
8. For the exponential distribution, would the sample median be expected to have a relatively high or low standard error? Compare your answer to the estimated standard error obtained with data generated from the exponential distribution.
9. Discuss the relative merits of using the R function sint versus qmjci and hdcI.
10. Verify Eq. (4.5) using the decision rule about whether to reject H_0 described in Section 4.4.3.

11. For the LSAT data in [Table 4.3](#), compute a 0.95 bootstrap-t confidence interval for mean using the R function trimcibt with plotit=T. Note that a boxplot finds no outliers. Comment on the plot created by trimcibt in terms of achieving accurate probability coverage when using Student's t. What does this suggest about the strategy of using Student's t if no outliers are found by a boxplot?
12. Generate 20 observations from a g-and-h distribution with $g = h = 0.5$. (This can be done with the R function ghdist, written for this book.) Examine a boxplot of the data. Repeat this 10 times. Comment on the strategy of examining a boxplot to determine whether the confidence interval for the mean has probability coverage at least as high as the nominal level.

Comparing Two Groups

A natural and reasonable approach to comparing two distributions is to compare robust measures of location and scale, but first attention is focused on global comparisons of two distributions. The motivation for global comparisons is that if two distributions differ, they might do so in complicated and interesting ways that are not revealed by differences between single measures of location or scale. For example, if one or both distributions are skewed, the difference between the means might be large compared to the difference between the trimmed means, or any other measure of location that might be used. As is evident, the reverse can happen where the difference between the trimmed means is large and the difference between the means is not. Of course, two or more measures of location might be compared, but this might miss interesting differences and trends among subpopulations of participants.

To elaborate, it helps first to consider a simple but unrealistic situation. Consider two normal distributions that have means $\mu_1 = \mu_2$. Then any test of the hypothesis $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ should not reject. But suppose the variances differ. To be concrete, suppose an experimental method is being compared to a control group, and that the control group has variance $\sigma_1^2 = 1$, while the experimental method has $\sigma_2^2 = 0.5$. Then the experimental group is effective in the sense that low scoring participants in the experimental group have higher scores than low scoring participants in the control group. Similarly, the experimental method is detrimental in the sense that high scoring participants in the experimental group tend to score lower than high scoring participants in the control group. That is, different subpopulations of participants respond in different ways to the experimental method. Of course, in this simple example, one could compare the variances of the two groups, but for various reasons to be explained and illustrated, it can be useful to compare the quantiles of the two groups instead.

As another example, consider the two distributions in [Figure 5.1](#). The distributions differ, the effectiveness of one method over the other depends on which quantiles are compared, yet the distributions have identical means and variances. (The skewed distribution is a chi-squared distribution with 4 degrees of freedom, so the mean and variance are 4 and 8, respectively, and the symmetric distribution is normal.)

In this book, an experimental method is defined to be *completely effective* compared to a control group if each quantile of the experimental group is greater than the corresponding

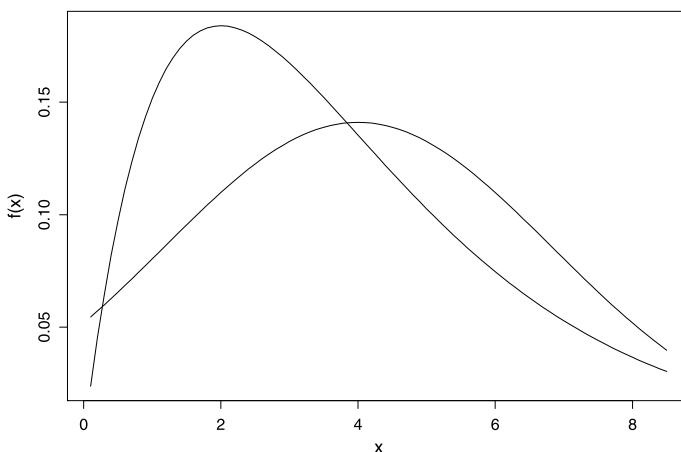


Figure 5.1: Two different distributions with equal means and variances.

quantile of the control group. In symbols, if θ_1 and θ_2 are the q th quantiles of the control and experimental group, respectively, the experimental method is said to be *completely effective* if $\theta_2 > \theta_1$ for any q . This implies that the experimental method is stochastically larger than the distribution associated with the control. If $\theta_1 > \theta_2$ for some q , but $\theta_1 < \theta_2$ for others, the experimental method is defined to be *partially effective*. Both of the illustrations just described correspond to situations where an experimental method is only partially effective. There are situations where comparing measures of location and scale can be used to establish whether an experimental method is completely effective (e.g., [Wilcox, 1990b](#)), but this requires assumptions that are not always met and cannot always be tested in an effective manner, so this approach is not pursued here. Note that Student's t test assumes that $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2$ even when $\mu_1 \neq \mu_2$. If this assumption is met, and distributions are normal, then $\mu_1 > \mu_2$ implies that the experimental method is completely effective. The practical concern is that, when these two assumptions are not met, as is commonly the case, such a conclusion can be highly misleading and inaccurate.

5.1 The Shift Function

There are various ways entire distributions might be compared. This section describes an approach based on the so-called shift function. The basic idea, which was developed by [Doksum \(1974, 1977\)](#) as well as [Doksum and Sievers \(1976\)](#), is to plot the quantiles of the control group versus the differences between the quantiles. That is, plot θ_1 versus

$$\Delta(\theta_1) = \theta_2 - \theta_1, \quad (5.1)$$

Table 5.1: Weight Gain, in Grams, for Large Babies.

Group 1 (heartbeat)							
Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain
1	190	11	10				
2	80	12	10				
3	80	13	0				
4	75	14	0				
5	50	15	-10				
6	40	16	-25				
7	30	17	-30				
8	20	18	-45				
9	20	19	-60				
10	10	20	-85				
Group 2 (no heartbeat)							
Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain	Subject	Gain
1	140	11	-25	21	-50	31	-130
2	100	12	-25	22	-50	32	-155
3	100	13	-25	23	-60	33	-155
4	70	14	-30	24	-75	34	-180
5	25	15	-30	25	-75	35	-240
6	20	16	-30	26	-85	36	-290
7	10	17	-45	27	-85		
8	0	18	-45	28	-100		
9	-10	19	-45	29	-110		
10	-10	20	-50	30	-130		

where θ_2 is the q th quantile of the experimental method. $\Delta(\theta_1)$ is called a *shift function*. It measures how much the control group must be shifted so that it is comparable to the experimental method at the q th quantile.

The shift function is illustrated with some data from a study by [Salk \(1973\)](#). The goal was to study weight gain in newborns. [Table 5.1](#) shows the data for a portion of the study based on infants who weighed at least 3500 grams at birth. The experimental group was continuously exposed to the sound of a mother's heartbeat. For the moment, attention is focused on comparing the deciles rather than all of the quantiles. For the control group (not exposed to the sound of a heartbeat), the Harrell–Davis estimates of the deciles (the 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, 0.6, 0.7, 0.8, and 0.9 quantiles) are $-171.7, -117.4, -83.1, -59.7, -44.4, -32.1, -18.0, 7.5$, and 64.9 . For the experimental group the estimates are $-55.7, -28.9, -10.1, 2.8, 12.2, 22.8, 39.0, 61.9$, and 102.7 , and this yields an estimate of the shift function. For example, an estimate of $\Delta(x_{0.1})$ is $\hat{\Delta}(-171.7) = -55.7 - (-171.7) = 116$. That is, the weight gain among infants at the 0.1 quantile of the experimental group is estimated to be 116 grams higher than the infants corresponding to the 0.1 quantile of the control. [Figure 5.2](#) shows a plot of the estimated deciles for the control group versus $\hat{\Delta}$. Notice the apparent monotonic decreasing

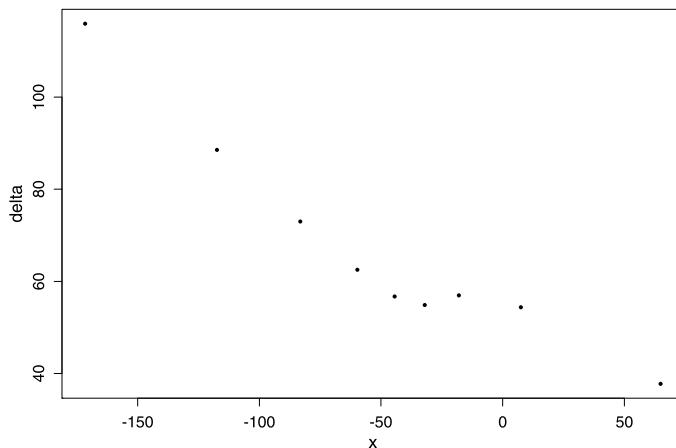


Figure 5.2: The x-axis indicates the deciles for the first group and the y-axis indicates the difference between the decile of the second group versus the first.

relationship between θ_1 , weight gain in the control group, versus Δ . The plot suggests that exposure to the sound of a heartbeat is most effective for infants who gain the least amount of weight after birth. As is fairly evident, this type of detailed comparison can be important and useful. If, for example, an experimental method is expensive or invasive, knowing how different subpopulations compare might affect the policy or strategy one is willing to adopt when dealing with a particular problem.

Next, attention is turned to the more general setting where the goal is to compare all of the quantiles rather than just the deciles. Suppose the value x satisfies $P(X \leq x) = q$. As noted in Chapter 3, from a strictly technical point of view, x is not necessarily the q th quantile. If x is the q th quantile, the difference between the two distributions at θ_1 is measured with $\Delta(\theta_1)$ given by Eq. (5.1). If x is not the q th quantile, as might be when sampling from a discrete distribution, the difference between the two distributions is measured with

$$\Delta(x) = \theta_2 - x.$$

Let X_1, \dots, X_n and Y_1, \dots, Y_m be random samples from a control and experimental group, respectively. As usual, let $X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ be the order statistics. Following Doksum and Sievers (1976), $\Delta(x)$ can be estimated as follows. Let $\hat{q} = \hat{F}(x)$ be the proportion of observations in the control group that are less than or equal to x . In terms of the order statistics, $\hat{q} = i/n$, where i is the largest integer such that $X_{(i)} \leq x$. Note that x qualifies as a reasonable estimate of θ_1 , the q th quantile. Then to estimate $\Delta(x)$, all that is needed is an estimate of the q th quantile of Y . The simplest estimate is $Y_{(\ell)}$, where $\ell = [\hat{q}m + 0.5]$ and as usual the notation $[\hat{q}m + 0.5]$ means to round $\hat{q}m + 0.5$ down to the nearest integer. In other words, use the

quantile estimator described in Section 3.4 of Chapter 3. Finally, estimate $\Delta(x)$ with

$$\hat{\Delta}(x) = Y_{(\ell)} - x. \quad (5.2)$$

One can then plot $\hat{\Delta}(x)$ versus x to get an overall sense of how the two groups compare.

■ Example

As a simple illustration, suppose it is desired to estimate $\Delta(-160)$ for the weight data in [Table 5.1](#). There are $n = 36$ participants in the control group, three participants have values less than or equal to -160 , so $\hat{q} = 3/36$. To estimate the $3/36$ quantile of the experimental group, note that there are $m = 20$ participants, so $\ell = [(3/36)(20) + 0.5] = 2$. Therefore, the estimate of $y_{3/36}$ is the second smallest value in the experimental group, which is -60 . Hence, $\Delta(-160)$ is estimated to be $-60 - (-160) = 100$ suggesting that the typical infant who would lose 160 grams at birth would lose 100 grams less if exposed to the sound of a heartbeat. There are also three values in the control group less than or equal to -180 , so $\Delta(-180)$ is estimated to be $\hat{\Delta}(-180) = -60 - (-180) = 120$. Note that the shift function is just a series of straight lines with jumps at the points $(X_i, \hat{\Delta}(X_i))$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. (A graphical illustration is given in [Figure 5.3](#) which is discussed at the end of Section 5.1.4.)

There remains the problem of how to make inferences about $\Delta(x)$. Several approaches are described for comparing independent groups and their relative merits are summarized. One approach is based on comparing specified quantiles that are estimated with the Harrell–Davis estimator. Two other methods compute a confidence band for all quantiles. These latter two methods are based on two versions of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test which are summarized in the next section of this chapter, after which attention is returned to making inferences about $\Delta(x)$.



5.1.1 The Kolmogorov–Smirnov Test

The Kolmogorov–Smirnov test is designed to test

$$H_0 : F(x) = G(x), \text{ all } x, \quad (5.3)$$

versus $H_1: F(x) \neq G(x)$ for at least one x , where F and G are the distributions associated with two independent groups (cf. [Li, Tiwari, & Wells, 1996](#)). The Kolmogorov–Smirnov test is of interest in its own right, and it is of interest in the present situation because it yields a confidence band for the shift function (cf. [Fan, 1996](#)).

Let X_1, \dots, X_n , and Y_1, \dots, Y_m be random samples from two independent groups. Let $\hat{F}(x)$ and $\hat{G}(x)$ be the usual empirical distribution functions. So $\hat{F}(x)$ is just the proportion of X_i

values less than or equal to x , and $\hat{G}(x)$ is the proportion of Y_i values less than or equal to x . The Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistic for testing Eq. (5.3) is based on $\max|\hat{F}(x) - \hat{G}(x)|$, the maximum being taken over all possible values of x . That is, the test statistic is based on an estimate of the Kolmogorov distance between the two distributions. Let Z_i be the $n + m$ pooled observations. In symbols, $Z_i = X_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, and $Z_{n+i} = Y_i$, $i = 1, \dots, m$. Then the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic is

$$D = \max|\hat{F}(Z_i) - \hat{G}(Z_i)|, \quad (5.4)$$

the maximum being taken over all $n + m$ values of i . That is, for each i , $i = 1, \dots, n + m$, compute $|\hat{F}(Z_i) - \hat{G}(Z_i)|$ and set D equal to the largest of these values.

When sampling from continuous distributions, in which case ties occur with probability zero, percentage points of the null distribution of D can be obtained using a recursive method (Kim & Jennrich, 1973). Table 5.2 outlines the calculations. The method is too tedious to do by hand, an R function is provided that computes the exact significance level, so no illustration is given on how to perform the calculations.

Suppose the null hypothesis of identical distributions is true. If H_0 is rejected when $D > c$, and the algorithm in Table 5.2 indicates that $P(D > c) = \alpha$, given n and m , then the probability of a Type I error is exactly α when ties are impossible. Moreover, the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test is distribution free – the probability of a Type I error is exactly α regardless of which distributions are involved. However, if there are ties, the probability of a Type I error is less than α (Schroer & Trenkler, 1995), but an exact significance level can be computed. Given the pooled data, Z , and letting $Z_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq Z_{(N)}$ be the order statistics, the significance level of D , given Z , can be determined by proceeding as described in Table 5.2, only $C(i, j)$ is also set equal to 1 if $i + j < N$ and $Z_{(i+j)} = Z_{(i+j+1)}$ (Schroer & Trenkler, 1995; cf. Hilton, Mehta, & Patel, 1994).

There is another version of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test worth considering that is based on a weighted analog of the Kolmogorov distance between two distributions. Let $N = m + n$, $M = mn/N$, $\lambda = n/N$, and $\hat{H}(x) = \lambda\hat{F}(x) + (1 - \lambda)\hat{G}(x)$. Now, the difference between any two distributions, at the value x , is estimated with

$$\frac{\sqrt{M}|\hat{F}(x) - \hat{G}(x)|}{\sqrt{\hat{H}(x)[1 - \hat{H}(x)]}}. \quad (5.6)$$

Then $H_0: F(x) = G(x)$ can be tested with an estimate of the largest weighted difference over all possible values of x . (Also see Büning, 2001.) The test statistic is

$$D_w = \max \frac{\sqrt{M}|\hat{F}(Z_i) - \hat{G}(Z_i)|}{\sqrt{\hat{H}(Z_i)(1 - \hat{H}(Z_i))}}, \quad (5.7)$$

Table 5.2: Computing the Percentage Points of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov Statistic.

To compute $P(D \leq c)$, where D is the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic given by (5.4), let $C(i, j) = 1$ if

$$\left| \frac{i}{n} - \frac{j}{m} \right| \leq c, \quad (5.5)$$

otherwise $C(i, j) = 0$, where the possible values of i and j are $i = 0, \dots, n$ and $j = 0, \dots, m$. Note that there are $(m+1)(n+1)$ possible values of D based on sample sizes of m and n . Let $N(i, j)$ be the number of paths over the lattice

$$\{(i, j) : i = 0, \dots, n; j = 0, \dots, m\},$$

from $(0, 0)$ to (i, j) , satisfying (5.5). Because the path to (i, j) must pass through either the point $(i-1, j)$ or $(i, j-1)$, $N(i, j)$ is given by the recursion relation

$$N(i, j) = C(i, j)[N(i, j-1) + N(i-1, j)],$$

subject to the initial conditions $N(i, j) = C(i, j)$ when $ij = 0$. When ties occur with probability zero, and $H_0: F(x) = G(x)$ is true,

$$P(D \leq c) = \frac{m!n!N(m, n)}{(n+m)!},$$

where the binomial coefficient, $(n+m)!/(m!n!)$, is the number of paths from $(0, 0)$ to (n, m) .

When working with the weighted version of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test, D_w , proceed exactly as before only set $C(i, j) = 1$ if

$$\sqrt{\frac{mn}{n+m}} \left| \frac{i}{n} - \frac{j}{m} \right| \left[\frac{i+j}{n+m} \left(1 - \frac{i+j}{n+m} \right) \right]^{-1/2} \leq c.$$

Then

$$P(D_w \leq c) = \frac{m!n!N(m, n)}{(n+m)!}.$$

where the maximum is taken over all values of i , $i = 1, \dots, N$, subject to $\hat{H}(Z_i)[1 - \hat{H}(Z_i)] > 0$. An exact significance level can be determined as described in Table 5.2. An argument for D_w is that it gives equal weight to each x in the sense that the large sample (asymptotic) variance of Eq. (5.6) is independent of x . Put another way, $|\hat{F}(x) - \hat{G}(x)|$, the estimate of the Kolmogorov distance at x , tends to have a larger variance when x is in the tails of the distributions. Consequently, inferences based on the unweighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic, D , tend to be more sensitive to differences that occur in the middle portion of the distributions. In contrast, Eq. (5.6) is designed so that its variance remains fairly stable as a function of x . Consequently, D_w is more sensitive than D to differences that occur in the tails.

When using D_w , and both m and n are less than or equal to 100, an approximate 0.05 critical value is

$$\frac{1}{95}\{0.48[\max(n, m) - 5] + 0.44|n - m|\} + 2.58,$$

the approximation being derived from the percentage points of D_w reported by Wilcox (1989). When using D , an approximation of the α critical value, when performing a two-sided test, is

$$\sqrt{-\frac{n+m}{2nm} \log(\alpha/2)}$$

(e.g., Hollander & Wolfe, 1973). This approximate critical value is reported by the R function ks described in the next section of this chapter.

5.1.2 R Functions *ks*, *kssig*, *kswsig*, and *kstiesig*

The R function

```
ks(x,y,w=F,sig=T,alpha=0.05),
```

ks, written for this book, performs the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test, where x and y are any R vectors containing data. (Again, the R functions written for this book can be obtained as described in Section 1.8.) The default value for w is F for false, indicating that the unweighted test statistic, D , is to be used. Using w=T results in the weighted test statistic, D_w . The default value for sig is T, meaning that the exact p-value is computed using the method in Table 5.2. If sig=F, ks uses the approximate α critical value, where by default, $\alpha = 0.05$ is used. The function returns the value of D or D_w , the approximate α critical value if sig=F, and the exact p-value if sig=T.

■ Example

If the weight-gain data in Table 5.1 are stored in the R vectors x and y, the command ks(x,y,sig=F) returns the value $D = 0.48$ and reports that the 0.05 critical value is approximately 0.38. (The value of D is stored in the R variable ks\$test, and the approximate critical value is stored in ks\$crit.) The command ks(x,y) reports the exact p-value, which is 0.0018 and stored in the R variable ks\$p.value. Thus, with $\alpha = 0.05$, one would reject the hypothesis of identical distributions. This leaves open the issue of where the distributions differ and by how much, but this can be addressed with the confidence bands and confidence intervals described in the remaining portion of this section. The command ks(x,y,T,F) reports that $D_w = 3.5$ and that an approximate 0.05 critical value is 2.81. The command ks(x,y,T) computes the p.value when using D_w , which in contrast to D assumes there are no ties. For the weight-gain data, there are ties and the function warns that the reported p-value is not exact.

For convenience, the functions `kssig`, `kswsig`, and `kstiesig` are also supplied, which compute exact probabilities for the Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistics. These functions are used by the function `ks` to determine significance levels, so in general they are not of direct interest when testing $H_0: F(x) = G(x)$, but they might be useful when dealing with other issues covered in this chapter. The function `kssig` has the form

$$\text{kssig}(n,m,c).$$

It returns the exact p-value level when using the critical value c , assuming there are no ties and the sample sizes are n and m . In symbols, it determines $P(D > c)$ when computing D with n and m observations randomly sampled from two independent groups having identical distributions. Continuing the illustration involving the weight-gain data, the R command

```
kssig(length(x),length(y),ks(x,y)$test)
```

computes the p-value of the unweighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistic assuming there are no ties. The result is 0.021. Because there are ties in the pooled data, this is higher than the p-value reported by `kstiesig` which takes ties into account.

If there are ties among the pooled observations, the exact p-value can be computed with the R function `kstiesig`. (This is done automatically when using the function `ks`.) It has the general form

$$\text{kstiesig}(x,y,c)$$

and reports the value of $P(D > c|Z)$, where the vector $Z = (Z_1, \dots, Z_N)$ is the pooled data. For the weight-gain data, $D = 0.48$, and `kstiesig(x,y,0.48)` returns the value 0.0018, the same value returned by the function `ks`. If there are no ties among the observations, `kstiesig` returns the same significance level as `ks(x,y,sig=T)`, the significance level associated with the unweighted test statistic, D .

5.1.3 The B and W Band for the Shift Function

This section describes two methods for computing a simultaneous $1 - \alpha$ level confidence band for $\Delta(x)$. Suppose c is chosen so that $P(D \leq c) = 1 - \alpha$. As usual, denote the order statistics by $X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ and $Y_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq Y_{(m)}$. For convenience, let $X_0 = -\infty$ and $X_{(n+1)} = \infty$. For any x satisfying $X_{(i)} \leq x < X_{(i+1)}$, let

$$k_* = \left[m \left(\frac{i}{n} - \frac{c}{\sqrt{M}} \right) \right]^+,$$

where $M = mn/(m + n)$ and the notation $[x]^+$ means to round up to the nearest integer. For example, $[5.1]^+ = 6$. Let

$$k^* = \left\lceil m \left(\frac{i}{n} + \frac{c}{\sqrt{M}} \right) \right\rceil,$$

where k^* is rounded down to the nearest integer. Then a level $1 - \alpha$ simultaneous, distribution-free confidence band for $\Delta(x)$ ($-\infty < x < \infty$) is

$$[Y_{(k_*)} - x, Y_{(k^*+1)} - x], \quad (5.8)$$

where $Y_{(k_*)} = -\infty$ if $k_* < 0$ and $Y_{(k^*)} = \infty$ if $k^* \geq m + 1$ (Doksum & Sievers, 1976). That is, with probability $1 - \alpha$, $Y_{(k_*)} - x \leq \Delta(x) < Y_{(k^*+1)} - x$ for all x . The resulting confidence band is called an *S band*.

■ Example

Suppose a confidence band for Δ is to be computed for the data in Table 5.1. For the sake of illustration, consider computing the confidence band at $x = 77$. Because $n = 36$ and $m = 20$, $M = 12.86$. Note that the value 77 is between $X_{(33)} = 70$ and $X_{(34)} = 100$, so $i = 33$. From the previous subsection, the 0.05 critical value is approximately $c = 0.38$, so

$$k_* = \left\lceil 20 \left(\frac{33}{36} - \frac{0.38}{\sqrt{12.86}} \right) \right\rceil^+ = 17.$$

Similarly, $k^* = 20$. From Table 5.1, the 17th value in the experimental group, after putting the values in ascending order, is $Y_{(17)} = 75$, $Y_{(20)} = 190$, so the interval around $\Delta(77)$ is

$$(75 - 77, 190 - 77) = (-2, 113).$$



An exact confidence band for Δ , called a *W band*, can also be computed with the weighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistic. Let c be chosen so that $P(D_w \leq c) = 1 - \alpha$. This time, for any x satisfying $X_{(i)} \leq x < X_{(i+1)}$, let $u = i/n$ and set

$$h_* = \frac{u + \{c(1 - \lambda)(1 - 2\lambda u) - \sqrt{c^2(1 - \lambda)^2 + 4cu(1 - u)}\}/2}{1 + c(1 - \lambda)^2},$$

and

$$h^* = \frac{u + \{c(1 - \lambda)(1 - 2\lambda u) + \sqrt{c^2(1 - \lambda)^2 + 4cu(1 - u)}\}/2}{1 + c(1 - \lambda)^2}.$$

Set $k_* = [h_*m]^+$ and $k^* = [h^*m]$. In words, k_* is the value of h_*m rounded up to the nearest integer, where m is the number of observations in the second group (associated with Y). The value of k^* is computed in a similar manner, only its value is rounded down. Then the confidence band is again given by Eq. (5.8).

5.1.4 R Functions sband and wband

The R functions sband and wband are provided for determining confidence intervals for $\Delta(x)$ at each of the X_i values in the control group, and they can be used to compute confidence bands as well. The function sband has the general form

```
sband(x,y,crit=1.36*sqrt((length(x)+length(y))/(length(x)*length(y))),flag=F,
      plotit=T,sm=T,op=1).
```

As usual, x and y are any R vectors containing data. The optional argument crit is the critical value used to compute the simultaneous confidence band, which defaults to the approximate 0.05 critical value if unspecified. The default value for flag is F, for false, meaning that the exact probability of a Type I error will not be computed. The command sband(x,y,flag=T) will report the actual probability of a Type I error using the approximate 0.05 critical value, assuming there are no ties among the pooled data. The command sband(x,y,0.2,T) computes confidence intervals using the critical value 0.2, and it reports the exact probability of a Type I error when there are no ties. The argument plotit defaults to T for true meaning that a plot of the shift function will be created. If sm=T, the plot of the shift function is smoothed using a regression smoother called lowess when the argument op is equal to one. (Smoothers are described in Chapter 11.) If op is not equal to one, lowess is replaced by a running interval smoother (described in Chapter 11).

The function returns an n -by-3 matrix of numbers in the R variable sband\$m. The i th row of the matrix corresponds to the confidence band computed at $\hat{\Delta}(X_{(i)})$, the estimate of the shift function at the i th largest X value. For convenience, the first column of the n -by-3 matrix returned by sband contains $\hat{q} = 1/n$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. The values in the second column are the lower ends of the confidence band, while the upper ends are reported in column 3. A value of NA in the middle column corresponds to $-\infty$, while NA in the last column means the upper end of the confidence interval is ∞ . The function also returns the critical value being used in the R variable sband\$crit, the number of significant differences in sband\$numsig, and if flag=T, the exact probability coverage is indicated by sband\$pc. If flag=F, the value of sband\$pc will be NA for not available. The function wband, which is used exactly like sband, computes confidence intervals (W bands) using the weighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistic, D_w , instead.

Table 5.3: Weight Gain of Rats in Ozone Experiment.

Control:	41.0	38.4	24.4	25.9	21.9	18.3	13.1	27.3	28.5	-16.9
Ozone:	10.1	6.1	20.4	7.3	14.3	15.5	-9.9	6.8	28.2	17.9
Control:	26.0	17.4	21.8	15.4	27.4	19.2	22.4	17.7	26.0	29.4
Ozone:	-9.0	-12.9	14.0	6.6	12.1	15.7	39.9	-15.9	54.6	-14.7
Control:	21.4	26.6	22.7							
Ozone:	44.1	-9.0								

■ Example

[Doksum and Sievers \(1976\)](#) report data from a study designed to assess the effects of ozone on weight gain in rats. The experimental group consisted of 22 seventy-day-old rats kept in an ozone environment for 7 days. A control group of 23 rats, of the same age, were kept in an ozone-free environment. The weight gains, in grams, are listed in [Table 5.3](#). [Table 5.4](#) shows the 23-by-3 matrix reported by the R function sband. The i th row of the matrix reports the confidence interval for Δ at the i th largest value among the X values. If there had been 45 observations in the first group, a 45 by 3 matrix would be reported instead. The function reports that numsig=8 meaning there are eight confidence intervals not containing 0, and from [Table 5.4](#) these are the intervals extending from the second smallest to the ninth smallest value in the control group. For example, the second smallest value in the control group is $X_{(2)} = 13.1$ which corresponds to an estimate of the $q = 2/23 \approx 0.09$ quantile of the control group, and the second row in [Table 5.4](#) (labeled [2,]) indicates that the confidence interval for $\Delta(13.1)$ is (NA, -3.0), which means that the confidence interval is $(-\infty, -3.0)$. The interval does not contain 0 suggesting that rats at the 0.09 quantile of the control group tend to gain more weight compared to the rats at the 0.09 quantile of the experimental method. The next eight confidence intervals do not contain 0 either, but the remaining confidence intervals all contain 0. The function sband indicates that the default critical value corresponds to $\alpha = 0.035$. Thus, there is evidence that rats who ordinarily gain a relatively small amount of weight will gain even less weight in an ozone environment.



The R command sband(x,y,flag=T) reports that when using the default critical value, which is reported to be 0.406, the actual probability coverage is $1 - \alpha = 0.9645$ assuming there are no ties. To find out what happens to $1 - \alpha$ when a critical value of 0.39 is used instead, type the command sband(x,y,0.39,T). The function reports that now, $1 - \alpha = 0.9638$.

The S band suggests that there might be a more complicated relationship between weight gain and ozone than is suggested by a single measure of location. [Figure 5.3](#) shows the plot

Table 5.4: Confidence Intervals for Δ Using the Ozone Data.

	qhat	lower	upper
[1,]	0.04347826	NA	24.2
[2,]	0.08695652	NA	-3.0
[3,]	0.13043478	NA	-3.3
[4,]	0.17391304	NA	-3.4
[5,]	0.21739130	NA	-3.4
[6,]	0.26086957	NA	-2.8
[7,]	0.30434783	NA	-3.5
[8,]	0.34782609	NA	-3.5
[9,]	0.39130435	NA	-1.4
[10,]	0.43478261	-37.8	6.3
[11,]	0.47826087	-37.1	17.5
[12,]	0.52173913	-35.6	21.4
[13,]	0.56521739	-34.3	30.2
[14,]	0.60869565	-34.9	NA
[15,]	0.65217391	-35.0	NA
[16,]	0.69565217	-19.9	NA
[17,]	0.73913043	-20.0	NA
[18,]	0.78260870	-20.5	NA
[19,]	0.82608696	-20.1	NA
[20,]	0.86956522	-18.4	NA
[21,]	0.91304348	-17.3	NA
[22,]	0.95652174	-24.4	NA
[23,]	1.00000000	-26.7	NA

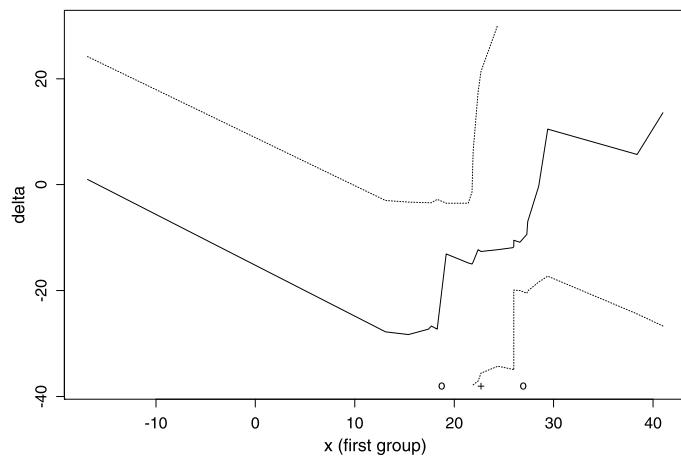


Figure 5.3: The shift function for the ozone data.

of $\hat{\Delta}(x)$ versus x that is created by sband. (The + along the x-axis marks the position of the median in the first group, and the lower and upper quartiles are indicated by an o.) The solid line, between the two dotted lines, is a graph of $\hat{\Delta}(x)$ versus x . The dotted lines form the approximate 0.95 confidence band. As previously indicated, the actual probability coverage of the confidence band is 0.9645. Notice that the bottom dotted line starts at $X = 21.9$. This is because for $X \leq 21.9$ the lower end of the confidence band is $-\infty$. Also, the lower dotted line stops at $X = 41$ because $X = 41$ is the largest X value available. Similarly, for $X > 24.4$, the upper end of the confidence band is ∞ , and this is why the upper dotted line in Figure 5.3 stops at $X = 24.4$. An interesting feature about Figure 5.3 is the suggestion that, as weight gain increases in the control group, ozone has less of an effect. In fact, rats in the control group who would ordinarily have a high weight gain might actually gain more weight when exposed to ozone. However, the confidence band makes it clear that more data are needed to resolve this issue.

5.1.5 Confidence Band for Specified Quantiles

This section describes two alternatives to the shift function. An appeal of the shift function is that assuming random sampling only, the simultaneous probability coverage of the difference between all of the quantiles can be determined. Moreover, power is relatively high when there is interest in quantiles close to the median. But when there is interest in quantiles relatively close to zero or one, power can be relatively poor. Also, tied values might result in relatively poor power as well.

Method Q1

The first alternative method is specifically designed for comparing the deciles. It uses the Harrell–Davis estimator and is designed so that the simultaneous probability coverage of all nine confidence intervals is approximately $1 - \alpha$. One advantage of this approach is that it might have more power than S or W bands when sampling from normal or light-tailed distributions.

Let $\hat{\theta}_{qx}$ be the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile of the distribution associated with X , $q = 0.1, \dots, 0.9$. Let $\hat{\theta}_{qy}$ be the corresponding estimate for Y . The goal is to compute confidence intervals for $\theta_{qy} - \theta_{qx}$ such that the simultaneous probability coverage is $1 - \alpha$. A solution that appears to provide reasonably accurate probability coverage for a wide range of distributions begins by computing a bootstrap estimate of the standard errors for $\hat{\theta}_{qx}$ and $\hat{\theta}_{qy}$ as described in Section 3.1. Here, independent bootstrap samples are used for all 18 deciles being estimated. In particular, bootstrap samples are used to estimate the standard error of $\hat{\theta}_{0.1x}$, the Harrell–Davis estimate of the 0.1 quantile corresponding to X , and a different (independent) set of bootstrap samples is used to estimate the standard error of $\hat{\theta}_{0.2x}$. Let $\hat{\sigma}_{qx}^2$ be

the bootstrap estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\theta}_{qx}$. Then a 0.95 confidence interval for $\theta_{qx} - \theta_{qy}$ is

$$(\hat{\theta}_{qy} - \hat{\theta}_{qx}) \pm c \sqrt{\hat{\sigma}_{qx}^2 + \hat{\sigma}_{qy}^2}, \quad (5.9)$$

where, when $n = m$,

$$c = \frac{80.1}{n^2} + 2.73. \quad (5.10)$$

The constant c was determined so that the simultaneous probability coverage of all nine differences is approximately 0.95 when sampling from normal distributions. Simulations suggest that when sampling from non-normal distributions, the probability coverage remains fairly close to the nominal 0.95 level (Wilcox, 1995a). For unequal sample sizes, the current strategy for computing the critical value is to set n equal to the smaller of the two sample sizes and use c given by Eq. (5.10). This approach performs reasonably well provided the difference between the sample sizes is not too large, but if the difference is large enough, the actual probability of a Type I error can be substantially smaller than the nominal level, especially when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions. Another approach is to use the nine-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution to determine c , but Wilcox found this to be less satisfactory. Yet another approach is to use a percentile bootstrap method to determine an appropriate confidence interval, but this is less satisfactory as well.

Method Q2

There are two limitations associated with method Q1. First, it is designed specifically for comparing the deciles. Second, it might be unsatisfactory when there are tied values, meaning that the probability of one or more Type I errors can exceed the nominal level by an unacceptable amount. The approach used by Wilcox, Erceg-Hurn, Clark, and Carlson (2014) deals with these issues. The mere presence of tied values does not necessarily mean that method Q1 will be unsatisfactory. But to be safe, the method described here currently seems preferable. Perhaps method Q1 has a power advantage when there are no tied values and attention is focused on comparing the deciles, but this issue needs further study.

Method Q2 uses a percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. Details regarding how the percentile bootstrap method is applied are described in a more general context in Section 5.4. Here it is merely noted that method Q2 appears to perform well when comparing the quartiles and both sample sizes are at least twenty. When comparing the 0.1 or 0.9 quantiles, both sample sizes should be at least thirty.

When there are tied values, method Q2 is the only known method that performs reasonably well in terms of controlling the Type I error probability when comparing the lower and upper quartiles. But when there are no tied values, a possible criticism of method Q2 is that

the Harrell–Davis estimator has a finite sample breakdown point of only $1/n$. In this case, a quantile estimator based on a single order statistic (the estimator \hat{x}_q in Section 3.5) might be preferred.

5.1.6 R Functions *shiftd*, *qcomhd*, *qcomhdMC* and *q2gci*

The R function *shiftd*, stored in the R package *Rallfun*, uses method Q1 to compute the 0.95 simultaneous confidence intervals for the difference between the deciles given by Eq. (5.9). The function has the form

```
shiftd(x,y,nboot=200,plotit=TRUE,plotop=FALSE).
```

The data corresponding to the two groups are stored in the R vectors *x* and *y*, and the default number of bootstrap samples used to compute the standard errors is 200. Thus, the command *shiftd(x,y)* will use 200 bootstrap samples when computing confidence intervals, while *shiftd(x,y,100)* will use 100 instead. The function returns a 9 by 3 matrix. The *i*th row corresponds to the results for the $i/10$ quantile. The first column contains the lower ends of the confidence intervals, the second column contains the upper ends, and the third column contains the estimated difference between the quantiles (the quantile associated with *y* minus the quantile associated with *x*). With *plotop=F* and *plotit=T*, the function creates a plot where the *x*-axis contains the estimated quantiles of the first group, as done by *sband*. With *plotop=T*, the function plots $q = 0.1, \dots, 0.9$ versus $(\hat{\theta}_{qy} - \hat{\theta}_{qx})$.

The R function

```
qcomhd(x, y, q = c(0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9), nboot = 2000, plotit = TRUE, SEED = TRUE,
       xlab = "Group 1", ylab = "Est.1-Est.2", tr=0.2)
```

applies method Q2. By default, the 0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9 quantiles are compared, but this can be altered using the argument *q*. The R function

```
qcomhdMC(x, y, q = c(0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9), nboot = 2000, plotit = TRUE, SEED =
          TRUE, xlab = "Group 1", ylab = "Est.1-Est.2", tr=0.2)
```

is exactly the same as *qcomhd*, only it takes advantage of a multicore processor if one is available.

The R function

```
q2gci(x, y, q = c(0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9), nboot = 2000, plotit = TRUE, SEED = TRUE,
       xlab = "Group 1", ylab = "Est.1-Est.2", tr=0.2)
```

is exactly like the R function qcomhd, only the Harrell–Davis estimator is replaced by the quantile estimator \hat{X}_q in Section 3.5, which is based on a single order statistic.

■ Example

For the ozone data in [Table 5.3](#), shiftd returns

	lower	upper	Delta.hat
[1,]	-47.75411	1.918352	-22.917880
[2,]	-43.63624	-6.382708	-25.009476
[3,]	-36.04607	-3.237478	-19.641772
[4,]	-29.70039	-0.620098	-15.160245
[5,]	-24.26883	-1.273594	-12.771210
[6,]	-20.71851	-1.740128	-11.229319
[7,]	-24.97728	7.280896	-8.848194
[8,]	-24.93361	19.790053	-2.571780
[9,]	-20.89520	33.838491	6.471643

The first row indicates that the confidence interval for $\Delta(x_{0.1})$ is $(-47.75411, 1.918352)$, and that $\hat{\Delta}(\hat{\theta}_{x0.1})$ is equal to -22.917880 . The second row gives the confidence interval for Δ evaluated at the estimated 0.2 quantile of the control group, and so on. The confidence intervals indicate that the weight gain in the two groups differ at the 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, 0.5, and 0.6 quantiles of the control group. Note that in general, the third column, which reports $\hat{\Delta}(x)$, is increasing. That is, the differences between weight gain are getting smaller, and for the 0.9 quantile, there is the possibility that rats gain more weight in an ozone environment. However, the length of the confidence interval at the 0.9 quantile is too wide to be reasonably sure.

[Figure 5.4](#) shows the plot created by shiftd for the ozone data. There are nine dots corresponding to the points $(\hat{\theta}_{xq}, \hat{\Delta}(\hat{\theta}_{xq}))$, $q = 0.1, \dots, 0.9$. That is, the dots are the estimated shift function plotted as a function of the estimated deciles corresponding to the data in the first argument, x. Note that in general, the dots are monotonic increasing, which is consistent with [Figure 5.3](#). Above and below each dot is a + indicating the ends of the confidence interval.

5.1.7 R Functions g2plot and g5plot

To supplement the shift function, it might help to plot an estimate of the probability density function for the groups under study. The function

```
g5plot(x1,x2, x3=NULL, x4=NULL, x5=NULL, fr=0.8, aval=0.5, xlab='X', ylab='',
       color=rep('black',5))
```

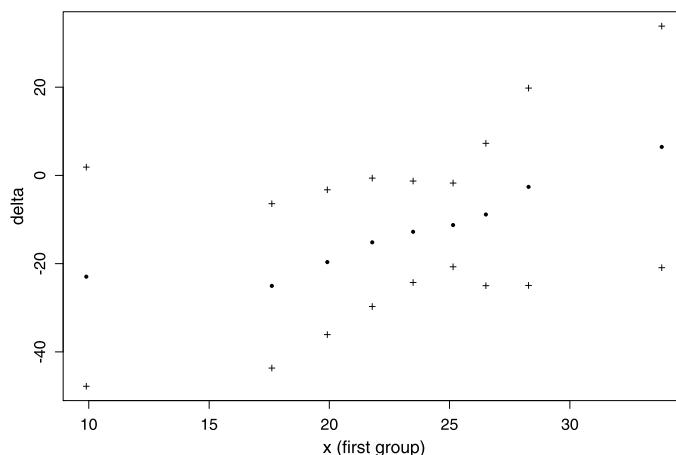


Figure 5.4: The plot created by the function `shiftd` using the ozone data.

is supplied to help accomplish this goal. So the function expects at least two vectors of data and up to five distributions can be plotted. The R function

```
g2plot(x,y,op=4,rval=15,fr=0.8,aval=0.5)
```

is limited to two distributions only but it contains certain options not available when using `g5lot`. In particular, the argument `op` controls the type of graph created. The choices are

- `op=1`, Rosenblatt shifted histogram
- `op=2`, kernel density estimate based on a normal kernel
- `op=3`, expected frequency curve
- `op=4`, adaptive kernel estimator

The arguments `fr` and `aval` are relevant to the various density estimators as described in Chapter 3.

5.2 Student's t Test

This section reviews some practical concerns about comparing means with Student's t test. From previous chapters it is evident that Student's t test can have low power under slight departures from normality toward a heavy-tailed distribution. There are some additional issues, however, that help motivate some of the heteroscedastic methods covered in this book.

It is a bit more convenient to switch notation slightly. For two independent groups, let X_{ij} , $i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, 2$ be a random sample of n_j observations from the j th group. Let μ_j

and σ_j^2 be the mean and variance associated with the j th group. If the variances have a common value, say $\sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2 = \sigma^2$, and if sampling is from normal distributions, then from basic results,

$$T = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2 - (\mu_1 - \mu_2)}{\sqrt{\text{MSWG} \left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2} \right)}} \quad (5.11)$$

has a Student's t distribution with $v = n_1 + n_2 - 2$ degrees of freedom, where

$$\text{MSWG} = \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}$$

is the usual (means squares within groups) estimate of the assumed common variance, σ^2 . If the assumptions of normality and equal variances are met, $E(T) = 0$ and the variance of T goes to one as the samples sizes get large. To quickly review, the hypothesis of equal means, $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$, is rejected if $|T| > t$, the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = n_1 + n_2 - 2$ degrees of freedom, and a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ is

$$(\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2) \pm t \sqrt{\text{MSWG} \left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2} \right)}. \quad (5.12)$$

Concerns about the ability of Student's t test to control the probability of a Type I error date back to at least [Pratt \(1964\)](#), who established that the level of the test is not preserved if distributions differ in dispersion or shape. If sampling is from normal distributions, the sample sizes are equal, but the variances are not equal, Eq. (5.12) provides reasonably accurate probability coverage no matter how unequal the variances might be, provided the common sample size is not too small ([Ramsey, 1980](#)). For example, if the common sample size is 15, and $\alpha = 0.05$, the actual probability coverage will not drop below 0.94. Put another way, in terms of testing H_0 , the actual probability of a Type I error will not exceed 0.06. However, if the sample sizes are equal, but sampling is from non-normal distributions, probability coverage can be unsatisfactory, and if the sample sizes are unequal as well, probability coverage deteriorates even further. Even under normality with unequal sample sizes, there are problems. For example, under normality with $n_1 = 21$, $n_2 = 41$, $\sigma_1 = 4$, $\sigma_2 = 1$, and $\alpha = 0.05$, the actual probability of a Type I error is approximately 0.15. Moreover, [Fenstad \(1983\)](#) argues that $\sigma_1/\sigma_2 = 4$ is not extreme, and various empirical studies support Fenstad's view (e.g., [Keselman et al., 1998](#); [Grissom, 2000](#); [Wilcox, 1987a](#)). The illustration just given might appear to conflict with results in [Box \(1954\)](#), but this is not the case. Box's numerical results indicate that under normality, and when $1/\sqrt{3} \leq \sigma_1/\sigma_2 \leq \sqrt{3}$, Student's t test provides reasonably good control over the probability of a Type I error, but more recent papers have shown that

when $\sigma_1/\sigma_2 > \sqrt{3}$, Student's t test becomes unsatisfactory (e.g., Brown & Forsythe, 1974; Tomarken & Serlin, 1986; Wilcox, Charlin, & Thompson, 1986).

To illustrate what can happen under non-normality, suppose observations for the first group are sampled from a lognormal distribution that has been shifted to have a mean of zero, while the observations from second group have a normal distribution with mean 0 and standard deviation 0.25. With $n_1 = n_2 = 20$ and $\alpha = 0.025$, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_1 < \mu_2$ is 0.136 (based on simulations with 10,000 replications), while the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_1 > \mu_2$ is 0.003. Moreover, Student's t test assumes that $E(T) = 0$, but $E(T) = -0.52$, approximately, again based on a simulation with 10,000 replications. One implication is that, in addition to yielding a confidence interval with inaccurate probability coverage, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ with Student's t test has the undesirable property of not being minimized when H_0 is true. That is, Student's t test is biased. If, for example, 0.5 is subtracted from each observation in the second group, the probability of rejecting $H_0: \mu_1 < \mu_2$ drops from 0.136 to 0.083. That is, the mean of the second group has been shifted by a half standard deviation away from the null hypothesis, yet power is less than the probability of rejecting when the null hypothesis is true.

When using Student's t test, poor power properties and inaccurate confidence intervals are to be expected based on results in Chapter 4. To elaborate on why this is so, let $\mu_{[k]} = E(X - \mu)^k$ be the k th moment about the mean of the random variable X . The third moment, $\mu_{[3]}$, reflects skewness, the most common measure being $\kappa_1 = \mu_{[3]}/\mu_{[2]}^{1.5}$. For symmetric distributions, $\kappa_1 = 0$. It can be shown that for two independent random variables, X and Y , having third moments $\mu_{x[3]}$ and $\mu_{y[3]}$, the third moment of $X - Y$ is $\mu_{x[3]} - \mu_{y[3]}$. In other words, if X and Y have equal skewnesses, $X - Y$ has a symmetric distribution. If they have unequal skewnesses, $X - Y$ has a skewed distribution. From Chapter 4 it is known that when X has a skewed distribution, and when the tails of the distribution are relatively light, the standard confidence interval for μ can have probability coverage that is substantially lower than the nominal level. For symmetric distributions, this problem is much less severe, although probability coverage can be too high when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution. Consequently, when X_{i1} and X_{i2} have identical distributions, and in particular have equal third moments, the third moment of $X_{i1} - X_{i2}$ is zero, suggesting that probability coverage of $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ will not be excessively smaller than the nominal level when using Eq. (5.12). Put another way, if two groups do not differ, $X_{i1} - X_{i2}$ has a symmetric distribution suggesting that the probability of a Type I error will not exceed the nominal level by too much. (For results supporting this conclusion when dealing with highly discrete data, see Rasch, Teuscher, & Guiard, 2007.) However, when distributions differ, and in particular have different amounts of skewness, $X_{i1} - X_{i2}$ has a skewed distribution as well suggesting that probability coverage might be too low and that T given by Eq. (5.11) does not have a mean of zero as is commonly assumed. This in turn suggests that if groups differ, testing $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ with Student's t test

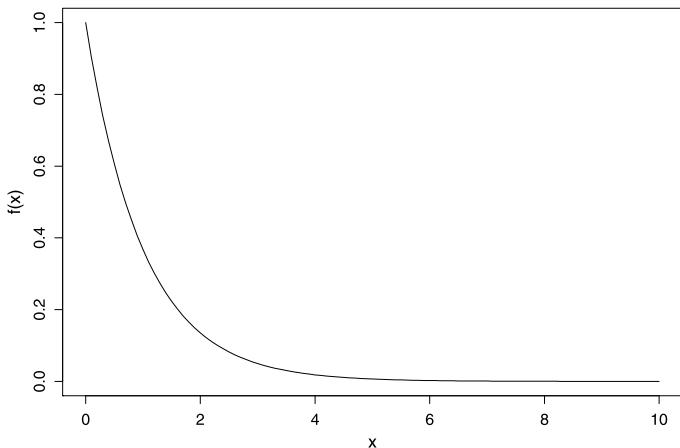


Figure 5.5: An exponential distribution.

might result in an undesirable power property – the probability of rejecting might decrease as $\mu_1 - \mu_2$ increases, as was illustrated in the previous paragraph. In fact, if the groups differ, and have unequal variances and differ in skewness, and if the sample sizes differ as well, then confidence intervals based on Eq. (5.12) are not even asymptotically correct. In particular, the variance of T does not go to one as the sample sizes increase (Cressie & Whitford, 1986). In contrast, heteroscedastic methods are asymptotically correct, they give reasonably accurate probability coverage over a wider range of situations than Student's t , so only heteroscedastic methods are considered in the remainder of this chapter. (For a recent overview of heteroscedastic methods for means, in the two-sample case, see Sawilowsky, 2002.)

It should be noted, however, that even if two groups have the same amount of skewness, problems with probability coverage and control of Type I error probabilities can arise when distributions differ in scale. This occurs for example when sampling from an exponential distribution. Figure 5.5 shows the probability density function of an exponential distribution, $f(x) = \exp(-x)$. The shape of this distribution is similar to the shape of empirical distributions found in various situations. (An example is given at the end of Section 5.3.3. For examples based on psychometric data, see Sawilowsky & Blair, 1992.) The mean of this distribution is $\mu = 1$, the 20% trimmed mean is $\mu_t = 0.761$, and the M-measure of location (based on Huber's Ψ) is $\mu_m = 0.824$.

Consider two exponential distributions, shifted so that they both have a mean of 0, with the second distribution rescaled so that its variance is four times as large as the first. With $n_1 = n_2 = 20$, the probability of a Type I error is 0.133 when testing $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level. Increasing n_1 to 40, the probability of a Type I error is 0.165, while with $n_1 = n_2 = 40$ it is 0.08.

A natural way of trying to salvage homoscedastic methods is to test for equal variances, and if not significant, assume the variances are equal. Even under normality, this strategy can fail because tests for equal variances might not have enough power to detect unequal variances in situations where the assumption should be abandoned, even when the test for equal variances is performed at the 0.25 level (e.g., Hayes & Cai, 2007; Markowski & Markowski, 1990; Moser, Stevens, & Watts, 1989; Wilcox et al., 1986; Zimmerman, 2004).

5.3 Comparing Medians and Other Trimmed Means

This section considers the problem of computing a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$. Included as a special case is a method for comparing medians, which requires specialized techniques. And there is the related goal of testing

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2},$$

the hypothesis that two independent groups have equal trimmed means.

Tukey (1991) argues that when comparing means, surely exact equality is never true; the means differ at some decimal place. The same argument applies to the situation where trimmed means are being compared. A way of dealing with this issue is via Tukey's three decision rule (Jones & Tukey, 2000). The goal is not to test for equality, but rather to determine which group has the larger trimmed mean. If the null hypothesis is rejected a decision is made. If the null hypothesis is not rejected, no decision is made. In this context, p-values reflect the strength of the empirical evidence that a decision can be made.

Yuen's Method

Yuen (1974) derived a method for comparing trimmed means that is designed to allow unequal Winsorized variances. When there is no trimming ($\gamma = 0$), Yuen's method reduces to Welch's (1938) method for comparing means.

Generalizing the notation of Chapters 3 and 4 in an obvious way, suppose the amount of trimming is γ . For the j th group, let $g_j = [\gamma n_j]$ be the number of observations trimmed from each tail, let $h_j = n_j - 2g_j$ be the number of observations left after trimming, and let s_{wj}^2 be the Winsorized sample variance. From Chapter 3, an estimate of the squared standard error of \bar{X}_{tj} is $s_{wj}^2 / \{(1 - 2\gamma)^2 n\}$. However, Yuen estimates the squared standard error with

$$d_j = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j(h_j - 1)}. \quad (5.13)$$

It is left as an exercise to verify that both estimates give similar values. In terms of Type I error probabilities and probability coverage, simulations indicate that Yuen's estimate gives

slightly better results. Yuen's test statistic is

$$T_y = \frac{\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}}{\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}}. \quad (5.14)$$

The null distribution of T_y is approximated with a Student's t distribution with estimated degrees of freedom

$$\hat{v}_y = \frac{(d_1 + d_2)^2}{\frac{d_1^2}{h_1-1} + \frac{d_2^2}{h_2-1}}.$$

The $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}) \pm t \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}, \quad (5.15)$$

where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with \hat{v}_y degrees of freedom. The hypothesis of equal trimmed means is rejected if

$$|T_y| \geq t.$$

(Luh & Guo, 2010, report results on strategies for determining the sample sizes.)

As previously indicated, when two distributions differ, it can be difficult getting a confidence interval for the difference between the means that has probability coverage reasonably close to the nominal level. Theoretical results, supported by simulations, indicate that as the amount of trimming increases from 0 to 20%, Yuen's method yields confidence intervals for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ with probability coverage closer to the nominal level (Wilcox, 1994a). As an illustration, suppose the first group has a normal distribution, and the second group is skewed with $\kappa_1 = 2$ and $n_1 = n_2 = 12$. Wilcox (1994a) reports situations where $H_0: \mu_1 > \mu_2$ is tested with $\alpha = 0.025$, but the actual probability of a type I error is 0.054. (This result is based on simulations with 100,000 replications.) In contrast, with 20% trimming, the actual probability of a Type I error is 0.022. With $n_1 = 80$ and $n_2 = 20$, the probability of a Type I error can be as high as 0.093 – nearly four times higher than the nominal level – when using Welch's test, while with 20% trimming the actual probability of Type I error is approximately 0.042 for the same distributions. Of course, by implication, there are some situations where Welch's test will be unsatisfactory when dealing with a two-sided test and $\alpha = 0.05$.

■ Example

As another illustration that differences in skewness can make a practical difference, imagine that for the first group, 40 observations are generated from a normal, and for the second group, 20 observations are generated from a lognormal distribution that has been shifted so that it has a mean of zero. When testing at the 0.05 level, the actual

Table 5.5: Estimated Power, $n_1 = n_2 = 25$, $\alpha = 0.05$.

Distributions	δ	Welch	Yuen ($\gamma = 0.2$)	KS (exact)	KS ($\alpha = 0.052$)
Normal	0.6	0.536	0.464	0.384	0.464
Normal	0.8	0.780	0.721	0.608	0.700
Normal	1.0	0.931	0.890	0.814	0.872
CN1	1.0	0.278	0.784	0.688	0.780
CN2	1.0	0.133	0.771	0.698	0.772
Slash	1.0	0.054	0.274	0.235	0.308

level of Welch's test is approximately 0.11. And if instead observations for the second group are generated from a g-and-h distribution with $g = h = 0.5$, the actual level is approximately 0.20. Comparing 20% trimmed means instead, the actual levels for these two situations are 0.047 and 0.042, respectively. However, Section 5.3.2 notes that even Yuen's method can be unsatisfactory in terms of Type I errors. An alternative approach to comparing trimmed means is described that gives better results.



From Randles and Wolfe (1979, p. 384), the expectation is that the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test will have lower power than Welch's test when sampling from normal distributions with a common variance. More generally, it might seem that when distributions differ in location only, and are symmetric, the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test will have less power than the Yuen–Welch test. Table 5.5 shows the estimated power of these tests for four distributions, $n_1 = n_2 = 25$, and when δ is added to every observation in the first group. The notation KS (exact) means that the Kolmogorov–Smirnov critical value was chosen as small as possible with the property that the exact probability of a Type I error will not exceed 0.05. The last column in Table 5.5 shows the power of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test when the critical value is chosen so that the probability of a Type I error is as close as possible to 0.05. For the situation at hand, the resulting probability of a Type I error is 0.052. The notation CN1 refers to a contaminated normal where, in Eq. (1.1), $\epsilon = 0.1$ and $K = 10$. The notation CN2 refers to a contaminated normal with $K = 20$. As is seen, the exact test does have less power than Welch's test under normality, but the exact test has substantially more power when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution. Moreover, with $\alpha = 0.052$, the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test has about the same amount of power as Yuen's test with 20% trimming. Another appealing feature of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test, versus the Yuen–Welch test, is that the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test is sensitive to more features of the distributions. A negative feature of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test is that when there are tied values among the pooled observations, its power can be relatively low.

Despite the advantages of using a trimmed mean rather than a mean, perhaps it should be stressed that situations occur where Welch's test rejects and Yuen's test does not. This can

happen even when there are outliers. For example, if the distributions differ in skewness, the difference between the means can be larger than the difference between the trimmed means to the point that Welch's test will have more power.

Comparing Medians

As the amount of trimming approaches 0.5, Yuen's method breaks down; the method for estimating the standard error becomes highly inaccurate resulting in inaccurate confidence intervals and poor control over the probability of a Type I error. If there are no tied values in either group, an approach that currently seems to have practical value is as follows. Let M_1 and M_2 be the sample medians corresponding to groups 1 and 2, respectively, and let S_1^2 and S_2^2 be the corresponding McKean–Schrader estimates of the squared standard errors. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the difference between the population medians is

$$(M_1 - M_2) \pm c \sqrt{S_1^2 + S_2^2}$$

where c is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution. Alternatively, reject the hypothesis of equal population medians if

$$\frac{|M_1 - M_2|}{\sqrt{S_1^2 + S_2^2}} \geq c.$$

But if there are tied values in either group, control over the probability of a Type I error can be very poor. There are two practical problems, which were noted in Chapter 4. First, with tied values, all known estimators of the standard of the sample median can be highly inaccurate. Second, the sampling distribution of the sample median does not necessarily approach a normal distribution as the sample size gets large. When tied values occur, the only known method for comparing medians that performs well in simulations, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, is the percentile bootstrap method in Section 5.4.2.

5.3.1 R Functions *yuen* and *msmed*

The R function

```
yuen(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

performs the Yuen–Welch method for comparing trimmed means. The default amount of trimming (tr) is 0.2, and the default value for α is 0.05. Thus, the command `yuen(x,y)` returns a 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the 20% trimmed means using the data

stored in the R vectors x and y . The confidence interval is returned in the R variable $yuen$ci$. The command $yuen(x,y,0)$ returns a 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the means based on Welch's method. The function also returns the value of the test statistic in $yuen$teststat$, a p-value in $yuen$p.value$, a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval in $yuen$ci$, the estimated degrees of freedom, the estimated difference between the trimmed means, and the estimated standard error. The R function

```
msmed(x,y,alpha=0.05)
```

compares medians using the McKean–Schrader estimates of the squared standard errors.

■ Example

For the ozone data in [Table 5.3](#) and 20% trimming, the R function `yuen` indicates that $T_y = 3.4$, the p-value is 0.0037, and the 0.95 confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is (5.3, 22.85). In contrast, with zero trimming (Welch's method), $T_y = 2.46$, the p-value is 0.019, and the 0.95 confidence interval is (1.96, 20.8). Both methods suggest that for the typical rat, weight gain is higher for rats living in an ozone-free environment, but they give a different picture of the extent to which this is true.

5.3.2 A Bootstrap-t Method for Comparing Trimmed Means

As previously indicated, when testing hypotheses with the Yuen–Welch method, control of Type I error probabilities is generally better when using 20% trimming versus no trimming at all. However, problems might persist when using 20% trimming, especially when performing a one-sided test and the sample sizes are unequal. For example, if sampling is from exponential distributions with sample sizes of 15 and 30, and if the second group has a standard error four times as large as the first, the probability of a Type I error can be twice as large as the nominal level. With $\alpha = 0.025$, $P(T_y < t_{0.025}) = 0.056$, while with $\alpha = 0.05$ the probability is 0.086. As in the one-sample case discussed in [Chapter 4](#), a bootstrap-t method (sometimes called a percentile t method) can give better results. The bootstrap method advocated by [Westfall and Young \(1993\)](#) has been found to have a practical advantage over the Yuen–Welch method ([Wilcox, 1996b](#)), but it seems to have no practical advantage over the bootstrap-t, at least based on extant simulations, so it is not discussed here.

For the situation at hand, the general strategy of the bootstrap-t method is to estimate the upper and lower critical values of the test statistic, T_y , by running simulations on the available data. This is done by temporarily shifting the two empirical distributions so that they have

identical trimmed means, and then generating bootstrap samples to estimate the upper and lower critical values for T_y that would result in a Type I error probability equal to α . Once the critical values are available, a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval can be computed, as is illustrated later.

One way of describing the bootstrap-t in a more precise manner is as follows. For fixed j , let $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{nj}^*$ be a bootstrap sample from the j th group, and set $C_{ij}^* = X_{ij}^* - \bar{X}_{tj}$, $i = 1, \dots, n_j$. Then C_{ij}^* represents a sample from a distribution that has a trimmed mean of zero. That is, the hypothesis of equal trimmed means is true for the distributions associated with the C_{ij}^* values. Consequently, applying the Yuen–Welch method to the C_{ij}^* values should not result in rejecting the hypothesis of equal trimmed means. Let T_y^* be the value of T_y based on the C_{ij}^* values. To estimate the distribution of T_y when the null hypothesis is true, repeat the process just described B times, each time computing T_y^* based on the resulting C_{ij}^* values. Label the resulting T_y^* values T_{yb}^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. Let $T_{y(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{y(B)}^*$ be the T_{yb}^* values written in ascending order. Set $\ell = \alpha B/2$, round ℓ to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$. Then an estimate of the lower and upper critical values is $T_{y(\ell+1)}^*$ and $T_{y(u)}^*$. That is, reject H_0 : $\mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ if $T_y < T_{y(\ell+1)}^*$ or $T_y > T_{y(u)}^*$. A little algebra shows that a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} - T_{y(u)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}, \bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} - T_{y(\ell+1)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}), \quad (5.16)$$

where d_j , given by Eq. (5.13), is the estimate of the squared standard error of \bar{X}_{tj} used by Yuen. (As in Chapter 4, it might appear that $T_{y(u)}^*$ should be used to compute the upper end of the confidence interval, but this is not the case. Details are relegated to the exercises.) When $\alpha = 0.05$, $B = 599$ appears to suffice in terms of probability coverage, and extant simulations suggest that little is gained using $B = 999$. However, in terms of power, $B = 999$ might make a practical difference. For $\alpha < 0.05$, no recommendations about B can be made for the goal of controlling the Type I error probability.

In case it helps, Table 5.6 provides an equivalent way of describing how to apply the bootstrap-t to the two-sample case. The summary in Table 5.6 is very similar to the summary of the one-sample bootstrap-t method given in Table 4.4.

The confidence interval given by Eq. (5.16) is just an extension of the equal-tailed bootstrap-t method described in Chapter 4 to the two sample case. Chapter 4 noted that there are theoretical results suggesting that when computing a two-sided confidence interval, a symmetric two-sided confidence interval should be used instead. A symmetric two-sided confidence interval can be obtained for the situation at hand by replacing T_y given by Eq. (5.14) with

$$T_y = \frac{|\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}|}{\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}}$$

Table 5.6: Summary of the Bootstrap-t Method for Trimmed Means.

1. Compute the sample trimmed means, \bar{X}_{t1} and \bar{X}_{t2} , and Yuen's estimate of the squared standard errors, d_1 and d_2 , given by Eq. (5.13).
2. For the j th group, generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling with replacement n_j observations from X_{1j}, \dots, X_{nj} , yielding $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{nj}^*$.
3. Using the bootstrap samples just obtained, compute the sample trimmed means plus Yuen's estimate of the squared standard error, and label the results \bar{X}_{tj}^* and d_j^* , respectively, for the j th group.
4. Compute

$$T_y^* = \frac{(\bar{X}_{t1}^* - \bar{X}_{t2}^*) - (\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2})}{\sqrt{d_1^* + d_2^*}}.$$

5. Repeat steps 2 through 4 B times yielding $T_{y1}^*, \dots, T_{yB}^*$. $B = 599$ appears to suffice in most situations when $\alpha = 0.05$.
6. Put the $T_{y1}^*, \dots, T_{yB}^*$ values in ascending order yielding $T_{y(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{y(B)}^*$. The T_{yb}^* values provide an estimate of the distribution of

$$\frac{(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}) - (\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2})}{\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}}.$$

7. Set $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounding to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$.

The equal-tailed $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_t is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} - T_{y(u)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}, \bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} - T_{y(\ell+1)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}).$$

($T_{y(\ell)}^*$ will be negative, which is why it is subtracted from $\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}$.)

To get a symmetric two-sided confidence interval, replace step 4 with

$$T_y^* = \frac{|(\bar{X}_{t1}^* - \bar{X}_{t2}^*) - (\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2})|}{\sqrt{d_1^* + d_2^*}}.$$

Set $a = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounding to the nearest integer. The confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}) \pm T_{y(a)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2}.$$

and letting T_y^* represent the value of T_y based on the bootstrap sample denoted by C_{ij}^* . As before, repeatedly generate bootstrap samples yielding $T_{y1}^*, \dots, T_{1B}^*$. Now, however, set $a = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounding to the nearest integer, in which case the critical value is $c = T_{y(a)}^*$, and the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} - c\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}, \bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} + c\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}). \quad (5.17)$$

A variation of this approach was derived by [Guo and Luh \(2000\)](#), which is based in part on a transformation stemming from [Hall \(1992\)](#). The basic idea is to transform Yuen's test statistic so that it is approximated reasonably well by a Student's t distribution. Results reported by [Keselman, Othman, Wilcox, and Fradette \(2004\)](#) indicate, however, that it is preferable to approximate the null distribution of the test statistic used by Guo and Luh using a bootstrap-t method. Among the situations considered by Keselman et al., a bootstrap-t method was found to perform relatively well when the amount of trimming is set at 10% or 15%. However, with small and unequal sample sizes, situations occur where the method is unsatisfactory when using 10% trimming. More details are given in Section 5.4.2. In practical terms, it currently seems that a percentile bootstrap method is a bit more satisfactory and that there can be an advantage in using 20% trimming in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error. Further evidence for preferring the use of a percentile bootstrap method is reported by [Özdemir, Wilcox, and Yildiztepe \(2010\)](#) who report simulation results when distributions differ in skewness. With no trimming, the bootstrap-t method studied by Keselman et al. can be highly unsatisfactory. For the situations considered by [Özdemir \(2013\)](#), there was little difference between the bootstrap-t and the percentile bootstrap, when using a 20% trimmed mean; the bootstrap-t performed slightly better in terms of controlling the Type I error probability.

5.3.3 R Functions *yuenbt* and *yhbt*

The R function

```
yuenbt(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599,side=F)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ using the bootstrap-t method, where the default amount of trimming (tr) is 0.2, the default value for α is 0.05, and the default value for nboot (B) is 599. So far, simulations suggest that in terms of probability coverage, there is little or no advantage to using $B > 599$ when $\alpha = 0.05$. However, there is no recommended choice for B when $\alpha < 0.05$ simply because little is known about how the bootstrap-t performs for this special case. Finally, the default value for side is F, for false, indicating that the equal-tailed two-sided confidence interval is to be used. Using side=T results in the symmetric two-sided confidence interval.

Table 5.7: The Effect of Alcohol.

Group 1:	0	32	9	0	2	0	41	0	0	0
	6	18	3	3	0	11	11	2	0	11
Group 2:	0	0	0	0	0	0	0	1	8	
	0	3	0	0	32	12	2	0	0	0

■ Example

For the ozone data in [Table 5.3](#), [yuenbt](#) reports that the 0.95 symmetric two-sided confidence interval for the difference between the trimmed means is (4.75, 23.4). In contrast, the [Yuen–Welch](#) method yields a 0.95 confidence interval equal to (5.3, 22.85). The equal-tailed bootstrap-t method yields a 0.95 confidence interval of (3.78, 21.4). The symmetric two-sided confidence interval for the difference between the means is obtained with the command [yuenbt\(x,y,0.,side=T\)](#), assuming the data are stored in the R vectors *x* and *y*, and the result is (1.64, 21.2). In contrast [yuenbt\(x,y,tr=0\)](#) yields an equal-tailed confidence interval for the difference between the means: (1.87, 21.6). Note that the lengths of the confidence intervals for the difference between the trimmed means are similar to each other and the length of the confidence interval for the difference between the means, but the next illustration demonstrates that this is not always the case.



■ Example

[Table 5.7](#) shows data from a study dealing with the effects of consuming alcohol. (The data are from a portion of a study conducted by M. Earleywine.) Two groups of participants reported hangover symptoms the morning after consuming equal amounts of alcohol in a laboratory. Group 1 was a control and group 2 consisted of sons of alcoholic fathers. [Figure 5.6](#) shows an adaptive kernel density estimate for the two groups. Note that the shapes are similar to an exponential distribution suggesting that confidence intervals for the difference between the means, with probability coverage close to the nominal level, might be difficult to obtain. In fact, even using 20% trimming, the [Yuen–Welch](#) method might yield inaccurate probability coverage, as already noted. The main point here is that the length of the confidence intervals based on the [Yuen–Welch](#) method can differ substantially from the length of the confidence interval using the bootstrap-t method. The [Yuen–Welch](#) method yields a 0.95 confidence interval equal to (-0.455, 7.788) with a p-value of 0.076. In contrast, the equal-tailed bootstrap-t yields

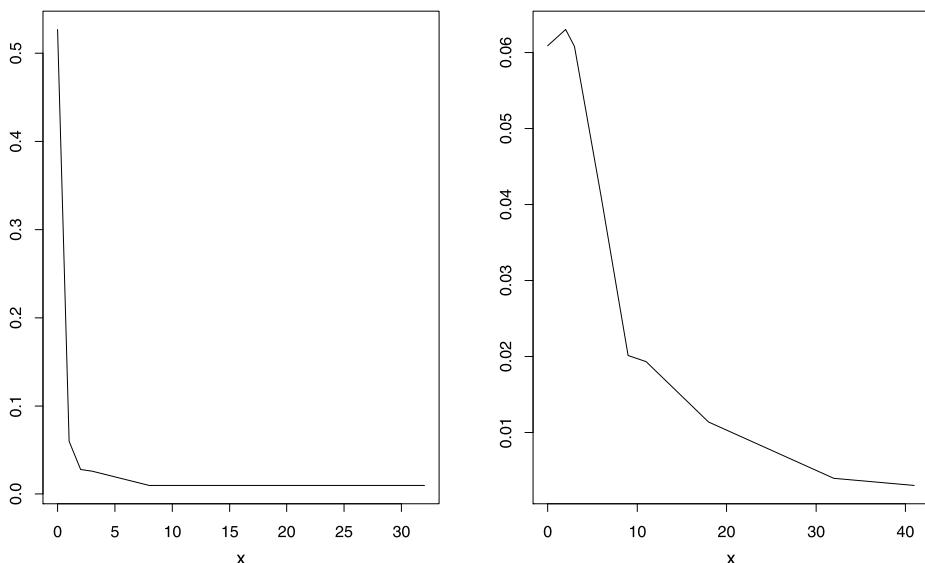


Figure 5.6: Adaptive kernel density estimates for the two groups in the study looking at sons of alcoholic fathers.

a 0.95 confidence interval of $(-4.897, 7.255)$. The ratio of the lengths of the confidence intervals is 0.678. The symmetric bootstrap-t confidence interval is $(-1.357, 8.691)$, and its length, divided by the length of the other bootstrap confidence interval, is 0.83. ■

Although 20% trimming performs well under normality in terms of power and efficiency, situations might be encountered where it is desired to use 10% and 15% trimming instead. If this is the case, one strategy is to use the R function

```
yhbt(x, y, tr = 0.15, tr=0.2, nboot = 600, SEED = T,PV=F),
```

which uses the bootstrap-t version of the test statistic derived by [Guo and Luh \(2000\)](#) that was studied by [Keselman et al. \(2004\)](#). By default, 15% trimming is used. The function returns a confidence interval having probability coverage specified by the argument alpha. A p-value is returned if the argument PV=T, but on occasion this results in a numerical error causing the function to terminate. And even when not computing a confidence interval, situations are encountered where the function is unable to compute a confidence interval. The method is *not* recommended when the goal is to compare means. Another possibility is to use the percentile bootstrap method in Section 5.4.2. Limited studies suggest that even with 10% trimming, there is little or no advantage to using yhbt rather than a percentile bootstrap method. With

20% trimming, results in Özdemir (2013) indicate that the percentile bootstrap method provides better control over the Type I error probability. Moreover, the percentile bootstrap has faster execution time and computational problems do not arise when computing a p-value or a confidence interval.

5.3.4 Measuring Effect Size

A basic issue is quantifying the extent two distributions differ. Perhaps the most obvious approach is to use the difference between two measures of location such as the difference between the medians. But a possible concern is that different measures of location can provide a different perspective on the degree to which two groups differ. That is, using a single measure of location might not provide sufficient detail regarding the extent two groups differ. One way of dealing with this issue is to use the plots in Section 5.1 that deal with differences in the quantiles. Of course, boxplots and plots of the distributions are useful as well. This section summarizes some alternative approaches that have been suggested.

A Standardized Difference

A common way of characterizing the extent two distributions differ is with the measure of effect size

$$\delta = \frac{\mu_1 - \mu_2}{\sigma},$$

where by assumption, $\sigma_1 = \sigma_2 = \sigma$. That is, homoscedasticity is assumed and the common variance is denoted by σ^2 . Cohen (1988) suggests that as a general guide, $\delta = 0.2, 0.5$ and 0.8 correspond to small, medium and large effect sizes, respectively, and often this suggestion is followed.

The usual estimate of δ , popularly known as Cohen's d , is

$$d = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2}{s},$$

where $s^2 = [(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2]/(n_1 + n_2 - 2)$ estimates the assumed common variance.

There are fundamental concerns regarding this measure of effect size. The first is that δ is based on the mean and variance, which are not robust. Even when dealing with symmetric distributions, heavy tailed distributions can result in δ being relatively small when from a graphical perspective the difference between the two distributions appears to be relatively large. The left panel of Figure 5.7 shows two normal distributions, both having variance 1, for which $\delta = 0.8$, which is often viewed as a large effect size. But now look at the right panel

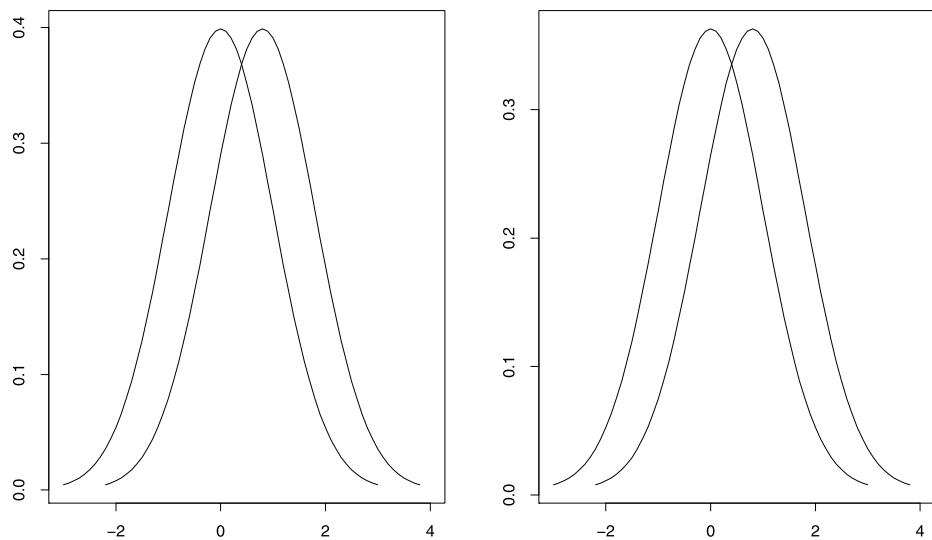


Figure 5.7: The left panel shows two normal distributions for which the measure of effect size δ is 0.8, which is often taken to be a large value. For the right panel, $\delta = 0.24$, despite the similarity to the left panel, illustrating that slight changes in the tails of the distributions can have a major impact on the magnitude of δ .

where again the difference between the means is 0.8. Despite the similarity with the left panel, $\delta = 0.24$, which is typically considered to be small. The reason δ is substantially smaller in the right panel is that the two distributions are mixed normal distributions, which have variance 10.9. A related concern is that outliers can result in d , the estimate of δ , being relatively small as well. A second general concern is that δ assumes homoscedasticity.

Algina, Keselman, and Penfield (2005) suggest using a generalization of δ based on 20% trimmed means and Winsorized variances. Their approach is homoscedastic in the sense that the groups are assumed to have a common (population) Winsorized variance. Moreover, the Winsorized variances are rescaled so that under normality they estimate the variance. With 20% trimming, this means that the Winsorized variance is divided by 0.4121. That is, under normality, $s_w^2/0.4142$ estimates σ^2 . So now δ becomes

$$\delta_t = 0.642 \frac{\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}}{S_w},$$

where

$$S_w^2 = \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_{w1}^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_{w2}^2}{n_1 + n_2 - 2}$$

is the pooled Winsorized variance. Under normality, and when the variances are equal, $\delta = \delta_t$. If the Winsorized variances are not equal, Algina et al. suggest using both

$$\delta_{t1} = 0.642 \frac{\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}}{s_{w1}},$$

and

$$\delta_{t2} = 0.642 \frac{\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}}{s_{w2}}.$$

A possible concern, however, is that δ_{t1} might suggest a large effect size while δ_{t2} suggests the opposite.

Explanatory Power

A robust, heteroscedastic approach to measuring effect size was suggested by [Wilcox and Tian \(2011\)](#), which is based on a generalization of the notion of explanatory power ([Doksum & Samarov, 1995](#)). From a regression perspective, if \hat{Y} is the predicted value of Y , given X , explanatory power is

$$\xi^2 = \frac{\sigma^2(\hat{Y})}{\sigma^2(Y)},$$

the variance of the predicted Y values divided by the variance of the observed Y values. (If \hat{Y} is taken to be the usual least squares regression line, then $\xi^2 = \rho^2$, where ρ is Pearson's correlation.) Given that an observation is randomly sampled from the j th group, take $\hat{Y} = \mu_j$, in which case

$$\sigma^2(\hat{Y}) = \sum (\mu_j - \bar{\mu})^2,$$

where $\bar{\mu} = (\mu_1 + \mu_2)/2$. Momentarily assume that with probability 1, equal sample sizes are used. Let $\sigma^2(Y|j)$ be the variance of Y given that an observation is randomly sampled from the j th group, and let $\sigma^2(Y)$ be the unconditional variance of Y . Based on the random sample Y_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, 2$), $\sigma^2(Y)$ is estimated with $\hat{\sigma}^2(Y)$, the usual sample variance based on these $2n$ (pooled) observations. So the estimate of ξ^2 is

$$\hat{\xi}^2 = \frac{\hat{\sigma}^2(\hat{Y})}{\hat{\sigma}^2(Y)}.$$

Now consider how to estimate ξ^2 when unequal sample sizes are used. First it is stressed that a key component of the approach used here is defining $\sigma^2(Y)$ in terms of situations where equal sample sizes are used with probability 1. Put another way, $\sigma^2(Y)$ is the estimand associated with the sample variance of the pooled Y_{ij} values when $n_1 = n_2$. Given how $\sigma^2(Y)$

is defined, the problem is finding a reasonable estimate of $\sigma^2(Y)$ when dealing with unequal sample sizes. [Kulinskaya and Staudte \(2006, p. 101\)](#) conclude that a natural generalization of δ to the heteroscedastic case does not appear to be possible without taking into account the relative sample sizes. A simple strategy is to again estimate $\sigma^2(Y)$ with the sample variance based on all $n_1 + n_2$ Y_{ij} values, even when $n_1 \neq n_2$. But this estimation method can be shown to be unsatisfactory: the resulting estimate of ξ^2 can be severely biased. To deal with this, suppose the sample sizes are $n_1 < n_2$ for groups 1 and 2, respectively. If we randomly sample (without replacement) n_1 observations from the second group, we have equal sample sizes from both groups resulting in a satisfactory estimate of ξ^2 . That is, use the estimation method for the equal sample case, where the both groups have sample size n_1 . To use all of the data in the second group, repeat this process K times yielding a series of estimates for ξ^2 , which are then averaged to get a final estimate, which we label $\hat{\xi}^2$. The estimate of ξ is just

$$\hat{\xi} = \sqrt{\hat{\xi}^2} \quad (5.18)$$

and is called the *explanatory measure of effect size*.

To get a robust version of ξ^2 , simply replace the mean with some robust measure of location and replace $\sigma^2(Y)$ with some robust measure of variation. Here, unless stated otherwise, a 20% trimmed mean and a 20% Winsorized variance are used, where the Winsorized variance is rescaled to estimate the usual variance, σ^2 , when sampling from a normal distribution. For 20% Winsorization, this means that rather than compute the Winsorized variance of the pooled Y_{ij} values with say s_{wy}^2 , use $s_{wy}^2/0.4121$. When dealing with medians, one possibility is to proceed as just described but with the Winsorized variance replace by some other robust measure of variation such as the percentage bend midvariance. It is noted that under normality and homoscedasticity, $\delta = 0.2, 0.5$ and 0.8 roughly correspond to $\xi = 0.15, 0.35$ and 0.50 , respectively. If, for example, $\delta = 0.5$ is viewed as a medium effect size, as is often done, this corresponds to $\xi = 0.35$. It is noted that when measuring the strength of the association between two variables via Pearson's correlation, for normal distributions it has been suggested that $\rho = 0.1, 0.3$ and 0.5 are relatively small, medium and large values (e.g., [Cohen, 1988](#)).

A Classification Perspective

Consider some value x that was randomly generated from one of the two distributions being compared. Another approach to quantifying the extent two distributions differ is in terms of the ability to determine whether this value came from the first or second group. There are two components to this approach. The first is choosing a method for making a decision about whether some observed value x came from the first or second group. The second component is finding a reasonably accurate estimate of Q , the probability of making a correct decision.

Levy (1967) proposed using a classic discriminant analysis method for dealing with the first component, which assumes normality. To deal with non-normality, Wilcox and Muska (1999) used a kernel density estimator. To elaborate, let $\hat{f}_j(x)$ ($j = 1, 2$) be some kernel density estimate of the distribution associated with the j th group. The decision rule is that x came from the first group if $\hat{f}_1(x) > \hat{f}_2(x)$; otherwise decide x came from group 2. Various strategies for estimating Q were compared by Wilcox and Muska (1999). Their results suggest using a variation of the 0.632 bootstrap estimate of Q , which is described in Section 11.10.3.

A Probabilistic Measure of Effect Size

Yet another useful measure of effect size is

$$p = P(X_{i1} < X_{i2}),$$

the probability that a randomly sampled observation from the first group is less than a randomly sampled observation from the second group. Estimation of this probability is discussed in detail in Section 5.7.

5.3.5 R Functions `akp.effect`, `yuenv2`, `ees.ci`, `med.effect` and `qhat`

The R function

```
akp.effect(x,y,tr=0.2)
```

estimates the effect size δ_t . The function automatically rescales the Winsorized variance so that, based on the amount of trimming used, it estimates the usual variance under normality.

The R function

```
yuenv2(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

is exactly like the R function `yuen` for comparing trimmed means, only the explanatory measure of effect size, $\hat{\xi}$, is reported. The R function

```
ees.ci(x,y,SEED=T,nboot=400,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $|\xi|$. A percentile bootstrap method is used, but modified so that if the p-value is greater than α when testing $H_0 : \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ with Yuen's method, the lower end of the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval is set equal to zero. (If the goal is to compute a confidence interval for ξ rather than $|\xi|$, a percentile bootstrap method can be unsatisfactory.)

The R function `akp.effect` should not be used when the amount of trimming is close to 0.5 because the Winsorized variance breaks down. When using the median, one possibility is to

replace the Winsorized variance with the percentage bend midvariance, and this is done by the R function

```
median.effect(x,y,HD=TRUE,eq.var=FALSE,nboot=100,loc.fun=median,varfun=pbvar).
```

By default the Harrell–Davis estimator is used. Setting the argument HD=FALSE, the usual sample median is used instead. (Also see [Hedges & Olkin, 1985](#), p. 93.)

The R function

```
qhat(x,y,nboot=50,op=2,SEED=TRUE)
```

estimates Q , the likelihood of correctly determining that a value x came from the first group based on a kernel density estimate of the distributions.

■ Example

A practical issue is the effect of ignoring heteroscedasticity when using δ rather than ξ to measure effect size. That is, can the choice of method alter the extent an effect size is deemed to be large? For illustrative purposes, we adopt the usual convention that $\delta = 0.2, 0.5$ and 0.8 correspond to small, medium and large effect sizes, respectively. As already noted, under normality and homoscedasticity, these values roughly correspond to $\xi = 0.15, 0.3$ and 0.5 . Note that if the group with the larger sample size also has the larger variance, this results in a relatively small value for d . To illustrate how d compares to $\hat{\xi}$, simulations were used to estimate both effect sizes with $n_1 = 80$ and $n_2 = 20$, where the first group has a normal distribution with mean 0.8 and standard deviation 4, and the second group has a standard normal distribution. Based on 1000 replications, the median value of d was 0.22, which is typically considered to be a small effect size. (The mean value of d was nearly identical to the median.) The median value of $\hat{\xi}$ was 0.40, which suggests a medium effect size. So even under normality, a heteroscedastic measure of effect size can make a practical difference. If instead the first group has standard deviation 1 and the second has standard deviation 4, now the median estimates are 0.42 and 0.32. That is, in contrast to the first situation, the choice between homoscedastic and heteroscedastic measures of effect size makes little difference. If instead $n_1 = n_2 = 20$, now the median d value is 0.30, a somewhat small effect size, and the median $\hat{\xi}$ value is 0.34, which suggests a medium effect size instead. The effect of ignoring heteroscedasticity is less of an issue with equal sample sizes, compared to the first situation considered, but it has practical consequences.

■ Example

In a study of sexual attitudes, 1327 males and 2282 females were asked how many sexual partners they desired over the next 30 years. (The data used in this example, supplied by Lynn Miller, are stored in the file miller.dat and can be downloaded from the author's web page given in Chapter 1.) Welch's test returns a p-value of 0.30, but Yuen's test has a p-value less than 0.001. Cohen's d is estimated to be 0.049. In contrast, $\hat{\delta}_t = 0.48$, suggesting a medium effect size and $\hat{\xi} = 0.47$ suggesting a large effect size. However, the usual sample median for both groups was estimated to be one, which results in a measure of effect size of zero, the point being that different measures of effect size can give a decidedly different sense of the extent groups differ. That is, multiple measures are needed to understand the extent groups differ. One way of getting a more detailed understanding of how the groups differ is to compare the quantiles via the R function qcomhd, which reveals that the largest differences occur in the right tails of the distributions. The difference between the 0.75 quantiles is estimated to be 5.6 and for the 0.90 quantile the difference is 18.2. That is, males are more likely to give more extreme responses compared to females.

5.4 Inferences Based on a Percentile Bootstrap Method

In recent years, inferences based on a percentile bootstrap method have been found to be particularly effective when working with a wide range of robust estimators. When comparing two independent groups, the method is applied as follows. First, generate bootstrap samples from each group as described in Table 5.6. Let $\hat{\theta}_j^*$ be the bootstrap estimate of θ_j , where now θ_j is any parameter of interest associated with the j th group ($j = 1, 2$). Set

$$D^* = \hat{\theta}_1^* - \hat{\theta}_2^*.$$

Repeat this process B times yielding D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* , let ℓ be $\alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$, in which case an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\theta_1 - \theta_2$ is

$$(D_{(\ell+1)}^*, D_{(u)}^*),$$

where $D_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}^*$.

The theoretical foundation for the method is similar to the theoretical foundation in the one-sample case described in Chapter 4. Imagine the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \theta_2.$$

For the bootstrap estimates $\hat{\theta}_1^*$ and $\hat{\theta}_2^*$, let

$$p^* = P(\hat{\theta}_1^* > \hat{\theta}_2^*).$$

If the null hypothesis is true, then asymptotically (as both n and B get large), p^* has a uniform distribution. Consequently, reject H_0 if $p^* \leq \alpha/2$ or if $p^* \geq 1 - \alpha/2$. Although p^* is not known, it is readily estimated. Let A be the number of values among D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* that are greater than zero. Then an estimate of p^* is

$$\hat{p}^* = \frac{A}{B}.$$

For convenience, set

$$\hat{p}_m^* = \min(p^*, 1 - p^*).$$

Then $2\hat{p}_m^*$ is an estimate of what [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#) call the generalized p-value, and H_0 is rejected if

$$2\hat{p}_m^* \leq \alpha.$$

This last equation leads to the confidence interval given in the previous paragraph.

5.4.1 Comparing M-Estimators

This section comments on the special case there the goal is to compare M-measures of location based on the one-step M-estimator. Chapter 4 noted that, based on simulations conducted so far, the best approach to computing a confidence interval for μ_m , the M-measure of location, is to use a percentile bootstrap method. When comparing two independent groups using a one-step M-estimator of location, again a percentile bootstrap method performs fairly well. For example, with sample sizes of 20 or 30, among the situations considered in [Özdemir \(2013\)](#), estimates of the actual Type I error probabilities, when testing at the 0.05 level, ranged between 0.049 and 0.061.

A non-bootstrap confidence interval based on an estimate of the standard error will provide good probability coverage when the sample sizes are sufficiently large, assuming the estimated difference is normally distributed, but it is unknown just how large the sample sizes should be before this approach can be recommended, particularly when distributions are skewed. If both distributions are symmetric, confidence intervals based on estimated standard errors seem to have merit when Student's t distribution is used to determine an appropriate critical value, but there is no good decision rule, based on available empirical data, whether distributions are sufficiently symmetric. (One could test the assumption that distributions are

symmetric, but how much power should such a test have to justify the use of a method that assumes symmetric distributions?)

Özdemir (2013) derived an alternative method for which the estimated Type I error probabilities ranged between 0.044 and 0.050 among the situations considered in a simulation study, in contrast to using a percentile bootstrap method where the Type I error probabilities ranged between 0.049 and 0.061. The improved control over the Type I error probability comes at the expense of higher execution time and no confidence interval. An outline of the method is as follows. Let $\hat{\mu}_j$ ($j = 1, 2$) denote the one-step M-estimator for the j th group and denote the estimate of the squared standard error by $\hat{\sigma}_{mj}^2$, which is computed as described in Section 3.6.4. (The R function mestse, in Section 3.6.5 performs the calculation.) Let

$$w_j = \frac{1/\hat{\sigma}_{mj}^2}{1/\hat{\sigma}_{m1}^2 + 1/\hat{\sigma}_{m2}^2},$$

$$\tilde{X} = w_1\hat{\mu}_1 + w_2\hat{\mu}_2$$

and

$$T_j = \frac{\hat{\mu}_j - \tilde{X}}{\hat{\sigma}_{mj}}.$$

Apply a normalizing transformation, derived by Bailey (1980), to the T_j values:

$$Z_j = \frac{4\nu_j^2 + 5(2z_{1-\alpha/2}^2 + 3)/24}{4\nu_j^2 + \nu_j + (4z_{1-\alpha/2}^2 + 9)/12} \nu_j^{1/2} \left\{ \ln \left(1 + \frac{T_j^2}{\nu_j} \right) \right\}^{1/2},$$

where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution, $\nu_j = n_j - i_1 - i_2 - 1$, and i_1 and i_2 are defined in as in Section 3.6.2 in connection with Eq. (3.5). The test statistic is

$$D^2 = Z_1^2 + Z_2^2.$$

An α level critical value is determined via a bootstrap-t method as described in Section 5.3.2.

5.4.2 Comparing Trimmed Means and Medians

When comparing trimmed means, and the amount of trimming is at least 20%, it currently seems that a percentile bootstrap method is preferable to the bootstrap-t method in Section 5.3.2. With a sufficiently small amount of trimming, a bootstrap-t method provides more accurate results, but there is uncertainty about when this is the case. (Comments on using 10% trimming are given at the end of this section.)

For the special case where the goal is to compare medians, a slight extension of the percentile bootstrap method is needed in case there are tied values (cf. [Freidlin & Gastwirth, 2000](#)). Let M_1^* and M_2^* be the bootstrap sample medians. Let

$$p^* = P(M_1^* > M_2^*) + 0.5P(M_1^* = M_2^*).$$

So among B bootstrap samples from each group, if A is the number of times $M_1^* > M_2^*$, and C is the number of times $M_1^* = M_2^*$, the estimate of p^* is

$$\hat{p}^* = \frac{A}{B} + 0.5\frac{C}{B}.$$

As usual, the p-value is

$$2\min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*).$$

In terms of controlling the Type I error probability, all indications are that this method performs very well regardless of whether tied values occur ([Wilcox, 2006a](#)). And in terms of handling tied values, this is the only known method that performs well in simulations.

Section [5.3.2](#) mentioned a bootstrap-t method (that is performed by the R function `yhbt`) that is based in part on a test statistic derived by [Guo and Luh \(2000\)](#). As previously noted, [Keselman et al. \(2004\)](#) found that it performs reasonably well in simulations when using 10% and 15% trimming. To extend slightly their results, consider a situation where $n_1 = 40$ observations are sampled from a standard normal distribution. And for the second group $n_2 = 20$ observations are sampled from a lognormal distribution shifted so that the trimmed mean is zero, after which the scale is increased by multiplying all observations by 4. When testing at the 0.05 level, and 10% trimming is used, the actual level of the bootstrap-t method is approximately 0.066 compared to 0.050 when using a percentile bootstrap method (based on a simulation with 1000 replications). Reducing the first sample size to $n_1 = 20$ and the second to $n_2 = 10$, the estimates are now 0.082 and 0.074, respectively. Increasing the amount of trimming to 0.2, again using sample sizes $n_1 = 20$ and $n_2 = 10$, the estimates are 0.081 and 0.063. So at least in some situations, the percentile bootstrap method has a bit of an advantage when using 10% trimming. And increasing the amount of trimming from 10% to 20% can improve control over the Type I error probability. Results in [Özdemir \(2013\)](#) also indicate that the percentile bootstrap method provides better control over the Type I error probability.

5.4.3 R Functions `trimpb2`, `pb2gen`, `m2ci`, `medpb2` and `M2gbt`

When comparing independent groups, the R function

```
pb2gen(x,y,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,est=onestep,...)
```

can be used to compute a confidence interval for the difference between any two measures of location or scale using the percentile bootstrap method. As usual, x and y are any R vectors containing data. The default value for α is 0.05, the default for B (`nboot`) is 2000. The last argument, `est`, is any R function that is of interest. The default value for `est` is `onestep`, which is the R function described in Chapter 3 for computing a one-step M-estimator. The command `pb2gen(dat1,dat2,est=mom)`, for example, would use the modified one-step M-estimators based on the data stored in the R variables `dat1` and `dat2`.

For convenience, a specific function for comparing robust M-estimators based on Huber's Ψ is provided:

```
m2ci(x,y,nboot=1000,alpha=0.05,bend=1.28,os=F),
```

where the default value for B is `nboot` = 1000, the default value for α is 0.05, the default value for `os` is `F`, for false, meaning that the fully iterated M-estimator is used, and the default bending constant is 1.28. Setting `os=T` means that the one-step M-estimator is used instead. If, for example, it is desired to compute a 0.95 confidence interval using the one-step M-estimator, type the command `m2ci(x,y,os=T)`. A function for comparing quantiles via the Harrell–Davis estimator is provided as well, namely

```
medhd2g(x,y, tr=0.2, nboot = 2000, SEED = TRUE, pr = TRUE, ...)
```

■ Example

For the ozone data in Table 5.3, the 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the M-measures of location, returned by `m2ci`, is (3.67, 21.51). Using the one-step M-estimator instead, the 0.95 confidence interval is (3.64, 22.26).

Medians can be compared via the usual sample median, described in Section 1.3, with the R function `pb2gen` by setting the argument `est=median`, and trimmed means can be compared by setting `est=tmean`. But for convenience, the R function

```
medpb2(x,y,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000)
```

is supplied, which is designed specifically for comparing medians based on the usual sample median. The R function

```
trimpb2(x,y,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000)
```

defaults to comparing 20% trimmed means.

The R function

```
M2gbt(x,y,tr=0.2, bend = 1.28, nboot = 599, SEED = T)
```

tests the hypothesis that two independent groups have equal population M-measures of location using the method derived by [Özdemir \(2013\)](#), which was described in Section 5.4.1.

5.5 Comparing Measures of Scale

In some situations there is interest in comparing measures of scale. Based purely on efficiency, various robust estimators of scale have appeal. First, however, attention is focused on comparing the variances.

5.5.1 Comparing Variances

We begin with the goal of testing

$$H_0 : \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2,$$

the hypothesis that two independent groups have equal variances. Numerous methods have been proposed. Virtually all have been found to be unsatisfactory with small to moderate sample sizes.

A variation of the percentile bootstrap method ([Wilcox, 2002](#)) that performs relatively well is performed as follows. Set $n_m = \min(n_1, n_2)$ and for the j th group ($j = 1, 2$), take a bootstrap sample of size n_m . Ordinarily we take a bootstrap sample of size n_j from the j th group, but when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, and when the sample sizes are unequal, control over the probability of a Type I error can be extremely poor for the situation at hand. Next, for each group, compute the sample variance based on the bootstrap sample and set D^* equal to the difference between these two values. Repeat this $B = 599$ times yielding 599 bootstrap values for D , which we label D_1^*, \dots, D_{599}^* . As usual, when writing these values in ascending order, we denote this by $D_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}^*$. Then an approximate 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the population variances is

$$(D_{(\ell+1)}^*, D_{(u)}^*), \quad (5.19)$$

where for $n_m < 40$, $\ell = 6$ and $u = 593$; for $40 \leq n_m < 80$, $\ell = 7$ and $u = 592$; for $80 \leq n_m < 180$, $\ell = 10$ and $u = 589$; for $180 \leq n_m < 250$, $\ell = 13$ and $u = 586$; and for $n_m \geq 250$, $\ell = 15$ and $u = 584$.

The method just described is based on a strategy similar to Gosset's derivation of Student's t: assume normality and then make adjustments so that for small sample sizes, accurate probability coverage is obtained. This method appears to perform reasonably well under non-normality, but exceptions can occur when the distributions differ in skewness and the sample sizes are small. What appears to be more satisfactory is to use the method just described, only with $B = 1000$ and a corresponding adjustment to ℓ and u . Using $B = 999$, the actual level of the test can be substantially worse. A positive feature of this method is that in situations where the control over the Type I error probability is not quite satisfactory due to small sample sizes, it appears to provide a reasonably good test of the hypothesis that the median value of s_1^2 is equal to the median value of s_2^2 , where s_j^2 ($j = 1, 2$) is the usual sample variance associated with the j th group, but more research is needed to establish the extent this is the case.

When sampling from a distribution that is not too skewed and not very heavy-tailed, the method in [Shoemaker \(2003\)](#) might be used instead. [Herbert, Hayen, Macaskill, and Walter \(2011\)](#) derived yet another method for comparing variances. How well it performs under non-normality, including situations where distributions differ in skewness, needs more research. In terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, any practical advantages the method might have over the modified percentile bootstrap method have not been determined.

5.5.2 R Function `comvar2`

The R function

```
comvar2(x,y,nboot=1000,SEED=T)
```

compares variances using the bootstrap method just described. The method can only be applied with $\alpha = 0.05$; modifications based on other α values have not been derived. The function returns a 0.95 confidence interval for $\sigma_1^2 - \sigma_2^2$ plus an estimate of $\sigma_1^2 - \sigma_2^2$ based on the difference between the sample variances, $s_1^2 - s_2^2$, which is labeled `vardif`.

5.5.3 Comparing Biweight Midvariances

For some robust measures of scale, the percentile bootstrap method, described in Section 5.4, has been found to perform well. In particular, [Wilcox \(1993a\)](#) found that it gives good results when working with the biweight midvariance. (Other methods were considered but found to be unsatisfactory, so they are not discussed.) There is some indirect evidence that it will give good results when working with the percentage bend midvariance, but this needs to be checked before it can be recommended.

5.5.4 R Function *b2ci*

Robust measures of scale are easily compared with the R function pb2gen in Section 5.4.3. For convenience, the function

```
b2ci(x,y,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,est=bivar)
```

has been supplied; it defaults to comparing the biweight midvariances. (When using pb2gen, setting est=bivar returns the same results when using the default settings of b2ci.)

■ Example

For the ozone data in Table 5.3, 0.95 confidence interval returned by the R function b2ci is $(-538, -49)$ with a p-value of 0.012.



5.6 Permutation Tests

This section describes a permutation test for comparing the distributions corresponding to two independent groups, an idea introduced by R. A. Fisher in the 1930s. The method is somewhat similar to bootstrap techniques, but it accomplishes a different goal, as will become evident. There are many extensions and variations of the method about to be described, including a range of techniques aimed at multivariate data (e.g., [Good, 2000](#); [Pesarin, 2001](#); [Rizzo & Székely, 2010](#)), but only the basics are included here.

The permutation test in this section can be used with virtually any measure of location or scale, but regardless of which measure of location or scale is used, in essence the goal is to test the hypothesis that the groups under study have identical distributions. To illustrate the basics, the method is first described using means. The steps are as follows (cf. [Chowdhury et al., 2015](#)):

1. Compute $d = \bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2$, the difference between the sample means, where the sample sizes are n_1 and n_2 .
2. Pool the data.
3. Consider any permutation of the pooled data, compute the sample mean of the first n_1 observations, compute the sample mean using the remaining n_2 observations, and compute the difference between these sample means.
4. Repeat the previous step for all possible permutations of the data yielding, say, L differences: $\hat{\delta}_1, \dots, \hat{\delta}_L$.
5. Put these L differences in ascending order yielding $\hat{\delta}_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq \hat{\delta}_{(L)}$.

6. Reject the hypothesis of identical distributions if $d < \hat{\delta}_{(\ell+1)}$ or if $d > \hat{\delta}_{(u)}$, where $\ell = \alpha L/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = L - \ell$.

Although this variation of the permutation test is based on the sample mean, it is known that it does not provide satisfactory inferences about the population means. In particular, it does not control the probability of a Type I error when testing $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$ and it does not yield a satisfactory confidence interval for $\mu_1 - \mu_2$. For example, [Boik \(1987\)](#) established that when the goal is to compare means, unequal variances can affect the probability of a Type I error, even under normality, when testing $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$. If the sample means are replaced by the sample variances, it can be seen that differences between the population means can affect the probability of a Type I error even when the population variances are equal. (The details are left as an exercise.) However, the method provides an exact distribution-free method for testing the hypothesis that the distributions are identical. For results on using a permutation test with the mean replaced by a robust estimator, see [Lambert \(1985\)](#). When the goal is to compare medians, again a permutation test can be unsatisfactory ([Romano, 1990](#)). For yet another situation where a permutation is unsatisfactory, see [Kaizar, Li, and Hsu \(2011\)](#). [Chung and Romano \(2013\)](#) summarize general theoretical concerns and limitations. However, they also indicate a variation of the permutation test that might have practical value. Also see [Janssen and Pauls \(2005\)](#). The relative merits of the method are in need of further research.

In practice, particularly with large sample sizes, generating all permutations of the pooled data can be impractical. A simple method for dealing with this problem is to simply use B random permutations instead. Now proceed as described above, only L is replaced by B .

5.6.1 R Function `permg`

The R function

```
permg(x,y,alpha=0.05,est=mean,nboot=1000)
```

performs the permutation test based on B random permutations of the pooled data. (The argument `nboot` corresponds to B .) By default, means are used, but any measures of location or scale can be used via the argument `est`.

5.7 Rank-Based Methods and a Probabilistic Measure of Effect Size

There is another approach to comparing two independent groups that deserves consideration, which belongs to what are generally known as rank-based or nonparametric methods. Let

$$p = P(X_{i1} < X_{i2})$$

be the probability that a randomly sampled observation from the first group is smaller than the a randomly sampled observation from the second. When there is no difference between the groups, and the distributions are identical, $p = 1/2$. The value of p has a natural interest, and some have argued that in many situations it is more interesting than the difference between any two measures of location (e.g., Cliff, 1993). Additional arguments for comparing groups based on p can be found in Acion, Peterson, Temple, and Arndt (2006), Kraemer and Kupfer (2006), and Vargha and Delaney (2000). For example, in clinical trials, of interest is the probability that method A is more effective than method B.

The best-known approach to comparing two independent groups, which is based on an estimate of p , is the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test. The method might appear to provide a reasonable way of testing

$$H_0 : p = 0.5,$$

but a fundamental concern is that when distributions differ, there are general conditions under which the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test uses the wrong standard error. More precisely, the standard error used by the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney is derived under the assumption that groups have identical distributions, and when the distributions differ, under general conditions the derivation no longer holds. Modern methods use an estimate of the correct standard error regardless of whether the distributions differ. Pratt (1964) established that the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test is biased and documents its inability to control the probability of a Type I error when testing $H_0: p = 0.5$.

Often the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test is described as a method for comparing the population medians, but it can be unsatisfactory in this regard (e.g., Fung, 1980; Hettmansperger, 1984). To elaborate, let $D = X - Y$, let θ_D be the population median associated with D , and let θ_X and θ_Y be the population medians associated with X and Y , respectively. It is left as an exercise to show that under general conditions, $\theta_D \neq \theta_X - \theta_Y$. Although the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test does not provide a direct test of the hypothesis that X and Y have equal medians, it is based on an estimate of p , and when $p = 0.5$, $\theta_D = 0$.

Various attempts have been made to improve on the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test, but not all of them are listed here. Interested readers can refer to Baumgartner, Weiss, and Schindler (1998), Brunner and Munzel (2000), Mee (1990), Ryu and Agresti (2008), Zhou (2008), Fligner and Policello (1981), Newcombe (2006a) plus the references they cite (cf. Neuhauser, 2003). Ruscio and Mullen (2012) compared various methods and concluded that a (bias corrected and accelerated) bootstrap method performs reasonably well when the distributions have light tails and skewness is not too severe. For methods designed specifically for categorical data (having a multinomial distribution), see Ryu and Agresti (2008). Here, the focus is on the methods derived by Cliff (1996) as well as Brunner and Munzel (2000). Both methods

allow tied values and both use a correct estimate of the standard error even when distributions differ.

5.7.1 *The Cliff and Brunner–Munzel Methods*

This section describes two methods for testing $H_0: p = 0.5$. The first was derived by [Cliff \(1996\)](#), and the other was derived by [Brunner and Munzel \(2000\)](#). When tied values are impossible, the basic goal is to make inferences about $p = P(X_{i1} < X_{i2})$. But when tied values can occur, a different formulation is required. Let

$$\begin{aligned} p_1 &= P(X_{i1} > X_{i2}), \\ p_2 &= P(X_{i1} = X_{i2}), \end{aligned}$$

and

$$p_3 = P(X_{i1} < X_{i2}).$$

For convenience, set $P = p_3 + 0.5p_2 = p + 0.5p_2$. The usual generalization to tied values replaces $H_0: p = 0.5$ with

$$H_0: P = 0.5.$$

So when tied values occur with probability zero, this hypothesis becomes $H_0: p = 0.5$.

Cliff's Method

Cliff prefers a slightly different perspective, namely, testing

$$H_0: \delta = p_1 - p_3 = 0.$$

It is readily verified that $\delta = 1 - 2P$.

For the i th observation in group 1 and the h th observation in group 2, let

$$d_{ih} = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{if } X_{i1} < X_{h2} \\ 0 & \text{if } X_{i1} = X_{h2} \\ 1 & \text{if } X_{i1} > X_{h2}. \end{cases}$$

An estimate of $\delta = P(X_{i1} > X_{i2}) - P(X_{i1} < X_{i2})$ is

$$\hat{\delta} = \frac{1}{n_1 n_2} \sum_{i=1}^{n_1} \sum_{h=1}^{n_2} d_{ih}, \quad (5.20)$$

the average of the d_{ih} values. Let

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{d}_{i\cdot} &= \frac{1}{n_2} \sum_h d_{ih}, \\ \bar{d}_{\cdot h} &= \frac{1}{n_1} \sum_i d_{ih}, \\ s_1^2 &= \frac{1}{n_1 - 1} \sum_{i=1}^{n_1} (\bar{d}_{i\cdot} - \hat{\delta})^2, \\ s_2^2 &= \frac{1}{n_2 - 1} \sum_{h=1}^{n_2} (\bar{d}_{\cdot h} - \hat{\delta})^2, \\ \tilde{\sigma}^2 &= \frac{1}{n_1 n_2} \sum \sum (d_{ih} - \hat{\delta})^2.\end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{(n_1 - 1)s_1^2 + (n_2 - 1)s_2^2 + \tilde{\sigma}^2}{n_1 n_2}$$

estimates the squared standard error of $\hat{\delta}$. Let z be the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution. Rather than use the more obvious confidence interval for δ , Cliff (1996, p. 140) recommends

$$\frac{\hat{\delta} - \hat{\delta}^3 \pm z\hat{\sigma}\sqrt{(1 - \hat{\delta}^2)^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2}}{1 - \hat{\delta}^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2}.$$

(Also see Feng & Cliff, 2004.)

Cliff's confidence interval for δ is readily modified to give a confidence for P . Letting

$$C_\ell = \frac{\hat{\delta} - \hat{\delta}^3 - z\hat{\sigma}\sqrt{(1 - \hat{\delta}^2)^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2}}{1 - \hat{\delta}^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2}$$

and

$$C_u = \frac{\hat{\delta} - \hat{\delta}^3 + z\hat{\sigma}\sqrt{(1 - \hat{\delta}^2)^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2}}{1 - \hat{\delta}^2 + z^2\hat{\sigma}^2},$$

a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for P is

$$\left(\frac{1 - C_u}{2}, \frac{1 - C_\ell}{2} \right). \quad (5.21)$$

Brunner–Munzel Method

To describe the Brunner–Munzel method, we begin by providing a formal definition of a midrank. Let

$$c^-(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x \leq 0, \\ 1, & x > 0, \end{cases}$$

$$c^+(x) = \begin{cases} 0, & x < 0, \\ 1, & x \geq 0, \end{cases}$$

and

$$c(x) = \frac{1}{2}(c^+(x) + c^-(x)).$$

The *midrank* associated with X_i is

$$\frac{1}{2} + \sum_{j=1}^n c(X_i - X_j).$$

In essence, midranks are the same as ranks when there are no tied values. If tied values occur, the ranks of tied values are averaged. [Ryu and Agresti \(2008\)](#) found that for categorical data, the Brunner–Munzel method can be relatively unsatisfactory compared to two alternative methods in Sections 3.3 and 3.4 of their paper.

■ Example

Consider the values

$$7, 7.5, 7.5, 8, 8, 8, 8.5, 9, 11, 11, 11.$$

If there were no tied values, their ranks would be 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, and 10. The midranks are easily determined as follows. Because there are two values equal to 7.5, their ranks are averaged yielding a rank of 2.5 for each. There are two values equal to 8, their original ranks were 4 and 5, so their midranks are both 4.5. There are three values equal to 11, their original ranks are 8, 9 and 10, the average of these ranks is 9, so their midranks are all equal to 9. The midranks corresponding to all ten of the original values are:

$$1, 2.5, 2.5, 4.5, 4.5, 6, 7, 9, 9, 9.$$

To apply the Brunner–Munzel method, first pool the data and compute midranks. Let $N = n_1 + n_2$ represent the total sample size (the number of observations among the pooled data),

and let R_{ij} be the midrank associated with X_{ij} (the i th observation in the j th group) based on the pooled data. Let

$$\bar{R}_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} R_{ij}.$$

Compute the midranks for the data in group 1, ignoring group two, and label the results $V_{11}, \dots V_{n_1 1}$. Do the same for group two (ignoring group one) and label the midranks $V_{12}, \dots V_{n_2 2}$. The remaining calculations for testing $H_0: P = 0.5$, or for computing a confidence interval for P , are shown in [Table 5.8](#).

It is noted that situations can be constructed where, with many tied values, Cliff's method seems to be a bit better than the Brunner–Munzel method in terms of guaranteeing an actual Type I error probability less than the nominal α level. When testing at the 0.05 level, Cliff's method seems to do an excellent job of avoiding actual Type I error probabilities less than 0.04. In contrast, the Brunner–Munzel method can have an actual Type I error rate close to 0.07 when tied values are common and sample sizes are small. More recently, [Neuhäuser, Löscher, and Jöckel \(2007\)](#) provide a more comprehensive comparison of the Cliff and Brunner–Munzel methods in terms of their ability to control the probability of a Type I error. Again, with small sample sizes, it seems that Cliff's method has a bit of an advantage, and that the generally there is little separating the two methods. From a computational point of view, with very large sample sizes, the Brunner–Munzel method might be more convenient.

5.7.2 R Functions `cid`, `cidv2`, `bmp`, `wmwloc`, `wmwpb` and `loc2plot`

The R function

```
cid(x,y,alpha=0.05,plotit=FALSE,pop=0,fr=0.8,rval=15,xlab='',ylab='')
```

performs Cliff's method for making inferences about $\delta = P(X_{i1} > X_{i2}) - P(X_{i1} < X_{i2})$. The function also reports a confidence interval for $P = p_3 + 0.5p_2$, which is labeled ci.p. The estimate of P is labeled phat. To get a p-value, use the function

```
cidv2(x,y,plotit=FALSE,xlab='',ylab='').
```

The function

```
bmp(x,y,alpha=0.05,plotit=T,pop=0,fr=0.8,rval=15,xlab='',ylab='')
```

Table 5.8: The Brunner–Munzel Method for Two Independent Groups.

Compute

$$S_j^2 = \frac{1}{n_j - 1} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} \left(R_{ij} - V_{ij} - \bar{R}_j + \frac{n_j + 1}{2} \right)^2,$$

$$s_j^2 = \frac{S_j^2}{(N - n_j)^2},$$

$$s_e = \sqrt{N} \sqrt{\frac{s_1^2}{n_1} + \frac{s_2^2}{n_2}},$$

$$U_1 = \left(\frac{S_1^2}{N - n_1} + \frac{S_2^2}{N - n_2} \right)^2$$

and

$$U_2 = \frac{1}{n_1 - 1} \left(\frac{S_1^2}{N - n_1} \right)^2 + \frac{1}{n_2 - 1} \left(\frac{S_2^2}{N - n_2} \right)^2.$$

The test statistic is

$$W = \frac{\bar{R}_2 - \bar{R}_1}{\sqrt{N} s_e},$$

and the degrees of freedom are

$$\hat{v} = \frac{U_1}{U_2}.$$

Decision Rule: Reject $H_0: P = 0.5$ if $|W| \geq t$, where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a Student's t distribution with \hat{v} degrees of freedom. An estimate of P is

$$\hat{P} = \frac{1}{N} (\bar{R}_2 - \bar{R}_1) + \frac{1}{2}.$$

The estimate of $\delta = p_1 - p_3$ is

$$\hat{\delta} = 1 - 2\hat{P}.$$

An approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for P is

$$\hat{P} \pm ts_e.$$

performs the Brunner–Munzel method. It returns the p-value when testing $H_0: P = 0.5$, plus an estimate of P labeled phat, and a confidence interval for P labeled ci.p. (An estimate of $\delta = p_1 - p_3$, labeled d.hat, is returned as well.)

When plotit=T, these R functions create plots based on the $n_1 n_2$ differences, $D_{ih} = X_{i1} - X_{h2}$, $i = 1, \dots, n_1$ and $h = 1, \dots, n_2$. For reasons previously mentioned, the R functions

`cidv2` and `bmp` can be viewed as methods aimed at testing the hypothesis that the distribution of $D = X - Y$ has a median of zero. With `plotit=T`, the function plots an estimate of the distribution of D , which will have a median equal to zero if $P = 0.5$. The argument `pop` determines the type of plot that will be created. The choices are:

- `pop=0`, adaptive kernel density estimate
- `pop=1`, expected frequency curve
- `pop=2`, Rosenblatt's shifted histogram
- `pop=3`, boxplot
- `pop=4`, stem-and-leaf
- `pop=5`, histogram
- `pop=6`, kernel density using a normal kernel

The argument `fr` is the span when using a kernel density estimator, and `rval` indicates how many points are used by Rosenblatt's shifted histogram when creating the plot. (See Section 3.2.5.) Labels can be added to the x-axis and y-axis via the arguments `xlab` and `ylab`, respectively.

The R function

```
wmwloc(x,y,est=median,na.rm=T,...)
```

computes the median of $D = X - Y$. The median can be replaced by some other measure of location via the argument `est`. The R function

```
wmwpb(x, y = NULL, est = median, tr=0.2, nboot = 2000, SEED = TRUE,...)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for θ_D using the percentile bootstrap method in Section 5.4. A plot of an estimate of the distribution of D is created by the R function

```
loc2plot(x,y,plotfun=akerd,xlab='',ylab='...').
```

By default, an adaptive kernel density estimator is used. (The R function `wmwplot` also computes an estimate of the distribution of D .)

■ Example

For the data in Table 5.7, the Brunner–Munzel method has a p-value of 0.042, and its 0.95 confidence interval for P is (0.167, 0.494), so $H_0: P = 0.5$ is rejected at the 0.05 level. Cliff's method also rejects at the 0.05 level, the 0.95 confidence interval for P being (0.198, 0.490). ■

■ Example

For the ozone data in [Table 5.3](#), the estimate of p is $\hat{p} = 0.239$, the 0.95 confidence interval using Cliff's method is $(0.116, 0.430)$ and the p-value is 0.008. Using instead the Brunner–Munzel method, the 0.95 confidence interval is $(0.069, 0.409)$ with a p-value equal to 0.004, the only point being that the choice of method can make a practical difference.

■ Example

Measures of location provide some sense of how much groups differ, robust measures can provide more power versus methods based on means, and rank-based methods provide yet another perspective. But sometimes more might be needed to understand the nature and extent two groups differ, as illustrated here with data dealing with measures of self-regulation for children in grades in grades 6–7. The first group consisted of families with both parents and the second group consisted of children from families with a single parent. (The sample sizes are 245 and 230, respectively.) Testing at the 0.05 level, no difference between the groups is found based on Student's t test, Welch's heteroscedastic method for means, Yuen's method for trimmed means (in [Section 5.3](#)), the bootstrap methods for M-estimators and trimmed means covered in this chapter, and the rank-based methods as well. But is it possible that these methods are missing some true difference? That is, perhaps the distributions differ, but the hypothesis testing methods just listed are insensitive to this difference. The upper left panel of [Figure 5.8](#) shows the shift function for these two groups. The function sband indicates that from about the 0.2 to 0.3 quantiles, the groups differ, and the 0.47 and 0.48 quantiles differ as well. To add perspective, the upper right plot shows the adaptive kernel density estimates created by the function g2plot. The lower left panel shows a boxplot of the data, and the lower right panel is a Rosenblatt shifted histogram created by the function cid (which performs Cliff's heteroscedastic analog of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test).

5.8 Comparing Two Independent Binomial and Multinomial Distributions

Many methods have been proposed for comparing two independent binomial distributions. Two methods described here were chosen based on results in [Storer and Kim \(1990\)](#) and [Beal \(1987\)](#) where comparisons of several methods were made. It is noted, however, that competing methods have been proposed that apparently have not been compared directly to the methods covered here (e.g., [Berger, 1996](#); [Coe & Tamhane, 1993](#)). Results reported

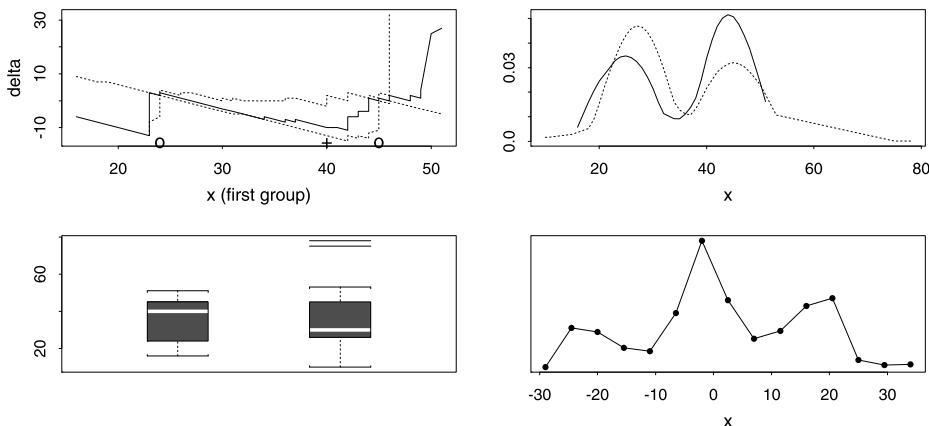


Figure 5.8: Four graphs summarizing how two groups differ based on a measure of self-regulation.

by Reed (2004) indicate that a method derived by Agresti and Caffo (2000) performs relatively well. More recently, Kulinskaya, Morgenthaler, and Staudte (2010) derived yet another method, which will be denoted as the KMS method, which appears to be generally superior to the Agresti–Caffo method. It also competes well with a method derived by Newcombe (1998), which performed well among the methods compared by Brown and Li (2005). The best choice among the three methods covered here is not completely clear. It now appears that KMS is a bit preferable to Beal's method. An appeal of Beal's method and the KMS method is that they provide a confidence interval whereas the Storer–Kim method does not. Situations arise in subsequent chapters where the Storer–Kim method has less power than Beal's method when comparing multiple groups of individuals. But when comparing two groups only, we find situations where the Storer–Kim method rejects and Beal's method does not. In terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error when testing the hypothesis that the two binomial distributions have the same probability of success, all three methods appear to ensure that the actual level will be less than or equal to the nominal level. Limited comparisons indicate that typically the level of the Storer–Kim method is closest to the nominal level, when testing at the 0.05 level, suggesting that in general it will have the highest power.

Reiczigel, Abonyi-Tóth, and Singer (2008) generalized results derived by Sterne (1954) that yields a minimum volume confidence region for the two probabilities of success. Their method can be used, among other things, to compute a p-value when testing the hypothesis that two probabilities are equal. However, the Storer–Kim method appears to have a slight edge in terms of power, at least when testing at the 0.05 level. A more systematic study is needed to resolve this issue. The involved computational details are not described, but an R function for computing the confidence region derived by Reiczigel et al. is provided in Section 5.8.4.

5.8.1 Storer–Kim Method

Let p_j ($j = 1, 2$) be the probability of success associated with the j th group and let r_j be the number of successes among n_j trials. The goal is to test $H_0 : p_1 = p_2$. Note that the possible number of successes in the first group is any integer, x , between 0 and n_1 , and for the second group it is any integer, y , between 0 and n_2 . For any x and y , set

$$a_{xy} = 1$$

if

$$\left| \frac{x}{n_1} - \frac{y}{n_2} \right| \geq \left| \frac{r_1}{n_1} - \frac{r_2}{n_2} \right|;$$

otherwise

$$a_{xy} = 0.$$

Let

$$\hat{p} = \frac{r_1 + r_2}{n_1 + n_2}.$$

The test statistic is

$$T = \sum_{x=0}^{n_1} \sum_{y=0}^{n_2} a_{xy} b(x, n_1, \hat{p}) b(y, n_2, \hat{p}),$$

where

$$b(x, n_1, \hat{p}) = \binom{n_1}{x} \hat{p}^x (1 - \hat{p})^{n_1 - x},$$

and $b(y, n_2, \hat{p})$ is defined in an analogous fashion. The null hypothesis is rejected if

$$T \leq \alpha.$$

That is, T is the p-value. The Storer–Kim method does not provide a confidence interval, but it currently seems that typically it offers the most power among the methods that are available.

5.8.2 Beal's Method

Let $\hat{p}_1 = r_1/n_1$, $\hat{p}_2 = r_2/n_2$ and let $c = z_{1-\alpha/2}^2$ where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a standard normal distribution. (So c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with one degree of freedom.) Compute

$$a = \hat{p}_1 + \hat{p}_2$$

$$b = \hat{p}_1 - \hat{p}_2$$

$$u = \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{1}{n_1} + \frac{1}{n_2} \right)$$

$$v = \frac{1}{4} \left(\frac{1}{n_1} - \frac{1}{n_2} \right)$$

$$V = u\{(2-a)a - b^2\} + 2v(1-a)b$$

$$A = \sqrt{c\{V + cu^2(2-a)a + cv^2(1-a)^2\}}$$

$$B = \frac{b + cv(1-a)}{1 + cu}.$$

The $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $p_1 - p_2$ is

$$B \pm \frac{A}{1 + cu}.$$

5.8.3 KMS Method

The confidence interval for $p_1 - p_2$, derived by [Kulinskaya et al. \(2010\)](#) is

$$\frac{\hat{w}}{u} \sin \left(\arcsin \left[\frac{u\hat{\Delta} + \hat{v}}{\hat{w}} \right] \pm z_{1-\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{u}{2n_1 n_2 / N}} \right) - \frac{\hat{v}}{u},$$

where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution, again r_1 and r_2 are the observed number of successes, $0 \leq A \leq 1$ is chosen by the user, $u = 2((1-A)^2 \frac{n_2}{N} + A^2 \frac{n_1}{N})$, $\hat{\Delta} = (r_1 + 0.5)/(n_1 + 1) - (r_2 + 0.5)/(n_2 + 1)$, $\hat{\psi} = A(r_1 + 0.5)/(n_1 + 1) + (1-A)(r_2 + 0.5)/(n_2 + 1)$, $\hat{v} = (1 - 2\hat{\psi})(A - \frac{n_2}{N})$, and $\hat{w} = \sqrt{2u\hat{\psi}(1 - \hat{\psi}) + \hat{v}^2}$. Here, following the suggestion made by Kulinskaya et al., $A = 0.5$ is used.

5.8.4 R Functions `twobinom`, `twobici`, `bi2KMS`, `bi2KMSv2` and `bi2CR`

The R function

```
twobinom(r1 = sum(x), n1 = length(x), r2 = sum(y), n2 = length(y), x = NA, y = NA)
```

tests $H_0 : p_1 = p_2$ using the Storer–Kim method. The function can be used either by specifying the number of successes in each group (arguments `r1` and `r2`) and the sample sizes

(arguments n1 and n2), or the data can be in the form of two vectors containing 1s and 0s, in which case you use the arguments x and y.

Beal's method can be applied with the function

```
twobici(r1 = sum(x), n1 = length(x), r2 = sum(y), n2 = length(y), x = NA, y = NA, tr=0.2)
```

The R function

```
bi2KMS(r1 = sum(x), n1 = length(x), r2 = sum(y), n2 = length(y), x = NA, y = NA,
       alpha=0.05)
```

performs method KMS. The R function

```
bi2KMSv2(r1 = sum(x), n1 = length(x), r2 = sum(y), n2 = length(y), x = NA, y = NA)
```

is the same as the R function bi2KMS, only it returns a p-value. The R function

```
bi2CR(r1, n1, r2, n2, alpha=0.05, xlab='p1', ylab='p2')
```

plots the $1 - \alpha$ confidence region for (p_1, p_2) based on the method derived by [Reiczigel et al. \(2008\)](#).

■ Example

If for the first group we have 7 successes among 12 observations, for the second group we have 22 successes among 25 observations, the command `twobinom(7,12,22,25)` returns a p-value of 0.044, this is less than 0.05, so we would reject with $\alpha = 0.05$. The 0.95 confidence interval for $p_1 - p_2$ returned by the command `twobici(7,12,22,25)` is $(-0.61, 0.048)$, this interval contains zero, so in contrast to the Storer–Kim method we do not reject the hypothesis $H_0: p_1 = p_2$, the only point being that different conclusions might be reached depending on which method is used. The confidence interval returned by `bi2KMS` is $(-0.60, 0.025)$.



5.8.5 Comparing Discrete (Multinomial) Distributions

There are a variety of methods that might be used to compare discrete distributions when the cardinality of the sample space is relatively small. One approach is to test

$$H_0 : P(X = x) = P(Y = x) \quad (5.22)$$

for all values x in the sample space. That is, the goal is to test the hypothesis that the distributions are identical. This can be accomplished with a chi-squared test, which can be applied with the R function disc2com. (This function is also stored as disc2.chi.sq.) A permutation test can be used as well as an extension of the Storer–Kim method (Wilcox, Vigen, Clark, & Carlson, 2013), which can be applied with R function disc2comSK, but currently it seems that this latter approach has no advantage over a chi-squared test. Assuming that the data are ordinal, two more options are the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test in Section 5.1.1 and the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test, which can be applied with the built-in R function wilcox.test.

A possible criticism of testing the hypothesis that discrete random variables have identical distributions, from the point of view of Tukey’s three decision rule, is that surely $P(X = x) \neq P(Y = x)$ and that a more interesting goal is to determine whether a decision can be made regarding whether $P(X = x)$ is greater than or less than $P(Y = x)$. This can be accomplished with the R function binband described in the next section, which is based on the Storer–Kim method for comparing two independent binomial distributions. Method KMS can be used as well. And of course there is the issue of whether $P(X = x) - P(Y = x)$ is clinically important.

Note that the shift function in Section 5.1.3 provides an alternative perspective regarding how the distributions differ. Yet another option is method Q2 in Section 5.1.5. The method that provides the most power depends on how the distributions differ, which is unknown.

5.8.6 R Functions *binband*, *splotg2*, *cumrelf*

```
binband(x,y,KMS=FALSE).
```

By default, the individual probabilities are compared using the Storer–Kim method. Setting the argument KMS=TRUE, method KMS is used.

The R function

```
splotg2(x,y,op=TRUE,xlab='X',ylab='Rel. Freq.')
```

is supplied in case it is desired to plot the relative frequencies for all distinct values found in each of two groups. With op=TRUE, a line connecting the points corresponding to the relative frequencies is formed. (The R function s2plot performs the same calculations.)

The R function

```
cumrelf(x,xlab='X',ylab='CUM REL FREQ')
```

plots the cumulative relative frequency of two or more groups. The argument can be a matrix, with columns corresponding to groups, or x can have list mode.

■ Example

Consider a study aimed at comparing two methods for reducing shoulder pain after surgery. For the first method, the shoulder pain measures are:

2, 4, 4, 2, 2, 2, 4, 3, 2, 4, 2, 3, 2, 4, 3, 2, 2, 3, 5, 5, 2, 2

and for the second method they are

5, 1, 4, 4, 2, 3, 3, 1, 1, 1, 1, 2, 2, 1, 1, 5, 3, 5.

Assuming the data are stored in the R variables g1 and g2, `disc2com(g1,g2)` returns a p-value equal to 0.008. In contrast, for both Student's t and Welch's method the p-value is 0.25. Comparing the medians as well as the 20% trimmed means, again no difference is found.

The R function `binband` returns:

Value	p1.est	p2.est	p1-p2	p.value
1	0.00000000	0.3888889	-0.38888889	0.00183865
2	0.50000000	0.1666667	0.33333333	0.02827202
3	0.18181818	0.1666667	0.01515152	0.94561448
4	0.22727273	0.1111111	0.11616162	0.36498427
5	0.09090909	0.1666667	-0.07575758	0.49846008

For the response 1, the p-value is 0.001839 indicating that it is reasonable to conclude that the second group is more likely to respond 1 compared to the first group. In contrast, for the probability of a response 5, the p-value is 0.56. So the data indicate that the second group is more likely to respond 5, but based on Tukey's three decision rule, no decision is made about which group is more likely to rate the pain as being 5. (The function `binband` also returns a column headed by `p.crit`, which is based on Hochberg's method as described in Section 7.4.7.)

■ Example

[Erceg-Hurn and Steed \(2011\)](#) investigated the degree to which smokers experience negative emotional responses (such as anger and irritation) upon being exposed to anti-smoking warnings on cigarette packets. Smokers were randomly allocated to view

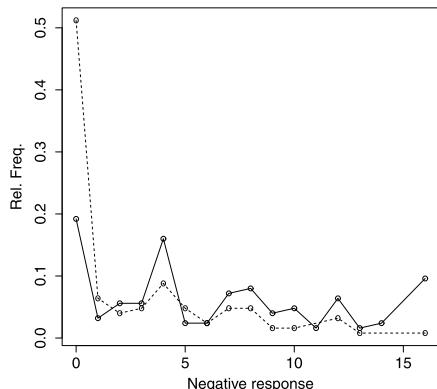


Figure 5.9: Plot created by the function s2plot based on the anti-smoking data.

warnings that contained only text, such as ‘Smoking Kills,’ or warnings that contained text and graphics, such as pictures of rotting teeth and gangrene. Negative emotional reactions to the warnings were measured on a scale that produced a score between 0 and 16 for each smoker, where larger scores indicate greater levels of negative emotions. (The data are stored on the author’s web page in the file `smoke.csv`.) The means and medians differ significantly. But to get a deeper understanding of how the groups differ, look at Figure 5.9, which shows plots of the relative frequencies based on the R function `splotg2`. Note that the plot suggests that the main difference between the groups has to do with the response zero: the proportion of participants in the text only group responding zero is 0.512 compared to 0.192 for the graphics group. Testing the hypothesis that the corresponding probabilities are equal, based on the R function `binband`, the p-value is less than 0.0001. The probabilities associated with the other possible responses do not differ significantly at the 0.05 level except for the response 16; the p-value is 0.0031. For the graphics group, the probability of responding 16 is 0.096 compared to 0.008 for the text only group. So a closer look at the data, beyond comparing means and medians, suggests that the main difference between the groups has to do with the likelihood of giving the most extreme responses possible, particularly the response zero.

5.9 Comparing Dependent Groups

There are many ways two dependent groups might be compared, but as usual, no attempt is made to list all the possibilities. Rather, the goal is to describe methods similar in spirit to the methods for independent groups covered in this chapter.

5.9.1 A Shift Function for Dependent Groups

Lombard (2005) derived an extension of the shift function, described in Section 5.1, to dependent groups (cf. Wilcox, 2006f). Let $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$ be a random sample of n pairs of observations from some bivariate distribution. Let $X_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)}$ be the X_i values written in ascending order ($i = 1, \dots, n$). Let

$$\hat{F}(x) = \frac{1}{n} \sum I(X_i \leq x)$$

be the estimate of $F(x)$, the marginal distribution of X , where the indicator function $I(X_i \leq x) = 1$ if $X_i \leq x$, otherwise $I(X_i \leq x) = 0$. The estimate of the distribution of Y , $\hat{G}(x)$, is defined in a similar manner. Denote the combined set $\{X_1, \dots, X_n, Y_1, \dots, Y_n\}$, written in ascending order, by $\{Z_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq Z_{(2n)}\}$. Lombard's (2005) method for computing confidence intervals for the difference between each quantile stems from the test statistic

$$K = (n/2)^{1/2} \max |\hat{F}(Z_i) - \hat{G}(Z_i)|,$$

which can be used to test

$$H_0 : F(x) = G(x), \text{ for all } x,$$

versus

$$H_1 : F(x) \neq G(x), \text{ for at least one } x.$$

If $x > 0$, let

$$\psi_y(x) = (2\pi x^3)^{-1/2} y \exp(-y^2/2x),$$

otherwise, $\psi_y(x) = 0$. Let R_i be the rank of X_i values among the X values and let S_i be the rank of Y_i among the Y values. Let f_i be the frequency of occurrence of the value i among the values $\max\{R_1, S_1\}, \dots, \max\{R_n, S_n\}$. Then the α level critical value used by Lombard is the value c solving

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n f_i \times \psi_c(i - f_1 - \dots - f_i) = \alpha. \quad (5.23)$$

Here, the Nelder and Mead (1965) algorithm is used to determine c .

Let $[z]$ denote the integer portion of z , and for $k \geq 0$, let $Y_{(-k)} = X_{(-k)} = -\infty$ and $Y_{(n+1+k)} = X_{(n+1+k)} = \infty$. The quantile matching function q is given by $G(q(x)) = F(x)$.

It specifies the functional relationship between the marginal distributions and reflects the difference between quantiles. Lombard's confidence interval for $q(X_{(j)})$, the quantile matching function evaluated at $X_{(j)}$, is

$$(Y_{(j-[(2n)^{1/2}c])}, Y_{(j+[(2n)^{1/2}c])}),$$

which is designed to have, approximately, simultaneous probability coverage $1 - \alpha$. So when the marginal distributions are identical, the interval

$$(Y_{(j-[(2n)^{1/2}c])} - X_{(j)}, Y_{(j+[(2n)^{1/2}c])} - X_{(j)}) \quad (5.24)$$

should contain zero for any j .

5.9.2 R Function lband

The R function

```
lband(x,y=NA,alpha=0.05,plotit=T,sm=T,ylab="delta", xlab="x (first group)")
```

computes Lombard's shift function for dependent groups. If the argument $y=NA$, the function assumes the argument x is a matrix with two columns or it has list mode. By default the shift function is plotted. To avoid the plot, set the argument $plotit=F$. If the argument $sm=T$, the plot of shift function is smoothed using lowess.

5.9.3 Comparing Specified Quantiles

Section 5.1.5 noted that when using the shift function for independent groups, power might be relatively low when dealing with quantiles relatively close to zero or one. The same concern is relevant when using the distribution free method in Section 5.9.1. A way of dealing with this concern is to compare instead a collection of specified quantiles. This section describes three techniques that might be used.

Method D1

The first method is similar to method Q1 in Section 5.1.5. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_{1q} = \theta_{2q}, \quad (5.25)$$

the hypothesis that the q th quantiles of the marginal distributions are equal. Or from the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, the goal is to determine whether it is reasonable to make a decision about which distribution has the larger q th quantile.

Let $(X_{11}, X_{12}), \dots, (X_{n1}, X_{n2})$ be a random sample of n pairs of observations from some bivariate distribution. Let $\hat{\theta}_{jq}$ be the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile associated with the j th marginal distribution, $q = 0.1(0.1)0.9$. Then $\hat{d}_q = \hat{\theta}_{1q} - \hat{\theta}_{2q}$ estimates the difference between the q th quantiles. For the problem at hand, bootstrap samples are obtained by resampling with replacement n pairs of points. That is, n rows of data are sampled, with replacement, from the n by 2 matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_{11}, X_{12} \\ \vdots \\ X_{n1}, X_{n2} \end{pmatrix}.$$

This is in contrast to the case of independent groups where bootstrap samples are obtained by resampling from X_{11}, \dots, X_{n1} , and separate (independent) bootstrap samples are obtained by resampling from X_{12}, \dots, X_{n2} .

Let $(X_{11}^*, X_{12}^*), \dots, (X_{n1}^*, X_{n2}^*)$ be the bootstrap sample obtained by resampling n pairs of points, let $\hat{\theta}_{jq}^*$ be the Harrell–Davis estimate of x_{jq} , the q th quantile of the j th group, based on the values $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{nj}^*$, and let $\hat{d}_q^* = \hat{\theta}_{1q}^* - \hat{\theta}_{2q}^*$. Repeat this bootstrap process B times yielding $\hat{d}_{q1}^*, \dots, \hat{d}_{qB}^*$. Then an estimate of the squared standard error of \hat{d}_q is

$$\hat{\sigma}_{dq}^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{d}_{qb}^* - \bar{d}_q)^2,$$

where

$$\bar{d}_q = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{d}_{qb}^*.$$

Setting

$$c = \frac{37}{n^{1.4}} + 2.75, \quad (5.26)$$

$$(\hat{\theta}_{1q} - \hat{\theta}_{2q}) \pm c\hat{\sigma}_{dq}$$

yields a confidence interval for $x_{1q} - x_{2q}$, where c was determined so that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately 0.95.

Notice that the method uses only one set of B bootstrap samples for all nine quantiles being compared. That is, the same bootstrap samples are used to compute $\hat{\sigma}_{dq}^2$ for each $q = 0.1, \dots, 0.9$. In contrast, when comparing independent groups, 18 sets of B bootstrap samples

are used, one for each of the 18 quantiles being estimated, so execution time on a computer will be faster when working with dependent groups. The original motivation for using 18 sets of bootstrap values was to approximate the critical value using a nine-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution. However, the approximation proved to be rather unsatisfactory when sample sizes are small. When working with independent groups, it might be possible to get accurate confidence intervals using only one set of B bootstrap samples, but this has not been investigated.

Method D2

As was the case when using method Q1 in Section 5.5.1, there is some concern with method D1 when there are tied values; the actual Type I error probability might differ from the nominal level by an unacceptable amount. Two more concerns are that method D1 is designed specifically for comparing all of the deciles. It is not designed to deal with a subset of the deciles or a collection of other quantiles, and it is limited to testing at the 0.05 level. Method D2 (Wilcox & Erceg-Hurn, 2012) is designed to deal with these concerns. But a possible advantage of D1 is that when there are no tied values and the goal is to compare all of the deciles, it might have more power than method D2.

Briefly, method D2 uses a percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. Bootstrap samples are generated as done by method D1. Again let $\hat{d}_q^* = \hat{\theta}_{1q}^* - \hat{\theta}_{2q}^*$ be the estimated difference between q th quantiles based on this bootstrap sample. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{d}_{q1}^*, \dots, \hat{d}_{qB}^*$. Put these B values in ascending order yielding $\hat{d}_{q(1)}^* \leq \dots, \hat{d}_{q(B)}^*$. Then a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $q_1 - q_2$ and a p-value can be computed as described in Section 5.4. (The probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled using Hochberg's method in Section 7.4.7.)

A variation of this method replaces the Harrell–Davis estimator with an estimate of the q th quantile based on a single order statistic as described in Section 3.5. If there are no tied values and the distributions are sufficiently heavy-tailed, this approach might have more power. But if there are tied values, control over the Type I error probability can be poor and power can be relatively low.

Method D3

There is another perspective that might be deemed useful. Consider, for example, a study aimed at assessing the effectiveness of some method for treating depressive symptoms. Imagine that measures are taken before and after intervention. Then for some participants, depressive symptoms might decrease, but for others their depressive symptoms might increase. An issue of possible interest is whether the decreases in symptoms outweigh, in some sense, any

increases. A way of possibly addressing this issue is to examine the distribution of the difference scores. This is in contrast to methods D1 and D2, which focus on the quantiles of the marginal distributions. If the distribution of the difference scores is symmetric about zero, there is a sense in which intervention is relatively ineffective. But if decreases in any symptoms are greater than the typical increases, it might be argued that intervention is worthwhile. For instance, the estimate of 0.75 quantile of the difference scores might be 5.57 and the estimate of 0.25 quantile might be -3.19 , suggesting that the drop in depression characterized by the 0.75 quantile is larger than the corresponding increase in depression represented by the 0.25 quantile. Let δ_q denote the q th quantile of the difference scores. An issue, then, is whether one can reject $H_0: -\delta_{0.25} = \delta_{0.75}$, which would support the conclusion that there is a sense in which the positive effects of intervention outweigh the negative effects. More generally, there is interest in testing

$$H_0: \delta_q + \delta_{1-q} = 0, q < 0.5. \quad (5.27)$$

Note that the sign test might also be used in this situation. A possible appeal of method D3 is that it takes into account the magnitude of any increases and decreases.

To test (5.27), generate a bootstrap sample as done in method D2. Let $\hat{\delta}_q^*$ be the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile based on this bootstrap sample and let $\hat{\Delta}^* = \hat{\delta}_q^* + \hat{\delta}_{1-q}^*$ ($q < 0.5$). Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\Delta}_b^*$ ($B = 1, \dots, B$). Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\theta_q + \theta_{1-q}$ can be computed as described in Section 5.4. A p-value can be computed as well.

5.9.4 R Functions *shiftdhd*, *Dqcomhd*, *qdec2ci*, *Dqdif* and *difQpci*

The R function

```
shiftdhd(x,y,nboot=200, plotit=TRUE, plotop=FALSE, xlab='x (first group)', ylab='Delta')
```

computes a confidence interval for the difference between the quantiles, when comparing two dependent random variables, using the method D1 described in the previous subsection. The confidence intervals are designed so that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately 0.95. As with shiftdhd, the default number of bootstrap samples (nboot) is $B = 200$ which appears to suffice in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error. Simulations indicate that this has a practical advantage over $B = 100$ (Wilcox, 1995b). The last argument, plotit, defaults to TRUE, meaning that a plot of the shift function is created. The command shiftdhd(x,y,plotit=F) avoids the plot. By default, plotop=FALSE meaning that when plotting the results, the x-axis indicates the estimate of the quantiles based on the first group. The

y-axis indicates the estimate of $q_1 - q_2$, the estimated difference between the quantiles, and the x-axis indicates the estimates of q_1 . Setting plotop=TRUE, the x-axis indicates which quantiles are being estimated. By default the deciles are compared, so now the x-axis would indicate that the plotted confidence intervals correspond to the values 0.1(0.1)0.9.

The R function

```
Dqcomhd(x,y,q = c(1:9)/10, nboot = 1000, plotit = TRUE, SEED = TRUE, xlab = 'Group 1',
        ylab = 'Est.1-Est.2', na.rm = TRUE, tr=0.2)
```

compares quantile using method D2 in the previous section. By default, all of the deciles are compared, which are estimated via the Harrell–Davis estimator. The argument q can be used to specify the quantiles to be compared. The argument na.rm=TRUE means that vectors with missing values will be removed; otherwise all of the available data are used. The R function

```
qdec2ci(x,y,nboot=500, alpha=0.05, pr=FALSE, SEED=TRUE, plotit=TRUE)
```

also applies method D2, only a single order statistic is used to estimate the quantiles rather than all of the order statistics as done by the Harrell–Davis estimator.

The R function

```
Dqdif(x,y=NULL,q=0.25, nboot=1000, plotit=TRUE, xlab='Group 1 - Group 2',
       SEED=TRUE, alpha=0.05)
```

applies method D3. By default the 0.25 and 0.75 quantiles are compared. That is $q = 0.25$ is used in the null hypothesis given by Eq. (5.27). A plot of the distribution of D is created as well. Unlike Dqdif, the R function

```
difQpci(x,y, q=seq(5,40,5)/100, xlab='Quantile', ylab='Group 1 minus Group 2',
        plotit=TRUE, alpha=0.05, nboot=1000, SEED=TRUE, LINE=FALSE)
```

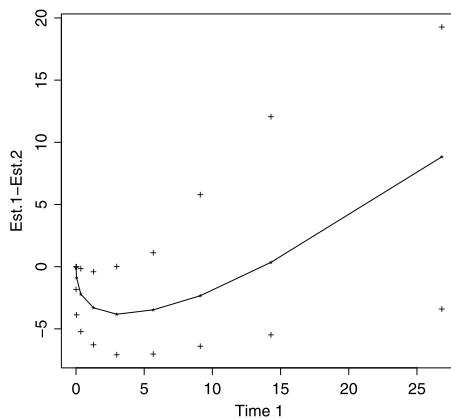
can test Eq. (5.27) for a collection of q values. By default, Eq. (5.27) is tested using $q = 0.05(0.05)0.40$.

■ Example

An illustration in Section 5.3.3 is based on data from a study on the effects of consuming alcohol. Another portion of the study compared the effects of drinking alcohol for the same participants measured at three different times. Table 5.9 shows the data for the control group measured at times 1 and 3. No differences are found between the means or trimmed means, but this leaves open the possibility that one or more quantiles

Table 5.9: The Effect of Alcohol in the Control Group.

Time 1:	0	32	9	0	2	0	41	0	0	0
	6	18	3	3	0	11	11	2	0	11
Time 3:	0	25	10	11	2	0	17	0	3	6
	16	9	1	4	0	14	7	5	11	14

**Figure 5.10: Plot created by the function Dqcomhd using a portion of the alcohol data.**

are significantly different. Comparing the deciles with shiftdhd, no significant differences are found with $\alpha = 0.05$. However, there are tied values, which can impact both power and the accuracy of the confidence intervals. Figure 5.10 shows the results when using the R function Dqcomhd. The x-axis indicates the estimate of the quantiles at Time 1 based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. The y-axis corresponds to $\hat{\delta}_q = \hat{\theta}_{2q} - \hat{\theta}_{1q}$, the estimated difference between the q th quantiles, $\delta_q = \theta_{2q} - \theta_{1q}$. Below and above the line a + marks the ends of the confidence interval for δ_q . The p-values corresponding to the quantiles 0.1(0.1)0.9 are 0.014, 0.016, 0.022, 0.026, 0.052, 0.120, 0.918 and 0.272, respectively.

5.9.5 Comparing Trimmed Means

When comparing dependent groups, under general conditions, the difference between the marginal population medians does not equal the population median of the difference scores. This result generalizes to the γ -trimmed means, $\gamma > 0$. That is, if $D_i = X_{i1} - X_{i2}$, under general conditions $\mu_{td} \neq \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, where μ_{td} is the population trimmed mean corresponding to D . Note that inferences about μ_{td} are readily made using results in Chapter 4. For example,

if pairs of observations are stored in the R variables time1 and time2, a confidence interval for μ_{td} , based on 20% trimming, can be computed with the R command `trimci(time1-time2)`, and `trimpb(time1-time2)` will use a percentile bootstrap method instead. Alternatively, one can use the command `onesampb(time1-time2,est=tmean)`. Of course, in some situations, there is little or no difference between comparing the trimmed means of the marginal distributions versus making inferences about a trimmed mean associated with difference scores. However, situations arise, particularly when comparing multiple groups, where the choice between the two strategies can make a considerable difference, as will be illustrated.

It is noted that a measure of effect size, similar in spirit to the Algina et al. measure of effect size described in Section 5.3.4, is simply

$$\frac{\bar{D}_t - 0}{aS_w}, \quad (5.28)$$

where now S_w is the Winsorized standard deviation based on the difference scores and a is a constant chosen so the aS_w estimates the standard deviation when sampling from a normal distribution. This measure of effect size can be estimated with the R function `trimciv2` in Section 4.3.1 or the R function `D.akp.effect` in Section 5.9.6 can be used.

The remainder of this section focuses on a (non-bootstrap) method for comparing the trimmed means associated with the marginal distributions. Suppose $(X_{11}, X_{12}), \dots, (X_{n1}, X_{n2})$ is a random sample of n pairs of observations from some bivariate distribution. The goal is to compute a confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, the difference between the trimmed means. A simple approach is to estimate the squared standard error of $\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}$ and then use Student's t distribution with appropriate degrees of freedom to get a confidence interval or test the hypothesis that the trimmed means are equal. This can be done using a simple generalization of Yuen's method.

Before continuing, it is remarked that for the special case where the goal is to compare the marginal medians, if there are tied values, only one method is known to perform well: a percentile bootstrap method. The R function `dmedpb`, described in Section 8.3.3 can be used to accomplish this goal. And even with no tied values, the method in this section should not be used because it is based on an unsatisfactory estimate of the standard error.

The process begins by Winsorizing the marginal distributions. In symbols, fix j and let $X_{(1)j} \leq X_{(2)j} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)j}$ be the n values in the j th group written in ascending order. Next, set

$$Y_{ij} = \begin{cases} X_{(g+1)j} & \text{if } X_{ij} \leq X_{(g+1)j} \\ X_{ij} & \text{if } X_{(g+1)j} < X_{ij} < X_{(n-g)j} \\ X_{(n-g)j} & \text{if } X_{ij} \geq X_{(n-g)j}, \end{cases}$$

where, as usual, g is the number of observations trimmed or Winsorized from each end of the distribution corresponding to the j th group. With 20% trimming, $g = [0.2n]$, where $[0.2n]$ means to round 0.2n down to the nearest integer. The expression for Y_{ij} says that $Y_{ij} = X_{ij}$ if X_{ij} has a value between $X_{(g+1)j}$ and $X_{(n-g)j}$. If X_{ij} is less than or equal to $X_{(g+1)j}$, set $Y_{ij} = X_{(g+1)j}$, and if X_{ij} is greater than or equal to $X_{(n-g)j}$, set $Y_{ij} = X_{(n-g)j}$. Put another way, the observations are Winsorized with the dependent random variables remaining paired together, and this is consistent with the Winsorization of a bivariate distribution described in Chapter 2.

As an illustration, consider the eight pairs of observations

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} X_{i1}: & 18 & 6 & 2 & 12 & 14 & 12 & 8 & 9 \\ X_{i2}: & 11 & 15 & 9 & 12 & 9 & 6 & 7 & 10 \end{array}$$

With 20% Winsorization, $g = 1$, so the smallest observation in each group is pulled up to the next smallest value. Thus, for the first row of data, the value 2 is Winsorized by replacing it with 6. Similarly, the largest value, 18, is replaced by the value 14. For the second row of data, 6 becomes 7 and 15 becomes 12. This yields

$$\begin{array}{cccccccc} Y_{i1}: & 14 & 6 & 6 & 12 & 14 & 12 & 8 & 9 \\ Y_{i2}: & 11 & 12 & 9 & 12 & 9 & 7 & 7 & 10 \end{array}$$

The population Winsorized covariance between X_{i1} and X_{i2} is, by definition, $\sigma_{w12} = E_w[(X_{i1} - \mu_{w1})(X_{i2} - \mu_{w2})]$, where E_w indicates the Winsorized expected value as defined in Chapter 2, and μ_{wj} is the population Winsorized mean of the j th group. It follows from the influence function of the trimmed mean that the squared standard error of $\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}$ is

$$\frac{1}{(1-2\gamma)^2 n} \{\sigma_{w1}^2 + \sigma_{w2}^2 - 2\sigma_{w12}\},$$

which reduces to a standard result when there is no trimming ($\gamma = 0$). The Winsorized covariance is estimated with the sample covariance between the Y_{i1} and Y_{i2} values:

$$\frac{1}{n-1} \sum (Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)(Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2),$$

where \bar{Y}_j is the Winsorized mean associated with the j th random variable. Generalizing Yuen's approach in an obvious way, the squared standard error of $\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}$ can be estimated with

$$\frac{1}{h(h-1)} \left\{ \sum (Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)^2 + \sum (Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2)^2 - 2 \sum (Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)(Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2) \right\},$$

where $h = n - 2g$ is the effective sample size. Letting

$$d_j = \frac{1}{h(h-1)} \sum (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)^2,$$

and

$$d_{12} = \frac{1}{h(h-1)} \sum (Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)(Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2),$$

$H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ can be tested with

$$T_y = \frac{\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}}{\sqrt{d_1 + d_2 - 2d_{12}}}, \quad (5.29)$$

which is rejected if $|T_y| > t$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $h - 1$ degrees of freedom. A $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}) \pm t \sqrt{d_1 + d_2 - 2d_{12}}.$$

5.9.6 R Functions `yuend`, `yuendv2` and `D.akp.effect`

The R function

```
yuend(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

computes a confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, the difference between the trimmed means corresponding to two dependent groups, using the method described in the previous subsection of this chapter. As usual, the default amount of trimming is $tr = 0.2$, and $alpha$ defaults to 0.05. The resulting confidence interval is returned in the R variable `yuend$ci`, the p-value level in `yuend$siglevel`, the estimated difference between the trimmed means in `yuend$dif`, the estimated standard error in `yuend$se`, the test statistic in `yuend$teststat`, and the degrees of freedom in `yuend$df`.

There are several ways the difference between two dependent groups might be characterized. One possibility is to use the explanatory measure of effect size as described in Section 5.3.4. The function

```
yuendv2(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

is exactly like the function `yuend`, only it also reports the explanatory measure of effect size. Another option is to measure effect size based on an estimate of Eq. (5.28) via the R function

```
D.akp.effect(x, y = NULL, null.value = 0, tr=0.2).
```

■ Example

As a simple illustration, suppose the cholesterol levels of participants are measured before and after some treatment is administered yielding

Before: 190, 210, 300, 240, 280, 170, 280, 250, 240, 220
 After: 210, 210, 340, 190, 260, 180, 200, 220, 230, 200.

Storing the before scores in the R vector x , and the after scores in y , the command `yuend(x,y)` returns

```
$ci
[1] -8.29182 64.95849

$p.value
[1] 0.1034335

$est1
[1] 240

$est2
[1] 211.6667

$dif
[1] 28.33333

$se
[1] 14.24781

$teststat
[1] 1.98861

$n
[1] 10

$df
[1] 5

$Effect.Size
[1] 0.5192753
```

Thus, the 0.95 confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is $(-8.3, 64.96)$, and the estimated difference between the trimmed means is 28.3. The test statistic is equal to 1.99, approximately, with a p-value of 0.103, the estimated standard error of the difference between the sample trimmed means is 14.2, and the degrees of freedom are 5.

5.9.7 A Bootstrap-t Method for Marginal Trimmed Means

A bootstrap-t method can be used to compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$. (Again, when using difference scores, simply proceed as in Chapter 4.) Begin by generating a bootstrap sample as described in Section 5.7.1. That is, n pairs of observations are obtained by randomly sampling with replacement pairs of observations from the observed data. As usual, label the results $(X_{i1}^*, X_{i2}^*), i = 1, \dots, n$. Now proceed along the lines in Section 5.3.2. More precisely, set $C_{ij}^* = X_{ij}^* - \bar{X}_{tj}$. Let T_y^* be the value of T_y , given by Eq. (5.29), based on the C_{ij}^* values just computed. Repeat this process B times yielding $T_{yb}^*, b = 1, \dots, B$. Let $T_{y(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{y(B)}^*$ be the T_{yb}^* values written in ascending order. Set $\ell = \alpha B / 2$ and $u = (1 - \alpha/2)B$, rounding both to the nearest integer. Then an estimate of the lower and upper critical values is $T_{y(\ell+1)}^*$ and $T_{y(u)}^*$. An equal-tailed $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} + T_{y(u)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2 - 2d_{12}}, \bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2} + T_{y(\ell+1)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2 - 2d_{12}}). \quad (5.30)$$

To get a symmetric confidence interval, replace T_{yb}^* by its absolute value, set $a = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounding to the nearest integer, in which case the $(1 - \alpha)$ confidence interval for $(\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2})$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}) \pm T_{y(a)}^* \sqrt{d_1 + d_2 - 2d_{12}}.$$

5.9.8 R Function `ydbt`

The R function

```
ydbt(x,y,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599,side=F,plotit=F,op=1)
```

computes a bootstrap-t confidence interval for $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$ when dealing with paired data. As usual, the default amount of trimming is $tr=0.2$, and α defaults to $alpha=0.05$. The number of bootstrap samples defaults to $nboot = 599$. Using $side=F$, for false, results in an equal-tailed confidence interval, while $side=T$ returns a symmetric confidence interval instead. Setting the argument $plotit$ to T creates a plot of the bootstrap values, where the type of plot is controlled via the argument op . The possible values for op are 1, 2, and 3 which correspond to the an adaptive kernel estimator, the expected frequency curve, and a boxplot, respectively.

5.9.9 Inferences About the Distribution of Difference Scores

There is another perspective on comparing dependent groups that should be mentioned. For convenience, the focus is momentarily on trimmed means, but it is evident that some of the

general remarks made here are relevant to any robust measure of location. As already noted, except for the special case of the sample mean, the trimmed mean of the pairwise differences can differ from the difference between the marginal trimmed means. That is, for n randomly sampled pairs of observations X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, 2$) if

$$D_i = X_{i1} - X_{i2},$$

the trimmed mean based on the D_i values is not necessarily equal to $\bar{X}_{t1} - \bar{X}_{t2}$, the difference between the marginal trimmed means. Moreover, under general conditions, $\mu_{td} \neq \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, where μ_{td} is the population trimmed mean corresponding to D . Note that yet another way of characterizing how the two groups differ is in terms of the distribution of $D = X_1 - X_2$. That is, now compute the n^2 differences

$$\mathcal{D}_{ik} = X_{i1} - X_{k2}$$

for all i and k ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $k = 1, \dots, n$). A way of comparing the two groups is to use some measure of location based on the \mathcal{D}_{ik} values.

Let $M_{\mathcal{D}}$ denote the sample median based on all n^2 \mathcal{D}_{ik} values. Of course, some other measure of location could be used, but in terms of efficiency, $M_{\mathcal{D}}$ compares well to smaller amounts of trimming, even under normality (Wilcox, 2006d). Moreover, letting $\theta_{\mathcal{D}}$ be the population median associated with $M_{\mathcal{D}}$, a basic percentile bootstrap method has been found to perform well, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when testing

$$H_0 : \theta_{\mathcal{D}} = 0.$$

That is, randomly sample with replacement n pairs of observation, compute $M_{\mathcal{D}}^*$ based on this bootstrap sample, and repeat this process B times. Note that when comparing independent groups, this hypothesis corresponds to $H_0: p = 0.5$, where p is the probabilistic measure of effect size discussed in Section 5.7. That is, the method in this section is a generalization of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test to dependent groups.

To illustrate the different measures of location in more concrete terms, imagine a study based on randomly sampled married couples where the goal is to compare cholesterol levels. One strategy is to compute the median of difference scores, which tells us something about the typical difference for a randomly sampled couple. A second approach is to compute the median of the marginal distributions, which provides information about how the typical cholesterol level of the males compares to the typical level for all females. A third approach is to compute the difference between cholesterol levels for each male and female, not just males and females who are married. This provides information about the typical difference between any male and any female.

5.9.10 R Functions *loc2dif* and *l2drmci*

The R function

```
loc2dif(x, y = NULL, est = median, na.rm = TRUE, plotit = FALSE, xlab = ' ', ylab = ' ', ...)
```

computes $M_{\mathcal{D}}$ for the data stored in x (time 1 for example) and y (time 2). If y is not specified, it is assumed x is a matrix with two columns. The argument na.rm=T means that the function will eliminate any pair where one or both values are missing. If it is desired to use all of the available data, set na.rm=F. If the argument plotit=TRUE, the function plots an estimate of the distribution of \mathcal{D} . The R function

```
l2drmci(x,y=NA,est=median,tr=0.2,na.rm=TRUE)
```

tests $H_0: \theta_{\mathcal{D}} = 0$. The argument na.rm is used as was done with loc2dif.

■ Example

Rao (1948) reports data on cork boring weights taken from 28 trees, which are reproduced in Table 6.5. The borings were taken from the north, east, west and south sides of each tree. Here the south and east sides of the trees are compared. The function loc2dif returns 1. That is, among all trees, the median difference between south and east sides is estimated to be 1. In contrast, the median difference for a randomly sampled tree, meaning the median of the difference scores associated with the 28 trees, is 3. So now we have information on how the two sides of the same tree compare, which is not the same as the difference among all the trees. Finally, the difference between the marginal medians is 1.5. This tells us something about how the typical weight for the south side of a tree compares to the typical weight of the east side. But it does not provide any direct information regarding the typical difference among all of the trees. The R function l2drmci returns a p-value of 0.336. So based on the differences among all pairs of trees, fail to reject the hypothesis $H_0: \theta_{\mathcal{D}} = 0$ at the 0.10 level. However, if the $n = 28$ difference scores are used, the R function sintv2 returns a p-value of 0.088. Now (at the 0.10 level), reject and conclude that for a randomly sampled tree, the median difference between the two weights differ from 0, the only point being that different perspectives can alter the p-value substantially.

5.9.11 Percentile Bootstrap: Comparing Medians, M-Estimators and Other Measures of Location and Scale

The percentile bootstrap method in Chapter 4 is readily extended to comparing various parameters associated with the marginal distributions of two dependent variables. When X_{i1} and X_{i2} are dependent, bootstrap samples are obtained by randomly sampling pairs of observations with replacement. That is, proceed as described in Section 5.9.1 yielding the pairs of bootstrap samples

$$\begin{aligned}(X_{11}^*, X_{12}^*) \\ \vdots \\ (X_{n1}^*, X_{n2}^*).\end{aligned}$$

Let θ_j be any parameter of interest associated with the j th marginal distribution. Let $\hat{\theta}_j^*$ be the bootstrap estimate of θ_j based on $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{nj}^*$ and let $d^* = \hat{\theta}_1^* - \hat{\theta}_2^*$. Repeat this process B times yielding d_1^*, \dots, d_B^* , write these B values in ascending order yielding $d_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq d_{(B)}^*$, in which case a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\theta_1 - \theta_2$ is

$$(d_{(\ell+1)}^*, d_{(u)}^*),$$

where $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = B - \ell$.

A (generalized) p-value can be computed as well. Let

$$p^* = P(\hat{\theta}_1^* > \hat{\theta}_2^*) + 0.5P(\hat{\theta}_1^* = \hat{\theta}_2^*).$$

The first probability on the right side of this equation is estimated with the proportion of bootstrap samples, among all B bootstrap samples, for which $\hat{\theta}_1^* > \hat{\theta}_2^*$. And the second probability is estimated with the proportion of times $\hat{\theta}_1^* = \hat{\theta}_2^*$. For a two-sided hypothesis, now reject if $\hat{p}^* \leq \alpha/2$ or if $\hat{p}^* \geq 1 - \alpha/2$. The estimate of the (generalized) p-value is

$$2\min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*).$$

The percentile bootstrap method just described can be unsatisfactory when the goal is to make inferences about means and variances, but it appears to be reasonably effective when working with M-estimators, the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median, as well as the biweight midvariance (Wilcox, 1996a). By this is meant that the actual probability of a Type I error will not be much larger than the nominal level.

However, a concern is that with small sample sizes, the actual probability of a Type I error can drop well below the nominal level when working with M-estimators or the modified M-estimator described in Chapter 3. For example, there are situations where, when testing at the

0.05 level, the actual probability of a Type I error can be less than 0.01. [Wilcox and Keselman \(2002\)](#) found a method that reduces this problem in simulations. Note that if based on the original data, $\hat{\theta}_1 = \hat{\theta}_2$, it should be the case that $\hat{p}^* = 0.5$, but situations arise where this is not the case. The idea is to shift the data so that $\hat{\theta}_1 = \hat{\theta}_2$, compute \hat{p}^* based on the shifted data, and then correct the bootstrap p-value given above. More precisely, let \hat{q}^* be the value of \hat{p}^* based on the shifted data. A so-called *bias-adjusted p-value* is

$$2\min(\hat{p}_a^*, 1 - \hat{p}_a^*),$$

where $\hat{p}_a^* = \hat{p}^* - 0.1(\hat{q}^* - 0.5)$. As the sample size increases, $\hat{q}^* - 0.5 \rightarrow 0$ and the adjustment becomes negligible.

Note that the pairs of bootstrap values $(\hat{\theta}_{1b}^*, \hat{\theta}_{2b}^*)$, $b = 1, \dots, B$, provide an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence region for (θ_1, θ_2) . The bootstrap method aimed at comparing the measures of location associated with the marginal distributions essentially checks to see how deeply a line through the origin, having slope one, is nested within the cloud of bootstrap values. Here, the depth of this line is measured by how many bootstrap points lie above it, which corresponds to how often $\hat{\theta}_{1b}^* < \hat{\theta}_{2b}^*$ among the B bootstrap pairs of points.

5.9.12 R Function bootdpci

The R function

```
bootdpci(x,y,est=onestep, nboot=NA, alpha=0.05, plotit=TRUE, dif=TRUE, BA=FALSE,...)
```

performs a percentile bootstrap method using any estimator available through R. The argument est indicates the estimator that will be used and defaults to the one-step M-estimator (based on Huber's Ψ). The default value for nboot is NA, which in effect causes $B = 1000$ to be used. The argument dif controls whether inferences are made on difference scores; by default differences scores are used. To compare measures of location associated with the marginal distributions, set dif=F. If dif=F and BA=T, the bias adjusted p-value is computed. If dif=F, BA=F and est=onestep or mom, the function prints a message suggesting that BA=T be used. For trimmed means, bias adjusted p-values are not needed.

■ Example

If the data in [Table 5.9](#) are stored in the R variables t1 and t2, the command `bootdpci(t1,t2,est=tmean)` computes a 0.95 confidence interval for the 20% trimmed mean associated with the difference scores. The (generalized) p-value is 0.369. The left panel of [Figure 5.11](#) shows the resulting plot of the bootstrap values. The p-value reflects the proportion of points below the horizontal line at zero. The command

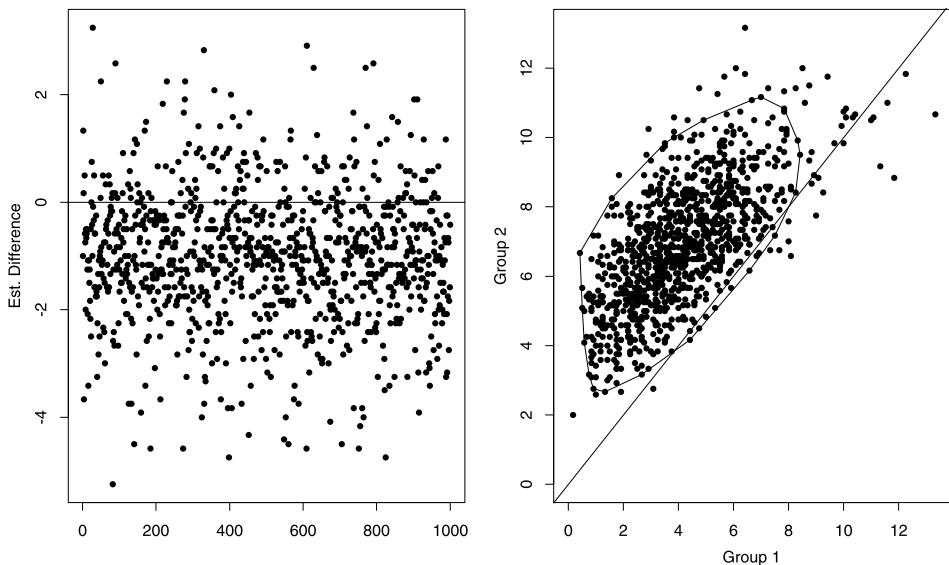


Figure 5.11: Plot of the bootstrap values used by the function `bootdpci` when analyzing the data in Table 5.9. The left panel is for `dif=T`, meaning that difference scores were analyzed. The right panel is for `dif=F`, meaning that marginal measures of location are compared.

`bootdpci(x,y,est=tmean,dif=F)` compares the marginal distributions instead. Now the (generalized) p-value is 0.063. The right panel of Figure 5.11 shows the resulting plot. The p-value reflects the proportion of points below the line having slope one and intercept zero.

The command `bootdpci(x,y,est=winvar,dif=F)` would compute a 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the 20% Winsorized variances. The command `bootdpci(x,y)` would attempt to compute a 0.95 confidence interval based on a one-step M-estimator, but for the data used here, eventually this results in an error in the R function `hpsi`. The reason, which was already discussed in Chapter 4, is that with small sample sizes, there is a good chance that an M-estimator based on a bootstrap sample cannot be computed due to division by zero.

5.9.13 Handling Missing Values

Numerous methods have been proposed for handling missing values when dealing with means, none of which are completely satisfactory. A simple approach is the so-called *complete case* method where any pair of observations is eliminated if one of the values is missing,

after which methods previously described are applied to the data that remain. This section describes three methods for handling missing values when using a robust measure of location that use all of the available data, assuming missing values occur in a manner that does not alter the marginal measures of location. For example, it might be the case that values are missing completely at random (MCAR), meaning that the process resulting in missing values is independent of both the observed and the missing values. A weaker assumption, that allows the analysis to be performed without taking into account the mechanism that creates missing values, is called missing at random (MAR). Missing at random (MAR) is taken to mean that, given the observed data, the missingness mechanism does not depend on the unobserved data. (For a description of other mechanisms leading to missing values, see [Little & Rubin, 2002](#).) At the end of this section, comments are made about the relative merits of the methods about to be described.

Method M1

The first method is based on a straightforward generalization of the method in [Lin and Stivers \(1974\)](#), assuming that the goal is to compare the marginal trimmed means, as opposed to the trimmed mean of the difference scores. It is assumed than n pairs of observations are randomly sampled where both values are available, which is denoted by $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$. The corresponding (marginal) γ -trimmed means are denoted by \bar{X}_t and \bar{Y}_t . For the first marginal distribution, an additional n_1 observations are sampled for which the corresponding Y value is not observed. These observations are denoted by $X_{n+1}, \dots, X_{n+n_1}$ and the trimmed mean of these n_1 observations is denoted by \tilde{X}_t . Similarly, n_2 observations are sampled for which the corresponding value for the first marginal distribution is not observed and the trimmed mean is denoted by \tilde{Y}_t . Let $h_j = [\gamma n_j]$ ($j = 1, 2$), and let $\lambda_j = h/(h + h_j)$, where $h = [\gamma n]$. Then an estimate of the difference between the marginal trimmed means, $\mu_{tD} = \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, is

$$\hat{\mu}_{tD} = \lambda_1 \bar{X}_t - \lambda_2 \bar{Y}_t + (1 - \lambda_1) \tilde{X}_t - (1 - \lambda_2) \tilde{Y}_t,$$

a linear combination of three independent random variables. The squared standard of $\lambda_1 \bar{X} - \lambda_2 \bar{Y}$ is

$$\sigma_0^2 = \frac{1}{(1 - 2\gamma)^2 n} (\lambda_1^2 \sigma_{wx}^2 + \lambda_2 \sigma_{wy}^2 - 2\lambda_1 \lambda_2 \sigma_{wxy}), \quad (5.31)$$

where σ_{wxy} is the population Winsorized covariance between X and Y . The squared standard error of $(1 - \lambda_1) \tilde{X}$ is

$$\sigma_1^2 = \frac{(1 - \lambda_1)^2 \sigma_{wx}^2}{(1 - 2\gamma)^2 (n + n_1)} \quad (5.32)$$

and the squared standard error of $(1 - \lambda_2)\tilde{Y}$ is

$$\sigma_2^2 = \frac{(1 - \lambda_2)^2 \sigma_{wy}^2}{(1 - 2\gamma)^2(n + n_2)}. \quad (5.33)$$

So the squared standard error of $\hat{\mu}_{tD}$ is

$$\tau^2 = \sigma_0^2 + \sigma_1^2 + \sigma_2^2.$$

For convenience, let $N_1 = n + n_1$ and $g_1 = [\gamma N_1]$. The Winsorized values corresponding to X_1, \dots, X_{N_1} are

$$W_{xi} = \begin{cases} X_{(g_1+1)} & \text{if } X_i \leq X_{(g_1+1)} \\ X_i & \text{if } X_{(g_1+1)} < X_i < X_{(N_1-g_1)} \\ X_{(N_1-g_1)} & \text{if } X_i \geq X_{(N_1-g_1)}. \end{cases}$$

The (sample) Winsorized mean is

$$\bar{W}_x = \frac{1}{N_1} \sum_{i=1}^{N_1} W_{xi},$$

an estimate of the Winsorized variance, σ_{wx}^2 , is

$$s_{wx}^2 = \frac{1}{N_1 - 1} \sum (W_{xi} - \bar{W}_x)^2,$$

and an estimate of σ_{wy}^2 is obtained in a similar fashion. The Winsorized covariance between X and Y is estimated with

$$s_{wxy} = \frac{1}{n - 1} \sum_{i=1}^n (W_{xi} - \bar{W}_x)(W_{yi} - \bar{W}_y),$$

where

$$\bar{W}_y = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n W_{yi}$$

and \bar{W}_y is defined in a similar manner.

The sample Winsorized variances yield estimates of σ_0^2 , σ_1^2 and σ_2^2 , say $\hat{\sigma}_0^2$, $\hat{\sigma}_1^2$ and $\hat{\sigma}_2^2$, in which case an estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\mu}_{tD}$ is

$$\hat{\tau}^2 = \hat{\sigma}_0^2 + \hat{\sigma}_1^2 + \hat{\sigma}_2^2.$$

So a reasonable test statistic for testing the hypothesis of equal (marginal) trimmed means is

$$T = \frac{\hat{\mu}_{tD}}{\hat{\tau}}. \quad (5.34)$$

There remains the problem of approximating the null distribution of T and here a basic bootstrap-t method is used. To make sure the details are clear, the method begins by randomly sampling with replacement $N = n + n_1 + n_2$ pairs of observations from $(X_1, Y_2), \dots, (X_N, Y_N)$ yielding $(X_1^*, Y_2^*), \dots, (X_N^*, Y_N^*)$. Based on this bootstrap sample, compute the absolute value of the test statistic as just described and label the result T^* . Repeat this process B times and put the resulting T^* values in ascending order yielding $T_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{(B)}^*$. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Δ_t is

$$\hat{\Delta}_t \pm T_{(c)}^* \hat{\tau}$$

where $c = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer.

Method M2

Method M2 is based on the usual percentile bootstrap method. For the situation at hand, generate a bootstrap sample using all N pairs of observations and let $\tilde{D}_t^* = \tilde{X}_t^* - \tilde{Y}_t^*$, where \tilde{X}_t^* is the trimmed mean based on all of the X_i^* values not missing and \tilde{Y}_t^* is computed in a similar manner. Repeat this B times, put the resulting \tilde{D}_t^* values in ascending order, and label the results $\tilde{D}_{t(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \tilde{D}_{t(B)}^*$. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for μ_{tD} is

$$(\tilde{D}_{t(\ell+1)}^*, \tilde{D}_{t(u)}^*),$$

where $\ell = \alpha B / 2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = B - \ell$. A p-value is computed in the usual manner. That is, estimate $p = P(\hat{\mu}_{tD}^* > 0)$ with \hat{p} , the proportion of \tilde{D}_t^* values greater than 0. Then a (generalized) p-value is

$$P = 2\min(\hat{p}, 1 - \hat{p}).$$

Method M3

Method M3 is based on θ_D , the median of the distribution of $D = X - Y$. The method begins by forming all pairwise differences among all of the observed X and Y values. That is, for all of the values that are available, compute $D_{ij} = X_i - Y_j$ ($i = 1, \dots, N_1$; $j = 1, \dots, N_2$) resulting in $N_1 \times N_2$ D_{ij} values. Then an estimate of θ_D is obtained by computing the sample median of the D_{ij} values.

Again a basic percentile bootstrap method is used to make inferences about θ_D . Generate a bootstrap sample as done in Method M2 and let $\hat{\theta}_D^*$ be the resulting estimate of θ_D . Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\theta}_{D,b}^*$, $b = 1, \dots, B$. Next, put these B values in ascending order yielding $\hat{\theta}_{D(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\theta}_{D(B)}^*$ and let ℓ and u be defined as before. Then a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for θ_D is

$$(\hat{\theta}_{D(\ell+1)}^*, \hat{\theta}_{D(u)}^*).$$

This method can be applied with the R function `l2drmci` in Section 5.9.10 by setting the argument `na.rm=F`, meaning that any row of data that has a missing value is not removed.

Comments on Choosing a Method

Based on results in Wilcox (2011b), method M3, as well as method M2 coupled with a 20% trimmed mean, perform reasonably well in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, with M2 having perhaps a slight advantage. Method M1 tends to have an actual type error probability less than the nominal level, again using a 20% trimmed mean, sometimes substantially so. However, as the amount of trimming decreases, at some point a percentile bootstrap method (method M2) will not perform well, suggesting that eventually, method M1 will be more satisfactory than method M2. But at what point this is the case has not been determined. Not surprisingly, method M1 can be highly unsatisfactory when working with means.

Another general strategy is to impute missing values. The relative merits of this approach are discussed in Section 8.2.5.

5.9.14 R Functions `rm2miss` and `rmmismcp`

The R function

```
rmmismcp(x,y = NA, tr=0.2, con = 0, est = tmean, plotit = TRUE, grp = NA, nboot = 500,
          SEED = TRUE, xlab = 'Group 1', ylab = 'Group 2', pr = F, ...)
```

deals with missing values when the goal is to test the hypothesis $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ using method M2 described in the previous section. In particular, rather than using the complete case analysis strategy, it uses all of the available data to compare the marginal trimmed means, assuming any missing values occur at random. With 20% trimming or more, it appears to be one of the better methods for general use when there are missing values. By default, a 20% trimmed mean is used, but other measures of location can be used via the argument `est`. For example, `rmmismcp(x,y,est=onestep)` would compare the groups with a one-step M-estimator. The function returns a confidence interval for the difference between the marginal measures of

location. If the argument $y=NA$, it is assumed that the argument x is a matrix with columns corresponding to groups. (The function can handle more than two groups; see Section 8.1.4 for more details.) When there are two groups and the argument $plotit=T$, a plot of the bootstrap estimates is created.

The R function

`rm2miss(x,y,tr=0)`

also tests $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ using method M1.

5.9.15 Comparing Variances

This section deals with testing

$$H_0: \sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2, \quad (5.35)$$

the hypothesis that two dependent random variables have equal variances. The best-known method is the *Morgan–Pitman* test. Set

$$U_i = X_{i1} - X_{i2}$$

and

$$V_i = X_{i1} + X_{i2}$$

($i = 1, \dots, n$) and let ρ_{uv} be the (population) value of Pearson's correlation between U and V . It can be shown that if H_0 is true, then $\rho_{uv} = 0$, so a test the hypothesis of equal variances is obtained by testing

$$H_0: \rho_{uv} = 0. \quad (5.36)$$

The Morgan–Pitman test of (5.35) is based on the test statistic

$$T_{uv} = r_{uv} \sqrt{\frac{n-2}{1-r_{uv}^2}},$$

where r_{uv} is the usual estimate of Pearson's correlation based on (U_i, V_i) ($i = 1, \dots, n$) and T_{uv} is assumed to have a Student's T distribution with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom. However, McCulloch (1987) as well as Mudholkar, Wilding, and Mietlowski (2003) show that when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, T_{uv} does not converge to a standard normal distribution as the sample size increases. For heavy-tailed distributions, the variance of T_{uv} converges to a value that is greater than one, which in turn results in Type I error probabilities greater

than the nominal level. Indeed, as the sample size increases, control over the Type I error probability deteriorates. Wilcox (2015a) established that when the null hypothesis of equal variances is true, as we move toward a heavy-tailed distribution, there is heteroscedasticity. That is, T_{uv} is not using a correct estimate of the standard error. There are several methods for testing (5.36) that allow heteroscedasticity and simulations based on the so-called HC4 method (described in Section 10.1.1) has been found to perform fairly well in simulations.

5.9.16 R Function `comdvar`

The R function

```
comdvar(x,y,alpha=0.05)
```

tests the hypothesis of equal variances using the heteroscedastic generalization of the Morgan–Pitman test described in the previous section.

5.9.17 The Sign Test and Inferences About the Binomial Distribution

For completeness, one can also compare two dependent groups with the sign test. Let $p = P(X_{i1} < X_{i2})$. Then p is the probability that for a randomly sampled pair of observations, the first observation is less than the second. Letting $W_i = 1$ if $X_{i1} < X_{i2}$, $w = \sum W_i$ has a binomial distribution with probability of success p . Standard asymptotic theory can be used to compute a confidence interval for p , but various improvements have appeared in the literature, some of which are described here.

The goal is to determine c_L and c_U such that

$$P(c_L \leq p \leq c_U) = 1 - \alpha.$$

For the special cases where w is equal to 0, 1, $n - 1$ or n , results in Blyth (1986) can be used. In particular,

- If $w = 0$,

$$c_U = 1 - \alpha^{1/n}$$

$$c_L = 0.$$

- If $w = 1$,

$$c_L = 1 - \left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^{1/n}$$

$$c_U = 1 - \left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^{1/n}.$$

- If $w = n - 1$,

$$c_L = \left(\frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^{1/n}$$

$$c_U = \left(1 - \frac{\alpha}{2}\right)^{1/n}.$$

- If $w = n$,

$$c_L = \alpha^{1/n},$$

and

$$c_U = 1.$$

■ Example

If $n = 8$ and $w = 0$,

$$c_U = 1 - (0.05)^{1/8} = 0.312,$$

and a 0.95 one-sided confidence interval for p is $(0, 0.312)$. If $w = 1$ and $n = 8$, a two-sided 0.95 confidence interval would be $(0.003, 0.37)$.

For situations where the observed number of successes is not 0, 1, $n - 1$, or n , [Pratt's \(1968\)](#) approximation can be used, which is recommended by [Blyth \(1986\)](#); cf. [Chen \(1990\)](#). The computational details are given in [Table 5.10](#).

Alternative methods for computing a confidence interval for the probability of success were compared by [Brown, Cai, and DasGupta \(2002\)](#) and they concluded that the Agresti–Coull method, which is a simple generalization of method derived by [Agresti and Coull \(1998\)](#), performs relatively well.

Let X represent the total number of successes among n observations, in which case

$$\hat{p} = \frac{X}{n},$$

the proportion of successes among the n observations. As before, let c be the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution. Compute

$$\tilde{n} = n + c^2,$$

Table 5.10: Pratt's Approximate Confidence Interval for p .

You observe w successes among n trials, and the goal is to compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for p . Let c be the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution.

To determine c_U , the upper end of the confidence interval, compute

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \left(\frac{w+1}{n-w} \right)^2 \\ B &= 81(w+1)(n-w) - 9n - 8 \\ C &= -3c\sqrt{9(w+1)(n-w)(9n+5-c^2)} + n + 1 \\ D &= 81(w+1)^2 - 9(w+1)(2+c^2) + 1 \\ E &= 1 + A \left(\frac{B+C}{D} \right)^3 \end{aligned}$$

in which case

$$c_U = \frac{1}{E}.$$

To get the lower end of the confidence interval, compute

$$\begin{aligned} A &= \left(\frac{w}{n-w-1} \right)^2 \\ B &= 81(w)(n-w-1) - 9n - 8 \\ C &= 3c\sqrt{9x(n-w-1)(9n+5-c^2)} + n + 1 \\ D &= 81w^2 - 9w(2+c^2) + 1 \\ E &= 1 + A \left(\frac{B+C}{D} \right)^3 \end{aligned}$$

in which case

$$c_L = \frac{1}{E}.$$

$$\tilde{X} = X + \frac{c^2}{2},$$

and

$$\tilde{p} = \frac{\tilde{X}}{\tilde{n}}.$$

Then the Agresti–Coull $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the probability of success, p , is

$$\tilde{p} \pm c\sqrt{\frac{\tilde{p}(1-\tilde{p})}{\tilde{n}}}.$$

More recently, Schilling and Doi (2014) derived a more complex method that guarantees that the actual probability coverage is greater than or equal to the specified level. For example, if the goal is to compute a 0.95 confidence interval, the actual probability that the confidence interval contains the true probability of success, p , is at least 0.95. In addition, the Schilling–Doi method is designed to provide the optimal confidence interval. This means that when computing a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval, the shortest possible confidence interval is computed that guarantees that the probability coverage is at least $1 - \alpha$. The involved calculations are not described here, but an R function for applying the method is supplied.

5.9.18 R Functions *binomci*, *acbinomci* and *binomLCO*

The R function

```
binomci(x = sum(y), nn = length(y), y = NA, n = NA, tr=0.2)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for p using Pratt's method described in the previous section. When the number of successes is 0, 1, $n - 1$ or n , Blyth's method is used instead. Here, x is the observed number of successes, nn is the number of observations, and alpha is α . The function can handle data stored as a vector of 1s and 0s via the argument y . If data are stored in y , and no values are specified by the arguments x and nn , the function takes x to be the number of successes in y and nn is taken to be the length of y . The R function

```
acbinomci(x = sum(y), nn = length(y), y = NA, n = NA, tr=0.2)
```

computes the Agresti–Coulle confidence interval.

The R function

```
binomLCO(x = sum(y), nn = length(y), y = NULL, tr=0.2)
```

applies the Schilling–Doi method and is used in the same manner as the R function *acbinomci*. A possible concern is that with a large sample size, execution time using the Schilling–Doi method can be prohibitive.

■ Example

Suppose there is 1 success in 80 trials. Then `binomci(1,80)` reports that the 0.95 confidence interval for p is (0.00032, 0.0451). The confidence interval returned by `binomLCO` is (0.001, 0.067). If `mydat` contains 0, 1, 1, 1, 0, 0, 1, 1, 0, 1, then the command `binomci(y=mydat)` returns an estimate (`phat`) of p equal to 0.6 and a 0.95

confidence interval equal to (0.33, 0.88). The Agresti–Coull 0.95 confidence interval is (0.31, 0.83) and the Schilling–Doi 0.95 confidence interval is (0.29, 0.85).

5.10 Exercises

1. Compare the two groups of data in [Table 5.1](#) using the weighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov test. Plot the shift function and its 0.95 confidence band. Compare the results with the unweighted test.
2. Compare the two groups of data in [Table 5.3](#) using the weighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov test. Plot the shift function and its 0.95 confidence band. Compare the results with the unweighted test.
3. Summarize the relative merits of using the weighted versus unweighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov test. Also discuss the merits of the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test relative to comparing measures of location.
4. Consider two independent groups having identical distributions. Suppose 4 observations are randomly sampled from the first and three from the second. Determine $P(D = 1)$ and $P(D = 0.75)$, where D is given by Eq. [\(5.4\)](#). Verify your results with the R function `kssig`.
5. Compare the deciles only, using the Harrell–Davis estimator, using the data in [Table 5.1](#).
6. Verify that if X and Y are independent, the third moment about the mean of $X - Y$ is $\mu_{x[3]} - \mu_{y[3]}$.
7. Apply the Yuen–Welch method to the data in [Table 5.1](#) where the amount of trimming is 0, 0.05, 0.1, and 0.2. Compare the estimated standard errors of the difference between the trimmed means.
8. Describe a situation where testing $H_0: p = 1/2$ with Mee’s method can have lower power than the Yuen–Welch procedure.
9. Comment on the relative merits of testing $H_0: p = 1/2$ with Mee’s method versus comparing two independent groups with the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test.
10. Compute a confidence interval for p using the data in [Table 5.1](#).
11. The example at the end of Section [5.3.3](#) examined some data from an experiment on the effects of drinking alcohol. Another portion of the study consisted of measuring the effects of alcohol over three days of drinking. The scores for the control group, for the first two days of drinking, are 4, 47, 35, 4, 4, 0, 58, 0, 12, 4, 26, 19, 6, 10, 1, 22, 54, 15, 4, and 22. The experimental group had scores 2, 0, 7, 0, 4, 2, 9, 0, 2, 22, 0, 3, 0, 0, 47, 26, 2, 0, 7, and 2. Verify that the hypothesis of equal 20% trimmed means is rejected with $\alpha = 0.05$. Next, verify that this hypothesis is not rejected when using the equal-tailed bootstrap-t method, but that it is rejected when using the symmetric percentile t procedure instead. Comment on these results.

12. Section 5.9.4 used some hypothetical data to illustrate the R function `yuen` with 20% trimming. Use the function to compare the means. Verify that the estimated standard error of the difference between the sample means is smaller than the standard error of the difference between the 20% trimmed means. Despite this, the p-value is smaller when comparing trimmed means versus means. Why? Make general comments on this result. Next, compute the 20% trimmed mean of the difference scores. That is, set $D_i = X_{i1} - X_{i2}$ and compute the trimmed mean using the D_i values. Compare this to the difference between the trimmed means of the marginal distributions, and make additional comments about comparing dependent groups.
13. The file `pyge.dat` (see Section 1.8) contains pretest reasoning IQ scores for students in grades 1 and 2 who were assigned to one of three ability tracks. (The data are from [Elashoff & Snow, 1970](#), and originally collected by R. Rosenthal.) The file `pygc.dat` contain data for a control group. The experimental group consisted of children for whom positive expectancies had been suggested to teachers. Compare the 20% trimmed means of the control group to the experimental group using the function `yuen` and verify that the 0.95 confidence interval is $(-7.12, 27.96)$. Thus, you would not reject the hypothesis of equal trimmed means. What reasons can be given for not concluding that the two groups have comparable IQ scores?
14. Continuing the last exercise, examine a boxplot of the data. What would you expect to happen if the 0.95 confidence interval is computed using a bootstrap-t method? Verify your answer using the R function `yuenbt`.
15. The file `tumor.dat` contains data on the number of days to occurrence of a mammary tumor in 48 rats injected with a carcinogen and subsequently randomized to receive either the treatment or the control. The data were collected by [Gail, Santner, and Brown \(1980\)](#) and represent only a portion of the results they reported. (Here, the data are the number of days to the first tumor. Most rats developed multiple tumors, but these results are not considered here.) Compare the means of the two groups with Welch's method for means and verify that you reject with $\alpha = 0.05$. Examine a boxplot and comment on what this suggests about the accuracy of the confidence interval for $\mu_1 - \mu_2$. Verify that you also reject when comparing M-measures of location. What happens when comparing 20% trimmed means or when using the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test?
16. Let $D = X - Y$, let θ_D be the population median associated with D , and let θ_X and θ_Y be the population medians associated with X and Y , respectively. Verify that under general conditions, $\theta_D \neq \theta_X - \theta_Y$.
17. Using R, generate thirty observations from a standard normal distribution and store the values in `x`. Generate twenty observations from a chi-squared distribution with one degree of freedom and store them in `z`. Compute $y=4(z-1)$, so `x` and `y` contain data sampled from distributions having identical means. Apply the permutation test based on means

with the function `permg`. Repeat this 200 times and determine how often the function rejects. What do the results indicate about controlling the probability of a Type I error with the permutation test when testing the hypothesis of equal means? What does this suggest about computing a confidence interval for the difference between the means based on the permutation test?

Some Multivariate Methods

The goal in this chapter is to discuss some basic problems and issues related to multivariate data and how they might be addressed. Then some inferential methods, based on the concepts introduced in this chapter, are described. This area has grown tremendously in recent years and, as usual, no attempt is made to provide an encyclopedic coverage of all techniques. Indeed, for some problems, many strategies are now available, for some purposes there are reasons for preferring certain ones over others, but the reality is that more needs to be done in terms of understanding the relative merits of these methods, and it seems that no single technique can be expected to be satisfactory among all situations encountered in practice.

6.1 Generalized Variance

It helps to begin with a brief review of a basic concept from standard multivariate statistical methods. Consider a random sample of n observations from some p -variate distribution and let

$$s_{jk} = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (X_{ij} - \bar{X}_j)(X_{ik} - \bar{X}_k)$$

be the usual sample covariance between the j th and k th variables, where $\bar{X}_j = \sum_i X_{ij}/n$ is the sample mean of the j th variable. Letting \mathbf{S} represent the corresponding sample covariance matrix, the generalized sample variance is

$$G = |\mathbf{S}|,$$

the determinant of the covariance matrix. The property of G that will be exploited here is that it is sensitive to outliers. Said another way, to get a value for G that is relatively small requires that all points be tightly clustered together. If even a single point is moved farther away from the others, G will increase.

Although not used directly, it is noted that an R function

`gvar(m)`

has been supplied to compute the generalized variance based on the data in m , where m can be any R matrix having n rows and p columns.

6.2 Depth

A general problem that has taken on increased relevance in applied work is measuring or characterizing how deeply a point is located within a cloud of data. Many strategies exist, but the focus here is on methods that have been found to have practical value when estimating location or testing hypotheses. (For a formal description and discussion of properties measures of depth should have, see [Zuo & Serfling, 2000a](#); cf. [Zuo & Serfling, 2000b](#). For a general theoretical perspective, see [Mizera, 2002](#).) This is not to suggest that all alternative methods for measuring depth should be eliminated from consideration, but more research is needed to understand their relative merits when dealing with the problems covered in this book.

6.2.1 Mahalanobis Depth

Certainly the best-known approach to measuring depth is based on Mahalanobis distance. The squared *Mahalanobis distance* between a point \mathbf{x} (a column vector having length p) and the sample mean, $\bar{\mathbf{X}} = (\bar{X}_1, \dots, \bar{X}_p)'$, is

$$d^2 = (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{X}})' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{X}}). \quad (6.1)$$

A convention is that the deepest points in a cloud of data should have the largest numerical depth. Following [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#), *Mahalanobis depth* is taken to be

$$M_D(\mathbf{x}) = [1 + (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{X}})' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{x} - \bar{\mathbf{X}})]^{-1}. \quad (6.2)$$

So the closer a point happens to be to the mean, as measured by Mahalanobis distance, the larger is its Mahalanobis depth.

Mahalanobis distance is not robust and is known to be unsatisfactory for certain purposes to be described. Despite this, it has been found to have value for a wide range of hypothesis testing problems and it has the advantage of being fast and easy to compute with existing software.

6.2.2 Halfspace Depth

Another preliminary is the notion of halfspace depth, an idea originally developed by [Tukey \(1975\)](#); it reflects a generalization of the notion of ranks to multivariate data. In contrast to other strategies, halfspace depth does not use a covariance matrix.

The idea is, perhaps, best conveyed by first focusing on the univariate case, $p = 1$. Given some number x , consider any partitioning of all real numbers into two components: those values below x and those above. All values less than or equal to x form a *closed halfspace*, and all points strictly less than x is an open halfspace. In a similar manner, all points greater than or equal to x is a closed halfspace, and all points greater than x is an open halfspace. In statistical terms, $F(x) = P(X \leq x)$ is the probability associated with a closed halfspace formed by all points less than or equal to x . The notation

$$F(x^-) = P(X < x)$$

represents the probability associated with an open halfspace. Tukey's halfspace depth associated with the value x is intended to reflect how deeply x is nested within the distribution $F(x)$. Its formal definition is

$$T_D(x) = \min\{F(x), 1 - F(x^-)\}. \quad (6.3)$$

That is, the depth of x is the smallest probability associated with the two closed half spaces formed by x . The estimate of $T_D(x)$ is obtained simply by replacing F with its usual estimate, $\hat{F}(x)$, the proportion of X_i values less than or equal to x , in which case $1 - \hat{F}(x^-)$ is the proportion of X_i values greater than or equal to x . So for $p = 1$, Tukey's halfspace depth is estimated to be the smaller of two proportions: the proportion of observed values less than or equal to x , and the proportion greater than or equal to x . When F is a continuous distribution, the maximum possible depth associated with any point is 0.5 and corresponds to the population median. However, the maximum possible depth in a sample of observations can exceed 0.5.

■ Example

Consider the values 2, 5, 9, 14, 19, 21, 33. The proportion of values less than or equal to 2 is 1/7, the proportion greater than or equal to 2 is 7/7, so the halfspace depth of 2 is 1/7. The halfspace depth of 14 is 4/7. Note that 14 is the usual sample median, which can be viewed as the average of the points having the largest halfspace depth.

■ Example

For the values 2, 5, 9, 14, 19, and 21, both the values 9 and 14 have the highest half-space depth among the six observations, which is 0.5, and the average of these two

points is the usual sample median. The value 1, relative to the sample 2, 5, 9, 14, 19, 21, has a halfspace depth of zero.

Now we generalize to the bivariate case, $p = 2$. For any line, the points on or above this line form a closed halfspace, as do the points on or below the line. Note that for any bivariate distribution, there is a probability associated with the two closed halfspaces formed by any line. For $p = 3$, any plane forms two closed halfspaces: those points on or above the plane, as well as the points on or below the plane, and the notion of a halfspace generalizes in an obvious way for any p .

For the general p -variate case, consider any point \mathbf{x} , where again \mathbf{x} is a column vector having length p , let \mathcal{H} be any closed halfspace containing the point \mathbf{x} , and let $P(\mathcal{H})$ be the probability associated with \mathcal{H} . That is, $P(\mathcal{H})$ is the probability that an observation occurs in the halfspace \mathcal{H} . Then roughly, the halfspace depth of the point \mathbf{x} is the smallest value of $P(\mathcal{H})$ among all halfspaces \mathcal{H} containing \mathbf{x} . More formally, Tukey's halfspace depth is

$$T_D = \inf_{\mathcal{H}} \{P(\mathcal{H}) : \mathcal{H} \text{ is a closed halfspace containing } \mathbf{x}\}. \quad (6.4)$$

For $p > 1$, halfspace depth can be defined instead as the least depth of any one-dimensional projection of the data (Donoho & Gasko, 1992). To elaborate, consider any point \mathbf{x} and any p -dimensional (column) vector \mathbf{u} having unit norm. That is, the *Euclidean norm* of \mathbf{u} is

$\|\mathbf{u}\| = \sqrt{u_1^2 + \cdots + u_p^2} = 1$. Then a one-dimensional projection of \mathbf{x} is $\mathbf{u}'\mathbf{x}$ (where \mathbf{u}' is the transpose of \mathbf{u}). For any projection, meaning any choice for \mathbf{u} , depth is defined by Eq. (6.3). In the p -variate case, the depth of a point is defined to be its minimum depth among all possible projections, $\mathbf{u}'\mathbf{X}$. Obviously, from a practical point of view, this does not immediately yield a viable algorithm for computing halfspace depth based on a sample of n observations, but it suggests an approximation that has been found to be relatively effective.

A data set is said to be in *general position* if there are no ties, no more than two points are on any line, no more than three points are in any plane, and so forth. It should be noted that the maximum halfspace depth varies from one situation to the next and in general does not equal 0.5. If the data are in general position, the maximum depth lies roughly between $1/(p + 1)$ and 0.5 (Donoho & Gasko, 1992).

Halfspace depth is metric free in the following sense. Let \mathbf{A} be any nonsingular $p \times p$ matrix and let \mathbf{X} be any $n \times p$ matrix of n points. Then the halfspace depths of these n points are unaltered under the transformation \mathbf{XA} . More formally, halfspace depth is *affine invariant*.

6.2.3 Computing Halfspace Depth

For $p = 2$ and 3 , halfspace depth, relative to $\mathbf{X}_1, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n$, can be computed exactly (Rousseeuw & Ruts, 1996; Rousseeuw & Struyf, 1998). For $p > 3$, a general framework for computing the exact halfspace depth of a point was developed by Dyckerhoff and Mozharovskyi (2016). This framework provides a class of algorithms that might be used. (Various strategies for approximating halfspace depth are reviewed in their paper. Also see Struyf & Rousseeuw, 2000.) Here, three methods are described for approximating the halfspace depth of a point. When testing hypotheses, the first approximation has been found to have practical value in a variety of situations. The practical benefits of using some alternative method for computing halfspace depth, when testing hypotheses, has not been determined. (For more details about the first two approximations, see Wilcox, 2003a.)

Approximation A1. The first approximation is based on the one dimensional projection definition of depth. First, an informal description is given after which the computational details are provided. The method begins by computing some multivariate measure of location, say $\hat{\theta}$. There are many reasonable choices, and for present purposes it seems desirable that it be robust. A simple choice is to use the marginal medians, but a possible objection is that they do not satisfy a criterion discussed in Section 6.3. (The marginal medians are not affine equivariant.) To satisfy this criterion, the MCD estimator in Section 6.3.2 is used with the understanding that the practical advantages of using some other estimator has received virtually no attention. Given an estimate of the center of the data, consider the line formed by the i th observation, \mathbf{X}_i , and the center. For convenience, call this line \mathcal{L} . Now, (orthogonally) project all points onto the line \mathcal{L} . That is, for every point \mathbf{X}_j , $j = 1, \dots, n$, draw a line through it that is perpendicular to the line \mathcal{L} . Where this line intersects \mathcal{L} is the projection of the point. Figure 6.1 illustrates the process where the point marked by a circle indicates the center of the data, the line going through the center is line \mathcal{L} , and the arrow indicates the projection of the point. That is, the arrow points to the point on the line \mathcal{L} that corresponds to the projection. Next, repeat this process for each i , $i = 1, \dots, n$. So for each projected point \mathbf{X}_j , we have a depth based on the i th line formed by \mathbf{X}_i and $\hat{\theta}$. Call this depth d_{ij} . For fixed j , the halfspace depth of \mathbf{X}_j is approximated by the minimum value among d_{1j}, \dots, d_{nj} .

Now a more precise description of the calculations is given. For any i , $i = 1, \dots, n$, let

$$\begin{aligned}\mathbf{U}_i &= \mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\theta}, \\ B_i &= \mathbf{U}_i \mathbf{U}'_i \\ &= \sum_{k=1}^p U_{ik}^2\end{aligned}$$

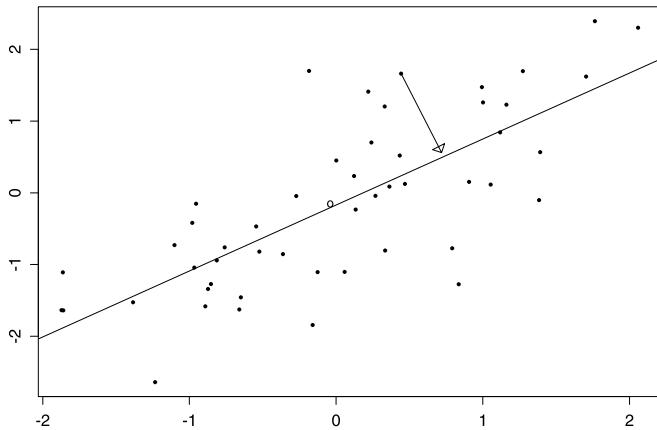


Figure 6.1: An illustration of projecting a point onto a line.

and for any j ($j = 1, \dots, n$) let

$$W_{ij} = \sum_{k=1}^p U_{ik} U_{jk},$$

and

$$T_{ij} = \frac{W_{ij}}{B_i} (U_{i1}, \dots, U_{ip}). \quad (6.5)$$

The distance between $\hat{\theta}$ and the projection of \mathbf{X}_j (when projecting onto the line connecting \mathbf{X}_i and $\hat{\theta}$) is

$$D_{ij} = \text{sign}(W_{ij}) \|T_{ij}\|,$$

where $\|T_{ij}\|$ is the Euclidean norm associated with the vector T_{ij} . Let d_{ij} be the depth of \mathbf{X}_j when projecting points onto the line connecting \mathbf{X}_i and $\hat{\theta}$. That is, for fixed i and j , the depth of the projected value of \mathbf{X}_j is

$$d_{ij} = \min(\#\{D_{ij} \leq D_{ik}\}, \#\{D_{ij} \geq D_{ik}\}),$$

where $\#\{D_{ij} \leq D_{ik}\}$ indicates how many D_{ik} ($k = 1, \dots, n$) values satisfy $D_{ij} \leq D_{ik}$. Then the depth of \mathbf{X}_j is taken to be

$$L_j = \min d_{ij},$$

the minimum being taken over all $i = 1, \dots, n$.

Approximation A2. The second approximation of halfspace depth does not use a measure of location, rather, it uses all projections between any two points. That is, method A1 forms n lines, namely the lines passing through the center of the scatterplot and each of the n points. Method A2 uses $(n^2 - n)/2$ lines, namely all lines formed by any two (distinct) points. An ad-

vantage of method A2 is that, in situations where the exact depth can be determined, it has been found to be more accurate on average than method A1 or the method recommended by Rousseeuw and Struyf (1998); see Wilcox (2003a). Another disadvantage of method A1 is that in some situations to be described, the MCD estimate of location that it uses cannot be computed because the covariance matrix of the data is singular. (Switching to the MVE estimator described in Section 6.3.1 does not correct this problem.) A possible appeal of method A2 is that depth can still be computed in these situations. A negative feature of A2 is that with n large, execution time can be relatively high.

Although A2 is a more accurate approximation of halfspace depth than A1, perhaps in applied work this is not a concern. That is, we can think of A1 as a method of defining the depth of a point in a scatterplot, and for practical purposes, maybe any discrepancies between the exact halfspace depth and the depth of a point based on A1 have no negative consequences. This issue has received virtually no attention.

Approximation A3. A third approximation was derived by Rousseeuw and Struyf (1998), but no attempt is made to describe the involved details. A positive feature is that it has low execution time even for fairly large data sets, but it currently seems to be less accurate than the two previous approximations covered in this section. The practical consequences of using method A3 over A2 and A1, when dealing with inferential methods, have not been studied.

6.2.4 R Functions *depth2*, *depth*, *fdepth*, *fdepthv2*, *unidepth*

The R function

```
unidepth(x,pts=NA)
```

is designed for univariate data only and computes the depth of the values in pts relative to the data stored in x. If the argument pts is not specified, the function computes the depth of each value in x relative to all the values.

The function

```
depth(U, V, m)
```

handles bivariate data only and computes the exact halfspace depth of the point (U,V) within the data contained in the matrix m. For example, $\text{depth}(0,0,m)$ returns the halfspace depth of (0, 0). The function

```
depth2(m,pts=NA)
```

also handles bivariate data only, but unlike depth, it computes the depth of all the points stored in the matrix pts. If pts is not specified, the exact depths of all the points stored in m are determined. (The function depth is supplied mainly for convenience when computing the halfspace depth of a single point.)

For p -variate data, $p \geq 1$, the function

```
fdepth(m,pts=NA,plotit = T,cop = 2)
```

computes the approximate halfspace depth of all the points in pts relative to the data in m using method A1. (For $p = 1$, the exact halfspace depth is computed by calling the function unidepth.) If pts is not specified, the function returns the halfspace depth of all points in m. The argument cop indicates the location estimator, $\hat{\theta}$, that will be used by method A1. By default, the MCD estimate is used. Setting cop=3 results in using the marginal medians, cop=4 uses the MVE estimator (discussed in Section 6.3.1). If simultaneously pts is not specified, m contains two columns of data (so bivariate data are being analyzed), and plotit=T, a scatterplot of the data is created that marks the center of the data corresponding to the location estimator specified by the argument cop, and it creates what [Liu, Parelis, and Singh \(1999, p. 789\)](#) call the 0.5 depth contour. It is a polygon (a convex hull) containing the central half of the data as measured by the depth of the points. The function

```
fdepthv2(m,pts=NA,plotit = T)
```

uses method A2 to approximate halfspace depth.

6.2.5 Projection Depth

The approximation of halfspace depth, represented by method A1 in Section 6.2.3, suggests another measure of depth that has been found to have practical value when testing hypotheses. Roughly, for each of the n projections used in method A1, compute the distance between the estimated center ($\hat{\theta}$) and the i th point. The *projection distance* associated with the j th point, \mathbf{X}_j , is taken to be the largest distance among all n projections after the distances are standardized by dividing by some measure of scale. This can be converted to a measure of projection depth using the same strategy applied to the Mahalanobis distance.

More precisely, compute T_{ij} as given by Eq. (6.5) and let

$$D_{ij} = \|T_{ij}\|.$$

So for the projection of the data onto the line connecting \mathbf{X}_i and $\hat{\theta}$, D_{ij} is the distance between \mathbf{X}_j and $\hat{\theta}$. Now let

$$d_{ij} = \frac{D_{ij}}{q_2 - q_1}, \quad (6.6)$$

where for fixed i , q_2 and q_1 are the ideal fourths based on the values D_{i1}, \dots, D_{in} . The *projection distance* associated with \mathbf{X}_j , say $p_d(\mathbf{X}_j)$, is the maximum value of d_{ij} , the maximum being taken over $i = 1, \dots, n$. To convert to a measure of depth, simply use

$$P_D(\mathbf{X}_j) = \frac{1}{1 + p_d(\mathbf{X}_j)}. \quad (6.7)$$

A variation of the notion of projected distance is discussed by [Donoho and Gasko \(1992\)](#). The main difference is that they use MAD as a measure of scale for the D values in Eq. (6.6) rather than the interquartile range, $q_2 - q_1$. Here we take this to mean that Eq. (6.6) becomes

$$d_{ij} = \frac{0.6745 D_{ij}}{\text{MAD}}, \quad (6.8)$$

where for fixed i , MAD is based on the values D_{i1}, \dots, D_{in} . An obvious advantage of MAD over the interquartile range is that MAD has a higher breakdown point. However, based on other criteria (to be described), the use of the interquartile range has been found to have practical value.

6.2.6 R Functions *pdis*, *pdisMC*, and *pdepth*

The R function

```
pdis(m,MM=F,cop=3,dop=1,center=NA)
```

computes projection distances, p_d , for the data stored in the matrix m . If $MM=F$ is used, distances are scaled using the interquartile range, and $MM=T$ uses MAD. The argument cop indicates which measure of location will be used. The choices, some of which are described in Section 6.3, are:

- $cop=1$, Donoho–Gasko median
- $cop=2$, MCD estimate of location
- $cop=3$, marginal medians
- $cop=4$, MVE estimate of location
- $cop=5$, OP (skipped) estimator

If a value is supplied for the argument center (a vector having length p), this value is used as a measure of location and the argument cop is ignored. (The argument dop is relevant when using the Donoho–Gasko analog of the trimmed mean. See Section 6.3.5.) If a multicore processor is available, execution time can be reduced by using the R function

```
pdisMC(m,MM=F,cop=3,dop=1,center=NA)
```

instead of the function pdis.

For convenience, the R function

```
pdepth(m,MM=F,cop=3,dop=1,center=NA,MC=FALSE)
```

computes the projection measure of depth based on p_d .

6.2.7 Other Measures of Depth

For completeness, some additional measures of depth are mentioned. Two that are similar in spirit to halfspace depth are simplicial depth (Liu, 1990; cf. Serfling & Wang, 2016) and majority depth proposed by K. Singh. (See Liu & Singh, 1997, p. 268.) Both methods are geometric in nature and do not rely on some measure of multivariate scatter. (For some possible concerns about simplicial depth, see Zuo & Serfling, 2000a; cf. Zuo & Serfling, 2000b.) Both are nontrivial to compute and any practical advantages they might enjoy over halfspace depth have not been discovered as yet, so further details are omitted. Another approach is to use Mahalanobis distance but with the mean and usual covariance matrix replaced by robust estimators. Some possibilities are mentioned later in this chapter.

Zuo (2003) studied a notion of projected-based depth that is a broader generalization of other projection-based approaches. Again let \mathbf{u} be any p -dimensional (column) vector having unit norm and let

$$O(\mathbf{x}; F) = \sup \frac{|\mathbf{u}'\mathbf{x} - \theta(F_u)|}{\sigma(F_u)}$$

be some measure of outlyingness of the point \mathbf{x} , with respect to the distribution F , where F_u is the distribution of $\mathbf{u}'\mathbf{x}$, $\theta(F_u)$ is some (univariate) measure of location and $\sigma(F_u)$ is some measure of scale associated with F_u , and the supremum is taken over all possible choices for \mathbf{u} such that $\|\mathbf{u}\| = 1$. Then the projection depth of the point \mathbf{x} is taken to be

$$P_D(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{1 + O(\mathbf{x})}.$$

For results on the exact computation of this notion of depth, in the bivariate case, see [Zuo and Lai \(2011\)](#). A projection median is the point that maximizes $P_D(\mathbf{x})$, which can be computed with the R function `dmedian` in Section 6.3.14. For results on the uniqueness of this median, see [Zuo \(2013\)](#). Inferential methods based on this notion of depth have not been studied.

6.2.8 R Functions `zdist`, `zoudepth` and `prodepth`

The R function

```
zdist(m,pts=m,zloc=median,zscale=mad)
```

computes Zuo's notion of projection distance, $O(\mathbf{x}; F)$, for each point stored in the matrix `pts`, relative to the data stored in the matrix `m`. The arguments `zloc` and `zscale` correspond to $\theta(F_u)$ and $\sigma(F_u)$, respectively. For convenience, the R function

```
zoudepth(m,pts=m,zloc=median,zscale=mad)
```

computes the projection depth, P_D .

The R function

```
prodepth(x,pts=x,ndir=1000)
```

computes a projection-type measure of depth for the points in `pts`, relative to `x`, via the R package `DepthProc`. It uses random projections where the number of projections is determined by the argument `ndir`. An advantage of the function `prodepth`, compared to `zoudepth`, is that execution time can be substantially lower.

6.3 Some Affine Equivariant Estimators

One of the most difficult problems in robust statistics has been the estimation of multivariate shape and location. Many such estimators have been proposed (e.g., [Davies, 1987](#); [Donoho, 1982](#); [Kent & Tyler, 1996](#); [Lopuhaä, 1991](#); [Maronna & Zamar, 2002](#); [Rousseeuw, 1984](#); [Stahel, 1981](#); [Tamura & Boos, 1986](#); [Tyler, 1994](#); [Wang & Raftery, 2002](#); [Woodruff & Rocke, 1994](#); [Zhang, Olive, & Ye, 2012](#); cf. [Croux & Dehon, 2010](#)). A concern about early attempts, such as multivariate M-estimators as described in [Huber \(1981\)](#), is that when working with p -variate data, typically they have a breakdown point of at most $1/(p + 1)$. So in high dimensions, a very small fraction of outliers can result in very bad estimates. Several estimators

have been proposed that enjoy a high breakdown point. But simultaneously achieving relatively high accuracy, versus the vector of means when sampling from a multivariate normal distribution, has proven to be a very difficult problem.

In Section 2.1, a basic requirement for θ to qualify as a measure location was that it be both scale and location equivariant. Moreover, a location estimator should satisfy this property as well. That is, if $T(X_1, \dots, X_n)$ is to qualify as a location estimator, it should be the case that for constants a and b ,

$$T(aX_1 + b, \dots, aX_n + b) = aT(X_1, \dots, X_n) + b.$$

So, for example, when transforming from feet to centimeters, the typical value in feet is transformed to the appropriate value in centimeters. In the multivariate case, a generalization of this requirement, called *affine equivariance*, is that for a p -by- p nonsingular matrix \mathbf{A} and vector \mathbf{b} having length p ,

$$T(\mathbf{X}_1\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{b}, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{b}) = T(\mathbf{X}_1, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n)\mathbf{A} + \mathbf{b}, \quad (6.9)$$

where now $\mathbf{X}_1, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n$ is a sample from a p -variate distribution and each \mathbf{X}_i is a (row) vector having length p . So in particular, the estimate is transformed properly under rotations of the data as well as changes in location and scale. The sample means of the marginal distributions are affine equivariant, but typically, when applying any of the univariate estimators in Chapter 3 to the marginal distributions, an affine equivariant estimator is not obtained.

A measure of scatter, say $\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{X})$, is said to be *affine equivariant* if

$$\mathbf{V}(\mathbf{AX} + \mathbf{b}) = \mathbf{AV}(\mathbf{X})\mathbf{A}' \quad (6.10)$$

The usual sample covariance matrix is affine equivariant but not robust.

From [Donoho and Gasko \(1992, p. 1811\)](#), no affine equivariant estimator can have a breakdown point greater than

$$\frac{n - p + 1}{2n - p + 1}. \quad (6.11)$$

(Also see [Lopuhaä & Rousseeuw, 1991](#).)

The rest of this section describes some of the estimators that have been proposed, and a particular variation of one of these methods is described in Section 6.5.

6.3.1 Minimum Volume Ellipsoid Estimator

One of the earliest affine equivariant estimators to achieve a breakdown point of approximately 0.5 is the so-called minimum volume ellipsoid (MVE) estimator, a detailed discussion of which can be found in [Rousseeuw and Leroy \(1987\)](#). Consider any ellipsoid containing half of the data. (An example in the bivariate case is shown in [Figure 6.2](#).) The basic idea is to search among all such ellipsoids for the one having the smallest volume. Once this subset is found, the mean and covariance matrix of the corresponding points are taken as the estimated measure of location and scatter, respectively. Typically the covariance matrix is rescaled to obtain consistency at the multivariate normal model (e.g., [Marazzi, 1993](#), p. 254). A practical problem is that it is generally difficult to find the smallest ellipse containing half of the data. That is, in general, the collection of all subsets containing half of the data is so large, determining the subset that has the minimum volume is impractical, so an approximation must be used. Let h be equal to $n/2 + 1$, rounded down to the nearest integer. An approach to computing the MVE estimator is to randomly select h points, without replacement, from the n points available, compute the volume of the ellipse containing these points, and then repeat this process many times. The set of points yielding the smallest volume is taken to be the minimum volume ellipsoid. (For relevant software, see Section [6.4.5](#).)

6.3.2 The Minimum Covariance Determinant Estimator

An alternative to the MVE estimator, which also has a breakdown point of approximately 0.5, is the so-called minimum covariance determinant (MCD) estimator. Rather than search for the subset of half the data that has the smallest volume, search for the half that has the smallest generalized variance. (For results on computing the MCD estimator, see [Schnys, Haesbroeck, & Critchley, 2010](#).) Recall from Section [6.1](#) that for the determinant of the covariance matrix (the generalized variance) to be relatively small, it must be the case that there are no outliers. That is, the data must be tightly clustered together. The MCD estimator searches for the half of the data that is most tightly clustered together among all subsets containing half of the data, as measured by the generalized variance. Like the MVE estimator, typically it is impractical considering all subsets of half the data, so an approximate method must be used. An algorithm for accomplishing this goal is described in [Rousseeuw and van Driessen \(1999\)](#); also see [Atkinson \(1994\)](#) as well as [Hubert, Rousseeuw, and Verdonck \(2012\)](#). For asymptotic results, see [Butler, Davies, and Jhun \(1993\)](#). Once an approximation of the subset of half of the data has been determined that minimizes the generalized variance, compute the usual mean and covariance matrix based on this subset. This yields the MCD estimate of location and scatter. [Bernholt and Fischer \(2004\)](#) indicate that this algorithm can provide a poor approximation of the MCD estimator. Results reported by [Hawkins and Olive \(2002\)](#) also raise concerns about

this estimator. But as a diagnostic tool, MCD seems to have practical value when used in conjunction with other methods covered in this chapter. (For relevant software, see Section 6.4.5.)

Herwindiati, Djauhari, and Mashuri (2007) suggest a variation of the MCD estimator that searches for the subset of the data that minimizes the trace of the corresponding covariance matrix rather than the determinant, what they call the *minimum variance vector* (MVV) method. It has the same breakdown point as the MCD method and is simpler to compute. Herwindiati et al. suggest that the method is applicable when dealing with large, high-dimensional data sets. In terms of identifying outliers, limited results suggest that it performs as well as the MCD estimator, but further study is needed. Also see [Zhang et al. \(2012\)](#).

A generalization of the MCD estimator, aimed at dealing with missing values, can be applied via the R function CovNAMcd, which is included in the R package rrcovNA. For details regarding the algorithm that is used, see [Todorov, Templ, and Filzmoser \(2011\)](#). It seems that this method for handling missing values has practical value when the goal is to detect outliers. When testing hypotheses, some other approach appears to be preferable, at least at the moment. (See Section 8.2 for more comments about this issue.)

6.3.3 S-Estimators and Constrained M-Estimators

One of the earliest treatments of S-estimators can be found in [Rousseeuw and Leroy \(1987, p. 263\)](#). A particular variation of this method that appears to be especially interesting is the translated-biweight S-estimator (TBS) proposed by [Rocke \(1996\)](#). Generally, S-estimators of multivariate location and scatter are values for $\hat{\theta}$ and \mathbf{S} that minimize $|\mathbf{S}|$, the determinant of \mathbf{S} , subject to

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \xi(((\mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\theta})' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\theta}))^{1/2}) = b_0, \quad (6.12)$$

where b_0 is some constant, and (as in Chapter 2) ξ is a non-decreasing function. [Lopuhää \(1989\)](#) showed that S-estimators are in the class of M-estimators with standardizing constraints. [Rocke \(1996\)](#) showed that S-estimators can be sensitive to outliers even if the breakdown point is close to 0.5.

[Rocke \(1996\)](#) proposed a modified biweight estimator, which is essentially a constrained M-estimator, where for values of m and c to be determined, the function $\xi(d)$, when $m \leq d \leq m + c$, is

$$\begin{aligned} \xi(d) = & \frac{m^2}{2} - \frac{m^2(m^4 - 5m^2c^2 + 15c^4)}{30c^4} + d^2 \left(0.5 + \frac{m^4}{2c^4} - \frac{m^2}{c^2} \right) \\ & + d^3 \left(\frac{4m}{3c^2} - \frac{4m^3}{3c^4} \right) + d^4 \left(\frac{3m^2}{2c^4} - \frac{1}{2c^2} \right) - \frac{4md^5}{5c^4} + \frac{d^6}{6c^4}, \end{aligned}$$

for $0 \leq d < m$,

$$\xi(d) = \frac{d^2}{2},$$

and for $d > m + c$,

$$\xi(d) = \frac{m^2}{2} + \frac{c(5c + 16m)}{30}.$$

The values for m and c can be chosen to achieve the desired breakdown point and the *asymptotic rejection probability*, roughly referring to the probability that a point will get zero weight when the sample size is large. If the asymptotic rejection probability is to be γ say, then m and c are determined by

$$E_{\chi_p^2}(\xi(d)) = b_0,$$

and

$$m + c = \sqrt{\chi_{p,1-\gamma}^2},$$

where $\chi_{p,1-\gamma}^2$ is the $1 - \gamma$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom. (For a generalized S-estimator, designed to handle missing values, assuming that sampling is from an elliptical distribution, see [Danilov, Yohai, & Zamar, 2012](#).) For some computational concerns regarding S-estimators, see [He and Wang \(1997, p. 258\)](#) as well as [Huber and Ronchetti \(2009, p. 197\)](#).

6.3.4 R Function *tbs*

The R function

`tbs(m)`

computes the TBS measure of location and scatter just outlined using code supplied by David Rocke.

6.3.5 Donoho–Gasko Generalization of a Trimmed Mean

Another approach to computing an affine equivariant measure of location was suggested and studied by [Donoho and Gasko \(1992\)](#). The basic strategy is to compute the halfspace depth for each of the n points, remove those that are not deeply nested within the cloud of data, and then average those points that remain. The *Donoho–Gasko γ trimmed mean* is the average of all points that are at least γ deep in the sample. That is, points having depth less

than γ are trimmed and the mean of the remaining points is computed. An analog of the median, which has been called *Tukey's median*, is the average of all points having the largest depth (cf. Adrover & Yohai, 2002; Bai & He, 1999; Tyler, 1994). If the maximum depth of \mathbf{X}_i , $i = 1, \dots, n$ is greater than or equal to γ , then the breakdown point of the Donoho–Gasko γ trimmed mean is $\gamma/(1 + \gamma)$. For symmetric distributions the breakdown point is approximately 0.5, but because the maximum depth among a sample of n points can be approximately $1/(1 + p)$, the breakdown point could be as low as $1/(p + 2)$. If the data are in general position, the breakdown point of Tukey's median is greater than or equal to $1/(p + 1)$. (The influence function, assuming a type of symmetry for the distribution, was derived by Chen & Tyler, 2002.)

■ Example

Table 6.1 shows results from Raine, Buchsbaum, and LaCasse (1997) who were interested in comparing EEG measures for murderers versus a control group. For the moment, consider the first two columns of data only. The exact halfspace depths, determined by the function `depth2`, are:

```
0.1428570 0.1428570 0.3571430 0.2142860 0.2142860 0.2142860 0.0714286
0.2142860 0.1428570 0.2142860 0.0714286 0.0714286 0.0714286 0.0714286
```

There are five points with depth less than 0.1. Eliminating these points and averaging the values that remain yields the Donoho–Gasko 0.1 trimmed mean, $(-0.042, -0.783)$. The halfspace median corresponds to the deepest point, which is $(0.07, -0.44)$.

Another multivariate generalization of a trimmed mean was studied by Liu et al. (1999). Any practical advantages it might have over the Donoho–Gasko γ trimmed mean have not been discovered as yet, so for brevity, no details are given here.

6.3.6 R Functions `dmean` and `dcov`

The R function

```
dmean(x,tr=0.2,dop=1,cop=2)
```

computes the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean. When the argument `tr` is set equal to 0.5, it computes Tukey's median, namely, the average of the points having the largest halfspace

Table 6.1: EEG Measures for Murderers and a Control Group.

Control				Murderers			
Site 1	Site 2	Site 3	Site 4	Site 1	Site 2	Site 3	Site 4
-0.15	-0.05	-0.33	-1.08	-0.26	-2.10	1.01	-0.49
-0.22	-1.68	0.20	-1.19	0.25	-0.47	0.77	-0.27
0.07	-0.44	0.58	-1.97	0.61	-0.91	-0.68	-1.00
-0.07	-1.15	1.08	1.01	0.38	-0.15	-0.20	-1.09
0.02	-0.16	0.64	0.02	0.87	0.23	-0.37	-0.83
0.24	-1.29	1.22	-1.01	-0.12	-0.51	0.27	-1.03
-0.60	-2.49	0.39	-0.69	0.15	-1.34	1.44	0.65
-0.17	-1.07	0.48	-0.56	0.93	-0.87	1.53	-0.10
-0.33	-0.84	-0.33	-1.86	0.26	-0.41	0.78	0.92
0.23	-0.37	0.50	-0.23	0.83	-0.02	-0.41	-1.01
-0.69	0.01	0.19	-0.22	0.35	-1.12	0.26	-1.81
0.70	-1.24	1.59	-0.68	1.33	-0.57	0.04	-1.12
1.13	-0.33	-0.28	-0.93	0.89	-0.78	-0.27	-0.32
0.38	0.78	-0.12	-0.61	0.58	-0.65	-0.60	-0.94

depth. The argument `dop` controls how the halfspace depth is approximated. With `dop=1`, method A1 in Section 6.2.3 is used to approximate halfspace depth when $p > 2$, while `dop=2` uses method A2. If $p = 2$, halfspace depth is computed exactly. When using method A1, the center of the scatterplot is determined using the estimator indicated by the argument `cop`. The choices are:

- `cop=2`, MCD estimator
- `cop=3`, marginal medians
- `cop=4`, MVE estimator

When n is small relative to p , the MCD and MVE estimators cannot be computed, so in these cases, use `dop=2`. For small sample sizes, execution time is low.

Consider again Zuo's notion of projection depth described in Section 6.2.7. When $\theta(F_u)$ is taken to be the median and $\sigma(F_u)$ is MAD, and if the average of the deepest points are used as a measure of location, we get another affine equivariant generalization of the median. Comparisons with other affine equivariant median estimators are reported by [Hwang, Jorn, and Kim \(2004\)](#) for the bivariate case. They conclude that this estimator and Tukey's median compare well to other estimators they considered.

The R function

```
dcov(x,tr=0.2,dop=1,cop=2)
```

computes the covariance matrix after the data are trimmed as done by the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean.

6.3.7 The Stahel–Donoho W-Estimator

[Stahel \(1981\)](#) and [Donoho \(1982\)](#) proposed the first multivariate, equivariant estimator of location and scatter that has a high breakdown point. It is a weighted mean and covariance matrix where the weights are a function of how “outlying” a point happens to be. The more outlying a point, the less weight it is given. The notions of Mahalanobis depth, robust analogs of Mahalanobis depth based perhaps on the MVE or MCD estimators, and halfspace depth are examples of how to measure the outlyingness of a point. Attaching some weight w_i to \mathbf{X}_i , that is a function of how outlying the point \mathbf{X}_i happens to be, yields a generalization of W-estimators mentioned in Section 3.8 (cf. [Hall & Presnell, 1999](#)). Here, the estimate of location is

$$\hat{\theta} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n w_i \mathbf{X}_i}{\sum_{i=1}^n w_i} \quad (6.13)$$

and the measure of scatter is

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{\sum_{i=1}^n w_i (\mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\theta})(\mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\theta})'}{\sum_{i=1}^n w_i}. \quad (6.14)$$

The Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean in Section 6.3.4 is a special case where the least deep points get a weight of zero; otherwise points get a weight of one. Other variations of this approach are based on the multivariate outlier detection methods covered in Section 6.4. For general theoretical results on this approach to estimation, see [Tyler \(1994\)](#). Properties of certain variations were reported by [Maronna and Yohai \(1995\)](#). Also see [Arcones, Chen, and Gine \(1994\)](#), [Bai and He \(1999\)](#), [He and Wang \(1997\)](#), [Donoho and Gasko \(1992\)](#), [Gather and Hilker \(1997\)](#), [Zuo \(2003\)](#), [Zuo, Cui, and He \(2004\)](#) and [Zuo, Cui, and Young \(2004\)](#). [Gervini \(2002\)](#) derived the influence function assuming that sampling is from an elliptical distribution. (For an extension of M-estimators to the multivariate case that has a high breakdown point and deals with missing values, see [Chen & Victoria-Feser, 2002](#), as well as [Frahm & Jaekel, 2010](#)).

[Zuo, Cui, and He \(2004\)](#) and [Zuo, Cui, and Young \(2004\)](#) suggest a particular variation of the Donoho–Gasko W-estimator for general use. (Yet another variation was suggested by [Van Aelst, Vandervieren, & Willems, 2012](#).) Let P_i be the projection depth of \mathbf{x}_i described at the end of Section 6.2.7. Let C be the median of the P_i values. If $P_i < C$, set

$$w_i = \frac{\exp(-K(1 - P_i/C)^2) - \exp(-K)}{1 - \exp(-K)},$$

otherwise $w_i = 1$, and the measures of location and scatter are given by Eqs. (6.13) and (6.14), respectively. From Zuo et al., setting the constant $K = 3$ results in good asymptotic efficiency, relative to the sample mean, under normality.

6.3.8 R Function *sdwe*

The R function

`sdwe(x,K=3)`

computes the Stahel–Donoho W-estimator as suggested by [Zuo, Cui, and He \(2004\)](#) and [Zuo, Cui, and Young \(2004\)](#).

6.3.9 Median Ball Algorithm

This section describes a multivariate measure of location and scatter, introduced by [Olive \(2004\)](#), which is based on what he calls the reweighted median ball algorithm (RMBA). It is an iterative algorithm that begins with two initial estimates of location and scatter. The first, labeled $(T_{0,1}, \mathbf{C}_{0,1})$, is taken to be the usual mean and covariance matrix. The other starting value, $(T_{0,2}, \mathbf{C}_{0,2})$, is the usual mean and covariance based on the $c_n \approx n/2$ cases that are closest to the coordinate wise median in Euclidean distance. Compute all n Mahalanobis distances $D_i(T_{0,j}, \mathbf{C}_{0,j})$ based on the j th starting value. The next iteration consists of estimating the usual mean and covariance matrix based on the c_n cases corresponding to the smallest distances, yielding $(T_{1,j}, \mathbf{C}_{1,j})$. Repeating this process, based on $D_i(T_{1,j}, \mathbf{C}_{1,j})$, yields an updated measure of location and scatter, $(T_{2,j}, \mathbf{C}_{2,j})$. As done by Olive, unless stated otherwise, it is assumed five iterations are used yielding $(T_{5,j}, \mathbf{C}_{5,j})$. The RMBA estimator of location, labeled T_A , is taken to be $T_{5,i}$, where $i = 1$ if the determinant $|\mathbf{C}_{5,1}| \leq |\mathbf{C}_{5,2}|$, otherwise $i = 2$. And the measure of scatter is

$$\mathbf{C}_{\text{RMBA}} = \frac{\text{MED}(D_i^2(T_A, \mathbf{C}_A))}{\chi_{p,0.5}^2} \mathbf{C}_A.$$

(Also see [Olive & Hawkins, 2010](#).)

6.3.10 R Function *rmba*

The R function

`rmba(m,csteps=5)`

computes the RMBA measure of location and scatter, where the argument `csteps` controls the number of iterations. (The R code was graciously supplied by David Olive.)

6.3.11 OGK Estimator

Yet another estimator that is sometimes recommended is the orthogonal Gnanadesikan–Kettenring (OGK) estimator, derived by [Maronna and Zamar \(2002\)](#). In its general form, it is applied as follows. Let $\sigma(X)$ and $\mu(X)$ be any measure of dispersion and location, respectively. The method begins with the robust covariance between any two variables, say X and Y , which was proposed by [Gnanadesikan and Kettenring \(1972\)](#):

$$\text{cov}(X, Y) = \frac{1}{4}(\sigma(X + Y)^2 - \sigma(X - Y)^2). \quad (6.15)$$

When $\sigma(X)$ and $\mu(X)$ are the usual standard deviation and mean, respectively, the usual covariance between X and Y results. Here, following Maronna and Zamar, $\sigma(X)$ is taken to be the tau scale of [Yohai and Zamar \(1988\)](#), which was introduced in Section 3.12.3. Using this measure of scale in Eq. (6.15), the resulting measure of covariance will be denoted by $v(X, Y)$.

Following the notation in [Maronna and Zamar \(2002\)](#), let \mathbf{x}_i be the i th row of the $n \times p$ matrix \mathbf{X} . Then Maronna and Zamar define a scatter matrix $\mathbf{V}(X)$ and a location vector $\mathbf{t}(X)$ as follows:

1. Let $\mathbf{D} = \text{diag}(\sigma(X_1), \dots, \sigma(X_p))$ and $\mathbf{y}_i = \mathbf{D}^{-1}\mathbf{x}_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$.
2. Compute $\mathbf{U} = (U_{jk})$ by applying v to the columns of \mathbf{Y} . So $U_{jj} = 1$ and for $j \neq k$, $U_{jk} = v(Y_j, Y_k)$.
3. Compute the eigenvalues λ_j and eigenvectors \mathbf{e}_j of \mathbf{U} and let \mathbf{E} be the matrix whose columns are the \mathbf{e}_j 's. (So $\mathbf{U} = \mathbf{E}\Lambda\mathbf{E}'$.)
4. Let $\mathbf{A} = \mathbf{DE}$, $\mathbf{z}_i = \mathbf{A}^{-1}\mathbf{x}_i$, in which case

$$\mathbf{V}(X) = \mathbf{A}\Gamma\mathbf{A}'$$

and

$$\mathbf{t}(X) = \mathbf{A}\nu,$$

where $\Gamma = \text{diag}(\sigma^2(Z_1), \dots, \sigma^2(Z_p))$, $\nu = (\mu(Z_1), \dots, \mu(Z_p))$ and μ is taken to be the tau measure of location in Section 3.8.1

[Maronna and Zamar \(2002\)](#) note that the above procedure can be iterated and report results suggesting that a single iteration be used. More precisely, compute \mathbf{V} and \mathbf{t} for \mathbf{Z} (the matrix corresponding to \mathbf{z}_i computed in step 4) and then express them in the original coordinate system, namely, $\mathbf{V}_2 = \mathbf{AV}(\mathbf{Z})\mathbf{A}'$ and $\mathbf{t}_2(\mathbf{X}) = \mathbf{At}(\mathbf{Z})$. Maronna and Zamar show that the estimate can be improved by a reweighting step. Let

$$d_i = \sum_j \left(\frac{z_{ij} - \mu(Z_j)}{\sigma(Z_j)} \right)$$

and $w_i = I(d_i \leq d_0)$, where

$$d_0 = \frac{\chi_{p,\beta}^2 \text{med}(d_1, \dots, d_n)}{\chi_{p,0.5}^2},$$

$\chi_{p,\beta}^2$ is the β quantile of the chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom and “med” denotes the sample median. The measure of location is now estimated to be

$$\mathbf{t}_w = \frac{\sum w_i \mathbf{x}_i}{\sum w_i},$$

and the measure of scatter is

$$\mathbf{V}_w = \frac{\sum w_i (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{t}_w)(\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{t}_w)'}{\sum w_i}.$$

A generalization of the OGK estimator, aimed at dealing with missing values, can be applied via the R function CovNAOgk, which is included in the R package rrcovNA. See [Todorov and Filzmoser \(2010\)](#) for details. Roughly, missing values are imputed. Evidently, there are no published results on how well it performs when testing hypotheses.

6.3.12 R Function ogk

The R function

```
ogk(x,sigmamu=taulc,v=gkcov,n.iter=1,beta=0.9,...)
```

computes the OGK measure of location and scale.

6.3.13 An M-Estimator

As noted at the beginning of this section, a concern about (affine equivariant) M-estimators is that they have a breakdown point of at most $1/(p + 1)$. Also, [Devlin, Gnanadesikan, and Kettenring \(1981, p. 361\)](#) found that M-estimators could tolerate even fewer outliers than indicated by this upper bound. Despite this, in situations where p is small, this approach might be deemed satisfactory. For example, [Zu and Yuan \(2010\)](#) suggest an approach to a mediation analysis that is based in part on an M-estimator with Huber weights, which was derived by [Maronna \(1976\)](#). A slight modification of the Zu and Yuan method has been found to perform relatively well in simulations, so for completeness, Maronna's M-estimator is outlined

here. (Details of the Zu and Yuan method for performing a mediation analysis are outlined in Section 11.7.2.)

The computation of this estimator is accomplished via an iterative scheme that corresponds to a multivariate version of the W-estimator in Section 3.8. Roughly, an initial estimate of the mean and covariance matrix is computed, which here is taken to be usual mean $\bar{\mathbf{X}}$ vector and covariance matrix \mathbf{S} . Based on this initial estimate, squared Mahalanobis distances are computed:

$$d_i^2 = (\mathbf{X}_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}})' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{X}_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}}).$$

Imagine that one wants to downweight a proportion κ of the observations. Let ϱ^2 be the $1 - \kappa$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom. Let $w_i = 1$ if $d_i \leq \varrho$; otherwise $w_i = \varrho/d_i$. Then an updated estimate of the mean and covariance matrix is given by

$$\bar{\mathbf{X}} = \sum w_i \mathbf{X}_i / n$$

and

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{\tau n} \sum w_i^2 (\mathbf{X}_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}}) (\mathbf{X}_i - \bar{\mathbf{X}})',$$

respectively, where τ is chosen so that \mathbf{S} is an unbiased estimate of the covariance matrix under normality. These updated estimates are used to update the squared Mahalanobis distances, which in turn yields a new updated estimate of the mean and covariance matrix. This process is continued until convergence is achieved.

6.3.14 R Functions `MARest` and `dmedian`

The R function

```
MARest(x,kappa=0.1)
```

computes Maronna's M-estimator of location and scatter, where the argument `kappa` corresponds to κ in the previous section.

The R function

```
dmedian(x,depfun=pdepth,...)
```

computes the median of cloud of data, which is taken to be the deepest point based some measure of depth. A possible appeal of this median is that when using a projection-type measure of depth, as described for example in Sections 6.2.5 and 6.2.7, the median is unique when dealing with continuous variables (Zuo, 2013). By default the projection measure of depth in Section 6.2.5 is used. Alternative projection-type measures were described in Section 6.2.7 and can be applied with the R functions in Section 6.2.8.

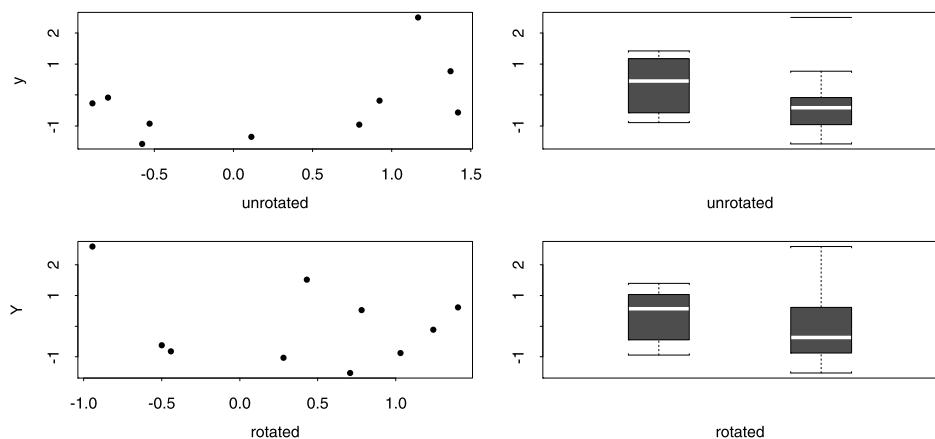


Figure 6.2: The upper-right panel shows a boxplot for the X and Y values shown in the upper-left panel. The lower-right panel shows a boxplot for the X and Y values after the points in the upper-left panel are rotated to the position shown in the lower-left panel. Now the boxplots find no outliers, in contrast to the unrotated case.

6.4 Multivariate Outlier Detection Methods

An approach to detecting outliers when working with multivariate data is to simply check for outliers among each of the marginal distributions using one of the methods described in Chapter 3. A concern about this approach, however, is that outliers can be missed because it does not take into account the overall structure of the data. In particular, any multivariate outlier detection method should be invariant under rotations of the data. Methods based on the marginal distributions do not satisfy this criterion.

To illustrate the problem, consider the observations in the upper-left panel of Figure 6.2. The upper-right panel shows a boxplot of both the X and Y values. As indicated, one Y value is flagged as an outlier. It is the point in the upper-right corner of the scatterplot. If the points are rotated such that they maintain their relative positions, the outlier should remain an outlier, but for some rotations this is not the case. For example, if the points are rotated 45 degrees, the scatterplot now appears as shown in the lower-left panel with the outlier in the upper-left corner. The lower-right panel shows a boxplot of the X and Y values after the axes are rotated. Now the boxplots do not indicate any outliers because they fail to take into account the overall structure of the data. What is needed is a method that is invariant under rotations of the data. In addition, any outlier detection method should be invariant under changes in scale. All of the methods in this section satisfy these two criteria.

All but one of the multivariate outlier detection methods described in this section can be used with p -variate data for any $p > 1$. The one exception is a method called a relplot, which is described first and is limited to bivariate data.

6.4.1 A Relplot

A relplot is a bivariate generalization of the boxplot derived by [Goldberg and Iglewicz \(1992\)](#). It is based in part on a bivariate generalization of M-estimators covered in Chapter 3 that belongs to the class of W-estimators described in Section 6.3.6. Let X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, 2$) be a random sample from some bivariate distribution. For fixed j , the method begins by computing M_j , MAD_j and $\hat{\xi}_j^2$ using the X_{ij} values, where M_j is the sample median, MAD_j is the median absolute deviation statistic, and $\hat{\xi}_j^2$ is the biweight midvariance described in Section 3.12.1. Let

$$U_{ij} = \frac{X_{ij}}{9\text{MAD}_j},$$

and set $a_{ij} = 1$ if $|U_{ij}| < 1$, otherwise $a_{ij} = 0$. Let

$$T_j = M_j + \frac{\sum a_{ij}(X_{ij} - M_j)(1 - U_{ij}^2)^2}{\sum a_{ij}(1 - U_{ij}^2)^2}.$$

The remaining computational steps are given in [Table 6.2](#) which yield a bivariate measure of location, (T_{b1}, T_{b2}) , a robust measure of variance, s_{b1}^2 and s_{b2}^2 , and a robust measure of correlation, R_b . These measures of location and scatter can be extended to $p > 2$ variates, but computational problems can arise ([Huber, 1981](#)).

The relplot consists of two ellipses. Once the computations in [Table 6.2](#) are complete, the inner ellipse is constructed as follows. Let

$$Z_{ij} = \frac{X_{ij} - T_{bj}}{s_{bj}}$$

and

$$E_i = \sqrt{\frac{Z_{i1}^2 + Z_{i2}^2 - 2R_b Z_{i1} Z_{i2}}{1 - R_b^2}}.$$

Let E_m be the median of E_1, \dots, E_n , and let E_{\max} be the largest E_i value such that $E_i^2 < DE_m^2$, where D is some constant. Goldberg and Iglewicz recommend $D = 7$, and this value is used here. Let $R_1 = E_m \sqrt{(1 + R_b)/2}$ and $R_2 = E_m \sqrt{(1 - R_b)/2}$. For each v between 0 and 360, steps of 2 degrees, compute $\Upsilon_1 = R_1 \cos(v)$, $\Upsilon_2 = R_2 \sin(v)$, $A = T_{b1} + (\Upsilon_1 + \Upsilon_2)s_{b1}$, and $B = T_{b2} + (\Upsilon_1 - \Upsilon_2)s_{b2}$. The values for A and B form the inner ellipse. The outer ellipse is obtained by repeating this process with E_m replaced by E_{\max} .

Table 6.2: Computing Biweight M-Estimators of Location, Scale, and Correlation.

Step 1. Compute $Z_{ij} = (X_{ij} - T_j)/\hat{\zeta}_j$.

Step 2. Recompute T_j , and $\hat{\zeta}_j^2$ by replacing the X_{ij} values with Z_{ij} yielding T_{zj} , and $\hat{\zeta}_{zj}^2$.

Step 3. Compute

$$E_i^2 = \left(\frac{Z_{i1} - T_{z1}}{\hat{\zeta}_{z1}} \right)^2 + \left(\frac{Z_{i2} - T_{z2}}{\hat{\zeta}_{z2}} \right)^2.$$

Step 4. For some constant C , let

$$W_i = \left(1 - \frac{E_i^2}{C} \right)^2$$

if $E_i^2 < C$, otherwise $W_i = 0$. [Goldberg and Iglewicz \(1992\)](#) recommend $C = 36$ unless more than half of the W_i values are equal to zero, in which case C can be increased until a minority of the W_i values is equal to zero.

Step 5. Compute

$$T_{bj} = \frac{\sum W_i X_{ij}}{\sum W_i}$$

$$S_{bj}^2 = \frac{\sum W_i (X_{ij} - T_{bj})^2}{\sum W_i}$$

$$R_b = \frac{\sum W_i (X_{i1} - T_{b1})(X_{i2} - T_{b2})}{S_{b1} S_{b2} \sum W_i}.$$

Step 6. Steps 4–8 are iterated. If step 4 has been performed only once, go to step 7; otherwise, let W_{oi} be the weights from the previous iteration, and stop if $\sum (W_i - W_{oi})^2 / (\sum W_i/n)^2 < \epsilon$.

Step 7. Store the current weight, W_i , into W_{oi} .

Step 8. Compute

$$Z_{i1} = \left(\frac{X_{i1} - T_{b1}}{S_{b1}} + \frac{X_{i2} - T_{b2}}{S_{b2}} \right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2(1 + R_b)}}$$

$$Z_{i2} = \left(\frac{X_{i1} - T_{b1}}{S_{b1}} - \frac{X_{i2} - T_{b2}}{S_{b2}} \right) \frac{1}{\sqrt{2(1 - R_b)}}$$

$$E_i^2 = Z_{i1}^2 + Z_{i2}^2.$$

Go back to step 4.

6.4.2 R Function *relplot*

The R function

```
relplot(x,y,C=36,epsilon=0.0001,plotit=T)
```

performs the calculations in [Table 6.2](#) and creates a relplot. Here, x and y are any R vectors containing data, C is a constant that defaults to 36 (see step 4 in [Table 6.2](#)), and epsilon is ϵ in step 6 of [Table 6.2](#). (The argument epsilon is used to determine whether enough iterations have been performed. Its default value is 0.0001.) The function returns bivariate measures of location in `relplot$nest`, measures of scale in `relplot$mvar`, and a measure of correlation in `relplot$mrho`. The last argument, `plotit`, defaults to T, for true, meaning that a graph of the bivariate boxplot (the relplot) will be created. To avoid the plot, simply set the last argument, `plotit`, to F for false. For example, the command `relfun(x,y,plotit=F)` will return the measures of location and correlation without creating the plot.

■ Example

[Rousseeuw and Leroy \(1987, p. 27\)](#) report the logarithm of the effective temperature at the surface of 47 stars versus the logarithm of its light intensity. Suppose the (Hertzsprung–Russell) star data are stored in the R variables `u` and `v`. Then the R command `relplot(u,v)` creates the plot shown in [Figure 6.3](#). The smaller ellipse contains half of the data. Points outside the larger ellipse are considered to be outliers. The function reports a correlation of 0.7 which is in striking contrast to Pearson’s correlation, $r = -0.21$.

6.4.3 The MVE Method

A natural way of detecting outliers in p -variate data, $p \geq 2$, is to use Mahalanobis distance with the usual means and sample covariance matrix replaced by estimators that have a high breakdown point. One of the earliest such methods is based on the MVE estimators of location and scale ([Rousseeuw & van Zomeren, 1990](#)). Relevant theoretical results are reported by [Lopuhaä \(1999\)](#). Let the column vector \mathbf{C} , having length p , be the MVE estimate of location, and let the p -by- p matrix \mathbf{M} be the corresponding measure of scatter. The distance of the point $\mathbf{x}'_i = (x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip})$ from \mathbf{C} is given by

$$D_i = \sqrt{(\mathbf{x}'_i - \mathbf{C})' \mathbf{M}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}'_i - \mathbf{C})}. \quad (6.16)$$

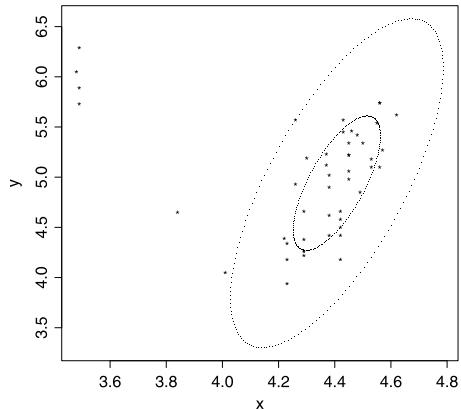


Figure 6.3: A relplot for the star data.

If $D_i > \sqrt{\chi^2_{0.975, p}}$, the square root of the 0.975 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom, then \mathbf{x}_i is declared an outlier. Rousseeuw and van Zomeren recommend this method when there are at least five observations per dimension, meaning that $n/p > 5$. ([Cook & Hawkins, 1990](#), illustrate that problems can arise when $n/p \leq 5$.) A criticism of this method is that it can declare too many points as being extreme ([Fung, 1993](#)).

6.4.4 The MCD Method

Rather than use the MVE measure of location and scatter to detect outliers, one could, of course, use the MCD estimators instead. That is, in Eq. (6.16), replace \mathbf{M} and \mathbf{C} with the MCD estimates of scatter and location. [Cerioli \(2010\)](#) derived a modification of this method with the goal that under multivariate normality, the probability of declaring one or more points an outlier is equal to some specified value. For additional results on decision rules for declaring a point an outlier, see [Cerioli and Farcomeni \(2011\)](#) as well as [Filzmoser, Garrett, and Reimann \(2010\)](#).

6.4.5 R Functions covmve and covmcd

Both the MVE and MCD estimators can be computed with the R functions

`cov.mve(m),`

and

`cov.mcd(m),`

respectively, which are stored in the R library MASS. For convenience, the R functions

`covmve(m),`

and

`covmcd(m)`

are supplied, which eliminate the need to use the R command library(MASS) in order to access the R functions cov.mve and cov.mcd. Both of these functions return weights indicating whether a point is declared an outlier using the MVE and MCD methods. (It is noted that the S-PLUS version of the MVE and MCD outlier detection methods can give results that differ from the R versions used here.) However, these functions do not return the MVE and MCD estimate of location and scatter, but rather a W-estimate of location and scatter. (See Section 6.5.) In essence, points declared outliers are removed and the mean and covariance matrix are computed using the data that remain. R reports which subset of half of the data was used to compute the MVE and MCD estimates of location. So it is possible to determine the MVE and MCD estimates of location if desired.

In some situations it is convenient to have an R function that returns just the MVE measure of location. Accordingly, the R function

`mvecen(m)`

is supplied to accomplish this goal. The R function

`mcdcen(m)`

computes the MCD measure of location.

6.4.6 R Function *out*

The R function

```
out(x, cov.fun = cov.mve, plotit = T, xlab = "X", ylab = "Y", qval = 0.975, crit = NULL, ...)
```

identifies outliers using the MVE method for p -variate data using Eq. (6.15), where the argument x is an n -by- p matrix. The function returns a vector labeled `out.id` that identifies which rows of data are outliers. And another vector, labeled `keep.id` indicates the rows of

data that are not declared outliers. In the bivariate case it creates a scatterplot of the data and marks outliers with an o. To avoid the plot, set the argument plotit to F, for false. Setting cov.fun=covmcd results in replacing the MVE estimator with the MCD estimator. (Other options for this argument are ogk, tbs and rmaba, which result in using the OGK, TBS and median ball algorithm, respectively, but except for tbs, it seems that these options are relatively unsatisfactory.)

■ Example

If the star data in [Figure 6.3](#) are stored in the matrix stardat, the R command `out(stardat)` returns the values 7, 9, 11, 14, 20, 30, and 34 in the R variable `outmve$out.id`. This means, for example, that row 7 of the data in the matrix stardat is an outlier. Six of these points correspond to the outliers in [Figure 6.3](#) that are to the left of the outer ellipse. The seventh is the point near the upper-middle portion of [Figure 6.3](#) that lies on or slightly beyond the outer ellipse. (The point is at $x = 4.26$ and $y = 5.57$.)

6.4.7 The MGV Method

An appeal of both the MVE and MCD outlier detection methods is that they are based on high breakdown estimators. That is, they provide an important step toward avoiding *masking*, roughly referring to an inability to detect outliers due to their very presence. (See Section 3.13.1.) But for certain purposes, two alternative methods for detecting outliers have been found to have practical value, one of which is the MGV method described here. (The other is a projection-type method described later in this chapter.)

As noted in Chapter 3, the *outside rate per observation* is the expected proportion of points declared outliers. That is, if among n points, A points are declared outliers, the outside rate per observation is $p_n = E(A/n)$. When sampling from multivariate normal distributions, for certain purposes it is desirable to have p_n reasonably close to zero; a common goal is to have p_n approximately equal to 0.05 (cf. [Cerioli, 2010](#)). When all variables are independent, it appears that both the MVE and MCD methods have an outside rate per observation approximately equal to 0.05. But under dependence, this is no longer true, it is higher when using the MCD method. Although the MVE method based on the R function `cov.mve` appears to have p_n approximately equal to 0.05 under normality, alternative outlier detection methods have been found to have practical advantages for situations to be described.

A multivariate outlier detection method for which p_n is reasonably close to 0.05 under normality, and which has practical value when dealing with problems to be addressed, is the so-called minimum generalized variance (MGV) method, which is applied as follows:

1. Initially, all n points are described as belonging to set A.
2. Find the p points that are most centrally located. One possibility is as follows. Let

$$d_i = \sum_{j=1}^n \sqrt{\sum_{\ell=1}^p \left(\frac{X_{j\ell} - X_{i\ell}}{\text{MAD}_{\ell}} \right)^2}, \quad (6.17)$$

where MAD_{ℓ} is the value of MAD based on $X_{1\ell}, \dots, X_{n\ell}$. The two most centrally located points are taken to be the p points having the smallest d_i values. Another possibility, in order to achieve affine equivariance, is to identify the p points having the largest halfspace depth or the largest depth based on the MVE or MCD methods.

3. Remove the p centrally located points from set A and put them into set B. At this step, the generalized variance of the points in set B is zero.
4. If among the points remaining in set A, the i th point is put in set B, the generalized variance of the points in set B will be changed to some value which is labeled s_{gi}^2 . That is, associated with every point remaining in A is the value s_{gi}^2 , which is the resulting generalized variance when it, and it only, is placed in set B. Compute s_{gi}^2 for every point in A.
5. Among the s_{gi}^2 values computed in the previous step, permanently remove the point associated with the smallest s_{gi}^2 value from set A and put it in set B. That is, find the point in set A which is most tightly clustered together with the points in set B. Once this point is identified, permanently remove it from A and leave it in B henceforth.
6. Repeat steps 4 and 5 until all points are now in set B.

The first p points removed from set A have a generalized variance of zero which is labeled $s_{g(1)}^2 = \dots = s_{g(p)}^2 = 0$. When the next point is removed from A and put into B (using steps 4 and 5), the resulting generalized variance of the set B is labeled $s_{g(p+1)}^2$ and continuing this process, each point has associated with it some generalized variance when it is put into set B.

Based on the process just described, the i th point has associated with it one of the generalized variances just computed. For example, in the bivariate case, associated with the i th point (X_i, Y_i) is some value $s_{g(j)}^2$ indicating the generalized variance of the set B when the i th point is removed from set A and permanently put in set B. For convenience, this generalized variance associated with the i th point, $s_{g(j)}^2$, is labeled D_i . The p deepest points have D values of zero. Points located at the edges of a scatterplot have the highest D values meaning that they are relatively far from the center of the cloud of points. Moreover, we can detect outliers simply by applying one of the outlier detection rules in Chapter 3 to the D_i values. Note, however, that we would not declare a point an outlier if D_i is small, only if D_i is large.

In terms of maintaining an outside rate per observation that is stable as a function of n and p , and approximately equal to 0.05 under normality (and when dealing with certain regression problems to be described), a boxplot rule for detecting outliers seems best when $p = 2$,

and for $p > 2$ a slight generalization of Carling's modification of the boxplot rule appears to perform well. In particular, if $p = 2$, then declare the i th point an outlier if

$$D_i > q_2 + 1.5(q_2 - q_1), \quad (6.18)$$

where q_1 and q_2 are the ideal fourths based on the D_i values. For $p > 2$ variables, replace Eq. (6.18) with

$$D_i > M_D + \sqrt{\chi^2_{0.975,p}}(q_2 - q_1), \quad (6.19)$$

where $\sqrt{\chi^2_{0.975,p}}$ is the square root of the 0.975 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom and M_D is the usual median of the D_i values.

A comment about detecting outliers among the D_i values, using a MAD-median rule, should be made. Using something like the Hampel identifier when detecting outliers has the appeal of using measures of location and scale that have the highest possible breakdown point. When $p = 2$, for example, this means that a point \mathbf{X}_i is declared an outlier if

$$\frac{|D_i - M_D|}{\text{MAD}_D/0.6745} > 2.24, \quad (6.20)$$

where MAD_D is the value of MAD based on the D values. A concern about this approach is that the outside rate per observation is no longer stable as a function of n . This has some negative consequences when addressing problems in subsequent sections. Here, Eq. (6.19) is used because it has been found to avoid these problems and because it has received the most attention so far, but of course in situations where there are an unusually large number of outliers, using Eq. (6.19) might cause practical problems.

6.4.8 R Function *outmgv*

The R function

```
outmgv(x, y = NA, plotit = T, outfun = outbox, se = T, op = 1, cov.fun = rmba, xlab = "X",
       ylab = "Y", SEED = T, ...)
```

applies the MGV outlier detection method just described.¹ (A C++ version is available via the R pack WRScpp as noted in Section 1.8.) If the second argument is not specified, it is assumed that x is a matrix with p columns corresponding to the p variables under study and

¹ If columns of the input matrix are reordered, this might affect the results due to rounding error when calling the built-in R function eigen.

`outmgy` checks for outliers for the data stored in `x`. If the second argument, `y`, is specified, the function combines the data in `x` with the data in `y` and checks for outliers among these $p + 1$ variables. In particular, the data do not have to be stored in a matrix; they can be stored in two vectors (`x` and `y`) and the function combines them into a single matrix for you. If `plotit=T` is used and bivariate data are being studied, a plot of the data will be produced with outliers marked by a circle. The argument `outfun` can be used to change the outlier detection rule applied to the depths of the points (the D_i values in the previous section). By default, Eq. (6.19) is used. Setting `outfun=out`, Eq. (6.20) is used. The argument `se=T` ensures that the results do not change with changes in scale. (The marginal distributions are standardized when calling the R function `apgdis`.)

6.4.9 A Projection Method

Consider a sample of n points from some p -variate distribution and consider any projection of the data (as described in Section 6.2.2). A projection-type method for detecting outliers among multivariate data is based on the idea that if a point is an outlier, then it should be an outlier for some projection of the n points. So if it were possible to consider all possible projections, and if for some projection a point is an outlier, then the point is declared an outlier. Not all projections can be considered, so the strategy here is to orthogonally project the data onto all n lines formed by the center of the data cloud, as represented by $\hat{\xi}$, and each \mathbf{X}_i . It seems natural that $\hat{\xi}$ should have a high breakdown point and that it should be affine equivariant. Two good choices appear to be the MVE and MCD estimators in Sections 6.3.1 and 6.3.2.

The computational details are as follows. Fix i , and for the point \mathbf{X}_i , orthogonally project all n points onto the line connecting $\hat{\xi}$ and \mathbf{X}_i , and let D_{ij} be the distance between $\hat{\xi}$ and \mathbf{X}_j based on this projection. More formally, let

$$\mathbf{A}_i = \mathbf{X}_i - \hat{\xi},$$

$$\mathbf{B}_j = \mathbf{X}_j - \hat{\xi},$$

where both \mathbf{A}_i and \mathbf{B}_j are column vectors having length p , and let

$$\mathbf{C}_j = \frac{\mathbf{A}'_i \mathbf{B}_j}{\mathbf{B}'_j \mathbf{B}_j} \mathbf{B}_j,$$

$j = 1, \dots, n$. Then when projecting the points onto the line between \mathbf{X}_i and $\hat{\xi}$, the distance of the j th point from $\hat{\xi}$ is

$$D_{ij} = \|\mathbf{C}_j\|,$$

where

$$\|\mathbf{C}_j\| = \sqrt{C_{j1}^2 + \cdots + C_{jp}^2}.$$

Here, an extension of Carling's modification of the boxplot rule (similar to the modification used by the MGV method) is used to check for outliers among D_{ij} values. To be certain the computational details are clear, let $\ell = [n/4 + 5/12]$, where $[.]$ is the greatest integer function, and let

$$h = \frac{n}{4} + \frac{5}{12} - \ell.$$

For fixed i , let $D_{i(1)} \leq \cdots \leq D_{i(n)}$ be the n distances written in ascending order. The ideal fourths associated with the D_{ij} values are

$$q_1 = (1 - h)D_{i(h)} + hD_{i(h+1)}$$

and

$$q_2 = (1 - h)D_{i(\ell)} + hD_{i(\ell-1)}.$$

Then the j th point is declared an outlier if

$$D_{ij} > M_D + \sqrt{\chi_{0.975,p}^2} (q_2 - q_1), \quad (6.21)$$

where M_D is the usual sample median based on the D_{i1}, \dots, D_{in} values and $\chi_{0.95,p}^2$ is the 0.95 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom.

The process just described is for a single projection; for fixed i , points are projected onto the line connecting \mathbf{X}_i to $\hat{\xi}$. Repeating this process for each i , $i = 1, \dots, n$, a point is declared an outlier if for any of these projections, it satisfies Eq. (6.21). That is, \mathbf{X}_j is declared an outlier if for any i , D_{ij} satisfies Eq. (6.21). Note that this outlier detection method approximates an affine equivariant technique for detecting outliers, but it is not itself affine equivariant.

As was the case with the MGV method, a simple and seemingly desirable modification of the method just described is to replace the interquartile range ($q_2 - q_1$) with the median absolute deviation (MAD) measure of scale based on the values D_{i1}, \dots, D_{in} . So here, MAD is the median of the values

$$|D_{i1} - M_D|, \dots, |D_{in} - M_D|,$$

which is denoted by MAD_i . Then the j th point is declared an outlier if for any i

$$D_{ij} > M_D + \sqrt{\chi_{0.975,p}^2} \frac{\text{MAD}_i}{0.6745}. \quad (6.22)$$

Eq. (6.22) represents an approximation of the method given by Eq. (1.3) in [Donoho and Gasko \(1992\)](#). Again, an appealing feature of MAD is that it has a higher finite sample breakdown point than the interquartile range. But a negative feature of Eq. (6.22) is that the outside rate per observation appears to be less stable as a function of n . In the bivariate case, for example, it is approximately 0.09 with $n = 10$ and drops below 0.02 as n increases. For the same situations, the outside rate per observation using Eq. (6.21) ranges, approximately, between 0.043 and 0.038.

A criticism of the projection method as just described is that changes in scale can alter decisions about whether a point is an outlier. That is, if the first variable only is multiplied by some constant $c \neq 0$, this might alter the decision about whether the i th point is an outlier. One possible way of dealing with this issue is to standardize the marginal distributions. For example, subtract the median and then divide by MAD. Another approach is to use the MGV method instead, which seems to perform about as well as the projection method in terms of detecting true outliers ([Wilcox, 2008a](#)). But this comes at the cost of higher execution time, which might be an issue with large sample sizes. An advantage of the projection method is that it can be applied even when n is small and p is large. This is not always the case when using the MGV method.

6.4.10 R Functions *outpro* and *out3d*

The R function

```
outpro(m,gval=NA,center=NA,plotit=T,op=T,MM=F,cop=3,STAND=TRUE)
```

checks for outliers using the projection method just described. (A C++ version is available via the R pack WRScpp as noted in Section 1.8.) Here, m is any R variable containing data stored in a matrix (having n rows and p columns). The argument $gval$ can be used to alter the values $\sqrt{\chi_{0.95,p}^2}$ or $\sqrt{\chi_{0.975,p}^2}$ in Eqs. (6.21) and (6.22). These values are replaced by the value stored in $gval$ if $gval$ is specified. Similarly, the argument $center$ can be used to specify the center of the data cloud, $\hat{\xi}$, that will be used. If not specified, the center is determined by the argument cop . The choices are:

- $cop=1$, Donoho–Gasko median
- $cop=2$, MCD
- $cop=3$, median of the marginal distributions
- $cop=4$, MVE

When working with bivariate data, `outpro` creates a scatterplot of the data, marks outliers with a circle, and the plot includes a contour indicating the location of the deepest half of the data as measured by projection depth. More precisely, the depth of all points is computed, and among the points not declared outliers, all points having a depth less than or equal to the median depth are indicated. If `op=T`, the plot creates a 0.5 depth contour based on the data excluding points declared outliers. Setting `op=F`, the 0.5 depth contour is based on all of the data. If `MM=T` is used, the interquartile range is replaced by MAD. That is, Eq. (6.22) is used in place of (6.21). By default, the argument `STAND=T` meaning that the marginal distributions are standardized, before checking for outliers, using the median and MAD. (Early versions of the R function `outpro` used `STAND=F`.)

When working with trivariate data, the R function

```
out3d(x, outfun = outpro, xlab = 'Var 1', ylab = 'Var 2', zlab = 'Var 3', reg.plane = F,
       regfun = tsreg, COLOR = F)
```

creates a three dimensional scatterplot and marks the outliers, identified by the R function `outpro`, with *. (Setting the argument `COLOR=T`, outliers are marked with a red circle.) An alternative outlier detection method can be used via the argument `outfun`. This function also shows a regression plane when `reg.plane=T`, assuming the goal is to predict the third variable given value for the first two. (That is, column 3 of `x` is assumed to be the outcome variable, typically labeled `y`, and columns 1 and 2 contain the predictor variables.) The regression method used is controlled by the argument `regfun`, which defaults to the Theil–Sen estimator described in Chapter 10.

6.4.11 Outlier Identification in High Dimensions

Filzmoser, Maronna, and Werner (2008) noted that under normality, if the number of variables is large, the proportion of points declared outliers by the better-known outlier detection methods can be relatively high. This concern applies to all the methods covered here with the projection method seemingly best at avoiding this problem. But with more than nine variables ($p > 9$), it breaks down as well. Currently, it seems that one of the better ways of dealing with this problem is to use the projection method but with Eq. (6.22) replaced by

$$D_{ij} > M_D + c \frac{\text{MAD}_i}{0.6745},$$

where c is chosen so that the outside rate per observation is approximately equal to some specified value under normality, which is usually taken to be 0.05. Here, the constant c is determined via simulations. That is, n points are generated from a p -variate normal distribution,

where all p variables are independent. This process is repeated say B times, and a value c is determined so that the expected proportion of points declared outliers is equal to the desired rate. A refinement of this strategy would be to generate data from a multivariate normal distribution that has the same covariance matrix as the data under study. Currently, this does not seem necessary or even desirable, but this issue is in need of further study.

A similar adjustment can be made when using the MGV method to detect outliers, which might be preferred because the MGV method is scale invariant. Direct comparisons of the performance of the adjusted MGV method and the adjusted projection method have not been made.

It is briefly noted that [Chaudhuri \(2001\)](#) derived a multivariate outlier detection technique that stems from the notion of geometric quantiles. [Chaouch and Goga \(2010\)](#) extended Chaudhuri's method to survey sampling situations. Direct comparisons with the projection method and the MGV method, based on the outside rate per observation, have not been made. [Vakili and Schmitt \(2014\)](#) derived a method that, like the MVE and MCD methods, exams many subsets of the data. How this method compares to the projection method and the MGV method has not been determined.

6.4.12 R Functions *outproad* and *outmgvad*

The R function

```
outproad(m, center = NA, plotit = T, op = T, MM = F, cop = 3, xlab = "VAR 1", ylab =  
"VAR 2", rate = 0.05, iter = 100, ip = 6, pr = T, SEED = T, STAND = T)
```

is like the R function *outpro*, only it uses simulations to adjust the decision rule for declaring a point an outlier as described in the previous section. The argument *rate* indicates the desired proportion of points declared outliers under normality. The R function

```
outmgvad(m, center = NA, plotit = T, op = 1, xlab = "VAR 1", ylab = "VAR 2", rate = 0.05,  
iter = 100, ip = 6, pr = T)
```

is like the R function *outproad*, only it is based on the MGV outlier detection technique.

6.4.13 Methods Designed for Functional Data

Functional data analysis refers to methods aimed at analyzing information about curves, surfaces or anything else varying over a continuum. In its most general form, each sample

element is a function. The physical continuum over which these functions are defined is often time, but it can be other features such spatial location and wavelength. Functional data methods have been used to analyze human growth curves, weather station temperatures, gene expression signals, medical images, and human speech. There is a substantial literature dealing with methods aimed at analyzing functional data that goes well beyond the scope of this book (e.g., [Ramsay & Silverman, 2005](#); [Ferraty & Vieu, 2006](#)). The R package `fda.usa` ([Frbrero-Bande & de la Fuente, 2012](#)) can be used to apply a wide range of methods designed specifically for functional data. (Also see [Frbrero, Galeano, & González-Manteiga, 2008](#).) The goal in this section is to describe a method for detecting outlying curves via a functional boxplot derived by [Sun and Genton \(2011\)](#). Their method is based on the notion of the modified band depth introduced by [López-Pintado and Romo \(2009\)](#). For alternative outlier detection techniques, based in part on robust principal components, see [Hyndman and Shang \(2010\)](#). Also see [Frbrero et al. \(2008\)](#), [Gervini \(2012\)](#) and [Zhang \(2013\)](#).

Here, for simplicity, the notion of a band depth is described in the context of how it is computed in practice. [López-Pintado and Romo \(2009\)](#) describe band depth in a broader context that is not important for present purposes.

Each of n observations is some function $y(t)$ for t in some closed interval \mathcal{I} . For example, t might represent time and values for the function might range from 0 to 1 minute. Typically the function $y(t)$ is not specified. Rather, the values $y(t_1), \dots, y(t_p)$ are observed where $t_1 \leq \dots \leq t_p$ and p can be quite large. So the situation at hand has some connection to the situation in Section 6.4.11.

The band corresponding to two curves, say y_{i_1} and y_{i_2} , is

$$B(y_{i_1}, y_{i_2}) = \{(t, x) : t \in \mathcal{I}, \min(y_{i_1}(t), y_{i_2}(t)) \leq x \leq \max(y_{i_1}(t), y_{i_2}(t))\}.$$

Roughly, $B(y_{i_1}, y_{i_2})$ is the subset of the plane that lies between the two curves y_{i_1} and y_{i_2} . Note that the graph of a function is a subset of the plane that can be denoted by

$$G(y) = \{(t, y(t)) : t \in \mathcal{I}\}.$$

The band depth of some curve y is

$$BD(y) = \binom{n}{2}^{-1} \sum_{i_1 < i_2} G(y) I(G(y) \subseteq B(y_{i_1}, y_{i_2})),$$

where $I(A) = 1$ if A is true; otherwise $I(A) = 0$. (For measuring depth when dealing multivariate data, see [Claeskens, Hubert, Slaets, & Vakili, 2014](#). For an extension of Mahalanobis distance to functional data, see [Galeano, Joseph, & Lillo, 2015](#).) Roughly, the band depth of y is the proportion of bands that contain y . If this proportion is relatively high, y is nested

among all the curves in a relatively deep fashion. (There are issues about curves that cross when a band is defined using only two curves as noted by López-Pintado & Romo, 2009. But when using the modified band depth, described next, Sun & Genton, 2011, argue that using only two functions suffices.)

Note that for $t \in \mathcal{I}$, it might be the case that $y(t)$ lies between y_{i_1} and y_{i_2} for some subset of \mathcal{I} , but otherwise it does not. For example, if \mathcal{I} is the closed interval $[0, 1]$, $y(t)$ might have a value between y_{i_1} and y_{i_2} when $t \leq 0.4$, but for $t > 0.4$ this is no longer the case. So 40% of the time $y(t)$ has a value between $y_{i_1}(t)$ and $y_{i_2}(t)$. The modified band depth takes into account the proportion of times $y(t)$ has a value between y_{i_1} and y_{i_2} .

Let $\lambda(y; y_{i_1}, y_{i_2})$ be the proportion of time that $y(t)$ has a value between $y_{i_1}(t)$ and $y_{i_2}(t)$. The modified band depth is

$$MBD(y) = \binom{n}{2}^{-1} \sum_{i_1 < i_2} \lambda(y; y_{i_1}, y_{i_2}).$$

Let $y_{[1]} \geq \dots \geq y_{[n]}$ be the curves written in descending order based on their MBD value. So $y_{[1]}$ is the median curve. The sample 50% central region is

$$C_{0.5} = \{(t, y(t)) : \min y_{[r]}(t) \leq y(t) \leq \max y_{[r]}(t)\},$$

where the minimum and maximum are taken over $r = 1, \dots, m$ and m is the smallest integer not less than $n/2$. So $C_{0.5}$ corresponds to the interquartile range used by a boxplot. Sun and Genton expand this region by 1.5 to obtain what corresponds to the fences of a boxplot. Any curve outside the fences are flagged as potential outliers.

Rather than use the deepest (median) curve to estimate the typical curve, another strategy is to simply compute some measure of location at each time point. In terms of mean squared error and bias, this approach can result in a substantially more accurate estimate of the typical curve used to generate data in a simulation. See Exercise 18 for more details.

6.4.14 R Functions *FBplot*, *Flplot*, *medcurve*, *func.out*, *spag.plot*, *funloc* and *funlocpb*

The R function

```
FBplot(fit, x = NULL, method = 'MBD', depth = NULL, plot = TRUE, prob = 0.5, color = 6,
outliercol = 2, barcol = 4, fullout = FALSE, factor = 1.5, xlim = c(1, nrow(fit)), ylim =
c(min(fit) - 0.5 * diff(range(fit))), ...)
```

creates a functional boxplot and returns the MBD depth of each curve assuming the R package fda has been installed. The argument fit is a matrix with n rows corresponding to n subjects or curves. The p columns of fit correspond to p measures taken at times $1, \dots, p$. The argument x indicates the coordinates of curves. By default, x is taken to be $1, \dots, p$. Any columns with missing values are automatically removed. By default, the median curve is denoted by a black curve. The shaded magenta region corresponds to the interquartile range of a boxplot and blue lines correspond to the whiskers. Outliers are denoted by dashed lines.

Another option is to simply compute a measure of location associated with each time point and plot the results. This can be done with the R function

```
Flplot(x,est=mean,xlab='Time',ylab='Y',plotit=TRUE).
```

The argument x is assumed to be a matrix with n rows and p columns, and est indicates the measure of location that will be used, which defaults to the mean. The function returns a vector containing the estimates. Simulations suggest that in terms of estimating the true function that generated the data, this approach can be more accurate (based on mean squared error) than using median curve associated with the modified band depth. Note that yet another way of plotting the data is to simply create a boxplot at each time point, which can be done with the R command boxplot(x). The function

```
FQplot(x,est=mean,xlab='Time',ylab='Y',plotit=TRUE)
```

is like the function Flplot, only it includes the upper and lower quartiles.

Color is essential when using the R function FBplot. Otherwise discerning the regions of the functional boxplot can be difficult. But there is the practical issue that figures with color can be expensive to reproduce in articles. The R function

```
func.out(x,xlab='Time',ylab='')
```

is provided in case it helps dealing with this issue. It creates a *spaghetti plot* with solid lines indicating curves that are not flagged as outliers; dashed lines indicate outliers. The argument x is assumed to be an n -by- p matrix (or data frame), where n is the number of subjects for whom there are p values for the function.

Another way of plotting all n curves is with the R function

```
spag.plot(x, regfun = tsreg,xlab = 'Time', ylab = ' ',fit.lin = FALSE, ...).
```

Basically, this function creates the variables needed to compute a *spaghetti plot* via the R function `interaction.plot`. (There are some additional arguments relevant to the R function `interaction.plot` that might be of interest. Information about the arguments can be obtained with the R command `?interaction.plot`.) If it is desired to use a linear fit, set the argument `fit.lin=TRUE`, which results in a linear fit that is based on the regression estimator indicated by `regfun`. This function uses different lines for each curve without indicating which curves are outliers.

The R function

```
medcurve(x)
```

returns the deepest (median) curve. But in terms of estimating the true curve that generated the data, limited simulations indicate that `Flpot` be more satisfactory based on mean squared error and bias. (See Exercise 18.)

The R function

```
funloc(x,tr=0.2,pts=NULL, npts=25, plotit=TRUE,alpha=0.05, nv=rep(0,ncol(x)),  
       xlab='T',ylab='Est.',FBP=TRUE, method='hochberg',COLOR=TRUE)
```

computes a trimmed mean at specified time points (columns of the argument `x`) indicated by the argument `pts`, as well as a 0.95 confidence interval at each time point. If `pts=NULL`, the function picks `npts` time points evenly spaced between the minimum and maximum times. As can be seen, the default is `npts=25`. The argument `nv` indicates the null values used when testing hypotheses. Adjusted p-values, designed to control the probability of one or more Type I errors, are reported as well. (See Section 7.4.7.) By default, a functional boxplot is created. If `FBP=FALSE`, and `plotit=TRUE`, the function plots the trimmed means and 1-alpha confidence intervals. The R function

```
funlocpb(x,est=tmean, nboot=2000, SEED=TRUE, pts=NULL,npts=25,plotit=TRUE,  
         alpha=0.05, nv=rep(0,ncol(x)), xlab='T',ylab='Est.',FBP=TRUE,  
         method='hochberg',COLOR=TRUE,...)
```

is the same as `funloc`, only a percentile bootstrap method is used.

■ Example

This example deals with a study examining the biomechanics used by golfers on a collegiate golf team. A portion of the study focused on the horizontal force produced by one leg when swinging a six iron. (T. Peterson and J. McNitt-Gray generously supplied the

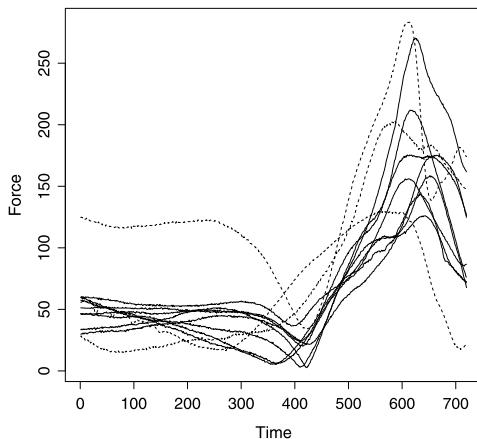


Figure 6.4: Horizontal force in one leg that is produced when swinging a golf club.

data.) Figure 6.4 shows the plot generated by the R function `func.out`. As can be seen, three of the eleven participants are flagged as outliers.

6.4.15 Comments on Choosing a Method

Choosing an outlier detection method is a nontrivial problem with no single method dominating all others; it seems that several methods deserve serious consideration. In addition to controlling the outside rate per observation, surely a desirable property of any outlier detection method is that it identify points that are truly unusual based on a model that generated the data. Wilcox (2008a) compared several methods, and while no single method was always best, it was found the MGV and projection methods (applied with the functions `outmgv` and `outpro`, respectively) performed relatively well when the number of variables is not too large, meaning that $p \leq 9$. But as previously noted, with $p > 9$ variables, these two methods break down, in which case the projection method in Section 6.4.11 should be used.

It is worth noting that, *given some data*, the choice of method can matter. To illustrate this point, twenty vectors of observations were generated where both X and ϵ are independent standard normal variables and $Y = X + \epsilon$. (If of interest, the resulting data are stored on the author's web in the file `Table6_3_dat.txt`.) Suppose two additional points are added at $(X, Y) = (2.1, -2.4)$. These two points are clearly unusual compared to the model that generated the data. Using the projection method or the MGV method, the two points $(2.1, -2.4)$ are flagged as outliers and no other outliers are reported. These two points are declared outliers using the MVE method, but it flags two additional points as outliers. The MCD method finds no outliers.

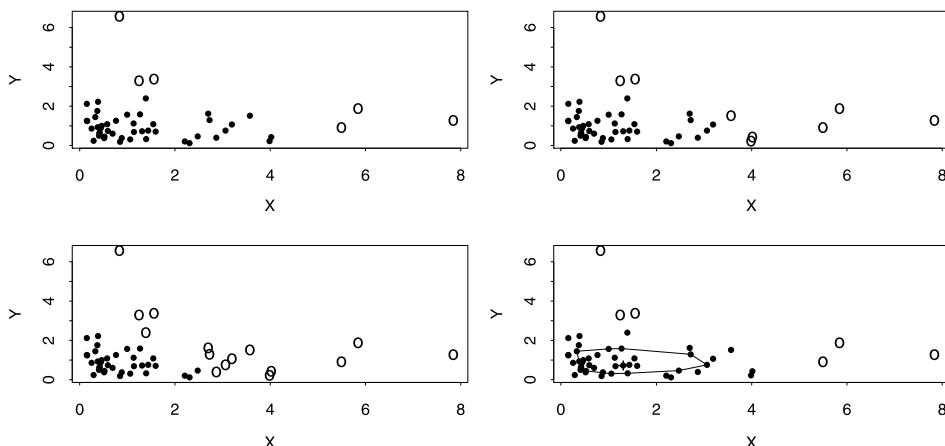


Figure 6.5: Output from four outlier detection methods. The upper-left panel used the projection method in Section 6.4.9, the upper-right used the MVE method, the lower-left is based on the MCD method, and the lower-right used the MGV method.

Gleason (1993) argues that a lognormal distribution is light-tailed. In the univariate case, with $n = 20$, the MAD-median rule given by Eq. (3.45) has an outside rate per observation of approximately 0.13, and a boxplot rule has an outside rate per observation of approximately 0.067. As another illustration that the choice of method can make a difference, consider the case where X and Y are independent, each having a lognormal distribution. For this bivariate case, with $n = 20$, all of the methods considered here have an outside rate above 0.1. For the MVE method the rate is approximately 0.2. Using instead the projection method and the MGV method, the rates are approximately 0.15 and 0.13, respectively.

Figure 6.5 shows the plots created by the MGV, MVE, MCD and the projection method based on a sample of $n = 50$ pairs of points generated from two independent lognormal distributions. The upper left and lower right panels are based on the projection method and the MGV method, respectively. In this particular instance they give identical results and flag the fewest points as outliers relative to the other methods used. The upper right panel is the output based on the MVE method, and the lower left panel is based on the MCD method. Although an argument can be made that in this particular instance, the MVE and MCD methods are less satisfactory, this must be weighed against the ability of the MVE and MCD methods to handle a larger number of outliers. (But if a large number of outliers is suspected, the versions of the projection-type method and the MGV method represented by Eqs. (6.20) and (6.19), respectively, might be used.) For more on detecting multivariate outliers, see Kosinski (1999), Liu et al. (1999), Rocke and Woodruff (1996), Peña and Prieto (2001), Poon, Lew, and Poon (2000), Rousseeuw and Leroy (1987), Davies (1987), Fung (1993), Rousseeuw and van Zomeren (1990).

6.5 A Skipped Estimator of Location and Scatter

Skipped estimators of location and scatter are estimators that search for outliers, discard any that are found, and then compute the mean and usual covariance matrix based on the data that remain. Such estimators are special cases of the W-estimator in Section 6.3.6, where points get a weight of 1 or 0 depending on whether they are declared outliers. Maronna and Yohai (1995) refer to such weight functions as hard rejection weights as opposed to soft rejection where the weights gradually descend toward zero as a function of how outlying a point happens to be. When using the outlier projection method in Section 6.4.8, with outliers getting a weight of zero, otherwise points get a weight of one, the corresponding W-estimator will be called the *OP-estimator*. When using the MVE outlier detection method, the skipped estimator will be called the *WMVE estimator*. And when using the MCD outlier detection method, the skipped estimator will be called the *WMCD estimator*.

Note that the methods just describe also yield robust analogs of the usual covariance matrix. If outliers are removed via the projection method, and the usual covariance matrix is computed based on the remaining data, this will be called the OP-estimate of scatter.

To provide at least some sense of how the various location estimators compare, some results on the expected squared standard error are provided when sampling from distributions that are symmetric about zero. More precisely, the measure of accuracy used is

$$R = \frac{\sqrt{E(\sum \bar{X}_j^2)}}{\sqrt{E(\sum \hat{\theta}_j^2)}},$$

where $\hat{\theta}_j^2$ is some competing estimator associated with the j th variable, $j = 1, \dots, p$. Table 6.3 reports some results for four variations of the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean, followed by the OP-estimator and the marginal medians. (In Table 6.3, h refers to the type of g-and-h distribution used, as described in Section 4.2, and ρ is the common Pearson correlation among the generated data.) Note that under normality, all four variations of the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean are the least satisfactory, and method OP performs best among the robust estimators considered. As for the TBS estimator in Section 6.3.3, it performs in a manner similar to the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean with $\gamma = 0.15$ when sampling from a normal distribution. That is, it is less satisfactory than other estimators that might be used. For $h = 0.5$ it performs nearly as well as the skipped estimator (method OP), and for $h = 1$ it is a bit more accurate. As for the WMVE skipped estimator, among the situations considered, it seems to have about the same accuracy as the OP-estimator, with OP offering a slight advantage.

Table 6.3: Values of R (Accuracy), $n = 40$.

h	ρ	$\gamma = 0.10$	$\gamma = 0.15$	$\gamma = 0.20$	DGM	OP	M
0.0	0.0	0.73	0.62	0.50	0.45	0.92	0.81
0.5	0.0	5.99	5.92	5.40	4.11	6.25	8.48
1.0	0.0	4660.21	5764.79	5911.29	4643.16	5452.35	10820.14
0.0	0.7	0.80	0.71	0.61	0.48	0.95	0.44
0.5	0.7	4.74	4.76	4.50	3.20	4.64	5.44
1.0	0.7	1082.56	1300.44	1336.63	1005.24	1091.68	1760.98

[Massé and Plante \(2003\)](#) report more extensive results on the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean, plus other estimators not described here. Their results further support the notion that the Donoho–Gasko trimmed mean is relatively inaccurate when sampling from light-tailed distributions. Among the ten estimators they considered, [Massé and Plante \(2003\)](#) found the spatial median, studied by [Haldane \(1948\)](#) and [Brown \(1983\)](#), to be best. (They did not consider the OP-estimator in their study.) The *spatial median* is the value $\hat{\theta}$ that minimizes

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum \|\hat{\theta} - \mathbf{X}_i\|.$$

It is not affine equivariant, but it is translation equivariant and orthogonally equivariant. One way of computing the spatial median is via the [Nelder and Mead \(1965\)](#) algorithm for minimizing a function. (For related results, see [Olsson, 1974](#), as well as [Olsson & Nelson, 1975](#).) An alternative algorithm for computing the spatial median can be found in [Bedall and Zimmermann \(1979\)](#) as well as [Hössjer and Croux \(1995\)](#). [Fritz, Filzmoser, and Croux \(2012\)](#) compared several algorithms. [Ng and Wilcox \(2010\)](#) compared eight robust estimators for a wide range of situations and concluded that the OP-estimator generally performs best in terms of efficiency, as measured by the generalized variance of the sampling distribution.

6.5.1 R Functions `smean`, `wmcd`, `wmve`, `mgvmean`, `L1medcen`, `spat`, `mgvcov`, `skip`, `skipcov`

The R function

```
smean(m,cop=3,MM=F,op=1,outfun=outgk,cov.fun=rmba,MC=F,...)
```

computes the OP-estimator of location just described using the data stored in the n -by- p matrix m . The remaining arguments determine which outlier detection method is used. Setting $op=1$ results in using the projection-type method, and $op=2$ uses the MGV method. The initial measure of location used by the outlier detection method is determined by cop , the choices being

- cop=1, Tukey (halfspace) median
- cop=2, MCD
- cop=3, marginal medians

To take advantage of a multicore processor, with the goal of reducing execution time, set the argument MC=T.

The R function

```
skipcov(m,cop=6,MM=F,op=1,mgv.op=0,outpro.cop=3)
```

computes the covariance matrix for the data stored in the argument m after outliers are removed. Like the R function smean, op=1 means that a projection method is used to identify outliers. When MM=F, Carling's modification of the boxplot rule is applied to each projection when checking for outliers. When MM=T, a MAD-median rule is used. Setting op=2, the MGV method is used to detect outliers. The argument outpro.cop controls which measure of location is used to compute the projections; see the R function outpro for more details. The R function

```
skip(m,cop=6,MM=F,op=1,mgv.op=0,outpro.cop=3)
```

returns both the skipped measure of covariance and measure of location. The R function

```
mgvcov(m,MM=F,op=1,cov.fun=rmaba)
```

computes the MGV covariance matrix. For an explanation of the remaining arguments, see the R function outmgv. (A C++ version is available via the R pack WRScpp as noted in Section 1.8.)

The R function

```
spat(m)
```

computes the spatial median as does

```
L1medcen(X, tol = 1e-08, maxit = 200, m.init = apply(X, 2, median) trace = FALSE).
```

The function spat uses the Nelder–Mead algorithm, while L1medcen uses the method described in Hössjer and Croux (1995). These two functions can give slightly different results. Currently it is unknown why one method might be preferred over the other.

A skipped estimator, with outliers detected via the MGV method, is called the MGV estimator of location and can be computed with the function smean. For convenience, the R function

```
mgvmean(m,op=0,MM=F,outfun=outbox)
```

is supplied for computing this measure of location. Setting $op=0$ results in the MGV outlier detection method using pairwise differences when searching for the centrally located points, $op=1$ uses the MVE method, and $op=2$ uses MCD. The built-in R function cov.mve, described in Section 6.4.5, is designed to compute the WMVE estimate of location and scatter.

6.6 Robust Generalized Variance

It is noted that one approach to measuring the overall variation of a cloud of points is with the generalized variance, where the usual covariance matrix is replaced by some robust analog. Based on the criterion of achieving good efficiency, a particular choice for the covariance matrix has been found to be relatively effective when distributions are normal or have moderately heavy tails: the OP-estimator of scatter where Carling's modification of the boxplot rule is applied to each projection of the data. For heavy-tailed distributions, use instead a MAD-median rule (Wilcox, 2006e).

6.6.1 R Function gvarg

The R function

```
gvarg(m,var.fun=cov.mba,...)
```

a robust generalized variance for the data stored in the argument m . By default, the RMBA covariance matrix is used because other methods to be described appear to perform reasonably well based on this covariance matrix. The command

```
gvarg(x,skipcov,MM=F)
```

would compute the generalized variance based on the OP-estimate of scatter in conjunction with Carling's modification of the boxplot rule. The command

```
gvarg(x,skipcov,MM=T)
```

would use the MAD-median rule.

6.7 Multivariate Location: Inference in the One-Sample Case

This section describes two methods for making inferences about multivariate measures of location. The first is aimed at the population analog of the OP-estimator. The second is based on an extension of Hotelling's T^2 method to the marginal trimmed means.

6.7.1 Inferences Based on the OP Measure of Location

The immediate goal is to compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence region for the population measure of location corresponding to the OP-estimator described in the previous section. Alternatively, the method in this section can be used to test the hypothesis that the population measure of location is equal to some specified value.

The basic strategy is to use a general percentile bootstrap method studied by [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#). Roughly, generate bootstrap estimates and use the central $1 - \alpha$ bootstrap values as an approximate confidence region. A simple method for determining the central $1 - \alpha$ bootstrap values is to use Mahalanobis distance. Despite being non-robust, this strategy performs well for a range of situations to be covered. Indeed, for many problems, there is no known reason to prefer another measure of depth, in terms of probability coverage. But for the problem at hand, Mahalanobis depth is unsatisfactory, at least with small to moderate sample sizes; the actual probability coverage can be rather unstable among various distributions, particularly as p gets large. That is, what is needed is a method for which the probability coverage is reasonably close to the nominal level regardless of the distribution associated with the data.

The method begins by generating a bootstrap sample by sampling with replacement n vectors of observations from $\mathbf{X}_1, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n$, where again \mathbf{X}_i is a vector having length p . Label the results $\mathbf{X}_1^*, \dots, \mathbf{X}_n^*$. Compute the OP-estimate of location yielding $\hat{\theta}^*$. Repeat this B times yielding $\hat{\theta}_1^*, \dots, \hat{\theta}_B^*$. Proceeding as in Section 6.2.5, compute the projection distance of each bootstrap estimate, $\hat{\theta}_b^*$, relative to all B bootstrap values and label the result d_b^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. Put these B distances in ascending order yielding $d_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq d_{(B)}^*$. Set $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounding to the nearest integer. A direct application of results in [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#) indicates that an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence region corresponds to the u bootstrap values having the smallest projection distances. As for testing

$$H_0 : \theta = \theta_0,$$

θ_0 given, let D_0 be the projection distance of θ_0 . Set $I_b = 1$ if $D_0 \leq D_b^*$; otherwise $I_b = 0$. Then the (generalized) p-value is estimated to be

$$\hat{p} = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B I_b,$$

and a direct application of results in Liu and Singh (1997) indicates that H_0 be rejected if $\hat{p} \leq \alpha$.

However, when testing at the 0.05 level, this method can be unsatisfactory for $n \leq 120$ (and switching to Mahalanobis distance makes matters worse). A better approach is to adjust the decision rule when n is small. In particular, reject if $\hat{p} \leq \alpha_a$, where for $n \leq 20$, $\alpha_a = 0.02$; for $20 < n \leq 30$, $\alpha_a = 0.025$; for $30 < n \leq 40$, $\alpha_a = 0.03$; for $40 < n \leq 60$, $\alpha_a = 0.035$; for $60 < n \leq 80$, $\alpha_a = 0.04$; for $80 < n \leq 120$, $\alpha_a = 0.045$; and for $n > 120$, use $\alpha_a = 0.05$. Simulations (Wilcox, 2003b) suggest that for $p = 2, \dots, 8$, reasonably good control over the probability of a Type I error is obtained regardless of the correlations among the p variables under study. That is, the actual probability of a Type I error will not be much larger than the nominal level. However, for $n = 20$, and when sampling from a heavy-tailed distribution, the actual probability of a Type I error can drop below 0.01 when testing at the 0.05 level. So there is room for improvement, but currently, only the method just described has been found to be remotely successful for the problem at hand.

6.7.2 Extension of Hotelling's T^2 to Trimmed Means

Hotelling's T^2 test is a classic method for testing

$$H_0 : \mu = \mu_0,$$

where μ represents a vector of p population means and μ_0 is a vector of specified constants. The method is readily generalized to making inferences about the marginal trimmed means via the test statistic

$$T^2 = \frac{h(h-p)}{(n-1)p} (\bar{\mathbf{X}}_t - \mu_0)' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\bar{\mathbf{X}}_t - \mu_0),$$

where \mathbf{S} is the Winsorized covariance matrix corresponding to the p measures under study and $\bar{\mathbf{X}}_t$ is the vector of marginal trimmed means and h is the number of observations left after trimming. (The Winsorized covariance for any two variables was described in Section 5.9.13.) When the null hypothesis is true, T^2 has, approximately, an F distribution with degrees of freedom $v_1 = p$ and $v_2 = h - p$. That is, reject at the α level if

$$T^2 \geq f,$$

where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with $v_1 = p$ and $v_2 = h - p$ degrees of freedom.

Table 6.4: Cork Boring Weights for the North, East, South and West Sides of Trees.

N	E	S	W	N	E	S	W
72	66	76	77	91	79	100	75
60	53	66	63	56	68	47	50
56	57	64	58	79	65	70	61
41	29	36	38	81	80	68	58
32	32	35	36	78	55	67	60
30	35	34	26	46	38	37	38
39	39	31	27	39	35	34	37
42	43	31	25	32	30	30	32
37	40	31	25	60	50	67	54
33	29	27	36	35	37	48	39
32	30	34	28	39	36	39	31
63	45	74	63	50	34	37	40
54	46	60	52	43	37	39	50
47	51	52	53	48	54	57	43

6.7.3 R Functions smeanocrv2 and hotel1.tr

The R function

```
smeanocrv2(m, nullv=rep(0, ncol(m)), nboot=500, plotit=TRUE, MC=FALSE, xlab='VAR 1',
           ylab='VAR 2', STAND=F)
```

tests the hypothesis $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$, where θ is the population value of the OP estimator. The null value, θ_0 , is specified by the argument nullvec and defaults to a vector of zeros. The argument cop determines the measure of location used by the projection outlier detection method and MM determines the measure of scale that is used; see Section 6.4.10. If m is a matrix having two columns and plotit=T, the function plots the bootstrap values and indicates the approximate 0.95 confidence region. Setting the argument MC=T, a multicore processor can be used to compute the measure of location and the projection distances, which will help reduce execution time. (The function smeanocrv2 is the same as the function smeanocr, only smeanocr does not have an option for using a multicore processor.)

■ Example

Table 6.4 shows the cork boring weights for the north, east, south and west sides of 28 trees. (The data are from Rao, 1948.) For illustrative purposes, suppose the difference scores between the west and north sides of the trees are stored in column one of the R matrix m , and in column two are the difference scores between the west and east sides. **Figure 6.6** shows the approximate 0.95 confidence region for the typical dif-

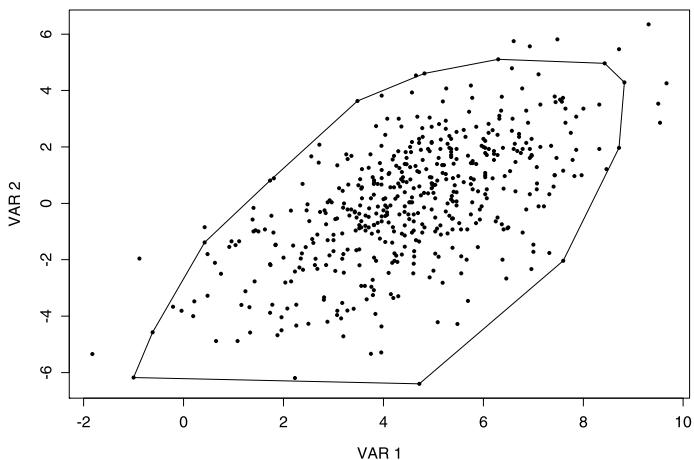


Figure 6.6: The 0.95 confidence region based on the OP estimate using the cork data, where VAR 1 is the difference between the west and north sides and VAR 2 is the difference between the west and east sides.

ference scores based on the OP-estimator and reported by the function smeanrc. The (generalized) p-value, when testing $H_0: \theta = (0, 0)$ is 0.004, and the 0.05 critical p-value is $\alpha_a = 0.025$, so reject at the 0.05 level. ■

The R function

```
hotel1.tr(x,null.value=0,tr=0.2)
```

performs the generalization of Hotelling's T^2 method to trimmed means. The argument null.value can contain a single value, which is taken to mean that all p hypothesized values are equal to the specified value, or the argument null.value can contain p values. The argument x is assumed to be a matrix or data frame. And as usual, tr=0.2 indicates that by default, 20% trimming is used.

6.7.4 Inferences Based on the MGV Estimator

A natural guess is that the inferential method based on the OP-estimator can be used with the MGV estimator as well. It appears, however, that some alternative modification of the bootstrap method is required. For example, if $n = 20$ and $p = 4$, the modified bootstrap method designed for the OP-estimator rejects at the 0.05 level if $\hat{p}^* \leq 0.02$ and appears to control the

probability of a Type I error for a wide range of distributions. However, if this method is applied with the OP-estimator replaced by the MGV estimator, the actual probability of a Type I error exceeds 0.1 when sampling from a normal distribution; to achieve an actual probability of a Type I error approximately equal to 0.05, reject if $\hat{p}^* \leq 0.006$. Switching to Mahalanobis distance makes matters worse. A better approach is to proceed exactly as was done with the OP-estimator, only use MGV distances when computing the (generalized) p-value.

6.7.5 R Function *smgvcr*

The R function

```
smgvcr(m,nullvec=rep(0,ncol(m)),SEED=T,op=0,nboot=500,plotit=T)
```

tests the hypothesis $H_0: \theta = \theta_0$, where θ is the population value of the MGV estimator. The null value, θ_0 , is specified by the argument *nullvec* and defaults to a vector of zeros. The argument *op* determines how the central values are determined when using the MGV outlier detection method; see the function *mgvmean*.

6.8 Comparing OP Measures of Location

The method in Section 6.7.1 is readily extended to the two-sample case. That is, for two independent groups, θ_j represents the value of θ (the population OP measure of location) associated with the j th group ($j = 1, 2$), and the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \theta_2.$$

Now, simply generate bootstrap samples from each group, compute the OP-estimator for each, label the results θ_1^* and θ_2^* , and set $d^* = \theta_1^* - \theta_2^*$. Repeat this process B times yielding d_1^*, \dots, d_B^* . Then H_0 is tested by determining how deeply the vector $(0, \dots, 0)$ is nested within the cloud of d_b^* values, $b = 1, \dots, B$, again using the projection depth. If its depth, relative to all B bootstrap estimates, is low, meaning that it is relatively far from the center, then reject. More precisely, let D_b be the OP distance associated with the b th bootstrap sample and let D_0 be the distance associated with $(0, \dots, 0)$. Set $I_b = 1$ if $D_b > D_0$, otherwise $I_b = 0$, in which case the estimated generalized p-value is

$$\hat{p} = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B I_b.$$

Currently, when $\alpha = 0.05$, it is recommended to set $n = \min(n_1, n_2)$ and use α_a as defined in the one sample case in Section 6.7.1. (Checks on this method, when the OP-estimator is replaced by the MGV estimator, have not been made.)

6.8.1 R Functions *smean2*, *matsplit* and *mat2grp*

The R function

```
smean2(m1,m2,nullv=rep(0,ncol(m1)),cop=3,MM=F,SEED=NA, nboot=500,plotit=T,MC=F)
```

tests the hypothesis that two multivariate distributions have the same measure of location using the method just described. Here, the data are assumed to be stored in the matrices *m1* and *m2*, each having *p* columns. The argument *nullv* indicates the null vector and defaults to a vector of zeros. The arguments *cop* and *MM* control how outliers are detected when using the projection method; see Section 6.4.10. As usual, to avoid the plot, set *plotit*=F. To use a multicore processor, set the argument *MC*=T.

Data Management

The R function

```
matsplit(m,coln)
```

is supplied in case it helps with data management. It splits the matrix *m*, into two matrices based on the values in the column of *m* indicated by the argument *coln*. This column is assumed to have two values only. Results are returned in \$*m1* and \$*m2*.

The R function

```
mat2grp(m,coln)
```

also splits the data in a matrix into groups based on the values in column *coln* of the matrix *m*. Unlike *matsplit*, *mat2grp* can handle more than two values (i.e., more than two groups), and it stores the results in list mode.

■ Example

[Thomson and Randall-Maciver \(1905\)](#) report four measurements for male Egyptian skulls from five different time periods: 4000 BC, 3300 BC, 1850 BC, 200 BC and 150 AD. There are thirty skulls from each time period and four measurements: maximal breadth, basibregmatic height, basialveolar length, and nasal height. For illustrative purposes, assume the data are stored in the R variable *skull*, the four measurements are stored in columns 1–4, and the time period is stored in column 5. Here, the first and last time periods are compared, based on the OP measure of location. First, split the data into five groups based on the time periods. For example, the R command

```
z=mat2grp(skull,5)
```

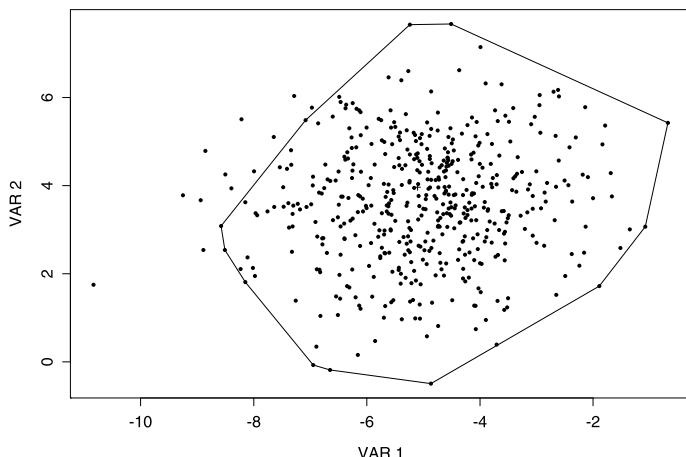


Figure 6.7: Using the first two skull measures for the first and last time periods, the plot shows the 0.95 confidence region for the difference between the OP measures of location.

accomplishes this goal. So $z[[1]]$ is a matrix containing the data corresponding to the first time period and $z[[5]]$ is a matrix containing the data for the final (fifth) time period, 150 AD. The R command

```
smean2(z[[1]][,1:4],z[[5]][,1:4])
```

compares the two groups based on all four measures. [Figure 6.7](#) shows the plot created by smean2 when using the first two variables only. The polygon is an approximate 0.95 confidence region for the difference between the measures of location. The p-value is 0.002. (Using all four measures, the p-value is 0.)

6.8.2 Comparing Robust Generalized Variances

Robust generalized variances can be compared as well. A percentile bootstrap appears to avoid Type I errors above the nominal level. But situations are encountered where the actual level can be substantially smaller than the nominal level. Corrections are available in some situations ([Wilcox, 2006e](#)), which are used by the R function described in the next section, but no details are given here.

6.8.3 R Function gvar2g

The R function

```
gvar2g(x, y, nboot = 100, DF = T, eop = 1, est = skipcov, tr=0.2, cop = 3, op = 1, MM = F,
SEED = T)
```

compares two independent groups based on a robust version of the generalized variance. By default, the OP covariance matrix is used in conjunction with Carling's modification of the boxplot rule. Setting MM=T, a MAD-median rule is used. If DF=T, and if the sample sizes are equal, the function reports an adjusted critical p-value, assuming that the goal is to have a Type I error probability equal to 0.05, the argument est=skipcov, and that other conditions are met. Otherwise, no adjusted critical value is reported. For information about the arguments op, cop and eop, see the R function skipcov.

6.9 Multivariate Density Estimators

This section outlines two multivariate density estimators that will be used when plotting data. The first is based on a simple extension of the expected frequency curve described in Chapter 3 and the other is a multivariate analog of the adaptive kernel density estimator. An extensive discussion of multivariate density estimation goes beyond the scope of this book, but some indication of the method used here, when plotting data, seems warranted.

The strategy behind the expected frequency curve is to determine the proportion of points that are close to \mathbf{X}_i . There are various ways this might be done and here a method based on the MVE covariance matrix is used. Extant results suggest this gives a reasonable first approximation of the shape of a distribution in the bivariate case, but there are many alternative methods for determining which points are close to \mathbf{X}_i , and virtually nothing is known about their relative merits for the problem at hand.

Here, the point $\mathbf{X}_{i'}$ is said to be close to \mathbf{X}_i if

$$\sqrt{(\mathbf{X}_{i'} - \mathbf{X}_i)' M^{-1} (\mathbf{X}_{i'} - \mathbf{X}_i)} \leq h,$$

where M is the MVE covariance matrix described in Section 6.3.1, and h is the span. Currently, $h = 0.8$ seems to be a good choice for most situations. Letting N_i represent the number of points close to \mathbf{X}_i , $f_i = N_i/n$ estimates the proportion of points close to \mathbf{X}_i . In the bivariate case, a plot of the data is created simply by plotting the points (\mathbf{X}_i, f_i) .

The expected frequency curve can be used as a first approximation when using an adaptive kernel density estimate. Here, once the expected frequency curve has been computed, the method described by Silverman (1986) is used based on the multivariate Epanechnikov kernel.

An outline of the method is as follows. First, rescale the p marginal distributions. More precisely, let $x_{i\ell} = X_{i\ell}/\min(s_\ell, \text{IQR}_\ell/1.34)$, where s_ℓ and IQR_ℓ are, respectively, the standard deviation and interquartile range based on $X_{1\ell}, \dots, X_{n\ell}$, $\ell = 1 \dots, p$. (Here, IQR is computed via the ideal fourths.) If $\mathbf{x}'\mathbf{x} < 1$, the multivariate Epanechnikov kernel is

$$K_e(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{(p+2)(1-\mathbf{x}'\mathbf{x})}{2c_p};$$

otherwise $K_e(\mathbf{x}) = 0$. The quantity c_p is the volume of the unit p -sphere: $c_1 = 2$, $c_2 = \pi$, and for $p > 2$ $c_p = 2\pi c_{p-2}/p$. Similar to Section 3.2, the estimate of the density function is

$$\hat{f}(t) = \frac{1}{n} \sum \frac{1}{h\lambda_i} K\{h^{-1}\lambda_i^{-1}(t - X_i)\},$$

where, following Silverman (1986, p. 86), the span is taken to be

$$h = A(p)n^{-1/(p+4)},$$

$A(1) = 1.77$, $A(2) = 2.78$ and for $p > 2$,

$$A(p) = \left(\frac{8p(p+2)(p+4)(2\sqrt{\pi})^p}{(2p+1)c_p} \right)^{1/(p+4)}.$$

The quantity λ_i is computed as described in Section 3.2.4, only now the initial estimate of f is based on the multivariate version of the expected frequency curve. The R functions rdplot and akerd, described in Section 3.2.5, perform the calculations.

6.10 A Two-Sample, Projection-Type Extension of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney Test

There are various ways to generalize the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test to the multivariate case, some of which are discussed in Chapter 7. Here, a projection-type extension is described that is based, in part, on the multivariate measures of location covered in this chapter. Consider two independent groups with p measures associated with each. Let θ_j be any measure of location associated with the j th group ($j = 1, 2$). The basic strategy is to (orthogonally) project the data onto the line connecting the points θ_1 and θ_2 , and then consider the proportion of projected points associated with the first group that are “less than” the projected points associated with the second.

To elaborate, let \mathcal{L} represent the line connecting the two measures of location and let d_j be the Euclidean distance of θ_j from the origin. For the moment, assume $\theta_1 \neq \theta_2$. Roughly, as we move along \mathcal{L} , the positive direction is taken to be the direction from θ_1 toward θ_2 if $d_1 \leq d_2$;

otherwise the direction is taken to be negative. So if the projection of the point X onto \mathcal{L} corresponds to the point U , and the projection of the point Y corresponds to the point V , and if moving from U to V corresponds to moving in the positive direction along \mathcal{L} , then it is said that X is “less than” Y .

For convenience, distances along the projected line are measured relative to the point midway between θ_1 and θ_2 , namely, $(\theta_1 + \theta_2)/2$. That is, the distance of a projected point refers to how far it is from $(\theta_1 + \theta_2)/2$, where the distance is taken to be negative if a projected point lies in the negative direction from $(\theta_1 + \theta_2)/2$. If D_x and D_y are the projected distances associated with two randomly sampled observations, \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} , then it is said that \mathbf{X} is “less than”, “equal to”, or “greater than” \mathbf{Y} according to whether D_x is less than, equal to, or greater than D_y , respectively. In symbols, it is said that $\mathbf{X} < \mathbf{Y}$ if $D_x < D_y$, $\mathbf{X} \simeq \mathbf{Y}$ if $D_x = D_y$, and $\mathbf{X} > \mathbf{Y}$ if $D_x > D_y$. Extending a standard convention in rank-based methods in an obvious way, to deal with situations where $D_x = D_y$ can occur, let

$$\eta = P(\mathbf{X} < \mathbf{Y}) + 0.5P(\mathbf{X} \simeq \mathbf{Y}).$$

The goal is to estimate η and test

$$H_0 : \eta = 0.5. \quad (6.23)$$

First consider estimation. Given an estimated measure of location $\hat{\theta}_j$ for the j th group ($j = 1, 2$), the projected distances are computed as follows. Let $\|\hat{\theta}_j\|$ be the Euclidean norm associated with $\hat{\theta}_j$, let $S = 1$ if $\|\hat{\theta}_1\| \geq \|\hat{\theta}_2\|$, otherwise $S = -1$. Let

$$\mathbf{C} = (\hat{\theta}_1 + \hat{\theta}_2)/2,$$

$$\mathbf{B} = S(\hat{\theta}_1 - \hat{\theta}_2),$$

$$A = \|\mathbf{B}\|^2,$$

$$\mathbf{U}_i = \mathbf{X}_i - \mathbf{C},$$

and for any i and $k = 1, \dots, p$, let

$$W_i = \sum_{k=1}^p U_{ik} B_k,$$

$$T_{ik} = \frac{W_i}{A} B_k$$

in which case the distance associated with the projection of \mathbf{X}_i is

$$D_{xi} = \text{sign}(W_i) \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^p T_{ik}^2},$$

$i = 1, \dots, m$. The distances associated with the \mathbf{Y}_i values are computed simply by replacing \mathbf{X}_i with \mathbf{Y}_i in the definition of \mathbf{U}_i . The resulting distances are denoted by D_{yi} , $i = 1, \dots, n$.

To estimate η , let

$$V_{ii'} = \text{sign}(D_{xi} - D_{yi'}),$$

and

$$\bar{V} = \frac{1}{mn} \sum_{i=1}^m \sum_{i'=1}^n V_{ii'}.$$

Then extending results in Cliff (1996) in an obvious way,

$$\hat{\eta} = \frac{1 - \bar{V}}{2}$$

is an unbiased estimate of η and takes into account tied values.

When testing Eq. (6.23), Wilcox (2005a) found that a basic percentile bootstrap method is unsatisfactory in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error but that a slight modification of the method performs reasonably well in simulations. The method begins by subtracting θ_j from every observation in the j th group. In effect, shift the data so that null hypothesis is true. Now, for each group, generate bootstrap samples from the shifted data and estimate η based on the two bootstrap samples just generated. Label the result $\hat{\eta}^*$. Repeat this B times yielding $\hat{\eta}_1^*, \dots, \hat{\eta}_B^*$ and put these B values in ascending order yielding $\hat{\eta}_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\eta}_{(B)}^*$. Then reject H_0 if $\hat{\eta}_{(\ell+1)}^* > \hat{\eta}$ or if $\hat{\eta}_{(u)}^* < \hat{\eta}$, where $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = B - \ell$. Here, $B = 1000$ is assumed unless stated otherwise.

6.10.1 R Functions `mulwmw` and `mulwmwv2`

The R function

```
mulwmw(m1,m2,plotit=T,cop=3,alpha=0.05,nboot=1000,pop=4,fr=0.8,pr=F)
```

performs the multivariate extension of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test just described, where the arguments $m1$ and $m2$ are any matrices (having p columns) containing the data for the two groups. The argument pr can be used to track the progress of the bootstrap method used to compute a critical value. If $plotit=T$, a plot of the projected distances is created, the type of plot being controlled by the argument pop . The choices are

- $pop=1$, dotplots
- $pop=2$, boxplots
- $pop=3$, expected frequency curve
- $pop=4$, adaptive kernel density estimate

The argument cop controls which measure of location is used. The choices are:

- $cop=1$, Donoho–Gasko Median
- $cop=2$, MCD estimator
- $cop=3$, marginal medians
- $cop=4$, OP estimator

The R function

```
mulwmwv2(m1,m2,plotit=T,cop=3,alpha=0.05,nboot=1000,pop=4,fr=0.8,pr=F)
```

is the same as `mulwmw`, only it also reports a robust explanatory measure of effect size, described in Section 5.3.4, based on the projected points.

■ Example

[Figure 6.8](#) shows four plots corresponding to the various choices for the argument pop using the skull data used in [Figure 6.6](#). The upper-left panel used $pop=1$, the upper-right panel used $pop=2$, the lower left used $pop=3$, and the lower right used $pop=4$.

6.11 A Relative Depth Analog of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney Test

This section describes another approach to generalizing the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test to the multivariate case. To explain the strategy, first consider the univariate case and let $D = X - Y$, where X and Y are independent random variables. As explained in Section 5.7, heteroscedastic analogs of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test are concerned with how deeply zero is nested within the distribution of D . When tied values occur with probability zero, the usual null hypothesis is, in essence, that the depth of zero is equal to the highest possible

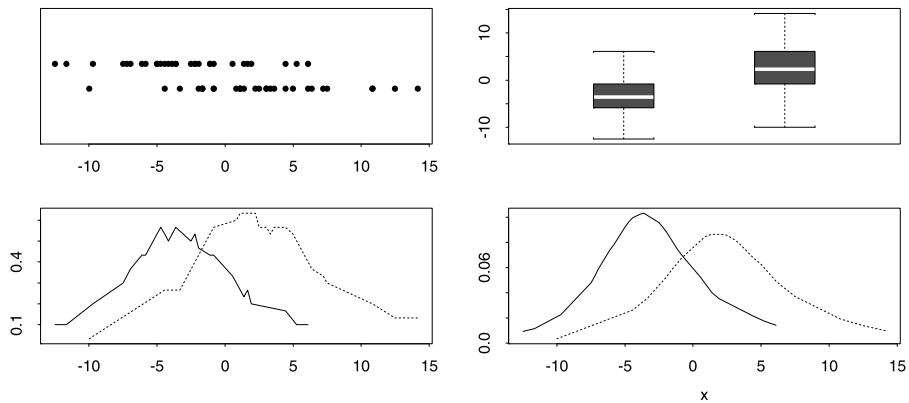


Figure 6.8: An example of the four types of plots created by the function `mulwmw`.

depth. (That is, the hypothesis is that the median of the distribution of D is zero.) A slightly different formulation, which is useful for present purposes, is to say that the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test is aimed at determining whether the depth of the value zero differs from the maximum possible depth associated with a distribution. A simple way of quantifying this difference is with Q , say, the depth of zero divided by the maximum possible depth, in which case the goal is to test

$$H_0 : Q = 1. \quad (6.24)$$

Put a bit more formally, imagine that \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} are independent p -variate random variables and let $D_j = X_j - Y_j$ be the difference between the j th marginal distributions, $j = 1, \dots, p$. Let A denote the depth of $\mathbf{0}$ (a vector having length p), relative to the joint distribution of $\mathbf{D} = \mathbf{X} - \mathbf{Y}$, and let B be the maximum possible depth for any point, again relative to the joint distribution of \mathbf{D} . Then

$$Q = \frac{A}{B}.$$

To estimate Q , let X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n_1$; $j = 1, \dots, p$) and $Y_{i'j}$ ($i' = 1, \dots, n_2$; $j = 1, \dots, p$) be random samples and for fixed i and i' , consider the vector \mathbf{D} formed by the p differences $X_{ij} - Y_{i'j}$, $j = 1, \dots, p$. There are $L = n_1 n_2$ such vectors, one for each i and i' , which are labeled \mathbf{D}_ℓ , $\ell = 1, \dots, L$. Let P_0 denote the depth of $\mathbf{0}$ relative to the these L vectors, and let P_ℓ be the depth of the ℓ th vector, again relative to the L vectors \mathbf{D}_ℓ , $\ell = 1, \dots, L$. Let $P_m = \max P_\ell$, the maximum taken over $\ell = 1, \dots, L$. Then an estimate of Q is

$$\hat{Q} = \frac{P_0}{P_m}.$$

Evidently, \hat{Q} is not asymptotically normal when the null hypothesis is true. Note that in this case, Q lies on the boundary of the parameter space. Bootstrap methods have been considered for testing H_0 , but their small-sample properties have proven to be difficult to study via simulations because of the high execution time required to compute the necessary depths. Let $N = \min(n_1, n_2)$ and suppose $\alpha = 0.05$. Currently, the only method that has performed well in simulations is to reject if

$$\hat{Q} \leq c,$$

where for $p = 2$ or 3 ,

$$c = \max(0.0057N + 0.466, 1),$$

for $p = 4$ or 5 ,

$$c = \max(0.00925N + 0.430, 1),$$

for $p = 6$ or 7 ,

$$c = \max(0.0264N + 0.208, 1),$$

for $p = 8$,

$$c = \max(0.0149N + 0.533, 1),$$

and for $p > 8$,

$$c = \max(0.04655p + 0.463, 1).$$

(See [Wilcox, 2003f](#), for more details. Critical values for other choices of α have not been determined.)

6.11.1 R Function `mwmw`

The R function

```
mwmw(m1,m2,cop=5,pr=T,plotit=T,pop=1,fr=0.8,dop=1,op=1)
```

performs the multivariate extension of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test just described, where the arguments `m1` and `m2` are any matrices (having p columns) containing the data for the two groups. The argument `cop` determines the center of the data that will be used when computing halfspace depth. The choices are:

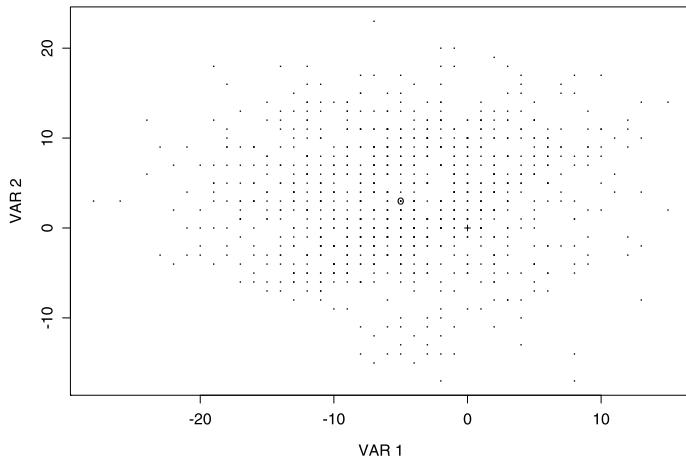


Figure 6.9: An example of the plot created by the function `mwmw`. The estimated center is marked by an o, and the null center is marked with a +.

- `cop=1`, Donoho–Gasko Median
- `cop=2`, MCD estimator
- `cop=3`, marginal medians
- `cop=4`, MVE estimator
- `cop=5`, OP estimator

Setting the argument `dop=2` causes halfspace depth to be approximated using method A2 in Section 6.2.3; by default, method A1 is used. For bivariate data a plot is created based on the value of the argument `pop`, the possible values being 1, 2, and 3, which correspond to a scatterplot, an expected frequency curve, and an adaptive kernel density estimate. The argument `fr` is the span used by the expected frequency curve. As usual, setting `plotit=F` avoids the plot. The function returns an estimate of η in the variable `phat`.

■ Example

The first two skull measures used in the example of Section 6.7.1 are used to illustrate the plot created by the R function `mwmw`. The plot is shown in Figure 6.9. The center of the data is marked by an o and based on the OP-estimator, and the null vector is indicated by a +. The function reports that `phat` is 0.33 indicating that the estimate of \hat{Q} is 0.33. This is less than the critical value 0.62, so reject.

6.12 Comparisons Based on Depth

This section describes yet another approach to comparing two independent groups based on multivariate data. The basic idea is that if groups do not differ, the typical depth of the points of the first group, relative to the second, should be the same as the typical depth of the second group, relative to the first. Roughly, the issue is the extent to which the groups are separated as measured by some notion of depth. Here, halfspace depth is used exclusively, simply because this special case has received the most attention from an inferential point of view.

Here we let $T_D(\mathbf{x}; F)$ represent Tukey's halfspace depth of \mathbf{x} relative to the multivariate distribution F . As usual, let \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} represent independent, p -variate random variables. The corresponding distributions are denoted by F and G . Let

$$R(\mathbf{y}; F) = P_F(T_D(\mathbf{X}; F) \leq T_D(\mathbf{y}; F)).$$

That is, $R(\mathbf{y}; F)$ is the probability that the depth of a randomly sampled \mathbf{X} , relative to F , is less than or equal to the depth of some particular point, \mathbf{y} , again relative to F . Said another way, $R(\mathbf{y}; F)$ is the fraction of the F population that is less central than the value \mathbf{y} . A *quality index* proposed by [Liu and Singh \(1993\)](#) is

$$Q(F, G) = E_G(R(\mathbf{Y}; F)),$$

the average of all $R(\mathbf{y}; F)$ values with respect to the distribution G . Put another way, for a randomly sampled \mathbf{X} and \mathbf{Y} ,

$$Q(F, G) = P(D(\mathbf{X}; F) \leq D(\mathbf{Y}; F))$$

is the probability that the depth of \mathbf{Y} is greater than or equal to depth of \mathbf{X} . Liu and Singh show that the range of Q is $[0, 1]$ and when $F = G$, $Q(F, G) = 1/2$. Moreover, when $Q < 1/2$, this reflects a location shift and/or scale increase from F to G . They also develop inferential methods based on Q where it is assumed that F is some reference distribution. Here a variation of their method is considered where the goal is to be sensitive to shifts in location. (For relevant asymptotic results, see [Zuo & He, 2006](#).)

Suppose the sample sizes are m and n for the distributions F and G , respectively. Let

$$\bar{D}_{12} = \frac{1}{m} \sum T_D(\mathbf{X}_i; G_n)$$

be the average depth of the m vectors of observations sampled from F relative to the empirical distribution G_n associated with the second group. If \bar{D}_{12} is relatively small, this can be due to a shift in location or differences in scale. But if

$$\bar{D}_{21} = \frac{1}{n} \sum T_D(\mathbf{Y}_i; F_m)$$

is relatively small as well, this reflects a separation of the two empirical distributions which is roughly associated with a difference in location. (Of course, groups can differ in scale as well when both \bar{D}_{12} and \bar{D}_{21} are small.) So a test of $H_0: F = G$ that is sensitive to shifts in location is one that rejects if

$$\bar{D}_M = \max(\bar{D}_{12}, \bar{D}_{21})$$

is sufficiently small.

Assuming $m < n$, let $N = (3m + n)/4$. (If $m > n$, $N = (3n + m)/4$.) The only known method that performs well in simulations when testing at the 0.05 level, based on avoiding a Type I error probability greater than the nominal level, is to reject if $\bar{D}_M \leq d_N$, where for $p = 1$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.4578}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.2536;$$

for $p = 2$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.3}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.1569;$$

for $p = 3$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.269}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.0861;$$

for $p = 4$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.1568}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.0540;$$

for $p = 5$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.0968}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.0367;$$

for $p = 6$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.0565}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.0262;$$

for $p = 7$,

$$d_N = \frac{-0.0916}{\sqrt{N}} + 0.0174;$$

and for $p > 8$, $d_N = 0.13$. In terms of Type I errors, the main difficulty is that when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, the actual Type I error probability can drop well below 0.05

when testing at the 0.05 level (Wilcox, 2003c). (For $p > 8$, as p increases, the actual probability of a Type I error decreases.)

As for a method that is relatively sensitive to differences in scatter, which can be used for p -variate data, first estimate $Q(F, G)$ with

$$\hat{Q}(F, G) = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n R(Y_i; F_m). \quad (6.25)$$

(Properties of this estimator are reported by Liu & Singh, 1993.) Similarly, the estimate of $Q(G, F)$ is

$$\hat{Q}(G, F) = \frac{1}{m} \sum_{i=1}^m R(X_i; G_n). \quad (6.26)$$

The goal is to test

$$H_0 : Q(F, G) = Q(G, F). \quad (6.27)$$

Unlike the method based on \bar{D}_{12} and \bar{D}_{21} , a basic percentile bootstrap method performs well in simulations. To begin, generate bootstrap samples from both groups in the usual way and let $\hat{Q}^*(F, G)$ and $\hat{Q}^*(G, F)$ be the resulting bootstrap estimates of $Q(F, G)$ and $Q(G, F)$. Set $D^* = \hat{Q}^*(F, G) - Q^*(G, F)$. Repeat this process B times yielding D_b^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. Put these B values in ascending order yielding $D_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}^*$. Then a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $Q(F, G) - Q(G, F)$ is simply $(D_{(\ell+1)}^*, D_{(u)}^*)$, where $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $u = B - \ell$. Of course, reject H_0 if this interval does not contain zero.

6.12.1 R Functions *lsqs3* and *depthg2*

The R function

```
lsqs3(x,y,plotit=T,cop=2)
```

compares two independent groups based on the statistic \hat{D}_M described in the previous section. For bivariate data, if `plotit=T`, a scatterplot of the data is produced with the points associated with the second group indicated by a circle. The function

```
depthg2(x,y,alpha=0.05,nboot=500,plotit=T,op=T)
```

tests (6.27). If the argument `op` is set to `T`, the function prints a message when each bootstrap step is complete.

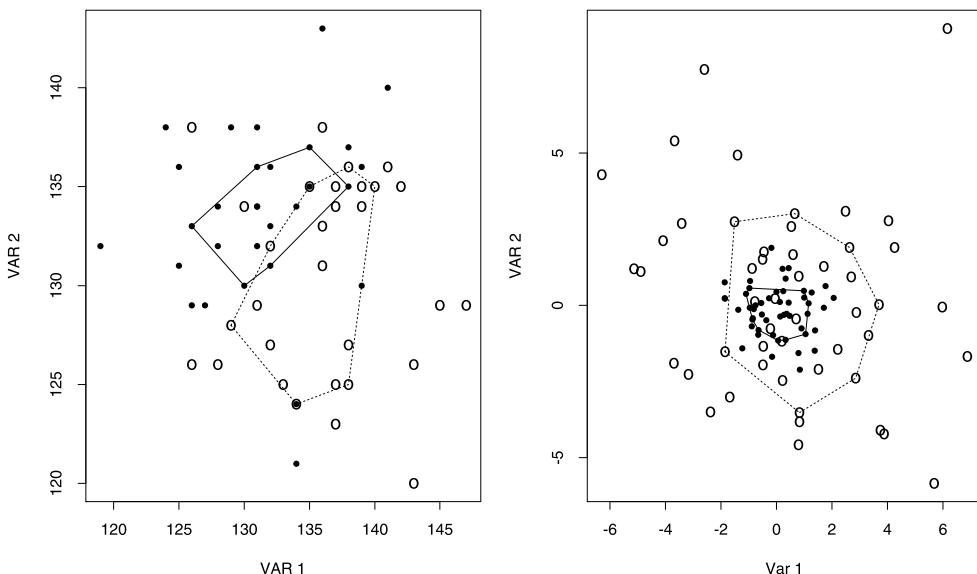


Figure 6.10: The left panel is the plot created by the function lsqs3 using the skull data in Section 6.8.1. The right panel is the plot based on data generated from a bivariate normal distribution where the marginal distributions have a common mean, but their standard deviations differ. One has a standard deviation of one and the other a standard deviation of three.

■ Example

The left panel of Figure 6.10 shows the plot created by lsqs3 based on the skull data described in Section 6.7.1. (The same plot is created by depthg2.) The function lsqs3 rejects at the 0.05 level suggesting a shift in location, but depthg2, which is designed to be sensitive to differences in the amount of scatter, does not reject. The right panel shows a scatterplot where the both groups have bivariate normal distributions that differ in scale only; the marginal distributions of the first group have standard deviation one, and for the other group the marginal distributions have standard deviation three. (Here, $m = n = 50$.) Now the function lsqs3 finds no difference between the groups, but depthg2 does (at the 0.05 level).

■ Example

Table 6.5 shows the data for 24 schizophrenia patients and 18 demographically matched controls. (The data are stored in the files schiz1.data and schiz2.data; see

Table 6.5: Prepulse Inhibition Measures for Schizophrenia Patients and Controls.

Schizophrenia Patients		Control	
PP120	PM120	PP120	PM120
-88.82	-92.40	-100.00	-31.47
13.54	-36.70	-71.48	-15.38
-37.22	0.08	-87.01	-64.87
-43.26	-42.40	-100.00	-95.94
-43.35	-42.25	-100.00	-81.24
-31.64	-41.30	93.95	109.44
-98.73	-96.56	-59.89	-35.97
-37.35	-33.82	-79.88	-79.24
-8.48	50.59	-53.33	-38.19
-63.87	-8.80	-90.08	-42.69
26.55	32.13	-40.25	10.57
-91.05	-95.85	-33.78	-7.60
-8.07	9.82	-89.18	-61.35
-97.65	-95.80	-84.78	-58.98
-60.80	-52.63	-64.74	-39.57
-33.58	-56.36	-91.10	-82.26
-15.80	-38.51	-74.82	-66.60
-12.92	1.50	-86.52	-48.74
-77.35	-86.07		
-85.09	-84.71		
-33.53	-43.66		
-8.67	-9.40		
-89.21	-86.80		
-77.76	-75.83		

Chapter 1.) PP120 is a prepulse inhibition measure taken 120 milliseconds following the onset of an attended stimulus, and PM120 is the prepulse inhibition measure taken 120 milliseconds following the onset of an ignored stimulus. The test statistic returned by `lsqs3` is 0.049, the critical value is 0.089, so reject at the 0.05 level. It is left as an exercise to verify that comparing PM120 using means, trimmed means or an M-estimator, no difference is found at the 0.05 level, but for PP120, the reverse is true. However, a plot of the data indicates that there is a sense in which PM120 (labeled VAR 2) for the control group lies above and to the left the points corresponding to the schizophrenia patients. Given PP120, PM120 tends to be greater for the control group. ■

6.13 Comparing Dependent Groups Based on All Pairwise Differences

This section describes an affine invariant method for comparing J dependent groups that is based on a simple extension of the method in Section 6.11. For any $j < m$, let $D_{ijm} =$

$X_{ij} - X_{im}$. Let F be the joint distribution of \mathbf{D}_{jm} , and let P be the depth of $\mathbf{0}$ relative to F , divided by the maximum possible depth. Then $0 \leq P \leq 1$ and the goal is to test

$$H_0 : P = 1. \quad (6.28)$$

A simple estimate of P is

$$\hat{P} = \frac{A}{C}, \quad (6.29)$$

where A is the halfspace depth of $\mathbf{0}$ among these n vectors and C is the maximum depth among these n points.

An alternative approach is to determine the halfspace median, which is just the average of the deepest points, and then use the depth of the halfspace median as an estimate of the maximum possible depth. Provided n is not too small, this alternative approach seems to have no practical value, but it can be useful when n is very small. For instance, if $n = 5$ and sampling is from a bivariate normal distribution with a correlation of zero, it is common to have all five depths equal to 0.05, but the depth of the halfspace median is typically close to 0.4.

It should be stressed that affine invariance refers to the D_{ijm} values because it is the depth of these difference scores that are used. It can be seen that the method is not affine invariant in terms of the X_{ij} values.

A technical problem is that generally, the MCD estimate of location cannot be computed when working with the D_{ijm} values because the corresponding covariance matrix is singular. Consequently, the approximation of halfspace depth with method A1 in Section 6.2.3 is not immediately applicable. To deal with this problem, compute the MCD estimate of location based on the original X_{ij} values, yielding say $(\hat{\xi}_1, \dots, \hat{\xi}_J)$, and then approximate the halfspace depth of the D_{ijm} values with method A1 by taking the center of location of the D_{ijm} to be $\hat{\theta}_{jm} = \hat{\xi}_j - \hat{\xi}_m$.

An alternative strategy is to use an approximation of halfspace depth that does not require that the D_{ijm} values have a nonsingular covariance matrix. This can be accomplished with method A2 in Section 6.2.3.

As was the case in Section 6.10, when the null hypothesis is true, the distribution of \hat{P} is not asymptotically normal. The reason is that for this special case, P lies on the boundary of the parameter space and so for any general situation where \hat{P} is a consistent estimate of P , it must be that $\hat{P} \leq 1$ with the probability of $\hat{P} = 1$ increasing as the sample sizes get large. For similar reasons, based on theoretical results in Liu and Singh (1997), the expectation is that when H_0 is true, a basic percentile bootstrap method for computing a confidence interval for P will fail, and this has been found to be the case in simulations.

Consider rejecting H_0 if $\hat{P} \leq c$. When testing at the 0.05 level, the following approximations of c appear to perform well:

$J = 2$	$\hat{c} = -1.46n^{-0.5} + 0.95$
$J = 3$	$\hat{c} = -1.71n^{-0.5} + 1.00$
$J = 4$	$\hat{c} = -1.77n^{-0.5} + 1.06$
$J = 5$	$\hat{c} = -1.76n^{-0.5} + 1.11$
$J = 6$	$\hat{c} = -1.62n^{-0.3} + 1.41$
$J = 7$	$\hat{c} = -1.71n^{-0.3} + 1.49$
$J = 8$	$\hat{c} = -1.38n^{-0.3} + 1.39$

Note that as $n \rightarrow \infty$, $c \rightarrow 1$. Moreover, as J increases, c converges to 1 more quickly. So in effect, reject if $\hat{P} < \min(\hat{c}, 1)$.

The method just described is affine invariant, roughly meaning that it is metric free. That is, if the $n \times p$ matrix of data is post multiplied by a nonsingular matrix \mathbf{A} , \hat{P} is not altered.

6.13.1 R Function *dfried*

The R function

```
dfried(m,plotit=TRUE,pop=0,fr=0.8,v2=F,op=FALSE)
```

tests the hypothesis $H_0: P = 1$ as just described. Here, m is any R variable having matrix mode with n rows and p columns. If $p = 2$ and plotit=T, a plot of the difference scores is created with the type of plot controlled by the argument pop. The choices are:

1. pop=0, adaptive kernel density
2. pop=1, expected frequency curve
3. pop=2, kernel density estimate using normal kernel
4. pop=3, R built-in kernel density estimate
5. pop=4, boxplot

The argument fr controls the span when using the expected frequency curve. Setting v2=T causes method A2 to be used to approximate halfspace depth, and op=T results in using the depth of Tukey's median as an estimate of the maximum possible halfspace depth.

6.14 Robust Principal Components Analysis

Roughly, principal components analysis (PCA) is aimed at finding p linear combinations of m ($p < m$) observed variables that explains most of the variability in the data. To quickly review the strategy underlying the classic approach, momentarily consider the situation where $p = 1$.

Denoting the data for the j th variable by X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, \dots, m$), the goal is to reduce the m variables to a single variable via some linear combination of the m variables, denoted by

$$U_i = \sum_{j=1}^m h_j X_{ij},$$

with the constants h_1, \dots, h_m chosen so as to maximize the variance of the U_i values subject to $\sum h_j^2 = 1$. Now consider the problem of reducing the p variables down to two variables rather than just one. So for the i th participant, the goal is to compute two linear combinations of the p variables based on two sets of weights:

$$U_{i1} = h_{11}X_{i1} + \dots + h_{1p}X_{ip},$$

and

$$U_{i2} = h_{21}X_{i1} + \dots + h_{2p}X_{ip}$$

($i = 1, \dots, n$), where for fixed k , $\sum h_{jk}^2 = 1$ and the variance of the U_{ik} values is maximized subject to the condition that U_k and U_ℓ have correlation zero, $k \neq \ell$. More generally, m linear combinations are sought that maximize the variance of the marginal distributions with the property that any two linear combinations have zero correlation. This goal is accomplished by taking $\mathbf{h}_1, \dots, \mathbf{h}_m$ to be the eigenvectors of the usual covariance matrix. The columns U_1, \dots, U_m of the matrix \mathbf{U} are called the *principal components* of \mathbf{X} . (For a recent discussion regarding the interpretation of principal components, see [Anaya-Izquierdo, Critchley, & Vines, 2011](#).) Moreover, the variance of U_k is λ_k , where $\lambda_1 \geq \dots \geq \lambda_m$, and λ_k is the eigenvalue corresponding to the eigenvector \mathbf{h}_k . The U_{ij} are called the *principal component scores*.

But because the usual covariance matrix is not robust, situations are encountered where upon closer scrutiny the resulting components explain a structure that has been created by a mere one or two outliers (e.g., [Huber, 1981](#), p. 199). This has led to numerous suggestions regarding how the classic PCA method might be made more robust. A simple approach is to replace the covariance matrix with a robust scatter matrix or a robust correlation matrix. [Devlin et al. \(1981\)](#) used an M estimator with a low breakdown point, so a relatively small number of outliers can cause practical problems. The minimum volume ellipsoid (MVE) estimator, as well as the (fast) minimum covariance determinant (MCD) estimator, might be used, but concerns about these estimators have already been noted. A method based on an S-estimator was studied by [Croux and Haesbroeck \(2000\)](#), and a fast and simple method was proposed by [Locantore, Marron, Simpson, Tripoli, and Zhang \(1999\)](#). [Li and Chen \(1985\)](#) suggest a projection pursuit approach meaning that directions are sought that maximize or minimize some

robust measure of dispersion. (One appealing feature of projection-type methods is that they can be used when the number of variables exceeds the sample size.) Croux and Ruiz-Gazen (2005, Section 5.1) describe an algorithm for implementing the Li and Chen method. (Also see Hubert, Rousseeuw, & Verboven, 2002; Salibian-Barrera, Van Aelst, & Willems, 2006.) One negative feature of the Li and Chen method is its computational complexity. Maronna (2005) extended this projection pursuit technique in a manner that improves computational efficiency and statistical performance. Yet another recent suggestion was made by Hubert, Rousseeuw, and Vanden Branden (2005) that was later refined by Engelen, Hubert, and Vanden Branden (2005), which is used here. Roughly, the first step is to compute a measure of outlyingness for each of the n points, where n is the sample size. Then for h chosen by the investigator, the h least outlying data points are used to compute a measure of location and scatter, which in turn are used to determine how many components will be retained, as well as the projected data points. Following Engelen et al. (2005), a reweighting step is added based on the orthogonal distances of the observations with respect to the first estimated PCA subspace. It is only at the first stage of the algorithm that the number of points eliminated must be specified via the choice for h . (For some additional results on robust approaches to PCA, see Serneels & Verdonck, 2008; Chen, Martin, & Montague, 2009. For a rank-based approach, see Hallin, Paindaveine, & Verdebout, 2014.)

Generally, the methods just listed are based in part on maximizing some measure of variation associated with the marginal distributions of the m principal components. Another approach is to choose linear combinations (principal components) aimed at maximizing some robust generalized variance associated with the principal component scores (Wilcox, 2008c). That is, take into account the overall structure of the data when measuring variation, in contrast to maximizing the variance of the individual principal component scores. (Details are given in Section 6.14.6.)

There is yet another generalization of PCA that should be mentioned: kernel PCA (Schölkopf, Smola, & Müller, 1998). Roughly, the method first maps the data into a higher-dimensional feature space. (It generalizes regular PCA by replacing the usual inner product with a broader class of functions.) A robust version of kernel PCA has been studied by Debruyne, Hubert, and van Horebeek (2010). More information can be found at <http://lavaan.org>.

6.14.1 R Functions `prcomp` and `regpca`

The built-in R function

```
prcomp(x,cor=F)
```

performs the classic principal component analysis. By default it uses the covariance matrix rather than the correlation matrix. In case it is useful, the R function

```
regpca(x, cor = T, loadings = T, SCORES = F, scree = T, xlab = 'Principal Component',
       ylab = 'Proportion of Variance')
```

is provided, which performs the classic principal component analysis after first removing any rows of data for which one or more columns having missing values. Unlike prcomp, the function regpca uses the correlation matrix by default. And it creates a scree plot when the argument scree=T, which is a line segment that shows the fraction of the total variance among all m components as a function of the number of components. (The scree plot is illustrated in Section 6.14.8.)

6.14.2 Maronna's Method

This section provides a brief outline of the method proposed by [Maronna \(2005\)](#), which is based in part on an iterative algorithm. Let \mathbf{x}_i , $i = 1, \dots, n$, be an m -dimensional dataset, let $q = m - p$ and let \mathbf{C} be an orthonormal $q \times m$ matrix. That is, $\mathbf{CC}' = \mathbf{I}_q$. For some q -vector \mathbf{a} , let

$$r_i(\mathbf{C}, \mathbf{a}) = \|\mathbf{Cx}_i - \mathbf{a}\|^2,$$

and let $\sigma(\mathbf{r})$ be a scale statistic, where $\mathbf{r} = (r_1, \dots, r_n)$. The goal is to determine \mathbf{C} and \mathbf{a} so as to minimize $\sigma(\mathbf{r})$. Maronna considers two choices for $\sigma(\mathbf{r})$: an M-scale and an L-scale. Here the focus is on the L-scale

$$\sigma(\mathbf{r}) = \sum_{i=1}^h r_{(i)},$$

where $r_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq r_{(h)}$, $h < n$, primarily because it is faster and easier to compute. Following [Maronna \(2005\)](#), h is taken to be the largest integer less than or equal to $(n + m - q + 2)/2$, where $q = m - p$.

6.14.3 The SPCA Method

The *spherical PC* method (SPCA) was derived by [Locantore et al. \(1999\)](#). Let μ be the L_1 median, which is computed by the R function spat, or the R function L1medcen. Let $\mathbf{y}_i = (\mathbf{x}_i - \mu)/\|\mathbf{x}_i - \mu\|$. The procedure consists of using the eigenvectors $\mathbf{b}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}_m$ of the

covariance matrix of the \mathbf{y}_i . But the eigenvalues are in general not consistent, in which case they are replaced by

$$\lambda_j = S(\mathbf{b}'_j \mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{b}'_j \mathbf{x}_n)^2,$$

where S is any robust measure of scale. Following [Maronna \(2005\)](#), S is taken to be the median absolute deviation (MAD) statistic. The R package rrcov contains the function PcaLocantore that performs SPCA.

6.14.4 Method HRVB

[Hubert et al. \(2005\)](#) suggest a method that combines projection pursuit ideas with robust scatter matrix estimation. An adaptation of this method, called *method HRVB* was derived by [Engelen et al. \(2005\)](#) and is used here. The computational details are quite involved, and so only a brief outline of the method is provided.

The method begins by finding the h least outlying data points. The choice for h is made by the investigator and Hubert et al. consider choices of the form $h = \max\{\lceil \alpha n \rceil, \lceil (n + k_{\max} + 1)/2 \rceil\}$, where α is some value between 0.5 and 1 and k_{\max} is the maximum number of components that will be computed; they use $\alpha = 0.75$ and $k_{\max} = 10$ and the same is done here. Next, outlyingness is measured using a maximum standardized distance among the class of all possible projections of the data onto a unidimensional space. Not all projections can be considered, so for n small they focus on all directions through two points, and for $\binom{n}{2} > 250$ they take at random 250 projections. They then focus on the mean and covariance matrix of the h points that have the smallest distances just computed. The next step computes fast MCD for the projected data resulting from the previous step, which is used to compute a reweighted mean and covariance matrix that increases statistical efficiency. A consistency factor is used to make the estimator unbiased at normal distributions.

6.14.5 Method OP

Method OP simply removes any outliers detected by the projection approach described in Section [6.4.9](#). Then the classic PCA is applied to the data that remain and the p -dimensional representation of the data is computed in the usual way.

[Croux and Ruiz-Gazen \(2005\)](#) suggest an algorithm that begins with projections based in part on the L_1 median, but it is evident that their approach differs from method OP. Method OP attempts to eliminate outliers in a manner that takes into account the overall structure of the data. The algorithm used by Croux and Ruiz-Gazen does not do this, but rather searches for projections that maximize a robust measure of scatter applied to the marginal distributions of

the scores. Also, Croux, Filzmoser, and Oliveira (2007, pp. 6–7) note that the Croux and Ruiz-Gazen (2005) and Hubert et al. (2002) projection algorithms suffer from severe downward bias. It is unknown whether method OP suffers from the same problem.

6.14.6 Method PPCA

Method PPCA is aimed at finding principal components that maximize a robust generalized variance. Let \mathbf{B} be any $p \times m$ matrix having the property that for any j ($1 \leq j \leq p$),

$$\sum_{k=1}^m b_{jk}^2 = 1,$$

and for any $j \neq \ell$

$$\sum_{k=1}^m b_{jk} b_{\ell k} = 0.$$

Given \mathbf{B} , the resulting p -dimensional representation of the data is

$$\mathbf{z}_i = \mathbf{B}(\mathbf{x}_i - \boldsymbol{\theta}), \quad (6.30)$$

where $\boldsymbol{\theta}$ is some measure of location. (All of the methods outlined in this section use Eq. (6.30) and differ in how they determine \mathbf{B} and $\boldsymbol{\theta}$.) The \mathbf{z}_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) are the *scores*. (Scores based on the other robust methods in this section are computed in a similar manner.) Let $\hat{\Xi}$ be an estimate of some robust generalized variance based on the \mathbf{z}_i values. Here the covariance matrix based on the median ball algorithm is used unless stated otherwise and $\hat{\Xi}$ is taken to be the determinant of this covariance matrix that is computed with the \mathbf{z}_i values.

The goal is to determine the matrix \mathbf{B} that maximizes $\hat{\Xi}$. The method used here begins with an initial estimate of \mathbf{B} , say \mathbf{B}_0 , based on the Hubert et al. (2005) estimator (method HVRB). Then use the Nelder and Mead (1965) algorithm to search for the matrix \mathbf{B} that maximizes $\hat{\Xi}$. (The Nelder–Mead algorithm is applied with the R function nelderv2, which improves on the random search method used by Wilcox, 2008c.)

Regarding the estimation of $\boldsymbol{\theta}$, Wilcox (2008c) considered the (fast) MCD estimator, the L_1 median, Olive's (2004) estimator based on the median ball algorithm, and the mean of the data after points flagged as outliers by the projection method are removed. Simulation results indicate that the choice of location estimator makes little difference when using a random search for the matrix \mathbf{B} that maximizes the generalized variance. However, when using the Nelder–Mead algorithm, Wilcox (2010c) found that the L_1 median, which is computed by the R function spat, performed relatively well, and so it is used here.

6.14.7 R Functions *outpca*, *robpca*, *robpcaS*, *SPCA*, *Ppca*, *Ppca.summary*

The R function

```
outpca(x,cor=F,SCORES=F,ADJ=F,scree=T, xlab='Principal Component', ylab='Proportion  
of Variance')
```

eliminates outliers via the projection method and applies the classic principal component analysis to the remaining data. Following the convention used by R, the covariance matrix is used by default. To use the correlation matrix, set the argument cor=T. Setting SCORES=T, the principal component scores are returned. If the argument ADJ=T, the R function outproad is used to check for outliers rather than the R function outpro, which is recommended if the number of variables is greater than 9. By default, the argument scree=T, meaning that a scree plot will be created. Another rule that is sometimes used is to retain those components for which the proportion of variance is greater than 0.1. When the proportion is less than 0.1, it has been suggested that the corresponding principal component rarely has much interpretive value.

The function

```
robpcaS(x, SCORES=F)
```

provides a summary of the results based on the method derived by [Hubert et al. \(2005\)](#), including a scree plot based on a robust measure of variation. A more detailed analysis is performed by the function

```
robpca(x, scree=T, xlab = 'Principal Component', ylab = 'Proportion of Variance'),
```

which returns the eigenvalues and other results discussed by [Hubert et al. \(2005\)](#), but these details are not discussed here.

For convenience, the R function

```
SPCA(x, k = 0, kmax = ncol(x), delta = 0.001, na.action = na.fail, scale = FALSE,  
signflip = TRUE, trace=FALSE, ...)
```

is provided for applying the spherical principal components method in Section 6.14.3. This function merely eliminates the need to issue the command library(rrcov) when calling the R function PcaLocantore. The argument x is assumed to be an n -by- p matrix. Information about the other arguments can be obtained via the R command ?PcaLocantore, assuming that

the R command library(rrcov) has already been issued. The R command screeplot(SPCA(x)) would create a screeplot and summary(SPCA(x)) would return the standard deviations, the proportion of variance and the cumulative proportions.

The R function

```
Ppca(x, p = ncol(x) - 1, locfun = L1medcen, loc.val = NULL, SCORES = F, gvar.fun =
cov.mba, pr = T, SEED = T, gcov = rmба, SCALE = T, ...)
```

applies the method aimed at maximizing a robust generalized variance. This particular function requires the number of principal components to be specified via the argument *p*, which defaults to $p - 1$. The argument *SCALE=T* means that the marginal distributions will be standardized based on the measure of location and scale corresponding to the argument *gcov*, which defaults to the median ball algorithm.

The R function

```
Ppca.summary(x, MC=F, SCALE=T)
```

is designed to deal with the issue of how many components should be used. It calls Ppca using all possible choices for the number of components, computes the resulting generalized standard deviations, and reports their relative size. If access to a multicore processor is available, setting the argument *MC=T* will reduce execution time. Illustrations in the next section deal with the issue of how many components to use based on the output from the R function Ppca.summary.

6.14.8 Comments on Choosing the Number of Components

First focus on classic PCA. Regarding the choice for *p*, the number of components to use, a rule that is sometimes used is to retain those components for which the proportion of variance is greater than 0.1. When the proportion is less than 0.1, it has been suggested that the corresponding principal component rarely has much interpretive value. Another way of trying to judge how many principal components to use is by visual inspection of a scree plot, the strategy being to determine where the “elbow” of the curve occurs. This well-known strategy is illustrated with data generated from a multivariate normal distribution with all correlations equal to 0.0 and *n* = 200. The output from the R function regpca is

Importance of components:

	PC1	PC2	PC3	PC4
Standard Deviation	1.113	0.963	0.959	0.914
Proportion of Variance	0.316	0.236	0.235	0.213
Cumulative Proportion	0.316	0.552	0.787	1.000

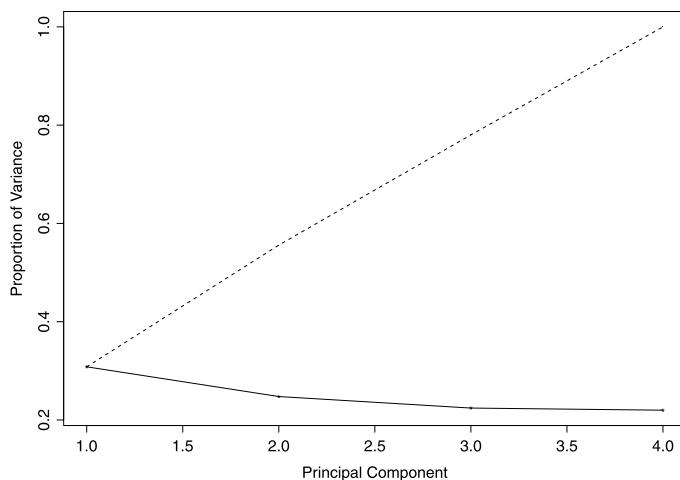


Figure 6.11: The scree plot returned by the R function `regpca`, where data are multivariate normal with all Pearson correlations equal to zero.

Figure 6.11 shows the resulting scree plot. The bottom (solid) line shows the variance associated with the principal components. The upper (dashed) line is the cumulative proportion. Note that the lower line is nearly horizontal with no steep declines, suggesting that all four components be used to capture the variability in the data. Also, for each component, the proportion of variance is greater than 0.1.

The output from the function `Ppca.summary` differs in crucial ways from the other functions described here. To illustrate it, multivariate normal data were generated with all correlations equal to 0.0. The output from `Ppca.summary` is

```
[,1]      [,2]      [,3]      [,4]
Num. of Comp. 1.0000000 2.0000000 3.0000000 4.0000000
Gen.Stand.Dev 1.1735029 1.210405 1.0293564 1.0110513
Relative Size 0.9695129 1.000000 0.8504234 0.8353002
```

The second line indicates the (robust) generalized standard deviation given the number of components indicated by the first line. So when using two components, the generalized standard deviation is 1.210405. Note that the generalized standard deviations are not in descending order. Using two components results in the largest generalized standard deviation. But observe that all four generalized standard deviations are approximately equal, which is what we would expect for the situation at hand. The third line of the output is obtained by dividing each value in the second line by the maximum generalized standard deviation. Here, reducing the number of components from 4 to 2 does not increase the generalized standard deviation by very much, suggesting that 4 or maybe 3 components should be used. Also observe that

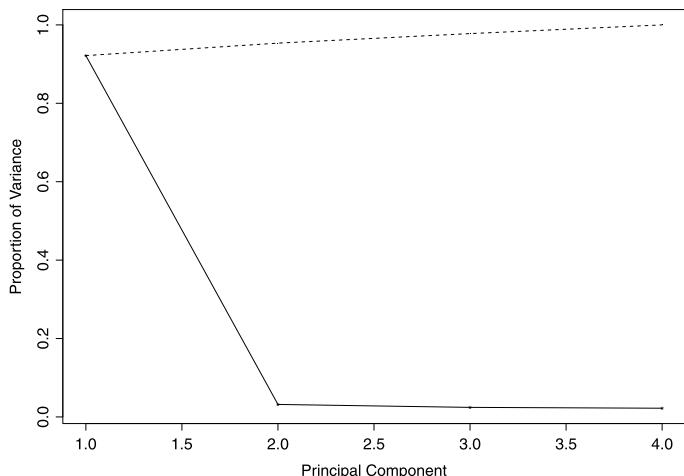


Figure 6.12: The scree plot for multivariate normal data with all Pearson correlations equal to 0.9.

there is no proportion of variance used here, in contrast to classic PCA. In classic PCA, an issue is how many components must be included to capture a reasonably large proportion of the variance. When using the robust generalized variance, it seems more appropriate to first look at the relative size of the generalized standard deviations using all of the components. If the relative size is small, reduce the number of components. In the example, the relative size using all four components is 0.835 suggesting that perhaps all four components should be used.

Now consider data that were generated from a multivariate normal distribution where all of the correlations are 0.9. Now the output from `regpca` is

Importance of components:				
	PC1	PC2	PC3	PC4
Standard Deviation	1.869	0.3444	0.3044	0.2915
Proportion of Variance	0.922	0.0313	0.0244	0.0224
Cumulative Proportion	0.922	0.9531	0.9776	1.0000

Note that the first principal component has a much larger standard deviation than the other three principal components. The proportion of variance accounted for by PC1 is 0.922, suggesting that it is sufficient to use the first principal component only to capture the variability in the data. [Figure 6.12](#) shows the scree plot.

Excluding method PPCA, the robust methods summarized in this section report results similar to the function `regpca`, only a robust measure of variation, associated with each component, is used. Scree plots can be created as well. However, when using method PPCA, the output

from the R function Ppca is interpreted in a different manner. Generally, it is suggested that one first look at the sizes of the generalized standard deviations, relative to the largest generalized standard deviation, starting with $p = m$ components. If the relative size is close to 1, use all m components. If not, consider $p = m - 1$. If the relative size is close to 1, use $p - 1$ components. If not, continue in this manner.

Consider again the multivariate normal data with all correlations equal to 0, which were used to create the scree plot in [Figure 6.11](#). The output from Ppca.summary is

[,1]	[,2]	[,3]	[,4]	
Num. of Comp.	1.0000000	2.0000000	3.0000000	4.0000000
Gen.Stand.Dev	1.1735029	1.210405	1.0293564	1.0110513
Relative Size	0.9695129	1.000000	0.8504234	0.8353002

The second line indicates the (robust) generalized standard deviation given the number of components indicated by the first line. So when using two components, the generalized standard deviation is 1.210405. Note that the generalized standard deviations are not in descending order. Using two components results in the largest generalized standard deviation. But observe that all four generalized standard deviations are approximately equal, which is what we would expect for the situation at hand. The third line of the output is obtained by dividing each value in the second line by the maximum generalized standard deviation. Here, reducing the number of components from 4 to 2 does not increase the generalized standard deviation by very much, suggesting that 4 or maybe 3 components should be used. Also observe that there is no proportion of variance used here, in contrast to classic PCA. In classic PCA, an issue is how many components must be included to capture a reasonably large proportion of the variance. Here, the relative size using all four components is 0.835 suggesting that perhaps all four components should be used.

Consider again the data used to create the scree plot in [Figure 6.12](#). (The data have a multivariate normal distribution with all correlations equal to 0.9.) The output from Ppca.summary is

[,1]	[,2]	[,3]	[,4]	
Num. of Comp.	1.000000	2.0000000	3.0000000	4.0000000
Gen.Stand.Dev	2.017774	0.6632588	0.2167982	0.05615346
Relative Size	1.000000	0.3287082	0.1074442	0.02782942

As indicated, a single component results in a relatively large generalized standard deviation suggesting that a single component suffices. The relative sizes corresponding to 3 and 4 components are fairly small suggesting that using 3 or 4 components be ruled out. Even with 2 components the relative size is fairly small.

■ Example

In an unpublished study by L. Doi, a general goal was to study predictors of reading ability. Here, the focus is on five predictors: two measures of phonological awareness, a measure of speeded naming for digits, a measure of speeded naming for letters, and a measure of the accuracy of identifying lower case letters. Using the classic principal component analysis based on the correlation matrix, the R function `regpca` returns

Importance of components:

	Comp.1	Comp.2	Comp.3	Comp.4	Comp.5
Standard Deviation	1.4342	1.0360	0.9791	0.7651	0.57036
Proportion of Variance	0.4114	0.2146	0.1917	0.1170	0.06506
Cumulative Proportion	0.4114	0.6260	0.8178	0.9349	1.00000

Note that the proportion of variance exceeds 0.1 with four components or less, which some would take to suggest that four components be used. The R function `robpcas` returns

	[,1]	[,2]	[,3]	[,4]	[,5]
Number of Comp.	1.00000	2.00000	3.00000	4.00000	5.000000
Robust Stand Dev	2.23900	1.26512	1.21967	0.97752	0.606995
Proportion Robust var	0.53188	0.16981	0.15783	0.10138	0.039090
Cum. Proportion	0.53188	0.70169	0.85952	0.96090	1.000000

which is somewhat similar to the results based on the classic PCA.

However, `Ppca.summary` returns

	[,1]	[,2]	[,3]	[,4]	[,5]
Num. of Comp.	1.000000	2.0000000	3.0000000	4.0000000	5.0000000
Gen. Stand. Dev	1.712513	1.5155318	0.7229315	0.4761138	0.3112773
Relative Size	1.000000	0.8849754	0.4221466	0.2780205	0.1817664

The second line shows the robust generalized standard deviations based on the number of components used. Because the relative sizes using 3, 4 or 5 components are rather small, the results suggest that two components suffice. (In fairness, it might be argued that a scree plot stemming from classic PCA also suggests that two components be used.)

6.15 Cluster Analysis

Cluster analysis is an exploratory data analysis tool aimed at sorting different objects into groups in a way that the degree of association between two objects is maximal if they belong

to the same group and minimal otherwise. There are many relevant methods that go well beyond the scope of this book (e.g., Everitt, Landau, Leese, & Stahl, 2011). Here the goal is merely to mention a few R functions that might be useful.

6.15.1 R Functions Kmeans, kmeans.grp, TKmeans, TKmeans.grp

Cluster analysis can be performed with the R function

```
Kmeans(x,k,xout=F,outfun=outpro).
```

The argument x is a matrix or data frame containing the data and k indicates the number of clusters to be used. The function calls the built-in R function kmeans, but it automatically removes any rows of data that contain missing values. The R function kmeans uses the k-means method, which partitions the points into k groups such that the sum of squares from points to the assigned cluster centers is minimized. If the argument xout=T, the R function Kmeans removes any points declared outliers via the function specified by the argument outfun. The R function

```
Kmeans.grp(x,k,y,xout=F,outfun=outpro)
```

creates k groups based on the data stored in x via the k-means algorithm. It then sorts the data in y into one of these k groups and stores the results in an R variable having list mode. For example, based on the command z=kmeans.grp(x,2,y), z[[1]] will contain the data associated with the first cluster and z[[2]] will contain the data associated with the second cluster.

The R function

```
TKmeans(x,k, trim=0.1,scaling=FALSE,runs=100, points=NULL,  
countmode=runs+1,printcrit=FALSE,)
```

applies the trimmed k means method derived by Cuesta-Albertos, Gordaliza, and Matran (1997). It removes any vectors of observations having missing values and then uses the R function trimkmeans in the R package trimcluster. The R function

```
TKmeans.grp(x,k,xout=F,outfun=out)
```

is like the function Kmeans.grp, only it uses the R function TKmeans to determine the clusters.

6.16 Multivariate Discriminate Analysis

Roughly, multivariate discriminate analysis, or classification analysis, deals with the following problem. Imagine that an individual belongs to one of G groups. For example, the groups might correspond to different diseases and the p measures might be symptoms associated with a given individual. The goal is to find an effective rule for classifying an individual as belonging to one of the G groups. The data used to determine a classification rule is typically called the training set. There are classic methods for addressing this issue (e.g., [Mardia, Kent, & Bibby, 1979](#); [Huberty, 1994](#)) that assume multivariate normality. This section summarizes a more robust approach. For other methods worth considering, see for example [Schapire and Freund \(2012\)](#) and [Breiman \(2001\)](#).

The basic strategy stems from [Li, Cuesta-Albertos, and Liu \(2012\)](#) who suggest transforming the data to some measure of depth, such as halfspace depth. For two groups, they search for the best separating polynomial based on the transformed data. [Hubert, Rousseeuw, and Segaert \(2015\)](#) suggest some modifications of the approach used by Li et al. First, they suggest using a distance measure that is based in part on halfspace depth, but which avoids measures of depth that become zero outside the convex hull of the data. (They focus on a particular measure of distance, which they all bagdistance.) They then use the kNN classification rule ([Fix & Hodges, 1951](#)) to classify individuals, rather than a separating polynomial, which was found to perform well and it is computationally easier to use. Briefly, for each new observation, the kNN (k nearest neighbor) rule looks up the k training data points closest to it (typically using Euclidean distance), and then assigns it to the most prevalent group among those neighbors. The value of k is typically chosen by cross-validation to minimize the misclassification rate. Here, the default measure of depth is the projection-based depth computed via the R function prodepth in Section 6.2.8 rather than the distance used by Hubert et al. Currently, an R function for computing bagdistance is not readily available. But the R function in the next section, which applies the method described here, can be used with any measure of depth, as will be seen.

For every vector \mathbf{x} in the training data, transform it to the G -variate point

$$(\text{dist}(\mathbf{x}, P_1), \dots, \text{dist}(\mathbf{x}, P_G)),$$

where $\text{dist}(\mathbf{x}, P_g)$ is some depth measure associated with \mathbf{x} and based on the training data in group P_g ($g = 1, \dots, G$). Based on these distance measures, classify some future \mathbf{x} based on the kNN rule. (For a possible way of improving the correct classification rate, see [Croux, Joossens, & Lemmens, 2007](#).)

6.16.1 R Function *KNNdist*

The R function

```
KNNdist(train,test,g, k=1, prob=TRUE, plotit=FALSE, xlab='Group 1', ylab='Group 2',
       depthfun=prodepth, ...)
```

applies the classification method described in the previous section. The argument train is a matrix with n rows and p columns that contains the training data. The argument test contains the data to be classified and the argument g, having length n , contains the labels for the training set. For example, $g[1]=3$ means that the first row vector in train belongs to group 3 and $g[2]=1$ means the second row vector in train belongs to group 1. The argument k corresponds to the k used by the kNN classification rule as described in the previous section. For two groups, plotit=TRUE will create a scatterplot of the distances. The argument depthfun indicates the distance measure that will be used, which defaults to Zou's projection-based measure of depth. The function applies the kNN rule via the R function knn, which belongs to the R library class. (For a description of the argument prob=TRUE, use the R command ?knn.)

■ Example

The following R commands illustrate the function KNNdist with data generated from a bivariate normal distribution:

```
set.seed(54)
x=rmul(100)
x[51:100,]=x[51:100,]+3
g=c(rep(1,50),rep(2,50))
test=rmul(10)
test[5:10,]=test[5:10,]+3
KNNdist(x,test,g)
```

That is, the training set has a sample of size $n = 100$ and was generated from a bivariate normal distribution for which the first half has mean $(0, 0)$ and the second half has mean $(3, 3)$. The first five vectors for the test set come from the first group and the remaining five come from the second group. The output is:

```
[1] 1 1 1 1 2 2 2 2 2
```

This indicates that the first four vectors in the test set were classified as coming from group 1 and the remaining were classified as coming from group 2. So the fifth vector was misclassified.

6.17 Exercises

1. For the EEG data in [Table 6.1](#), compute the MVE, MCD, OP, and the Donoho–Gasko 0.2 trimmed mean for group 1.
2. Repeat the last exercise using the data for group 2.
3. For the data in [Table 6.1](#), check for outliers among the first group using the methods in [Section 6.4](#). Comment on why the number of outliers found differs among the methods.
4. Repeat the last exercise using the data for group 2.
5. Repeat the last two exercises, but now use the data in [Table 6.2](#).
6. Suppose that for each row of an n -by- p matrix, its depth is computed relative to all n points in the matrix. What are the possible values that the depths might be?
7. Give a general description of a situation where for $n = 20$, the minimum depth among all points is 3/20.
8. The average LSAT scores (X) for the 1973 entering classes of 15 American law schools, and the corresponding grade point averages (Y), are as follows.

$X:$ 576 635 558 578 666 580 555 661 651 605 653 575 545 572 594

$Y:$ 3.39 3.30 2.81 3.03 3.44 3.07 3.00 3.43 3.36 3.13 3.12 2.74 2.76 2.88 2.96

Use a boxplot to determine whether any of the X values are outliers. Do the same for the Y values. Comment on whether this is convincing evidence that there are no outliers. Check for outliers using the MVE, MCD and projection-type methods described in [Section 6.4](#). Comment on the different results.

9. The MVE method of detecting outliers, described in [Section 6.4.3](#), could be modified by replacing the MVE estimator of location with the Winsorized mean, and replacing the covariances with the Winsorized covariances described in [Section 5.9.3](#). Discuss how this would be done and its relative merits.
10. The file `read.dat` contains data from a reading study conducted by L. Doi. Columns 4 and 5 contain measures of digit naming speed and letter naming speed. Use both the `relplot` and the MVE method to identify any outliers. Compare the results and comment on any discrepancies.
11. For the cork boring data in [Table 6.4](#), imagine that the goal is to compare the north, east and south sides to the west side. How might this be done with the software in [Section 6.6.1](#)? Perform the analysis and comment on the results. (The data are stored in the file `corkall.dat`; see [Chapter 1](#).)
12. For the data in [Table 6.1](#), compare the two groups with the method in [Section 6.7](#).
13. For the data in [Table 6.1](#), compare the two groups with the method in [Section 6.9](#).
14. For the data in [Table 6.1](#), compare the two groups with the method in [Section 6.10](#).
15. For the data in [Table 6.1](#), compare the two groups with the method in [Section 6.11](#).
16. Argue that the when testing Eq. (6.27), this provides a metric-free method for comparing groups based on scatter.

17. For the data in [Table 6.5](#), compare the groups using the method in [Section 6.7](#).
18. The goal is to run simulations to compare the mean squared error and bias of two estimators designed for functional data. Here is some R code for generating data according to a Gaussian process:

```
C=function(x, y)exp(-1*abs(x - y)) # Covariances  
# Another choice for the covariances:  
# C <- function(x, y) 0.01 * exp(-10000 * x - y)^2  
M=function(x) sin(x) # The mean for the curves  
n=50 # sample size  
p=100 # number of time points  
x=r.gauss.pro(n,C=C,M=M,t=x) # generates data from a Gaussian process
```

Use simulations to compare how well the R functions `medcurve` and `Flplot` estimate the typical curve given by `M` when data are generated from a Gaussian process.

One-Way and Higher Designs for Independent Groups

This chapter describes techniques for testing hypotheses in one-way and higher designs involving independent groups. Included are random effects models plus methods for performing multiple comparisons. This chapter makes no attempt at covering all the designs that are encountered in practice, but it does cover many of the more common designs that are employed.

In this chapter, only heteroscedastic methods are considered. It might be hoped that as the number of groups increases, problems associated with homoscedastic methods, described in Chapter 5, might be reduced. In one-way designs, the exact opposite seems to be true. For example, even under normality with equal sample sizes but unequal variances, problems controlling the probability of a Type I error can arise. With four independent groups, each having 50 observations, the usual analysis of variance F test of

$$H_0 : \mu_1 = \mu_2 = \mu_3 = \mu_4$$

can have a Type I error probability approximately equal to 0.09 when testing at the 0.05 level ([Wilcox, Charlin, & Thompson, 1986](#)). With unequal sample sizes, the actual probability of a Type I error can exceed 0.3. Under non-normality, control over the probability of a Type I error is even worse. Practical problems with more complicated designs have been found (e.g., [Keselman, Keselman, & Lix, 1995](#)).

It is sometimes suggested that one test the homoscedasticity assumption and, if an appropriate test fails to reject, use a method that assumes equal variances among the groups. However, published papers do not support this strategy (e.g., [Hayes & Cai, 2007](#); [Markowski & Markowski, 1990](#); [Moser, Stevens, & Watts, 1989](#); [Wilcox et al., 1986](#); [Zimmerman, 2004](#)). As noted at the end of Section 5.2 when dealing with the two-sample case, the problem is that tests of the homoscedasticity assumption might not have enough power to detect situations where a violation of the homoscedasticity assumption creates practical problems.

One might try to salvage homoscedastic methods by arguing that if the variances are unequal, the means are unequal as well, in which case a Type I error is not a concern. However, an inability to control the probability of a Type I error often reflects an undesirable power property:

The probability of rejecting the null hypothesis is not minimized when the null hypothesis is true. (The hypothesis testing method is biased.) This problem was already pointed out and illustrated in Chapter 5 where shifting one group by a half standard deviation results in a situation where the probability of rejecting is less compared to the situation where H_0 is true. Here it is merely noted that this problem persists when comparing more than two groups (e.g., Wilcox, 1996a).

Another argument in support of the F test is that it is reasonably good at controlling the probability of a Type I error when distributions are identical. (Tan, 1982, reviews the relevant literature.) That is, it provides a test of the hypothesis that J groups have identical distributions. If the F test is significant, a reasonable argument is that the means differ. However, if the goal is to derive a test that is exclusively sensitive to some measure of location, the F test is unsatisfactory. Even if this problem can be ignored, concerns about low power, due to the low efficiency of the sample mean when distributions have heavy tails, remains a concern.

7.1 Trimmed Means and a One-Way Design

From a technical point of view, it is a simple matter to extend the methods in Chapter 5 to situations where the goal is to compare the trimmed means of more than two groups: simply select a heteroscedastic method for means and then proceed along the lines used to derive the Yuen–Welch test. In essence, replace the sample means by trimmed means, replace estimates of the standard errors with appropriate estimates based on the amount of trimming used, and adjust the degrees of freedom based in part on the number of observations left after trimming. For a one-way design, however, there are many heteroscedastic methods for comparing means, so it is not immediately obvious which to use. Two possibilities are described here, both of which have been examined in simulation studies and found to give relatively good control over the probability of a Type I error. Other methods have been considered by Lix and Keselman (1998) as well as Luh and Guo (1999). For a method based on trimmed means that assumes equal variances, see Lee and Fung (1985). For the special case where the goal is to compare means, Krishnamoorthy, Lu, and Mathew (2007) review approaches for handling unequal variances, which are known to be unsatisfactory, and they suggest using instead a parametric bootstrap method that assumes normality. Cribbie, Fiksenbaum, Keselman, and Wilcox (2012) compared this parametric bootstrap method to several other techniques and found it to be unsatisfactory. The actual Type I error probability, when testing at the 0.05 level, can exceed 0.25. A method that performed reasonably well was the Welch-type method for comparing trimmed means, which is described in the next section.

Table 7.1: Computations for Comparing Trimmed Means.

The goal is to test

$$H_0: \mu_{t1} = \dots = \mu_{tJ}.$$

For the j th group, let

$$d_j = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j \times (h_j - 1)},$$

where h_j is the effective sample size of the j th group (the number of observations left after trimming) and s_{wj}^2 is the Winsorized variance. To test H_0 , compute

$$w_j = \frac{1}{d_j}$$

$$U = \sum w_j$$

$$\tilde{X} = \frac{1}{U} \sum w_j \bar{X}_{tj}$$

$$A = \frac{1}{J-1} \sum w_j (\bar{X}_{tj} - \tilde{X})^2$$

$$B = \frac{2(J-2)}{J^2-1} \sum \frac{(1 - \frac{w_j}{U})^2}{h_j - 1}$$

$$F_t = \frac{A}{1+B}.$$

When the null hypothesis is true, F_t has, approximately, an F distribution with degrees of freedom

$$v_1 = J - 1$$

$$v_2 = \left[\frac{3}{J^2-1} \sum \frac{(1 - w_j/U)^2}{h_j - 1} \right]^{-1}.$$

7.1.1 A Welch-Type Procedure and a Robust Measure of Effect Size

The goal is to test

$$H_0: \mu_{t1} = \dots = \mu_{tJ}, \quad (7.1)$$

where μ_{1j} , $j = 1, \dots, J$, are the trimmed means corresponding to J independent groups. Table 7.1 describes a method for testing this hypothesis that reduces to Welch's (1951) adjusted degrees of freedom method for means when there is no trimming.

A Robust, Heteroscedastic Measure of Effect Size

The robust explanatory measure of effect size, described in Section 5.3.4, is readily extended to more than two groups. For simplicity, first consider the situation where means are compared. Again we define the measure of effect size based on a situation where equal sample sizes are used with probability one, with the random sample being denoted by Y_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, \dots, J$). And then we use an appropriate estimation procedure when the sample sizes are not equal.

For equal sample sizes, let $\sigma^2(Y)$ be the estimand corresponding to

$$\hat{\sigma}^2(Y) = \frac{1}{N-1} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y})^2,$$

where $\bar{Y} = \sum \sum Y_{ij}/N$ and $N = nJ$ is the total sample size. Adopting a regression perspective, and given that an observation is randomly sampled from the j th group, the predicted value is μ_j . Let

$$\sigma^2(\hat{Y}) = \frac{1}{J-1} \sum_{j=1}^J (\mu_j - \bar{\mu})^2,$$

where $\bar{\mu} = \sum \mu_j/J$ is the grand mean. The *explanatory measure of effect size* is

$$\xi = \sqrt{\frac{\sigma^2(\hat{Y})}{\sigma^2(Y)}}.$$

Letting

$$\hat{\sigma}^2(\hat{Y}) = \frac{1}{J-1} \sum_{j=1}^J (\bar{Y}_j - \bar{Y})^2,$$

an estimate of ξ is

$$\hat{\xi} = \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\sigma}^2(\hat{Y})}{\hat{\sigma}^2(Y)}}.$$

If the mean and variance are replaced by a trimmed mean and Winsorized variance (scaled to estimate the variance under normality), the resulting estimate of $\hat{\xi}$ can exceed 1 when there are $J > 2$ groups and the amount of trimming is greater than 0.

For unequal sample sizes, let m denote the smallest sample size among the J groups. Randomly sample (without replacement) m observations from each of the groups for which $m < n_j$. Based on the resulting sample sizes of m observations from each group, compute $\hat{\xi}^2$ as just described. Repeat this process K times yielding a series of estimates for ξ^2 , which are then averaged to get a final estimate, which we label $\hat{\xi}^2$. The estimate of ξ is taken to be $\sqrt{\hat{\xi}^2}$.

7.1.2 R Functions *t1way*, *t1wayv2*, *esmc*, *fac2list*, *t1wayF*

The R function

```
t1way(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA)
```

performs the calculations in [Table 7.1](#). The data can be stored in any R variable having list mode, or it can be stored in a matrix, or a data frame. If x is a matrix or data frame, it is assumed that the columns correspond to groups. So the data for group 1 are stored in column one, and so on.

It is noted that when using the R package WRS2, rather than WRS or Rallfun, *t1way* uses the formula convention:

```
t1way(x ~ g,tr=0.2,grp=NA),
```

where g is a factor variable.

The R function

```
t1wayv2(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA)
```

is the same as *t1way*, only the measure of effect size ξ is reported as well. The R function

```
esmc(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA)
```

computes the robust explanatory effect size ξ for all pairs of groups.

Although familiarity with R is assumed, a brief description of *list mode* is provided in case it helps. List mode is a convenient way of storing data corresponding to several groups under one variable name. For example, suppose two groups are to be compared, and the data for the two groups are stored in the R vectors x and y. The command

```
w=list()
```

creates a variable, called w, that has list mode. To get the first group of data (stored in x) into w, enter the command

```
w[[1]]=x.
```

Notice the use of the double brackets. In particular, w[[1]] is a vector of observations corresponding to the first group of subjects. To get the second group of data stored in w, use the command

```
w[[2]]=y.
```

More generally, in terms of a one-way design, w[[j]] contains the data for the j th group. (For more details about list mode, see the books on R mentioned in Section 1.8.)

The second argument in t1way, tr, indicates the amount of trimming, which defaults to 0.2 (20% trimming). Thus, the command t1way(w) results in a test of the hypothesis that the 20% trimmed means are equal. To compare 10% trimmed means, use the command t1way(w,tr=0.1).

The third argument in t1way, grp, can be used to specify some subset of the populations to be compared. If not specified, all of the groups are used. If, for example, there are four groups, but the goal is to compare groups 1, 2, and 4, ignoring group 3, the command t1way(w,grp=c(1,2,4)) will test the hypothesis $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t4}$ using 20% trimmed means. The command t1way(w,0.1,grp=c(1,4)) would compare the 10% trimmed means of groups 1 and 4.

■ Example

Suppose that for three independent groups, the observations are

Group 1: 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10

Group 2: 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11

Group 3: 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10, 11, 12, 13, 14

If the data are stored in the R variable w, in list mode, the command t1way(w,tr=0) tests the hypothesis of equal means. The function returns

```
$TEST:  
[1] 4.558442  
  
$nul:  
[1] 2  
  
$nu2:  
[1] 18  
  
$p.value:  
[1] 0.02502042
```

In particular, $F_t = 4.56$ with a p-value of 0.025. The command t1way(w,tr=0,c(1,3)) compares the means of groups one and three and reports a p-value of 0.008. The command t1way(w,grp=c(1,3)) compares the 20% trimmed means of groups 1 and 3 and reports a p-value of 0.039.

Note that the third group has the largest sample mean, which is equal to 9.5. Increasing the largest observation in the third group to 40, the sample mean increases to 12.1 suggesting that there is now more evidence that the groups differ, but the p-value *increases* to 0.17. The reason is that the standard error of the sample mean also increases.

Data Management

It is common to have data stored in a matrix or data frame where one of the columns contains the outcome variable of interest and another column indicates the level (group identification) of the factor being studied. Consider, for example, data dealing with plasma retinol, which was downloaded from a web site maintained by Carnegie Mellon University. For illustrative purposes, it is assumed that the data have been stored in the R variable plasma as a data frame. The variable names are:

```
1 AGE: Age (years)  
2 SEX: Sex (1=Male, 2=Female).  
3 SMOKSTAT: Smoking status (1=Never, 2=Former, 3=Current Smoker)  
4 QUETELET: Quetelet (weight/(height^2))  
5 VITUSE: Vitamin Use (1=Yes, fairly often, 2=Yes, not often, 3=No)  
6 CALORIES: Number of calories consumed per day.  
7 FAT: Grams of fat consumed per day.  
8 FIBER: Grams of fiber consumed per day.  
9 ALCOHOL: Number of alcoholic drinks consumed per week.
```

```

10 CHOLESTEROL: Cholesterol consumed (mg per day).
11 BETADIET: Dietary beta-carotene consumed (mcg per day).
12 RETDIET: Dietary retinol consumed (mcg per day)
13 BETAPLASMA: Plasma beta-carotene (ng/ml)
14 RETPLASMA: Plasma Retinol (ng/ml)

```

The first few lines of the data set look like this:

```

64 2 2 21.48380 1 1298.8 57.0 6.3 0.0 170.3 1945 890 200 915
76 2 1 23.87631 1 1032.5 50.1 15.8 0.0 75.8 2653 451 124 727
38 2 2 20.01080 2 2372.3 83.6 19.1 14.1 257.9 6321 660 328 721
40 2 2 25.14062 3 2449.5 97.5 26.5 0.5 332.6 1061 864 153 615

```

Now, imagine that the goal is to compare the three groups based on smoking status, which is indicated in column 3, in terms of plasma beta-carotene, which is stored in column 13. To use the R function t1way, it is necessary to sort the data in column 13 into three groups based on the values stored in column 3. This can be done with R function

```
fac2list(x,g),
```

where the argument x is an R variable, usually some column of a matrix or column of a data frame, containing the data to be analyzed (the dependent variable) and g is a column of data indicating the group to which a corresponding value, stored in x, belongs. (When working with a data frame, this latter column of data can be a factor variable.) The output from fac2list is an R variable having list mode. If g contains numeric data, the groups are put in ascending order based on the values in g. If g contains character data, the data are sorted into groups in alphabetical order.

■ Example

For the plasma retinol data, imagine the goal is to compare the 20% trimmed means corresponding to the three smoking-status groups. The outcome measure of interest is plasma beta-carotene. The groups can be compared using the R commands

```

z=fac2list(plasma[,13],plasma[,3])
t1way(z)

```

The first command sorts the data stored in plasma[,13] into groups based on the values stored in plasma[,3], and it stores the data in the R variable z having list mode. The data stored in plasma[,3] has one of three values: 1, 2 and 3. So z[[1]] contains the data for the first group, z[[2]] contains the data for second, and z[[3]] the data for the third. If instead plasma[,3] contained one of three character strings, say “N”,

“Q” and “S”, the data in z would be sorted alphabetically. So now z[[1]] would contain plasma retinol measures for participants designated by “N”, z[[2]] would contain plasma retinol measures for participants designated by “Q”, and z[[3]] would contain plasma retinol measures for participants designated by “S”. ■

The R function

```
t1wayF(x, fac, tr=0.2, EP = FALSE, pr = TRUE)
```

is like the R function t1way, only x is assumed to be a column of data and fac is a factor variable. That is, this function eliminates the need to use the function fac2list. If EP=TRUE, the function computes the explanatory measure of effect size.

■ Example

For the last example, the analysis can be done with the single command

```
t1wayF(plasma[,13],plasma[,3]).
```

7.1.3 A Generalization of Box’s Method

For the j th group, again let h_j be the number of observations left after trimming. Motivated by results in [Box \(1954\)](#) and [Rubin \(1983\)](#), [Lix and Keselman \(1998\)](#) considered testing (7.1), the hypothesis of equal trimmed means, with

$$F_b = \frac{\sum h_j (\bar{X}_{tj} - \bar{X}_t)^2}{\sum 1 - (h_j/H) S_j^2},$$

where $H = \sum h_j$, $\bar{X}_t = \sum h_j \bar{X}_{tj}/H$ and

$$S_j^2 = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j - 1}.$$

When the null hypothesis is true, F_b has, approximately, an F distribution with

$$\hat{v}_1 = \frac{(\sum (1 - f_j) S_j^2)^2}{\left(\sum S_j^2 f_j \right)^2 + \sum_{j=1}^J S_j^4 (1 - 2f_j)}$$

and

$$\hat{v}_2 = \frac{\left(\sum_{j=1}^J (1-f_j) S_j^2\right)^2}{\sum_{j=1}^J S_j^4 (1-f_j)^2 / (h_j - 1)}$$

degrees of freedom, where $f_j = h_j/H$. Currently, it seems that both F_t and F_b give similar protection against Type I errors, with F_b being perhaps slightly better. When there are two groups ($J = 2$), these two methods give exactly the same results. In some situations, F_b has a Type I error probability that exceeds α and is higher than the Type I error probability associated with F_t , but there are situations where the reverse is true. Among the situations considered by Lix and Keselman, F_b is less likely to result in a Type I error probability exceeding 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level. However, F_b generally has less power.

7.1.4 R Function `box1way`

The R function

```
box1way(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA),
```

written for this book, performs the calculations described in the previous subsection. It is used in exactly the same manner as `t1way`. Thus, the command `box1way(w,0.1,c(1,3))` will test the hypothesis that the 10% trimmed means, associated with the first and third groups, are equal. When comparing only two groups, the R functions `box1way`, `t1way`, and `yuen` all give identical results.

■ Example

Suppose the data in Section 7.1.2, used to illustrate the function `t1way`, are stored in `w`. Then the command `box1way(w)` tests the hypothesis of equal 20% trimmed means, and the p-value is reported to be 0.077. Using `t1way`, the p-value is 0.025.

7.1.5 Comparing Medians and Other Quantiles

For the special case where the goal is to test

$$\theta_1 = \dots = \theta_J, \quad (7.2)$$

the hypothesis of equal medians, the Yuen–Welch and Box methods for trimmed means are not recommended; an alternative estimate of the standard error is required. Here, two methods

are described for testing the hypothesis that J independent groups have a common population median. The first is based on the McKean–Schrader estimate of the standard error, which is used in conjunction with a Welch-type test.

Let M_j be the sample median for the j th group and let S_j^2 be the McKean–Schrader estimate of the squared standard error of M_j ($j = 1, \dots, J$). Let

$$\begin{aligned} w_j &= \frac{1}{S_j^2}, \\ U &= \sum w_j, \\ \tilde{M} &= \frac{1}{U} \sum w_j M_j, \\ A &= \frac{1}{J-1} \sum w_j (M_j - \tilde{M})^2, \\ B &= \frac{2(J-2)}{J^2-1} \sum \frac{(1 - \frac{w_j}{U})^2}{n_j - 1}, \\ F_m &= \frac{A}{1+B}. \end{aligned} \tag{7.3}$$

The hypothesis of equal population medians is rejected if $F_m \geq f$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with $\nu_1 = J - 1$ and $\nu_2 = \infty$ degrees of freedom.

It is stressed, however, that all known estimates of the standard error of the sample median can be highly inaccurate when tied values occur, even with large sample sizes. Consequently, the method based on the McKean–Schrader estimator is not recommended when there are tied values. Use instead method LSB in Section 7.6 with the M-measures of location replaced by the Harrell–Davis estimator. Using a quantile estimator that uses a weighted average of all the order statistics appears to be crucial (Wilcox, 2015b). For continuous distributions, the method controls the Type I error probability reasonably well with $n \geq 20$. When there are tied values, $n \geq 30$ might be needed. When dealing with the quartiles, $n \geq 50$ is recommended (Wilcox, 2015b).

It is noted that another approach is to perform multiple comparisons using the R function medpb, described in Section 7.4.10, which is designed to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. A possible appeal of this approach is that when dealing with medians, the usual sample median can be used when there are tied values. It has a high breakdown point in contrast to the Harrell–Davis estimator, which has a breakdown point of only $1/n$. However, when dealing with quartiles, using an estimator that gives a positive weight to all of the order statistics, such as the Harrell–Davis estimator, appears to be essential.

7.1.6 R Functions *med1way* and *Qanova*

The R function

```
med1way(x,grp=NA)
```

tests the hypothesis of equal population medians assuming there are no tied values. The argument *x* can be any variable having matrix mode or list mode. If a matrix, columns correspond to groups. The argument *grp* can be used to analyze a subset of the groups if desired. By default, all J groups are compared. So the command `med1way(disdat,grp=c(1,3,5))` will compare groups 1, 3, and 5 using the data stored in the variable *disdat*. The function returns the value of the test statistic, F_m , and the p-value.

The R function

```
Qanova(x, q = 0.5, op = 3, nboot = 600, MC = FALSE, SEED = TRUE)
```

tests the hypothesis of equal population medians using a method that allows tied values. (This function is essentially the same as the function *pbadepth* in Section 7.6.1, but with the M-estimator replaced by the Harrell–Davis estimator.) The argument *q* determines the quantile to be used, which defaults to the median. Setting *MC*=TRUE, the function will take advantage of a multicore processor if one is available. (The argument *op* indicates how the depth of the null vector, within a bootstrap cloud of points, is measured. The default is to use projection distances.)

7.1.7 A Bootstrap-t Method

Lix and Keselman (1998) found that two other methods for testing hypotheses about trimmed means perform relatively well in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, but with small sample sizes and with trimming less than or equal to 20%, none of the methods they considered, including the methods described in this chapter, always guaranteed that the actual probability of a Type I error would be less than 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level. In some situations the probability of a Type I error exceeds 0.08. It might be argued that this is satisfactory in some situations, but they did not consider situations where distributions differ in skewness. Among the non-normal distributions in their study, they only considered situations where groups have unequal variances. From Chapter 5, if distributions differ in skewness, the expectation is that control over the probability of a Type I error will be worse. Again, one might try to salvage the situation by arguing that if groups have unequal variances or skewness, surely the trimmed means differ, so the probability of a Type I error is

not an issue. But as noted in Chapter 5, problems with controlling Type I error probabilities often reflect an unsatisfactory characteristic: Power can go down as the difference between the trimmed means increases, although eventually it will go up. Put another way, the probability of rejecting is not always minimized when the null hypothesis is true.

Chapter 5 described bootstrap methods for dealing with this problem. Provided the amount of trimming is relatively low (say less than 20%), it currently seems that a bootstrap-t method is relatively effective based on the criterion of controlling the probability of a Type I error. In the present context, a bootstrap-t method refers to any bootstrap technique that is based in part on a test statistic that is a function of estimates of the standard errors of the location estimators being used. With sufficiently large sample sizes, a bootstrap method is not required, but it remains unclear how large the sample sizes must be. This subsection notes that a simple extension of the two-sample bootstrap-t method can be applied to the problem at hand. The strategy is to use the available data to estimate an appropriate critical value when using the Yuen–Welch method to compare trimmed means. Perhaps there is some practical advantage to replacing the Welch-type method with some other procedure, but this remains to be seen. (In the two-sample case, with the amount of trimming less than 20%, a generalization of the Yuen–Welch test seems to have merit; see [Othman, Keselman, Wilcox, Fradette, & Padmanabhan, 2002](#).)

As was done in Section 5.3.2, the method begins by obtaining a bootstrap sample from each of the J groups: $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{n_j j}^*$. Next, set $C_{ij}^* = X_{ij}^* - \bar{X}_{tj}$, $i = 1, \dots, n_j$. Then $C_{1j}^*, \dots, C_{n_j j}^*$ represents a sample from a distribution that has a trimmed mean of zero, so the hypothesis of equal trimmed means among these J distributions is true. Let F_t^* be the value of F_t (described in [Table 7.1](#)), when applied to the C_{ij}^* values. Repeat this process B times, each time obtaining bootstrap samples and computing F_t using the C_{ij}^* values that result. Label the resulting test statistics $F_{t1}^*, \dots, F_{tB}^*$. Each time this process is applied, the null hypothesis is true, by construction, so the values $F_{t1}^*, \dots, F_{tB}^*$ provide an estimate of an appropriate critical value. Letting $F_{t(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq F_{t(B)}^*$ be the $F_{t1}^*, \dots, F_{tB}^*$ values written in ascending order, an estimate of the α critical value is $F_{t(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. That is, reject the null hypothesis of equal trimmed means if F_t , computed as described in [Table 7.1](#), is greater than or equal to $F_{t(u)}^*$.

7.1.8 R Functions *t1waybt* and *btrim*

The R function

```
t1waybt(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05.grp=NA,nboot=599)
```

tests the hypothesis of equal trimmed means using the bootstrap-t method. (When using the R package WRS2, t1waybt uses a formula convention.) As with t1way and box1way, the argument x can be any R variable that is a matrix or has list mode. If unspecified, the amount of trimming defaults to $tr=0.2$, and the argument alpha, corresponding to α , defaults to 0.05. Again the argument grp can be used to test the hypothesis of equal trimmed means for some subgroup of interest. If unspecified, all J groups are used. The default value for B is nboot=599 which appears to give good results, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when $\alpha = 0.05$ and $n_j \geq 10$, $j = 1, \dots, J$. Little is known about how the method performs when $\alpha < 0.05$. Cribbie et al. (2012) found that with 20% trimming, a parametric bootstrap technique performs a bit better than the method in Section 7.1.1. Limited checks indicate that the bootstrap-t method used here is better than the parametric bootstrap method in terms of avoiding Type I error probabilities larger than the nominal level. But extensive comparisons have not been made.

■ Example

Again consider the data in Section 7.1.2. Assuming the data are stored in the variable w , the command t1waybt(w) reports that the 0.05 critical value is 4.97. The value of the test statistic is 2.87, which is the same value reported by the function t1way. The 0.05 critical value used by t1way is 4.1. That is, the bootstrap-t method estimates that t1way is using a critical value that is too small.



To add perspective, suppose the data in Section 7.1.2 are shifted so that the trimmed mean for each group is zero. This yields

Group 1: $-4.5 -3.5 -2.5 -1.5 -0.5 0.5 1.5 2.5 3.5 4.5$

Group 2: $-4.5 -3.5 -2.5 -1.5 -0.5 0.5 1.5 2.5 3.5 4.5$

Group 3: $-4.5 -3.5 -2.5 -1.5 -0.5 0.5 1.5 2.5 3.5 4.5$

Now suppose that these values represent the actual distributions associated with the three groups, each value within a group having the same probability of occurring. This is the process used by the bootstrap method. In group 1, for example, there are 10 possible values, every value occurs with equal probability, so the first value, -4.5 , occurs with probability 0.1, the second value, -3.5 , also occurs with probability 0.1, and so on. As is evident, all three distributions happen to be identical, but in general this will not be the case. By construction, each of the three distributions has a population trimmed mean equal to zero. Consequently, when F_t is computed using these observations, the probability of rejecting should be α . But if $n_1 = 10$ observations are randomly sampled from the first group, $n_2 = 10$ are randomly sampled from the second, and $n_3 = 10$ from the third, the actual probability of a Type I error is

0.073 when $\alpha = 0.05$, based on a simulation with 1000 replications. Even without running a simulation, the expectation is that the Type I error probability will be higher than 0.05. The reason is that the bootstrap-t method, when applied to the data in Section 7.1.2, simply performs simulations on the distributions being considered here, and it estimates that the 0.05 critical value is 4.97. But F_t uses a critical value of 4.1 (the 0.95 quantile of an F distribution with 2 and 10 degrees of freedom), which is too small. Put another way, if the bootstrap-t method estimates that the critical value is higher than the critical value used by F_t , in essence, a discrete distribution has been found for which F_t can be expected to have a Type I error probability greater than the nominal level. For the situation at hand, the bootstrap-t estimates the critical value to be 4.97, which corresponds to the 0.968 quantile of an F distribution with 2 and 10 degrees of freedom. Moreover, the discrete distributions being used are estimates of the distributions under study, only shifted so that the null hypothesis of equal trimmed means is true.

The R function

```
btrim(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA,g=NULL,dp=NULL,nboot=599)
```

is an updated version of t1waybt. In addition to the results reported by t1waybt, the function btrim reports the explanatory measure of effect size. And it has the ability to sort data into groups based on group identification values stored in column g of x, assuming x is a matrix or a data frame. The outcome (dependent variable) of interest is stored in the column indicated by the argument dp. In effect, this eliminates the need to call the function fac2list. For example, btrim(plasma,g=2,dp=4) would sort the data in column 4 of the R variable plasma into groups based on the values stored in column 2.

7.2 Two-Way Designs and Trimmed Means

This section describes methods for testing hypotheses in a two-way design when working with trimmed means. It is assumed that the reader is familiar with the basic features and terminology of two-way designs, which are covered in numerous books on statistics. To briefly review, the basic goal is to compare groups, taking into account two main factors plus interactions. For example, Steele and Aronson (1995) conducted dealing with performance on an aptitude test. They compared test scores of Black and White subjects taking into account how the purpose of the test was presented. The test was presented either as a diagnostic of intellectual ability, as a laboratory tool for studying problem solving, or as both a problem-solving tool and a challenge. This is a 2-by-3 design. The first factor, race, has two levels, while the

Table 7.2: Trimmed Means Corresponding to a J-by-K Design.

		Factor B				
		μ_{t11}	μ_{t12}	\cdots	μ_{t1K}	$\mu_{t1.}$
		μ_{21}	μ_{22}	\cdots	μ_{2K}	$\mu_{2.}$
		\vdots	\vdots	\cdots	\vdots	\vdots
		μ_{tJ1}	μ_{tJ2}	\cdots	μ_{tJK}	$\mu_{tJ.}$
		$\mu_{t.1}$	$\mu_{t.2}$	\cdots	$\mu_{t.K}$	

second factor, type of presentation, has three. As is commonly done, the first factor is generically called factor A, and the second is called factor B. The term J-by-K ANOVA refers to a two-way design with factor A having J levels and factor B having K.

The groups are assumed to be arranged as shown in [Table 7.2](#). Thus, μ_{tjk} is the population trimmed mean associated with the j th level of the first factor and the k th level of the second. Extending standard notation in an obvious way, the grand trimmed mean is the average of all JK trimmed means. In symbols, the grand trimmed mean is

$$\bar{\mu}_t = \frac{1}{JK} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K \mu_{tjk}.$$

The main effects for factor A are defined to be

$$\alpha_1 = \mu_{t1.} - \bar{\mu}_t, \dots, \alpha_J = \mu_{tJ.} - \bar{\mu}_t,$$

where

$$\mu_{tj.} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K \mu_{tjk}.$$

The hypothesis of no main effects for factor A is

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1.} = \cdots = \mu_{tJ..}$$

When the null hypothesis is true,

$$\alpha_{t1} = \cdots = \alpha_{tJ} = 0,$$

so another common way of writing the null hypothesis is

$$H_0 : \sum \alpha_j^2 = 0.$$

Similarly, the levels of factor B can be compared, ignoring factor A, by testing

$$H_0 : \mu_{t,1} = \mu_{t,2} = \cdots = \mu_{t,K},$$

where

$$\bar{\mu}_{t,k} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J \mu_{tjk}.$$

The effect size associated with the k th group is written as

$$\beta_k = \mu_{t,k} - \bar{\mu}_t,$$

and often the null hypothesis is written as

$$H_0 : \sum \beta_k^2 = 0.$$

The computational steps associated with a two-way design, when testing the hypotheses just listed, are much easier to describe in terms of matrices. Here, a generalization of results in [Johansen \(1980\)](#) is used. The implementation of the method is based on a generalization of the results in [Algina and Olejnik \(1984\)](#).

There are $p = JK$ independent groups with trimmed means $\boldsymbol{\mu}_t = (\mu_{t1}, \dots, \mu_{tJK})'$. The general strategy for testing main effects and interactions is to test

$$H_0 : \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\mu}_t = 0, \quad (7.4)$$

where \mathbf{C} , which is constructed in a manner to be described, is a k -by- p contrast matrix of rank k , chosen to reflect the hypothesis of interest. For convenience, it is assumed that the sample trimmed means are arranged in a 1×9 matrix

$$\mathbf{X}' = (\bar{X}_{t11} \dots \bar{X}_{t1K} \dots, \bar{X}_{tK1} \dots \bar{X}_{t1K}),$$

where \mathbf{X}' is the transpose of \mathbf{X} .

The construction of the contrast matrix \mathbf{C} is accomplished as follows. For any integer $m \geq 2$, let \mathbf{C}_m be an $(m-1)$ -by- m matrix having the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ & & & \dots & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

Table 7.3: How to Construct the Contrast Matrix, \mathbf{C} , for a Two-Way Design.

Effect	\mathbf{C}
A	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K$
B	$\mathbf{j}'_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K$
$A \times B$	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K$

That is, $c_{ii} = 1$ and $c_{i,i+1} = -1$, $i = 1, \dots, m - 1$. Let \mathbf{j}'_m be a 1-by- m vector of 1s. For example, $\mathbf{j}'_3 = (1, 1, 1)$. The matrix \mathbf{C} for testing main effects and interactions can be constructed with what is called the (right) Kronecker product of matrices, applied to appropriate choices of \mathbf{C}_m and \mathbf{j}_m . If \mathbf{A} is any r by s matrix, and \mathbf{B} is any t by u matrix, the Kronecker product of \mathbf{A} and \mathbf{B} , written as $\mathbf{A} \otimes \mathbf{B}$, is

$$\begin{pmatrix} a_{11}B & a_{12}B & \dots & a_{1s}B \\ & \vdots & & \\ a_{r1}B & a_{r2}B & \dots & a_{rs}B \end{pmatrix}.$$

Table 7.3 shows how to construct the contrast matrix \mathbf{C} for the main effects and interactions in a two-way design. For example, when testing for main effects for factor A, use $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K$.

Remembering that $p = JK$, the total number of groups, let \mathbf{V} be a p -by- p diagonal matrix with

$$v_{jj} = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j(h_j - 1)},$$

$j = 1, \dots, p$. That is, v_{jj} is Yuen's estimate of the squared standard error of the sample trimmed mean corresponding to the j th group. The test statistic is

$$Q = \bar{\mathbf{X}}' \mathbf{C}' (\mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}')^{-1} \mathbf{C} \bar{\mathbf{X}}. \quad (7.5)$$

Let

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}' (\mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}')^{-1} \mathbf{C},$$

and

$$A = \sum_{j=1}^p \frac{r_{jj}^2}{h_j - 1},$$

where r_{jj} is the j th diagonal element of \mathbf{R} . Asymptotically, a critical value for Q is c , the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-square distribution with k degrees of freedom. However, for small sample sizes, an adjusted critical value is needed, which is given by

$$c_{\text{ad}} = c + \frac{c}{2k} \left[A \left(1 + \frac{3c}{k+2} \right) \right].$$

If $Q \geq c_{\text{ad}}$, reject H_0 .

7.2.1 R Function *t2way*

The R function

```
t2way(J,K,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

performs the tests on trimmed means described in the previous section, where J and K denote the number of levels associated with factors A and B, respectively. When the data are stored in list mode, the first K groups are assumed to be the data for the first level of factor A, the next K groups are assumed to be data for the second level of factor A, and so on. In R notation, $x[[1]]$ is assumed to contain the data for level 1 of factors A and B, $x[[2]]$ is assumed to contain the data for level 1 of factor A and level 2 of factor B, and so forth. If, for example, a 2-by-4 design is being used, the data are stored as follows:

Factor B				
Factor	$x[[1]]$	$x[[2]]$	$x[[3]]$	$x[[4]]$
A	$x[[5]]$	$x[[6]]$	$x[[7]]$	$x[[8]]$

For instance, $x[[5]]$ contains the data for the second level of factor A and the first level of factor B.

If the data are not stored in the assumed order, *grp* can be used to correct this problem. Suppose, for example, the data are stored as follows:

Factor B				
Factor	$x[[2]]$	$x[[3]]$	$x[[5]]$	$x[[8]]$
A	$x[[4]]$	$x[[1]]$	$x[[6]]$	$x[[7]]$

That is, the data for level 1 of factors A and B are stored in the R variable $x[[2]]$, the data for level 1 of A and level 2 of B is stored in $x[[3]]$, and so forth. To use *t2way*, first enter the R command

```
grp=c(2,3,5,8,4,1,6,7).
```

Then the command `t2way(2,4,x.grp=grp)` tells the function how the data are ordered. In the example, the first value stored in `grp` is 2, indicating that `x[[2]]` contains the data for level 1 of both factors A and B, the next value is 3, indicating that `x[[3]]` contains the data for level 1 of A and level 2 of B, while fifth value is 4, meaning that `x[[4]]` contains the data for level 2 of factor A and level 1 of B. As usual, `tr` indicates the amount of trimming, which defaults to 0.2, and `alpha` is α , which defaults to 0.05. The function returns the test statistic for factor A, V_a , in the variable `t2way$test.A`, and the p-value is returned in `t2way$A.p.value`. Similarly, the test statistics for factor B, V_b , and interaction, V_{ab} , are stored in `t2way$test.B` and `t2way$test.AB`, with the corresponding p-values stored in `t2way$B.p.value` and `t2way$AB.p.value`.

As a more general example, the command

```
t2way(2,3,z,tr=0.1,grp=c(1,3,4,2,5,6),alpha=0.1)
```

would perform the tests for no main effects and no interactions for a 2-by-3 design for the data stored in the R variable `z`, assuming the data for level 1 of factors A and B are stored in `z[[1]]`, the data for level 1 of A and level 2 of B are stored in `z[[3]]`, and so on. The analysis would be based on 10% trimmed means and $\alpha = 0.1$.

Note that the general form for `t2way` contains an argument `p`. It is used by `t2way` to check whether the total number of groups being passed to the function is equal to JK. If JK is not equal to the number of groups in `x`, the function prints a warning message. If, however, you want to perform an analysis using some subset of the groups stored in `x`, this can be done simply by ignoring the warning message. For example, suppose `x` contains data for 10 groups, but you want to use groups 3, 5, 1, and 9 in a 2-by-2 design. That is, groups 3 and 5 correspond to level 1 of the first factor and levels 1 and 2 of the second. The command

```
t2way(2,2,x.grp=c(3,5,1,9))
```

accomplishes this goal. Note that a value for `p` is not passed to the function. The only reason `p` is included in the list of arguments is to satisfy certain requirements of R. The details are not important here and therefore not discussed.

■ Example

Suppose participants are randomly assigned to one of two groups. The first group watches a violent film, and the other watches a nonviolent film. Afterward, suppose aggressive affect is measured, and it is desired to compare both groups, taking gender into account as well. Some hypothetical data are shown in [Table 7.4](#) to illustrate how `t2way` is used. Suppose the data are stored in the R variable `film`, having list mode. In partic-

Table 7.4: Hypothetical Data on the Effect of Watching a Violent Film.

		Film													
		Violent				Nonviolent									
		Male	8, 7, 5, 6, 10, 14, 2, 3, 16			2, 4, 6, 7, 11, 12, 12, 3, 4			Female	5, 6, 8, 2, 3, 4, 5, 2			12, 40, 23, 2, 2, 2, 4, 8, 10		

ular, assume `film[[1]]` contains the values for males watching a violent film (the values 8, 7, 5, 6, 10, 14, 2, 3, and 16). The data for males watching a nonviolent film are stored in `film[[2]]`, the data for females watching a violent film are stored in `film[[3]]`, and the data for females watching a nonviolent film are stored in `film[[4]]`. Then the command `t2way(2,2,film)` would perform the appropriate tests for main effects and interactions using 20% trimmed means. If instead the data for males watching a violent film are stored in `film[[2]]`, and the data for males watching a nonviolent film are stored in `film[[1]]`, use the command `t2way(2,2,film.grp=c(2,1,3,4))` to compare 20% means, while `t2way(2,2,film,tr=0,grp=c(2,1,3,4))` compares means instead.

7.2.2 Comparing Medians

For the special case where the goal is to compare medians, the method in Section 7.2.1 should not be used; the estimate of the standard error performs poorly. One way to proceed is to test global hypotheses as described here, provided there are no tied values. A method that continues to perform well when there are tied values is method LSB in Section 7.6 used in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. Another approach is to use the multiple comparison procedure for medians described in Section 7.4.7, which also handles tied values in an effective manner.

Let M_{jk} be the sample median for the j th level of factor A and the k th level of B, and let n_{jk} and S_{jk}^2 be the corresponding sample size and estimate of the squared standard error of M_{jk} . Here S_{jk}^2 is the McKean–Schrader estimate. To perform hypotheses dealing with main effects, compute

$$\begin{aligned} R_j &= \sum_{k=1}^K M_{jk}, \quad W_k = \sum_{j=1}^J M_{jk}, \\ d_{jk} &= S_{jk}^2, \\ \hat{\nu}_j &= \frac{(\sum_k d_{jk})^2}{\sum_k d_{jk}^2 / (n_{jk} - 1)}, \quad \hat{\omega}_k = \frac{(\sum_j d_{jk})^2}{\sum_j d_{jk}^2 / (n_{jk} - 1)}, \end{aligned}$$

$$\begin{aligned}
r_j &= \frac{1}{\sum_k d_{jk}}, \quad w_k = \frac{1}{\sum_j d_{jk}}, \\
r_s &= \sum_{j=1}^J r_j, \quad w_s = \sum_{k=1}^K w_k, \\
\hat{R} &= \frac{\sum_j r_j R_j}{r_s}, \quad \hat{W} = \frac{\sum_k w_k W_k}{w_s}, \\
B_a &= \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{1}{\hat{v}_j} \left(1 - \frac{r_j}{\sum r_j}\right)^2, \quad B_b = \sum_{k=1}^K \frac{1}{\hat{\omega}_k} \left(1 - \frac{w_k}{\sum w_k}\right)^2, \\
V_a &= \frac{\sum_j r_j (R_j - \hat{R})^2}{(J-1) \left(1 + \frac{2(J-2)B_a}{J^2-1}\right)}, \quad V_b = \frac{\sum_k w_k (W_k - \hat{W})^2}{(K-1) \left(1 + \frac{2(K-2)B_b}{K^2-1}\right)}.
\end{aligned}$$

The degrees of freedom for Factor A are $\nu_1 = J - 1$ and $\nu_2 = \infty$. For Factor B the degrees of freedom are $\nu_1 = K - 1$ and $\nu_2 = \infty$. The hypothesis of no main effect for factor A is rejected if $V_a \geq f_{1-\alpha}$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with the degrees of freedom for factor A. Similarly, reject for factor B if $V_b \geq f_{1-\alpha}$, with the degrees of freedom for factor B.

A heteroscedastic test of the hypothesis of no interactions can be performed as follows. Again let $d_{jk} = S_{jk}^2$ be the McKean–Schrader estimate of the squared standard error of M_{jk} . Let

$$\begin{aligned}
D_{jk} &= \frac{1}{d_{jk}} \\
D_{.k} &= \sum_{j=1}^J D_{jk}, \quad D_{j.} = \sum_{k=1}^K D_{jk} \\
D_{..} &= \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K D_{jk} \\
\tilde{M}_{jk} &= \sum_{\ell=1}^J \frac{D_{\ell k} M_{\ell k}}{D_{.k}} + \sum_{m=1}^K \frac{D_{jm} M_{jm}}{D_{j.}} - \sum_{\ell=1}^J \sum_{m=1}^K \frac{D_{\ell m} M_{\ell m}}{D_{..}}.
\end{aligned}$$

The test statistic is

$$V_{ab} = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K D_{jk} (M_{jk} - \tilde{M}_{jk})^2.$$

Let c be the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-square distribution with $\nu = (J-1)(K-1)$ degrees of freedom. Reject the null hypothesis if $V_{ab} \geq c$.

7.2.3 R Functions med2way and Q2anova

The computations for comparing medians, just described, are performed by the R function

```
med2way(J,K,x,alpha=0.05).
```

The R function

```
Q2anova(J, K, x, tr=0.2, nboot = 2000, MC = FALSE)
```

also test the global hypotheses based on medians. It is based on method LSB in Section 7.6, which has the advantage of being able to handle tied values.

7.3 Three-Way Designs and Trimmed Means Including Medians

This section extends the hypothesis testing technique in Section 7.2, based on trimmed means, to a three-way design. Again, a generalization of results in Johansen (1980) is used to test global hypotheses. It is assumed that a J -by- K -by- L design is being used, so there are a total of $p = JKL$ independent groups with trimmed means $\mu_t = (\mu_{t1}, \dots, \mu_{tJKL})'$. The general strategy for testing main effects and interactions is to test

$$H_0 : \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\mu}_t = 0, \quad (7.6)$$

where \mathbf{C} is constructed in a manner to be described. For convenience, it is assumed that the sample trimmed means are

$$\bar{\mathbf{X}}' = (\bar{X}_{t111}, \dots, \bar{X}_{t11L}, \bar{X}_{t121}, \dots, \bar{X}_{t12L}, \dots, \bar{X}_{t1KL}, \dots, \bar{X}_{tJKL}).$$

That is, the third subscript, which corresponds to the third factor, is incrementing the fastest. Thus, for the first level of the first factor ($J = 1$), the data are arranged as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bar{X}_{t111} & \dots & \bar{X}_{t11L} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \bar{X}_{t1K1} & \dots & \bar{X}_{t1KL}. \end{array}$$

For the second level of the first factor ($J = 2$) the data are arranged as

$$\begin{array}{ccc} \bar{X}_{t211} & \dots & \bar{X}_{t21L} \\ \vdots & \vdots & \vdots \\ \bar{X}_{t2K1} & \dots & \bar{X}_{t2KL}. \end{array}$$

Table 7.5: How to Construct the Contrast Matrix, \mathbf{C} , for a Three-Way Design.

Effect	\mathbf{C}
A	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K \otimes \mathbf{j}'_L$
B	$\mathbf{j}'_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K \otimes \mathbf{j}'_L$
C	$\mathbf{j}'_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K \otimes \mathbf{C}_L$
$A \times B$	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K \otimes \mathbf{j}'_L$
$A \times C$	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K \otimes \mathbf{C}_L$
$B \times C$	$\mathbf{j}'_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K \otimes \mathbf{C}_L$
$A \times B \times C$	$\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K \otimes \mathbf{C}_L$

and so on. (The R function `fac2list`, illustrated in the next section, might help when dealing with data management.)

For any integer $m \geq 2$, again let \mathbf{C}_m be an $(m - 1)$ -by- m matrix having the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ & & & \dots & & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

And as in Section 7.2, \mathbf{j}'_m is a 1-by- m vector of ones. Table 7.5 shows how to construct the contrast matrix \mathbf{C} for the main effects and interactions in a three-way design. For example, when testing for main effects for factor A, use $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K \otimes \mathbf{j}'_L$.

Remembering that $p = JKL$, the total number of groups, let \mathbf{V} be a p -by- p diagonal matrix with

$$v_{jj} = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j(h_j - 1)},$$

$j = 1, \dots, p$. That is, v_{jj} is Yuen's estimate of the squared standard error of the sample trimmed mean corresponding to the j th group. Then

$$Q = \bar{\mathbf{X}}' \mathbf{C}' (\mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}')^{-1} \mathbf{C} \bar{\mathbf{X}} \quad (7.7)$$

can be used to test Eq. (7.6). Let

$$\mathbf{R} = \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}' (\mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}')^{-1} \mathbf{C},$$

and

$$A = \sum_{j=1}^p \frac{r_{jj}^2}{h_j - 1},$$

where r_{jj} is the j th diagonal element of \mathbf{R} . Asymptotically, a critical value for Q is c , the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-square distribution with k degrees of freedom. However, for small sample sizes, an adjusted critical value is needed which is given by

$$c_{\text{ad}} = c + \frac{c}{2k} \left[A \left(1 + \frac{3c}{k+2} \right) \right].$$

If $Q > c_{\text{ad}}$, reject H_0 .

For the special case where medians are compared, use method LSB in Section 7.6

7.3.1 R Functions *t3way*, *fac2list* and *Q3anova*

The R function

```
t3way(J,K,L,x,tr=0.2,grp=c(1:p),alpha=0.05,p=J*K*L)
```

tests the hypotheses of no main effects and no interactions in a three-way (J-by-K-by-L) design using the method described in the previous section. Again, x is any R variable containing the data, which is assumed to be stored in list mode. The default amount of trimming is $tr=0.2$, and the default value for α is 0.05 . The data are assumed to be arranged such that the first L groups correspond to level 1 of factors A and B ($J = 1$ and $K = 1$) and the L levels of factor C. The next L groups correspond to the first level of factor A, the second level of factor B, and the L levels of factor C. If, for example, a 3-by-2-by-4 design is being used, it is assumed that for $J = 1$ (the first level of the first factor), the data are stored in the R variables $x[[1]], \dots, x[[8]]$ as follows:

Factor C				
Factor	$x[[1]]$	$x[[2]]$	$x[[3]]$	$x[[4]]$
B	$x[[5]]$	$x[[6]]$	$x[[7]]$	$x[[8]]$

For the second level of the first factor, $J = 2$, it is assumed that the data are stored as

Factor C				
Factor	$x[[9]]$	$x[[10]]$	$x[[11]]$	$x[[12]]$
B	$x[[13]]$	$x[[14]]$	$x[[15]]$	$x[[16]]$

If the data are not stored as assumed by *t3way*, *grp* can be used to indicate the proper ordering. As an illustration, consider a 2-by-2-by-4 design and suppose that for $J = 1$, the data are stored as follows:

	Factor C			
Factor	x[[15]]	x[[8]]	x[[3]]	x[[4]]
B	x[[6]]	x[[5]]	x[[7]]	x[[8]]

while for $J = 2$

	Factor C			
Factor	x[[10]]	x[[9]]	x[[11]]	x[[12]]
B	x[[1]]	x[[2]]	x[[13]]	x[[16]]

The R command

```
grp=c(15,8,3,4,6,5,7,8,10,9,11,12,1,2,13,16)
```

followed by the command `t3way(2,2,3,x,grp=grp)` will test all of the relevant hypotheses at the 0.05 level using 20% trimmed means.

The general form for `t3way` contains an argument `p` that is used to check whether $p = JKL$ is equal to the total number of groups contained in `x`, and it is also used to generate the default value for `grp`. As far as applications are concerned, this argument can be ignored. (It is necessary only to satisfy certain R requirements that are not relevant here.) If JKL is not equal to the number of groups passed to `t3way`, the function prints a warning message. If, however, you want to use some subset of the groups in a three-way design, you can do this simply by ignoring the error message and taking care that the proper groups are used in the analysis. In other words, proceed along the lines described in conjunction with `t2way`. As a simple illustration, if there are 10 groups, but it is desired to use only the first 8 groups in a 2-by-2-by-2 design, the command

```
t3way(2,2,2,x)
```

can be used, assuming the first two groups belong to level 1 of the first two factors and levels 1 and 2 of the third, and so on. If the groups are not in the proper order, `grp` can be used as already described and illustrated.

■ Example

The example in Section 7.2.1 involved a 2-by-2 design dealing with the effect of watching a violent versus nonviolent film. Extending the illustration, suppose that education is taken into account with one group having a college degree, and the other does not. Some hypothetical data for this 2-by-2-by-2 design are shown in Table 7.6. Suppose the data are stored in the assumed order in the R variable `film`. Thus, `film[[1]]` contains the data for level 1 of all three factors (the values 8, 7, 5, 6, 10, 14, 2, 3, and 16), `film[[2]]`

Table 7.6: Hypothetical Data on the Effect of Watching a Violent Film.

		No Degree			
		Violent		Nonviolent	
				Degree	
		Violent		Nonviolent	
Male		8, 7, 5, 6, 10, 14, 2, 3, 16		2, 4, 6, 7, 11, 12, 12, 3, 4	
Female		5, 6, 8, 2, 3, 4, 5, 2		12, 40, 23, 2, 2, 2, 4	
				Degree	
		Violent		Nonviolent	
Male		8, 10, 12, 14, 2, 18, 20		2, 3, 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 3, 4	
Female		4, 5, 6, 7, 6, 5, 4, 7, 8		12, 1, 4, 19, 20, 22, 23, 24, 30	

contains the data for no degree, male subjects watching a nonviolent film, film[[4]] contains the data for no degree, female subjects watching a nonviolent film, and film[[6]] contains the data for male subjects, with a degree, who watch a nonviolent film. Then the command t3way(2,2,2,film) will test all relevant hypotheses using 20% trimmed means. If it had been the case that the data for no degree, male subjects watching a violent film were stored in film[[2]], and the data for no degree, males subjects watching a nonviolent film were in film[[1]], but otherwise the assumed order is correct, the R command t3way(2,2,2,film.grp=c(2,1,3,4,5,6,7,8)) would perform the correct computations.

The function returns the various test statistics and corresponding critical values. The value of the test statistic, Q , for main effects for factor A, is returned in t3way\$Qa, for factor B it is returned in t3way\$Qb, and for factor C it is in t3way\$Qc. The corresponding critical values are returned in t3way\$Qa.crit, t3way\$Qb.crit, and t3way\$Qc.crit. The tests for two-way interactions are stored in t3way\$Qab, t3way\$Qac, and t3way\$Qbc; the critical values are in t3way\$Qab.crit, t3way\$Qac.crit, and t3way\$Qbc.crit; and the test for a three-way interaction is in t3way\$Qabc, with the critical value in t3way\$Qabc.crit.

If data are stored in a matrix, with some of the columns indicating the levels of the factors, it is noted that the function fac2list, described in Section 7.1.2, can be used to store the data in the manner required here. Suppose the data are stored in a matrix, say m, with group numbers for the three factors stored in columns 2, 4, and 6. If, for example, a 2-by-4-by-5 design is being examined, column 2 would contain the group identification numbers for the two levels of the first factor. The values in column 2 might be 1 or 2, or they might be a 10 and 16. That is, there are two distinct values only, but they can be any two numbers. If the outcome measures are stored in column 5, the R command

```
dat=fac2list(m[,5],m[,c(2,4,6)])
```

will store the data in dat, in list mode. If, for example, it is desired to compare 20% trimmed means, this is accomplished with the command

```
t3way(2,4,6,dat).
```

When the goal is to compare medians, the R function

```
Q3anova(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, nboot = 600, MC = FALSE)
```

can be used even when there are tied values. Another option is to use the R function med3mcp in Section 7.4.10. A possible appeal of this latter function is that it can be used with the usual sample median, which has a higher breakdown point than the Harrell–Davis estimator.

7.4 Multiple Comparisons Based on Medians and Other Trimmed Means

This section summarizes several methods for performing multiple comparisons based on trimmed means, including medians as a special case. Included are methods for testing hypotheses about linear contrasts associated with two-way and three-way designs, which are described and illustrated in Section 7.4.3. The role of linear contrasts is described in many books dealing with the analysis of variance, so for brevity, details are kept to a minimum.

A general goal is to control the probability of at least one Type I error. And a related goal is computing confidence intervals that have some specified simultaneous probability coverage. But another goal that has received increased attention in recent years is to control the *false discovery rate*. (For recent theoretical results on how this might be done, see [Delattre & Roquain, 2015](#).) To elaborate, when testing C hypotheses, let Q be the proportion of hypotheses that are true and rejected. That is, Q is the proportion of Type I errors among the null hypotheses that are correct. If all hypotheses are false, then $Q = 0$, but otherwise Q can vary from one experiment to the next. The *false discovery rate* is the expected value of Q .

A common practice is to use multiple comparison procedures, such as those described in this section, only if a global test, such as those described in Sections 7.1–7.3, rejects. In terms of controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors, the methods in this section do not require that a global test first be performed and rejected. Indeed, based on results reported by [Bernhardson \(1975\)](#), the expectation is that using the multiple comparisons procedures in this chapter, contingent on first rejecting a global hypothesis, would alter their ability to control the probability of at least one Type I error in an unintended way. More precisely, the methods in this section are designed so that the probability of one more Type I errors is α . If these methods are used contingent on a global test rejecting at the α level, the expectation is

that the actual probability of one or more Type I errors will be less than α . In practical terms, a loss in power might result if the multiple comparison procedures in this chapter are used only if a global test rejects.

7.4.1 Basic Methods Based on Trimmed Means

A relatively simple strategy for performing multiple comparisons and tests about linear contrasts, when comparing trimmed means, is to use an extension of Yuen's method for two groups in conjunction with a simple generalization of [Dunnett's \(1980\)](#) heteroscedastic T3 procedure for means.

Let $\mu_{t1}, \dots, \mu_{tJ}$ be the trimmed means corresponding to J independent groups. A linear contrast is

$$\Psi = \sum_{j=1}^J c_j \mu_{tj},$$

where c_1, \dots, c_J are specified constants satisfying $\sum c_j = 0$. As a simple illustration, if $c_1 = 1$, $c_2 = -1$, and $c_3 = \dots = c_J = 0$, $\Psi = \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, the difference between the first two trimmed means. Typically, C linear contrasts are of interest, a common goal being to compare all pairs of means. Linear contrasts also play an important role when dealing with two-way and higher designs.

Consider testing

$$H_0 : \Psi = 0. \quad (7.8)$$

An extension of the Yuen–Welch method accomplishes this goal. The estimate of Ψ is

$$\hat{\Psi} = \sum_{j=1}^J c_j \bar{X}_{tj}.$$

An estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\Psi}$ is

$$A = \sum d_j,$$

where

$$d_j = \frac{c_j^2(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j(h_j - 1)},$$

h_j is the effective sample size of the j th group, and s_{wj}^2 is the Winsorized variance. In other words, estimate the squared standard error of \bar{X}_t as is done in Yuen's method, in which case an estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\Psi}$ is given by A . Let

$$D = \sum \frac{d_j^2}{h_j - 1},$$

set

$$\hat{v} = \frac{A^2}{D},$$

and let t be the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with \hat{v} degrees of freedom. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Ψ is

$$\hat{\Psi} \pm t\sqrt{A}.$$

Let Ψ_1, \dots, Ψ_C be C linear contrasts of interest, where

$$\Psi_k = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \mu_{tj},$$

and let \hat{v}_k be the estimated degrees of freedom associated with the k th linear contrast, which is computed as described in the previous paragraph. As previously noted, a common goal is to compute a confidence interval for each Ψ_k such that the simultaneous probability coverage is $1 - \alpha$. A related goal is to test $H_0 : \Psi_k = 0$, $k = 1, \dots, C$, such that the *familywise error rate* (FWE), meaning the probability of at least one Type I error among all C tests to be performed, is α . The practical problem is finding a method that adjusts the critical value to achieve this goal. One strategy is to compute confidence intervals having the form

$$\hat{\Psi}_k \pm t_k \sqrt{A_k},$$

where A_k is the estimated squared standard error of $\hat{\Psi}_k$, computed as described when testing Eq. (7.8), and t_k is the $1 - \alpha$ percentage point of the C -variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution with estimated degrees of freedom \hat{v}_k . In terms of testing $H_0 : \Psi_k = 0$, $k = 1, \dots, C$, reject $H_0 : \Psi_k = 0$ if $|T_k| > t_k$, where

$$T_k = \frac{\hat{\Psi}_k}{\sqrt{A_k}}.$$

(The R software written for this book determines t_k when $\alpha = 0.05$ or 0.01 , and $C \leq 28$ using values computed and reported in [Wilcox, 1986](#). For other values of α or $C > 28$, the function determines t_k via simulations with 10,000 replications. [Bechhofer and Dunnett, 1982](#), report values up to $C = 32$.) When there is no trimming, the method just described reduces to [Dunnett's \(1980\)](#) T3 procedure for means when all pairwise comparisons are performed.

A Step-Down Multiple Comparison Procedure

All pairs power refers to the probability of detecting all true differences. For the special case where all pairwise comparisons are to be made, a so-called step-down method might provide higher all pairs power. Motivated by results in [Hochberg and Tamhane \(1987\)](#) as well as [Wilcox \(1991c\)](#), the method is applied as follows:

1. Test the global hypothesis, at the $\alpha_J = \alpha$ level, that all J groups have a common trimmed mean. If H_0 is not rejected, stop and fail to find any differences among the groups. Otherwise, continue to the next step.
2. For each subset of $J - 1$ groups, test at the $\alpha_{J-1} = \alpha$ level the hypothesis that the $J - 1$ groups have a common trimmed mean. If all such tests are nonsignificant, stop. Otherwise continue to the next step.
3. For each subset of $J - 2$ groups, test at the $\alpha_{J-2} = 1 - (1 - \alpha)^{(J-2)/J}$ level the hypothesis that all $J - 2$ groups have equal trimmed means. If all of these tests are nonsignificant, stop; otherwise, continue to the next step.
4. Test the hypothesis of equal trimmed means for all subsets of p groups, at the $\alpha_p = 1 - (1 - \alpha)^{p/J}$ level, when $p \leq J - 2$. If all of these tests are nonsignificant, stop and fail to detect any differences among the groups; otherwise, continue to the next step.
5. The final step consists of testing all pairwise comparisons of the groups at the $\alpha_2 = 1 - (1 - \alpha)^{2/J}$ level. In this final step, when comparing the j th group to the k th group, either fail to reject, fail to reject by implication from one of the previous steps, or reject. For example, if the hypothesis that groups 1, 2 and 3 have equal trimmed means is not rejected, then in particular groups 1 and 2 would not be declared significantly different by implication.

Although this step-down method can increase all pairs power, it should be noted that when comparing means, power can be relatively poor. Consider, for example, four groups, three of which have normal distributions and the third has a heavy-tailed distribution. Even when the first three groups differ substantially, a few outliers in the fourth group can destroy the power of a global test based on means. That is, the first step in the step-down method can fail to reject, in which case no differences are found. Using a robust measure of location guards against this concern.

7.4.2 R Functions *lincon*, *conCON* and *stepmcp*

The R function

```
lincon(x,con=0,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)
```

is provided for testing linear contrasts involving trimmed means. The argument *x* is an R variable having list mode, *tr* indicates the amount of trimming, and *con* is a J -by- C matrix, the k th column containing the contrast coefficients for the k th linear contrast of interest, $k = 1, \dots, C$. The argument *alpha* is α which defaults to 0.05. Any other value for the argument *alpha* results in $\alpha = 01$. As usual, *x*[[1]] contains the data for group 1, *x*[[2]] the data for group 2, and so on, and the default amount of trimming is *tr*=0.2, 20%. (The functions *fac2list*, *selby* and *selby2*, described in Section 1.9, can be used to store the data in list mode when initially the data are stored in a matrix, say *m*, with 1 or more columns of *m* containing group identification numbers.) If *con* is not specified, all pairwise comparisons are performed. The function returns two matrices called *test* and *psihat*. If all pairwise comparisons are to be performed, the first two columns of both matrices indicate which groups are being compared. The remaining columns of the first matrix, *test*, report the test statistic, the 0.95 critical value, the estimated standard error, and the degrees of freedom. If there is interest in using $\alpha = 01$, rather than 0.05, these results can be used to determine an appropriate critical value by referring to the table of Studentized maximum modulus distribution previously cited in this section. Columns 3–5 of *psihat* report $\hat{\Psi}$, and the lower and upper ends of the 0.95 confidence interval. These quantities are found in the columns labeled *psihat*, *ci.lower*, and *ci.upper*, respectively. If specific contrasts are of interest (meaning that a value for *con* is passed to *lincon*), the output is the same as just described, only the first two columns of the matrices returned by *lincon* are replaced by the number of the contrast being examined. That is, the first row of each matrix returned by *lincon* is numbered 1, meaning that it contains the results for Ψ_1 , and so on.

The critical value used by *lincon* is determined with the goal that the probability of at least one Type I error is less than or equal to 0.05 or 0.01, depending on the argument *alpha*. A related goal is that the simultaneous probability coverage of all the confidence intervals is greater than or equal to 0.95 or 0.99. This is accomplished by storing exact percentage points of the Studentized maximum modulus distribution in the R functions called *smmcrit* and *smmcrit01* for $C = 2, \dots, 28$ and selected degrees of freedom. These exact values were determined with the FORTRAN program in [Wilcox \(1986\)](#). For other degrees of freedom, linear interpolation on inverse degrees of freedom is used to determine the 0.95 and 0.99 quantiles. The function assumes that for $v \geq 200$, $v = \infty$. For $C > 28$, or values for α other than 0.05 and 0.01, the R function *smmvalv2* is used to compute the required percentage point.

The optional argument *con* is a J -by- C matrix that contains the contrast coefficients to be used. The k th column is assumed to contain the contrast coefficients c_{1k}, \dots, c_{Jk} , which correspond to the k th linear contrast, Ψ_k . As previously indicated, if *con* is not specified, then all pairwise comparisons are performed. If, for example, the goal is to compare a control group to each of the $J - 1$ other groups, this can be done via the R function

Table 7.7: Data Used to Illustrate the R Function lincon.

Group 1:	119, -53, -77, 32, 194, -34, 48, -73, -69, -95, 175
Group 2:	-25, -22, 158, 208, 245, -70, -95, -68, 161, 28, -73
Group 3:	-95, 438, -72, 290, 3, -86, 136, 43, -27, 76, -79
Group 4:	-37, -88, -23, -50, 45, -36, -79, -86, -66, -73, -11, 16, 0, 47, 218

```
conCON(J,conG=1)
```

where the argument J indicates the number of groups and conG indicates which group is the control. By default, it is assumed that the first group is the control group. The contrast coefficients are returned in \$conCON. For example, if four groups are stored in the R variable x, and the control group corresponds to group 2, the command

```
lincon(x,con=conCON(4,2)$conCON)
```

would compare three groups to the control group.

■ Example

Suppose all pairwise comparisons are to be performed using the data in [Table 7.7](#). If the data are stored in the R variable x, the command lincon(x) returns

```
$test
  Group Group      test      crit       se       df
[1,]    1    2 0.4151210 3.120264 66.07368 11.374139
[2,]    1    3 0.2590833 3.094621 60.65340 11.900028
[3,]    1    4 0.6099785 3.372408 43.97761 7.892383
[4,]    2    3 0.1708173 3.101733 68.57785 11.749354
[5,]    2    4 0.9975252 3.464224 54.38857 7.177902
[6,]    3    4 0.8926159 3.410628 47.65732 7.578376

$psihat
  Group Group     psihat   ci.lower   ci.upper   p.value
[1,]    1    2 -27.42857 -233.5959 178.7387 0.6857763
[2,]    1    3 -15.71429 -203.4136 171.9850 0.7999983
[3,]    1    4 26.82540 -121.4851 175.1358 0.5590247
[4,]    2    3 11.71429 -200.9959 224.4245 0.8672737
[5,]    2    4 54.25397 -134.1602 242.6682 0.3509425
[6,]    3    4 42.53968 -120.0017 205.0811 0.3995184
```

For example, when comparing groups 1 and 2 with 20% trimmed means, the third and fourth columns stored in \$test indicate that the test statistic is 0.415, and the $\alpha = 0.05$ critical value is 3.12. The remaining two columns indicate the estimated stan-

dard error and degrees of freedom. The results in \$psihat indicate that when comparing groups 2 and 3, $\hat{\Psi} = 11.7$, and the 0.95 confidence interval is $(-201, 224)$. The command `lincon(x,alpha=01)` would use $\alpha = 01$ instead. (For convenience, the R function `mmean(x,est=tmean,...)` has been provided, which computes measures of location for all groups stored in `x`.)

■

■ Example

Again consider the data in [Table 7.7](#), only now suppose that the fourth group is a control and it is desired to compare each of the first three groups to the control. That is, the goal is to compare group 1 to group 4, group 2 to group 4, and group 3 to group 4. Then the contrast coefficients for the first linear contrast are $c_{11} = 1$, $c_{21} = c_{31} = 0$, and $c_{41} = -1$, in which case

$$\begin{aligned}\Psi_1 &= 1\mu_{t1} + 0\mu_{t2} + 0\mu_{t3} + (-1)\mu_{t4} \\ &= \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t4}.\end{aligned}$$

In a similar fashion, the contrast coefficients for $\Psi_2 = \mu_{t2} - \mu_{t4}$ are $c_{12} = c_{32} = 0$, $c_{22} = 1$, and $c_{42} = -1$. For $\Psi_3 = \mu_{t3} - \mu_{t4}$, they are $c_{13} = c_{23} = 0$, $c_{33} = 1$ and $c_{43} = -1$.

To use `lincon`, first store the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & 1 \\ -1 & -1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}$$

in any R variable. The first column contains the contrast coefficients for the first linear contrast, $(1, 0, 0, -1)$. The second columns contains the contrast coefficients for the second linear contrast, and the third column contains the contrast coefficients associated with Ψ_3 . For example, the command

```
MAT=conCON(4,4)$conCON
```

stores the contrast coefficients in the R variable `MAT`. Assuming the data for the four groups are stored in `x`, the command `lincon(x,con=MAT)` performs the three comparisons with $\alpha = 0.05$, and the results are

```
$test
  con.num      test      crit       se      df
[1,]      1 0.6099785 2.969545 43.97761 7.892383
[2,]      2 0.9975252 3.040172 54.38857 7.177902
[3,]      3 0.8926159 2.998945 47.65732 7.578376

$psihat
  con.num   psihat ci.lower ci.upper p.value
[1,]      1 26.82540 -103.7681 157.4189 0.5590247
[2,]      2 54.25397 -111.0967 219.6046 0.3509425
[3,]      3 42.53968 -100.3820 185.4614 0.3995184

$test:
  con.num      test      crit       se      df
[1,]      1 0.6099785 2.969545 43.97761 7.892383
[2,]      2 0.9975252 3.040172 54.38857 7.177902
[3,]      3 0.8926159 2.998945 47.65732 7.578376

$psihat:
  con.num   psihat ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]      1 26.82540 -103.7681 157.4189
[2,]      2 54.25397 -111.0967 219.6046
[3,]      3 42.53968 -100.3820 185.4614
```

A difference between this output and the output of the previous example is that now the contrasts are numbered under the column labeled con.num. The results for the first linear contrast, $\mu_{t1} - \mu_{t4}$, are stored in the first row of the matrices \$test and \$psihat. Thus, the test statistic for $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t4}$ is 0.61, the critical value is 2.97, the estimate of $\Psi_1 = \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t4}$ is 26.8, and the 0.95 confidence interval is $(-103.8, 157.4)$. Note that the critical values in this example are smaller than those in the previous example. This is because only three contrasts are being tested now, as opposed to six contrasts before.

The R function

`stepmcp(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05)`

performs the step-down method for performing all pairwise comparisons of the trimmed means. Each of the global tests is performed via the R function `t1way` in Section 7.1.2, which applies the method in [Table 7.1](#). This function is limited to five groups.

■ Example

Here is an example of the output from `stepmcp` when comparing four groups:

	Groups	p-value	p.crit
[1,]	12	0.003463866	0.02532057
[2,]	13	0.188209885	0.02532057
[3,]	14	0.040447312	0.02532057
[4,]	23	0.278323659	0.02532057
[5,]	24	0.532323103	0.02532057
[6,]	34	0.623339080	0.02532057
[7,]	123	0.012867018	0.050000000
[8,]	124	0.008151950	0.050000000
[9,]	134	0.091328319	0.050000000
[10,]	234	0.543503951	0.050000000
[11,]	1234	0.020327162	0.050000000

The last line indicates the result when testing the hypothesis that all four groups have equal 20% trimmed means, which is significant at the 0.05 level. Note that when comparing groups 1 and 2, the p-value is less than the critical level, 0.02532 as indicated by line 1. In addition, when testing $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t3}$, as well as $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t4}$, again a significant result is obtained. Consequently, reject $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$. If, for example, the p-value associated with $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t3}$ were 0.06, $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ would not be rejected despite the fact that the p-value associated with $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$ is less than the critical p-value. That is, by implication, the hypotheses $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}$, $H_0: \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t3}$ and $H_0: \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t3}$ would not be rejected regardless of how small the corresponding p-values might be.

■

7.4.3 Multiple Comparisons for Two-Way and Three-Way Designs

Relevant multiple comparisons in a two-way design can be tested using appropriate linear contrasts. Consider, for example, a 3-by-3 design with the trimmed means depicted as follows:

		Factor B		
		1	2	3
Factor A	1	μ_{t1}	μ_{t2}	μ_{t3}
	2	μ_{t4}	μ_{t5}	μ_{t6}
	3	μ_{t7}	μ_{t8}	μ_{t9}

Let

$$\Psi_1 = \mu_{t1} + \mu_{t2} + \mu_{t3} - \mu_{t4} - \mu_{t5} - \mu_{t6},$$

$$\Psi_2 = \mu_{t1} + \mu_{t2} + \mu_{t3} - \mu_{t7} - \mu_{t8} - \mu_{t9},$$

$$\Psi_3 = \mu_{t4} + \mu_{t5} + \mu_{t6} - \mu_{t7} - \mu_{t8} - \mu_{t9}.$$

Then an approach to comparing the main effects for Factor A is to test $H_0: \Psi_\ell = 0$, for $\ell = 1, 2$ and 3. Roughly, the goal is to compare level 1 of Factor A to level 2 of Factor A, then compare levels 1 and 3, and finally compare levels 2 and 3. Main effects for Factor B, as well as interactions, can be examined in a similar manner. For interactions, this means that for any two levels of Factor A, say j and j' ($j < j'$), and any two levels of Factor B, k and k' ($k < k'$), linear contrast coefficients are generated with the goal of testing

$$H_0 : \mu_{tj} - \mu_{tj'} = \mu_{tk} - \mu_{tk'}.$$

For convenience, an R function (described in the next section and called `con2way`) is provided that generates the contrast coefficients typically used in a two-way design. Three-way designs are handled in a similar manner by generating linear contrast coefficients with the R function `con3way`, which is also described in the next section.

7.4.4 R Functions `bbmcp`, `mcp2med`, `bbbmcp`, `mcp3med`, `con2way` and `con3way`

The R function

```
bbmcp(J,K,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,grp=NA,op=F)
```

tests all of the usual pairwise comparisons associated with the levels of each factor, as well as all interactions associated with any two rows and columns, based on trimmed means. (This function is the same as the R function `mcp2atm`.) It does this by calling the R function

```
con2way(J,K),
```

which generates linear contrast coefficients, and then it calls the R function `lincon`. If `op=F`, the $(J^2 - J)/2$ hypotheses associated with Factor A (all pairwise comparisons of the J levels) are tested with the probability of one or more Type I errors designated by the argument `alpha`, which defaults to 0.05. The same is done for Factor B and all relevant interactions. If `op=T`, the function is designed so that for all comparisons associated with Factor A, Factor B, and all interactions, the probability of one or more Type I errors is `alpha`. So with `op=T`, power will be lower because the probability of one or more Type I errors is being controlled for all hypotheses under consideration. For the special case where the goal is to compare medians, the function

```
mcp2med(J,K,x,con=0,alpha=0.05,grp=NA,op=F)
```

is supplied, which is based in part on the McKean–Schrader estimate of the standard error of the sample medians. As previously noted, this estimate of the standard error appears to perform reasonably well *with no tied values*, but otherwise a percentile bootstrap method is recommended for comparing medians, which can be done with the R functions in Section 7.4.7.

■ Example

Consider a 2-by-3 design. A portion of the output from the R command `con2way(2,3)` is

```
$conAB
 [,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]    1    1    0
[2,]   -1    0    1
[3,]    0   -1   -1
[4,]   -1   -1    0
[5,]    1    0   -1
[6,]    0    1    1
```

The three columns contain the linear contrast coefficients relevant to the three interactions associated with the six groups being compared. Assuming means being compared and that they are arranged as indicated in Table 7.2, the first column indicates that the linear contrast of interest is

$$\Psi = \mu_1 - \mu_2 - \mu_4 + \mu_5.$$

The typical goal is to test $H_0: \Psi = 0$, which of course is the same as testing

$$H_0: \mu_1 - \mu_2 = \mu_4 - \mu_5,$$

the hypothesis of no interaction for levels 1 and 2 of both factors. The second column deals with the interaction associated with levels 1 and 3 of factor B. And the third column deals with levels 2 and 3. If factor A had three levels, `conAB` would have nine columns. The first three would deal with levels 1 and 2 of factor A, the next three would deal with levels 1 and 3 of factor A. And the final three would deal with levels 2 and 3. Again the first three columns of `conAB` would deal with the three levels of factor B, namely, levels 1 and 2, 1 and 3, and finally levels 2 and 3.

■

The R function

```
bbbmcp(J,K,L,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,grp=NA,op=F)
```

is like bbmcp, only it is designed for a three-way design. (This function is the same as the R function mcp3atm.) The linear contrast coefficients are generated by the R function

```
con3way(J,K,L).
```

So all pairwise comparisons associated with the levels of each factor are performed, as well as all interactions associated with the levels of each factor. For medians, use the R function

```
mcp3med(J,K,L,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,grp=NA,op=F).
```

■ Example

To illustrate the use of the R function con3way when dealing with a three-way interaction, consider a 2-by-2-by-3 design and focus on the contrast coefficients returned by the command `con3way(2,2,3)`, which are stored in the matrix `conABC`. The means are assumed to be arranged as described at the beginning of Section 7.3. The first set of contrast coefficients, stored in the first column of `conABC`, deal with the A-by-B interaction at levels 1 and 2 of factor C. The second set of contrast coefficients deal with the A-by-B interactions at levels 1 and 3 of factor C. The contrast coefficients stored in the third column of `conABC` deal with the A-by-B interactions at levels 2 and 3 of factor C. For a 2-by-3-by-3 design, there are nine linear contrasts associated with a three-way interaction. The first three deal with the interactions associated levels 1 and 2 of factors A and B, respectively. The first set of linear contrast coefficients (in column 1 of `conABC`) is relevant to levels 1 and 2 of factor C, the next is relevant to levels 1 and 3 of factor C, and the third is relevant to levels 2 and 3 of factor C. The next three sets of linear contrast coefficients repeat this pattern, only now the focus is on levels 1 and 3 factor B (and levels 1 and 2 of factor A). The final three sets of linear contrasts coefficients deal with levels 2 and 3 of factor B.

7.4.5 A Bootstrap-t Procedure

When comparing trimmed means, and the amount of trimming is relatively small, all indications are that an extension of the bootstrap-t method to multiple comparisons has practical value. So in particular, when comparing means and when the sample sizes are small, this approach appears to perform relatively well, with the understanding that all methods based on means can be unsatisfactory.

Table 7.8: Bootstrap-t Confidence Intervals for C Linear Contrasts.

The goal is to compute confidence intervals for each of C linear contrasts, Ψ_1, \dots, Ψ_C , such that the simultaneous probability coverage is $1 - \alpha$. The k th linear contrast has contrast coefficients c_{1k}, \dots, c_{Jk} .

Step 1. For each of the J groups, generate a bootstrap sample, X_{ij}^* , $i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$. For each of the J bootstrap samples, compute the trimmed mean, \bar{X}_j^* , and d_j^* , Yuen's estimate of the squared standard error of \bar{X}_j^* , $j = 1, \dots, J$.

Step 2. For the k th linear contrast, compute

$$T_k^* = \frac{|\hat{\Psi}_k^* - \hat{\Psi}_k|}{\sqrt{A_k^*}},$$

where $\hat{\Psi}_k^* = \sum c_{jk} \bar{X}_k^*$ and $A_k^* = \sum c_{jk}^2 d_j^*$.

Step 3. Let

$$T_m^* = \max \{T_1^*, \dots, T_C^*\}.$$

In words, T_m^* is the maximum of the C values, T_1^*, \dots, T_C^* .

Step 4. Repeat steps 1–3 B times yielding T_{mb}^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$.

Let $T_{m(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{m(B)}^*$ be the T_{mb}^* values written in ascending order, and let $a = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then the confidence interval for Ψ_k is

$$\hat{\Psi}_k \pm T_{m(a)}^* \sqrt{A_k},$$

and the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$.

Table 7.8 describes a bootstrap-t method for computing confidence intervals for each of C linear contrasts, Ψ_k , $k = 1, \dots, C$, such that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. The method is essentially the same as the symmetric two-sided confidence interval using the bootstrap-t method described in **Table 5.6**, only modified so that for the C linear contrasts, the probability of at least one Type I error is approximately α .

When using the Studentized maximum modulus distribution to compare all pairs of trimmed means, it is known that probability coverage can be more satisfactory when using 20% trimmed means versus no trimming at all. However, concerns persist when any of the sample sizes are small. If the goal is to avoid having the probability of a Type I error excessively higher than α , the bootstrap-t method is a good choice based on extant simulation studies when the amount of trimming is small. A criticism of the bootstrap-t is that when all of the sample sizes are less than or equal to 15, the probability of at least one Type I error can drop below 0.025 when testing at the 0.05 level.

Table 7.9 shows estimates of α (which is one minus the simultaneous probability coverage) when sampling from exponential or lognormal distributions with four groups, $B = 599$,

Table 7.9: Simulation Estimates of α for Some Light-Tailed Distributions.

Distribution	n	σ	Bootstrap	No Bootstrap
Exponential	(11, 11, 11, 11)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.039	0.060
	(11, 11, 11, 11)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.039	0.096
	(15, 15, 15, 15)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.050	0.042
	(15, 15, 15, 15)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.050	0.083
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.041	0.046
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.040	0.061
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(5, 1, 1, 1)	0.052	0.098
Lognormal	(11, 11, 11, 11)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.015	0.030
	(11, 11, 11, 11)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.046	0.091
	(15, 15, 15, 15)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.023	0.028
	(15, 15, 15, 15)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.052	0.085
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(1, 1, 1, 1)	0.030	0.033
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(1, 1, 1, 5)	0.039	0.056
	(10, 15, 20, 25)	(5, 1, 1, 1)	0.063	0.104

and various configurations of sample sizes, n , and standard deviations, σ , when using 20% trimmed means. (Additional simulations are reported by Wilcox, 1996b.) If the sample sizes are large enough, probability coverage will be satisfactory without using the bootstrap-t method, but it is unknown just how large the sample sizes must be. For heavier tailed distributions, the bootstrap-t method offers less of an advantage, but it is difficult to tell whether it can be safely abandoned simply by looking at the data.

7.4.6 R Functions *linconbt*, *bbtrim* and *bbbtrim*

The R function

```
linconbt(x,con=0,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599)
```

is provided for applying the bootstrap-t method when testing d linear contrasts using trimmed means. (The R functions linconb and linconbt are identical.) This function is used exactly like the function lincon in Section 7.4.2, the only difference being the additional argument, nboot, which is used to specify B , the number of bootstrap samples to be used. Again, if con is not specified, all pairwise comparisons are performed. The default value for nboot is 599 which appears to suffice, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when $\alpha = 0.05$. However, a larger choice for nboot might result in more power. The extent to which accurate probability coverage can be obtained, when $\alpha < 0.05$, is not known.

■ Example

Again consider the data in [Table 7.7](#), suppose it is desired to compare the first three groups to the fourth, only now a bootstrap-t method is used. The results from lincomb are

```
$psihat
  con.num   psihat ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]      1 26.82540 -146.2109 199.8617
[2,]      2 54.25397 -159.7458 268.2537
[3,]      3 42.53968 -144.9750 230.0544

$test
  con.num     test       se p.value
[1,]      1 0.6099785 43.97761 0.5525876
[2,]      2 0.9975252 54.38857 0.3439065
[3,]      3 0.8926159 47.65732 0.4140234

$crit
[1] 3.934646
```

The contrast matrix is also returned in lincomb\$con. The estimates of Ψ for the three linear contrasts of interest, plus the corresponding standard deviations, are the same as before. However, the confidence intervals are longer using the bootstrap method. The critical value for all three contrasts, used by the first method in this section, is approximately 3, but the bootstrap estimate of the critical value is 3.99. This was expected because the observations in [Table 7.7](#) were generated by first generating values from an exponential distribution, shifting them so that the trimmed mean is equal to zero, and multiplying by 100. That is, observations were generated from a skewed distribution with a relatively light tail. If the observations were generated from a normal distribution instead, the expectation is that there would be little difference between the confidence intervals.

For convenience, the R function

```
bbtrim(J,K,x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599)
```

is supplied for performing the usual multiple comparisons associated with a J -by- K design using a bootstrap-t method with trimmed means. The function generates the linear contrast coefficients via the R function con2way and then uses lincomb to test the relevant hypotheses. Multiple comparisons associated with a J -by- K -by- L three-way design are performed with the R function

```
bbbtrim(J,K,L,x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,nboot=599).
```

The contrast coefficients are generated via the R function

```
con3way(J,K,L).
```

7.4.7 Controlling the Familywise Error Rate: Improvements on the Bonferroni Method

Imagine the goal is to test C hypotheses such that the probability of one or more Type I errors is at most α . A simple way of proceeding is to use the *Bonferroni* method, meaning that each test is performed at the α/C level. However, several improvements on the Bonferroni method have been published that can provide higher power.

Rom's Method

Imagine the goal is to test C hypotheses such that the probability of one or more Type I errors is at most α . One way of improving on the Bonferroni method is to use a *sequentially rejective* method derived by [Rom \(1990\)](#), which has been found to have good power relative to several competing techniques. A limitation of Rom's method is that it was derived assuming that independent test statistics are used, but various studies suggest that it continues to control the Type I error reasonably well when the test statistics are dependent.

To apply it, compute a p-value for each of the C tests to be performed and label them p_1, \dots, p_C . Next, put the p-values in descending order, which are labeled $p_{[1]} \geq p_{[2]} \geq \dots \geq p_{[C]}$. Proceed as follows:

1. Set $k=1$.
2. If $p_{[k]} \leq d_k$, where d_k is read from [Table 7.10](#), stop and reject all C hypotheses; otherwise, go to step 3.
3. Increment k by 1. If $p_{[k]} \leq d_k$, stop and reject all hypotheses having a significance level less than or equal d_k
4. If $p_{[k]} > d_k$, repeat step 3.
5. Continue until you reject or all C hypotheses have been tested.

Hochberg's Method

[Hochberg's \(1988\)](#) method for controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors is applied as follows. Again let p_1, \dots, p_C be the p-values associated with the C tests, put these p-values in descending order, and label the results $p_{[1]} \geq p_{[2]} \geq \dots \geq p_{[C]}$. Beginning with $k = 1$ (step 1), reject all hypotheses if

$$p_{[k]} \leq \alpha/k.$$

**Table 7.10: Critical Values,
 d_k , for Rom's Method.**

k	$\alpha = 0.05$	$\alpha = 0.01$
1	0.05000	0.01000
2	0.02500	0.00500
3	0.01690	0.00334
4	0.01270	0.00251
5	0.01020	0.00201
6	0.00851	0.00167
7	0.00730	0.00143
8	0.00639	0.00126
9	0.00568	0.00112
10	0.00511	0.00101

That is, reject all hypotheses if the largest p-value is less than or equal to α . If $p_{[1]} > \alpha$, proceed as follows:

1. Increment k by 1. If

$$p_{[k]} \leq \frac{\alpha}{k},$$

stop and reject all hypotheses having a p-value less than or equal $p_{[k]}$.

2. If $p_{[k]} > \alpha/k$, repeat step 1.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until you reject or all C hypotheses have been tested.

Rom's method offers a slight advantage over Hochberg's method in terms of power. But Hochberg's method relaxes the assumption that the test statistics are independent. Hochberg's method was derived based on an assumption made by Holm (1979): 'All subsets of null hypotheses to be tested could appear as the set of true hypotheses.' Suppose the goal is to test $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_2$, $H_0: \mu_2 = \mu_3$ and $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_3$. But if the first two hypotheses are true, they imply that the third is true as well. So Holm assumes that one of these hypotheses would not be tested. Note, however, from the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, none of these hypotheses are true. Rather the goal is determine which of two groups has the larger mean. Also, suppose $\mu_1 = 2$, $\mu_2 = 4$ and $\mu_3 = 6$. Then it is possible that the first two hypotheses are not rejected, but the third hypothesis is rejected. Also, simulations where the restriction imposed by Holm is ignored indicate that Hochberg's method performs relatively well. See, for example, Section 7.8.5.

Hommel's Method

Yet another method for controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors was derived by Hommel (1988). Let p_1, \dots, p_C be the p-values associated with C tests and let

$$j = \max\{i \in \{1, \dots, C\} : p_{(n-i+k)} > k\alpha/i \text{ for } k = 1, \dots, i\},$$

where $p_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq p_{(C)}$ are the p-values written in ascending order. If the maximum does not exist, reject all C hypotheses. Otherwise, reject all hypotheses such that $p_i \leq \alpha/j$. Adjusted p-values based on Hommel's method can be computed via the R function `p.adjust` in Section 7.4.8, which also computes an adjusted p-value based on Hochberg's method. It seems that typically there is little or no difference between the adjusted p-values based on the Hochberg and Hommel methods, but situations are encountered where Hommel's method rejects and Hochberg's method does not, and Hommel's method is based on slightly weaker assumptions.

Benjamini–Hochberg Method

[Benjamini and Hochberg \(1995\)](#) proposed a variation of Hochberg's method where in step 1 of Hochberg's method, $p_{[k]} \leq \alpha/k$ is replaced by

$$p_{[k]} \leq \frac{(C - k + 1)\alpha}{C}$$

(cf. [Williams, Jones, & Tukey, 1999](#)). A criticism of the Benjamini–Hochberg method is that situations can be found where some hypotheses are true, some are false, and the probability of at least one Type I error will exceed α among the hypotheses that are true ([Hommel, 1988](#)). In contrast, Hochberg's method does not suffer from this problem (assuming the actual level of each individual test is equal to the nominal level). However, when C hypotheses are tested, let Q be the proportion of hypotheses that are true and rejected. That is, Q is the proportion of Type I errors among the null hypotheses that are correct. The *false discovery rate* is the expected value of Q . That is, if a study is repeated infinitely many times, the false discovery rate is the average proportion of Type I errors among the hypotheses that are true. [Benjamini and Hochberg \(1995\)](#) show that their method ensures that the false discovery rate is less than or equal to α when performing C independent tests.

The k -FWER Procedures

A concern with methods that control the probability of one or more Type I errors is that when many tests are performed, power can be poor because each test is performed at a very small α level. One suggestion for dealing with this issue is to use what is generally known as a k -FWER method. That is, design a method where the probability of k or more Type I errors (the family-wise error rate, FWER) is equal to some specified value, α . The methods derived by Rom, Hochberg, and Hommel use $k = 1$. For $k > 1$, a variety of methods have been derived, which are reviewed and compared by [Keselman, Miller, and Holland \(2011\)](#). In situations where the nature of the association among the test statistics being used is unknown, their results suggest using a generalization of the method in [Holm \(1979\)](#) that was derived by [Lehmann and Romano \(2005\)](#). Also see [Guo, He, and Sarkar \(2014\)](#).

Let C be the number of tests that are performed and denote the ordered p-values by $p_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq p_{(k)} \leq \dots \leq p_{(C)}$, which correspond to hypotheses $H_{(1)}, \dots, H_{(k)}, \dots, H_{(C)}$. For specified values for k and α , the generalized Holm procedure is defined stepwise as follows:

- Step 0. Set $i = 1$.
- Step 1. If $i \leq k$, go to step 2. If $k < i \leq C$, go to step 3. Otherwise, stop and reject all of the hypotheses.
- Step 2. If $p(i) > k\alpha/C$, go to step 4. Otherwise, set $i = i + 1$ and go to step 1.
- Step 3. If $p(i) > \frac{k\alpha}{C+k-i}$, go to step 4. Otherwise, set $i = i + 1$ and go to step 1.
- Step 4. Reject $H_{(j)}$ for $j < i$ and fail to reject $H_{(j)}$ for $j \geq i$.

If the C tests are independent, the following step-down method, known as the generalized Hochberg method, offers more power:

- Step 0. Set $i = C$.
- Step 1. If $i > k$, go to step 2. If $1 \leq i \leq k$, go to step 3. Otherwise, stop and fail to reject all of the hypotheses.
- Step 2. If $p(i) \leq \frac{k\alpha}{C+k-i}$, go to step 4. Otherwise, set $i = i - 1$ and go to step 1.
- Step 3. If $p(i) \leq k\alpha/C$, go to step 4. Otherwise, set $i = i - 1$ and go to step 1.
- Step 4. Reject $H_{(j)}$ for $j \leq i$ and fail to reject $H_{(j)}$ for $j > i$.

(The generalized Hochberg method remains valid if the associations among the m tests satisfy what is known as the MTP₂ condition. See [Keselman et al., 2011](#); or [Sarkar, 2008](#), for details.)

7.4.8 R Functions `p.adjust` and `mcpKadjp`

The R function

```
p.adjust(p, method = p.adjust.methods, n = length(p))
```

adjusts a collection of p-values based on the Bonferroni method or one of the improvements on the Bonferroni method described in the previous section. (See [Wright, 1992](#), for details about these adjustments.) The available methods include: ‘holm’, ‘hochberg’, ‘hommel’, ‘bonferroni’ and ‘BH’, where BH indicates the Benjamini–Hochberg method. The default method is ‘holm’.

The R function

```
mcpKadjp(p, k=1, proc = c('Holm'))
```

performs the k-FWER procedures described at the end of the previous section. The argument p contains the p-values to be adjusted. The argument proc indicates which method is to be used, which defaults to Holm. Two other options are: ‘Hochberg’ and ‘BH’ (Benjamini–Hochberg).

7.4.9 Percentile Bootstrap Methods for Comparing Medians, Other Trimmed Means and Quantiles

When the goal is to perform multiple comparisons based on trimmed means, and the amount of trimming is not too small, say at least 20%, a percentile bootstrap method appears to be relatively effective. With 15% trimming, and even 10% trimming, a percentile bootstrap performs reasonably well. For the special case where the goal is to compare medians or other quantiles, and when tied values occur, it is the only known method that performs well in simulations. In terms of controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors, the methods in Section 7.4.7 can be used.

It is noted that [Johnson and Romer \(2016\)](#) describe an alternative method for comparing the quantiles of multiple groups. Their method uses a bootstrap estimate of the standard errors. So if tied values can occur, all indications are that a percentile bootstrap method is preferable.

7.4.10 R Functions *linconpb*, *bbmcppb*, *bbbmcppb*, *medpb*, *Qmcp*, *med2mcp*, *med3mcp* and *q2by2*

The R function

```
linconpb(x,alpha=0.05, nboot=NA, grp=NA, est=tmean, con=0, bhop=F, ...)
```

compares trimmed means using a percentile bootstrap method. By default the function uses a 20% trimmed mean and all pairwise comparisons are performed. Hochberg’s method is used to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. Setting the argument bhop=T, the Benjamini–Hochberg method is used instead. Linear contrasts can be tested by storing linear contrast coefficients in the argument con, which is assumed to be a matrix with rows corresponding to groups. By default, all pairwise comparisons are performed. (The R function tmcppb performs the same calculations as linconpb.)

The R function

```
bbmcppb(J, K, x, tr=0.2, JK = J * K, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JK), nboot = 500, bhop=FALSE,
SEED=TRUE)
```

performs multiple comparisons for a two-way ANOVA design based on trimmed means. The function creates linear contrasts via the R function `con2way` and then uses the function

```
bbmcppb.sub(J, K, x, tr=0.2, JK = J * K, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JK), nboot = 500,  
            bhop=FALSE, SEED=TRUE, ...)
```

to test hypotheses based on the resulting linear contrasts. The R function

```
bbbmcppb(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, JKL = J * K * L, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL), nboot = 500,  
          bhop=FALSE, SEED=TRUE)
```

performs multiple comparisons for a three-way design.

For the special case where the population medians are to be compared based on the usual sample median (defined in Section 1.3), use the R function

```
medpb(x, tr=0.2, nboot = NA, grp = NA, est = median, con = 0, bhop=FALSE,  
      SEED=TRUE).
```

It performs well when there are tied values, and even with no tied values, it appears to be an excellent choice relative to competing techniques. When dealing with other quantiles, particularly when there are tied values, use the function The R function

```
Qmcp(x,q=0.5, con=0,SEED=TRUE,nboot=NA,alpha=0.05,HOCH=FALSE)
```

compares quantiles based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. For small sample sizes, using the Bonferroni method to control the probability of one or more Type I errors is better than using Hochberg. How large the sample sizes must be to justify using Hochberg’s method is unknown. For convenience, the R functions

```
med2mcp(J,K,x, alpha=0.05, nboot=NA, grp=NA, est=median, bhop=FALSE,  
         SEED=TRUE, ...)
```

and

```
med3mcp(J,K,L,data, grp=c(1:p), alpha=0.05, p=J*K*L, nboot=NA,  
         SEED=TRUE,bhop=FALSE)
```

are designed to handle two-way and three-way designs, respectively, when dealing with medians. They create the appropriate linear contrast coefficients and call the R function medpb. Other quantiles can be compared via the R function Qmcp; the appropriate linear contrast coefficients can be created with the R functions con2way and con3way.

All of the R functions in this section report p-values for each of the tests that are performed. So adjusted p-values can be computed using the R functions p.adjust and mcpKadjp in Section 7.4.8.

■ Example

Consider again the plasma retinol data described near the end of Section 7.1.2. The goal was to compare the 20% trimmed means corresponding to the three smoking-status groups. The outcome measure of interest was plasma beta-carotene and the three groups being compared correspond to smoking status (1=Never, 2=Former, 3=Current Smoker). Assuming the data are stored in the R variable z as described in Section 7.1.2, consider the two R commands

```
res=lincon(z)
p.adjust(res$psihat[,6],method='hommel').
```

A portion of the output from the first R command is:

```
$psihat
  Group Group  psihat    ci.lower ci.upper      p.value
[1,]     1     2 21.89458 -13.3604538 57.14962 0.1386234820
[2,]     1     3 57.78830 21.7636113 93.81300 0.0002009686
[3,]     2     3 35.89372  0.1144305 71.67301 0.0170140002
```

The second command returns adjusted p-values based on Hommel's method. The results are 0.139, 0.0006 and 0.034. So if the desired probability of one or more Type I errors is 0.05, even after adjusting the p-values, group 3 differs significantly from groups 1 and 2. Using Hochberg's method gives exactly the same results.

The R function

```
q2by2(x, q = c(0.1, 0.25, 0.5, 0.75, 0.9), nboot = 2000, SEED = TRUE)
```

deals with main effects and interactions when comparing quantiles. The quantiles used are controlled by the argument q. This function is designed for a two-by-two design only. So the argument x should be a matrix with four columns or it should have list mode with length four.

7.4.11 Judging Sample Sizes

Suppose that all pairs of groups are compared with the R function lincon in Section 7.4.1 and that one or more of the hypotheses are not rejected. This might occur because there is little or no difference between the groups. But another possibility is that there is an important difference that was missed. One way of trying to distinguish between these two possibilities is to determine how many observations are needed so that the length of the confidence intervals are reasonably short. This can be done with an extension of a two-stage method for means that was developed by Hochberg (1975); see Wilcox (2004a).

Imagine that for all $j < k$, the goal is to compute a confidence interval for $\mu_{jt} - \mu_{kt}$ such that the simultaneous probability coverage is $1 - \alpha$ and the length of each confidence interval is $2m$, where m is the margin of error specified by the researcher. Let h be the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of the range of J independent Student t variates having degrees of freedom $h_1 - 1, \dots, h_J - 1$, respectively, where $h_j = n_j - 2g_j - 1$ is the number of observations in the j th group left after trimming. Table 7.11 reports the $1 - \alpha$ quantiles of this distribution for selected degrees of freedom, $\alpha = 0.05$ and 0.01 , when $h_1 - 1 = \dots = h_J - 1 = v$, say. (For $v > 59$, the quantiles can be approximated with the quantiles of a Studentized range statistic with v degrees of freedom.) For unequal sample sizes, a good choice for the degrees of freedom is

$$v = J \left(\sum \frac{1}{h_j - 1} \right)^{-1}.$$

Let

$$d = \left(\frac{m}{h} \right)^2.$$

The total number of observations needed from the j th group is

$$N_j = \max \left(n_j, \left[\frac{s_{jw}^2}{(1 - 2\gamma)^2 d} \right] + 1 \right). \quad (7.9)$$

So $N_j - n_j$ indicates how many more observations are needed from the j th group.

If the additional $N_j - n_j$ observations can be obtained, confidence intervals are computed as follows. Let $\hat{\mu}_{jt}$ be the trimmed mean associated with the j th group based on all N_j values. For all pairwise comparisons, the confidence interval for $\mu_{jt} - \mu_{kt}$, the difference between the population trimmed means corresponding to groups j and k , is

$$(\hat{\mu}_{jt} - \hat{\mu}_{kt}) \pm hb,$$

where

$$b = \max \left(\frac{s_{jw}}{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{N_j}}, \frac{s_{kw}}{(1 - 2\gamma)\sqrt{N_k}} \right).$$

Table 7.11: Percentage Points, h , of the Range of J Independent t Variates.

α	$v = 5$	$v = 6$	$v = 7$	$v = 8$	$v = 9$	$v = 14$	$v = 19$	$v = 24$	$v = 29$	$v = 39$	$v = 59$
$J = 2$ Groups											
0.05	3.63	3.45	3.33	3.24	3.18	3.01	2.94	2.91	2.89	2.85	2.82
0.01	5.37	4.96	4.73	4.51	4.38	4.11	3.98	3.86	3.83	3.78	3.73
$J = 3$ Groups											
0.05	4.49	4.23	4.07	3.95	3.87	3.65	3.55	3.50	3.46	3.42	3.39
0.01	6.32	5.84	5.48	5.23	5.07	4.69	5.54	4.43	4.36	4.29	4.23
$J = 4$ Groups											
0.05	5.05	4.74	4.54	4.40	4.30	4.03	3.92	3.85	3.81	3.76	3.72
0.01	7.06	6.40	6.01	5.73	5.56	5.05	4.89	4.74	4.71	4.61	4.54
$J = 5$ Groups											
0.05	5.47	5.12	4.89	4.73	4.61	4.31	4.18	4.11	4.06	4.01	3.95
0.01	7.58	6.76	6.35	6.05	5.87	5.33	5.12	5.01	4.93	4.82	4.74
$J = 6$ Groups											
0.05	5.82	5.42	5.17	4.99	4.86	4.52	4.38	4.30	4.25	4.19	4.14
0.01	8.00	7.14	6.70	6.39	6.09	5.53	5.32	5.20	5.12	4.99	4.91
$J = 7$ Groups											
0.05	6.12	5.68	5.40	5.21	5.07	4.70	4.55	4.46	4.41	4.34	4.28
0.01	8.27	7.50	6.92	6.60	6.30	5.72	5.46	5.33	5.25	5.16	5.05
$J = 8$ Groups											
0.05	6.37	5.90	5.60	5.40	5.25	4.86	4.69	4.60	4.54	4.47	4.41
0.01	8.52	7.73	7.14	6.81	6.49	5.89	5.62	5.45	5.36	5.28	5.16
$J = 9$ Groups											
0.05	6.60	6.09	5.78	5.56	5.40	4.99	4.81	4.72	4.66	4.58	4.51
0.01	8.92	7.96	7.35	6.95	6.68	6.01	5.74	5.56	5.47	5.37	5.28
$J = 10$ Groups											
0.05	6.81	6.28	5.94	5.71	5.54	5.10	4.92	4.82	4.76	4.68	4.61
0.01	9.13	8.14	7.51	7.11	6.83	6.10	5.82	5.68	5.59	5.46	5.37

Reprinted, with permission, from Wilcox, R. (1983). A table of percentage points of the range of independent t variables. *Technometrics*, 25, 201–204.

7.4.12 R Function *hochberg*

The two-stage method for trimmed means, just described, is performed by the R function

```
hochberg(x,x2=NA,cil=NA,crit=NA,con=0,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,iter=10,000).
```

The first stage data are assumed to be stored in x , and if the second stage data are available, they are stored in $x2$, either in a matrix (having J columns) or in list mode. The argument cil is $2m$, the desired length of the confidence intervals. The argument $crit$ is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of the range of independent Student t variates, some of which are reported in Table 7.11. If $crit$ is not specified, the appropriate quantile is approximated via simulations with the number of replications controlled by the argument $iter$. As usual, the default amount of trimming, indicated by the argument tr , is 20%. (The function can also handle linear contrasts specified by the argument con , which is used as described, for example, in Section 7.4.1.)

7.4.13 Explanatory Measure of Effect Size

There are various ways one might characterize the differences among groups when dealing with a two-way ANOVA. Of course, measures of location can be used. If it is desired to use a measure of effect size that is based in part on some measure of variation among the groups, some extension of the explanatory measure of effect size might be used. First focus on Factor A. A simple approach is to ignore the levels of Factor B and use the explanatory measure of effect size previously discussed in Section 5.3.4. That is, for each level of Factor A, pool the data over the levels of Factor B, in which case for any two levels of Factor A, the explanatory measure of effect size can be computed. Of course, the same can be done for Factor B.

As for interactions, first focus on the simplest case: a two-by-two design. One possibility is to use the explanatory measure of effect size applied to the two distributions corresponding to the differences associated with each row. That is, for level 1 of Factor A, let F_1 be the distribution of the difference between randomly sampled observations from levels 1 and 2 of Factor B. Define F_2 for level 2 of Factor A in a similar manner. Then compute the explanatory measure of effect size based on estimates of F_1 and F_2 . To elaborate, let X_{ijk} ($i = 1, \dots, n_{jk}$; $j = 1, 2$, $k = 1, 2$) be the i th observation corresponding to the j th level of Factor A and the k th level of Factor B. Let $D_{ii'j} = X_{ij1} - X_{i'j2}$, where now $i = 1, \dots, n_{j1}$, $i' = 1, \dots, n_{j2}$ and $j = 1, 2$. Then the magnitude of the interaction can be characterized via the difference scores for Level 1 of Factor A and Level 2 of Factor A by computing the explanatory measure of effect size based on the two sets of data, $D_{ii'1}$ and $D_{ii'2}$. For the general case of a J -by- K design, this measure of effect size can be computed for levels j and j' of Factor A, and levels k and k' of Factor B, for all $j < j'$ and $k < k'$.

7.4.14 R Functions *ESmainMCP* and *esImcp*

For all j and j' such that $1 \leq j < j' \leq J$, the R function

```
ESmainMCP(J,K,x,tr=0.2,nboot=100,SEED=T)
```

computes the explanatory measure of effect size for levels j and j' of Factor A as described in the previous section. That is, all pairwise comparisons are made among the J levels. The same is done for Factor B. The R function

```
esImcp(J,K,x,tr=0.2,nboot=100,SEED=T)
```

computes the explanatory measure of effect size for interactions. Briefly, the function generates all of the relevant linear contrasts via the R function *con2way* and then, for each column of the resulting matrix of contrast coefficients, the corresponding explanatory measure of effect size is estimated.

7.4.15 Comparing Curves (Functional Data)

The notion of functional data was described in Section 6.4.13. It is noted that several ANOVA-type methods have been developed for functional data (e.g., Cuevas, Febrero, & Fraiman, 2004; Górecki & Smaga, 2015; Zhang, 2013). R functions for applying some of these methods can be found in the R package fda, as well as the supplementary material associated with the paper by Górecki & Smaga (2015), and at

<http://orfe.princeton.edu/~jqfan/papers/pub/hanova.s>.

Robust methods are in need of further developments. This section describes some additional methods and functions that might help when comparing two independent groups.

The data consist of two matrices, each having p columns corresponding to measures taken at p times, where p is typically large. The time points are denoted by t_1, \dots, t_p . Note that for any column, the two groups can be compared using trimmed means. One option is Yuen's method in Section 5.3 or a percentile bootstrap method can be used.

If the curves are compared at K time points, $1 \leq K \leq p$, and K is relatively small, controlling FWE, the probability of one or more Type I errors, is relatively straightforward. But as K increases, little is known about how best to control FWE using some robust technique. To provide at least some perspective, suppose the curve for each group is given by $y(t) = \sin(t)$, $0 \leq t \leq 2\pi$, and that data are generated from a Gaussian process with covariance matrix $C(t_j, t_k) = \exp(-1 * |t_j - t_k|)$. Further assume that the curves are compared at K time points evenly spaced over $p = 100$ time points that are available. A strategy is to choose the number of tests to be performed so as to not lose too much power when adjusting the critical value in some manner that controls FWE, the probability of one or more Type I errors. Simultaneously, it might be desired to choose K reasonably large so as to capture any differences that exist. (Of course, another possibility is that a specific range of times is of particular interest.) Once the K time points are chosen, a simple way of controlling the FWE is via Hochberg's method. Another strategy is to use critical values based on the Studentized maximum modulus distribution. But in very limited simulations, when using Yuen's test, both of these approaches were found to be rather unsatisfactory with $K = 25$. A percentile bootstrap method coupled with Hochberg's method gave better results.

To elaborate, consider comparing 20% trimmed means using Yuen's test for each $k = 1, \dots, K$, where $K = 25$. Simulations indicate that using a Studentized maximum modulus distribution can be unsatisfactory when data are generated with sample sizes $n_1 = n_2 = 60$ and the desired probability of one or more Type I errors, FWE, is 0.05. The actual level exceeds 0.08. Controlling FWE using Hochberg's method gives better results, but it can be rather unsatisfactory when $n = 40$. Using a percentile bootstrap with $B = 2000$ bootstrap

samples performed well with $n_1 = n_2 = 20$, where again Hochberg's method is used to control FWE. Using $B = 500$, the actual level can exceed 0.08. So there is weak evidence that a percentile bootstrap will perform relatively well, but clearly a more definitive simulation study is needed.

7.4.16 R Functions *funyuenpb* and *Flplot2g*

The R function

```
funyuenpb(x1,x2,tr=0.2,pts=NULL,npts=25,plotit=TRUE,alpha=0.05, SEED=TRUE,
           nboot=2000, xlab='Time', ylab='Est.dif', FBP=TRUE, method='hochberg',
           COLOR=TRUE)
```

compares the curves corresponding to two independent groups using the percentile bootstrap method described in the previous section. The argument pts can be used to specify the time points where comparisons are to be made. If pts=NULL, the argument npts indicates how many points will be used, which will be evenly spaced over the p time points available. The function creates two functional boxplots. (Functional boxplots were described in Section 6.4.14.) The plot in the left panel is the functional boxplot for the first group. Also shown is a black line indicating the median curve associated with the second group, the idea being to provide some sense on how the typical curve in group 2 compares to all of the curves in group 1. The right panel contains the functional boxplot of group 2. If the argument FBP=FALSE, the function plots the estimated difference between the trimmed means as well as an approximate confidence band. The R function

```
Flplot2g(x1,x2,est=mean,xlab='Time',ylab='Y',plotit=TRUE)
```

plots the estimate of the typical curve for each group. It applies a measure of location, indicated by the argument est, to each column of the matrices x1 and x2. If plotit=TRUE, the two resulting curves are plotted. The function also returns the estimates of the typical curves.

7.5 A Random Effects Model for Trimmed Means

This section describes two random effects models based on Winsorization and trimmed means. When there is no trimming, and there is homogeneity of variance, both models reduce to the usual model covered in a basic course on the analysis of variance. The first of the two models is convenient when comparing trimmed means, while the other is convenient when estimating a Winsorized analog of the intraclass correlation coefficient.

It is well known that the standard random effects model provides poor control over the probability of a Type I error when the usual assumptions of normality and homogeneous variances are violated. For example, when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level with four groups and equal sample sizes of 20 in each group, the actual probability of a Type I error can exceed 0.3 ([Wilcox, 1994b](#)). A striking feature of the model based on 20% trimming is the extent to which this problem is reduced. Among the various distributions considered by [Wilcox \(1994b\)](#), the highest estimated probability of a Type I error was 0.074.

It is assumed that there is a pool of treatment groups that are of interest, but not all groups can be examined. Instead, J randomly sampled groups are used to make inferences about the pool of treatment groups. Once the J groups are randomly sampled, it is assumed that n_j observations are randomly sampled from the j th group. Let X_{ij} be the i th observation randomly sampled from the j th group, and let μ_{tj} be the population trimmed mean. Generalizing the standard random effects model in a natural way, let $\bar{\mu}_w = E_w(\mu_{tj})$. In words, $\bar{\mu}_w$ is the Winsorized mean for the population of trimmed means being sampled. A generalization of the usual random effects model is

$$X_{ij} = \bar{\mu}_w + b_j + \epsilon_{ij},$$

where $b_j = \mu_{tj} - \bar{\mu}_w$, $E_w(b_j) = 0$, and $E_w(\epsilon_{ij}) = 0$. Let the Winsorized variance of b_j be σ_{wb}^2 , and for fixed j , let σ_{wj}^2 be the Winsorized variance of ϵ_{ij} . Also let $\sigma_w^2 = E_w(\sigma_{wj}^2)$, where the Winsorized expectation is taken with respect to a randomly sampled group. When there are no differences among the trimmed means associated with the pool of treatment groups under investigation, $\sigma_{wb}^2 = 0$.

[Jeyaratnam and Othman \(1985\)](#) derived a heteroscedastic method for comparing means in a random effects model. It can be extended to trimmed means using Winsorized expected values ([Wilcox, 1994b](#)). The computations are summarized in [Table 7.12](#). Advantages of using trimmed means over means are better control over the probability of a Type I error and the potential of substantially higher power, particularly when distributions have heavier than normal tails. However, there are situations where comparing means might mean more power as well. For example, the variation among the means might be larger than the variation among the trimmed means, so the Jeyaratnam and Othman method might yield more power. This might happen, for example, when distributions are skewed. As usual, the optimal amount of trimming will vary from one situation to the next, but to avoid poor power and undesirable power characteristics (a biased test), 20% trimming is a good choice for general use.

7.5.1 A Winsorized Intraclass Correlation

This subsection describes a Winsorized analog of the usual intraclass correlation. Several estimators of this parameter have been considered ([Wilcox, 1994c](#)), one of which is described here.

Table 7.12: Comparing Trimmed Means in a Random Effects Model.

For the j th group, Winsorize the observations by computing Y_{ij} as described in Section 7.5.1. To test the hypothesis of no differences among the trimmed means, $H_0 : \sigma_{wb}^2 = 0$, let h_j the effective sample size of the j th group (the number of observations left after trimming), and compute

$$\bar{Y}_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} Y_{ij},$$

$$s_{wj}^2 = \frac{1}{n_j - 1} \sum (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)^2,$$

$$\bar{X}_t = \frac{1}{J} \sum \bar{X}_{tj},$$

$$\text{BSST} = \frac{1}{J-1} \sum_{j=1}^J (\bar{X}_{tj} - \bar{X}_t)^2,$$

$$\text{WSSW} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} \frac{(Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)^2}{h_j(h_j - 1)},$$

$$D = \frac{\text{BSST}}{\text{WSSW}}.$$

Let

$$q_j = \frac{(n_j - 1)s_{wj}^2}{J(h_j)(h_j - 1)}.$$

The degrees of freedom are estimated to be

$$\hat{v}_1 = \frac{((J-1) \sum q_j)^2}{(\sum q_j)^2 + (J-2)J \sum q_j^2}$$

$$\hat{v}_2 = \frac{(\sum q_j)^2}{\sum q_j^2 / (h_j - 1)}.$$

Reject if $D > f$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with \hat{v}_1 and \hat{v}_2 degrees of freedom.

It is convenient to switch from the ANOVA model in the previous section to one that is slightly different. As before, the model is written as

$$X_{ij} = \bar{\mu}_w + b_j + \epsilon_{ij},$$

but now $b_j = \mu_{wj} - \bar{\mu}_w$, the difference between the Winsorized mean of the j th group and $\bar{\mu}_w = E_w(\mu_{wj})$, the Winsorized expected value of μ_{wj} with respect to a randomly sampled

group. It can be shown that the Winsorized covariance between any two observations in the j th group, X_{ij} and $X_{i'j}$, $i \neq i'$, is σ_{wb}^2 . Let $\bar{\sigma}^2 = E_w(\sigma_{wj}^2)$, the Winsorized expected value of the Winsorized variance associated with a randomly sampled group. Then a heteroscedastic, Winsorized analog of the usual intraclass correlation is

$$\rho_{WI} = \frac{\sigma_{wb}^2}{\sigma_{wb}^2 + \bar{\sigma}^2}.$$

Let s_{wj}^2 be the Winsorized sample variance for the j th group, let $m = [\gamma J]$, where as usual, γ is the amount of Winsorization, let $s_{w(1)}^2 \leq \dots \leq s_{w(J)}^2$ be the Winsorized sample variances written in ascending order, let

$$SW = (m+1)s_{w(m+1)}^2 + s_{w(m+2)}^2 + \dots + s_{w(J-m-1)}^2 + (m+1)s_{w(J-m)}^2,$$

and

$$\bar{s}_w^2 = \frac{SW}{J}.$$

Results in [Rao, Kaplan, and Cochran \(1981\)](#) suggest estimating ρ_{WI} with

$$\hat{\rho}_{WI} = \frac{\hat{\sigma}_{wb}^2}{\hat{\sigma}_{wb}^2 + \bar{s}_w^2},$$

where

$$\hat{\sigma}_{wb}^2 = \frac{1}{J} \sum \ell_j (\bar{Y}_j - \tilde{Y})^2,$$

$$\ell_j = \frac{n_j}{n_j + 1}$$

and

$$\tilde{Y} = \frac{\sum \ell_j \bar{Y}_j}{\sum \ell_j}.$$

[Wilcox \(1994c\)](#) compared the bias and mean squared error of $\hat{\rho}_{WI}$ with two alternative estimators and recommended $\hat{\rho}_{WI}$. When ρ_{WI} is close to zero, some type of bias reduction method might have practical value, but this issue needs further study before a recommendation can be made.

7.5.2 R Function rananova

The R function

```
rananova(x,tr=0.2,grp=NA)
```

performs the computations for the random effects ANOVA, where x is any R variable that is a data frame, or matrix, or has list mode, tr is the amount of trimming, which defaults to 0.2, and grp can be used to specify some subset of the groups if desired. If grp is not specified, all groups stored in x are used. The function returns the value of the test statistic, D , which is stored in $\text{rananova}[\text{teststat}]$, the significance level is stored in $\text{rananova}[\text{p.value}]$, and an estimate of the Winsorized intraclass correlation, which is computed as described in the previous subsection of this chapter, is returned in the R variable $\text{rananova}[\text{rho}]$.

■ Example

Assuming the data in [Table 7.7](#) are stored in the R variable `data`, the command `rananova(data)` returns.

```
$teststat:  
[1] 0.33194  
  
$df:  
[1] 2.520394 18.693590  
  
$p.value:  
[1] 0.7687909  
  
$rho:  
[1] 0.0576178
```



7.6 Global Tests Based on M-Measures of Location

This section describes two bootstrap methods for comparing J independent groups that appear to perform relatively well when the goal is to test global hypotheses about robust measures of location. Here the emphasis is on M-estimators. The first method performs reasonably well when using a one-step M-estimator. (Non-bootstrap methods, based in part on some estimate of the standard error of an M-estimator, can perform poorly when dealing with skewed distributions.) But it is not recommended when comparing means

or even trimmed means ([Özdemir & Wilcox, 2015](#)). In more formal terms, the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \dots = \theta_J, \quad (7.10)$$

where θ_j represents a (population) M-measure of location associated with the j th group.

Method SHB

The first method is based on a test statistic mentioned by [Schrader and Hettmansperger \(1980\)](#), and studied by [He, Simpson, and Portnoy \(1990\)](#). The test statistic is

$$H = \frac{1}{N} \sum n_j (\hat{\theta}_j - \bar{\theta})^2,$$

where $N = \sum n_j$, and

$$\bar{\theta} = \frac{1}{J} \sum \hat{\theta}_j.$$

To determine the critical value, shift the empirical distributions of each group so that the estimated measure of location is zero, generate bootstrap samples from each group in the usual way from each of the shifted distributions, and compute the test statistic based on the bootstrap samples yielding H^* , say. Repeat this B times resulting in H_1^*, \dots, H_B^* , and put these B values in order yielding $H_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq H_{(B)}^*$. Then an estimate of an appropriate critical value is $H_{(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer, and H_0 is rejected if $H > H_{(u)}^*$. (For simulation results on how this method performs, see [Wilcox, 1993d](#).)

Method LSB

The second bootstrap method described here is based on a slight variation of a general approach described by [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#). Currently, it appears to be the better of the two methods described in this section when working with the modified one step M-estimator (MOM), described in Section 3.10 ([Keselman, Wilcox, Othman, & Fradette, 2002](#)), and it appears to perform reasonably well when using M-estimators (with Huber's Ψ) and even trimmed means if the amount of trimming is sufficiently high. Moreover, it performs relatively well when comparing medians via the Harrell–Davis estimator as noted in Section 7.1.5.

Let

$$\delta_{jk} = \theta_j - \theta_k,$$

where for convenience it is assumed that $j < k$. That is, the δ_{jk} values represent all pairwise differences among the J groups. When working with means, for example, δ_{12} is the difference between the means of groups 1 and 2, and δ_{35} is the difference for groups 3 and 5. If all J groups have a common measure of location (i.e., $\theta_1 = \dots = \theta_J$), then in particular

$$H_0 : \delta_{12} = \delta_{13} = \dots = \delta_{J-1,J} = 0. \quad (7.11)$$

The total number of δ 's in Eq. (7.11) is $L = (J^2 - J)/2$.

For each group, generate bootstrap samples from the *original* values. That is, the observations are *not* centered as was done in the previous method. Instead bootstrap samples are generated from the X_{ij} values. For each group, compute the measure of location of interest based on a bootstrap sample and repeat this B times. The resulting estimates of location are represented by $\hat{\theta}_{jb}^*$ ($j = 1, \dots, J; b = 1, \dots, B$) and the corresponding estimates of δ are denoted by $\hat{\delta}_{jkb}^*$. (That is, $\hat{\delta}_{jkb}^* = \hat{\theta}_{jb}^* - \hat{\theta}_{kb}^*$.) The general strategy is to determine how deeply $\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$ is nested within the bootstrap values $\hat{\delta}_{jkb}^*$ (where $\mathbf{0}$ is a vector having length L). For the special case where only two groups are being compared, this is tantamount to determining the proportion of times $\hat{\theta}_{1b}^* > \hat{\theta}_{2b}^*$, among all B bootstrap samples, which is how we proceeded in Chapter 5. But here we need special techniques for comparing more than two groups.

There remains the problem of measuring how deeply $\mathbf{0}$ is nested within the bootstrap values. Several strategies were described in Chapter 6, but in terms of Type I error probabilities and power, all indications are that, for the situation at hand, the choice of method is irrelevant. However, from a computational point of view, the choice of method can matter, for reasons indicated at the end of this section. For the moment, the focus is on using Mahalanobis distance.

Let $\hat{\delta}_{jk} = \hat{\theta}_j - \hat{\theta}_k$ be the estimate of δ_{jk} based on the original data and let $\hat{\delta}_{jkb}^* = \hat{\theta}_{jb}^* - \hat{\theta}_{kb}^*$ based on the b th bootstrap sample ($b = 1, \dots, B$). (It is assumed that $j < k$.) For notational convenience, we rewrite the $L = (J^2 - J)/2$ differences $\hat{\delta}_{jk}$ as $\hat{\Delta}_1, \dots, \hat{\Delta}_L$ and the corresponding bootstrap values are denoted by $\hat{\Delta}_{\ell b}^*$ ($\ell = 1, \dots, L$). Let

$$\bar{\Delta}_\ell^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\Delta}_{\ell b}^*,$$

$$Y_{\ell b} = \hat{\Delta}_{\ell b}^* - \bar{\Delta}_\ell^* + \hat{\Delta}_\ell$$

(so the $Y_{\ell b}$ values are the bootstrap values shifted to have mean $\hat{\Delta}_\ell$), and let

$$S_{\ell m} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (Y_{\ell b} - \bar{Y}_\ell)(Y_{mb} - \bar{Y}_m),$$

where

$$\bar{Y}_\ell = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B Y_{\ell b}.$$

(Note that in the bootstrap world, the bootstrap population mean of $\hat{\Delta}_\ell^*$ is known and is equal to $\hat{\Delta}_\ell$.) Next, compute

$$D_b = (\hat{\Delta}_b^* - \hat{\Delta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\hat{\Delta}_b^* - \hat{\Delta})',$$

where $\hat{\Delta}_b^* = (\hat{\Delta}_{1b}^*, \dots, \hat{\Delta}_{Lb}^*)$ and $\hat{\Delta} = (\hat{\Delta}_1, \dots, \hat{\Delta}_L)$. D_b measures how closely $\hat{\Delta}_b^*$ is located to $\hat{\Delta}$. If $\mathbf{0}$ (the null vector) is relatively far from $\hat{\Delta}$, reject. In particular, put the D_b values in ascending order yielding $D_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}$ and let $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then reject H_0 if

$$T \geq D_{(u)},$$

where

$$T = (\mathbf{0} - \hat{\Delta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{0} - \hat{\Delta})'.$$

A p-value can be computed as well and is given by

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B I_b,$$

where the indicator function $I_b = 1$ if $T < D_b$; otherwise $I_b = 0$.

Notice that with three groups ($J = 3$), $\theta_1 = \theta_2 = \theta_3$ can be true if and only if $\theta_1 = \theta_2$ and $\theta_2 = \theta_3$. So in terms of Type I errors, it suffices to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 - \theta_2 = \theta_2 - \theta_3 = \theta_1 - \theta_3 = 0$$

as opposed to testing

$$H_0 : \theta_1 - \theta_2 = \theta_2 - \theta_3 = \theta_1 - \theta_3 = 0,$$

the hypothesis that all pairwise differences are zero. However, if groups differ, then rearranging the groups could alter the conclusions reached if the first of these hypotheses is tested.

For example, if the groups have means 6, 4 and 2, then the difference between groups one and two, as well as two and three, is 2. But the difference between groups one and three is 4, so comparing groups one and three could mean more power. That is, we might not reject when comparing group one to two and two to three, but we might reject if instead we compare one to three and two to three. To help avoid different conclusions depending on how the groups are arranged, all pairwise differences among the groups were used. However, a consequence of using all pairwise differences is that situations are encountered where the covariance matrix, used when computing Mahalanobis distance, is singular. This problem can be avoided by replacing Mahalanobis distance with the projection distance described in Section 6.2.5.

7.6.1 R Functions *b1way* and *pbadepth*

The R function *b1way* performs the first of the percentile bootstrap methods described in the previous subsection. It has the general form

```
b1way(x,est=onestep,alpha=0.05,nboot=599)
```

where *x* is any R variable that is a matrix (with *J* columns) or has list mode, *alpha* defaults to 0.05, and *nboot*, the value of *B*, defaults to 599. The argument *est* is any R function that computes a measure of location. It defaults to *onestep*, the one-step M-estimator with Huber's Ψ .

The function

```
pbadepth(x,est=onestep,con=0,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,grp=NA,op=1,allp=T,  
MM=F,MC=F,cop=3,SEED=T,na.rm=F, ...)
```

performs the other percentile bootstrap method and uses the one-step M-estimator by default. As usual, the argument ... can be used to reset default settings associated with the estimator being used. The argument *allp* indicates how the null hypothesis is defined. Setting *allp=T*, all pairwise differences are used. Setting *allp=F*, the function tests

$$H_0 : \theta_1 - \theta_2 = \theta_2 - \theta_3 = \cdots = \theta_{J-1} - \theta_J = 0.$$

The argument *op* determines how the depth of a point is measured within a bootstrap cloud. The choices are:

- *op=1*, Mahalanobis depth.
- *op=2*, Mahalanobis depth but with the usual covariance matrix replaced by the MCD estimate.

- op=3, projection depth computed via the function pdis. (That is, use the measure of depth described in Section 6.2.5.)

The default is op=1 in order to reduce execution time. Using op=3 avoids a computational error that can occur when the argument allp=T: in some situations, \mathbf{S}^{-1} (as described in the previous section) cannot be computed. This event appears to be rare with $J \leq 4$, but it can occur. This problem might be avoided by setting allp=F, but in terms of power, this has practical concerns already described. With op=3, a measure of depth is used that does not require inverting a matrix. Given the speed of modern computers, perhaps using op=3 routinely is reasonable. If access to a multicore processor is available, setting the argument MC=T will reduce execution time. (Another option is to use the multiple comparison procedure in Section 7.6.2, which again does not require inverting a matrix.)

■ Example

The command `b1way(x,est=hd)` would test the hypothesis of equal medians using the Harrell–Davis estimator. For the data in Table 7.7, it reports a test statistic of $H = 329$ and a critical value of 3627. The command `b1way(x)` would compare M-measures of location instead.

7.6.2 M-Estimators and Multiple Comparisons

This section describes two bootstrap methods for performing multiple comparisons that perform relatively well when comparing M-estimators. The first is based in part on a variation of bootstrap-t method that uses bootstrap estimates of the standard errors. (For relevant simulation results, see Wilcox, 1993d.) The other does not use estimated standard errors but rather relies on a variation of the percentile bootstrap method.

Variation of a Bootstrap-t Method

For the j th group, generate a bootstrap sample in the usual way and compute $\hat{\mu}_{mj}^*$, the M-estimate of location. Repeat this B times yielding $\hat{\mu}_{mj}^*, b = 1, \dots, B$. Let

$$\hat{\tau}_j^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\mu}_{mj}^* - \bar{\mu}^*)^2,$$

where $\bar{\mu}^* = \sum_b \hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*/B$. Let

$$H_{jkb}^* = \frac{|\hat{\mu}_{mjb}^* - \hat{\mu}_{mkb}^* - (\hat{\mu}_{mj} - \hat{\mu}_{mk})|}{\sqrt{\hat{\tau}_j^2 + \hat{\tau}_k^2}},$$

and

$$H_b^* = \max H_{jkb}^*,$$

where the maximum is taken over all $j < k$. Put the H_b^* values in order yielding $H_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq H_{(B)}^*$. Let $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then a confidence interval for $\mu_{mj} - \mu_{mk}$ is

$$(\hat{\mu}_{mj} - \hat{\mu}_{mk}) \pm H_{(u)}^* \sqrt{\hat{\tau}_j^2 + \hat{\tau}_k^2},$$

and the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. With $\alpha = 0.05$, it seems that $B = 399$ gives fairly good probability coverage when all of the sample sizes are greater than or equal to 21.

The same method appears to perform well when using the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median. The extent to which it performs well when estimating other quantiles has not been determined.

Linear contrasts can be examined using a simple extension of the method for performing all pairwise comparisons. Let

$$\Psi_k = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \mu_{mj},$$

$k = 1, \dots, C$, be C linear combinations of the M-measures of location. As in Section 7.4, the constants c_{jk} are chosen to reflect linear contrasts that are of interest, and for fixed k , $\sum c_{jk} = 0$. Included as a special case is the situation where all pairwise comparisons are to be performed. As before, generate bootstrap samples yielding $\hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*$, $b = 1, \dots, B$, and $\hat{\tau}_j^2$, $j = 1, \dots, J$. Let

$$\hat{\Psi}_k = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \hat{\mu}_{mj},$$

$$\hat{\Psi}_{kb}^* = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*,$$

and

$$H_{kb}^* = \frac{|\hat{\Psi}_{kb}^* - \hat{\Psi}_k|}{\sum c_{jk}^2 \hat{\tau}_j^2}.$$

Let

$$H_b^* = \max H_{kb}^*,$$

where the maximum is taken over all k , $k = 1, \dots, C$. Then a confidence interval for Ψ_k is

$$\hat{\Psi}_k \pm H_{(u)}^* \sqrt{\sum c_{jk}^2 \hat{\tau}_k^2},$$

where again $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer.

A Percentile Bootstrap Method: Method SR

When comparing modified one-step M-estimators, or M-estimators, if the sample sizes are small, an alternative bootstrap method appears to compete well with the method just described. Imagine that hypotheses for each of C linear contrasts are to be tested. For the c th hypothesis, let $2\hat{p}_c^*$ be the usual percentile bootstrap estimate of the p-value. Put the \hat{p}_c^* values in *descending* order yielding $\hat{p}_{[1]}^* \geq \hat{p}_{[2]}^* \geq \dots \geq \hat{p}_{[C]}^*$. Decisions about the individual hypotheses are made as follows. If $\hat{p}_{[1]}^* \leq \alpha_1$, where α_1 is read from [Table 7.13](#), reject all C of the hypotheses. Put another way, if the largest estimated p-value, $2\hat{p}_{[1]}^*$, is less than or equal to α , reject all C hypotheses. If $\hat{p}_{[1]}^* > \alpha_1$, but $\hat{p}_{[2]}^* \leq \alpha_2$, fail to reject the hypothesis associated with $\hat{p}_{[1]}^*$, but the remaining hypotheses are rejected. If $\hat{p}_{[1]}^* > \alpha_1$ and $\hat{p}_{[2]}^* > \alpha_2$, but $\hat{p}_{[3]}^* \leq \alpha_3$, fail to reject the hypotheses associated with $\hat{p}_{[1]}^*$ and $\hat{p}_{[2]}^*$, but reject the remaining hypotheses. In general, if $\hat{p}_{[c]}^* \leq \alpha_c$, reject the corresponding hypothesis and all other hypotheses having smaller \hat{p}_m^* values. For other values of α (assuming $c > 1$) or for $c > 10$, use

$$\alpha_c = \frac{\alpha}{c}$$

(which corresponds to a slight modification of a sequentially rejective method derived by [Hochberg, 1988](#).) This will be called *method SR*.

Method SR, just described, has the advantage of providing Type I error probabilities close to the nominal level for a fairly wide range of distributions when using a one-step M-estimator or the modified one-step M-estimator. It is *not* recommended, however, when the sample sizes are reasonably large, say greater than about 80 or when using some other location estimator such as a 20% trimmed mean or median. Method SR does not conform to any known multiple comparison procedure; it represents a slight modification of a method derived by

**Table 7.13: Values of α_c for
 $\alpha = 0.05$ and 0.01 .**

c	$\alpha = 0.05$	$\alpha = 0.01$
1	0.02500	0.00500
2	0.02500	0.00500
3	0.01690	0.00334
4	0.01270	0.00251
5	0.01020	0.00201
6	0.00851	0.00167
7	0.00730	0.00143
8	0.00639	0.00126
9	0.00568	0.00112
10	0.00511	0.00101

Rom (1990). But as the sample sizes get large, the actual familywise error rate (FWE) appears to converge to a value greater than the nominal level. Consequently, if any sample size is greater than 80, use the first of the two methods outlined here, or a percentile bootstrap with Hochberg's method, or perhaps the Benjamini–Hochberg method, which are described in Section 7.4.7.

7.6.3 R Functions *lincomm* and *pbmcp*

The R function

```
lincomm(x,con=0, est=onestep, alpha=0.05, nboot=399, ...)
```

computes confidence intervals for measures of location using the first of the methods described in the previous subsection. As usual, x is any R variable that is a matrix or has list mode, and con is a J -by- C matrix containing the contrast coefficients of interest. If con is not specified, all pairwise comparisons are performed. The argument est is any estimator which defaults to the one-step M-estimator if unspecified. Again α is α and defaults to 0.05, and $nboot$ is B which defaults to 399. The final argument, ..., can be any additional arguments required by the argument est . For example, $lincomm(w)$ will use the data stored in the R variable w to compute confidence intervals for all pairwise differences between M-measures of location. The command $lincomm(w,est=hd)$ will compute confidence intervals for medians based on the Harrell–Davis estimator, while $lincomm(w,est=hd,q=0.7)$ computes confidence intervals for the difference between the 0.7 quantiles, again using the Harrell–Davis estimator. The command $lincomm(w,bend=1.1)$ would use an M-estimator, but the default value for the bending constant in Huber's Ψ would be replaced by 1.1.

The function

```
pbmcp(x, tr=0.2, nboot = NA, grp = NA, est = mom, con = 0, bhop=F, ...)
```

performs multiple comparisons using method SR described in the previous section. (Method SR should not be used when comparing trimmed means.) By default, all pairwise comparisons are performed, but a collection of linear contrasts can be specified via the argument con which is used as illustrated in Section 7.4.1. With bhop=F, method SR is used, and setting bhop=T, the Benjamini–Hochberg method is applied instead, which is described in Section 7.4.7.

7.6.4 M-Estimators and the Random Effects Model

Little has been done to generalize the usual random effects model to M-estimators. The approach based on the Winsorized expected value does not readily extend to M-estimators unless restrictive assumptions are made. [Bansal and Bhandry \(1994\)](#) consider M-estimation of the intraclass correlation coefficient, but they assume sampling is from an elliptical and permutationally symmetric probability density function.

7.6.5 Other Methods for One-Way Designs

The methods described in this section are far from exhaustive. For completeness, it is noted that [Keselman et al. \(2002\)](#) compared fifty-six methods based on means, trimmed means with various amount of trimming, and even asymmetric trimming, and two methods based on MOM. Some of the more successful methods, as measured by the ability to control the probability of a Type I error, were based on trimmed means used in conjunction with transformations studied by [Hall \(1992\)](#) and [Johnson \(1978\)](#). More results supporting the use of these transformations can be found in [Guo and Luh \(2000\)](#) and [Luh and Guo \(1999\)](#).

7.7 M-Measures of Location and a Two-Way Design

As was the case when dealing with one-way designs, comparing M-measures of location in a two-way design requires, at the moment, some type of bootstrap method to control the probability of a Type I error, at least when the sample sizes are small. (There are no results on how large the sample sizes must be to avoid the bootstrap.) The method described here was initially used with M-measures of location, but it can be applied when comparing

any measure of location, including trimmed means and the modified one-step M-estimator (MOM).

Let θ be any measure of location and let

$$\Upsilon_j = \frac{1}{K}(\theta_{j1} + \theta_{12} + \cdots + \theta_{jK})$$

($j = 1, \dots, J$). So Υ_j is the average of the K measures of location associated with the j th level of Factor A. The hypothesis of no main effects for Factor A is

$$H_0 : \Upsilon_1 = \Upsilon_2 = \cdots = \Upsilon_J.$$

A strategy for testing this hypothesis is to proceed along the lines described in the beginning of Section 7.6. For example, one possibility is to test

$$H_0 : \Delta_1 = \cdots = \Delta_{J-1} = 0, \quad (7.12)$$

where

$$\Delta_j = \Upsilon_j - \Upsilon_{j+1},$$

$j = 1, \dots, J - 1$. Briefly, generate bootstrap samples in the usual manner yielding $\hat{\Delta}_j^*$, a bootstrap estimate of Δ_j . Then proceed as described in Section 7.6. That is, determine how deeply $\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$ is nested within the bootstrap samples. If $\mathbf{0}$ is relatively far from the center of the bootstrap samples, reject.

For reasons previously indicated, the method just described is satisfactory when dealing with the probability of a Type I error, but when the groups differ, this approach might be unsatisfactory in terms of power depending on the pattern of differences among the Υ_j values. One way of dealing with this issue is to compare all pairs of the Υ_j instead. That is, for every $j < j'$, let

$$\Delta_{jj'} = \Upsilon_j - \Upsilon_{j'},$$

and then test

$$H_0 : \Delta_{12} = \Delta_{13} = \cdots = \Delta_{J-1,J} = 0. \quad (7.13)$$

Of course, a similar method can be used when dealing with Factor B.

Now a test of the hypothesis of no interaction is described. For convenience, label the JK measures of location as follows:

	Factor B			
	θ_1	θ_2	\dots	θ_K
Factor	θ_{K+1}	θ_{K+2}	\dots	θ_{2K}
A	\vdots	\vdots	\dots	\vdots
	$\theta_{(J-1)K+1}$	$\theta_{(J-1)K+2}$	\dots	θ_{JK}

Let \mathbf{C}_J be a $(J - 1)$ -by- J matrix having the form

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & 0 & \dots & 0 \\ & & & & \vdots & \\ 0 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

That is, $c_{ii} = 1$ and $c_{i,i+1} = -1$; $i = 1, \dots, J - 1$ and \mathbf{C}_K is defined in a similar fashion. One approach to testing the hypothesis of no interactions is to test

$$H_0 : \Psi_1 = \dots = \Psi_{(J-1)(K-1)} = 0,$$

where

$$\Psi_L = \sum c_{L\ell} \theta_\ell,$$

$L = 1, \dots, (J - 1)(K - 1)$, $\ell = 1, \dots, JK$, and $c_{L\ell}$ is the entry in the L th row and ℓ th column of $\mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K$. So in effect we have a situation similar to that in Section 7.6. That is, generate bootstrap samples yielding $\hat{\Psi}_L^*$ values, do this B times, and then determine how deeply $\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$ is nested within these bootstrap samples.

A criticism of this approach is that when groups differ, not all relevant differences are being tested which might affect power. A strategy for dealing with this problem is for every $j < j'$ and $k < k'$, set

$$\Psi_{jj'kk'} = \theta_{jk} - \theta_{jk'} + \theta_{j'k} - \theta_{j'k'}$$

and then test

$$H_0 : \Psi_{1212} = \dots = \Psi_{J-1, J, K-1, K} = 0. \quad (7.14)$$

7.7.1 R Functions *pbad2way* and *mcp2a*

The R function

```
pbad2way(J,K,x,est=mom,conall=T,alpha=0.05,nboot=2000,grp = NA,...)
```

performs the percentile bootstrap method just described, where J and K indicate the number of levels associated with Factors A and B. The argument conall=T indicates that all possible pairs are to be tested, as described, for example, by Eq. (7.14), and conall=F means that the hypotheses having the form given by Eq. (7.12) will be used instead. The remaining arguments are the same as those used in the function pbadept described in Section 7.6.1.

■ Example

The data in Exercise 12, at the end of this chapter, are used to illustrate the R function *pbad2way*. The study involves a 2-by-2 design with weight gain among rats the outcome of interest. The factors are source of protein (beef versus cereal) and amount of protein (high versus low). Storing the data in the R variable *weight*, the command

```
pbad2way(2,2,weight,est=median)
```

tests all relevant hypotheses using medians. It is left as an exercise to verify that when using R, the p-values for Factors A and B are 0.39 and 0.056, respectively. The test for no interaction has a p-value of 0.16.



For convenience, when working with a two-way design, the function

```
mcp2a(J,K,x,est=mom,con=0,tr=0.2,nboot = NA, grp = NA, ...)
```

is supplied for performing all pairwise comparisons for both factors and all interactions. The arguments are generally the same as those used by *pbad2way*. One difference is that the number of bootstrap samples is determined by the function unless a value for nboot is specified. Another is that if con=0, all pairwise differences, and all tetrad differences when dealing with interactions, are tested. If a particular set of C linear contrasts is of interest, they can be specified by argument con, a JK-by-C matrix.

7.8 Ranked-Based Methods for a One-Way Design

This section describes some rank-based methods for a one-way design. The classic method is the Kruskal–Wallis test, which is satisfactory, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when comparing groups having identical distributions. But when the distributions differ, under general conditions an incorrect estimate of the standard errors is being used, which might adversely affect power. A method aimed at improving the Kruskal–Wallis test was derived by [Rust and Fligner \(1984\)](#), assuming that tied values occur with probability zero. The explicit goal stated by Rust and Fligner is to test the hypothesis that J groups have a common median, but under general conditions it fails to do this in a satisfactory manner. Letting $p_{jk} = P(X_{ij} < X_{ik})$, their technique is appropriate for testing the hypothesis that for all J groups, $p_{jk} = 0.5$. However, their method is based on the assumption that the distributions of the J groups differ in location only. If this assumption is violated, in essence the Rust–Fligner method is testing the hypothesis that the groups have identical distributions. A possible appeal of their method is that it is asymptotically distribution free under weaker conditions than the Kruskal–Wallis test.

A rank-based method that can handle tied values was derived by [Brunner, Dette, and Munk \(1997\)](#). Extensive comparisons with the Rust–Fligner method, when ties occur with probability zero, have not been made. With small sample sizes, the choice of method might make a practical difference, but a detailed study of when this is the case has yet to be performed. Here it is merely remarked that situations can be constructed where, with a common sample size of 50, the choice of method makes a practical difference. For example, the Rust–Fligner method can reject at the 0.05 level, even though the Brunner et al. method has a p-value equal to 0.188. Even for normal distributions with unequal variances, the p-values resulting from these two methods can differ substantially.

7.8.1 The Rust–Fligner Method

The basic idea is that if for any x ,

$$H_0 : F_1(x) = \dots = F_J(x),$$

is true, meaning that all J groups have identical distributions, and if ranks are assigned based on the pooled data, then the average ranks among the groups should not differ by too much. [Table 7.14](#) describes how to calculate the test statistic, Q . This method can have relatively good power when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions. Because hypothesis testing methods based on robust measures of location are sensitive to different situations, compared to a method based on the average ranks, the Rust–Fligner method can have more power than meth-

Table 7.14: How to Compute the Rust–Fligner Test Statistic.

Let $V(x) = 1$ if $x \geq 0$, otherwise $V(x) = 0$. Let

$$R_{ij} = \sum_{\ell=1}^J \sum_{m=1}^{n_\ell} V(X_{ij} - X_{m\ell})$$

be the rank of X_{ij} among the pooled observations. Let

$$\bar{R}_{.j} = \sum_i R_{ij}/n_j, \quad U_j = \frac{n_j}{N(N+1)}(\bar{R}_{.j} - \bar{R}),$$

where \bar{R} is the average of all the ranks. Let

$$P_{ij\ell} = \sum_{m=1}^{n_\ell} V(X_{ij} - X_{m\ell}), \quad T_{ij} = \sum_{\ell, \ell \neq j} P_{ij\ell},$$

where the notation $\sum_{\ell, \ell \neq j}$ means summation over all values of ℓ not equal to j . Let $N = \sum n_j$ be the total number of observations. Compute the matrix $\mathbf{A} = (a_{jk})$, where

$$N^3 a_{jj} = \sum_{m=1}^{n_j} (T_{mj} - \bar{T}_{.j})^2 + \sum_{\ell, \ell \neq j} \sum_{m=1}^{n_\ell} (P_{m\ell j} - \bar{P}_{.\ell j})^2,$$

and for $j \neq k$

$$\begin{aligned} N^3 a_{jk} &= \sum_{\ell, j \neq \ell \neq k} \sum_m (P_{m\ell j} - \bar{P}_{.\ell j})(P_{m\ell k} - \bar{P}_{.\ell k}) - \\ &\quad \sum_m (P_{mkj} - \bar{P}_{.jk})(T_{mj} - \bar{T}_{.j}) - \sum_m (P_{mkj} - \bar{P}_{.kj})(T_{mk} - \bar{T}_{.k}), \end{aligned}$$

where $\bar{P}_{.\ell j} = \sum_i P_{ij\ell}/n_j$, and $\bar{T}_{.j} = \sum_i T_{ij}/n_j$. Letting $\mathbf{U} = (U_1, \dots, U_J)$, the test statistic is

$$Q = N \left(\prod_{j=1}^J \frac{n_j - 1}{n_j} \right) \mathbf{U} \mathbf{A}^{-} \mathbf{U}' ,$$

where \mathbf{A}^{-} is any generalized inverse of \mathbf{A} . (See for example, [Graybill, 1983](#), for information about the generalized inverse of a matrix.) When the null hypothesis is true, Q has, approximately, a chi-square distribution with $J - 1$ degrees of freedom. That is, reject H_0 if Q exceeds the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-square distribution having $J - 1$ degrees of freedom.

ods based on robust measures of location, but there are situations where the reverse is true. That is, in terms of maximizing power, the choice of method depends on how the groups differ, which is not known.

7.8.2 R Function *ranova*

The R function

```
rfanova(x,grp)
```

performs the calculations in [Table 7.14](#), where x is any R variable that is a matrix (with J columns), or a data frame, or x has list mode. The argument grp indicates which groups are to be used. If grp is unspecified, all J groups are used. (If tied values are detected, the function prints a warning message.) The function returns the value of the test statistic, Q , and the p-value.

■ Example

[Table 7.6](#) contains data for eight groups of participants. If the data for the first group are stored in the R variable $\text{film}[[1]]$, the data for the second group in $\text{film}[[2]]$, and so on, the function rfanova reports that the test statistic is $Q = 10.04$ and the p-value is 0.19. The command $\text{rfanova}(\text{film}, \text{grp}=\text{c}(1,3,4))$ would compare groups 1, 3, and 4 only.

7.8.3 A Heteroscedastic Rank-Based Method That Allows Tied Values

[Brunner et al. \(1997\)](#) derived a heteroscedastic analog of the Kruskal–Wallis test that allows tied values. Like the Rust–Fligner method, the basic idea is that if

$$H_0 : F_1(x) = \cdots = F_J(x)$$

is true, then the average ranks among the groups should not differ by too much. Again, pool the data and assign ranks. In the event there are tied values, midranks are used. Let R_{ij} be the resulting rank of X_{ij} . The remaining calculations are relegated to [Table 7.15](#).

7.8.4 R Function *bdm*

The R function

```
bdm(x)
```

performs the BDM rank-based ANOVA described in [Table 7.15](#). Here, x can have list mode or it can be a matrix with columns corresponding to groups. The function returns the value of the test statistic, the degrees of freedom, the vector of relative effects, which is labeled $q.\text{hat}$, and the p-value.

Table 7.15: How to Perform the Brunner–Dette–Munk Test.

Let

$$\bar{R}_j = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} R_{ij},$$

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{N} \left(\bar{R}_1 - \frac{1}{2}, \dots, \bar{R}_J - \frac{1}{2} \right).$$

The vector \mathbf{Q} contains what are called the *relative effects*. For the j th group, compute

$$s_j^2 = \frac{1}{N^2(n_j - 1)} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (R_{ij} - \bar{R}_j)^2,$$

and let

$$\mathbf{V} = N \text{diag} \left\{ \frac{s_1^2}{n_1}, \dots, \frac{s_J^2}{n_J} \right\}.$$

Let \mathbf{I} be a J -by- J identity matrix, let \mathbf{J} be a J -by- J matrix of 1s, and set $\mathbf{M} = \mathbf{I} - \frac{1}{J}\mathbf{J}$. (The diagonal entries in \mathbf{M} have a common value, a property required to satisfy certain theoretical restrictions.) The test statistic is

$$F = \frac{N}{\text{tr}(M_{11}^2 \mathbf{V})} \mathbf{Q} \mathbf{M} \mathbf{Q}', \quad (7.15)$$

where tr indicates trace and \mathbf{Q}' is the transpose of the matrix \mathbf{Q} . The null hypothesis is rejected if $F \geq f$, where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with

$$\nu_1 = \frac{M_{11}[\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{M} \mathbf{V})}$$

and

$$\nu_2 = \frac{[\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}^2 \Lambda)}$$

degrees of freedom and $\Lambda = \text{diag}\{(n_1 - 1)^{-1}, \dots, (n_J - 1)^{-1}\}$.

■ Example

In schizophrenia research, an issue that has received some attention is whether groups of individuals differ in terms of skin resistance (measured in Ohms). In one such study, the groups of interest were no schizophrenic spectrum disorder, schizotypal or paranoid personality disorder, schizophrenia, predominantly negative symptoms, and schizophre-

nia, predominantly positive symptoms. For a portion of this study, the following results were obtained (after measures were transformed):

(No Schiz.)	(Schizotypal)	(Schiz. Neg.)	(Schiz. Pos.)
0.49959	0.24792	0.25089	0.37667
0.23457	0.00000	0.00000	0.43561
0.26505	0.00000	0.00000	0.72968
0.27910	0.39062	0.00000	0.26285
0.00000	0.34841	0.11459	0.22526
0.00000	0.00000	0.79480	0.34903
0.00000	0.20690	0.17655	0.24482
0.14109	0.44428	0.00000	0.41096
0.00000	0.00000	0.15860	0.08679
1.34099	0.31802	0.00000	0.87532

The function `bdm` returns a p-value of 0.040. The relative effect sizes (the Q values) are reported as

```
$output$q.hat:
 [,1]
[1,] 0.4725
[2,] 0.4725
[3,] 0.3550
[4,] 0.7000
```

So the average of the ranks in group 3 is smallest, and the average is highest for group 4.

7.8.5 Inferences About a Probabilistic Measure of Effect Size

Method CHMCP

Consider J independent groups. For groups j and k ($1 \leq J < k \leq J$), let

$$p_{jk} = P(X_{ij} < X_{ik}) + 0.5P(X_{ij} = X_{ik}).$$

As noted in Section 5.7.1, Cliff's method can be used to

$$H_0 : p_{jk} = 0.5 \quad (7.16)$$

and to compute a confidence interval for p_{jk} . But imagine that it is desired to test Eq. (7.16) for all $j < k$, with the goal that the probability of one or more Type I errors is α . A simple method, that seems to be relatively effective, is to compute p-values for each test and use

Hochberg's method, described in Section 7.4.7, to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. This will be called *method CHMCP*. It has been found to be generally preferable to using a Studentized maximum modulus; see [Wilcox \(2011d\)](#).

Method WMWAOV

It is briefly noted how one might test

$$H_0 : p_{12} = p_{13} = \cdots = p_{J-1,J} = 0.5. \quad (7.17)$$

[Wilcox \(2010d\)](#) examined several methods for accomplishing this goal, but only the method that performed well in simulations is described here. A limitation of the method is that it assumes tied values never occur; it can perform poorly, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when this is not the case.

For the j th and k th groups, let D_{jk} be the distribution of $X_j - X_k$. Recall from Section 5.7.1 that $p_{jk} = 0.5$ corresponds to $\theta_{jk} = 0$, where θ_{jk} is the (population) median of D_{jk} . (As pointed out in Section 5.7.1, under general conditions, $\theta_{jk} \neq \theta_j - \theta_k$.) So testing Eq. (7.17) is tantamount to testing

$$H_0 : \theta_{12} = \theta_{13} = \cdots = \theta_{J-1,J} = 0. \quad (7.18)$$

Let X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$) be a random sample of size n_j from the j th group. Generate a bootstrap sample from j th group by randomly sampling with replacement n_j observations from $X_{1j}, \dots, X_{n_j j}$, which will be labeled $X_{1j}^*, \dots, X_{n_j j}^*$. Let M_{jk}^* , $j < k$, be the usual sample median based on the $n_j n_k$ differences $X_{ij}^* - X_{\ell k}^*$ ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $\ell = 1, \dots, n_k$). Repeat this process B times yielding M_{jk}^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. So M_{jk}^* represents B vectors, each having length $(J^2 - J)/2$. From [Liu and Singh \(1997\)](#), a p-value for testing Eq. (7.18) can be obtained by measuring how deeply $\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$ is nested within the bootstrap cloud of points. More precisely, let \mathbf{G}_0 be the depth of the null vector $(0, \dots, 0)$ based on the notion of projection distance as described in Section 6.2.5. The projection distance of $\mathbf{M}_b^* = (M_{12b}^*, \dots, M_{J-1,Kb}^*)$ from the center of the bootstrap data cloud is denoted by G_b . Then a p-value is

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum I_b,$$

where the indicator function $I_b = 1$ if $G_0 < G_b$; otherwise $I_b = 0$. This will be called method WMWAOV. Though seemingly rare, it is possible for method WMWAOV to correctly reject even though method CHMCP finds no differences.

Method DBH

When performing all pairwise comparisons, there is a variation of method WMWAOV that should be mentioned. For each pair of groups, apply method WMWAOV and control the probability of one or more Type I errors using Hochberg's method. This will be called method DBH. Note that with only two groups, a p-value can be computed as described, for example, in Section 4.4.1. (If \hat{p}^* is the proportion of M_{12b}^* values less than 0, the p-value is $2\min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*)$.) Simulation results indicate that the actual probability of one or more Type I errors will be closer to the nominal level compared to method CHMCP (Wilcox, 2011d). Moreover, method DBH might provide a bit more power. But DBH is not recommended when tied values can occur.

7.8.6 R Functions *cidmulv2*, *wmwaov* and *cidM*

The R function

```
cidmulv2(x,alpha=0.05,g=NULL,dp=NULL,CI.FWE=F)
```

tests Eq. (7.16). The output includes a column headed by *p.crit*, which indicates how small the p-value must be in order to reject using Hochberg's method. If the argument *CI.FWE*=F, the function returns confidence intervals for each p_{jk} having probability coverage $1 - \alpha$. If *CI.FWE*=T, the probability coverage corresponds to the “critical” p-value used to make decisions about rejecting Eq. (7.16) based on Hochberg's method. For example, if the goal is to have the probability of one or more Type I errors equal to 0.05, and if the second largest p-value is less than or equal to 0.025, Hochberg's method rejects. The confidence interval returned by *cidmulv2*, for the two groups corresponding to the situation having the second largest p-value, will have probability coverage $1 - 0.025 = 0.0975$. For the next largest p-value, the probability coverage will be $1 - 0.05/3$, and so on. If the argument *g* is specified, it is assumed that *x* is a matrix with the dependent variable stored in column *dp* and the levels of the factors stored in column *g*.

The R function

```
wmwaov(x,nboot=500,MC=F,SEED=T,pro.dis=T,MM=F)
```

performs the WMWAOV method. Setting the argument *MC*=T, the function takes advantage of a multicore processor, assuming one is available.

Finally, the R function

```
cidM(x,nboot=1000,alpha=0.05,MC=F,SEED=T,g=NULL,dp=NULL)
```

performs method DBH. (Both `wmwaov` and `cidM` check for tied values and print a warning message if any are found.)

7.9 A Rank-Based Method for a Two-Way Design

This section describes a rank-based method for a two-way design derived by [Akritas, Arnold, and Brunner \(1997\)](#). The basic idea stems from [Akritas and Arnold \(1994\)](#) and is based on the following point of view. For any value x , let

$$\bar{F}_{j\cdot}(x) = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K F_{jk}(x)$$

be the average of the distributions among the K levels of Factor B corresponding to the j th level of Factor A. The hypothesis of no main effects for Factor A is

$$H_0 : \bar{F}_{1\cdot}(x) = \bar{F}_{2\cdot}(x) = \cdots = \bar{F}_{J\cdot}(x)$$

for any x . Letting

$$\bar{F}_{\cdot k}(x) = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J F_{jk}(x)$$

be the average of the distributions for the k th level of Factor B, the hypothesis of no main effects for Factor B is

$$H_0 : \bar{F}_{0.1}(x) = \bar{F}_{0.2}(x) = \cdots = \bar{F}_{K}(x).$$

As for interactions, first consider a 2-by-2 design. Then no interaction is taken to mean that for any x ,

$$F_{11}(x) - F_{12}(x) = F_{21}(x) - F_{22}(x),$$

which has a certain similarity to how no interaction based on means is defined. Here, no interaction in a J -by- K design means that for any two rows and any two columns, there is no interaction as just described. From a technical point of view, a convenient way of stating the hypothesis of no interactions among all JK groups is with

$$H_0 : F_{jk}(x) - \bar{F}_{j\cdot}(x) - \bar{F}_{\cdot k}(x) + \bar{F}_{..}(x) = 0,$$

for any x , all j ($j = 1, \dots, J$) and all k ($k = 1, \dots, K$), where

$$\bar{F}_{..}(x) = \frac{1}{JK} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K F_{jk}(x).$$

The computations begin by pooling all of the data and assigning ranks. For convenience, let $L = JK$ and let $R_{i\ell}$ be the ranks of the ℓ th group ($\ell = 1, \dots, L$), where the first K groups correspond to the first level of the first factor, the next K correspond to the second level of the first factor, and so on. Let

$$\bar{R}_\ell = \frac{1}{n_\ell} \sum R_{i\ell}$$

and

$$s_\ell^2 = \frac{1}{N^2(n_\ell - 1)} \sum (R_{i\ell} - \bar{R}_\ell)^2,$$

where $N = \sum n_\ell$ is the total sample size. Set

$$\mathbf{V} = N \text{diag} \left\{ \frac{s_1^2}{n_1}, \dots, \frac{s_L^2}{n_L} \right\}.$$

Let \mathbf{I}_J be a J by J identity matrix, let \mathbf{H}_J be a J by J matrix of ones, and let

$$\mathbf{P}_J = \mathbf{I}_J - \frac{1}{J} \mathbf{H}_J, \quad \mathbf{M}_A = \mathbf{P}_J \otimes \frac{1}{K} \mathbf{H}_K,$$

$$\mathbf{M}_B = \frac{1}{J} \mathbf{H}_J \otimes \mathbf{P}_K, \quad \mathbf{M}_{AB} = \mathbf{P}_J \otimes \mathbf{P}_K.$$

(The notation \otimes refers to the right Kronecker product.)

The remaining calculations are summarized in [Table 7.16](#).

7.9.1 R Function `bdm2way`

The R function

`bdm2way(J, K, x)`

performs the two-way ANOVA method described in [Table 7.16](#).

Table 7.16: Two-Way, Heteroscedastic, Rank-Based ANOVA.

Let

$$\mathbf{Q} = \frac{1}{N} \left(\bar{R}_1 - \frac{1}{2}, \dots, \bar{R}_L - \frac{1}{2} \right)$$

be the *relative effects*. The test statistics are:

$$F_A = \frac{N}{\text{tr}(M_{A11}\mathbf{V})} \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{M}_A\mathbf{Q}', F_B = \frac{N}{\text{tr}(M_{B11}\mathbf{V})} \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{M}_B\mathbf{Q}',$$

$$F_{AB} = \frac{N}{\text{tr}(M_{AB11}\mathbf{V})} \mathbf{Q}\mathbf{M}_{AB}\mathbf{Q}'.$$

For Factor A, reject if $F_A \geq f$, where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with degrees of freedom

$$\nu_1 = \frac{M_{A11}^2 [\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V} \mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V})}, \nu_2 = \frac{[\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}^2 \Lambda)},$$

where $\Lambda = \text{diag}\{(n_1 - 1)^{-1}, \dots, (n_L - 1)^{-1}\}$. Here M_{A11} is the first diagonal element of the matrix \mathbf{M}_A . (By design, all of the diagonal elements of \mathbf{M}_A have a common value.) For Factor B, reject if $F_B \geq f$, where

$$\nu_1 = \frac{M_{B11}^2 [\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_B \mathbf{V} \mathbf{M}_B \mathbf{V})}.$$

(The value for ν_2 remains the same.) As for the hypothesis of no interactions, reject if $F_{AB} \geq f$, where now

$$\nu_1 = \frac{M_{AB11}^2 [\text{tr}(\mathbf{V})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_{AB} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{M}_{AB} \mathbf{V})}$$

and ν_2 is the same value used to test for main effects.

7.9.2 The Patel–Hoel Approach to Interactions

[Patel and Hoel \(1973\)](#) proposed an alternative approach to interactions in a 2-by-2 design that can be extended to a multiple comparisons method for a J -by- K design, even when there are tied values. First consider a 2-by-2 design where X_{ijk} is the i th observation randomly sampled from the j th level of Factor A and the k th level of Factor B. Temporarily assume ties occur with probability zero and let

$$p_{11,12} = P(X_{i11} < X_{i12}).$$

Note that ignoring level two of Factor A, levels one and two of Factor B can be compared by testing $H_0: p_{11,12} = 0$ as described in Section 5.7. The Patel–Hoel definition of no interaction is that $p_{11,12} = p_{21,22}$. That is, the probability of an observation being smaller under level

one of Factor B, versus level two, is the same for both levels of Factor A. In the event ties can occur, let

$$p_{11,12} = P(X_{i11} \leq X_{i12}) + \frac{1}{2}P(X_{i11} = X_{i12}),$$

$$p_{21,22} = P(X_{i21} \leq X_{i22}) + \frac{1}{2}P(X_{i21} = X_{i22}),$$

in which case the hypothesis of no interaction is

$$H_0 : p_{11,12} = p_{21,22}.$$

Again, temporarily ignore level two of Factor A and note that the two independent groups corresponding to the two levels of Factor B can be compared in terms of δ as described in Section 5.7.1. Let δ_1 represent δ when focusing on level one of Factor A with level two ignored and let $\hat{\delta}_1$ be the estimate of δ as given by Eq. (5.20). An estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\delta}_1$, $\hat{\sigma}_1^2$, is described in Section 5.7.1 as well. Similarly, let δ_2 be the estimate of δ_2 when focusing on level two of Factor A, with level one ignored, and denote its estimate with $\hat{\delta}_2$. The estimated squared standard error of $\hat{\delta}_2$ is denoted by $\hat{\sigma}_2^2$. It can be seen that the null hypothesis of no interaction just defined corresponds to

$$H_0 : \Delta = \frac{\delta_2 - \delta_1}{2} = 0.$$

An estimate of $p_{11,12} - p_{21,22}$ is

$$\hat{\Delta} = \frac{\hat{\delta}_2 - \hat{\delta}_1}{2},$$

and the estimated squared standard error of $\hat{\Delta}$ is

$$S^2 = \frac{1}{4}(\hat{\sigma}_1^2 + \hat{\sigma}_2^2),$$

and a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Δ is

$$\hat{\Delta} \pm z_{1-\alpha/2} S,$$

where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution. The hypothesis of no interaction is rejected if this confidence interval does not contain zero.

For the more general case of a J -by- K design, an analog of Dunnett's T3 method is used to control FWE. When working with levels j and j' of Factor A and levels k and k' of Factor B,

we represent the parameter Δ by $\Delta_{jj'kk'}$, its estimate is labeled $\hat{\Delta}_{jj'kk'}$, and the estimated squared standard error is denoted by $S_{jj'kk'}^2$. For every $j < j'$ and $k < k'$, the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \Delta_{jj'kk'} = 0.$$

The total number of hypotheses to be tested is

$$C = \frac{J^2 - J}{2} \times \frac{K^2 - K}{2}.$$

The critical value, c , is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of the C-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution with degrees of freedom $v = \infty$. The confidence interval for $\Delta_{jj'kk'}$ is

$$\hat{\Delta}_{jj'kk'} \pm c S_{jj'kk'},$$

and the hypothesis of no interaction, corresponding to levels j and j' of Factor A and levels k and k' of Factor B, is rejected if this confidence interval does not contain zero.

7.9.3 R Function `rimul`

The R function

```
rimul(J,K,x,p=J*K,grp=c(1:p),plotit=T,op=4)
```

performs the test for interactions just described. (The argument, $p=J*K$, is not important in applied work; it is used to deal with certain conventions in R.) The groups are assumed to be arranged as in Section 7.2.1 and the argument `grp` is explained in Section 7.2.1 as well. If $J = K = 2$ and `plotit=T`, the function plots an estimate of the distribution of $D_{i1} = X_{i11} - X_{i12}$ and $D_{i2} = X_{i21} - X_{i12}$ via the function `g2plot` in Section 5.1.7. The argument `op` is relevant to `g2plot` and controls the type of plot that is created.

7.10 MANOVA Based on Trimmed Means

Multivariate analysis of variance, also known as MANOVA, deals with a generalization of ANOVA to situations where two or more measures are taken on each participant. More formally, consider J independent groups where, for each participant, p measures are taken. For the j th group, denote the p trimmed means by $\boldsymbol{\mu}_j = (\mu_{tj1}, \dots, \mu_{tjp})$. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \boldsymbol{\mu}_1 = \dots = \boldsymbol{\mu}_J. \tag{7.19}$$

(For results on a two-way MANOVA that are focused on means, see [Zhang, 2011](#); [Vallejo & Ato, 2012](#). Evidently, extensions of these methods to trimmed means have not been studied.)

[Johansen \(1980\)](#) derived a method for means that allows the covariances associated with the J groups to differ, in contrast to classic methods that assume the J groups have a common covariance matrix. The method represents a heteroscedastic approach to what is called the *general linear model*. Johansen assumed normality, but the method can be extended to trimmed means as described here. For the two-sample case, comparisons with a method derived by [Kim \(1992b\)](#) as well as several other methods, are reported by [Wilcox \(1995f\)](#). [Lix, Keselman, and Hinds \(2005\)](#) compared several methods based on both means and a 20% trimmed mean, again for the two-sample case. No single method dominated and it is unclear the extent the generalization of Johansen's method used here competes well with the methods compared by Lix et al.

The version of Johansen's method used here, extended to trimmed means, is applied as follows. For the j th group, there are n_j randomly sampled vectors of observations denoted by $(X_{ij1}, \dots, X_{ijp})$, $i = 1, \dots, n_j$. Let $\bar{\mathbf{X}}_j = (\bar{X}_{tj1}, \dots, \bar{X}_{tpj})$ denote the vector of trimmed means and let \mathbf{V}_j be the Winsorized covariance matrix. Compute

$$\tilde{R}_j = \frac{n_j - 1}{(n_j - 2g_j)(n_j - 2g_j - 1)} \mathbf{V}_j,$$

where $g_j = \gamma n_j$, rounded down to the nearest integer, and γ is the amount of trimming,

$$\mathbf{W}_j = \tilde{R}_j^{-1},$$

$$\mathbf{W} = \sum \mathbf{W}_j$$

and

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^J [\{\text{tr}(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}^{-1} \mathbf{W}_j)\}^2 + \text{tr}\{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}^{-1} \mathbf{W}_j)^2\}] / f_j,$$

where $f_j = n_j - 2g_j - 1$. The estimate of the population trimmed means, assuming H_0 is true, is

$$\hat{\mu}_t = \mathbf{W}^{-1} \sum \mathbf{W}_j \bar{\mathbf{X}}_j.$$

The test statistic is

$$F = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^p \sum_{m=1}^p w_{mkj} (\bar{X}_{mj} - \hat{\mu}_m) (\bar{X}_{kj} - \hat{\mu}_k), \quad (7.20)$$

where w_{mkj} is the mk th element of \mathbf{W}_j , \bar{X}_{mj} is the m th element of $\bar{\mathbf{X}}_j$, and $\hat{\mu}_m$ is the m th element of $\hat{\mu}_t$. Reject the null hypothesis if

$$F \geq c + \frac{c}{2p(J-1)} \left\{ A + \frac{3cA}{p(J-1)+2} \right\},$$

where c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with $p(J-1)$ degrees of freedom.

Note that the MANOVA method based on trimmed means uses a measure of location that does not take into account the overall structure of the data. [Todorov and Filzmoser \(2010\)](#) derived a MANOVA method based on the MCD estimator, which does take into account the overall structure, but their method assumes that groups differ in location only.

For the special case where the goal is to compare two groups only, [Yanagihara and Yuan \(2005\)](#) derived a method for comparing means that compares well to several other heteroscedastic methods, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when sampling from multivariate normal distributions. Currently, there are no published papers comparing the small-sample properties of the extended Yanagihara and Yuan method to the extension of Johansen's method. (A few simulations were run by the author using a 20% trimmed mean. Situations were found where the extended Yanagihara and Yuan method provides more satisfactory control over the probability of a Type I error, no situation has been found where the reverse is true, but a more comprehensive study is needed.)

Let

$$T = (\bar{\mathbf{X}}_1 - \bar{\mathbf{X}}_2)'(\tilde{R}_1 + \tilde{R}_2)^{-1}(\bar{\mathbf{X}}_1 - \bar{\mathbf{X}}_2),$$

$$\bar{\mathbf{V}} = \frac{n_2}{n}\mathbf{V}_1 + \frac{n_1}{n}\mathbf{V}_2,$$

where $n = n_1 + n_2$,

$$P_1 = \frac{n_2^2(n-2)}{n^2(n_1-1)}\{\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_1\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1})\}^2 + \frac{n_1^2(n-2)}{n^2(n_2-1)}\{\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_2\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1})\}^2,$$

$$P_2 = \frac{n_2^2(n-2)}{n^2(n_1-1)}\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_1\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1}\mathbf{V}_1\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1}) + \frac{n_1^2(n-2)}{n^2(n_2-1)}\text{tr}(\mathbf{V}_2\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1}\mathbf{V}_2\bar{\mathbf{V}}^{-1}),$$

and

$$\hat{v} = \frac{(h-2-P_1)^2}{(h-2)P_2-P_1},$$

where $h = h_1 + h_2$ and $h_j = n_j - 2g_j$ ($j = 1, 2$). The test statistic, based on an extension of the Yanagihara–Yuan method to trimmed means, is

$$T_f = \frac{n - 2 - P_1}{(n - 2)p} T,$$

which has, approximately, an F distribution with p and \hat{v} degrees of freedom when the null hypothesis is true. When $p = 1$, this method reduces to Yuen's method described in Section 5.3.

7.10.1 R Functions *MULtr.anova*, *MULAOVp*, *bw2list* and *YYmanova*

The R function

```
MULtr.anova(x, J = NULL, p = NULL, tr=0.2, alpha=0.05)
```

performs the robust MANOVA method based on the extension of Johansen's method to trimmed means. The argument J defaults to NULL, meaning that x is assumed to have list mode with length J , where $x[[j]]$ contains a matrix with n_j rows and p columns, $j = 1, \dots, J$. If the arguments J and p are specified, the data can be stored in list mode or a matrix. If stored in list mode, it is assumed that $x[[1]] - x[[p]]$ contain p measures associated with the first group, $x[[p+1]] - x[[2p]]$ contain the p measures for the next group, and so on. If the data are stored in a matrix or data frame, it is assumed the first p columns of x contain the p measures associated with the first group, the next p columns contain the p measures associated with the second groups, and so forth.

The R function

```
MULAOVp(x, J = NULL, p = NULL, tr=0.2)
```

performs the same robust MANOVA method as the R function MULtr.anova, only it returns a p-value.

The R function

```
bw2list(x, grp.col, lev.col)
```

is provided in order to help with data management issues. If the data are stored in a matrix or data frame, the argument grp.col indicates which column contains the group identification information. The argument lev.col indicates the columns that contain the p measures that are to be compared.

■ Example

Imagine that two independent groups are to be compared based on measures taken at three different times. One way of comparing the groups is with a robust MANOVA method. If the data for the first group are stored in the R variable m1, a matrix having 3 columns, and if the data for the second group are stored in m2, also having 3 columns, the analysis can be performed as follows:

```
x=list()
x[[1]]=m1
x[[2]]=m2
MULtr.anova(x).
```

The function returns the test statistic and a critical value.



■ Example

This example is based on data downloaded from Carnegie Mellon University. The first five columns of the data, for the first row of the data, look like this:

ID	Sex	Smoker	Opinion	Age	Order
1	M	N	pos	23	1

The next six columns for the first row look like this:

U.Trial.1	U.Trial.2	U.Trial.3	S.Trial.1	S.Trial.2	S.Trial.3
38.4	27.7	25.7	53.1	30.6	30.2.

These last six columns contain the time participants required to complete a pencil and paper maze test when they were smelling a floral scent and when they were not. The columns headed by U.Trial.1 U.Trial.2 U.Trial.3 are the times for no scent, which were taken on three different occasions. Here we compare smokers (Y) and non-smokers (N) based on all three of the no scent measures. So in the notation used here, $J = 2$ and $p = 3$. The first task is storing the data in a manner that can be used by the R functions MULtr.anova and MULAOVp. Assuming the data have been stored in the R variable called scent, in a data frame or a matrix, this can be accomplished with the R command

```
z=bw2list(scent,3,c(7:9)).
```

Then the R command

```
MULAOVp(z,2,3)
```

would compare the 20% trimmed means of smokers to non-smokers. The p-value is 0.143.

The R function

```
YYmanova(x1,x2,tr=0.2)
```

performs the extension of the Yanagihara–Yuan MANOVA method to trimmed means, which is limited to $J = 2$ groups. The data for the first group are stored in the argument $x1$, which is assumed to be a matrix with p columns, as is the argument $x2$, which is assumed to be the data for group 2.

7.10.2 Linear Contrasts

Consider again J independent groups where for each participant, p measures are taken. This section deals with the goal of testing a set of linear contrasts in the context of multivariate data. There are two variations. The first uses some marginal measure of location, such as a trimmed or M-estimator, and the other uses some multivariate measure of location that takes into account the overall structure of the data such as those summarized in Section 6.3.

For convenience only, attention is focused on the marginal trimmed means with the understanding that any measure of location can be used. So now we let

$$\Psi = \sum c_j \mu_t,$$

where μ_t is a vector of p trimmed means and the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \Psi = \mathbf{0}.$$

With 20% trimming, currently a relatively good approach aimed at achieving this goal is to use a percentile bootstrap method. Generate a bootstrap sample by sampling with replacement n_j rows from p -variate data associated with the j th group. Compute the marginal trimmed means and label the result $\bar{\mathbf{X}}_t^*$, followed by

$$\hat{\Psi}^* = \sum c_j \bar{\mathbf{X}}_t^*.$$

Repeat B times yielding $\Psi_1^*, \dots, \Psi_B^*$. Next, compute the Mahalanobis distance of each Ψ_b^* ($b = 0, \dots, B$), say d_b^* , where d_0^* is the distance of the null vector. The center of the bootstrap data cloud is taken to be $\hat{\Psi}$, the estimate of Ψ based on the observed data. And the covariance matrix when computing the Mahalanobis distances is just the sample covariance matrix based on the Ψ_b^* ($b = 0, \dots, B$) values. Let P^* be the proportion of d_b values ($b = 0, \dots, B$) such that $d_0 \geq d_b$. Then a p-value is $1 - P^*$.

This method is not recommended when using means. It appears to perform well when using a reasonably robust measure of location, but if the breakdown point is close to zero, it can be highly inaccurate.

Limited comparisons suggest that when comparing two groups, the bootstrap method described here performs about as well as the extension of Johansen's method when working with 20% trimmed means in terms of controlling the probability of a type error and when sampling from normal distributions. However, the p-values can differ substantially. In simulations, for example, when sampling from normal distributions, Johansen's method can have a substantially larger p-value, but situations where the reverse is true are encountered even though the ability of the two methods to control the Type I error probability is similar. In practical terms, even under normality, the choice of method is not academic in terms of deciding whether to reject the null hypothesis.

Now consider a situation where $p = 3$, $J = 2$, $n_1 = 20$, $n_2 = 40$, the first group has a multivariate normal distribution with common correlation $\rho = 0$, but the other groups is generated from a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0.5$ and $h = 0$ (a skewed distribution with relatively light tails) and $\rho = 0.6$. Further imagine that for the second group, the marginal distributions are shifted so that they have a trimmed mean of zero. Then the probability of a Type I error when testing at the 0.05 level, and using the bootstrap method described here, is 0.014 (based on 1000 replications). In contrast, the actual levels using the Yanagihara–Yuan and Johansen methods are 0.053 and 0.045, respectively. A similar result is obtained when the second group now has $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$ (a symmetric distribution with relatively heavy tails). Of course, this is not convincing evidence that the Yanagihara–Yuan and Johansen methods are generally preferable to the bootstrap method. The only point is that there are situations where indeed they have a practical advantage.

■ Example

For the EEG data in [Table 6.1](#), MULAOVp returns a p-value equal to 0.083. But using the percentile bootstrap method described here, the p-value is 0.789. Situations are encountered, however, where the percentile bootstrap method has a substantially smaller p-value.

Note that for $J > 2$ groups, the Yanagihara–Yuan method can be used to perform all pairwise comparisons with the probability of at least one Type I error controlled by Rom’s method. Limited simulations suggest that this approach performs relatively well in terms of Type I errors and power, even with small sample sizes. However, the percentile bootstrap method can be used with any robust estimator. Moreover, situations are encountered where both Johansen’s method and the Yanagihara–Yuan method cannot be applied because the Winsorized covariance matrix is singular. Because the percentile bootstrap method does not use any covariance matrix, this problem is avoided.

7.10.3 R Functions *linconMpb*, *linconSpb*, *YYmcp*, *fac2Mlist* and *fac2BBMlist*

The R function

```
linconMpb(x, tr=0.2, nboot = 1000, grp = NA, est = tmean, con = 0, bhop = F, SEED = T,
          PDIS = F, J = NULL, p = NULL, ...)
```

tests hypotheses, based on linear contrasts, using the percentile bootstrap method described in the previous section, assuming that for each group, some marginal measure of location is used. The argument *x* is assumed to have list mode, where *x*[1] is a matrix with *p* columns associated with group 1, *x*[2] is a matrix with *p* columns associated with group 2, and so on. If *x* does not have list mode, but rather is a matrix or data frame with the first *p* columns corresponding group 1, the next *p* columns corresponding to group 2, and so forth, then specify how many groups there are via the argument *J*, or how specify how many variables there via the argument *p*. By default all pairwise comparisons are performed based on the marginal 20% trimmed means, but M-estimators, for example, could be used by setting the argument *est=onestep*. The probability of at least one Type I error is set via the argument *alpha* and is controlled using Rom’s method. As usual, contrast coefficients can be specified via the argument *con*. Setting the argument *PDIS=T*, projection distances will be used the depth of the null vector in the bootstrap cloud of points.

For each group, it might be desired to use a multivariate measure of location that takes into account the overall structure of the data. That is, use one of the measures of location in Section 6.3. This can be done with a percentile bootstrap method via the R function

```
linconSpb(x, tr=0.2, nboot = 1000, grp = NA, est = smean, con = 0, bhop = F, SEED = T,
          PDIS = F, J = NULL, p = NULL, ...).
```

By default, the OP estimator of location is used, but this might result in relatively high execution time. (For an alternative approach based on an S-estimator or MM-estimator, see [Van Aelst, Vandervieren, & Willems, 2012](#).)

The R function

```
YYmcp(x, tr=0.2, grp = NA, tr=0.2, bhop = F, J = NULL, p = NULL, ...)
```

performs all pairwise comparisons via the extension of the Yanagihara–Yuan technique used in conjunction with Rom’s method for controlling FWE. Setting the argument bhop=T, the Benjamini–Hochberg method is used instead. The arguments J and p are used in the same manner as described in conjunction with the R function linconMpb.

Data Management

The following two R functions might help with data management. The R function

```
fac2Mlist(x,grp.col,lev.col,pr=T)
```

sorts p -variate data stored in the matrix (or data frame) x into groups based on the values stored in the column of x indicated by the argument grp.col. The results are stored in list mode in a manner that can be used by linconMpb and linconSpb. For example, the command

```
z=fac2Mlist(plasma,2,c(7:8))
```

will create groups based on the data in column 2. The result is that z[[1]] will contain the data for the first group stored as a matrix. The first column of this matrix corresponds to data stored in column 7 of the R variable plasma and the second column corresponds to data stored in column 8. Similarly, z[[2]] will contain the data for group 2, and so on. So the command

```
linconSpb(z)
```

would perform all pairwise comparisons.

The R function

```
fac2BBMlist(x,grp.col,lev.col,pr=T)
```

is like the function fac2Mlist, only it is designed to handle a between-by-between design. Now the argument grp.col is assumed to contain two values indicating the columns of x that contain the levels of the two factors. The multivariate data are stored in the columns indicated by the argument lev.col. For a J -by- K design, the result is an R variable having list mode with length JK .

■ Example

The command

```
z=fac2BBMlist(plasma,c(2,3),c(7,8))
```

will create groups based on the values in columns 2 and 3 of the R variable plasma. In this particular case, there are two levels for the first factor (meaning that column 2 of plasma has two unique values only) and three for the second. The result will be that $z[[1]], \dots, z[[6]]$ will each contain a matrix having two columns stemming from the bivariate data in columns 7 and 8 of plasma. Then the commands

```
con=con2way(2,3)
linconMpb(z,con=con$conAB)
```

would test all hypotheses based on the linear contrast coefficients typically used when dealing with interactions.

7.11 Nested Designs

Briefly, a two-way nested design refers to a situation where there is a hierarchy among the levels of two factors under study. This is in contrast to a completely crossed design as considered in Section 7.2. For example, a goal might be to compare the efficacy of two medical procedures. The first method is used in K randomly sampled hospitals, with n participants used within each hospital, and the same is done for another K randomly sampled hospitals for the second method. For various reasons, the efficacy of a method might depend on the hospital where it is used. Here, the factor hospital is nested within the two levels corresponding to the medical procedures. (There is no interaction term.) Similarly, the effectiveness of methods for teaching mathematics might depend on the school where they are used. If the goal is to compare J teaching strategies, this might be done based on K randomly sampled schools with n students within each school being taught based on a particular method. So the factor school is nested within the levels of J methods.

A simple way of dealing with nested designs, in a robust manner that allows heteroscedasticity, is to use the trimmed means from each level of factor B, which is nested within the levels of factor A. For the teaching strategies example, methods would be compared based on the trimmed means resulting from each school, where each trimmed mean is based on n participants within each school. For the special case where means are used, formal statements of this approach are given in Khuri (1992) where heteroscedastic methods are studied.

The goal when dealing with a nested design can be stated in a slightly more formal manner as follows. For the j th level of factor A it is assumed that there are K randomly sampled levels of the nested factor. For j fixed, let μ_{tjk} be the population trimmed mean corresponding to level k of the nested factor B ($j = 1, \dots, J; k = 1, \dots, K$). Moreover, with j still fixed, μ_{tjk} is assumed to have some unknown distribution having a trimmed mean denoted by μ_{tj} and variance σ_j^2 . There are two goals. The first is to test

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1} = \dots = \mu_{tJ}. \quad (7.21)$$

The second is to perform all pairwise comparisons in a manner that controls the probability of at least one Type I error. That is, the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \mu_{tj} = \mu_{tj'} \quad (7.22)$$

for each $j < j'$, such that the probability of at least one Type I error is approximately equal to α .

Let X_{ijk} be the i th randomly sampled observation from k th randomly sampled level of factor B. For fixed j and k , let

$$X_{(1)jk} \leq \dots \leq X_{(n)jk}$$

be the n observations written in ascending order. For some γ ($0 \leq \gamma < 0.5$), let $g = [\gamma n]$, where $[\gamma n]$ is the value of γn rounded down to the nearest integer. Then the γ sample trimmed mean is

$$\bar{X}_{jk} = \sum_{i=g+1}^{n-g} X_{(i)jk}.$$

In essence, the unit of analysis becomes the \bar{X}_{tjk} values when applying methods for trimmed means already covered. To elaborate, let \bar{X}_j be the trimmed mean of the values $\bar{X}_{j1}, \dots, \bar{X}_{jK}$ and let

$$W_{jk} = \begin{cases} \bar{X}_{(g+1)jk}, & \text{if } \bar{X}_{jk} \leq \bar{X}_{(g+1)jk} \\ \bar{X}_{jk}, & \text{if } \bar{X}_{(g+1)jk} < \bar{X}_{jk} < \bar{X}_{(n-g)jk} \\ \bar{X}_{(n-g)jk}, & \text{if } \bar{X}_{jk} \geq \bar{X}_{(n-g)jk}. \end{cases}$$

The Winsorized sample mean corresponding to $\bar{X}_{j1}, \dots, \bar{X}_{jK}$ (j fixed) is

$$\bar{X}_{wj} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K W_{jk}$$

and the Winsorized variance is

$$s_{wj}^2 = \frac{1}{K-1} \sum (W_{jk} - \bar{X}_{wj})^2.$$

Let

$$d_j = \frac{(K-1)s_{wj}^2}{h_j \times (h_j-1)},$$

where $h_j = K - 2G$, $G = [\gamma K]$,

$$w_j = \frac{1}{d_j}$$

$$U = \sum w_j$$

$$\tilde{X} = \frac{1}{U} \sum w_j \bar{X}_j$$

$$A = \frac{1}{J-1} \sum w_j (\bar{X}_j - \tilde{X})^2$$

$$B = \frac{2(J-2)}{J^2-1} \sum \frac{(1 - \frac{w_j}{U})^2}{h_j - 1}.$$

For $J = 2$, a test of Eq. (7.21) can be performed using an analog of Yuen's (1974) method. The test statistic is

$$T_y = \frac{\bar{X}_1 - \bar{X}_2}{\sqrt{d_1 + d_2}}. \quad (7.23)$$

When the null hypothesis is true, T_y has, approximately, a Student's t distribution with degrees of freedom

$$\hat{v}_y = \frac{(d_1 + d_2)^2}{\frac{d_1^2}{h_1-1} + \frac{d_2^2}{h_2-1}}.$$

For $J \geq 2$ the test statistic

$$F_t = \frac{A}{1+B}$$

can be used to test (7.20). When the null hypothesis is true, F_t has, approximately, an F distribution with degrees of freedom

$$v_1 = J - 1$$

$$\nu_2 = \left[\frac{3}{J^2 - 1} \sum \frac{(1 - w_j/U)^2}{h_j - 1} \right]^{-1}.$$

Finally, there is goal of testing Eq. (7.22) such that the probability of at least one Type I error is approximately equal to α . When comparing groups j and j' , reject if $|T_y| \geq c$, where c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a Studentized maximum modulus distribution having degrees of freedom

$$\hat{v}_y = \frac{(d_j + d_{j'})^2}{\frac{d_j^2}{h_j - 1} + \frac{d_{j'}^2}{h_{j'} - 1}}.$$

[Khuri \(1992\)](#) derived another approach based on means that compares the means of factor A based in part on Hotelling's T^2 . It is unknown whether an extension of the method to trimmed means, along the lines in Section 6.7.2, has any practical value.

Compared to the method for testing Eq. (7.21), the method aimed at testing Eq. (7.22) has been found to perform well in simulations for a broader range of situations in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error ([Wilcox, 2011a](#)). When $K = 5$ or 6 , the method for testing Eq. (7.21) can have an actual Type I error probability exceeding 0.08 when testing at the 0.05 level. Extant results indicate that with $K > 6$, the actual Type I error probability will not exceed 0.075. In contrast, when the method for testing Eq. (7.22) was used, the probability of at least one Type I error never exceeded 0.064. If the distribution of the μ_{tjk} (j fixed) is heavy-tailed, both methods can have Type I error probabilities less than 0.025.

7.11.1 R Functions `anova.nestA`, `mcp.nestA` and `anova.nestAP`

The R function

```
anova.nestA(x,tr=0.2)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (7.21) and the R function

```
mcp.nestA(x,tr=0.2)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (7.22). Both of these functions assume the argument x has list mode with length J . Moreover, $x[[j]]$ ($j = 1, \dots, J$) is assumed to contain a matrix with n rows and K columns.

The R function

```
anova.nestAP(x,tr=0.2)
```

compares the J levels of factor A after pooling the observations over the levels of the nested factor. The hypothesis that the J levels of factor A have a common trimmed mean is tested using the method in Section 7.1.1. Multiple comparisons, based on the pooled data, are performed by the function

```
mcp.nestAP(x,tr=0.2).
```

7.12 Exercises

1. Describe how M-measures of location might be compared in a two-way design with a percentile bootstrap method. What practical problem might arise when using the bootstrap and sample sizes are small?
2. If data are generated from exponential distributions, what problems would you expect in terms of probability coverage when computing confidence intervals? What problems with power might arise?
3. From well-known results on the random effects model (e.g., Graybill, 1976; Jeyaratnam & Othman, 1985), it follows that

$$\text{BSSW} = \sum \frac{(\bar{Y}_j - \bar{Y})^2}{J - 1}$$

estimates

$$\sigma_{wb}^2 + \sum \frac{\sigma_{wj}^2}{Jn_j},$$

and

$$\text{WSSW} = \sum \sum \frac{(Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)^2}{Jn_j(n_j - 1)}$$

estimates

$$\sum \frac{\sigma_{wj}^2}{Jn_j}.$$

Use these result to derive an alternative estimate of ρ_{WI} .

4. Some psychologists have suggested that teachers' expectancies influence intellectual functioning. The file VIQ.dat contains pretest verbal IQ scores for students in grades 1

and 2 who were assigned to one of three ability tracks. (The data are from [Elashoff & Snow, 1970](#), and originally collected by R. Rosenthal. See Section 1.8 on how to obtain this data.) The experimental group consisted of children for whom positive expectancies had been suggested to teachers. Compare the trimmed means of the control group to the experimental group taking into account grade and tracking ability. When examining tracking ability, combine ability levels 2 and 3 into one category, so a 2-by-2-by-2 design is being used.

5. Using the data in the previous exercise, use the function lincon to compare the experimental group to the control group taking into account grade and the two tracking abilities. (Again, tracking abilities 2 and 3 are combined.) Comment on whether the results support the conclusion that the experimental and control group have similar trimmed means.
6. Using the data from the previous two exercises, compare the 20% trimmed means of the experimental group to the control taking into account grade. Also test for no interactions using lincon and linconb. Is there reason to suspect that the confidence interval returned by linconb will be longer than the confidence interval returned by lincon?
7. Suppose three different drugs are being considered for treating some disorder, and it is desired to check for side effects related to liver damage. Further suppose that the following data are collected on 28 participants.

ID	Damage	ID	Damage	ID	Damage
1	92	2	88	3	110
1	91	2	83	3	112
1	84	2	82	3	101
1	78	2	68	3	119
1	82	2	83	3	89
1	90	2	86	3	99
1	84	2	92	3	108
1	91	2	101	3	107
1	78	2	89		
1	95	3	99		

The values under the columns headed by ID indicate which of the three drugs a subject received. Store this data in an R variable having matrix mode with 28 rows and two columns with the first column containing the subjects' ID number, and the second column containing the resulting measure of liver damage. For example, the first subject received the first drug and liver damage was rated as 92. Use the function selby to put the data in the second column into an R variable having list mode, then compare the groups using t1way.

8. For the data in the previous exercise, compare the groups using both the Rust–Fligner and Brunner–Dette–Munk methods.

9. For the data in the previous two exercises, perform all pairwise comparisons using the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median.
10. [Snedecor and Cochran \(1967\)](#) report weight gains for rats randomly assigned to one of four diets that varied in the amount and source of protein. The results were:

Beef Low	Beef High	Cereal Low	Cereal High
90	73	107	98
76	102	95	75
90	118	97	56
64	104	80	111
86	81	98	95
51	107	74	88
72	100	74	82
90	87	67	77
95	117	89	86
78	111	58	92

- Verify the results based on the R function pba2way mentioned in the example of Section 7.7.1.
11. Generate data for a 2-by-3 design and use the function pbadi2way. Note the contrast coefficients for interactions. If you again use pbadi2way, but with conall=F, what will happen to these contrast coefficients? Describe the relative merits of using conall=T.
 12. For the schizophrenia data in Section 7.8.4, compare the groups with t1way and pbadidepth.

Comparing Multiple Dependent Groups

This chapter covers basic methods for comparing dependent groups, including both a between-by-within and a within-by-within design. Three-way designs are covered as well where one or more factors involve dependent groups.

As noted in Chapter 5, when comparing dependent groups based on some measure of location, there are three general approaches that might be used. The first is to compare measures of location associated with the marginal distributions. The second is to make inferences based on a measure of location associated with the difference scores. And the third focuses on measures of location associated with the distribution of the difference between two dependent random variables. When comparing means, it makes no difference which view is adopted, but when using robust measures of location, this is no longer the case. Methods relevant to all three approaches are described and comments on their relative merits are provided.

Note that when comparing measures of location associated with the marginal distributions, there are two types of estimators that might be used. The first estimates a measure of location for each marginal distribution, ignoring the other variables under study. That is, for p -variate data X_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, \dots, p$), compute the trimmed mean or some other measure of location using the n values associated with each j . This is in contrast to using a location estimator that takes into account the overall structure of the data when dealing with outliers, such as the OP-estimator in Section 6.5. The bulk of the methods in this chapter are based on the former type of estimator. A multiple comparison procedure that deals with the latter type of estimator is described at the end of Section 8.2.7.

8.1 Comparing Trimmed Means

This section focuses on non-bootstrap methods for testing hypotheses about trimmed means. Methods that use other estimators based on the marginal distributions, such as robust M-estimators, are described in Section 8.2.

8.1.1 *Omnibus Test Based on the Trimmed Means of the Marginal Distributions*

For J dependent groups, let μ_{tj} be the population trimmed mean associated with the j th group. That is, μ_{tj} is the trimmed mean associated with the j th marginal distribution. The goal in this section is to test

$$H_0: \mu_{t1} = \cdots = \mu_{tJ},$$

the hypothesis that the trimmed means of J dependent groups are equal. The method used here is based on a generalization of the Huynh–Feldt method for means, which is designed to handle violations of the sphericity assumption associated with the standard F test. (See Kirk, 1995, for details about sphericity. For simulation results on how the test for trimmed means performs, see Wilcox, 1993c.) The method begins by Winsorizing the values in essentially the same manner described in Section 5.9.3. That is, fix j , let $X_{(1)j} \leq X_{(2)j} \leq \cdots \leq X_{(n)j}$ be the n values in the j th group written in ascending order, and let

$$Y_{ij} = \begin{cases} X_{(g+1)j} & \text{if } X_{ij} \leq X_{(g+1)j} \\ X_{ij} & \text{if } X_{(g+1)j} < X_{ij} < X_{(n-g)j} \\ X_{(n-g)j} & \text{if } X_{ij} \geq X_{(n-g)j}, \end{cases}$$

where g is the number of observations trimmed or Winsorized from each end of the distribution corresponding to the j th group. The test statistic, F , is computed as described in Table 8.1, and Table 8.2 describes how to compute the degrees of freedom.

8.1.2 *R Function ranova*

The R function

```
ranova(x,tr=0.2,grp=c(1:length(x)))
```

tests the hypothesis of equal population trimmed means among J dependent groups using the calculations in Tables 8.1 and 8.2. The data are stored in any variable x , which can be either an n -by- J matrix, the j th column containing the data for the j th group, or an R variable having list mode. In the latter case, $x[[1]]$ contains the data for group 1, $x[[2]]$ contains the data for group 2, and so on. As usual, tr indicates the amount of trimming which defaults to 0.2, and grp can be used to compare a subset of the groups. If the argument grp is not specified, the trimmed means of all J groups are compared. If, for example, there are five groups, but the goal is to test $H_0: \mu_{t2} = \mu_{t4} = \mu_{t5}$, the command $ranova(x,grp=c(2,4,5))$ accomplishes this goal using 20% trimming.

Table 8.1: Test Statistic for Comparing the Trimmed Means of Dependent Groups.

Winsorize the observations in the j th group, as described in this section, yielding \bar{Y}_{ij} . Let $h = n - 2g$ be the effective sample size, where $g = \lceil \gamma n \rceil$, and γ is the amount of trimming. Compute

$$\bar{X}_t = \frac{1}{J} \sum \bar{X}_{tj}$$

$$Q_c = (n - 2g) \sum_{j=1}^J (\bar{X}_{tj} - \bar{X}_t)^2$$

$$Q_e = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_{.j} - \bar{Y}_{i.} + \bar{Y}_{..})^2,$$

where

$$\bar{Y}_{.j} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Y_{ij}$$

$$\bar{Y}_{i.} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J Y_{ij}$$

$$\bar{Y}_{..} = \frac{1}{nJ} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{i=1}^n Y_{ij}.$$

The test statistic is

$$F = \frac{R_c}{R_e},$$

where

$$R_c = \frac{Q_c}{J - 1}$$

$$R_e = \frac{Q_e}{(h - 1)(J - 1)}.$$

■ Example

Section 8.6.2 reports measures of hangover symptoms for participants belonging to one of two groups, with each participant consuming alcohol on three different occasions. For present purposes, focus on group 1 (the control group) with the goal of comparing the responses on the three different occasions. The function ranova reports a p-value of 0.09.

Table 8.2: How to Compute Degrees of Freedom when Comparing Trimmed Means.

Let

$$v_{jk} = \frac{1}{n-1} \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_{.j})(Y_{ik} - \bar{Y}_{.k})$$

for $j = 1, \dots, J$ and $k = 1, \dots, J$, where Y_{ij} is the Winsorized observation corresponding X_{ij} . When $j = k$, $v_{jk} = s_{wj}^2$, the Winsorized sample variance for the j th group, and when $j \neq k$, v_{jk} is a Winsorized analog of the sample covariance.

Let

$$\bar{v}_{..} = \frac{1}{J^2} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^J v_{jk}$$

$$\bar{v}_d = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J v_{jj}$$

$$\bar{v}_{j.} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{k=1}^J v_{jk}$$

$$A = \frac{J^2(\bar{v}_d - \bar{v}_{..})^2}{J-1}$$

$$B = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^J v_{jk}^2 - 2J \sum_{j=1}^J \bar{v}_{j.}^2 + J^2 \bar{v}_{..}^2$$

$$\hat{\epsilon} = \frac{A}{B}$$

$$\tilde{\epsilon} = \frac{n(J-1)\hat{\epsilon} - 2}{(J-1)\{n-1-(J-1)\hat{\epsilon}\}}.$$

The degrees of freedom are

$$v_1 = (J-1)\tilde{\epsilon}$$

$$v_2 = (J-1)(h-1)\tilde{\epsilon},$$

where h is the effective sample size for each group.

8.1.3 Pairwise Comparisons and Linear Contrasts Based on Trimmed Means

Suppose that for J dependent groups, it is desired to compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for

$$\mu_{lj} - \mu_{tk},$$

for all $j < k$. That is, the goal is to compare all pairs of trimmed means. One possibility is to compare the j th trimmed mean to the k th trimmed mean using the R function `yuen` in Chapter 5, and control the familywise error (FWE) rate (the probability of at least one Type I error) with the Bonferroni method. That is, if C tests are to be performed, perform each test at the α/C level. A practical concern with this approach is that the actual probability of at least one Type I error can be considerably less than the nominal level. For example, if $J = 4$, $\alpha = 0.05$, and sampling is from independent normal distributions, the actual probability of at least one Type I error is approximately 0.019 when comparing 20% trimmed means with $n = 15$. If each pair of random variables has correlation 0.1, the probability of at least one Type I error drops to 0.014, and it drops even more as the correlations are increased. Part of the problem is that the individual tests for equal trimmed means tends to have Type I error probabilities less than the nominal level, so performing each test at the α/C level makes matters worse. In fact, even when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, power can be low compared to using means, even though the sample mean has a much larger standard error (Wilcox, 1997a). One way of improving on this approach is to use results in Rom (1990), Hochberg (1988) or Hommel (1988) to control FWE, which were introduced in Section 7.4.7.

Momentarily consider a single linear contrast

$$\Psi = \sum_{j=1}^J c_j \mu_j,$$

where $\sum c_j = 0$ and the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \Psi = 0.$$

Let Y_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$; $j = 1, \dots, J$) be the Winsorized values which are computed as described in Section 8.1.1. Let

$$A = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^J c_j c_k d_{jk},$$

where

$$d_{jk} = \frac{1}{h(h-1)} \sum_{i=1}^n (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)(Y_{ik} - \bar{Y}_k),$$

and $h = n - 2g$ is the number of observations left in each group after trimming. Let

**Table 8.3: Critical Values,
 d_k , for Rom's Method.**

k	$\alpha = 0.05$	$\alpha = 0.01$
1	0.05000	0.01000
2	0.02500	0.00500
3	0.01690	0.00334
4	0.01270	0.00251
5	0.01020	0.00201
6	0.00851	0.00167
7	0.00730	0.00143
8	0.00639	0.00126
9	0.00568	0.00112
10	0.00511	0.00101

$$\hat{\Psi} = \sum_{j=1}^J c_j \bar{X}_{tj}.$$

The test statistic is

$$T = \frac{\hat{\Psi}}{\sqrt{A}}$$

and the null hypothesis is rejected if $|T| \geq t$, where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a Student's t distribution with $v = h - 1$ degrees of freedom.

When testing C hypotheses, the method derived by [Rom \(1990\)](#) and introduced in Section 7.4.7 appears to be relatively effective at controlling FWE. For the situation at hand, let p_k be the p-value associated with the k th hypothesis and put these C p-values in descending order yielding $p_{[1]} \geq \dots \geq p_{[C]}$. Then

1. Set $k = 1$.
2. If $p_{[k]} \leq d_k$, where d_k is read from [Table 8.3](#), stop and reject all C hypotheses; otherwise, go to step 3. (When $k > 10$, then $d_k = \alpha/k$.)
3. Increment k by 1. If $p_{[k]} \leq d_k$, stop and reject all hypotheses having a p-value less than or equal d_k .
4. If $P_{[k]} > d_k$, repeat step 3.
5. Continue until you reject or all C hypotheses have been tested.

Note that [Table 8.3](#) is limited to $k \leq 10$ as well as $\alpha = 0.05$ or 0.01 . Here, if $k > 10$, or for α values other than 0.05 and 0.01 , FWE is controlled with [Hochberg's \(1988\)](#) method. That is, proceed as just indicated, but rather than use d_k read from [Table 8.3](#), use $d_k = \alpha/k$.

8.1.4 Linear Contrasts Based on the Marginal Random Variables

The method just described is readily extended to a situation that contains comparisons based on difference scores as a special case. Let

$$D_{ik} = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} X_{ij},$$

where for any k ($k = 1, \dots, C$), $\sum c_{jk} = 0$, and let μ_{tk} be the population trimmed mean of the distribution from which the random sample D_{1k}, \dots, D_{nk} was obtained. For example, if $c_{11} = 1$, $c_{21} = -1$, and $c_{31} = \dots = c_{J1} = 0$, then

$$D_{i1} = X_{i1} - X_{i2},$$

the difference scores for groups 1 and 2, and μ_{t1} is the (population) trimmed mean associated with this difference. Similarly, if $c_{22} = 1$, $c_{32} = -1$, and $c_{12} = c_{41} = \dots = c_{J1} = 0$, then

$$D_{i2} = X_{i2} - X_{i3}$$

and μ_{t2} is the corresponding (population) trimmed mean. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \mu_{tk} = 0$$

for each $k = 1, \dots, C$ such that FWE is approximately α . Each hypothesis can be tested using results in Chapter 4, but there is the added goal of controlling FWE. Here, Rom's method, described in Section 8.1.3, is used to accomplish this goal.

It should be noted that the multiple comparison procedures in this chapter are designed to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. As was the case in Chapter 7, the expectation is that the actual probability of one or more Type I errors will be reduced if the multiple comparison procedures in this chapter are used contingent on a global test rejecting at the α level. That is, power might be adversely affected (cf. Bernhardson, 1975).

Section 5.3.4 described ξ , a robust, heteroscedastic measure of effect size based on the notion of explanatory power. One way of characterizing the difference between two dependent groups is to again use this measure of effect size, which can be done for all pairs of groups via the R function esmc in Section 7.1.2.

8.1.5 R Functions *rmmcp*, *rmmismcp* and *trimcimul*

The R function

```
rmmcp(x,con = 0, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, dif=T, hoch=TRUE)
```

performs multiple comparisons among dependent groups using trimmed means and [Hochberg's \(1988\)](#) method for controlling FWE. (Setting the argument `hoch=FALSE`, Rom's method is used.) By default, difference scores are used. Setting `dif=F` results in comparing the marginal trimmed means. When α differs from both 0.05 and 0.01, FWE is controlled with [Hochberg's \(1988\)](#) method. That is, proceed as indicated in Section 8.1.3 but rather than use d_k from [Table 8.3](#), use $d_k = \alpha/k$.

When there are values missing at random, method M2 in Section 5.9.13 can be used to perform multiple comparisons via the R function

```
rmmismcp(x,y = NA, tr=0.2, con = 0, est = tmean, plotit = T, grp = NA, nboot = 500,
          SEED = T, xlab = "Group 1", ylab = "Group 2", pr = F, ...),
```

which was introduced in Section 5.9.14 and controls the probability of one or more Type I errors using Hochberg's method. By default, 20% trimmed means are used, but other robust estimators can be used via the argument `est`.

For each of J groups, the R function

```
trimcimul(x, tr = 0.2, tr=0.2, null.value = 0)
```

computes a confidence interval for a trimmed mean and it tests the hypothesis that a trimmed mean is equal to the value indicated by the argument `null.value`. This function can be used to test hypotheses associated based on difference scores associated with J dependent groups. If the R variables `x1` and `x2` are matrices with J columns, and for each j ($j = 1, \dots, J$) the goal is to test the hypothesis that the differences scores for column j has a population 20% trimmed mean equal to zero, the command `trimcimul(x1-x2)` accomplishes this goal. If the data are stored in list mode, use the command `trimcimul(list.dif(x1,x2))`.

8.1.6 Judging the Sample Size

Let $D_{ijk} = X_{ij} - X_{ik}$ and let μ_{tjk} be a trimmed mean corresponding to D_{ijk} . If when testing $H_0: \mu_{tjk} = 0$ for any $j < k$, a non-significant result is obtained, this might be because the null hypothesis is true, or of course, a Type II error might have been committed due to a sample

size that is too small. Or from the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, failing to reject means making no decision about whether μ_{tjk} is greater than or less than zero, which raises the issue of how many more observations are needed so that decision can be made. A way of dealing with this issue is to use an extension of Stein's (1945) two-stage method for means. Suppose it is desired to have all-pairs power greater than or equal to $1 - \beta$ when for any $j < k$, $\mu_{tjk} = \delta$. That is, the probability of rejecting H_0 for all $j < k$ for which $\mu_{tjk} = \delta$ is to be at least $1 - \beta$. The goal here is to determine whether the sample size used, namely n , is large enough to accomplish this goal, and if not, the goal is to determine how many more observations are needed. The following method performs well in simulations (Wilcox, 2004b).

Let $C = (J^2 - J)/2$ and

$$d = \left(\frac{\delta}{t_{\beta} - t_{1-\alpha/(2C)}} \right)^2,$$

where $t_{1-\beta}$ is the $1 - \beta$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = n - 2g - 1$ degrees of freedom, and g is the number of observations trimmed from each tail. (So $n - 2g$ is the number of observations not trimmed.) Let

$$N_{jk} = \max(n, \left[\frac{s_{wjk}^2}{(1 - 2\gamma)^2 d} \right] + 1)$$

where s_{wjk}^2 is the Winsorized variance of the D_{ijk} values and the notation $[x]$ refers to the greatest integer less than or equal to x . Then the required sample size in the second stage is

$$N = \max N_{jk},$$

the maximum being taken over all $j < k$. So if $N = n$, the sample size used is judged to be adequate for the specified power requirement.

In the event the additional $N - n$ vectors of observations can be obtained, familiarity with Stein's (1945) original method suggests how H_0 should be tested, but in simulations, a slight modification performs a bit better in terms of power. Let S_{wjk} be the Winsorized variance based on all N of the observations, where the amount of Winsorizing is equal to the amount of trimming. Let $\hat{\mu}_{tjk}$ be the trimmed mean based on all N D_{ijk} differences and let

$$T_{jk} = \frac{\sqrt{N}(1 - 2\gamma)\hat{\mu}_{tjk}}{S_{wjk}}.$$

Then reject $H_0: \mu_{tjk} = 0$ if $|T_{jk}| \geq t_{1-\alpha/(2C)}$. So as would be expected based on Stein's method, the degrees of freedom depend on the initial sample size, n , not the ultimate sample size, N . But contrary to what is expected based on Stein's method, the Winsorized variance

when computing T_{jk} is based on all N observations. (All indications are that no adjustment for β is needed when computing d when multiple tests are performed and the goal is to have all-pairs power greater than or equal to $1 - \beta$. Also, a variation of the method aimed at comparing the marginal trimmed means has not been investigated.)

8.1.7 R Functions *stein1.tr* and *stein2.tr*

Using the method just described, the R function

```
stein1.tr(x,del,alpha=0.05,pow=0.8,tr=0.2)
```

determines the required sample size needed to achieve all-pairs power equal to the value indicated by the argument pow for a difference specified by the argument del which corresponds to δ . In the event additional data are needed to achieve the desired amount of power, and if these additional observations can be acquired,

```
stein2.tr(x,y,alpha=0.05,tr=0.2)
```

tests all pairwise differences. Here the first-stage data are stored in x (which is a vector or a matrix with J columns) and y contains the second-stage data.

8.2 Bootstrap Methods Based on Marginal Distributions

This section focuses on bootstrap methods aimed at making inferences about measures of location associated with the marginal distributions. (Section 8.3 takes up measures of location associated with differences scores.) As in previous chapters, two general types of bootstrap methods appear to deserve serious consideration in applied work. (As usual, this is not intended to suggest that all other variations of the bootstrap have no practical value for the problems considered here, only that based on extant studies, the methods covered here seem to perform relatively well.) The first type uses estimated standard errors and reflects extensions of the bootstrap-t methods in Chapter 5; they are useful when comparing trimmed means. The other is an extension of the percentile bootstrap method where estimated standard errors do not play a direct role. When comparing robust M-measures of location, this latter approach is the only known way of controlling the probability of a Type I error for a fairly wide range of distributions.

8.2.1 Comparing Trimmed Means

Let μ_{tj} be the population trimmed mean associated with the j th marginal distribution and consider the goal of testing

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1} = \cdots = \mu_{tJ}.$$

An extension of the bootstrap-t method to this problem is straightforward. Set

$$C_{ij} = X_{ij} - \bar{X}_{tj}$$

with the goal of estimating an appropriate critical value, based on the test statistic F in [Table 8.1](#), when the null hypothesis is true. The remaining steps are as follows:

1. Generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling, with replacement, n rows of data from the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{11}, \dots, C_{1J} \\ \vdots \\ C_{n1}, \dots, C_{nJ} \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{11}^*, \dots, C_{1J}^* \\ \vdots \\ C_{n1}^*, \dots, C_{nJ}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

2. Compute the test statistic F in [Table 8.1](#) based on the C_{ij}^* values generated in step 1, and label the result F^* .
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 B times and label the results F_1^*, \dots, F_B^* .
4. Put these B values in ascending order and label the results $F_{(1)}^* \leq \cdots \leq F_{(B)}^*$.

The critical value is estimated to be $F_{(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer. That is, reject the hypothesis of equal trimmed means if

$$F \geq F_{(u)}^*,$$

where F is the statistic given in [Table 8.1](#) based on the X_{ij} values.

8.2.2 R Function `rmanovab`

The R function

```
rmanovab(x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, grp = 0, nboot = 599)
```

performs the bootstrap-t method just described.

8.2.3 Multiple Comparisons Based on Trimmed Means

This section describes bootstrap methods for performing multiple comparisons based on trimmed means. First consider the goal of performing all pairwise comparisons. That is, the goal is to test

$$H_0: \mu_{tj} = \mu_{tk}$$

for all $j < k$. A bootstrap-t method is applied as follows. Generate bootstrap samples as was done in Section 8.2.1 yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{11}^*, \dots, C_{1J}^* \\ \vdots \\ C_{n1}^*, \dots, C_{nJ}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

For every $j < k$, compute the test statistic T_y , given by Eq. (5.21), using the values in the j th and k th columns of the matrix just computed. That is, perform the test for trimmed means corresponding to two dependent groups using the data $C_{1j}^*, \dots, C_{nj}^*$ and $C_{1k}^*, \dots, C_{nk}^*$. Label the resulting test statistic T_{yjk}^* . Repeat this process B times yielding $T_{yjk1}^*, \dots, T_{yjkB}^*$. Because these test statistics are based on data generated from a distribution for which the trimmed means are equal, they can be used to estimate an appropriate critical value. In particular, for each b , set

$$T_b^* = \max |T_{yjk}^*|,$$

the maximum being taken over all $j < k$. Let $T_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{(B)}^*$ be the T_b^* values written in ascending order and let $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then $H_0: \mu_{tj} = \mu_{tk}$ is rejected if $T_{yjk} > T_{(u)}^*$. That is, for the j th and k th groups, test the hypothesis of equal trimmed means using the method in Section 5.9.3, only the critical value is $T_{(u)}^*$, which was determined so that the probability of at least one Type I error is approximately equal to α . Alternatively, the confidence interval for $\mu_{tj} - \mu_{tk}$ is

$$(\bar{X}_{tj} - \bar{X}_{tk}) \pm T_{(u)}^* \sqrt{d_j + d_k - 2d_{jk}},$$

where $\sqrt{d_j + d_k - 2d_{jk}}$ is the estimate of the standard error of $\bar{X}_{tj} - \bar{X}_{tk}$, which is computed as described in Section 5.9.3. The simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. Probability coverage appears to be reasonably good with n as small as 15 when using 20% trimming with $J = 4$, $\alpha = 0.05$, $B = 599$ (Wilcox, 1997a). When there is no trimming, probability coverage can be poor, and no method can be recommended. Also, the power of the bootstrap method, with 20% trimmed means, compares well to an approach based on means and the Bonferroni inequality.

The method is easily extended to situations where the goal is to test C linear contrasts, Ψ_1, \dots, Ψ_C , where

$$\Psi_k = \sum c_{jk} \mu_{lj},$$

and c_{jk} ($j = 1, \dots, J$ and $k = 1, \dots, C$) are constants chosen to reflect some hypothesis of interest. As before, Ψ_k is estimated with $\hat{\Psi}_k = \sum c_{jk} \bar{X}_{lj}$, but now the squared standard error is estimated with

$$A_k = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{\ell=1}^J c_{jk} c_{\ell k} d_{j\ell},$$

where

$$d_{jk} = \frac{1}{h(h-1)} \sum (Y_{ij} - \bar{Y}_j)(Y_{ik} - \bar{Y}_k),$$

and Y_{ij} are the Winsorized observations for the j th group. (When $j = k$, $d_{jk} = d_j^2$.)

To compute a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Ψ_k , generate a bootstrap sample yielding C_{ij}^* and let

$$T_{yk}^* = \frac{\hat{\Psi}_k^*}{\sqrt{A_k^*}},$$

where $\hat{\Psi}_k^*$ and A_k^* are computed with the bootstrap observations. Repeat this bootstrap process B times yielding T_{ykb}^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. For each b , let $T_b^* = \max|T_{ykb}^*|$, the maximum being taken over $k = 1, \dots, C$. Put the T_b^* values in order yielding $T_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{(B)}^*$, in which case an appropriate critical value is estimated to be $T_{(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Ψ_k is

$$\hat{\Psi}_k \pm T_{(u)}^* \sqrt{A_k}.$$

8.2.4 R Functions *pairdepb* and *bptd*

The R function

```
pairdepb(x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,grp=0,nboot=599)
```

performs all pairwise comparisons among J dependent groups using the bootstrap method just described. The argument *x* can be an n -by- J matrix of data, or it can be an R variable having list mode. In the latter case, *x*[[1]] contains the data for group 1, *x*[[2]] contains the data for group 2, and so on. The argument *tr* indicates the amount of trimming, which,

if unspecified, defaults to 0.2. The value for α defaults to alpha=0.05, and B defaults to nboot=599. The argument grp can be used to test the hypothesis of equal trimmed means using a subset of the groups. If missing values are detected, they are eliminated via the function elimna described in Section 1.9.1.

■ Example

For the alcohol data reported in Section 8.6.2, suppose it is desired to perform all pairwise comparisons using the time 1, time 2, and time 3 data for the control group. The R function pairdepb returns

```
$test:
  Group Group      test      se
[1,]    1    2 -2.115985 1.693459
[2,]    1    3 -2.021208 1.484261
[3,]    2    3  0.327121 1.783234

$psihat:
  Group Group     psihat ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]    1    2 -3.5833333 -7.194598 0.02793158
[2,]    1    3 -3.0000000 -6.165155 0.16515457
[3,]    2    3  0.5833333 -3.219376 4.38604218

$crit:
[1] 2.132479
```

Thus, none of the pairwise differences is significantly different at the 0.05 level.

Assuming the data are stored in the R variable dat, the command pairdepb(dat,grp=c(1,3)) would compare groups 1 and 3, ignoring group 2. It is left as an exercise to show that if the data are stored in list mode, the command ydbt(dat[[1]],dat[[3]]) returns the same confidence interval.

The function

```
bptd(x,tr=0,alpha=0.05,con=0,nboot=599)
```

computes confidence intervals for each of C linear contrasts, Ψ_k , $k = 1, \dots, C$, such that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. The only difference between bptd and pairedpb is that bptd can handle a set of specified linear contrasts via the argument con. The argument con is a J -by- C matrix containing the contrast coefficients. The k th column of con contains the contrast coefficients corresponding to Ψ_k . If con is not specified, all pairwise

comparisons are performed. So for this special case, pairdepb and bptd always produce the same results.

■ Example

If there are three dependent groups, and con is a 3-by-1 matrix with the values 1, -1, and 0, and if the data are stored in the R variable xv, the command bptd(xv,con=con) will compute a confidence interval for $\Psi = \mu_{t1} - \mu_{t2}$, the difference between the 20% trimmed means corresponding to the first two groups. If xv has list mode, the command ydbt(xv[[1]],xv[[2]]) returns the same confidence interval. (The function ydbt was described in Section 5.9.6.)

8.2.5 Percentile Bootstrap Methods

This section describes two types of percentile bootstrap methods that can be used to compare J dependent groups based on any measures of location, θ , associated with the marginal distributions. Included as special cases are M-measures of location and trimmed means. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \dots = \theta_J. \quad (8.1)$$

Method RMPB3

The first method uses the test statistic

$$Q = \sum (\hat{\theta}_j - \bar{\theta})^2,$$

where $\bar{\theta} = \sum \hat{\theta}_j / J$. An appropriate critical value is estimated using an approach similar to the bootstrap-t technique. First, set $C_{ij} = X_{ij} - \hat{\theta}_j$. That is, shift the empirical distributions so that the null hypothesis is true. Next a bootstrap sample is obtained by resampling, with replacement, as described in step 1 of Section 8.2.1. As usual, label the results

$$\begin{pmatrix} C_{11}^*, \dots, C_{1J}^* \\ \vdots \\ C_{n1}^*, \dots, C_{nJ}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

For the j th column of the bootstrap data just generated, compute the measure location that is of interest and label it $\hat{\theta}_j^*$. Compute

$$Q^* = \sum (\hat{\theta}_j^* - \bar{\theta}^*)^2,$$

where $\bar{\theta}^* = \sum \hat{\theta}_j^*/J$, and repeat this process B times yielding Q_1^*, \dots, Q_B^* . Put these B values in ascending order yielding $Q_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq Q_{(B)}^*$. Then reject the hypothesis of equal measures of location if $Q > Q_{(u)}^*$, where again $u = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer.

Note that if any of the rows of data has a missing value, a simple strategy is to simply remove such rows and test the hypothesis of equal measures location using the remaining data to test Eq. (8.1) with method in this section. An alternative approach is to impute the missing values. Several strategies have been proposed regarding how missing values might be imputed in a robust manner (e.g. [Vanden Branden & Verboven, 2009](#); [Danilov, Yohai, & Zamar, 2012](#)). There are indications that these imputation methods are useful when checking for outliers. But currently, all indications are that they are rather unsatisfactory when testing Eq. (8.1). Note that the method in this section could be used in conjunction with the MCD estimator. Moreover, missing values can be computed via the R package rrcovNA. But even with no missing values, when testing at the 0.05 level, the actual level is approximately 0.001 when $n = 40$, $p = 4$, and all correlations are equal to zero. With missing values, matters get worse. Missing values can be imputed when using the OGK estimator. Now, with no missing values, the actual level is approximately 0.009. With ten missing values, the actual level drops to 0.005. Perhaps there are situations where these and related methods perform well in terms of Type I errors, but this remains to be determined. (There are other techniques that have not been studied.) Currently, there is only one method that performs well in simulations in terms of controlling the Type I error probability given the goal of using all of the available data: Proceed as described in this section using all of the data in each column to estimate the trimmed mean rather than simply removing any row that has missing values.

Method RMPB4

If the null hypothesis is true, then all J groups have a common measure of location, θ . The next method estimates this common measure of location and then checks to see how deeply it is nested within the bootstrap values obtained when resampling from the original values. That is, in contrast to method RMPB3, the data are not centered, and bootstrap samples are obtained by resampling rows of data from

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_{11}, \dots, X_{1J} \\ \vdots \\ X_{n1}, \dots, X_{nJ} \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} X_{11}^*, \dots, X_{1J}^* \\ \vdots \\ X_{n1}^*, \dots, X_{nJ}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

For the j th group (or column of bootstrap values) compute $\hat{\theta}_j^*$. Repeating this process B times yields $\hat{\theta}_{jb}^*$ ($j = 1, \dots, J; b = 1, \dots, B$). The remaining calculations are performed as outlined in [Table 8.4](#).

For completeness, yet another approach to comparing dependent groups is to use a *mixed linear model* in conjunction with the regression MM-estimator introduced in Chapter 10. [Heritier, Cantoni, Copt, and Victoria-Feser \(2009, Section 4.5\)](#) summarize the relevant details and computations. The mixed linear model has the form

$$Y = \mathbf{X}\alpha + \sum Z_j \beta_j + \epsilon,$$

where Y is a vector of N measurements, \mathbf{X} is an $n \times q$ design matrix for the fixed effects, Z_j is an $N \times q_j$ design matrix for the random effects β_j , and ϵ is an N -vector of independent residual errors. The classic version of this model assumes that both β_j and ϵ have multivariate normal distributions ([Laird & Ware, 1982](#)). When using the MM-estimator, evidently it is unknown what advantages this approach might have, in terms of Type I errors and power, over the other methods covered in this chapter. [Copt and Heritier \(2007\)](#) derived a (non-bootstrap) method for testing hypotheses that is based in part on an appropriate estimate of the standard errors. However, a general pattern regarding M-estimators seems to be that non-bootstrap methods that use a test statistic based on an estimate of the standard error can perform poorly in terms of Type I errors and probability coverage when dealing with skewed distributions. Perhaps the MM-estimator, in the context of the mixed linear model, is an exception, but this has not been investigated.

Missing Values

If there are missing values, both methods RMPB3 and RMPB4 are readily modified so that they use all of the available data. When computing a measure of location associated with the j th group, simply compute the measure of location using all of the data, even if there are missing values in the other groups. Assuming missing values occur at random, method RMPB3 has been found to perform well in simulations when using a 20% trimmed mean; method RMPB4 did not perform well ([Ma & Wilcox, 2013](#)).

Table 8.4: Repeated Measures ANOVA Based on the Depth of the Grand Mean.

Goal: Test the hypothesis

$$H_0: \theta_1 = \cdots = \theta_J.$$

1. Compute

$$S_{jk} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\theta}_{jb}^* - \bar{\theta}_j^*)(\hat{\theta}_{kb}^* - \bar{\theta}_k^*),$$

where

$$\bar{\theta}_j^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\theta}_{jb}^*.$$

(The quantity S_{jk} is the sample covariance of the bootstrap values corresponding to the j th and k th groups.)

2. Let

$$\hat{\theta}_b^* = (\hat{\theta}_{1b}^*, \dots, \hat{\theta}_{Jb}^*)$$

and compute

$$d_b = (\hat{\theta}_b^* - \hat{\theta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\hat{\theta}_b^* - \hat{\theta})',$$

where \mathbf{S} is the matrix corresponding to S_{jk} , $\hat{\theta} = (\hat{\theta}_1, \dots, \hat{\theta}_J)$, $\hat{\theta}_j$ is the estimate of θ based on the original data for the j th group (the X_{ij} values, $i = 1, \dots, n$), and $\hat{\theta}_b = (\hat{\theta}_{1b}, \dots, \hat{\theta}_{Jb})$. The value of d_b measures how far away the b th bootstrap vector of location estimators is from $\hat{\theta}$, which is roughly the center of all B bootstrap values.

3. Put the d_b values in ascending order: $d_{(1)} \leq \cdots \leq d_{(B)}$.

4. Let $w_j = 1/S_{jj}$, $W_j = w_j / \sum w_j$, $\hat{\theta}_G = (\bar{\theta}, \dots, \bar{\theta})$, where $\bar{\theta} = \sum W_j \hat{\theta}_j$, and compute

$$D = (\hat{\theta}_G - \hat{\theta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\hat{\theta}_G - \hat{\theta})'.$$

D measures how far away the estimated common value is from the observed measures of location (based on the original data). The original version of this method used $W_j = 1$, which is a bit less satisfactory in terms of controlling the Type I error probability.

5. Reject if $D \geq d_{(u)}$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer.

8.2.6 R Functions *bd1way*, *ddep* and *ddepGMC_C*

The R function

```
bd1way(x, est = tmean, nboot = 599, tr=0.2, misran=FALSE)
```

performs method RMPB3, described in the previous section and

```
ddep(x, tr=0.2, est = onestep, grp = NA, nboot = 500, WT=TRUE, ...)
```

performs method RMPB4 described in [Table 8.4](#). (The argument WT=FALSE results in using the original version of method RMPB4 by setting $W_j = 1$ in [Table 8.4](#). Starting with version 29 of the Rallfun file described in [Section 1.8](#), bd1way uses by default a 20% trimmed mean, but any other estimator can be used via the argument est. Earlier versions of this function used est=onestep by default.) The argument misran=FALSE means that missing values are handled using case wise deletion. Setting, misran=TRUE, all of the data are used, assuming missing values occur at random. As usual, x is any R variable that is a matrix or has list mode, and nboot is B, the number of bootstrap samples that will be used. When there are values missing at random, method M2 in [Section 5.9.13](#) can be used to perform multiple comparisons via the R function rmmissmcp in [Section 5.9.14](#). By default, 20% trimmed means are used, but other robust estimators can be used via the argument est. The R function

```
ddepGMC_C(x, est = skipSPR, na.rm = TRUE, tr=0.2, grp = NA, nboot = 500, plotit =  
TRUE, SEED = TRUE, ...)
```

is similar to ddep, only it is designed for the skipped measure of location described in [Section 6.5](#) that eliminates outliers using the projection method in [Section 6.4.8](#). This function requires access to the R package WRScpp described in [Section 1.8](#).

■ Example

[Table 6.5](#) shows the weight of cork borings taken from the north, east, south and west sides of the 28 trees. Assuming the data are stored in the R matrix cork, the command bd1way(cork) returns a p-value equal to 0.10. If we compare groups using MOM in conjunction with method RMPB4, the p-value is 0.385. (Compare this result to the example in [Section 8.3.1](#).)

■ Example

Again consider the hangover data used to illustrate rmanova in [Section 8.1.2](#). (The data are listed in [Section 8.6.2](#).) Comparing M-measures of location results in an error because there are too many tied values resulting in MAD=0 within the bootstrap. Assuming the data are stored in x, the command bd1way(x,est=hd) compares medians based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. The function reports that $Q = 9.96$ with a 0.05 critical value of 6.3, so the null hypothesis is rejected at the 0.05 level.

8.2.7 Multiple Comparisons Using M-Estimators or Skipped Estimators

Next consider C linear contrasts involving M-measures of location where the k th linear contrast is

$$\Psi_k = \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \mu_{mj},$$

and, as usual, the c_{jk} values are constants that reflect linear combinations of the M-measures of location that are of interest, and for fixed k , $\sum c_{jk} = 0$. The goal is to compute a confidence interval for Ψ_k , $k = 1, \dots, C$, such that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. Alternatively, test $H_0 : \Psi_k = 0$ with the goal that the probability of at least one Type I error is α .

First, set $C_{ij} = X_{ij} - \hat{\mu}_{mj}$. Next, obtain a bootstrap sample by sampling, with replacement, n rows of data from the matrix C_{ij} . Label the bootstrap values C_{ij}^* . Use the n values in the j th column of C_{ij}^* to compute $\hat{\mu}_{mj}^*$, $j = 1, \dots, J$. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*$, $b = 1, \dots, B$. Next, compute the J -by- J covariance matrix associated with the $\hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*$ values. That is, compute

$$\hat{\tau}_{jk} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\mu}_{mjb}^* - \bar{\mu}_j^*)(\hat{\mu}_{mkb}^* - \bar{\mu}_k^*),$$

where $\bar{\mu}_j^* = \sum \hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*/B$. Let

$$\begin{aligned}\hat{\Psi}_k &= \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \hat{\mu}_{mj}, \\ \hat{\Psi}_{kb}^* &= \sum_{j=1}^J c_{jk} \hat{\mu}_{mjb}^*, \\ S_k^2 &= \sum_j \sum_\ell c_{jk} c_{\ell k} \hat{\tau}_{j\ell}, \\ T_{kb}^* &= \frac{\hat{\Psi}_{kb}^*}{S_k},\end{aligned}$$

and

$$T_b^* = \max |T_{kb}^*|,$$

the maximum being taken over $k = 1, \dots, C$. Then a confidence interval for Ψ_k is

$$\hat{\Psi}_k \pm T_{(u)}^* S_k,$$

where as usual $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer, and $T_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq T_{(B)}^*$ are the T_b^* values written in ascending order. The simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$, but for $n \leq 21$ and $B = 399$, the actual probability coverage might be unsatisfactory. Under normality, for example, there are situations where the probability of at least one Type I error exceeds 0.08 with $J = 4$, $\alpha = 0.05$ and $n = 21$, and where all pairwise comparisons are performed. Increasing $B = 599$ does not correct this problem. It seems that $n > 30$ is required if the probability of at least one type I error is not to exceed 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level (Wilcox, 1997a).

An alternative approach, which appears to have some practical advantages over the method just described, is to use a simple extension of the percentile bootstrap method in Section 5.9.11. Let \hat{p}_k^* be the proportion of times $\hat{\Psi}_{kb}^* > 0$ among the B bootstrap samples. Then a (generalized) p-value for $H_0: \Psi_k = 0$ is $2\min(\hat{p}_k^*, 1 - \hat{p}_k^*)$. When using M-estimators or MOM, however, a bias adjusted estimate of the p-value appears to be beneficial; see Section 5.9.11. (With trimmed means, this bias adjustment appears to be unnecessary; see Wilcox & Keselman, 2002). FWE can be controlled with method SR outlined in Section 7.6.2. Again, for large sample sizes, say greater than 80, Hochberg's method (mentioned in Section 8.1.3) appears to be preferable.

Note that all of the methods described so far are based on measures of location that do not take into account the overall structure of the data when dealing with outliers. The skipped estimators in Section 6.5 do take the overall structure of the data into account and situations might be encountered where this makes a practical difference. A basic percentile bootstrap method can be used to test $H_0: \Psi_k = 0$ and appears to control the probability of a Type I error reasonably well when using the OP estimator in Section 6.5.

8.2.8 R Functions *lindm* and *mcpOV*

The R function

```
lindm(x,con=0,est=onestep.grp=0,alpha=0.05,nboot=399,...)
```

computes confidence intervals for C linear contrasts based on measures of location corresponding to J dependent groups using the first method described in Section 8.2.7. The argument *x* contains the data and can be any n -by- J matrix, or it can have list mode. In the latter case, *x*[[1]] contains the data for group 1, *x*[[2]] the data for group 2, and so on. The optional argument *con* is a J -by- C matrix containing the contrast coefficients. If not specified, all pairwise comparisons are performed. The argument *est* is any statistic of interest. If unspecified, a one-step M-estimator is used. The argument *grp* can be used to select a subset of the groups for analysis. As usual, *alpha* is α and defaults to 0.05, and *nboot* is B which defaults to 399. The argument ... is any additional arguments that are relevant to the function *est*.

■ Example

Again consider the hangover data (reported in Section 8.6.2) where two groups of participants are measured at three different times. Suppose the first row of data is stored in DAT[[1]], the second row in DAT[[2]], the third in DAT[[3]], and so forth, but it is desired to perform all pairwise comparisons using only the group 1 data at times 1, 2, and 3. Then the command `lindm(DAT.grp=c(1:3))` attempts to perform the comparisons, but eventually the function terminates with the error message “missing values in x not allowed.” This error arises because there are so many tied values, bootstrap samples yield $MAD = 0$ which in turn makes it impossible to compute $\hat{\mu}^*$. This error can also arise when there are no tied values but one or more of the sample sizes are smaller than 20.

The command `lindm(DAT.est=hd,gpr=c(1:3))` compares medians instead, using the Harrell–Davis estimator, and returns

```

con.num      psi.hat ci.lower ci.upper    se
[1,]      1 -3.90507026 -7.880827 0.07068639 2.001571
[2,]      2 -3.82383677 -9.730700 2.08302610 2.973775
[3,]      3  0.08123349 -6.239784 6.40225079 3.182279

$crit:
[1] 1.986318

$con:
 [,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]   1    1    0
[2,]  -1    0    1
[3,]   0   -1   -1

```

Because the argument `con` was not specified, the function creates its own set of linear contrasts assuming all pairwise comparisons are to be performed. The resulting contrast coefficients are returned in the R variable `$con`. Thus, the first column, containing the values 1, -1 , and 0, indicates that the first contrast corresponds to the difference between the medians for times 1 and 2. The results in the first row of `$con.num` indicate that the estimated difference between these medians is -3.91 , and the confidence interval is $(-7.9, 0.07)$. In a similar fashion, the estimated difference between the medians at times 1 and 3 is -3.82 , and for time 2 versus time 3 the estimate is 0.08. The command `lindm(DAT.est=hd,gpr=c(1:3),q=0.4)` would compare 0.4 quantiles.

The R function

```
mcpOV(x,alpha=0.05,nboot=NA,grp=NA,est=smean,con=0,bhop=F,SEED=T,...)
```

is like the R function lindm, only it is designed to handle skipped estimators that take into account the overall structure of the data when checking for outliers. By default it uses the OP-estimator, which is based on the projection method for detecting outliers.

8.3 Bootstrap Methods Based on Difference Scores

The following method, based on difference scores, has been found to have practical value, particularly in terms of controlling Type I error probabilities when sample sizes are very small. First consider the goal of testing the hypothesis that a measure of location associated with the difference scores $D_{ij} = X_{ij} - X_{i,j+1}$ has the value zero. That is, use the difference between the i th observation in group j and the i th observation in group $j + 1$, $j = 1, \dots, J - 1$. Let θ_j be any measure of location associated with the D_{ij} values. So, for example, θ_1 might be an M-measure of location corresponding to the difference scores between groups 1 and 2, and θ_2 might be the M-measure of location associated with difference scores between groups 2 and 3. A simple alternative to Eq. (8.1) is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \dots = \theta_{J-1} = 0, \quad (8.2)$$

the hypothesis that the typical difference scores do not differ and are all equal to zero. However, a criticism of this approach is that the outcome can depend on how we order the groups. That is, rather than take differences between groups 1 and 2, we could just as easily take differences between groups 1 and 3, which might alter our conclusions about whether to reject. We can avoid this problem by instead taking differences among all pairs of groups. There are a total of

$$L = \frac{J^2 - J}{2}$$

such differences which are labeled $D_{i\ell}$, $i = 1, \dots, n$; $\ell = 1, \dots, L$.

■ Example

For four groups ($J = 4$), there are $L = 6$ differences given by

$$D_{i1} = X_{i1} - X_{i2},$$

$$D_{i2} = X_{i1} - X_{i3},$$

$$D_{i3} = X_{i1} - X_{i4},$$

$$D_{i4} = X_{i2} - X_{i3},$$

$$\begin{aligned} D_{i5} &= X_{i2} - X_{i4}, \\ D_{i6} &= X_{i3} - X_{i4}. \end{aligned}$$

■

The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \theta_1 = \dots = \theta_L = 0, \quad (8.3)$$

where θ_ℓ is the population measure of location associated with the ℓ th set of difference scores, $D_{i\ell}$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$). To test H_0 given by Eq. (8.3), resample vectors of D values, but unlike the bootstrap-t, observations are not centered. That is, a bootstrap sample now consists of resampling with replacement n rows from the matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} D_{11}, \dots, D_{1L} \\ \vdots \\ D_{n1}, \dots, D_{nL} \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} D_{11}^*, \dots, D_{1L}^* \\ \vdots \\ D_{n1}^*, \dots, D_{nL}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

For each of the L columns of the D^* matrix, compute whatever measure of location is of interest, and for the ℓ th column label the result $\hat{\theta}_\ell^*$ ($\ell = 1, \dots, L$). Next, repeat this B times yielding $\hat{\theta}_{\ell b}^*$, $b = 1, \dots, B$ and then determine how deeply the vector $\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$, having length L , is nested within the bootstrap values $\hat{\theta}_{\ell b}^*$. For two groups, this is tantamount to determining how many bootstrap values are greater than zero, which leads to the (generalized) p-value described in Section 5.4. The computational details when dealing with more than two groups are relegated to Table 8.5.

8.3.1 R Function rmdzero

The R function

```
rmdzero(x, est = mom, grp = NA, nboot = NA, ...)
```

performs the test on difference scores described in Table 8.5.

Table 8.5: Repeated Measures ANOVA Based on Differences Scores.

Goal: Test the hypothesis given by Eq. (8.3).

1. Let $\hat{\theta}_\ell$ be the estimate of θ_ℓ . Compute bootstrap estimates as described in Section 8.3 and label them $\hat{\theta}_{\ell b}^*$, $\ell = 1, \dots, L; b = 1, \dots, B$.
2. Compute the L -by- L matrix

$$S_{\ell\ell'} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\theta}_{\ell b}^* - \hat{\theta}_\ell)(\hat{\theta}_{\ell' b}^* - \hat{\theta}_{\ell'}).$$

Readers familiar with multivariate statistical methods might notice that $S_{\ell\ell'}$ uses $\hat{\theta}_\ell$ (the estimate of θ_ℓ based on the original difference values) rather than the seemingly more natural $\bar{\theta}_\ell^*$, where

$$\bar{\theta}_\ell^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B \hat{\theta}_{\ell b}^*.$$

If $\bar{\theta}_\ell^*$ is used, unsatisfactory control over the probability of a Type I error can result.

3. Let $\hat{\theta} = (\hat{\theta}_1, \dots, \hat{\theta}_L)$, $\hat{\theta}_b^* = (\hat{\theta}_{1b}^*, \dots, \hat{\theta}_{Lb}^*)$ and compute

$$d_b = (\hat{\theta}_b^* - \hat{\theta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\hat{\theta}_b^* - \hat{\theta})',$$

where \mathbf{S} is the matrix corresponding to $S_{\ell\ell'}$.

4. Put the d_b values in ascending order: $d_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq d_{(B)}$.
5. Let

$$\mathbf{0} = (0, \dots, 0)$$

having length L .

6. Compute

$$D = (\mathbf{0} - \hat{\theta}) \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{0} - \hat{\theta})'.$$

D measures how far away the null hypothesis is from the observed measures of location (based on the original data). In effect, D measures how deeply $\mathbf{0}$ is nested within the cloud of bootstrap values.

7. Reject if $D \geq d_{(u)}$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer.

■ Example

For the cork data in Table 6.5, rmdzero returns a p-value of 0.044, so in particular reject with $\alpha = 0.05$. That is, conclude that the typical difference score is not equal to zero for all pairs of groups. This result is in sharp contrast to comparing marginal measures of location based on a robust M-estimator or MOM and the method in Table 8.4; see the example in Section 8.2.6.

8.3.2 Multiple Comparisons

Multiple comparisons based on a percentile bootstrap method and difference scores can be addressed as follows. First generate a bootstrap sample as described at the beginning of this section yielding $D_{i\ell}^*$, $\ell = 1, \dots, L$. When all pairwise differences are to be tested, $L = (J^2 - J)/2$, $\ell = 1$ corresponds to comparing group 1 to group 2, $\ell = 2$ is comparing group 1 to group 3, and so on. Let \hat{p}_ℓ^* be the proportion of times among B bootstrap resamples that $D_{i\ell}^* > 0$. As usual, let

$$\hat{p}_{m\ell}^* = \min(\hat{p}_\ell^*, 1 - \hat{p}_\ell^*),$$

in which case $2\hat{p}_{m\ell}^*$ is the estimated (generalized) p-value for the ℓ th comparison.

One approach to controlling FWE is to put the p-values in descending order and to make decisions about which hypotheses are to be rejected using method SR outlined in Section 7.6.2. That is, once the \hat{p}_{mc}^* are computed, reject the hypothesis corresponding to \hat{p}_{mc}^* if $\hat{p}_{mc}^* \leq \alpha_c$, where α_c is read from Table 7.13.

As for linear contrasts, consider any specific linear contrast with contrast coefficients c_1, \dots, c_J , set

$$D_i = \sum c_j X_{ij},$$

and let θ_d be some (population) measure of location associated with this sum. Then $H_0: \theta_d = 0$ can be tested by generating a bootstrap sample from the D_i values, repeating this B times, computing \hat{p}^* , the proportion of bootstrap estimates that are greater than zero, in which case $2\min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*)$ is the estimated significance level. Then FWE can be controlled in the manner just outlined.

When comparing groups using MOM or M-estimators, at the moment it seems that the method based on difference scores often provides the best power versus testing hypotheses based on measures of location associated with the marginal distributions. Both approaches do an excellent job of avoiding Type I error probabilities greater than the nominal α level. But when testing hypotheses about measures of location associated with the marginal distributions, the actual Type I error probability can drop well below the nominal level in situations where the method based on difference scores avoids this problem. This suggests that the method based on difference scores will have more power, and indeed, there are situations where this is the case even when the two methods have comparable Type I error probabilities. It is stressed, however, that a comparison of these methods, in terms of power, needs further study. Also the bias adjusted critical value mentioned in Section 5.9.7 appears to help increase power.

While comparing marginal measures of location based on MOM or an M-estimator seems to result in relatively low power, there is weak evidence that comparing marginal measures of location based on the OP-estimator, via a percentile bootstrap method as mentioned at the end of Section 8.2.7, performs relatively well. But the extent this is true needs additional study.

When dealing with trimmed means, including medians as a special case, again the percentile bootstrap method just described can be used and appears to be relatively good choice provided the amount of trimming is not too small. With a small amount of trimming, use a bootstrap-t method instead. Controlling the probability of at least one Type I error can be done with Hochberg's method.

Note that when working with the median of differences scores, another approach is to use the method in Section 4.6.2 and control the probability of one or more Type I errors using some improvement on the Bonferroni method. Here, Rom's or Hochberg's method is used.

8.3.3 R Functions *rmmcpcb*, *wmcpcb*, *dmedpb*, *lindepbt* and *qdmcpdif*

The R function

```
rmmcpcb(x,y = NA, tr=0.2, con = 0, est = mom, plotit = TRUE, dif = T, grp = NA,
         nboot = NA, BA=F, hoch=F, ...)
```

performs multiple comparisons among dependent groups using the percentile bootstrap methods just described. The argument dif defaults to TRUE indicating that difference scores will be used, in which case Hochberg's method is used to control FWE. If dif=F, measures of location associated with the marginal distributions are used instead. If dif=F and BA=T, the bias adjusted estimate of the generalized p-value (described in Section 5.9.7) is applied; using BA=TRUE (when dif=FALSE) is recommended when comparing groups with M-estimators and MOM, but it is not necessary when comparing 20% trimmed means (Wilcox & Keselman, 2002). If the goal is to compare groups using M-estimators or the modified one-step M-estimator (MOM), and if hoch=FALSE, then FWE is controlled using method SR in Section 7.6.2 if the sample size is less than 80, otherwise Hochberg's method is used as described in Section 8.1.3. If hoch=TRUE, Hochberg's method is used regardless of the sample size. If no value for con is specified, then all pairwise differences will be tested. As usual, if the goal is to test hypotheses other than all pairwise comparisons, con can be used to specify the linear contrast coefficients.

When comparing trimmed means, it appears that Hochberg's method is preferable to method SR in terms of controlling the probability of at least one Type I error. For convenience, the R function

```
wmcppb(x, tr=0.2, con = 0, est = tmean, plotit = T, dif = T, grp = NA, nboot = NA,
       BA=F, hoch=T, ...)
```

is supplied. It is the same as the R function `rmmcppb`, only it defaults to comparing 20% trimmed means, and by default it uses Hochberg's method rather than method SR. (The R function `dtrimpb` is the same as the function `wmmcppb`.)

The R function

```
dmedpb(x,y=NA,alpha=0.05,con=0,est=median, plotit=T, dif=FALSE, grp=NA, hoch=T,
       nboot=NA,xlab='Group 1',ylab='Group 2', pr=T, SEED=T, BA=FALSE, ...)
```

is similar to the R function `rmmcppb`, only it defaults to comparing medians and it is designed to handle tied values. Hochberg's method is used to control FWE. With a small sample size, say less than 30, setting the argument `BA=TRUE` seems advisable, meaning that the p-value is adjusted as described in Section 5.9.11 (Wilcox, 2006b). Note that by default the argument `dif=FALSE`, indicating that the marginal medians are compared. To use difference scores, set `dif=TRUE`.

The R function

```
lindepbt(x, con = NULL, tr=0.2, tr=0.2,nboot=599,dif=T,SEED=T)
```

performs multiple comparisons based on trimmed means using a bootstrap-t method. When the amount of trimming is small, a bootstrap-t method is preferable to a percentile bootstrap method, but it is unclear at what point this will be case. The function reports critical p-values based on Rom's method for controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors. The function returns confidence intervals, but they are not adjusted so that the simultaneously probability coverage is $1 - \alpha$. Rather, each confidence interval is designed to have probability coverage $1 - \alpha$.

■ Example

For the cork boring data in Table 6.5, the R function `wmcppb` (with the argument `dif=F` as well as `dif=T`) finds no significant results when the probability of at least one Type I error is taken to be 0.05. But the R function `mcpOV` (in Section 8.2.8), which compares marginal measures of location via the OP-estimator, finds three significant results, the only point being that the choice of method can make a practical difference. Again it is stressed that little is known about the extent the OP-estimator might have higher

power compared to the many other methods that might be used to compare dependent groups.

The R function

```
qdmcpdif(x, con=0, tr=0.2)
```

can be used to perform multiple tests based on difference scores using the method in Section 4.6.2. Testing the hypothesis that other linear contrasts have a population median equal to zero can be done via the argument `con`.

8.4 Comments on Which Method to Use

No single method in this chapter dominates based on various criteria used to compare hypothesis testing techniques. However, a few comments can be made about their relative merits that might be useful. First, the expectation is that in many situations where groups differ, all methods based on means perform poorly, in terms of power, relative to approaches based on some robust measure of location such as MOM or a 20% trimmed mean. Currently, with a sample size as small as 21, the bootstrap-t method in Section 8.2.2, which is performed by the R function `rmanovab`, appears to provide excellent control over the probability of a Type I error when used in conjunction with 20% trimmed means. Its power compares reasonably well to most other methods that could be used, but as noted in previous chapters, different methods are sensitive to different features of the data and arguments for some other measure of location, such as an M-estimator, have been made.

The percentile bootstrap methods in Section 8.2.5 also do an excellent job of avoiding Type I errors greater than the nominal level, but there are indications that when using method RMPB3, and the sample size is small, the actual probability of a Type I error can be substantially less than α suggesting that some other method might provide better power. Nevertheless, if there is specific interest in comparing M-estimators associated with the marginal distributions, it is suggested that method RMPB3 be used when the sample size is greater than twenty. Also, it can be used to compare groups based on MOM, but with very small sample sizes power might be inadequate relative to other techniques that could be used.

Given the goal of testing some omnibus hypothesis, currently, among the techniques covered in this chapter, it seems that the two best methods for controlling Type I error probabilities and simultaneously providing relatively high power are the bootstrap-t method based on 20% trimmed means and the percentile bootstrap method in Table 8.5, which is based in part on

difference scores; the computations are performed by the R function rmdzero. (But also consider the multiple comparison procedure in Section 8.1.4.) With near certainty, situations arise where some other technique is more optimal, but typically the improvement is small. But again, comparing groups with MOM is not the same as comparing means, trimmed means or M-estimators and certainly there will be situations where some other estimator has higher power than any method based on MOM or a 20% trimmed mean. If the goal is to maximize power, several methods are contenders for routine use. With sufficiently large sample sizes, trimmed means can be compared without resorting to the bootstrap-t method, but it remains unclear just how large the sample size must be. Roughly, as the amount of trimming increases from 0% to 20%, the smaller the sample size must be to control the probability of a Type I error without resorting to a bootstrap technique. But if too much trimming is done, power might be relatively low. When comparing medians, a percentile bootstrap method is recommended when dealing with tied values.

As for the issue of whether to use difference scores rather than robust measures of location based on the marginal distributions, each approach provides a different perspective on how groups differ and they can give different results regarding whether groups are significantly different. There is some evidence that difference scores typically provide more power and better control over the probability of a Type I error, but situations are encountered where the reverse is true. A more detailed study is needed to resolve this issue.

As previously mentioned, method RMPB4 performed by the R function ddep in Section 8.2.6 is very conservative in terms of Type I errors, meaning that when testing at the 0.05 level, say, often the actual probability of a Type I error will be less than or equal to α and typically smaller than any other method described in this chapter. So a concern is that power might be low relative to the many other methods that might be used.

Regarding methods designed for performing multiple comparisons in a manner that controls the probability of at least one Type I error, currently it seems that using the R function wmcppb, which compares groups based on trimmed means, is a good choice, particularly in terms of maximizing power. But again, there are exceptions. Perhaps the method in Section 8.2.7, which is based on the OP-estimator and performed by the R function mcpOV, generally competes well with the R function wmcppb, but little is known about the extent to which this is true. In general, no single method is always best. As in previous chapters, in terms of controlling the probability of at least one Type I error, the method used by wmcppb and mcpOV does not assume or require that one first test and reject the global hypothesis that all groups have identical population trimmed means. It is not necessary, for example, that the function rmanovab (described in Section 8.2.2) returns a significant result before using the function wmcppb.

8.5 Some Rank-Based Methods

This section describes two rank-based methods for testing

$$H_0 : F_1(x) = \dots = F_J(x),$$

the hypothesis that J dependent groups have identical marginal distributions. Friedman's test is the best-known test of this hypothesis, but no details are given here. The first of the two methods was derived by [Agresti and Pendergast \(1986\)](#) and has higher power than Friedman's test when sampling from normal distributions, and their test can be expected to have good power when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions, so it is included here. The other method stems from [Brunner, Domhof, and Langer \(2002, Section 7.2.2\)](#), which appears to have an advantage over the Agresti–Pendergast method in terms of power ([Tian & Wilcox, 2009](#)).

Method AP

The calculations for the Agresti–Pendergast method are shown in [Table 8.6](#).

Method BPRM

Let R_{ij} be defined as in [Table 8.6](#) and let $\mathbf{R}_i = (R_{i1}, \dots, R_{iJ})'$ be the vector of ranks for the i th participant, where $(R_{i1}, \dots, R_{iJ})'$ is the transpose of (R_{i1}, \dots, R_{iJ}) . Let

$$\bar{\mathbf{R}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \mathbf{R}_i$$

be the vector of ranked means, let

$$\bar{R}_{\cdot j} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n R_{ij}$$

denote the mean of the ranks for group j and let

$$\mathbf{V} = \frac{1}{N^2(n-1)} \sum_{i=1}^n (\mathbf{R}_i - \bar{\mathbf{R}})(\mathbf{R}_i - \bar{\mathbf{R}})'$$

The test statistic is

$$F = \frac{n}{N^2 \text{tr}(\mathbf{PV})} \sum_{j=1}^J \left(\bar{R}_{\cdot j} - \frac{N+1}{2} \right)^2, \quad (8.4)$$

Table 8.6: Computing the Agresti–Pendergast Test Statistic.

Pool all the observations and assign ranks. Let R_{ij} be the resulting rank of the i th observation in the j th group. Compute

$$\bar{R}_j = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n R_{ij}$$

$$s_{jk} = \frac{1}{n - J + 1} \sum_{i=1}^n (R_{ij} - \bar{R}_j)(R_{ik} - \bar{R}_k).$$

Let the vector \mathbf{R}' be defined by

$$\mathbf{R}' = (\bar{R}_1, \dots, \bar{R}_J),$$

and let \mathbf{C} be the $(J - 1)$ -by- J matrix given by

$$\begin{pmatrix} 1 & -1 & 0 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 & -1 & \dots & 0 & 0 \\ \cdot & \cdot & \cdot & \ddots & \cdot & \cdot \\ 0 & 0 & 0 & \dots & 1 & -1 \end{pmatrix}.$$

The test statistic is

$$F = \frac{n}{J - 1} (\mathbf{CR})' (\mathbf{CSC}')^{-1} \mathbf{CR},$$

where

$$\mathbf{S} = (s_{jk}).$$

The degrees of freedom are $v_1 = J - 1$ and $v_2 = (J - 1)(n - 1)$, and you reject if $F > f_{1-\alpha}$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with v_1 and v_2 degrees of freedom.

where

$$\mathbf{P} = \mathbf{I} - \frac{1}{J} \mathbf{J},$$

\mathbf{J} is a $J \times J$ matrix of all ones, and \mathbf{I} is the identity matrix.

Decision Rule

Reject the hypothesis of identical distributions if

$$F \geq f,$$

where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with degrees of freedom

$$v_1 = \frac{[\text{tr}(\mathbf{PV})]^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{PVPV})}$$

and $v_2 = \infty$. Note that based on the test statistic, a crude description of method BPRM is that it is designed to be sensitive to differences among the average ranks.

8.5.1 R Functions *apanova* and *bprm*

The R function

`apanova(x,grp=0)`

performs the Agresti–Pendergast test of equal marginal distributions using the calculations in **Table 8.6**. As usual, x can have list mode, or x can be an n -by- J matrix, and the argument grp can be used to specify some subset of the groups. If grp is unspecified, all J groups are used. The function returns the value of the test statistic, the degrees of freedom, and the p-value. For example, the command `apanova(dat,grp=c(1,2,4))` would compare groups 1, 2, and 4 using the data in the R variable dat .

The R function

`bprm(x)`

performs method BPRM; it returns a p-value.

8.6 Between-by-Within and Within-by-Within Designs

This section describes some methods for testing hypotheses in a between-by-within (or split-plot) design. That is, a J -by- K ANOVA design is being considered where the J levels of the first factor correspond to independent groups (between subjects), and the K levels of the second factor are dependent (within subjects). Within-by-within designs are covered as well.

8.6.1 Analyzing a Between-by-Within Design Based on Trimmed Means

We begin with a between-by-within design. For the j th level of factor A, let Σ_j be the K -by- K population Winsorized covariance matrix for the K dependent random variables associated with the second factor. The better-known methods for analyzing a split-plot design are based on the assumption that $\Sigma_1 = \dots = \Sigma_J$, but violating this assumption can result in problems controlling the probability of a Type I error. [Keselman, Keselman, and Lix \(1995\)](#) found that a method derived by [Johansen \(1980\)](#), that does not assume there is a common covariance matrix, gives better results, so a generalization of Johansen's method, to trimmed

means, is described here. (For related results, see Keselman, Carriere, & Lix, 1993; Keselman, Algina, Kowalchuk, & Wolfinger, 1999; Livacic-Rojas, Vallejo, & Fernández 2010.)

As in the case of a two-way design for independent groups, it is easier to describe the method in terms of matrices. Main effects and interactions are examined by testing

$$H_0 : \mathbf{C}\boldsymbol{\mu}_t = \mathbf{0},$$

where \mathbf{C} is a k -by- JK contrast matrix having rank k that reflects the null hypothesis of interest. Let \mathbf{C}_m and \mathbf{j}' be defined as in Section 7.3. Then for factor A, $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{j}'_K$, and $k = J - 1$. For factor B, $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{j}'_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K$ and $k = K - 1$, and the test for no interactions uses $\mathbf{C} = \mathbf{C}_J \otimes \mathbf{C}_K$.

For every level of factor A, there are K dependent random variables, and each pair of these dependent random variables has a Winsorized covariance that must be estimated. In symbols, let X_{ijk} be the i th observation randomly sampled from the j th level of factor A and the k th level of factor B. For fixed j , the Winsorized covariance between the m th and ℓ th levels of factor B is estimated with

$$s_{jm\ell} = \frac{1}{n_j - 1} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (Y_{ijm} - \bar{Y}_{.jm})(Y_{ij\ell} - \bar{Y}_{.j\ell}),$$

where

$$Y_{ijk} = \begin{cases} X_{(g+1),jk} & \text{if } X_{ijk} \leq X_{(g+1),jk} \\ X_{ijk} & \text{if } X_{(g+1),jk} < X_{ij} < X_{(n-g),jk} \\ X_{(n-g),jk} & \text{if } X_{ijk} \geq X_{(n-g),jk}, \end{cases}$$

and

$$\bar{Y}_{.jm} = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n Y_{ijm}.$$

For fixed j , let $\mathbf{S}_j = (s_{jm\ell})$. That is, \mathbf{S}_j estimates $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_j$, the K -by- K Winsorized covariance matrix for the j th level of factor A. Let

$$\mathbf{V}_j = \frac{(n_j - 1)\mathbf{S}_j}{h_j(h_j - 1)}, \quad j = 1, \dots, J,$$

and let $\mathbf{V} = \text{diag}(\mathbf{V}_1, \dots, \mathbf{V}_J)$ be a block diagonal matrix. The test statistic is

$$Q = \bar{\mathbf{X}}' \mathbf{C}' (\mathbf{C} \mathbf{V} \mathbf{C}')^{-1} \mathbf{C} \bar{\mathbf{X}}, \quad (8.5)$$

where $\bar{\mathbf{X}}' = (\bar{X}_{t11}, \dots, \bar{X}_{tJK})$. Let $\mathbf{I}_{K \times K}$ be a K -by- K identity matrix, let \mathbf{Q}_j be a JK by JK block diagonal matrix (consisting of J blocks, each block being a K -by- K matrix),

where the t th block ($t = 1, \dots, J$) along the diagonal of \mathbf{Q}_j is $\mathbf{I}_{K \times K}$ if $t = j$, and all other elements are zero. (For example, if $J = 3$ and $K = 4$, then \mathbf{Q}_1 is a 12-by-12 matrix block diagonal matrix where the first block is a 4-by-4 identity matrix, and all other elements are zero. As for \mathbf{Q}_2 , the second block is an identity matrix, and all other elements are zero.) Compute

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \sum_j^J [\text{tr}(\{\mathbf{VC}'(\mathbf{CVC}')^{-1}\mathbf{CQ}_j\})^2 + \{\text{tr}(\mathbf{VC}'(\mathbf{CVC}')^{-1}\mathbf{CQ}_j)\}^2]/(h_j - 1),$$

where tr indicates trace, and let

$$c = k + 2A - \frac{6A}{k+2}.$$

When the null hypothesis is true, Q/c has, approximately, an F distribution with $v_1 = k$ and $v_2 = k(k+2)/(3A)$ degrees of freedom, so reject if $Q/c > f_{1-\alpha}$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile. Recent simulation results reported by [Livacic-Rojas et al. \(2010\)](#) indicate that this method performs relatively well, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when comparing means. However, their results do not consider the effect of having different amounts of skewness.

■ Example

Consider a 2-by-3 design where for the first level of factor A, observations are generated from a multivariate normal distribution with all correlations equal to zero. For the second level of factor A, the marginal distributions are lognormal that have been shifted to have mean zero. Further suppose that the covariance matrix for the second level is three times larger than the covariance matrix for the first level. If the sample sizes are $n_1 = n_2 = 30$ and the hypothesis of no main effects for factor A, based on means, is tested at the 0.05 level, the actual level is approximately 0.088. If the sample sizes are $n_1 = 40$ and $n_2 = 70$ and for the first level of factor A the marginal distributions are g-and-h distributions with $g = h = 0.5$, the probability of a Type I error, again testing at the 0.05 level, is approximately 0.188. Comparing 20% trimmed means instead, the actual Type I error probability is approximately 0.035.

8.6.2 R Functions *bwtrim* and *tsplit*

The R function

```
bwtrim(J,K,x,tr=0.2,grp=c(1:p),p=J*K)
```

tests the hypotheses of no main effects and no interactions in a between-by-within (split-plot) design, where J is the number of independent groups, K is the number of dependent groups, and the argument x contains the data stored in list mode, or a matrix, or a data frame. The optional argument, tr , indicates the amount of trimming, which defaults to 0.2 if unspecified. (The R function `tsplit`, is identical to `bwtrim`.)

The groups are assumed to be ordered as described in Section 7.2.1. If the data are not stored in the proper order, `grp` can be used to indicate how they are stored. For example, if a 2-by-2 design is being used, the R command

```
bwtrim(2,2,x,grp=c(3,1,2,4))
```

indicates that the data for the first level of both factors are stored in $x[[3]]$, the data for level 1 of Factor A and level 2 of Factor B are in $x[[1]]$, and so forth. If x is a matrix or a data frame, the first K columns correspond to the first level of Factor A and the K levels of Factor B, the next K columns correspond to the second level of Factor A, and so on.

■ Example

In a study on the effect of consuming alcohol, hangover symptoms were measured for two independent groups, with each subject consuming alcohol and being measured on three different occasions. One group (group 2) consisted of sons of alcoholics and the other was a control group. Here, $J = 2$ and $K = 3$. The results were as follows.

Group 1, Time 1:	0 3 2 9 0 2 0 4 1 0 0 0 6 1 8 3 3 0 1 1 1 1 2 0 1 1
Group 1, Time 2:	4 1 5 2 6 4 2 0 1 7 0 1 2 4 2 0 1 3 7 1 1 1 4 3 1 3 4 1 1
Group 1, Time 3:	0 2 5 1 0 1 1 2 0 1 7 0 3 6 1 6 9 1 4 0 1 4 7 5 1 1 1 4
Group 2, Time 1:	0 0 0 0 0 0 0 0 1 8 0 3 0 0 3 2 1 2 2 0 0 0
Group 2, Time 2:	2 0 7 0 4 2 9 0 1 1 4 0 0 0 0 1 5 1 4 0 0 7 2
Group 2, Time 3:	1 0 3 0 3 0 1 5 0 6 1 0 1 1 0 2 2 4 4 2 0 0 0 2

Suppose the first row of data is stored in `DAT[[1]]`, the second row in `DAT[[2]]`, the third in `DAT[[3]]`, the fourth in `DAT[[4]]`, the fifth in `DAT[[5]]`, and the sixth in `DAT[[6]]`. That is, the data are stored as assumed by the function `bwtrim`. Then the command `bwtrim(2,3,DAT,tr=0)` will compare the means and returns

```
$Qa
[1] 3.277001

$Qa.siglevel
[1]
[1,] 0.07825593
```

```
$Qb
[1] 0.8808645

$Qb.siglevel
[,1]
[1,] 0.4250273

$Qab
[1] 1.050766

$Qab.siglevel
[,1]
[1,] 0.3623739
```

The test statistic for factor A is $Q_a = 3.28$, and the corresponding p-value is 0.078. For factor B the p-value is 0.425, and for the interaction it is 0.362.

This section described one way of comparing independent groups in a between-by-within subjects design. Another approach is simply to compare the J independent groups for each level of Factor B. That is, do not sum or average the data over the levels of Factor B as was done here. So the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1k} = \cdots = \mu_{tJk}$$

for each $k = 1, \dots, K$. The next example illustrates that in applied work, the choice between these two methods can make a practical difference. (Yet another strategy for comparing the levels of Factor A is to apply the robust MANOVA method in Section 7.10.)

■ Example

Section 7.8.4 reported data from a study comparing schizophrenics to a control group based on a measure taken at two different times. Analyzing the data with the function bwtrim, no main effects for Factor A are found, the p-value being 0.245. So no difference between the schizophrenics and the control group was detected at the 0.05 level. But if the groups are compared using the first measurement only, using the function yuen (described in Chapter 5), the p-value is 0.012. For the second measurement, ignoring the first, the p-value is 0.89. (Recall that in Chapter 6, using some multivariate methods, again a difference between the schizophrenics and the control group was found.)

8.6.3 Data Management: R Function *bw2list*

Imagine a situation where data are stored in a matrix or a data frame, say x , with one column indicating the levels of the between factor, but the K levels of the within group factor are stored in K columns of the matrix x . In order to use the R function `bwtrim`, it is necessary to store the data in the format that is allowed. The R function

```
bw2list(x, grp.col, lev.col)
```

is provided to help accomplish this goal. The argument `grp.col` indicates the column containing information about the levels of the independent groups. The values in this column can be numeric or character data. And the argument `lev.col` indicates the K columns where the within group data are stored. The function returns the data stored in list mode, which can then be used by `bwtrim` as well as other functions aimed at dealing with a between-by-within design. The function will store the data sorted in ascending (or alphabetical) order based on the values found in the column of x indicated by the argument `grp.col`. The next example illustrates this feature.

■ Example

Imagine that three medications are being investigated regarding their effectiveness to lower cholesterol and that column 3 of the matrix m indicates which medication a participant received. Moreover, columns 5 and 8 contain the participants' cholesterol level at times 1 and 2, respectively. The R command

```
z=bw2list(m,3,c(5,8))
```

will store the data in z in list mode. If column 3 contains the character values “P”, “CH” and “BN”, then $z[[1]]$ and $z[[2]]$ will contain the data for times 1 and 2, respectively, corresponding to level “BN” of Factor A, $z[[3]]$ and $z[[4]]$ will contain the data for level “CH”, and $z[[5]]$ and $z[[6]]$ will contain the data for level “P”. The R command

```
bwtrim(3,2,z)
```

will compare the groups based on 20% trimmed means.

8.6.4 Bootstrap-t Method for a Between-by-Within Design

To apply a bootstrap-t method, when working with trimmed means and dealing with a between-by-within design, first center the data in the usual way. In the present context, this means you compute

$$C_{ijk} = X_{ijk} - \bar{X}_{tjk},$$

$i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$; and $k = 1, \dots, K$. That is, for the group corresponding to the j th level of factor A and the k th level of factor B, subtract the corresponding trimmed mean from each of the observations. Next, for each j , generate a bootstrap sample based on the C_{ijk} values by resampling with replacement n_j vectors of observations from the n_j rows of data corresponding to level j of factor A. That is, for each level of factor A, you have an n_j -by- K matrix of data, and you generate a bootstrap sample from this matrix of data as described in Section 8.2.5 where for fixed j , resampling is based on the C_{ijk} values. Label the resulting bootstrap samples C_{ijk}^* . Compute the test statistic Q , based on the C_{ijk}^* values as described in Section 8.6.1 and label the result Q^* . Repeat this B times yielding Q_1^*, \dots, Q_B^* and then put these B values in ascending order yielding $Q_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq Q_{(B)}^*$. Next, compute Q using the original data (the X_{ijk} values) and reject if $Q \geq Q_{(c)}^*$, where $c = (1 - \alpha)$ rounded to the nearest integer.

A crude rule that seems to apply to a wide variety of situations is: The more the distributions (associated with groups) differ, the more beneficial it is to use some type of bootstrap method, at least when sample sizes are small. [Keselman, Algina, Wilcox, and Kowalchuk \(2000\)](#) compared the bootstrap method just described to the non-bootstrap method for a split-plot design covered in Section 8.6.1. For the situations they examined, this rule did not apply; it was found that the bootstrap offered little or no advantage. Their study included situations where the correlations (or covariances) among the dependent groups differ across the independent groups being compared. However, the more complicated the design, the more difficult it becomes to consider all the factors that might influence the operating characteristics of a particular method. One limitation of their study was that the differences among the covariances were taken to be relatively small. Another issue that has not been addressed is how the bootstrap method performs when distributions differ in skewness. Having differences in skewness is known to be important when dealing with the simple problem of comparing two groups only. There is no reason to assume that this problem diminishes as the number of groups increases, and indeed there are reasons to suspect that it becomes a more serious problem. So currently, it seems that if groups do not differ in any manner, or the distributions differ slightly, it makes little difference whether you use a bootstrap versus a non-bootstrap method for comparing trimmed means. However, if distributions differ in shape, there is indirect evidence that a bootstrap method might offer an advantage when using a split-plot design, but the extent to which this is true is not well understood.

8.6.5 R Functions *bwtrimbt* and *tsplitbt*

The R function

```
tsplitbt(J,K,x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,JK=J*K,grp=c(1:JK),nboot=599)
```

performs a bootstrap-t method for a split-plot design as just described. The data are assumed to be arranged as indicated in conjunction with the R function *tsplit* (as described in Section 8.6.2), and the arguments *J*, *K*, *tr*, and *alpha* have the same meaning as before. The argument *JK* can be ignored, and *grp* can be used to rearrange the data if they are not stored as expected by the function. (For an R function that might help when dealing with organizing the data in a manner that is accepted by *tsplitbt*, see Section 8.6.3.)

The R function

```
bwtrimbt(J,K,x,tr=0.2,JK=J*K,grp=c(1:JK),nboot=599)
```

is the same as *tsplitbt*, only *bwtrimbt* reports p-values rather than α level critical values.

8.6.6 Percentile Bootstrap Methods for a Between-by-Within Design

Comparing groups based on MOMs, medians and M-estimators in a between-by-within design is possible using extensions of percentile bootstrap methods already described. And they provide yet another way of comparing trimmed means.

Again consider a two-way design where factor A consists of J independent groups and Factor B corresponds to K dependent groups. First consider the dependent groups. One approach to comparing these K groups, ignoring Factor A, is to simply form difference scores and then apply the method in Section 8.3. More precisely, imagine you observe X_{ijk} ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$; $k = 1, \dots, K$). That is, X_{ijk} is the i th observation in level j of Factor A and level k of Factor B. Note that if we ignore the levels of Factor A, we can write the data as Y_{ik} , $i = 1, \dots, N$; $k = 1, \dots, K$, where $N = \sum n_j$. Now consider levels k and k' of Factor B ($k < k'$) and set

$$D_{ikk'} = Y_{ik} - Y_{ik'},$$

and let $\theta_{kk'}$ be some measure of location associated with $D_{ikk'}$. Then the levels of Factor B can be compared, ignoring Factor A, by testing

$$\theta_{12} = \dots = \theta_{k-1,k} = 0 \tag{8.6}$$

using the method in Section 8.3. In words, the null hypothesis is that the typical difference score between any two levels of Factor B, ignoring Factor A, is zero.

As for Factor A, ignoring Factor B, one approach is as follows. Momentarily focus on the first level of Factor B and note that the levels of Factor A can be described as in Chapter 7. That is, the null hypothesis of no differences among the levels of Factor A is

$$H_0 : \theta_{11} = \theta_{21} = \cdots = \theta_{J1},$$

where of course these J groups are independent, and a percentile bootstrap method can be used. More generally, for any level of Factor B, say the k th, the hypothesis of no main effects is

$$H_0 : \theta_{1k} = \theta_{2k} = \cdots = \theta_{Jk}$$

($k = 1, \dots, K$), and the goal is to determine whether these K hypotheses are simultaneously true. Here we take this to mean that we want to test

$$H_0 : \theta_{11} - \theta_{21} = \cdots \theta_{J-1,1} - \theta_{J1} = \cdots = \theta_{J-1,K} - \theta_{JK} = 0. \quad (8.7)$$

In this last equation, there are $C = K(J^2 - J)/2$ differences, all of which are hypothesized to be equal to zero. Proceeding along the lines in Chapter 7, for each level of Factor A, generate bootstrap samples as is appropriate for K dependent groups and then test Eq. (8.5). Label the C differences based on the observed data as $\delta_1, \dots, \delta_C$ and then denote bootstrap estimates by $\hat{\delta}_c^*$ ($c = 1, \dots, C$). For example, $\hat{\delta}_1^* = \theta_{11}^* - \theta_{21}^*$. Then we test Eq. (8.7) by determining how deeply the vector $(0, \dots, 0)$, having length C , is nested within the B bootstrap values, which is done as described in Table 8.5. However, a criticism of this method is that control over the probability of a Type I error can be unsatisfactory (it can exceed 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level) when the sample size is small.

For Factor A, an alternative approach, which seems more satisfactory in terms of Type I errors, is to base the analysis on the average measures of location across the K levels of Factor B. In symbols, let

$$\bar{\theta}_{j\cdot} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K \theta_{jk},$$

in which case the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \bar{\theta}_{1\cdot} = \cdots = \bar{\theta}_{J\cdot}.$$

Again for each level of Factor A, generate B samples for the K dependent groups as described in Section 8.2.5 in conjunction with method RMPB4. Let $\bar{\theta}_{j\cdot}^*$ be the bootstrap estimate

for the j th level of Factor A. For levels j and j' of Factor A, $j < j'$, set $\delta_{jj'}^* = \bar{\theta}_{j.}^* - \bar{\theta}_{j'.}^*$. Then you determine how deeply $\mathbf{0}$, having length $(J^2 - J)/2$, is nested within the B bootstrap values for $\delta_{jj'}^*$ using the method described in [Table 8.5](#). When dealing with Factor A, this approach seems to be more satisfactory than the strategy described in the previous paragraph.

As for interactions, again there are several approaches one might adopt. Here an approach based on difference scores among the dependent groups is used. To explain, first consider a 2-by-2 design, and for the first level of Factor A let $D_{i1} = X_{i11} - X_{i12}$, $i = 1, \dots, n_1$. Similarly, for level 2 of Factor A let $D_{i2} = X_{i21} - X_{i22}$, $i = 1, \dots, n_2$, and let θ_{d1} and θ_{d2} be the population measure of location corresponding to the D_{i1} and D_{i2} values, respectively. Then the hypothesis of no interaction is taken to be

$$H_0 : \theta_{d1} - \theta_{d2} = 0. \quad (8.8)$$

Again the basic strategy for testing hypotheses is generating bootstrap estimates and determining how deeply 0 is embedded in the B values that result. For the more general case of a J -by- K design, there are a total of

$$C = \frac{J^2 - J}{2} \times \frac{K^2 - K}{2}$$

equalities, one for each pairwise difference among the levels of Factor B and any two levels of Factor A.

8.6.7 R Functions sppba, sppbb and sppbi

The R function

```
sppba(J,K,x,est=onestep.grp = c(1:JK),avg=T,nboot=500,MC=F,MDIS=T,...)
```

tests hypotheses for Factor A as described in the previous section. The argument avg to T (for true) indicates that the averages of the measures of location (the $\bar{\theta}_{j.}$ values) will be used. That is, $H_0: \bar{\theta}_1 = \dots = \bar{\theta}_J$ is tested. Otherwise, the hypothesis given by Eq. (8.6) is tested. By default, the argument MDIS=T, meaning that the depths of the points in the bootstrap cloud are based on Mahalanobis distance. Otherwise a projection distance is used, which was described in [Section 6.2.5](#). If MDIS=F and MC=T, a multicore processor will be used if one is available. The remaining arguments have their usual meaning.

The R function

```
sppbb(J,K,x,est=onestep.grp = c(1:JK),nboot=500,...)
```

tests the hypothesis of no main effects for Factor B (as described in the previous section) and

```
sppbi(J,K,x,est=onestep.grp = c(1:JK),nboot=500,...)
```

tests the hypothesis of no interactions.

■ Example

We examine once more the EEG measures for murderers versus a control group reported in [Table 6.1](#), only now we use the data for all four sites in the brain where measures were taken. If we label the typical measures for the control group as $\theta_{11}, \dots, \theta_{14}$, and the typical measures for the murderers as $\theta_{21}, \dots, \theta_{24}$, we have a 2-by-4, between-by-within design and a possible approach to comparing the groups is testing

$$H_0 : \theta_{11} - \theta_{21} = \theta_{12} - \theta_{22} = \theta_{13} - \theta_{23} = \theta_{14} - \theta_{24} = 0.$$

This can be done with the R function sppba with the argument avg set to F. If the data are stored in a matrix called eeg having eight columns, with the first four corresponding to the control group, then the command sppba(2,4,eeg,est=mom) performs the calculations based on the MOM measure of location and returns a significance level of 0.098. An alternative approach is to average the value of MOM over the four brain sites for each group, and then compare these averages. That is, test $H_0: \bar{\theta}_{1\cdot} = \bar{\theta}_{2\cdot}$, where $\bar{\theta}_{j\cdot} = \sum \theta_{jk}/4$. This can be done with the command sppba(2,4,eeg,avg=T). Now the p-value is 0.5 illustrating that the p-value can vary tremendously depending on how groups are compared.

8.6.8 Multiple Comparisons

When dealing with multiple comparisons associated with a between-by-within design, there are several approaches that might be taken that answer different questions. This section outlines some of the possibilities.

Method BWMCP

Focusing on trimmed means, multiple comparisons, when dealing with a between-by-within design, can be tested using linear contrasts, which are created in the same manner as outlined in [Section 7.4.3](#). Consider any linear contrast Ψ , with the understanding that multiple linear contrasts are generally of interest. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \Psi = 0.$$

In general there are C linear contrasts of interest and often it is desired to have the probability of one or more Type I errors equal to some specified value, α . Two methods for accomplishing this goal seem to be relatively effective: a bootstrap-t method and a percentile bootstrap method.

For convenience, denote the $L = JK$ trimmed means as $\bar{X}_{t1}, \dots, \bar{X}_{tL}$. The estimate of

$$\Psi = \sum c_\ell \mu_{t\ell}$$

is

$$\hat{\Psi} = \sum c_\ell \bar{X}_{t\ell},$$

where c_1, \dots, c_L are the linear contrast coefficients.

To test hypotheses using a bootstrap-t method, first note that the variances and covariances among the sample trimmed means can be estimated using results in Section 5.9.5. (Of course, when two sample trimmed means are independent, their covariance is taken to be zero.) Let \mathbf{S} denote this L -by- L covariance matrix. (So the diagonal elements are the estimated squared standard errors.) Let \mathbf{C} be a column matrix having length L that contains the contrast coefficients. Then the squared standard error of $\hat{\Psi}$ is estimated with

$$s_{\hat{\Psi}}^2 = \mathbf{C}' \mathbf{S} \mathbf{C}$$

and an appropriate test statistic is

$$W = \frac{|\hat{\Psi}|}{s_{\hat{\Psi}}}.$$

A bootstrap-t method is used to estimate the null distribution of W . First, compute

$$Y_{ijk} = X_{ijk} - \bar{X}_{tjk},$$

where \bar{X}_{tjk} is the trimmed mean corresponding to level j of Factor A and level k of Factor B. Next, take bootstrap samples based on the Y_{ijk} values. So for level j of Factor A, n_j rows of data are sampled with replacement. Based on this bootstrap sample, compute the test statistic W , which is labeled W^* . Repeat this process B times yielding W_1^*, \dots, W_B^* . Let $c = (1 - \alpha)B$, rounded to the nearest integer. Then a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for Ψ is

$$\hat{\Psi} \pm W_{(c)}^* \frac{s_{\hat{\Psi}}}{\sqrt{n}}.$$

Alternatively, reject the null hypothesis if $W \geq W_{(c)}^*$.

Section 4.4.3 made a distinction between a symmetric bootstrap-t confidence interval and an equal-tailed confidence interval. Here, a symmetric confidence interval is used. For the situation at hand, there are no results on whether an equal-tailed confidence interval ever offers a practical advantage.

A percentile bootstrap method can be applied as well. As usual, no standard errors are used. For each hypothesis to be tested, corresponding to some linear contrast, a p-value can be computed as indicated at the end of Section 8.2.7.

Method BWAMCP: Comparing Levels of Factor A for Each Level of Factor B

To provide more detail about how groups differ, another strategy is to focus on a particular level of Factor B and perform all pairwise comparisons among the levels of Factor A. Of course, this can be done for each level of Factor B.

■ Example

Consider again a 3-by-2 design where the means are arranged as follows:

		Factor B	
		1	2
Factor A	1	μ_1	μ_2
	2	μ_3	μ_4
	3	μ_5	μ_6

For level 1 of Factor B, method BWAMCP would test $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_3$, $H_0: \mu_1 = \mu_5$ and $H_0: \mu_3 = \mu_5$. For level 2 of Factor B, the goal is to test $H_0: \mu_2 = \mu_4$, $H_0: \mu_2 = \mu_6$ and $H_0: \mu_4 = \mu_6$. These hypotheses can be tested by creating the appropriate linear contrasts and using the R function lincon, which can be done with the R function bwamcp described in the next section.

Method BWBMCP: Dealing with Factor B

When dealing with Factor B, there are four variations of method BWMCP that might be used, which are described here under the appellation method BWBMCP. The first two variations ignore the levels of Factor A and test hypotheses based on the trimmed means. The first variation uses difference scores and the second uses the marginal trimmed means. Both of these variations begin by pooling the data over the levels of Factor A. In essence, Factor A is ignored. The other two variations do not pool the data over the levels of Factor A, but rather perform an analysis based on difference scores or the marginal trimmed means for each

level of Factor A. In more formal terms, consider the j th level of Factor A. Then there are $(K^2 - K)/2$ pairs of groups that can be compared. If for each of the J levels of Factor A, all pairwise comparisons are performed, the total number of comparisons is $J(K^2 - K)/2$.

■ Example

Consider a 2-by-2 design where the first level of Factor A has 10 pairs of observations and the second has 15. So we have a total of 25 pairs of observations with the first 10 corresponding to level 1 of Factor A. When analyzing Factor B, pooling the data means the goal is to compare either the difference scores corresponding to all 25 pairs of observations, or to compare the marginal trimmed means, again based on all 25 observations. Not pooling means that for level 1 of Factor A either test hypotheses based on difference scores or compare the marginal trimmed means. And the same could be done for level 2 of Factor A.



Method BWIMCP: Interactions

As for interactions, we focus on a 2-by-2 design with the understanding that the same analysis can be done for any two levels of Factor A and any two levels of Factor B. Rather than define interactions as done when using Method BWMCP, difference scores might be used instead. To elaborate, consider the first level of Factor A. There are n_1 pairs of observations corresponding to the two levels of Factor B. Form the difference scores, which for level j of Factor A are denoted by

$$D_{ij}$$

($i = 1, \dots, n_j$), and let μ_{tj} be the population trimmed means associated with these difference scores. Then one way of stating the hypothesis of no interaction is

$$H_0 : \mu_{t1} = \mu_{t2}.$$

In words, the hypothesis of no interaction corresponds to the trimmed means of the difference scores associated with level 1 of Factor A being equal to the trimmed means of the differences scores associated with level 2 of Factor A. When either factor has more than two levels, a possible goal is to test all similar hypotheses (associated with any two levels of Factor A and Factor B) in a manner that controls FWE, which might be done using Rom's method or Hochberg's method.

Methods SPMCPA, SPMCPB and SPMCPI

If it is desired to compare groups using a percentile bootstrap method, which appears to be the best method when comparing groups based on an M-estimator or MOM, analogs of methods BWAMCP, BWBMCP and BWIMCP can be used, which are called methods SPMCPA, SPMCPB and SPMCPI, respectively.

8.6.9 R Functions bwmcp, bwamcp, bwbmcp, bwimcp, bwimcpES, spmcpa, spmcpb and spmcpi

The R function

```
bwmcp(J, K, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, con=0, nboot=599)
```

performs method BWMC described in the previous section. By default, it creates all relevant linear contrasts for main effects and interactions by calling the R function con2way. The function returns three sets of results corresponding to Factor A, Factor B and all interactions. The critical value reported for each of the three set of tests is designed to control the probability of at least one Type I error.

The R function

```
bwamcp(J, K, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2)
```

performs multiple comparisons associated with Factor A using the method BWAMCP, described in the previous section. The function creates the appropriate set of linear contrasts and calls the R function lincon.

The R function

```
spmcpa(J,K,x,est=tmean,JK=J*K,grp=c(1:JK),con=0,avg=F,alpha=0.05,nboot=NA,pr=T,...)
```

is like the R function bwamcp, only a percentile bootstrap method is used and it has an option about whether to pool the data for each level of Factor A. If the argument avg=TRUE, the function uses the average of the marginal trimmed means for each level of Factor A.

The R function

```
bwbmcp(J, K, x, tr=0.2, con = 0, tr=0.2, dif = T, pool=FALSE)
```

uses method BWBMCP to compare the levels of Factor B. If the argument pool=TRUE, the function pools the data and then calls the function rmmcp. If the argument dif=F, the marginal trimmed means are compared instead. By default, pool=F meaning that

$$H_0 : \mu_{ijk} = \mu_{ijk'}$$

is tested for all $k < k'$ and $j = 1, \dots, J$. For each level of Factor A, the function simply selects data associated with the levels of Factor B and tests hypotheses via the R function rmmcp. “Critical p-values” are reported in the column headed by p.crit. That is, p.crit indicates how small the p-value must be in order to reject sucg that FWE is (approximately) equal to some specified α value. The R function

```
spmcpb(J, K, x, est = tmean, JK = J * K, grp = c(1:JK), con = 0, tr=0.2, dif = TRUE,
pool = FALSE, nboot = NA, BA = FALSE, plotit = TRUE, hoch = FALSE, xlab = "Group 1",
ylab = "Group 2", pr = TRUE, SEED = TRUE, ...)
```

is like bwbmcp, only a percentile bootstrap method is used. Setting pool=TRUE, comparisons are performed by ignoring all levels of Factor A. With pool=FALSE, comparisons are performed for each level of Factor A.

As for interactions, the R function

```
bwimcp(J, K, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2)
```

compares trimmed means using a non-bootstrap method. The probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled via Hochberg’s method. The R function

```
bwimcpES(J, K, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2)
```

is the same as bwimcp, only it also reports two measures of effect size. Consider, for example, a 3-by-3 design. The output looks like this:

A	A	B	B	psihat	p.value	p.crit	EF.xi	EF.WMW
[1,]	1	2	1	2	0.4391756	0.12349976	0.007142857	0.23529598
[2,]	1	2	1	3	0.5545464	0.06599752	0.006250000	0.29571202
[3,]	1	2	2	3	0.1067275	0.73886781	0.025000000	0.04887390
[4,]	1	3	1	2	0.5444421	0.05278634	0.005555556	0.27156386
[5,]	1	3	1	3	0.4466135	0.14713359	0.008333333	0.29985052
[6,]	1	3	2	3	-0.1874629	0.57598934	0.012500000	0.08641963
[7,]	2	3	1	2	0.1052665	0.71725752	0.016666667	0.05328162
[8,]	2	3	1	3	-0.1079328	0.75015090	0.050000000	0.04970859
[9,]	2	3	2	3	-0.2941904	0.30298803	0.010000000	0.15617971

Look at row 4. The results deal with the difference score associated with levels 1 and 3 of the between factor in conjunction with levels 1 and 2 of Factor A. That is, for level 1 of Factor A, let D_{i1} ($i = 1, \dots, n_1$) denote the difference scores based on levels 1 and 2 of Factor B. In a similar manner, for level 3 of Factor A, let D_{i3} ($i = 1, \dots, n_3$) denote the difference scores, again based on levels 1 and 2 of Factor B. The difference between the two trimmed means based on these difference score is reported under the column headed by *psihat*, which is 0.5444421. The column headed by *EF.xi* is the explanatory measure of effect size given by Eq. (5.18) in Section 5.3.4 based on these difference scores. The last column, headed by *EF.WMW*, is an estimate of $P(D_{i1} < D_{i3})$. (This probability is computed via the R function *cid* in Section 5.7.2.) The R function

```
spmcpi(J,K,x,est=tmean,JK=J*K,grp=c(1:JK),alpha=0.05,nboot=NA,SEED=T,SR=F,pr=T,...)
```

uses a percentile bootstrap technique instead. If the argument *SR*=T and the argument *est* is equal to either *onestep* or *mom*, the probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled with method *SR*; otherwise Hochberg's method is used. The R function

```
bwiJ2plot(J, K, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, BOX=FALSE)
```

plots the distribution of the difference scores assuming there are two levels for Factor B (meaning that $K=2$ is required) and that the number of independent groups is $J \leq 5$. Setting the argument *BOX*=TRUE, boxplots are created instead.

The R function

```
bwmcppb(J, K, x, est=tmean, tr=0.2, nboot = 500, bhop = F, ...)
```

simultaneously performs all multiple comparisons related to all main effects and interactions using a percentile bootstrap method. The probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled via Hochberg's method when *bhop*=F. Otherwise the Benjamini–Hochberg method is used. This function tests the same hypotheses as done by the R function *bwmcp*, only a percentile bootstrap method is used. In contrast to *spmcpa*, *spmcpb* and *spmcpi*, the function *bwmcppb* does not have an option about pooling the data.

8.6.10 Within-by-Within Designs

The methods for dealing with a between-by-within design are readily extended to a within-by-within design. That is, all JK groups being compared are dependent. For example, the method in Section 8.6.1 can be modified to handle this situation by taking \mathbf{V} in Eq. (8.5) to be

the Winsorized variance–covariance of all JK variables under study. (That is, for a between-by-within design, \mathbf{V} was a block diagonal matrix, but for the situation at hand, generally this is no longer the case.) A similar extension can be used when dealing with linear contrasts.

Note that when dealing with linear contrasts, again there are two basic goals that might be of interest. The first is to test hypotheses about linear contrasts stated in terms of the measures of location associated with the marginal distributions. Section 8.1.3 provides explicit details when dealing with trimmed means that can be used to analyze a within-by-within design. The second strategy is to use an extension of methods based on difference scores. That is, now the hypotheses of interest take the form described in Section 8.1.4. R functions specifically designed for within-by-within design are described in the next section.

8.6.11 R Functions *wwtrim*, *wwtrimbt*, *wwmcp*, *wwmcppb* and *wwmcpbt*

The R function

```
wwtrim(J, K, x, grp = c(1:p), p = J * K, tr=0.2)
```

tests for main effects and interactions in a within-by-within design using a modification of the method for trimmed means described in Section 8.6.1. (The modification simply takes into account the possibility that all JK variables might be dependent.) The R function

```
wwtrimbt(J, K, x, tr=0.2, JKL = J * K, grp = c(1:JK), nboot = 599, SEED = T, ...)
```

is the same as the R function *wwtrim*, only a bootstrap-t method is used. The R function

```
wwmcp(J,K,x,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,dif=TRUE)
```

performs multiple comparisons relevant to both main effects and interactions. (The function creates the appropriate linear contrasts and then uses the R function *rmmcp*.) By default, linear contrasts are created along the lines described in Section 8.1.4. To use linear contrasts based on the marginal trimmed means, set the argument *dif=F*. The R function

```
wwmcppb(J,K,x, tr=0.2, con = 0, est=tmean, plotit = F, dif = T, grp = NA, nboot = NA,
BA = T, hoch = T, xlab = "Group 1", ylab = "Group 2", pr = T, SEED = T, ...)
```

is like the R function *wwmcp*, only a percentile bootstrap method is used. It defaults to using a 20% trimmed mean, but other measures of location can be used via the argument *est*. (When using an M-estimator, setting the argument *hoch=F* is suggested.) This function (using default settings) appears to be a relatively good choice, particularly when dealing with a small sample

size. When the amount of trimming is small, use the R function

```
wwmcpt(J,K,x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, nboot = 599),
```

which uses a bootstrap-t method.

8.6.12 A Rank-Based Approach

This section describes a rank-based approach to a split-plot (or between-by-within subjects) design taken from [Brunner, Domhof, and Langer \(2002, Chapter 8\)](#). There are other rank-based approaches (e.g., [Beasley, 2000](#); [Beasley & Zumbo, 2003](#)), but it seems that the practical merits of these competing methods, versus the method described here, have not been explored.

Main effects for Factor A are expressed in terms of

$$\bar{F}_{j\cdot}(x) = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K F_{jk}(x),$$

the average of the distributions among the K levels of Factor B corresponding to the j th level of Factor A. The hypothesis of no main effects for Factor A is

$$H_0 : \bar{F}_{1\cdot}(x) = \bar{F}_{2\cdot}(x) = \cdots = \bar{F}_{J\cdot}(x)$$

for any x . Letting

$$\bar{F}_{\cdot k}(x) = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J F_{jk}(x)$$

be the average of the distributions for the k th level of Factor B, the hypothesis of no main effects for Factor B is

$$H_0 : \bar{F}_{\cdot 1}(x) = \bar{F}_{\cdot 2}(x) = \cdots = \bar{F}_{\cdot K}(x).$$

As for interactions, first consider a 2-by-2 design. Then no interaction is taken to mean that for any x ,

$$F_{11}(x) - F_{12}(x) = F_{21}(x) - F_{22}(x).$$

More generally, the hypothesis of no interactions among all JK groups is

$$H_0 : F_{jk}(x) - \bar{F}_{j\cdot}(x) - \bar{F}_{\cdot k}(x) + \bar{F}_{\cdot\cdot}(x) = 0,$$

for any x , all j ($j = 1, \dots, J$) and all k ($k = 1, \dots, K$), where

$$\bar{F}_{..}(x) = \frac{1}{JK} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K F_{jk}(x).$$

As usual, let X_{ijk} represent the i th observation for level j of Factor A and level k of Factor B. Here, $i = 1, \dots, n_j$. That is, the j th level of Factor A has n_j vectors of observations, each vector containing K values. So for the j th level of Factor A there are a total of $n_j K$ observations, and among all the groups, the total number of observations is denoted by N . So the total number of vectors among the J groups is $n = \sum n_j$, and the total number of observations is $N = K \sum n_j = Kn$.

Pool all N observations and assign ranks. As usual, midranks are used if there are tied values. Let R_{ijk} represent the rank associated with X_{ijk} . Let

$$\begin{aligned}\bar{R}_{.jk} &= \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} R_{ijk}, \\ \bar{R}_{.j.} &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K \bar{R}_{.jk}, \\ \bar{R}_{ij.} &= \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K R_{ijk}, \\ \hat{\sigma}_j^2 &= \frac{1}{n_j - 1} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (\bar{R}_{ij.} - \bar{R}_{.j.})^2, \\ S &= \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{\hat{\sigma}_j^2}{n_j}, \\ U &= \sum_{j=1}^J \left(\frac{\hat{\sigma}_j^2}{n_j} \right)^2, \\ D &= \sum_{j=1}^J \frac{1}{n_j - 1} \left(\frac{\hat{\sigma}_j^2}{n_j} \right)^2.\end{aligned}$$

Factor A: The test statistic is

$$F_A = \frac{J}{(J-1)S} \sum_{j=1}^J (\bar{R}_{.j.} - \bar{R}_{...})^2,$$

where $\bar{R}_{...} = \sum \bar{R}_{.j.}/J$. The degrees of freedom are

$$\nu_1 = \frac{(J-1)^2}{1 + J(J-2)U/S^2},$$

and

$$\nu_2 = \frac{S^2}{D}.$$

Reject if $F_A \geq f$, where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with ν_1 and ν_2 degrees of freedom.

Factor B: Let

$$\mathbf{R}_{ij} = (R_{ij1}, \dots, R_{ijk})',$$

$$\bar{\mathbf{R}}_{.j} = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} \mathbf{R}_{ij}, \quad \bar{\mathbf{R}}_{..} = \frac{1}{J} \sum_{j=1}^J \bar{\mathbf{R}}_{.j},$$

$n = \sum n_j$ (so $N = nK$),

$$\mathbf{V}_j = \frac{n}{N^2 n_j (n_j - 1)} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (\mathbf{R}_{ij} - \bar{\mathbf{R}}_{.j})(\mathbf{R}_{ij} - \bar{\mathbf{R}}_{.j})'.$$

So \mathbf{V}_j is a K -by- K matrix of covariances based on the ranks. Let

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{J^2} \sum_{j=1}^J \mathbf{V}_j$$

and let \mathbf{P}_K be defined as in Section 7.9. The test statistic is

$$F_B = \frac{n}{N^2 \text{tr}(\mathbf{P}_K \mathbf{S})} \sum_{k=1}^K (\bar{R}_{..k} - \bar{R}_{...})^2.$$

The degrees of freedom are

$$\nu_1 = \frac{(\text{tr}(\mathbf{P}_K \mathbf{S}))^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{P}_K \mathbf{S} \mathbf{P}_K \mathbf{S})}, \quad \nu_2 = \infty,$$

and H_0 is rejected if $F_B \geq f$, where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with ν_1 and ν_2 degrees of freedom.

Interactions: Let \mathbf{V} be the block diagonal matrix based on the matrices \mathbf{V}_j , $j = 1, \dots, J$. Letting \mathbf{M}_{AB} be defined as in Section 7.9, the test statistic is

$$F_{AB} = \frac{n}{N^2 \text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_{AB}\mathbf{V})} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=1}^K (\bar{R}_{jk} - \bar{R}_{.j.} - \bar{R}_{..k} + \bar{R}_{...})^2.$$

The degrees of freedom are

$$\nu_1 = \frac{(\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_{AB}\mathbf{V}))^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_{AB}\mathbf{V}\mathbf{M}_{AB}\mathbf{V})}, \quad \nu_2 = \infty.$$

Reject if $F_A \geq f$ (or if $F_{AB} \geq f$), where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with ν_1 and ν_2 degrees of freedom.

8.6.13 R Function bwrank

The R function

bwrank(J,K,x)

performs a between-by-within ANOVA based on ranks using the method just described. In addition to testing hypotheses as just indicated, the function returns the average ranks (\bar{R}_{jk}) associated with all JK groups as well as the relative effects, $(\bar{R}_{jk} - 0.5)/N$.

■ Example

Lumley (1996) reports data on shoulder pain after surgery; the data are from a study by Jorgensen, Gilles, Hunt, Caplehorn, and Lumley (1995). Table 8.7 shows a portion of the results where two treatment methods are used and measures of pain are taken at three different times. The output from bwrank is

```
$test.A:  
[1] 12.87017  
  
$sig.A:  
[1] 0.001043705  
  
$test.B:  
[1] 0.4604075  
  
$sig.B:  
[1] 0.5759393  
  
$test.AB:  
[1] 8.621151
```

Table 8.7: Shoulder Pain Data (1=low, 5=high).

Active Treatment			No Active Treatment		
Time 1	Time 2	Time 3	Time 1	Time 2	Time 3
1	1	1	5	2	3
3	2	1	1	5	3
3	2	2	4	4	4
1	1	1	4	4	4
1	1	1	2	3	4
1	2	1	3	4	3
3	2	1	3	3	4
2	2	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	1	1	1
3	1	1	1	5	5
1	1	1	1	3	2
2	1	1	2	2	3
1	2	2	2	2	1
3	1	1	1	1	1
2	1	1	1	1	1
1	1	1	5	5	5
1	1	1	3	3	3
2	1	1	5	4	4
4	4	2	1	3	3
4	4	4			
1	1	1			
1	1	1			

```
$sig.AB:  
[1] 0.0007548441  
  
$avg.ranks:  
[,1] [,2] [,3]  
[1,] 58.29545 48.40909 39.45455  
[2,] 66.70455 82.36364 83.04545  
  
$rel.effects:  
[,1] [,2] [,3]  
[1,] 0.4698817 0.3895048 0.3167036  
[2,] 0.5382483 0.6655580 0.6711013
```

So at approximately the 0.001 level, treatment methods are significantly different and there is a significant interaction, but no significant difference is found over time. Note that the average ranks and relative effects suggest that a disordinal interaction might exist. In particular, for group 1 (the active treatment group), time 1 has higher average ranks versus time 2, and the reverse is true for the second group. However, the Wilcoxon signed rank test fails to reject at the 0.05 level when comparing time 1 to time 2 for

both groups. When comparing time 1 versus time 3 for the first group, again using the Wilcoxon signed rank test, we reject at the 0.05 level, but a nonsignificant result is obtained for group 2. So again a disordinal interaction appears to be a possibility, but the empirical evidence is not compelling.

■ Example

Section 6.11 illustrated a method for comparing multivariate data corresponding to two independent groups based on the extent that points from the one group are nested within the other. For the data in Table 6.5, it was found that schizophrenics differed from the control group; also see Figure 6.10. If the two groups are compared based on the OP estimator (using the function smean2), again the two groups are found to differ. Comparing the groups with the method for means and trimmed means described in this section, no difference between the schizophrenics and control group is found at the 0.05 level. Using the rank-based method in this section, again no difference is found. (The p-value is 0.11.) The only point is that how we compare groups can make a practical difference about the conclusions reached.

8.6.14 Rank-Based Multiple Comparisons

Multiple comparisons based on the rank-based methods covered here can be performed using simple combinations of methods already considered. When dealing with Factor A, for example, one can simply compare level j to level j' , ignoring the other levels. When comparing all pairs of groups, FWE can be controlled with Rom's method or the Benjamini–Hochberg technique. Factor B and the collection of all interactions (corresponding to any two rows and any two columns) can be handled in a similar manner.

8.6.15 R Function *bwrmcp*

The R function

```
bwrmcp(J,K,x,grp=NA,alpha=0.05,bhop=F)
```

performs all pairwise multiple comparisons using the method of Section 8.6.14 with the FWE (familywise error) rate controlled using Rom's method of the Benjamini–Hochberg method.

For example, when dealing with Factor A, the function simply compares level j to level j' ignoring the other levels. All pairwise comparisons among the J levels of Factor A are performed and the same is done for Factor B and all relevant interactions.

8.6.16 Multiple Comparisons when Using a Patel–Hoel Approach to Interactions

Rather than compare distributions when dealing with a between-by-within design, one could use a simple analog of the Patel–Hoel approach instead. First consider a two by two design and focus on level one of Factor A. Then the two levels of Factor B are dependent and can be compared with the sign test. In essence, inferences are being made about p_1 , the probability that for a randomly sampled pair of observations, the observation from level one of Factor B is less than the corresponding observation from level two. Of course, for level two of Factor A, we can again compare levels one and two of Factor B with the sign test. Now we let p_2 be the probability that for a randomly sampled pair of observations, the observation from level one of Factor B is less than the corresponding observation from level two. Then no interaction can be defined as $p_1 = p_2$.

The hypothesis of no interaction,

$$H_0 : p_1 = p_2,$$

is just the hypothesis that two independent binomials have equal probabilities of success, which can be tested using one of the methods described in Section 5.8. Here, Beal's method is used rather than the Storer–Kim method because it currently seems that Beal's method provides more accurate control over FWE for the problem at hand, execution time can be much lower when sample sizes are large, and unlike the Storer–Kim procedure, Beal's method provides confidence intervals. Method KMS in Section 5.8.3 might be used as well, but there are no published results on how it performs for the situation at hand.

There are various ways FWE might be controlled. Among a collection of techniques considered by Wilcox (2001c), the following method was found to be relatively effective. Let q be the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a C -variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution with degrees of freedom $v = \infty$, where C is the total number of hypotheses to be tested. Assuming that all pairs of rows and columns are to be considered when testing the hypothesis of no interactions,

$$C = \frac{J^2 - J}{2} \times \frac{K^2 - K}{2}.$$

(For a formal definition of a Studentized maximum modulus distribution, see Miller, 1966, p. 71. Some quantiles are reported in Wilcox, 2003a.) Let Z be a standard normal random variable. Then if FWE is to be α , test each of the C hypotheses at the α_a level where

- If $(J, K) = (5, 2)$, then $\alpha_a = 2(1 - P(Z \leq q))$.
- If $(J, K) = (3, 2), (4, 2)$ or $(2, 3)$, then $\alpha_a = 3(1 - P(Z \leq q))$.
- For all other J and K values, $\alpha_a = 4(1 - P(Z \leq q))$.

These adjusted α values appear to work well when the goal is to achieve FWE less than or equal to 0.05. Whether this remains the case with FWE equal to 0.01 is unknown. For $C > 28$ and FWE equal to 0.05, use

$$q = 2.383904C^{1/10} - 0.202.$$

(Of course, for $C = 1$, no adjustment is necessary; simply use Beal's method.)

Tied values are handled in the same manner as with the signed rank test: Pairs of observations with identical values are simply discarded. So among the remaining observations, for every pair of observations, the observation from level one of Factor B, for example, is either less than or greater than the corresponding value from level two.

A criticism of this method is that power can be relatively low. However, it directly addresses an issue that might be deemed interesting and useful that is not directly addressed by other methods in this chapter.

A variation of the approach in this section is where, for level one of Factor B, p_1 is the probability that an observation from level one of Factor A is less an observation from level 2.

Similarly, p_2 is now defined in terms of the two levels of Factor A when working with level two of Factor B. However, the details of how to implement this approach have not been studied.

8.6.17 R Function *sisplit*

The method just described for interactions can be applied with the R function

`sisplit(J,K,x).`

This function assumes $\alpha = 0.05$; other values are not allowed. As usual, x is any R variable containing the data that is an n -by- JK matrix or has list mode.

8.7 Some Rank-Based Multivariate Methods

This section describes two rank-based methods for comparing J independent groups with K measures associated with each group.

8.7.1 The Munzel–Brunner Method

The first method was derived by [Munzel and Brunner \(2000\)](#). (For recent results regarding how the Munzel–Brunner method compares to several techniques not covered here, see [Bathke, Solomon, & Madden, 2008](#). A variation of the Munzel–Brunner method can be used in place of the Agresti–Pendergast method, but the relative merits of these two techniques have not been explored.) Let n_j represent the number of randomly sampled vectors from the j th group, each vector containing K measures. Let $F_{jk}(x)$ be the distribution associated with the j th group and k th measure. So for example, $F_{32}(6)$ is the probability that for the third group, the second variable will be less than or equal to 6 for a randomly sampled individual. For the k th measure, the goal is to test the hypothesis that all J groups have identical distributions. And the more general goal is to test the hypothesis that simultaneously, all groups have identical distributions for each of the K measures under consideration. That is, the goal is to test

$$H_0 : F_{1k}(x) = \dots = F_{Jk}(x) \text{ for all } k = 1, \dots, K. \quad (8.9)$$

To apply the method, begin with the first of the K measures, pool all the observations among the J groups and assign ranks. Ties are handled in the manner described in Section 5.7.2. Repeat this process for all K measures and label the results R_{ijk} . That is, R_{ijk} is the rank of the i th observation in the j th group and for the k th measure. Let

$$\bar{R}_{jk} = \frac{1}{n_j} \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} R_{ijk}$$

be the average rank for the j th group corresponding to the k th measure. Set

$$\hat{Q}_{jk} = \frac{\bar{R}_{jk} - 0.5}{n},$$

where $n = \sum n_j$ is the total number of randomly sampled vectors among the J groups. The remaining calculations are summarized in [Table 8.8](#). The \hat{Q} values are called the *relative effects* and reflect the ordering of the average ranks. If, for example, $\hat{Q}_{11} < \hat{Q}_{21}$, the typical rank for variable one in group one is less than the typical rank for variable one in group two. More generally, if $\hat{Q}_{jk} < \hat{Q}_{j'k}$, then based on the k th measure, the typical rank (or observed value) for group j is less than the typical rank for group j' .

Table 8.8: The Munzel–Brunner One-Way Multivariate Method.

Let

$$\hat{\mathbf{Q}} = (\hat{Q}_{11}, \hat{Q}_{12}, \dots, \hat{Q}_{1K}, \hat{Q}_{21}, \dots, \hat{Q}_{JK})',$$

$$\mathbf{R}_{ij} = (R_{ij1}, \dots, R_{ijk})', \bar{\mathbf{R}}_j = (\bar{R}_{j1}, \dots, \bar{R}_{jk})',$$

$$\mathbf{V}_j = \frac{1}{nn_j(n_j - 1)} = \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} (\mathbf{R}_{ij} - \bar{\mathbf{R}}_j)(\mathbf{R}_{ij} - \bar{\mathbf{R}}_j)',$$

$n = \sum n_j$ and let

$$\mathbf{V} = \text{diag}\{\mathbf{V}_1, \dots, \mathbf{V}_J\}.$$

Compute the matrix \mathbf{M}_A as described in Section 7.9. The test statistic is

$$F = \frac{n}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V})} \hat{\mathbf{Q}}' \mathbf{M}_A \hat{\mathbf{Q}}.$$

Decision Rule: Reject if $F \geq f$, where f is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with

$$v_1 = \frac{(\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V}))^2}{\text{tr}(\mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V} \mathbf{M}_A \mathbf{V})},$$

and $v_2 = \infty$ degrees of freedom.

8.7.2 R Function mulrank

The R function

`mulrank(J, K, x)`

performs the one-way multivariate method in Table 8.8. The data are stored in x which can be a matrix or have list mode. If x is a matrix, the first K columns correspond to the K measures for group 1, the second K correspond to group 2, and so forth. If stored in list mode, x[[1]], ..., x[[K]] contain the data for group 1, x[[K+1]], ..., x[[2K]] contain the data for group 2, and so on.

■ Example

Table 8.9 summarizes data (reported by [Munzel & Brunner, 2000](#)) from a psychiatric clinical trial where three methods are compared for treating individuals with panic disorder. The three methods are exercise, clomipramine and a placebo. The two measures of effectiveness were a clinical global impression (CGI) and the patient's global impres-

Table 8.9: CGI and PGI Scores After Four Weeks of Treatment.

GI	Exercise		Clomipramine		Placebo	
	PGI	CGI	PGI	CGI	PGI	CGI
4	3	1	2	5	4	
1	1	1	1	5	5	
2	2	2	0	5	6	
2	3	2	1	5	4	
2	3	2	3	2	6	
1	2	2	3	4	6	
3	3	3	4	1	1	
2	3	1	4	4	5	
5	5	1	1	2	1	
2	2	2	0	4	4	
5	5	2	3	5	5	
2	4	1	0	4	4	
2	1	1	1	5	4	
2	4	1	1	5	4	
6	5	2	1	3	4	

sion (PGI). The test statistic is $F = 12.7$ with $v_1 = 2.83$ and a significance level less than 0.001. The relative effects are:

```
$q.hat:
 [,1]      [,2]
[1,] 0.5074074 0.5096296
[2,] 0.2859259 0.2837037
[3,] 0.7066667 0.7066667
```

So among the three groups, the second group, clomipramine, has the lowest relative effects. That is, the typical ranks were lowest for this group, and the placebo group had the highest ranks on average. ■

8.7.3 The Choi–Marden Multivariate Rank Test

This section describes a multivariate analog of the Kruskal–Wallis test derived by Choi and Marden (1997). There are actually many variations of the approach they considered, but here attention is restricted to the version they focused on. As with the method in Section 8.7.1, we have K measures for each individual and there are J independent groups. For the j th group and any vector of constants $\mathbf{x} = (x_1, \dots, x_K)$, let

$$F_j(\mathbf{x}) = P(X_{j1} \leq x_1, \dots, X_{jK} \leq x_K).$$

So for example, $F_1(\mathbf{x})$ is the probability that for the first group, the first of the K measures is less than or equal to x_1 , the second of the K measures is less than or equal to x_2 , and so forth. The null hypothesis is that for any \mathbf{x} ,

$$H_0 : F_1(\mathbf{x}) = \cdots = F_K(\mathbf{x}), \quad (8.10)$$

which is sometimes called the *multivariate hypothesis* to distinguish it from Eq. (8.8), which is called the *marginal hypothesis*. The multivariate hypothesis is a stronger hypothesis in the sense that if it is true, then by implication the marginal hypothesis is true as well. For example, if the marginal distributions for both groups are standard normal distributions, the marginal hypothesis is true, but if the groups have different correlations, the multivariate hypothesis is false.

The Choi–Marden method represents an extension of a technique derived by [Möttönen and Oja \(1995\)](#) and is based on a generalization of the notion of a rank to multivariate data which was also used by [Chaudhuri \(1996, Section 4\)](#). First consider a random sample of n observations with K measures for each individual or thing and denote the i th vector of observations by

$$\mathbf{X}_i = (X_{i1}, \dots, X_{iK}).$$

Let

$$A_{ii'} = \sqrt{\sum_{k=1}^K (X_{ik} - X_{i',k})^2}.$$

Here, the “rank” of the i th vector is itself a vector (having length K) given by

$$\mathbf{R}_i = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i'=1}^n \frac{\mathbf{X}_i - \mathbf{X}_{i'}}{A_{ii'}},$$

where

$$\mathbf{X}_i - \mathbf{X}_{i'} = (X_{i1} - X_{i'1}, \dots, X_{iK} - X_{i'K}).$$

The remaining calculations are summarized in [Table 8.10](#). All indications are that this method provides good control over the probability of a Type I error when ties never occur. There are no known problems when there are tied values, but this issue is in need of more research.

Table 8.10: The Choi–Marden Method.

Pool the data from all J groups and compute rank vectors as just described in the text. The resulting rank vectors are denoted by $\mathbf{R}_1, \dots, \mathbf{R}_n$, where $n = \sum n_j$ is the total number of vectors among the J groups. For each of the J groups, average the rank vectors and denote the average of these vectors for the j th group by $\bar{\mathbf{R}}_j$.

Next, assign ranks to the vectors in the j th group, ignoring all other groups. We let \mathbf{V}_{ij} (a column vector of length K) represent the rank vector corresponding to the i th vector of the j th group ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$) to make a clear distinction with the ranks based on the pooled data. Compute

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{n - J} \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{i=1}^{n_j} \mathbf{V}_{ij} \mathbf{V}'_{ij},$$

where \mathbf{V}'_{ij} is the transpose of \mathbf{V}_{ij} (so \mathbf{S} is a K -by- K matrix). The test statistic is

$$H = \sum_{j=1}^J n_j \bar{\mathbf{R}}'_j \mathbf{S}^{-1} \bar{\mathbf{R}}_j. \quad (8.12)$$

(For $K = 1$, H does not quite reduce to the Kruskall–Wallis test statistic. In fact, H avoids a certain technical problem that is not addressed by the Kruskall–Wallis method.)

Decisions Rule: Reject if $H \geq c$, where c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with degrees of freedom $K(J - 1)$.

8.7.4 R Function `cmanova`

The R function

```
cmanova(J,K,x)
```

performs the Choi–Marden method just described. The data are assumed to be stored in `x` as described in Section 8.6.2.

8.8 Three-Way Designs

Generally, two-way designs can be extended to a three-way design where one or more factors involve dependent groups. This section outlines some of the methods that might be used. It is stressed, however, that simulation studies reporting the relative merits of the methods considered are extremely limited.

8.8.1 Global Tests Based on Trimmed Means

The method in Section 8.6.1 is readily extended to a three-way design. Note that the matrix \mathbf{V} used in Eq. (8.4) reflects the variances and covariances among the trimmed means where the covariances are taken to be zero if the groups are independent. Here, \mathbf{V} is computed in a similar manner. That is, for a J -by- K -by- L design, \mathbf{V} is a JKL square matrix that contains the squared standard errors and covariances among the sample trimmed means, with independent trimmed means having a covariance of zero. Once \mathbf{V} is available, compute the test statistic Q given by Eq. (8.4), where now the matrix \mathbf{C} is computed as described in Table 7.5.

When dealing with situations where one or more factors involve dependent groups, comments should be made regarding the approximation of the null distribution using an F distribution. Unlike the method in Section 8.6.1 where the second degrees of freedom, v_2 , is estimated based on the data, the strategy here is to simply set $v_2 = 999$. The reason is that even with $v_2 = 999$, the actual level of the method can drop well below the nominal level when the sample size is small and 20% trimmed means are used. For example, when dealing with a between-by-between-by-within design, under normality with all correlations equal to zero and $J = 2$, $K = L = 3$ and $n = 25$, the actual Type I error probability is approximately 0.003 when dealing with the A-by-C interaction and testing at the 0.05 level. Increasing n to 50, now the actual level is approximately 0.013, for $n = 100$ it is 0.037, and for $n = 900$ it is 0.04. For the main effect associated with factor A, the estimated level is 0.050 with $n = 25$ and 0.052 with $n = 900$. A bootstrap-t method appears to suffer from the same problem, but an extensive study of this issue has not been conducted. A similar problem occurs when dealing with a between-by-within-by-within design. Again $v_2 = 999$ is used, but even with $n = 100$, the actual level can drop as low as 0.025 under normality. Using instead a bootstrap-t method (via the R function `bbwtrimbt`), with $n = 25$, the actual level was estimated to be 0.067.

Evidently there are no published studies comparing methods, in terms of Type I errors, when dealing with three-way designs with one or more within group factors. Very limited results suggest that perhaps a better approach, compared to the methods described here, is to use the R functions in Section 8.8.6. They test hypotheses about all of the usual linear contrasts associated with a three-way design using a percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with a trimmed mean. In terms of controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors, performing one of the global tests described here is not required when using the percentile bootstrap methods via the R functions in Section 8.8.6. Moreover, limited results suggest that control over the Type I error probability is more satisfactory when the amount of trimming is 20%. For the situation considered here, where $n = 25$ and the actual Type I error is approximately 0.003, the probability of one or more Type I errors was estimated to be 0.039 when using a percentile bootstrap method via the R function `bbwmcppb`, based on a simulation with 1000 replications. (And execution time can be substantially less when using a percentile bootstrap

method rather than the bootstrap-t method.) Using instead the R function `bwwmcppb`, the probability of one or more Type I errors was estimated to be 0.049. But again, a more comprehensive study is needed.

8.8.2 R Functions `bbwtrim`, `bwtrim`, `wwwtrim`, `bbwtrimbt`, `bwtrimbt` and `wwwtrimbt`

The R function

```
bbwtrim(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2)
```

tests all omnibus main effects and interactions associated with a between-by-between-by-within design. The data are assumed to be stored as described in Section 7.3.1. For a between-by-within-by-within design use

```
bwtrim(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2).
```

And for a within-by-within-by-within design use

```
wwwtrim(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2).
```

The R functions

```
bbwtrimbt(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2, nboot = 599, SEED = T)
bwtrim(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2, nboot = 599, SEED = T)
```

and

```
wwwtrimbt(J,K,L,x,grp=c(1:p),tr=0.2, nboot = 599, SEED = T)
```

are the same as the functions `bbwtrim`, `bwtrim` and `wwwtrim`, respectively, only a bootstrap-t method is used.

8.8.3 Data Management: R Functions `bw2list` and `bbw2list`

For a between-by-within-by-within design, the R function

```
bw2list(x, grp.col, lev.col),
```

which was introduced in Section 8.6.3, can be used when dealing with data that are stored in a matrix or a data frame with one column indicating the levels of the independent groups and other columns containing data corresponding to within group levels. For example, setting the argument `grp.col=c(5)` would indicate that the levels for Factor A are stored in column 5 and `lev.col=c(3,9,10,12)` indicates that the within levels data are stored in columns 3, 9, 10, and 12. Note that it must be the case that KL is equal to the number of values stored in `lev.col`. So `lev.col=c(3,9,10,12)` would be appropriate if the within factors have two levels each, with the data for two levels of Factor C being stored in columns 10 and 12.

The R function

```
bbw2list(x, grp.col, lev.col)
```

deals with a between-by-between-by-within design and assumes that the argument `grp.col` contains two values that indicate the columns of `x` that indicate the levels of Factors A and B. Now the argument `lev.col` indicates the columns containing the within data.

■ Example

Imagine that for a between-by-between-by-within design, column 14 of the R variable `dis` contains values indicating the levels of Factor A, column 10 has values that contain the levels of Factor B, and columns 2, 4 and 9 contain the outcomes values at times 1, 2 and 3, respectively. Then

```
z=bbw2list(dis, grp.col=c(14,10), lev.col=c(2,4,9))
```

would store the data in list mode in `z`, after which the command

```
bbwtrim(3,4,3,z)
```

would test the usual hypotheses, assuming that Factors A and B have 3 and 4 levels, respectively. The values in columns 14 and 10 would be sorted in ascending order, or in alphabetical order if the values in these columns are character data.



8.8.4 Multiple Comparisons

Multiple comparisons in a three-way designs can be performed using a straightforward extension of methods described in previous sections. The R function `con3way`, described in

Section 7.4.4, can be used to generate the linear contrast coefficients that are often used. Here, when computing A in Section 8.1.3, we set $d_{jk} = 0$ whenever j and k correspond to independent groups. Otherwise, this term is computed as described in Section 8.1.3. The next two sections summarize some R functions aimed at facilitating the analysis.

8.8.5 R Function *wwwmcp*

When dealing with a within-by-within-by-within design, a non-bootstrap method can be used to test the hypotheses associated with all of the linear contrasts generated by the R function con3way. This can be done with the R function

```
wwwmcp(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, tr=0.2, dif = T, grp = NA).
```

(That is, it uses the R function con3way to generate the linear contrast coefficients and then it tests the corresponding hypotheses. The function rm3mcp performs the same calculations as wwwmcp.) When dealing with designs where there are both between and within factors, use a bootstrap method via one of the R functions described in the next section. Another approach is to use the R function rmmcp in Section 8.1.5 in conjunction with the R function con3way. (For an illustration of how to interpret three-way interactions based on the contrast coefficients returned by con3way, see the example at the end of Section 7.4.4.)

8.8.6 R Functions *bbwmcp*, *bwwwmcp*, *bbwmcppb*, *bwwwmcppb* and *wwwmcppb*

Bootstrap-t Methods

The R function

```
bbwmcp(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, JKL = J * K * L, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL), nboot = 599,
        SEED = T, ...)
```

performs all multiple comparisons associated with main effects and interactions using a bootstrap-t method in conjunction with trimmed means when analyzing a between-by-between-by-within design. The function uses con3way to generate all of the relevant linear contrasts and then uses the function lindep to test the hypotheses. The critical value is designed to control the probability of at least one Type I error among all the linear contrasts associated with factor A. The same is done for factor B and factor C.

The R function

```
bwwmcp(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, JKL = J * K * L, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL), nboot = 599,
SEED = T, ...)
```

handles a between-by-within-by-within design.

Percentile Bootstrap Methods

For a between-by-between-by-within design, the R function

```
bbwmcppb(J, K, L, x, tr=0.2, JKL = J * K * L, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL), nboot = 599,
SEED = T, ...)
```

tests hypotheses using a percentile bootstrap method. As for a between-by-within-by-within and within-by-within-by-within design, use the functions

```
bwwmcppb(J, K, L, x, est=tmean, JKL = J * K * L, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL),
nboot = 599, SEED = T, ...)
```

and

```
wwwmcppb(J, K, L, x, est=tmean, JKL = J * K * L, con = 0, tr=0.2, grp = c(1:JKL),
nboot = 599, SEED = T, ...),
```

respectively.

8.9 Exercises

1. Section 8.6.2 reports data on hangover symptoms. For group 2, use the R function `rmanova` to compare the trimmed means corresponding to times 1, 2, and 3.
2. For the data used in Exercise 1, compute confidence intervals for all pairs of trimmed means using the R function `pairdepb`.
3. Analyze the data for the control group reported in Table 6.1 using the methods in Sections 8.1 and 8.2. Compare and contrast the results.
4. Repeat Exercise 3 using the rank-based method in Section 8.5. How do the results compare to using a measure of location?
5. Repeat Exercises 3 and 4 using the data for the murderers in Table 6.1.
6. Analyze the data in Table 6.1 using the methods in Sections 8.6.1 and 8.6.4.
7. Repeat Exercise 6, only now use the rank-based method in Section 8.6.7.

Correlation and Tests of Independence

There are many approaches to finding robust measures of correlation and covariance (e.g., [Ammann, 1993](#), [Davies, 1987](#); [Devlin, Gnanadesikan, & Kettenring, 1981](#); [Goldberg & Iglewicz, 1992](#); [Hampel, Ronchetti, Rousseeuw, & Stahel, 1986](#), Chapter 5; [Huber, 1981](#), Chapter 8; [Li & Chen, 1985](#); [Lopuhaä, 1989](#); [Maronna, 1976](#); [Mosteller & Tukey, 1977](#), p. 211; [Wang & Raftery, 2002](#); [Wilcox, 1993b](#)), but no attempt is made to give a detailed description of all the strategies that have been proposed. Some of these measures are difficult to compute, others are not always equal to zero under independence, and from a technical point of view, some do not have all the properties one might want. One of the main goals in this chapter is to describe some tests of zero correlation that have practical value relative to the standard test based on the usual product moment correlation, r . Some alternative methods for testing the hypothesis of independence, that are not based on some type of correlation coefficient, are described as well. (For a collection of alternative methods for detecting dependence, see [Kallenberg & Ledwina, 1999](#).) For additional ways of measuring the strength of an association, see the description of explanatory power in Section 11.9.

9.1 Problems with Pearson's Correlation

The most common measure of covariance between any two random variables, X and Y , is

$$\begin{aligned}\text{COV}(X, Y) &= \sigma_{xy} \\ &= E\{(X - \mu_x)(Y - \mu_y)\}.\end{aligned}$$

Pearson's correlation is

$$\rho = \frac{\sigma_{xy}}{\sigma_x \sigma_y},$$

which is sometimes called the product moment correlation. A practical concern with ρ is that it is not robust. If one of the marginal distributions is altered slightly, as measured by Kolmogorov distance, but the other marginal distribution is left unaltered, the magnitude of ρ can

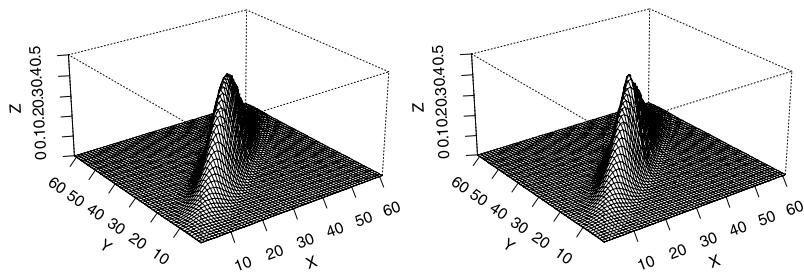


Figure 9.1: Pearson's correlation for the bivariate normal distribution shown on the left panel is 0.8. In the right panel, x has a contaminated normal distribution and Pearson's correlation is 0.2.

be changed substantially. More formally, the influence function of Pearson's correlation is

$$IF(x, y) = xy - \left(\frac{x^2 + y^2}{2} \right) \rho,$$

which is unbounded (Devlin et al., 1981). That is, Pearson's correlation does not have infinitesimal robustness.

The left panel of Figure 9.1 shows a bivariate normal distribution with $\rho = 0.8$. Suppose the marginal distribution of X is replaced by a contaminated normal given by Eq. (1.1) with $\epsilon = 0.9$ and $K = 10$. The right panel of Figure 9.1 shows the resulting joint distribution. As is evident, there is little visible difference between these two distributions, but in the right panel of Figure 9.1, $\rho = 0.2$. Put another way, even with an infinitely large sample size, the usual estimate of ρ , given by r in the next paragraph, can be misleading.

Let $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$ be a random sample from some bivariate distribution. The usual estimate of ρ is

$$r = \frac{\sum (X_i - \bar{X})(Y_i - \bar{Y})}{\sqrt{\sum (X_i - \bar{X})^2 \sum (Y_i - \bar{Y})^2}}.$$

A practical concern with r is that it is not resistant – a single unusual point can dominate its value.

■ Example

Figure 9.2 shows a scatterplot of data on the logarithm of the effective temperature at the surface of 47 stars versus the logarithm of its light intensity. (The data are reported in Rousseeuw & Leroy, 1987, p. 27.) The scatterplot suggests that in general, there is a positive association between temperature and light, yet $r = -0.21$. The reason is that

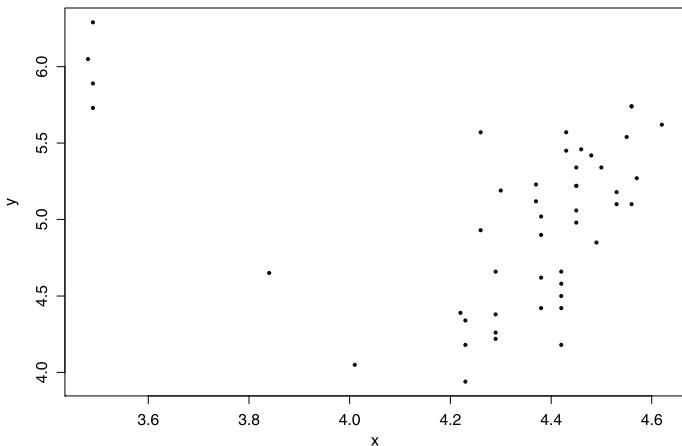


Figure 9.2: Scatterplot of the star data.

the four points in the upper left corner of [Figure 9.2](#) (which are giant red stars) are outliers that dominate the value of r . (Two additional points are flagged as outliers by the R function `out`.)

From basic principles, if X and Y are independent, then $\rho = 0$. The best-known test of

$$H_0 : \rho = 0 \quad (9.1)$$

is based on the test statistic

$$T = r \sqrt{\frac{n - 2}{1 - r^2}}. \quad (9.2)$$

If H_0 is true, T has a Student's t distribution with $v = n - 2$ degrees of freedom if at least one of the marginal distributions is normal (e.g., [Muirhead, 1982](#), p. 146) and simultaneously X and Y are independent. In particular, reject $H_0: \rho = 0$ if $|T| > t_{1-\alpha/2}$, the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom. When X and Y are independent, there are general conditions under which $E(r) = 0$ and $E(r^2) = 1/(n - 1)$ ([Huber, 1981](#), p. 204). (All that is required is that the distribution of X or Y be invariant under permutations of the components.) This suggests that the test of independence, based on T , will be reasonably robust in terms of Type I errors, and this seems to be the case for a variety of situations ([Kowalski, 1972](#); [Srivastava & Awan, 1984](#)). [Bishara and Hittner \(2012\)](#), for example good control over the Type I error probability when X and Y are independent and when testing at the 0.05 level. The primary exception was when both X and Y have mixed normal distribution, in which case the actual level was estimated to be between 0.066 and 0.068 for sample

sizes ranging between 10 and 160. However, problems arise in at least three situations: when $\rho = 0$ but X and Y are dependent (e.g., [Edgell & Noon, 1984](#)), when performing one-sided tests ([Blair & Lawson, 1982](#)), and when considering the more general goal of testing for independence among all pairs of p random variables.

There is also the problem of computing a confidence interval for ρ . Many methods have been proposed, but simulations do not support their use, at least for small to moderate sample sizes, and it is unknown just how large of a sample size is needed before any particular method can be expected to give good probability coverage ([Wilcox, 1991a](#)). A modified percentile bootstrap method appears to perform reasonably well in terms of probability coverage provided ρ is reasonably close to zero. But as ρ gets close to one it begins to break down ([Wilcox & Muska, 2001](#)). Many books recommend *Fisher's r-to-Z transformation* when computing confidence intervals, but under general conditions, it is not even asymptotically correct when sampling from non-normal distributions ([Duncan & Layard, 1973](#)).

9.1.1 Features of Data That Affect r and T

There are several features of data that affect the magnitude of Pearson's correlation, as well as the magnitude of T , given by Eq. (9.2). These features are important when interpreting robust correlation coefficients, so they are described here.

Five features of data that affect r are:

1. Outliers.
2. The magnitude of the slope around which points are clustered (e.g., [Barrett, 1974](#); [Loh, 1987b](#)). Put another way, rotating points can raise or lower r .
3. Curvature.
4. The magnitude of the residuals.
5. Restriction of range.

The effects of outliers has already been illustrated. The effect of curvature seems fairly evident, as does the magnitude of the residuals. It is well known that restricting the range of X or Y can lower r , and the star data in [Figure 9.2](#) illustrate that a restriction in range can increase r as well. The effect of rotating points is illustrated by [Figure 9.3](#). Thirty points were generated for X from a standard normal distribution, ϵ was taken to have a normal distribution with mean zero and standard deviation 0.25, and then $Y = X + \epsilon$ was computed. The least squares estimate of the slope is 1.00 and it was found that $r = 0.964$. Then the points were rotated clockwise by 35 degrees. The rotated points are indicated by the o's in [Figure 9.3](#). Now the least squares estimate of the slope is 0.19 and $r = 0.81$. Rotating the points by 40 degrees, instead, $r = 0.61$. Continuing to rotate the points in the same direction, the correlation will decrease until both r and the least squares estimate of the slope are zero.

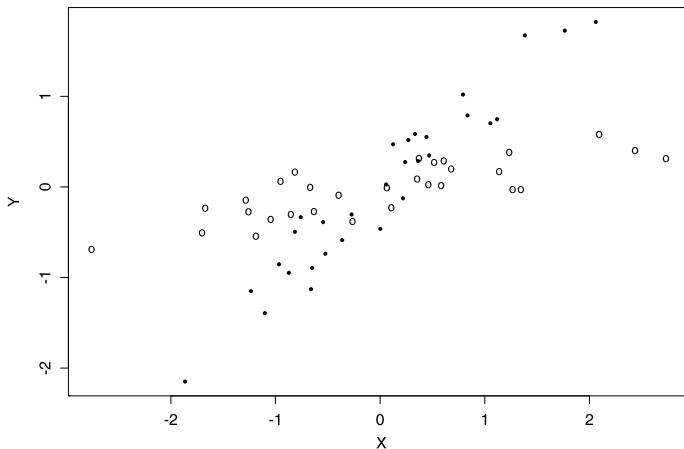


Figure 9.3: An illustration that rotating points can alter Pearson's correlation. The dots have correlation $r = 0.964$. The points marked by an o are the dots rotated by 35 degrees; these rotated points have $r = 0.81$.

9.1.2 Heteroscedasticity and the Classic Test that $\rho = 0$

Now consider the test of $H_0: \rho = 0$ based on the test statistic T given Eq. (9.2). As just pointed out, five features of data affect the magnitude of r , and hence T . There is, in fact, a sixth feature that affects T even when $\rho = 0$: heteroscedasticity. In regression, homoscedasticity refers to a situation where the conditional variance of Y , given X , does not depend on X . That is, $\text{VAR}(Y|X) = \sigma^2$. Heteroscedasticity refers to a situation where the conditional variance of Y varies with X . Independence implies homoscedasticity, but $\rho = 0$ does not necessarily mean there is homoscedasticity. The reason heteroscedasticity is relevant to the test of H_0 based on (9.2) is that the derivation of the test statistic, T , is based on the assumption that X and Y are independent. Even if $\rho = 0$, but there is heteroscedasticity, the wrong standard error is being used by T .

To illustrate what can happen, imagine that both X and Y have normal distributions with both means equal to zero. Further assume that both X and Y have variance 1 unless $|X| > 0.5$, in which case Y has standard deviation $|X|$. So there is dependence, but $\rho = 0$. With $n = 20$ and testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level with T , the actual probability of a Type I error is 0.098. With $n = 40$ it is 0.125 and for $n = 200$ it is 0.159. Even though $\rho = 0$, the probability of rejecting is increasing as n gets large because the wrong standard error is being used. So when H_0 is rejected, it is reasonable to conclude dependence, but the nature of the dependence (the reason why H_0 was rejected) is unclear. Put another way, the test statistic T , given by Eq. (9.2), tests the hypothesis that two random variables are independent, rather than the hypothesis that $\rho = 0$. (Section 9.3.13 describes two methods aimed at dealing with this problem.)

9.2 Two Types of Robust Correlations

Here, robust analogs of Pearson's correlation are classified into one of two types: those that protect against outliers among the marginal distributions without taking into account the overall structure of the data, and those that take into account the overall structure of the data when dealing with outliers. In terms of developing tests of the hypothesis of independence between two random variables, it is a bit easier working with the first type. Recently, however, some progress has been made when working with the second. For convenience, the first type will be called a *type M correlation* and the second will be called *type O*.

9.3 Some Type M Measures of Correlation

This section describes four type M correlations and how they can be used to test the hypothesis of independence.

9.3.1 The Percentage Bend Correlation

The first type M correlation that has proven to be relatively successful, in terms of controlling Type I error probabilities when testing the hypothesis of independence, is the so-called percentage bend correlation. It is estimated with r_{pb} using the computations described in Table 9.1. Table 9.2 describes how the population parameter corresponding to r_{pb} , ρ_{pb} , is defined. When X and Y are independent, $\rho_{pb} = 0$. Under normality, ρ and ρ_{pb} have very similar values, but ρ_{pb} is more robust, and their population values can differ substantially, even when there is little apparent difference between the bivariate distributions (Wilcox, 1994d).

Perhaps it should be emphasized that r_{pb} is not intended as an estimate of ρ . Rather, the goal is to estimate a measure of correlation, ρ_{pb} , that is not overly sensitive to slight changes in the distributions. There might be situations where ρ is of interest despite its lack of robustness, in which case r_{pb} has little or no value. The situation is similar to finding a robust measure of location. If there is direct interest in the population mean μ , the 20% sample trimmed mean does not estimate μ when distributions are skewed and would not be used. The problem is that μ is not robust, in which case some other measure of location might be of interest, such as a 20% trimmed mean. In a similar fashion, assuming a linear association, ρ_{pb} provides a robust measure of the strength of the association between two random variables that is designed so that its value is not overly sensitive to a relatively small proportion of the population under study.

Note that the definition of ρ_{pb} depends in part on a measure of scale, ω_x , which is a generalization of MAD. A technical point of some interest is that ω_x is a measure of dispersion.

Table 9.1: Computing the Percentage Bend Correlation.

The goal is to estimate the percentage bend correlation, ρ_{pb} , based on the random sample $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$. For the observations X_1, \dots, X_n , let M_x be the sample median. Select a value for β , $0 \leq \beta \leq 0.5$. Compute

$$W_i = |X_i - M_x|,$$

$$m = [(1 - \beta)n].$$

Note that $[(1 - \beta)n]$ is $(1 - \beta)n$ rounded down to the nearest integer. Let $W_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq W_{(n)}$ be the W_i values written in ascending order. Set

$$\hat{\omega}_x = W_{(m)}.$$

For example, if the observations are 4, 2, 7, 9, and 13, then the sample median is $M_x = 7$, so $W_1 = |4 - 7| = 3$, $W_2 = |2 - 7| = 5$, $W_3 = |7 - 7| = 0$, $W_4 = 2$, and $W_5 = 6$; so $W_{(1)} = 0$, $W_{(2)} = 2$, $W_{(3)} = 3$, $W_{(4)} = 5$, and $W_{(5)} = 6$. If $\beta = 0.1$, $m = [0.9(5)] = 4$, and $\hat{\omega} = W_{(4)} = 5$.

Let i_1 be the number of X_i values such that $(X_i - M_x)/\hat{\omega}_x < -1$. Let i_2 be the number of X_i values such that $(X_i - M_x)/\hat{\omega}_x > 1$. Compute

$$S_x = \sum_{i=i_1+1}^{n-i_2} X_{(i)}$$

$$\hat{\phi}_x = \frac{\hat{\omega}_x(i_2 - i_1) + S_x}{n - i_1 - i_2}.$$

Set $U_i = (X_i - \hat{\phi}_x)/\hat{\omega}_x$. Repeat these computations for the Y_i values yielding $V_i = (Y_i - \hat{\phi}_y)/\hat{\omega}_y$. Let

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-1, \min(1, x)].$$

Set $A_i = \Psi(U_i)$ and $B_i = \Psi(V_i)$. The percentage bend correlation between X and Y is estimated to be

$$r_{pb} = \frac{\sum A_i B_i}{\sqrt{\sum A_i^2 \sum B_i^2}}.$$

(See Section 2.3.) If in the definition of ρ_{pb} , $\Psi(x) = \max[-1, \min(1, x)]$ is replaced by $\Psi(x) = \max[-K, \min(K, x)]$ for some $K > 1$, ω_x is no longer a measure of dispersion (Shoemaker & Hettmansperger, 1982).

9.3.2 A Test of Independence Based on ρ_{pb}

When X and Y are independent, $\rho_{pb} = 0$. To test the hypothesis $H_0: \rho_{pb} = 0$, assuming independence, compute

Table 9.2: Definition of the Population Percentage Bend Correlation.

Let

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-1, \min(1, x)],$$

which is a special case of Huber's Ψ . Let θ_x and θ_y be the population medians corresponding to the random variables X and Y , let ω_x be defined by the equation

$$P(|X - \theta_x| < \omega_x) = 1 - \beta.$$

[Shoemaker and Hettmansperger \(1982\)](#) use $\beta = 0.1$, but the resulting breakdown point might be too low in some cases. The percentage bend measure of location, corresponding to X , is the quantity ϕ_{pbx} such that

$$E[\Psi(U)] = 0,$$

where

$$U = \frac{X - \phi_{pbx}}{\omega_x}.$$

In terms of Chapter 2, ϕ_{pbx} is an M-measure of location for the particular form of Huber's Ψ being used here. Let

$$V = \frac{Y - \phi_{pbv}}{\omega_y}.$$

Then the percentage bend correlation between X and Y is

$$\rho_{pb} = \frac{E\{\Psi(U)\Psi(V)\}}{\sqrt{E\{\Psi^2(U)\}E\{\Psi^2(V)\}}}.$$

Under independence, $\rho_{pb} = 0$, and $-1 \leq \rho_{pb} \leq 1$.

$$T_{pb} = r_{pb} \sqrt{\frac{n - 2}{1 - r_{pb}^2}}, \quad (9.3)$$

and reject H_0 if $|T_{pb}| > t_{1-\alpha}$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = n - 2$ degrees of freedom. All indications are that this test provides reasonably good control over the probability of a Type I error for a broader range of situations than the test based on r ([Wilcox, 1994d](#)).

The breakdown point of the percentage bend correlation is at most β . However, if $\beta = 0.5$ is used, the power of the test for independence, based on T_{pb} , can be substantially less than the test based on r when sampling from a bivariate normal distribution (as will be illustrated by results in [Table 9.5](#)). Here, the default value for β is 0.2. In exploratory studies, several values might be considered.

Like the conventional T test of $H_0: \rho = 0$, the method just described for testing $H_0: \rho_{pb} = 0$ is sensitive to heteroscedasticity. That is, even when $H_0: \rho_{pb} = 0$ is true, if there is heteroscedasticity, the wrong standard error is being used and the probability of rejecting can increase with the sample size. For a test of $H_0: \rho_{pb} = 0$ that is designed to be insensitive to heteroscedasticity, see Section 9.3.13.

9.3.3 R Function *pbcor*

The R function

```
pbcor(x,y,beta=0.2),
```

written for this book, estimates the percentage bend correlation for the data stored in any two vectors. If unspecified, the argument beta, the value for β when computing the measure of scale $W_{(m)}$, defaults to 0.2. The function returns the value of r_{pb} in pbcor\$cor, the value of the test statistic, T_{pb} , in pbcor\$test, and the p-value in pbcor\$siglevel. It is noted that the function pbcor automatically removes any pair of observations for which one or both values are missing.

■ Example

The example in Section 8.6.2 of Chapter 8 reports the results of drinking alcohol for two groups of subjects measured at three different times. Consider the measures at times 1 and 2 for the control group. Then $r = 0.37$, and $H_0: \rho = 0$ is not rejected with $\alpha = 0.05$. However, with $\beta = 0.1$, $r_{pb} = 0.5$, and $H_0: \rho_{pb} = 0$ is rejected, the p-value being 0.024.

■ Example

Consider the star data in Figure 9.2. As previously noted, $r = -0.21$. In contrast, $r_{pb} = 0.06$ with $\beta = 0.1$. Increasing β to 0.2, $r_{pb} = 0.26$, and the p-value is 0.07. For $\beta = 0.3$, $r_{pb} = 0.3$ with a p-value of 0.04, and for $\beta = 0.5$, $r_{pb} = 0.328$.

9.3.4 A Test of Zero Correlation Among p Random Variables

Consider a random sample of n vectors from some p -variate distribution, X_{i1}, \dots, X_{ip} , $i = 1, \dots, n$. Let ρ_{pbjk} be the percentage bend correlation between the j th and k th random

variables, $1 \leq j < k \leq p$. This section considers the problem of testing

$$H_0 : \rho_{pbjk} = 0, \text{ for all } j < k.$$

Put another way, the hypothesis is that the matrix of percentage bend correlations among all p random variables is equal to the identity matrix.

Currently, the best method for testing this hypothesis, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error under independence, begins by computing

$$c_{jk} = \sqrt{(n - 2.5) \times \ln \left(1 + \frac{T_{pbjk}^2}{n - 2} \right)},$$

where T_{pbjk} is the statistic given by Eq. (9.3) for testing independence between the j th and k th random variables, and \ln indicates the natural logarithm. Let

$$z_{jk} = c_{jk} + \frac{c_{jk}^3 + 3c_{jk}}{b} - \frac{4c_{jk}^7 + 33c_{jk}^5 + 240c_{jk}^3 + 855c_{jk}}{10b^2 + 8bc_{jk}^4 + 1000b}.$$

When H_0 is true,

$$H = \sum_{j < k} z_{jk}^2$$

has, approximately, a chi-squared distribution with $p(p - 1)/2$ degrees of freedom. Consequently, reject H_0 if $H > \chi_{1-\alpha}^2$, the $1 - \alpha$ quantile.

When the percentage bend correlation is replaced by r in the hypothesis testing procedure just described, the resulting test statistic will be labeled H_r . Gupta and Rathie (1983) suggest yet another test of the hypothesis that all pairs of random variables have zero correlations, again using r . Table 9.3 reports the estimated probability of a Type I error for $p = 4$ and 10, and various g-and-h distributions, when using H , H_r , or the Gupta–Rathie (GR) method, and when $n = 10$ and 20. For $p = 10$ and $n \leq 20$ the GR method cannot always be computed, and the corresponding entry in Table 9.3 is left blank. As is evident, the test based on the percentage bend correlation is easily the most satisfactory, with the estimated probability of a Type I error (based on simulations with 10,000 replications) ranging between 0.046 and 0.062. If the usual correlation, r , is used instead, the probability of Type I error can exceed 0.2, and when using method GR, it exceeds 0.15.

Table 9.3: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities, $\alpha = 0.05$.

g	h	n	H_r	$p = 4$		$p = 10$		
				GR	H	H_r	GR	
0.0	0.0	10	0.050	0.070	0.053	0.054	—	0.056
		20	0.049	0.022	0.053	0.048	—	0.046
0.5	0.0	10	0.055	0.076	0.050	0.062	—	0.055
		20	0.058	0.025	0.053	0.059	—	0.051
1.0	0.0	10	0.092	0.111	0.054	0.126	—	0.062
		20	0.091	0.055	0.054	0.126	—	0.055
0.0	0.5	10	0.082	0.106	0.050	0.124	—	0.052
		20	0.099	0.062	0.050	0.152	—	0.054
0.5	0.5	10	0.097	0.118	0.051	0.157	—	0.053
		20	0.097	0.118	0.051	0.185	—	0.053
1.0	0.5	10	0.130	0.158	0.053	0.244	—	0.059
		20	0.135	0.105	0.053	0.269	—	0.055

9.3.5 R Function *pball*

The R function

```
pball(m,beta=0.2)
```

computes the percentage bend correlation for all pairs of random variables, and it tests the hypothesis that all of the correlations are equal to zero. Here, m is an n -by- p matrix of data. If the data are not stored in a matrix, the function prints an error message and terminates. Again beta, which is β in Table 9.2, defaults to 0.2. The function returns a p -by- p matrix of correlations in pball\$pbcorm, another matrix indicating the p-values for the hypotheses that each correlation is zero, plus the test statistic H and its corresponding p-value.

■ Example

Again consider the alcohol data in Section 8.6.2 where measures of the effect of drinking alcohol are taken at three different times. If the data for the control group are stored in the R matrix amat, the command pball(amat) returns

```
$pbcorm:
 [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,] 1.0000000 0.5028002 0.7152667
[2,] 0.5028002 1.0000000 0.5946712
[3,] 0.7152667 0.5946712 1.0000000

$siglevel:
 [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,] NA 0.023847557 0.0003925285
```

```
[2,] 0.0238475571      NA 0.0056840954
[3,] 0.0003925285 0.005684095      NA

$H:
[1] 5.478301e+192

$H.siglevel:
[1] 0
```

For example, the correlation between variables 1 and 2 is 0.5, between 1 and 3 it is 0.72, and between 2 and 3 it is 0.59. The corresponding p-values are 0.024, 0.0004, and 0.0057. The test statistic, H , for testing the hypothesis that all three correlations are equal to zero, has a p-value approximately equal to 0. To use $\beta = 0.1$ instead, type the command `pball(amat,0.1)`.



9.3.6 The Winsorized Correlation

Another (type M) robust analog of ρ is the Winsorized correlation, which is estimated as follows. Based on the random sample $(X_{11}, X_{12}), \dots, (X_{n1}, X_{n2})$, first Winsorize the observations by computing the Y_{ij} values as described in Section 8.1.1. Then compute Pearson's correlation based on the Y_{ij} values. That is, the sample Winsorized correlation is

$$r_w = \frac{\sum(Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)(Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2)}{\sqrt{\sum(Y_{i1} - \bar{Y}_1)^2 \sum(Y_{i2} - \bar{Y}_2)^2}}.$$

Here, 20% Winsorization is assumed unless stated otherwise.

Let ρ_w be the population analog of r_w . To test $H_0: \rho_w = 0$, compute

$$T_w = r_w \sqrt{\frac{n-2}{1-r_w^2}},$$

and reject if $|T_w| > t_{1-\alpha/2}$, the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = h - 2$ degrees of freedom, where h , the effective sample size, is the number of pairs of observations not Winsorized. (Equivalently, $h = n - 2g$, $g = [\gamma n]$, is the number of observations left after trimming.) Unless stated otherwise, $\gamma = 0.2$ is assumed. In terms of Type I error probabilities when testing the hypothesis of zero correlation, the Winsorized correlation appears to compete well with the test based on r under independence, but the percentage bend correlation is better still, at least when $\beta = 0.1$. Like all of the hypothesis testing methods in this section, T_w is sensitive to heteroscedasticity, so a more accurate description of the test statistic T_w is that it tests the hypothesis that two random variables are independent. As for power, the best

Table 9.4: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities, $\alpha = 0.05$.

g	h	$T_{pb.1}$		$T_{pb.5}$		T		T_w	
		$n = 10$	$n = 20$	$n = 10$	$n = 20$	$n = 10$	$n = 20$	$n = 10$	$n = 20$
0.0	0.0	0.050	0.050	0.053	0.049	0.049	0.049	0.040	0.045
0.0	0.2	0.050	0.049	0.054	0.049	0.054	0.052	0.043	0.045
0.0	0.5	0.047	0.048	0.053	0.049	0.062	0.067	0.038	0.044
0.5	0.0	0.050	0.049	0.053	0.050	0.039	0.050	0.037	0.043
0.5	0.2	0.048	0.048	0.053	0.050	0.055	0.053	0.044	0.044
0.5	0.5	0.047	0.047	0.053	0.049	0.064	0.065	0.037	0.043
1.0	0.0	0.045	0.048	0.053	0.050	0.054	0.055	0.037	0.043
1.0	0.2	0.046	0.047	0.053	0.050	0.062	0.053	0.041	0.058
1.0	0.5	0.045	0.046	0.053	0.050	0.070	0.065	0.035	0.044
1.0	1.0	0.044	0.045	0.052	0.050	0.081	0.071	0.034	0.043

method among Pearson's correlation, the Winsorized correlation and the percentage bend correlation depends in part on the values of ρ , ρ_w , and ρ_{pb} , which are unknown. Perhaps there are situations where using ρ_w will result in more power. This depends in part on how much ρ_w differs from ρ_{pb} .

Table 9.4 compares Type I error probabilities when testing for independence using T , T_w , and T_{pb} . The notation $T_{pb.1}$ means that $\beta = 0.1$ is used, and $T_{pb.5}$ means $\beta = 0.5$. (The first two columns in **Table 9.4** indicate the g-and-h distribution associated with the marginal distributions.) As can be seen, the test based on r is the least stable in terms of Type I errors.

9.3.7 R Functions `wincor` and `winall`

The R function

```
wincor(x,y,tr=0.2)
```

estimates the Winsorized correlation between two random variables. As usual, x and y can be any R variables containing data. The default amount of Winsorization, tr, is 0.2. The function returns the Winsorized correlation, r_w , the Winsorized covariance, plus the test statistic T_w , and the corresponding p-value.

The function

```
winall(m,tr=0.2)
```

estimates the correlation for all pairs of p random variables, assuming the data are stored in an n -by- p matrix. If m is not a matrix, the function prints an error message and terminates. The function returns the Winsorized correlations in `winall$wcor`, the covariances in `winall$wcov`, and the p-values associated with each correlation is returned in `winall$siglevel`.

Section 9.3.4 described a method for testing the hypothesis that all percentage bend correlations, among all pairs of random variables, are equal to zero. The method is easily extended to test the hypothesis that all Winsorized correlations are equal to zero, but there are no simulation results on how well this approach performs in terms of Type I errors, so it is not recommended at this time.

■ Example

For the alcohol data in Section 8.6.2 used to illustrate the R function pbball, winall returns

```
$WCOR:
 [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,] 1.0000000 0.5134198 0.6957740
[2,] 0.5134198 1.0000000 0.6267765
[3,] 0.6957740 0.6267765 1.0000000

$WCOV:
 [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,] 44.77895 24.12632 27.68421
[2,] 24.12632 49.31316 26.17105
[3,] 27.68421 26.17105 35.35526

$siglevel:
 [,1]      [,2]      [,3]
[1,]       NA 0.023645294 0.001061593
[2,] 0.023645294        NA 0.004205145
[3,] 0.001061593 0.004205145       NA
```

Thus, the estimated correlation between variables 1 and 2 is 0.51, the covariance is 24.1, and the p-value, when testing the hypothesis of independence via the Winsorized correlation, is 0.024. In this particular case, the results are very similar to those obtained with the percentage bend correlation.

9.3.8 The Biweight Midcovariance and Correlation

It should be noted that the percentage bend covariance and correlation are a special case of a larger family of measures of association. Let Ψ be any odd function, such as those summarized in Section 2.2.4. Let μ_x be any measure of location for the random variable X , let τ_x be some measure of scale, let K be some constant, and let $U = (X - \mu_x)/(K\tau_x)$ and $V = (Y - \mu_y)/(K\tau_y)$. Then a measure of covariance between X and Y is

$$\gamma_{xy} = \frac{n K^2 \tau_x \tau_y E\{\Psi(U)\Psi(V)\}}{E\{\Psi'(U)\Psi'(V)\}}$$

and a measure of correlation is $\gamma_{xy}/\sqrt{\gamma_{xx}\gamma_{yy}}$. If μ_x and μ_y are measures of location such that $E\{\Psi(U)\} = E\{\Psi(V)\} = 0$, then $\gamma_{xy} = 0$ when X and Y are independent.

Among the many choices for Ψ and K , the so-called biweight midcovariance has played a role in a regression method covered in Chapter 10, so for completeness an estimate of this parameter is described here. It is based on $K = 9$ and the biweight function described in Table 2.1 of Chapter 2. Let $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$ be a random sample from some bivariate distribution. Let

$$U_i = \frac{X_i - M_x}{9 \times \text{MAD}_x},$$

where M_x and MAD_x are the median and the value of MAD for the X values. Similarly, let

$$V_i = \frac{Y_i - M_y}{9 \times \text{MAD}_y}.$$

Set $a_i = 1$ if $-1 \leq U_i \leq 1$, otherwise $a_i = 0$. Similarly, set $b_i = 1$ if $-1 \leq V_i \leq 1$, otherwise $b_i = 0$. The sample biweight midcovariance between X and Y is

$$s_{bxy} = \frac{n \sum a_i (X_i - M_x)(1 - U_i^2)^2 b_i (Y_i - M_y)(1 - V_i^2)^2}{(\sum a_i (1 - U_i^2)(1 - 5U_i^2))(\sum b_i (1 - V_i^2)(1 - 5V_i^2))}.$$

The statistic s_{bxx} is the biweight midvariance mentioned in Chapter 3, and

$$r_b = \frac{s_{bxy}}{\sqrt{s_{bxx}s_{byy}}}$$

is an estimate of what is called the **biweight midcorrelation** between X and Y . The main reasons for considering this measure of covariance are that it is relatively easy to compute, and it appears to have a breakdown point of 0.5, but a formal proof has not been found.

9.3.9 R Functions `bicov` and `bicovm`

The R function

`bicov(x,y)`

computes the biweight midcovariance between two random variables. The function `bicovm` computes the biweight midcovariance and midcorrelation for all pairs of p random variables stored in some R variable, m , which can be either an n -by- p matrix or a variable having list mode. It has the form

`bicovm(m).`

■ Example

For the star data in [Figure 9.2](#), bicovm reports that the biweight midcorrelation is 0.6. In contrast, the highest percentage bend correlation, among the choices 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4, and 0.5 for β , is 0.33, and a similar result is obtained when Winsorizing instead. As previously noted, these data have several outliers. The main point here is that r_{pb} and r_w offer more resistance than r , but they can differ substantially from other resistant estimators.

9.3.10 Kendall's tau

A well-known type M correlation is Kendall's tau. For completeness, it is briefly described here.

Consider two pairs of observations, (X_1, Y_1) and (X_2, Y_2) . For convenience, assume tied values never occur and that $X_1 < X_2$. Then these two pairs of observations are said to be concordant if $Y_1 < Y_2$; otherwise they are discordant. For n pairs of points, let $K_{ij} = 1$ if the i th and j th points are concordant, and if they are discordant, $K_{ij} = -1$. Then Kendall's tau is given by

$$\hat{\tau} = \frac{2}{n(n-1)} \sum_{i < j} K_{ij}. \quad (9.4)$$

Under independence, the population value of $\hat{\tau}$, τ , is zero. The usual test of $H_0: \tau = 0$ is to reject if

$$|Z| \geq z_{1-\frac{\alpha}{2}},$$

where

$$Z = \frac{\hat{\tau}}{\sigma_\tau},$$

and

$$\sigma_\tau^2 = \frac{2(2n+5)}{9n(n-1)}.$$

It is left as an exercise to show that heteroscedasticity affects the probability of rejecting when H_0 is true.

If X and Y have the bivariate distribution H , the influence function of Kendall's tau is

$$IF(x, y) = 2(2P_H[(X-x)(Y-y) > 0] - 1 - \tau)$$

(Croux & Dehon, 2010). So a positive feature of Kendall's tau is that it has infinitesimal robustness. (Its influence function is bounded.) However, although Kendall's tau provides protection against outliers among the X values ignoring Y , or among the Y values ignoring X , it can be seen that outliers can substantially alter its value. (Details are relegated to the exercises.)

9.3.11 Spearman's rho

Assign ranks to the X values, ignoring Y , and assign ranks to the Y values ignoring X . Then Spearman's rho, r_s , is just Pearson's correlation based on the resulting ranks. Like all of the correlations in this section it provides protection against outliers among the X values, ignoring Y , as well as outliers among the Y values, ignoring X , but outliers properly placed can alter its value substantially. Letting ρ_s be the population value of Spearman's rho, the influence function of ρ_s is

$$IF(x, y) = -3\rho_s - 9 + 12\{F(x)G(y) + E(F(X)I(Y \geq y)) + E(G(Y)I(X \geq x))\},$$

where F and G are the marginal distributions of X and Y , respectively, and I is the indicator function (Croux & Dehon, 2010). In terms of asymptotic efficiency and other robustness considerations, results in Croux and Dehon (2010) indicate that Kendall's tau is preferable to Spearman's rho.

When X and Y are independent, $\rho_s = 0$. The usual test of $H_0: \rho_s = 0$ is to reject if $|T| \geq t$, where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of Student's t distribution with $v = n - 2$ degrees of freedom, and

$$T = \frac{r_s \sqrt{n-2}}{\sqrt{1-r_s^2}}.$$

Like all of the hypothesis testing methods in this section, heteroscedasticity affects the probability of rejecting, even when H_0 is true.

Table 9.5 shows estimated power when testing the hypothesis of a zero correlation and $\rho = 0.5$. Included is the power of the test based on Kendall's tau, under the column headed Kend., and Spearman's rho under the column Spear. The main point is that different methods can have more or less power than other methods, one reason being that the parameters being estimated can differ, so it is difficult to select a single method for general use based on the criterion of high power.

Table 9.5: Estimated Power, $n = 20$, $\rho = 0.5$.

g	h	T_w	T	$T_{pb.1}$	$T_{pb.5}$	Kend.	Spear.
0.0	0.0	0.562	0.637	0.620	0.473	0.551	0.568
0.0	0.2	0.589	0.633	0.638	0.512	0.594	0.597
0.0	0.5	0.614	0.603	0.658	0.552	0.644	0.626
0.0	1.0	0.617	0.573	0.658	0.588	0.692	0.659
0.5	0.0	0.588	0.620	0.629	0.499	0.602	0.602
0.5	0.2	0.602	0.608	0.643	0.525	0.624	0.615
0.5	0.5	0.614	0.591	0.653	0.558	0.656	0.638
0.5	1.0	0.611	0.565	0.608	0.591	0.698	0.664
1.0	0.0	0.621	0.597	0.650	0.537	0.668	0.641
1.0	0.2	0.620	0.585	0.652	0.550	0.667	0.644
1.0	0.5	0.619	0.571	0.652	0.569	0.683	0.652
1.0	1.0	0.611	0.559	0.653	0.595	0.709	0.669

9.3.12 R Functions *tau*, *spear*, *cor* and *taureg*

The function

```
tau(x,y,alpha=0.05)
```

computes Kendall's tau, and

```
spear(x,y)
```

computes Spearman's rho. The built-in R function

```
cor(x, y = NULL, use = 'everything', method = c('pearson', 'kendall', 'spearman'))
```

can be used to compute Kendall's tau by setting the argument `method='kendall'`, and Spearman's rho by setting `method='spearman'`. The R functions *tau* and *spear* automatically test the hypothesis of a zero correlation. The R function *cor* does not. For convenience, the function

```
taureg(m,y,corfun=tau)
```

computes the p correlations between every variable in the matrix *m*, having p columns, and the variable *y*. The argument *corfun* can be any function that computes a correlation between two variables only and returns the value in *corfun\$cor* along with the p-value in *corfun\$p.value*. By default, Kendall's tau is used.

9.3.13 Heteroscedastic Tests of Zero Correlation

The tests of the independence based on type M correlations, including Pearson's correlation, are sensitive to heteroscedasticity. That is, even when these correlations are equal to zero, if there is heteroscedasticity, the probability of rejecting can increase as the sample size gets large. So when rejecting, it is reasonable to conclude that the variables under study are dependent, but the reason for rejecting might be due more to heteroscedasticity than to the correlation differing from zero. To test the hypothesis that a (type M) correlation is equal to zero in a manner that is insensitive to heteroscedasticity, a percentile bootstrap method can be used.

When using robust correlations, all indications are that a basic percentile bootstrap performs well in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error. For a random sample $(X_1, Y_1), \dots, (X_n, Y_n)$, generate a bootstrap sample by resampling with replacement n pairs of points yielding $(X_1^*, Y_1^*), \dots, (X_n^*, Y_n^*)$. Compute any of the robust estimators described in this section and label the result r^* . Repeat this B times yielding r_1^*, \dots, r_B^* . Let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, and let $u = B - \ell$. Then reject the hypothesis of a zero correlation if $r_{(\ell+1)}^* > 0$ or $r_{(u)}^* < 0$, where $r_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq r_{(B)}^*$ are the values r_1^*, \dots, r_B^* written in ascending order.

For the special case where r is Pearson's correlation, a modified percentile bootstrap method can be used. When $B = 599$, an approximate 0.95 confidence interval for ρ is

$$(r_{(a)}^*, r_{(c)}^*)$$

where again for $n < 40$, $a = 7$ and $c = 593$; for $40 \leq n < 80$, $a = 8$ and $c = 592$; for $80 \leq n < 180$, $a = 11$ and $c = 588$; for $180 \leq n < 250$, $a = 14$ and $c = 585$; while for $n \geq 250$, $a = 15$ and $c = 584$. As usual, if this interval does not contain zero, reject $H_0 : \rho = 0$.

Section 10.1.1 describes a heteroscedastic method for computing confidence intervals for the usual least squares regression slope based on what is called the HC4 estimator of the standard error. This suggests a simple method for estimating an approximation of the standard error of r . First, standardize both X and Y . That is, compute $Z_x = (X - \mu_x)/s_x$ and $Z_y = (Y - \mu_y)/s_y$. Then apply the method in Section 10.1.1, which yields an estimate of the squared standard error of r , say V . The test statistic is r/\sqrt{V} . The null distribution when testing $H_0: \rho = 0$ is taken to be a Student's t distribution with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom.

Extant simulations indicate that this approach performs well in terms of controlling the Type I error probability and that it performs about as well as the modified percentile bootstrap method. There is some concern that standardizing X and Y might impact the control over the Type I error probability when the sample size is large because Z_x and Z_y are not independent. Simulations based on $n = 1000$ indicate excellent control over the Type I error

probability, suggesting that any dependence between Z_x and Z_y does not have any negative consequences in terms of controlling the Type I error probability. Possible reasons for preferring the HC4 method is that it can be used when testing at any α level and a p-value is readily determined. Despite the limitations associated with the modified percentile bootstrap method, it has been found to have practical value when comparing dependent correlations as noted in Section 11.10.1.

9.3.14 R Functions *corb*, *pcorb* and *pcorhc4*

The R function

```
corb(x,y,corfun=pbcor,nboot=599,...)
```

tests the hypothesis of a zero correlation using the heteroscedastic bootstrap method just described. By default it uses the percentage bend correlation, but any correlation can be specified by the argument corfun. For example, the command `corb(x,y,corfun=wincor,tr=0.25)` will use a 25% Winsorized correlation.

When working with Pearson's correlation, the function

```
pcorb(x,y)
```

applies the modified percentile bootstrap method described in the previous section. The R function

```
pcorhc4(x,y,alpha=0.05)
```

applies the HC4 method.

9.4 Some Type O Correlations

Type M correlations have the property that two properly placed outliers can substantially alter their value. (Illustrations are relegated to the exercises at the end of this chapter.) Type O correlations are an attempt to correct this problem. Section 6.2 described various measures that reflect how deeply a point is nested within a cloud of data, where the measures of depth take into account the overall structure of the data. Roughly, *type O correlations* are correlations that possibly downweight or eliminate one or more points that have low measures of depth. In essence, they are simple extensions of W-estimators described in Section 6.3.6. Included among this class of correlations coefficients are so-called *skipped correlations*, which remove any points flagged as outliers and then compute some correlation coefficient with the data that remain.

9.4.1 MVE and MCD Correlations

An example of a type O correlation has, in essence, already been described in connection with the MCD and MVE estimators of scatter described in Section 6.3. These measures search for the central half of the data and then use this half of the data to estimate location and scatter. As is evident, the covariance associated with this central half of the data readily yields a correlation coefficient. For example, simply compute Pearson's correlation based on the central half of the data.

9.4.2 Skipped Measures of Correlation

Skipped correlations are obtained by checking for any outliers using one of the methods described in Section 6.4, removing them, and applying some correlation coefficient to the remaining data. An example is to remove outliers using the MVE or MCD methods and compute Pearson's correlation after outliers are removed. It is noted that when using the R functions cov.mve and cov.mcd, already described, setting the optional argument cor to T (for true) causes this correlation to be reported. For example, when using cov.mve, the command

```
cov.mve(m,cor=T)
```

accomplishes this goal.

9.4.3 The OP Correlation

In recent years the term skipped correlation has been used to signify a particular type O correlation coefficient that corresponds to the OP correlation described here (e.g., [Pernet, Wilcox, & Rousseelet, 2013](#); [Wilcox, 2015d](#)). The OP correlation coefficient begins by eliminating any outliers using the projection method in Section 6.4.9. Then it computes some correlation coefficient with the data that remain. Pearson's correlation is assumed unless stated otherwise.

Imagine that data are randomly sampled from some bivariate normal distribution. If the goal is to use a skipped correlation coefficient that gives a reasonably accurate estimate of Pearson's correlation, ρ , relative to r , then the OP estimator is the only skipped estimator known to be reasonably satisfactory.

Let r_p represent the skipped correlation coefficient and let m be the number of pairs of points left after outliers are removed. A seemingly simple method for testing the hypothesis of independence is to apply the usual T test for Pearson's correlation but with r replaced by r_p and

n replaced by m . But this simple solution fails because it does not take into account the dependence among the points remaining after outliers are removed. If this problem is ignored, unsatisfactory control over the probability of a Type I error results (Wilcox, 2010f).

Let

$$T_p = r_p \sqrt{\frac{n-2}{1-r_p^2}}$$

and suppose the hypothesis of independence is rejected at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level if $|T_p| \geq c$, where

$$c = \frac{6.947}{n} + 2.3197.$$

The critical value c was determined via simulations under normality by determining an appropriate critical value for n ranging between 10 and 200, and then a least squares regression line was fit to the data. For non-normal distributions, when testing at the 0.05 level, all indications are that this hypothesis testing method has an actual Type I error probability reasonably close to the nominal level.

If the goal is to test the hypothesis that two random variables are independent, inferences based on T_p are reasonable. But if the goal is to test the hypothesis that the population OP measure of association is zero, this is no longer the case because it does not deal with heteroscedasticity. Another negative feature is that it is limited to testing at the 0.05 level. These two limitations can be addressed by using a percentile bootstrap method (Wilcox, 2015d). That is, proceed as described in Section 9.3.13, only use the OP correlation coefficient rather than a type M correlation.

9.4.4 Inferences Based on Multiple Skipped Correlations

The hypothesis testing method based on T_p in the previous section has been extended to the problem of testing the hypothesis that $p \geq 2$ random variables are independent. However, rather than use Pearson's correlation after outliers are removed, Spearman's rho is used. When using Pearson's correlation, no method has been found that adequately controls the probability of a Type I error. But switching to Spearman's rho corrects this problem among extant simulations (Wilcox, 2003e).

Let $\hat{\tau}_{cjk}$ be Spearman's correlation between variables j and k after points flagged as outliers by the projection method are removed. For convenience, it is assumed that

$$H_0 : \tau_{cjk} = 0 \tag{9.5}$$

is to be tested for all $j < k$. Let

$$T_{jk} = \hat{\tau}_{cjk} \sqrt{\frac{n-2}{1-\hat{\tau}_{cjk}^2}},$$

and let

$$T_{\max} = \max |T_{jk}|, \quad (9.6)$$

where the maximum is taken overall $j < k$. The strategy used here to control FWE is to approximate, via simulations, the distribution of T_{\max} under normality when all correlations are zero and $p < 4$, determine the 0.95 quantile, say q , for $n = 10, 20, 30, 40, 60, 100$ and 200 , and then reject $H_0 : \tau_{cjk} = 0$ if $|T_{jk}| \geq q$. For $p \geq 4$, normal distributions were replaced by a g-and-h distribution with $(g, h) = (0, 0.5)$. The reason is that for $p \geq 4$, the probability of at least one Type I error was found to be largest for this special case among the situations considered in [Wilcox \(2003e\)](#). That is, the strategy for choosing an appropriate critical value was to determine q for a distribution that appears to maximize the probability of a Type I error with the goal that FWE should not exceed 0.05 for any distribution that might be encountered in practice. Based on this strategy, the following approximations of q were determined:

$$\begin{aligned} p = 2, \hat{q} &= 5.333n^{-1} + 2.374, \\ p = 3, \hat{q} &= 8.800n^{-1} + 2.780, \\ p = 4, \hat{q} &= 25.67n^{-1.2} + 3.030, \\ p = 5, \hat{q} &= 32.83^{-1.2} + 3.208, \\ p = 6, \hat{q} &= 51.53n^{-1.3} + 3.372, \\ p = 7, \hat{q} &= 75.02n^{-1.4} + 3.502, \\ p = 8, \hat{q} &= 111.34n^{-1.5} + 3.722, \\ p = 9, \hat{q} &= 123.16n^{-1.5} + 3.825, \\ p = 10, \hat{q} &= 126.72n^{-1.5} + 3.943. \end{aligned}$$

Rather than test the hypothesis of a zero correlation among all pairs of random variables, the goal might be to test

$$H_0 : \tau_{c1k} = 0, \quad (9.7)$$

for each k , $k = 2, \dots, p$. Now the approximate critical values are:

$$\begin{aligned} p = 2, \hat{q} &= 5.333n^{-1.0} + 2.374, \\ p = 3, \hat{q} &= 8.811n^{-1.0} + 2.540, \\ p = 4, \hat{q} &= 14.89n^{-1.2} + 2.666, \\ p = 5, \hat{q} &= 20.59n^{-1.2} + 2.920, \\ p = 6, \hat{q} &= 51.01n^{-1.5} + 2.999, \\ p = 7, \hat{q} &= 52.15n^{-1.5} + 3.097, \\ p = 8, \hat{q} &= 59.13n^{-1.5} + 3.258, \\ p = 9, \hat{q} &= 64.93n^{-1.5} + 3.286, \\ p = 10, \hat{q} &= 58.50n^{-1.5} + 3.414. \end{aligned}$$

Again, these approximate critical values are designed so that FWE is approximately 0.05.

As previously noted, the methods just described are designed to test the hypothesis of independence. If the goal is to test the hypothesis that the correlations are zero, there are no results regarding how to deal with heteroscedasticity when dealing with $p > 2$ variables.

9.4.5 R Functions *scor*, *mscor* and *scorci*

The R function

```
scor(x,y=NA,corfun=pcor,gval=NA,plotit=T,cop=3,op=T,MC=FALSE)
```

computes the skipped correlation (the OP correlation coefficient). If the argument *y* is not specified, it is assumed that *x* is an n -by- p matrix in which case the skipped correlation is computed for each pair of variables. The argument *corfun* controls which correlation is computed after outliers are removed; by default, Pearson's correlation is used. The arguments *gval*, *cop* and *op* are relevant to the projection outlier detection method; see Section 6.4.10. If *MC*=TRUE, the multicore version of the function *outpro* is used to detect outliers. The R package WRScpp, mentioned in Section 1.8, contains the R function

```
scor_C(x,y=NA,corfun=pcor,gval=NA,plotit=T,cop=3,op=T,MC=FALSE)
```

which is a C++ version of *scor*. It substantially reduces execution time, which might be an issue when using the skipped correlation in conjunction with a bootstrap method.

The R function

```
mscor(m,corfun=spear,cop=3,gval=NA,ap=T,pw=T)
```

also computes a skipped correlation coefficient, but it defaults to using Spearman's correlation, and when testing the hypotheses corresponding to Eq. (9.5) or Eq. (9.7) it controls FWE (the familywise error rate) using the approximations of an appropriate critical value outlined in the previous subsection, assuming FWE is to be 0.05. If ap=T, the hypothesis of a zero correlation for each pair of variables is tested. If ap=F, the hypotheses corresponding to Eq. (9.7) are tested instead.

The R function

```
scorci(x, y, nboot = 1000, alpha=0.05, SEED = TRUE, plotit = TRUE, corfun = pcor,
       cop = 3, ...)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the skipped correlation using a percentile bootstrap method. So unlike the R function scor and mscor, scorci is designed to make inferences about a skipped correlation without being sensitive to heteroscedasticity. The R function

```
scorciMC(x, y, nboot = 1000, alpha=0.05, SEED = TRUE, plotit = TRUE, corfun = pcor,
          cop = 3, ...)
```

is the same as scorci, only it takes advantage of a multicore processor if one is available, assuming the R package parallel has been installed.

9.5 A Test of Independence Sensitive to Curvature

Let $(\mathbf{X}_1, Y_1), \dots, (\mathbf{X}_n, Y_n)$ be a random sample of n pairs of points where \mathbf{X} is a vector having length p . The goal in this section is to test the hypothesis that \mathbf{X} and Y are independent in a manner that is sensitive to curvature as well as any linear association that might exist.

Method IND_T

The first method described here stems from general theoretical results derived by [Stute, González Manteiga, and Presedo Quindimil \(1998\)](#). It does not assume or require homoscedasticity and is based in part on what is called a wild bootstrap method. Stute et al. establish that other types of bootstrap methods are not suitable when using the test statistic to be described. Essentially, the method in this section is designed to test the hypothesis that the regression

surface for predicting Y , given \mathbf{X} , is a horizontal plane. Let $E(Y|\mathbf{X})$ represent the conditional mean of Y given \mathbf{X} . The goal is to test

$$H_0 : E(Y|\mathbf{X}) = \mu_y.$$

That is, the conditional mean of Y , given \mathbf{X} , does not depend on \mathbf{X} .

The test statistic is computed as follows. Let \bar{Y} be the mean based on Y_1, \dots, Y_n . (Using a trimmed mean or some other robust estimator can result in poor control over the probability of a Type I error when Y has a sufficiently skewed distribution.) Fix j and set $I_i = 1$ if $\mathbf{X}_i \leq \mathbf{X}_j$, otherwise $I_i = 0$. The notation $\mathbf{X}_i \leq \mathbf{X}_j$ means that for every k , $k = 1, \dots, p$, $X_{ik} \leq X_{jk}$. Let

$$\begin{aligned} R_j &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum I_i (Y_i - \bar{Y}) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum I_i r_i, \end{aligned} \tag{9.8}$$

where

$$r_i = Y_i - \bar{Y}.$$

The test statistic is the maximum absolute value of all the R_j values. That is, the test statistic is

$$D = \max |R_j|. \tag{9.9}$$

An appropriate critical value is estimated with the *wild bootstrap method* as follows. Generate U_1, \dots, U_n from a uniform distribution and set

$$V_i = \sqrt{12}(U_i - 0.5),$$

$$r_i^* = r_i V_i,$$

and

$$Y_i^* = \bar{Y} + r_i^*.$$

Then based on the n pairs of points $(\mathbf{X}_1, Y_1^*), \dots, (\mathbf{X}_n, Y_n^*)$, compute the test statistic as described in the previous paragraph and label it D^* . Repeat this process B times and label the resulting (bootstrap) test statistics D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* . Finally, put these B values in ascending order, which we label $D_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}^*$. Then the critical value is $D_{(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer. That is, reject if

$$D \geq D_{(u)}^*.$$

An alternative test statistic has been studied where D is replaced by

$$W = \frac{1}{n}(R_1^2 + \cdots + R_n^2). \quad (9.10)$$

The critical value is determined in a similar manner as before. First, generate a wild bootstrap sample and compute W yielding W^* . Repeating this B times and reject if

$$W \geq W_{(u)}^*,$$

where again $u = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer, and $W_{(1)}^* \leq \cdots \leq W_{(B)}^*$ are the B W^* values written in ascending order. The test statistic D is called the *Kolmogorov–Smirnov* test statistic, and W is called the *Cramér–von Mises* test statistic. The choice between these two test statistics is not clear cut. For $p = 1$, currently it seems that there is little separating them in terms of controlling Type I errors. The extent to which this remains true when $p > 1$ appears to have received little or no attention.

Method MEDIND

A seemingly natural way of generalizing the method to a robust measure of location is to replace \bar{Y} with say the median or 20% trimmed mean. But when the distribution of Y is sufficiently skewed, control over the probability of a Type I error can be highly unsatisfactory. There is, however, an alternative method that can be used with the median, which is based on a modification of a method derived by [He and Zhu \(2003\)](#); see [Wilcox \(2008e\)](#) for details.

Let \mathbf{x} be the $n \times (p + 1)$ matrix with the first column containing all ones and the remaining p columns are the columns of \mathbf{X} . Following [He and Zhu \(2003\)](#), it is assumed that the design has been normalized so that $n^{-1} \sum \mathbf{x}_j \mathbf{x}'_j - I = o(1)$. Let $r_i = Y_i - \hat{Y}_\gamma$, where \hat{Y}_γ is some estimate of the γ th quantile of Y . Currently, simulation results on how well the method controls the probability of a Type I error are limited to the quartiles. For the 0.5 quantile, $\hat{Y}_{0.5}$ is taken to be the usual sample median. Here the lower and upper quartiles are estimated via the ideal fourths. Let

$$\mathbf{W}_i = n^{-1/2} \sum_{k=1}^n \psi(r_k) \mathbf{x}_k I(\mathbf{x}_k \leq \mathbf{x}_i),$$

where $\psi(r) = \gamma I(r > 0) + (\gamma - 1)I(r < 0)$. For fixed j , let U_{ij} be the ranks of the n values in the j th column of \mathbf{x} , $j = 2, \dots, q$. Let $F_i = \max U_{ij}$, the maximum being taken over $j = 2, \dots, q$. If $\mathbf{x}_k \leq \mathbf{x}_i$, then $F_k \leq F_i$. The test statistic is D_n , the largest eigenvalue of

$$\mathbf{Z} = \frac{1}{n} \sum \mathbf{W}_i \mathbf{W}'_i.$$

The strategy for determining an appropriate critical value is to temporarily assume normality, use simulations to approximate the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of the null distribution, say c , and then reject the null hypothesis if $T_n \geq c$ even when sampling from a non-normal distribution.

An advantage of the methods just described is that they are sensitive to a variety of ways two or more variables might be dependent. But a limitation is that when they reject, it is unclear why. That is, these tests do not provide any information about the nature of the association.

9.5.1 R Functions *indt*, *indtall* and *medind*

The R function

```
indt(x,y,nboot=500,tr=0.2,flag=1)
```

tests the hypothesis of independence using method INDT. As usual, x and y are R variables containing data, tr indicates the amount of trimming used when computing the Cramér–von Mises test statistic, and $nboot$ is B . Here, x can be a single variable or a matrix having n rows and p columns. The argument $flag$ indicates which test statistic will be used:

- $flag=1$ means the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic, D , is used.
- $flag=2$ means the Cramér–von Mises test statistic, W , is used.
- $flag=3$ means both test statistics are computed.

■ Example

[Sockett, Daneman, Carlson, and Ehrich \(1987\)](#) report data from a study dealing with diabetes in children. One of the variables was the age of a child at diagnosis and another was a measure called base deficit. Using the conventional (Student's t) test of $H_0: \rho = 0$ based on Pearson's correlation, we fail to reject at the 0.05 level. (The p-value is 0.135.) We again fail to reject with a skipped correlation, a 20% Winsorized correlation, and a percentage bend correlation. Using the bootstrap methods for Pearson's correlation or the percentage bend correlation, again no association is detected. But using the function *indt*, we reject at the 0.05 level. A possible explanation is that (based on methods covered in Chapter 11), the regression line between these two variables appears to have some curvature which might mask a true association when attention is restricted to one of the correlation coefficients covered in this chapter.

The function

```
indtall(x,y=NA,nboot=500,tr=0.2)
```

performs all pairwise tests of independence for the variables in the matrix x if $y=NA$. If data are found in y , then the function performs p tests of independence between each of the p variables in x and y . The current version computes only the Kolmogorov–Smirnov test statistic. Each test is performed at the level indicated by the argument alpha.

The function

```
medind(x, y, qval = 0.5, nboot = 1000, SEED = T, tr=0.2, pr = T, xout = F, outfun = out, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis of independence using method MEDIND. The function contains critical values for a range of situations. If a critical value is not available, one is determined via simulations with the number of replications determined by the argument nboot.

9.6 Comparing Correlations: Independent Case

This section deals with comparing correlations associated with two independent groups. Comparing dependent correlations is covered in Section 11.10.1.

9.6.1 Comparing Pearson Correlations

Numerous methods have been proposed for testing the hypothesis that two Pearson correlations are equal. More formally, the goal is to test

$$H_0 : \rho_1 = \rho_2, \quad (9.11)$$

where r_1 and r_2 , the estimates of ρ_1 and ρ_2 , respectively, are independent. A comparison of various methods (Wilcox, 2009d) indicates that a modified percentile bootstrap method performs relatively well, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when the sample sizes are small. Let $N = n_1 + n_2$ be the total number of pairs of observations. For the j th group ($j = 1, 2$), generate a bootstrap sample of n_j pairs of observations. Let r_1^* and r_2^* represent the resulting correlation coefficients and set

$$D^* = r_1^* - r_2^*.$$

Repeat this process 599 times yielding D_1^*, \dots, D_{599}^* . Then a 0.95 confidence interval for the difference between the population correlation coefficients, $\rho_1 - \rho_2$, is

$$(D_{(\ell)}^*, D_{(u)}^*),$$

where for $\ell = 7$ and $u = 593$ if $N < 40$; $\ell = 8$ and $u = 592$ if $40 \leq N < 80$; $\ell = 11$ and $u = 588$ if $80 \leq N < 180$; $\ell = 14$ and $u = 585$ if $180 \leq N < 250$; $\ell = 15$ and $u = 584$ if $N \geq 250$.

An alternative approach is to use the HC4 method in Section 9.3.13 for estimating an approximation of the squared standard error of r_1 and r_2 , say V_1 and V_2 , respectively. Then a test statistic is simply

$$T = \frac{r_1 - r_2}{\sqrt{V_1 + V_2}}$$

with the null distribution taken to be a Student's t distribution with $n_1 + n_2 - 4$ degrees of freedom. For $n_1 = n_2 = 30$ and when testing at the 0.05, the actual Type I error probability tends to be less than the nominal level. The modified percentile bootstrap method is more satisfactory. When both sample sizes are greater than or equal to 50, the HC4 method performs well, with the modified bootstrap method offering little or no advantage. Another advantage of the HC4 method is that it is not restricted to testing at the 0.05 level.

9.6.2 Comparing Robust Correlations

When comparing robust correlations, all indications are that a basic percentile bootstrap method performs reasonably well. That is, no modification, as described in the previous section, is necessary.

9.6.3 R Functions *twopcor*, *twohc4cor* and *twocor*

The R function

```
twopcor(x1, y1, x2, y2, SEED = T)
```

computes a confidence interval for $\rho_1 - \rho_2$ using the modified bootstrap method just described. The R function

```
twohc4cor(x1,y1,x2,y2,alpha=0.05)
```

tests the hypothesis of equal Pearson correlations using the HC4 method.

The R function

```
twocor(x1, y1, x2, y2, corfun = pbcor, nboot = 599, tr=0.2, SEED = T, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that two robust correlation coefficients are equal. The choice of correlation is indicated by the argument corfun, which defaults to the percentage bend correlation. The function returns a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval and a p-value.

9.7 Exercises

1. Generate 20 observations from a standard normal distribution and store them in the R variable `ep`. Repeat this and store the values in `x`. Compute $y=x+ep$ and compute Kendall's tau. Generally, what happens if two pairs of points are added at $(2.1, -2.4)$? Does this have a large impact on tau? What would you expect to happen to the p-value when testing $H_0: \tau = 0$?
2. Repeat Exercise 1 with Spearman's rho, the percentage bend correlation, and the Winsorized correlation.
3. Demonstrate that heteroscedasticity affects the probability of a Type I error when testing the hypothesis of a zero correlation based on any type M correlation and non-bootstrap method covered in this chapter.
4. Use the function `cov.mve(m,cor=T)` to compute the MVE correlation for the star data in Figure 9.2. Compare the results to the Winsorized, percentage bend, skipped and biweight correlations, as well the M-estimate of correlation returned by the R function `relfun`.
5. Using the Group 1 alcohol data in Section 8.6.2, compute the MVE estimate of correlation and compare the results to the biweight midcorrelation, the percentage bend correlation using $\beta = 0.1, 0.2, 0.3, 0.4$, and 0.5 , Winsorized correlation using $\gamma = 0.1$ and 0.2 , and the skipped correlation.
6. Repeat the previous problem using the data for Group 2.
7. The method for detecting outliers, described in Section 6.4.3, could be modified by replacing the MVE estimator with the Winsorized mean and covariance matrix. Discuss how this would be done and its relative merits.
8. Using the data in the file `read.dat`, test for independence using the data in columns 2, 3, and 10 and the R function `pball`. Try $\beta = 0.1, 0.3$, and 0.5 . Comment on any discrepancies.
9. Examine the variables in the last exercise using the R functions `mscor`.
10. For the data used in the last two exercises, test the hypothesis of independence using the function `indt`. Why might `indt` find an association not detected by any of the correlations covered in this chapter?
11. For the data in the file `read.dat`, test for independence using the data in columns 4 and 5 and $\beta = 0.1$.
12. The definition of the percentage bend correlation coefficient, ρ_{pb} , involves a measure of scale, ω_x , that is estimated with $\hat{\omega} = W_{(m)}$, where $W_i = |X_i - M_x|$ and $m = [(1 - \beta)n]$, and $0 \leq \beta \leq 0.5$. Note that this measure of scale is defined even when $0.5 < \beta < 1$ provided that $m > 0$. Argue that the finite sample breakdown point of this estimator is maximized when $\beta = 0.5$.

13. If in the definition of the biweight midcovariance, the median is replaced by the biweight measure of location, the biweight midcovariance is equal to zero under independence. Describe some negative consequences of replacing the median with the biweight measure of location.
14. Let X be a standard normal random variable, and suppose Y is a contaminated normal with probability density function given by Eq. (1.1). Let $Q = \rho X + \sqrt{1 - \rho^2}Y$, $-1 \leq \rho \leq 1$. Verify that the correlation between X and Q is

$$\frac{\rho}{\sqrt{\rho^2 + (1 - \rho^2)(1 - \epsilon + \epsilon K^2)}}.$$

Examine how the correlation changes as K gets large with $\epsilon = 0.1$. What does this illustrate about the robustness of ρ ?

Robust Regression

Suppose $(y_i, x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip})$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, are n vectors of observations randomly sampled from some $(p + 1)$ -variate distribution, where (x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip}) is a vector of predictor values.¹ In some situations the predictors are fixed, known constants, but this distinction is not particularly relevant for most of the results reported here. (Exceptions are noted when necessary.) A general goal is understanding how y is related to the p predictors, which includes finding a method of estimating a conditional measure of location associated with y given (x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip}) , and there is now a vast arsenal of regression methods that might be used. Even when attention is restricted to robust methods, all relevant techniques would easily take up an entire book. In order to reduce the number of techniques to a reasonable size, attention is focused on estimation and hypothesis testing methods that perform reasonably well in simulation studies, in terms of efficiency and probability coverage, particularly when there is a heteroscedastic error term. For more information about robust regression, see [Belsley, Kuh, and Welsch \(1980\)](#), [Birkes and Dodge \(1993\)](#), [Carroll and Ruppert \(1988\)](#), [Cook and Weisberg \(1992\)](#), [Fox \(1999\)](#), [Hampel, Ronchetti, Rousseeuw, and Stahel \(1986\)](#), [Hettmansperger \(1984\)](#), [Hettmansperger and McKean \(1998\)](#), [Huber \(1981\)](#), [Li \(1985\)](#), [Montgomery and Peck \(1992\)](#), [Rousseeuw and Leroy \(1987\)](#), [Staudte and Sheather \(1990\)](#), and [Maronna, Martin, and Yohai \(2006\)](#). For methods dealing with functional data, see [Gervini and Yohai \(2002\)](#).

Robust methods that have practical value when the error term is homoscedastic, but are unsatisfactory when the error term is heteroscedastic, are not described or only briefly mentioned. A natural suggestion for trying to salvage homoscedastic methods is to test the hypothesis that there is, indeed, homoscedasticity. But this approach has been found to be unsatisfactory for reasons reviewed in Section 10.1.5.

In regression, the most common assumption is that

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \dots + \beta_p x_{ip} + \epsilon_i, \quad (10.1)$$

where β_0, \dots, β_p are unknown parameters, $i = 1, \dots, n$, the ϵ_i are independent random variables with $E(\epsilon_i) = 0$, $\text{VAR}(\epsilon_i) = \sigma^2$. This model implies that the conditional mean of y_i ,

¹ When dealing with regression, the remaining three chapters write random variables as lowercase Roman letters.

given (x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip}) , is $\beta_0 + \sum \beta_k x_{ik}$, a linear combination of the predictors. Eq. (10.1) is a *homoscedastic* model, meaning that the ϵ_i have a common variance. If the error term, ϵ_i , has variance σ_i^2 , and $\sigma_i^2 \neq \sigma_j^2$, for some $i \neq j$, the model is said to be *heteroscedastic*. Even when ϵ has a normal distribution, heteroscedasticity can result in relatively low efficiency when using the conventional (ordinary least squares) estimator, meaning that the estimator of β can have a relatively large standard error. Also, probability coverage can be poor when computing confidence intervals, as will be illustrated. Dealing with these two problems is one of the major goals in this chapter. Other general goals are dealing with outliers and achieving high efficiency when sampling from heavy-tailed distributions.

Before continuing, some comments about notation might be useful. At times, standard vector and matrix notation will be used. In particular, let

$$\mathbf{x}_i = (x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip})$$

and

$$\begin{aligned}\boldsymbol{\beta} &= (\beta_1, \dots, \beta_p)' \\ &= \begin{pmatrix} \beta_1 \\ \vdots \\ \beta_p \end{pmatrix}.\end{aligned}$$

Then

$$\mathbf{x}_i \boldsymbol{\beta} = \beta_1 x_{i1} + \dots + \beta_p x_{ip}$$

and Eq. (10.1) becomes

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \mathbf{x}_i \boldsymbol{\beta} + \epsilon_i.$$

This chapter begins with a summary of practical problems associated with least squares regression. Then various robust estimators are described and some comments are made about their relative merits. Inferential techniques, based on the robust regression estimators introduced in this chapter, are described and illustrated in Chapter 11.

10.1 Problems with Ordinary Least Squares

Let b_j be any estimate of β_j , $j = 0, 1, \dots, p$, and let

$$\hat{y}_i = b_0 + b_1 x_{i1} + \dots + b_p x_{ip}.$$

From basic principles, the ordinary least squares (OLS) estimator arises without making any distributional assumptions. The estimates are the b_j values ($j = 0, \dots, p$) that minimize

$$\sum (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2,$$

the sum of the squared residuals. In order to test hypotheses or compute confidence intervals, typically the homoscedastic model given by Eq. (10.1) is assumed with the additional assumption that ϵ has a normal distribution with mean zero. Even when ϵ is normal, but heteroscedastic, problems with computing confidence intervals arise.

Consider, for example, simple regression where there is only one predictor ($p = 1$). Then the OLS estimate of the slope is

$$\hat{\beta}_1 = \frac{\sum (x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)(y_i - \bar{y})}{\sum (x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)^2},$$

where $\bar{x}_1 = \sum x_{i1}/n$ and $\bar{y} = \sum y_i/n$, and the OLS estimate of β_0 is

$$\hat{\beta}_0 = \bar{y} - \hat{\beta}_1 \bar{x}_1.$$

Suppose

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \lambda(x_{i1})\epsilon_i, \quad (10.2)$$

where $\text{VAR}(\epsilon_i) = \sigma^2$ and λ is some unknown function of x_{i1} used to model heteroscedasticity. That is, the error term is now $\lambda(x_{i1})\epsilon_i$, and its variance varies with x_{i1} , so it is heteroscedastic. The usual homoscedastic model corresponds to $\lambda(x_{i1}) \equiv 1$. To illustrate the effect of heterogeneity when computing confidence intervals, suppose both x_{i1} and ϵ_i have standard normal distributions, $\beta_1 = 1$, $\beta_0 = 0$, and $\lambda(x_{i1}) = \sqrt{|x_{i1}|}$. Thus, the error term, $\lambda(x_{i1})\epsilon_i$, has a relatively small variance when x_{i1} is close to zero, and the variance increases as x_{i1} moves away from zero. The standard $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the slope, β_1 , is

$$\hat{\beta}_1 \pm t_{1-\alpha/2} \sqrt{\frac{\hat{\sigma}^2}{\sum (x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)^2}},$$

where $t_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a Student's t distribution with $n - 2$ degrees of freedom,

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \sum \frac{r_i^2}{n - 2},$$

and $r_i = y_i - \hat{\beta}_1 x_{i1} - \hat{\beta}_0$ are the residuals. When the error term is homoscedastic and normal, the probability coverage is exactly $1 - \alpha$.

Let $\hat{\alpha}$ be a simulation estimate of one minus the probability coverage when computing a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_1 . When using the conventional confidence interval for β_1 , with $n = 20$, $\lambda(x_{i1}) = \sqrt{|x_{i1}|}$, and $\alpha = 0.05$, $\hat{\alpha} = 0.135$ based on a simulation with 1000

replications. If $\lambda(x_{i1}) = |x_{i1}|$, the estimate increases to 0.214. If instead x_{i1} has a g-and-h distribution (described in Section 4.2) with $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$ (a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution) $\hat{\alpha}$ increases to 0.52. Put another way, when testing $H_0: \beta_1 = 1$ with $\alpha = 0.05$, the actual probability of a Type I error can be more than 10 times the nominal level. A similar problem arises when testing $H_0: \beta_0 = 0$. A natural strategy is to test the assumptions of normality and homogeneity, but as already noted, such tests might not have enough power to detect a situation where these assumptions yield poor probability coverage. (Section 10.1.5 provides more details about testing the homoscedasticity assumption.)

Another problem with OLS is that it can be highly inefficient, and this can result in relatively low power. As will be illustrated, this problem arises even when ϵ_i is normal but $\lambda(x_{i1})$ is not equal to one. That is, the error term has a normal distribution but is heteroscedastic. Low efficiency also arises when the error term is homoscedastic but has a heavy-tailed distribution. As an illustration, again consider simple regression. When the error term is homoscedastic, $\hat{\beta}_1$, the OLS estimate of β_1 , has variance

$$\frac{\sigma^2}{\sum(x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)^2}.$$

But from results described and illustrated in Chapters 1, 2, and 3, σ^2 , the variance of the error term, becomes inflated if sampling is from a heavy-tailed distribution. That is, slight departures from normality, as measured by the Kolmogorov distance function, result in large increases in the standard error of $\hat{\beta}_1$. (This problem is well known and discussed by [Hampel, 1973](#); [Schrader & Hettmansperger, 1980](#); [He, Simpson, & Portnoy, 1990](#), among others.) Note, however, that if the x_{i1} are sampled from a heavy-tailed distribution, this inflates the expected value of $\sum(x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)^2$, relative to sampling from a normal distribution, in which case the standard error of $\hat{\beta}_1$ tends to be smaller versus the situation where x_{i1} is normal. In fact, a single outlier among the x_{i1} values inflates $\sum(x_{i1} - \bar{x}_1)^2$, causing the estimate of the squared standard error to decrease. Consequently, there is interest in searching for methods that have good efficiency when ϵ has a heavy-tailed distribution, and maintains relatively high efficiency when the x_i values are randomly sampled from a heavy-tailed distribution as well.

One strategy is to check for outliers, remove any that are found, and proceed with standard OLS methods using the data that remain. (For recent results on detecting influential points, when using OLS, see [Roberts, Martin, & Zheng, 2015](#).) Removing points associated with outliers among the independent variable is innocuous when testing hypotheses. But removing outliers among the dependent variable and using standard methods for testing hypotheses results in inaccurate estimates of the standard errors. A bootstrap estimate of the standard error could be used instead, but little is known about the effectiveness of this approach. Also, simply removing outliers does not always deal effectively with low efficiency due to a heteroscedastic error term.

Yet another practical problem is that OLS has a breakdown point of only $1/n$. That is, a single point, properly placed, can cause the OLS estimator to have virtually any value. Not only do unusual y values cause problems, outlying x values, called *leverage points*, can have an inordinate influence on the estimated slopes and intercept.

It should be noted that two types of leverage points play a role in regression: good and bad. Roughly, leverage points are good or bad depending on whether they are reasonably consistent with the true regression line. A *regression outlier* is a point with a relatively large residual. A *bad leverage point* is a leverage point that is also a regression outlier. A *good leverage point* is a leverage point that is not a regression outlier. Leverage points can reduce the standard error of the OLS estimator, but a bad leverage point can result in a poor fit to the bulk of the data.

Despite the many concerns associated with OLS, it is not being suggested that it be completely abandoned. Removing bad leverage points might result in a satisfactory fit to the bulk of the points. Also, in some situations there might be interest in the conditional mean of y given \mathbf{x} , even though the population mean is not robust.

10.1.1 Computing Confidence Intervals Under Heteroscedasticity

When using the OLS estimator, various methods have been proposed for computing confidence intervals for regression parameters when the error term is heteroscedastic. One strategy when dealing with heteroscedasticity is to transform the data (e.g., [Carrol & Ruppert, 1988](#)). The focus here is on methods that appear to perform well without relying on any transformation. Perhaps situations arise where transformations have practical value relative to the methods described here, but it seems that this issue has not been investigated. The methods described here compete well with homoscedastic methods when indeed the error term is homoscedastic. Attention is restricted to the seemingly better methods followed by comments regarding their relative merits.

[Wilcox \(1996c\)](#) found that for the special case $p = 1$ (one predictor only), only one method performed well among the situations he considered. For $p > 1$ a slight modification is recommended ([Wilcox, 2003f](#)) when the goal is to have simultaneous probability coverage equal to $1 - \alpha$ for all p slope parameters. The method begins by sampling, with replacement, n vectors of observations from (y_i, \mathbf{x}_i) , $i = 1, \dots, n$. Put another way, a bootstrap sample is obtained by randomly sampling, with replacement, n rows of data from the n -by- $(p + 1)$ matrix

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1, x_{11}, \dots, x_{1p} \\ y_2, x_{21}, \dots, x_{2p} \\ \vdots \\ y_n, x_{n1}, \dots, x_{np} \end{pmatrix}.$$

The resulting n vectors of observations are labeled

$$(y_1^*, x_{11}^*, \dots, x_{1p}^*), \dots, (y_n^*, x_{n1}^*, \dots, x_{np}^*).$$

Let $\hat{\beta}_j^*$ be the OLS estimate of β_j , the j th slope parameter, $j = 1, \dots, p$, based on the bootstrap sample just obtained. Repeat this bootstrap process B times yielding $\hat{\beta}_{j1}^*, \hat{\beta}_{j2}^*, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{jB}^*$. Let $\hat{\beta}_{j(1)}^* \leq \hat{\beta}_{j(2)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\beta}_{j(B)}^*$ be the B bootstrap estimates written in ascending order.

For the special case $p = 1$, a slight modification of the standard percentile bootstrap method is used. When $B = 599$, the 0.95 confidence interval for β_1 is

$$(\hat{\beta}_{1(a+1)}^*, \hat{\beta}_{1(c)}^*),$$

where for $n < 40$, $a = 6$ and $c = 593$; for $40 \leq n < 80$, $a = 7$ and $c = 592$; for $80 \leq n < 180$, $a = 10$ and $c = 589$; for $180 \leq n < 250$, $a = 13$ and $c = 586$; while for $n \geq 250$, $a = 15$ and $c = 584$. Note that this method becomes the standard percentile bootstrap procedure when $n \geq 250$. If, for example, $n = 20$, the lower end of the 0.95 confidence interval is given by $\hat{\beta}_{1(7)}^*$. A confidence interval for the intercept is computed in the same manner, but currently it seems best to use $a = 15$ and $c = 584$ for any n . That is, use the usual percentile bootstrap confidence interval. From results described in Chapter 4, there are situations where the confidence interval for the intercept can be expected to have unsatisfactory probability coverage. In essence, the situation reduces to computing a percentile bootstrap confidence interval for the mean when the slope parameters are all equal to zero. A criticism of this method is that it is limited to $\alpha = 0.05$.

As for $p > 1$, if the goal is to achieve simultaneous probability coverage equal to $1 - \alpha$, it currently appears that the best approach is to use a standard percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with the Bonferroni inequality ([Wilcox, 2003f](#)). So, set

$$\ell = \frac{\alpha B}{2p},$$

round ℓ to the nearest integer, let $u = B - \ell$, in which case the confidence interval for the j th predictor ($j = 1, \dots, p$) is

$$(\hat{\beta}_{j(\ell+1)}^*, \hat{\beta}_{j(u)}^*).$$

For $p = 1$, the bootstrap confidence interval just described is based on the strategy of finding a method that gives good results under normality and homoscedasticity, and then using this method when there is heteroscedasticity or sampling is from a non-normal distribution. Simulations were then used to see whether the method continues to perform well when sampling from non-normal distributions, or when there is heteroscedasticity. Relative to other methods

that have been proposed, the modified bootstrap procedure has a clear advantage. This result is somewhat unexpected because in general, when working with nonrobust measures of location and scale, this strategy performs rather poorly. If, for example, the percentile bootstrap method is adjusted so that the resulting confidence interval for the mean has probability coverage close to the nominal level when sampling from a normal distribution, probability coverage can be poor when sampling from non-normal distributions instead.

Another strategy is to obtain bootstrap samples by resampling residuals, as opposed to vectors of observations as is done here. When dealing with heteroscedasticity, theoretical results do not support this approach (Wu, 1986), and simulations indicate that unsatisfactory probability coverage can result. Of course, one could check for homoscedasticity in an attempt to justify resampling residuals, but there is no known way of being reasonably certain that the error term is sufficiently homoscedastic. Again, any test of the assumption of homoscedasticity might not have enough power to detect heteroscedasticity in situations where the assumption should be discarded.

Nanayakkara and Cressie (1991) derived another method for computing a confidence interval for the regression parameters when the error term is heteroscedastic. When the x_{i1} values are fixed and evenly spaced, their method appears to give good probability coverage, but otherwise probability coverage can be unsatisfactory.

Long and Ervin (2000) compared several non-bootstrap methods for dealing with heteroscedasticity and recommended one particular method for general use, which is based on what is called the HC3 estimate of the standard errors. The HC3 estimator is

$$\text{HC3} = (\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{X}'\text{diag}\left[\frac{r_i^2}{(1-h_{ii})^2}\right]\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1},$$

where r_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) are the usual residuals,

$$h_{ii} = \mathbf{x}_i(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{x}'_i,$$

and

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_{11} & \cdots & x_{1p} \\ 1 & x_{21} & \cdots & x_{2p} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 1 & x_{n1} & \cdots & x_{np} \end{pmatrix}$$

and \mathbf{x}_i is the i th row of \mathbf{X}_i (e.g., MacKinnon & White, 1985). If b_0, \dots, b_p are the least squares estimates of the $p + 1$ parameters, the diagonal elements of the matrix HC3 represent the estimated squared standard errors. So if S_j^2 ($j = 0, \dots, p$) is the j th diagonal element

HC3, the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_j is taken to be

$$b_j \pm t S_j,$$

where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a Student's t distribution with $v = n - p - 1$ degrees of freedom. But it is unknown how large n must be to ensure reasonably accurate confidence intervals. For a single predictor, it is known that $n = 60$ might not suffice (Wilcox, 2001b). Cribari-Neto and Lima (2014) describe situations where the actual level exceeds the nominal level, when using a quasi t-test, even when the error term has a normal distribution.

Godfrey (2006) suggested an alternative to the HC3 estimator, the HC4 estimator. His results suggest that it is better for general use. But when testing hypotheses, a possible concern is that the use of HC4 can result in the actual Type I error probability being substantially less than the nominal level. Ng and Wilcox (2009) describe situations where the reverse problem occurs. Cribari-Neto and Lima (2014) suggest alternatives to the HC3 and HC4 estimators, one of which appears to perform well when testing the hypothesis of a zero slope based on a quasi t-test.

Let h_{ii} be defined as done when using the HC3 estimator. Let $\bar{h} = \sum h_{ii}/n$, $e_{ii} = h_{ii}/\bar{h}$, and $d_{ii} = \min(4, e_{ii})$. The HC4 estimator is

$$\mathbf{S} = (\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{X}'\text{diag}\left[\frac{r_i^2}{(1-h_{ii})^{d_{ii}}}\right]\mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}.$$

The diagonal elements of the matrix \mathbf{S} , which we denote by $S_0^2, S_1^2, \dots, S_p^2$, are the estimated squared standard errors of b_0, b_1, \dots, b_p , respectively. Following Ng and Wilcox (2009), the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_j is taken to be

$$b_j \pm t S_j,$$

where t is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a Student's t distribution with $v = n - p - 1$ degrees of freedom. (Cribari-Neto, Souza, & Vasconcellos, 2007, suggest an alternative to the HC4 estimator, but for the situation at hand it seems to offer no practical advantage; see Ng, 2009b.)

Wald-Type Statistics Used in Conjunction with a Wild Bootstrap

Method HC4WB-D

Two wild bootstrap methods should be mentioned, both of which are based in part on what is called a Wald-type statistic. The first, which is labeled the HC4WB-D and based in part on the Rademacher function, is performed as follows:

1. Again let b_j be the ordinary least squares estimate of β_j , compute S_j , the HC4 estimate of the standard error.
2. Compute the Wald test statistic

$$W = (b_j - 0)S_j^{-1}(b_j - 0).$$

3. Generate D_1, \dots, D_n from a two-point (lattice) distribution. That is,

$$D_i = \begin{cases} -1 & \text{with probability 0.5} \\ 1 & \text{with probability 0.5.} \end{cases}$$

A bootstrap sample (y_i^*, \mathbf{x}_i) , assuming the null hypothesis is true, is given by $y_i^* = \bar{y} + D_i r_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, where $\hat{\beta} = (\hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_p)'$ are the ordinary least squares estimate under the assumption that the null hypothesis is true.

4. Compute the ordinary least squares estimate (b_j^*) based on this bootstrap sample as well as the HC4 estimate of the standard error (S_j^*) . Compute the Wald test statistic

$$W^* = (b_j^* - 0)S_j^{*-1}(b_j^* - 0)$$

based on the bootstrap sample.

5. Repeat steps 2–4 B times yielding W_b^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$.
6. A p-value for $H_0: \beta_j = 0$ is given by

$$p = \frac{\#\{W_b^* \geq W\}}{B}.$$

Reject H_0 if $p \leq \alpha$.

Method HC4WB-C

Method HC4WB-C is exactly like method HC4WB-D, only now

$$D_i = \sqrt{12}(U_i - 0.5),$$

where U has a uniform distribution over the unit interval.

In contrast to [Godfrey \(2006\)](#), the more extensive simulations by [Ng and Wilcox \(2009\)](#) indicate that these wild bootstrap methods do not have a striking advantage over the non-bootstrap HC4 method in terms of achieving a Type I error probability reasonably close to the nominal level. However, in terms of minimizing the variability of the Type I error probabilities among the situations that were considered, HC4WB-C was found to be best when testing at the 0.05 level. Although the methods based on the HC4 estimator perform relatively well, there are situations where all methods based on the HC4 estimator fail to control the Type I error probability in a reasonably accurate manner, even with $n = 100$. Problems occur when dealing skewed distributions with very heavy tails and simultaneously there is a seemingly extreme amount of heteroscedasticity.

10.1.2 An Omnibus Test

Rather than test hypotheses about the individual parameters, a common goal is to test

$$H_0 : \beta_1 = \cdots = \beta_p = 0,$$

the hypothesis that all p slope parameters are zero. When using the OLS (ordinary least squares) estimator and $p > 1$, it seems that no method has been found to be effective, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when there is heteroscedasticity, non-normality, or both. [Mammen \(1993\)](#) studied a method based in part on a wild bootstrap technique. The author ran some simulations as a partial check on this approach and found that it generally performed reasonable well with $n = 30$ and $p = 4$. However, a situation was found where, with a heteroscedastic error term, the actual probability of a Type I error was estimated to be 0.29 when testing at the 0.05 level. In fairness, perhaps for nearly all practical situations, the method performs reasonably well, but resolving this issue is difficult at best.

With the understanding that, when dealing with least squares regression, no single method is always satisfactory in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, two methods currently seem best for general use. Both are based on a more general form of the HC4 estimate of the standard error, which was derived by [Cribari-Neto \(2004\)](#).

Let \mathbf{V} be the HC4 estimate of the variances and covariances of $\mathbf{b} = (b_1, \dots, b_p)'$, the least squares estimate of the slope parameters. A test statistic for testing the hypothesis that all slopes are zero is

$$W = n\mathbf{b}'\mathbf{V}\mathbf{b},$$

which has, approximately, a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom. However, for $p > 1$, this method is unsatisfactory in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error.

An alternative approach is to use a wild bootstrap method. That is, generate wild bootstrap values y_i^* as was done in conjunction with the HC4WB-C or the HC4WB-D methods. Based on this bootstrap sample, compute the test statistic W yielding W^* . Repeat this B times yielding W_1^*, \dots, W_B^* . A p-value is given by

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum I_i,$$

where the indicator function $I_i = 1$ if $W_i \leq W$; otherwise $I_i = 0$.

It is noted that when dealing with a single independent variable, a homoscedastic confidence band for the regression line can be computed with the built-in R function `ols.pred.ci`. For a heteroscedastic method that can be used with both OLS and robust regression estimators, see the R functions `regYci` and `regYband` in Section 11.1.13.

10.1.3 R Functions *lsfitci*, *olshc4*, *hc4test* and *hc4wtest*

The R function

```
lsfitci(x,y,nboot = 599, tr=0.2, SEED = TRUE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out)
```

is supplied for computing 0.95 confidence intervals for regression parameters, based on the OLS estimator, using the percentile bootstrap method described in Section 10.1.1. As usual, x is an n -by- p matrix of predictors. In contrast to the other R functions in this section, this function is designed for $\alpha = 0.05$ only. Setting the argument $xout=TRUE$, leverage points are identified with the method indicated by the argument $outfun$ and then they are removed.

The R function

```
olshc4(x,y,alpha=0.05,xout=F,outfun=out,HC3=FALSE)
```

computes $1 - \alpha$ confidence intervals for each of the $p + 1$ parameters using the HC4 estimator, and p-values are returned as well. By default, 0.95 confidence intervals are returned. Setting the argument $alpha$ equal to 0.1, for example, will result in 0.9 confidence intervals. Leverage points are removed if the argument $xout=T$ using the R function specified by the argument $outfun$, which defaults to the projection method in Section 6.4.9. Setting $HC3=TRUE$ results in using the HC3 estimator rather than HC4.

The function

```
hc4test(x, y, pval = c(1:ncol(x)), xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, pr = TRUE, plotit = FALSE,
        xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that all slope parameters are equal to zero. The argument $pval$ controls which independent variables will be included in the model. By default, all are included. With a sufficiently large sample size, this method will perform well in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error. But it is unclear just how large the sample size needs to be. With a small to moderate sample size all indications are that it is safer to use the R function

```
hc4wtest(x, y, nboot = 500, SEED = T, RAD = T, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, ...),
```

which uses a wild bootstrap method. When the argument $RAD=T$, method HC4WB-D is used. Otherwise METHOD HC4WB-C is used.

■ Example

Assuming both x and ϵ have standard normal distributions, 30 pairs of observations were generated according to the model $y = (|x| + 1)\epsilon$. The standard F test for $H_0: \beta_1 = 0$ was applied and this process was repeated 1000 times. Testing at the 0.05 level, the proportion of Type I errors was 0.144. So the standard F test correctly detects an association about 14% of the time, but simultaneously provides an inaccurate assessment of β_1 . This again illustrates that under heteroscedasticity, the standard F test does not control the probability of a Type I error. Using instead the R function `olshc4`, the proportion of rejections was 0.06, which is reasonably close to the nominal 0.05 level.

■ Example

[Cohen, Dalal, and Tukey \(1993\)](#) report data on the number of hours, y , needed to splice x pairs of wires for a particular type of telephone cable. The left panel of [Figure 10.1](#) shows a scatterplot of the data. (The data are stored in the file `splice.dat` which can be obtained as described in Section 1.8 of Chapter 1.) Note that the data appear to be heteroscedastic. The usual 0.95 confidence interval (multiplied by 1000 for convenience), based on the assumption of normality and homogeneity, is $(1.68, 2.44)$. If the y values are stored in the R vector `yvec`, and the x values are stored in the R variable `splice`, the command `lsmfitci(splice,yvec)` reports that the 0.95 bootstrap confidence interval is $(1.64, 2.57)$. The ratio of the lengths is $(2.44 - 1.68)/(2.57 - 1.64) = 0.82$. It might be argued that the lengths are reasonably similar. However, the probability coverage of the usual method can be less than the nominal level, it is unclear whether this problem can be ignored for the data being examined, and all indications are that the bootstrap method provides better probability coverage under heteroscedasticity. Consequently, using the bootstrap confidence interval seems more satisfactory.

■ Example

[Sockett, Daneman, Carlson, and Ehrich \(1987\)](#) collected data with the goal of understanding how various factors are related to the patterns of residual insulin secretion in children. (The data can be found in the file `diabetes.dat`.) One of the response measurements is the logarithm of C-peptide concentration (pmol/ml) at diagnosis, and one of the predictors considered is age. The right panel of [Figure 10.1](#) shows a

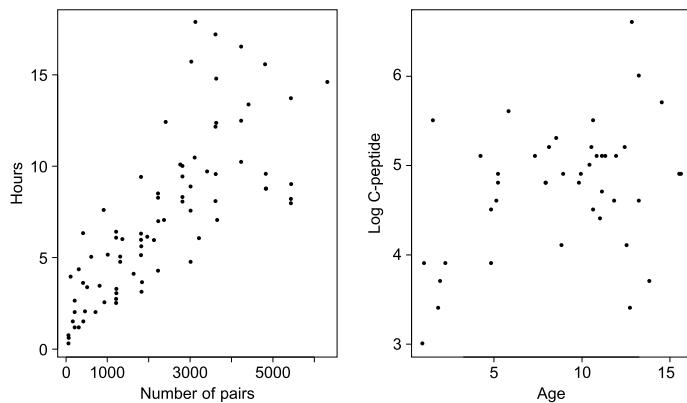


Figure 10.1: Scatterplots of two real data sets that appear to be heteroscedastic.

scatterplot of the data. The scatterplot suggests that the error term is heteroscedastic, with the smallest variance near age 7. (Results in Chapter 11 lend support for this speculation.) The 0.95 confidence interval for the slope, using the standard OLS method, is $(0.0042, 0.0263)$, the estimate of the slope being 0.015. In contrast, `lsfitci` returns a 0.95 confidence interval of $(-0.00098, 0.029)$, and the ratio of the lengths is $(0.0263 - 0.0042)/(0.029 + 0.00098) = 0.74$. Again there is concern that the standard confidence interval is too short and that its actual probability coverage is less than the nominal level. Note that the standard confidence interval rejects $H_0: \beta_1 = 0$, but `lsfitci` does not. ■

10.1.4 Comments on Comparing Means via Dummy Coding

A well-known approach to comparing the means of multiple groups is via least squares regression coupled with dummy coding (e.g., [Montgomery & Peck, 1992](#)). Yet another way of dealing with heteroscedasticity when comparing means, beyond the methods in Chapter 7, is to use dummy coding in conjunction with the HC4 estimator. But results in [Ng \(2009b\)](#) do not support this approach. Control over the probability of a Type I error can be unsatisfactory.

10.1.5 Salvaging the Homoscedasticity Assumption

One strategy for trying to salvage the homoscedasticity assumption, when using classic inferential methods associated with the least squares regression estimator, is to simply test the hypothesis that there is homoscedasticity. Most methods for testing this hypothesis have been found to be unsatisfactory in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error ([Lyon & Tsai, 1996](#)). That is, there is a high probability of rejecting the hypothesis that there is homo-

scedasticity when indeed there is homoscedasticity. Two methods that have been found to perform well in simulations are described in Section 11.4. However, imagine that the classic homoscedastic methods are used if these methods fail to reject the hypothesis that the error term is homoscedastic. A basic issue is whether these methods have enough power to detect situations where there is heteroscedasticity that invalidates the homoscedastic methods that are typically used. With $n \leq 100$, Ng and Wilcox (2011) found that the answer is no. The usual homoscedastic methods can still have actual Type I error probabilities well above the nominal level. Presumably with a large enough sample size, methods for testing the homoscedasticity assumption will have adequate power, but just how large the sample must be is unknown. To the extent it is desired to make inferences about the regression parameters, without being sensitive to heteroscedasticity, all indications are that it is best to abandon homoscedastic methods and always use a heteroscedastic method, which are described in Chapters 11 and 12.

10.2 Theil–Sen Estimator

This section describes an estimator first proposed by Theil (1950) and later extended by Sen (1968) that is restricted to the case of a single predictor ($p = 1$). Then various extensions to $p > 1$ are discussed.

Temporarily focusing on $p = 1$, one view of the Theil–Sen estimator is that it attempts to find a value for the slope that makes Kendall's correlation tau, between $y_i - b_1x_i$ and x_i , (approximately) equal to zero. This can be seen to be tantamount to the following method. For any $i < i'$, for which $x_i \neq x_{i'}$, let

$$S_{ii'} = \frac{y_i - y_{i'}}{x_i - x_{i'}}.$$

The Theil–Sen estimate of the slope is b_{1ts} , the median of all the slopes represented by $S_{ii'}$. Two strategies for estimating the intercept have been proposed. The first is

$$M_y - b_1 M_x,$$

where M_y and M_x are the usual sample medians of the y and x values, respectively. The second estimates the intercept with the median of $y_1 - b_1x_1, \dots, y_n - b_1x_n$. This latter method is used unless stated otherwise.

Sen (1968) derived the asymptotic standard error of the slope estimator, but it plays no role here and therefore is not reported. Dietz (1987) showed that the Theil–Sen estimator has an asymptotic breakdown point of 0.293. For results on its small-sample efficiency, see Dietz (1989), Talwar (1991) and Wilcox (1998a, 1998b). Sievers (1978) and Scholz (1978) proposed a generalization of the Theil–Sen estimator by attaching weights to the pairwise slopes,

$S_{ii'}$, but in terms of efficiency it seems to offer little or no advantage, and in some cases its bias is considerably larger, so it is not described here. For variations of the Theil–Sen estimator, see Luh and Guo (2000) as well as Moses and Klockars (2012). Peng, Wang, and Wang (2008) describe situations where the Theil–Sen estimator is not asymptotically normal and they demonstrate that it can be superefficient when the error term is discontinuous.

It is noted that the Theil–Sen estimator has close similarities to a regression estimator studied by Maronna and Yohai (1993, Section 3.3). This alternative estimator belongs to what are called projection estimators; see Section 10.13.11. Martin, Yohai, and Zamar (1989) proved that this alternative estimate of the slope is minimax in the class of all regression equivariant estimates if the error term has a symmetric and unimodal distribution.

A possible concern about the Theil–Sen estimator is that tied values among the dependent variable might negatively impact its efficiency. That is, the magnitude of the standard error of the Theil–Sen estimator might be greater than some alternative estimator that might be used, which in turn might result in relatively low power. A way of improving the efficiency of the Theil–Sen estimator is to replace the usual sample median with the Harrell–Davis estimator (Wilcox & Clark, 2013). So now the slope is estimated via the Harrell–Davis estimator applied to the $S_{ii'}$ values and the intercept is taken to be the median of $y_1 - b_1 x_1, \dots, y_n - b_1 x_n$ based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. An alternative strategy is to estimate the intercept with

$$\hat{\theta}_y - b_1 \hat{\theta}_x,$$

where $\hat{\theta}_y$ is the Harrell–Davis estimate based on y_1, \dots, y_n and $\hat{\theta}_x$ is the Harrell–Davis estimate based on x_1, \dots, x_n . But to be consistent with how $p > 1$ independent variables are handled, the former method is used unless stated otherwise.

There are at least three general ways the Theil–Sen estimator might be extended to two or more predictors (cf. Hussain & Sprent, 1983). The first, which will be called method TS, is to apply the back-fitting, Gauss–Seidel method as described in Hastie and Tibshirani (1990, pp. 106–108). (For a general description of the Gauss–Seidel method and its properties, see for example, Dahlquist & Björck, 1974; Golub & van Loan, 1983.) For the situation at hand, the method is applied as follows:

1. Set $k = 0$ and choose an initial estimate for β_j , say $b_j^{(0)}$, $j = 0, \dots, p$. Here, the initial estimate is taken to be the Theil–Sen estimate of the slope based on the j th regressor only. That is, simply ignore the other predictors to obtain an initial estimate of β_j . The initial estimate of β_0 is the median of

$$y_i - \sum_{j=1}^p b_j^{(0)} x_{ij}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

2. Increment k and take the k th estimate of β_j ($j = 1, \dots, p$) to be $b_j^{(k)}$, the Theil–Sen estimate of the slope based on the regression estimate of x_{ij} with

$$r_i = y_i - b_0^{(k-1)} - \sum_{\ell=1, \ell \neq j}^p b_\ell^{(k-1)} x_{i\ell}.$$

The updated estimate of the intercept, $b_0^{(k)}$, is the median of

$$y_i - \sum_{j=1}^p b_j^{(k)} x_{ij}, \quad i = 1, \dots, n.$$

3. Repeat step 2 until convergence.

The second general approach toward extending the Theil–Sen estimator to multiple predictors is based on so-called *elemental subsets*, an idea that appears to have been first suggested in unpublished work by Oja and Niimimaa; see [Rousseeuw and Leroy \(1987, p. 146\)](#) (cf. [Hawkins & Olive, 2002](#)). In a regression data set, an elemental subset consists of the minimum number of cases required to estimate the unknown parameters of a regression model. With p regressors, the Oja and Niimimaa extension is to use all $N = n! / ((p+1)!(n-p-1)!)$ elemental subsets. That is, for each elemental subset, estimate the slope parameters using OLS. At this point, a simple strategy is to use the median of the N resulting estimates. That is, letting $\hat{\beta}_{ji}$ be the estimate of β_j based on the i th elemental subset, $i = 1, \dots, N$, the final estimate of β_j would be the median of these N values. One practical problem is that the number of elemental subsets increases rapidly with n and p . For example, with $n = 100$ and $p = 4$, the number of elemental subsets is 106,657,320. Also note that intuitively, some elemental subsets will yield a highly inaccurate estimate of the slopes. An alternative strategy is to use $(n^2 - n)/2$ randomly sampled elemental subsets, the same number of elemental subsets used when $p = 1$. In terms of efficiency, results in [Wilcox \(1998b\)](#) support this approach over using all N elemental subsets instead. For convenience, this method is labeled *TSG*. Note that the back-fitting, Gauss–Seidel method eliminates the random component associated with the method just described, and Gauss–Seidel also offers faster execution time.

Let $\hat{\tau}_j$ be Kendall’s tau between the j th predictor, x_j , and $y - b_1 x_1 - \dots - b_p x_p$. A third approach, when generalizing the Theil–Sen estimator to $p > 1$ predictors, is to determine b_1, \dots, b_p so that $\sum |\hat{\tau}_j|$ is approximately equal to zero. Note that this approach can be used to generalize the Theil–Sen estimator by replacing Kendall’s tau with any reasonable correlation coefficient. The relative merits of this third way of extending the Theil–Sen estimator to multiple predictors have not been explored.

Results regarding the small-sample efficiency of the Gauss–Seidel method, versus using randomly sampled elemental subsets, are reported in [Wilcox \(2004d\)](#). The choice of method can

make a practical difference, but currently there is no compelling reason to prefer one method over the other based solely on efficiency.

A criticism of method TSG is that as p increases, its finite sample breakdown point decreases (Rousseeuw & Leroy, 1987, p. 148). Another possible concern is that the marginal medians are location equivariant but not affine equivariant. (See Eq. (6.9) for a definition of affine equivariance when referring to a multivariate location estimator.) A regression estimator T is *affine equivariant* if for any nonsingular matrix \mathbf{A} ,

$$T(\mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{A}, y_i; i = 1, \dots, n) = \mathbf{A}^{-1} T(\mathbf{x}_i, y_i; i = 1, \dots, n).$$

Because the marginal medians are not affine equivariant, TSG is not affine equivariant either. Yet one more criticism is that with only $(n^2 - n)/2$ randomly sampled elemental subsets, if n is small, rather unstable results can be obtained, meaning that if a different set of $(n^2 - n)/2$ elemental subsets is used, the estimates can change substantially. If, for example, $n = 20$ and $p = 2$, only 190 resamples are used from among the 1,140 elemental subsets. (Of course, when n is small, it is a simple matter to increase the number of sampled elemental subsets, but just how many additional samples should be taken has not been investigated.)

A regression estimator T is *regression equivariant* if for any vector \mathbf{v} ,

$$T(\mathbf{x}_i, y_i + \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{v}; i = 1, \dots, n) = T(\mathbf{x}_i, y_i; i = 1, \dots, n) + \mathbf{v}.$$

And T is said to be *scale equivariant* if

$$T(\mathbf{x}_i, c y_i; i = 1, \dots, n) = c T(\mathbf{x}_i, y_i; i = 1, \dots, n).$$

It is noted that method TS also fails to achieve affine equivariance, but it does achieve regression equivariance and scale equivariance.

10.2.1 R Functions *tsreg*, *tshdreg*, *correg*, *regplot* and *regp2plot*

The R function

```
tsreg(x,y,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,iter=10,varfun=pbvar,
      corfun=pbcor,plotit=FALSE,WARN=TRUE,OPT=FALSE,xlab='X',ylab='Y',...)
```

computes the Theil–Sen regression estimator just described. When OPT=F, the intercept is estimated with the median of $y_1 - b_1 x_1, \dots, y_n - b_1 x_n$. With OPT=T, the estimate is taken to be $M_y - b_1 M_x$ when there is a single independent variable. When $p > 1$, the default maximum number of iterations when using the Gauss–Seidel method, indicated by the argument

iter, is ten. As usual, setting the argument xout=TRUE will eliminate leverage points using the outlier detection method indicated by the argument outfun. If there is a single covariate, plotit=TRUE will create a scatterplot as well as a plot of the estimated regression line.

The R function

```
tshdreg(x,y,HD=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=out, iter=10, varfun=pbvar, corfun=pbcor,
        plotit=FALSE, tol=0.0001, RES=FALSE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', ...)
```

applies the Theil–Sen estimator but with the usual sample median replaced by the Harrell–Davis estimator. A C++ version of this last function, tshdreg_C, is available in the R package WRScpp. For a C++ version of tsreg, called tsregCPP, source the file WRSC.txt, which can be accessed as described Section 1.8. (WRScpp contains the function tsreg_C, a C++ version of tsreg, but the residuals and the strength of the association are not computed correctly when there is more than one explanatory variable. The estimates of the parameters are correct.)

The function

```
correg(x,y,corfun=tau)
```

computes the Theil–Sen estimate by determining b_1, \dots, b_p so that $\sum |\hat{\tau}_j|$ is approximately equal to zero, where $\hat{\tau}_j$ is Kendall’s tau between the j th predictor, x_j , and $y - b_1x_1 - \dots - b_px_p$. It generalizes the function tsreg by allowing Kendall’s tau to be replaced by some other correlation. For example, correg(x,y,corfun=pbcor) would use the percentage bend correlation coefficient.

When dealing with a single predictor, only two R commands are needed to create a scatterplot that includes a regression line. (The two R functions are plot and abline.) To make this task even easier, the R function

```
regplot(x,y,regfun=tsreg,xlab='X',ylab='Y', xout=FALSE, outfun=out, theta=50, phi=25,
        ticktype='simple', ...)
```

can be used to plot a regression line when there is a single independent variable, and a regression plane when dealing with two independent variables. With two independent variables, the arguments theta and phi can be used to rotate or tilt the plot. Setting ticktype='detail', values along the three axes will be included in the plot. By default the Theil–Sen estimator is used. Other regression estimators can be specified via the argument regfun, which assumes that the estimated slope and intercept, returned by the R function specified by the argument regfun, are stored in \$coef.

When there are two independent variables, the R function

```
regp2plot(x,y, xout=FALSE, outfun=out, xlab='Var 1',ylab='Var 2',zlab='Var 3',
           regfun=tsreg, COLOR=FALSE, tick.marks=TRUE, ...)
```

is another way of plotting the regression surface. Setting the argument COLOR=TRUE, the regression plane is indicated by the color blue. (Yet one more option is the R function out3d in Section 6.4.10.)

10.3 Least Median of Squares

The *least median of squares* (LMS) regression estimator appears to have been first proposed by [Hampel \(1975\)](#) and further developed by [Rousseeuw \(1984\)](#). That is, the regression estimates are taken to be the values that minimize

$$\text{MED}(r_1^2, \dots, r_n^2),$$

the median of the squared residuals. (Also see [Davies, 1993](#); [Hawkins & Simonoff, 1993](#); [Rousseeuw & Leroy, 1987](#); [Bertsimas & Mazumder, 2014](#).) It was the first equivariant estimator to attain a breakdown point of approximately 0.5, but its efficiency relative to the ordinary least squares estimator is 0. (And its rate of convergence is $n^{-1/3}$ rather than the usual rate of $n^{-1/2}$.) Despite these negative properties, the LMS estimator is often suggested as a diagnostic tool or a preliminary fit to data.

10.3.1 R Function lmsreg

The built-in R function

`lmsreg(x,y)`

computes the least median of squares regression estimator.

10.4 Least Trimmed Squares Estimator

[Rousseeuw's \(1984\)](#) *least-trimmed squares* (LTS) estimator is based on minimizing

$$\sum_{i=1}^h r_{(i)}^2,$$

where $r_{(1)}^2 \leq \dots \leq r_{(h)}^2$ are the squared residuals written in ascending order. (For recent results on computing estimates of the parameters, see Mount, Netanyahu, Piatko, Wu, & Silverman, 2016.) With $h = [n/2] + 1$, the same breakdown point as LMS is achieved. However, $h = [n/2] + [(p+1)/2]$ is often used to maintain regression equivariance. LTS has a relatively low asymptotic efficiency (Croux, Rousseeuw, & Hössjer, 1994), but it seems to have practical value. For example, it plays a role in the asymptotically efficient M-estimator described in Section 10.9.

10.4.1 R Functions *ltsreg* and *ltsgreg*

The R function

```
ltsreg(x,y,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,...)
```

computes the LTS regression estimate. The function

```
ltsgreg(x,y,tr=0.2,h=NA,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,...)
```

also computes the LTS estimate but the amount of trimming can be controlled via the argument *tr*. (The parameters are estimated with the Nelder–Mead method.) If no value for *h* is specified, the value for *h* is taken to be $n - [\text{tr}(n)]$, where *tr* defaults to 0.2.

10.5 Least Trimmed Absolute Value Estimator

A close variation of the LTS estimator is the least trimmed absolute (LTA) value estimator. Now the strategy is to choose the intercept and slope so as to minimize

$$\sum_{i=1}^h |r|_{(i)}, \quad (10.3)$$

where $|r|_{(i)}$ is the *i*th smallest absolute residual and *h* is defined as in Section 10.4. (For results on the LTA estimator, see Hawkins & Olive, 1999. For asymptotic results, see Tableman, 1994. For asymptotic results when $h = n$ and the error term is homoscedastic, see Knight, 1998.) Like LTS, the LTA estimator can have a much smaller standard error than the least squares estimator, but its improvement over the LTS estimator seems to be marginal at best (Wilcox, 2001b.)

10.5.1 R Function `ltareg`

The R function

```
ltareg(x,y,tr=0.2,h=NA)
```

computes the LTA estimate using the Nelder–Mead method for minimizing a function (which was mentioned in Chapter 6 in connection with the spatial median). If no value for h is specified, the value for h is taken to be $n - \lceil \text{tr}(n) \rceil$, where tr defaults to 0.2.

10.6 M-Estimators

Regression M-estimators represent a generalization of the location M-estimator described in Chapter 3. There are, in fact, many variations of M-estimators when dealing with regression, some of which appear to be particularly important in applied work. We begin, however, with some of the early and fairly simple methods. They represent an important improvement on ordinary least squares, but by today's standards they are relatively unsatisfactory. Nevertheless, some of these early methods have become fairly well known, so they are included here for completeness.

Generally, M-estimators of location can be extended to regression estimators by choosing a function ξ and then estimating β_j ($j = 0, \dots, p$) with the b_j values that minimize

$$\sum \xi(r_i).$$

Typically ξ is some symmetric function chosen so that it has desirable properties plus a unique minimum at zero. [Table 2.1](#) lists some choices.

As explained in Chapter 2, a measure of scale needs to be used with M-estimators of location so that they are scale equivariant, and a measure of scale is needed for the more general situation considered here. In the present context, this means that if the y values are multiplied by some constant, c , the estimated slope parameters should be multiplied by the same value. For example, if the estimated slope is 0.304, and if y_1, \dots, y_n are multiplied by 10, then the estimated slope should become 3.04.

Letting τ be any measure of scale, M-estimators minimize

$$\sum \xi\left(\frac{r_i}{\tau}\right).$$

Following [Hill and Holland \(1977\)](#), τ is estimated with

$$\hat{\tau} = \frac{\text{median of the largest } n - p - 1 \text{ of the } |r_i|}{0.6745}. \quad (10.4)$$

Note that $\hat{\tau}$ is resistant, which is needed so that the M-estimator is resistant against unusual y values.

Let Ψ be the derivative of ξ , some of which are given in [Table 2.1](#). Here the focus of attention is on Huber's Ψ given by

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-K, \min(K, x)].$$

For the problem at hand, $K = 2\sqrt{(p+1)/n}$ is used following the suggestion of [Belsley et al. \(1980\)](#). M-estimators solve the system of $p+1$ equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^n x_{ij} w_i r_i = 0, \quad j = 0, \dots, p, \quad (10.5)$$

where $x_{i0} = 1$ and

$$w_i = \begin{cases} \frac{\Psi(r_i/\hat{\tau})}{r_i/\hat{\tau}} & \text{if } y_i \neq \hat{y}_i \\ 1 & \text{if } y_i = \hat{y}_i. \end{cases}$$

As was the case when dealing with M-estimators of location, there is no explicit equation that gives the estimate of the regression parameters, an iterative estimation method must be used instead.

[Eq. \(10.5\)](#) represents a problem in weighted least squares. That is, [Eq. \(10.5\)](#) is equivalent to estimating the parameters by minimizing

$$\sum w_i r_i^2.$$

As with W-estimators of location, described in [Chapter 3](#), a technical problem here is that the weights, w_i , depend on unknown parameters. The iterative method used with the W-estimator suggests an iterative estimation procedure for the problem at hand, but the details are postponed until [Section 10.8](#).

10.7 The Hat Matrix

The M-estimator described in [Section 10.6](#) provides resistance against unusual or outlying y values, but a criticism is that it is not resistant against leverage points. In fact the breakdown point is only $1/n$. That is, a single unusual point can completely dominate the estimate of the parameters. Moreover, its influence function is unbounded. An early approach to these problems is based in part on the so-called hat matrix, which is described here. As will become evident, the hat matrix yields an M-estimator that has certain practical advantages – it competes very well with OLS in terms of efficiency and computing accurate confidence intervals

under heteroscedasticity and non-normality – but there are situations where it is not as resistant as one might want. In particular, its breakdown point is only $2/n$ meaning that it can handle a single outlier, but two outliers might destroy it. But methods based on the hat matrix have become increasingly well known, so a description of some of them seems in order.

It is a bit easier to convey the idea of the hat matrix in terms of simple regression, so this is done first, after which attention is turned to the more general case where the number of predictors is $p \geq 1$. One strategy for determining whether the point (y_i, x_i) is having an inordinate effect on $\hat{\beta}_1$ and $\hat{\beta}_0$, the OLS estimates of the slope and intercept, is to consider how much the estimates change when this point is eliminated. It turns out that this strategy provides a method for judging whether x_i is a leverage point.

Let

$$h_j = \frac{1}{n} + \frac{(x_j - \bar{x})^2}{\sum(x_i - \bar{x})^2}, \quad (10.6)$$

$j = 1, \dots, n$. Let $\hat{\beta}_1(i)$, read beta hat sub 1 not i , be the OLS estimate of the slope when the i th pair of observations is removed from the data. Let

$$\begin{aligned} \hat{y}_i &= \hat{\beta}_0 + \hat{\beta}_1 x_i, \\ A_j &= \frac{\sum x_i^2}{n \sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2} - \frac{x_j \bar{x}}{\sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2}, \end{aligned}$$

and

$$B_j = \frac{x_j - \bar{x}}{\sum (x_i - \bar{x})^2}.$$

Then the change from $\hat{\beta}_1$ which is based on all of the data, versus the situation where the i th pair of values is removed, can be shown to be

$$\hat{\beta}_1 - \hat{\beta}_1(i) = B_i \frac{r_i}{1 - h_i},$$

the change in the intercept is

$$\hat{\beta}_0 - \hat{\beta}_0(i) = A_i \frac{r_i}{1 - h_i},$$

and the change in the predicted value of y_i , based on x_i , is

$$\hat{y}_i - \hat{y}_i(i) = \frac{h_i}{1 - h_i} r_i.$$

In particular, the bigger h_i happens to be, the more impact there is on the slope, the intercept, and the predicted value of y . Moreover, the change in \hat{y}_i depends only on the residual, r_i ,

and h_i . But h_i reflects the amount x_i differs from the typical predictor value, \bar{x} , because the numerator of the second fraction in Eq. (10.6) is $(x_i - \bar{x})^2$. That is, h_i provides a measure of how much x_i influences the estimated regression equation, which is related to how far x_i is from \bar{x} , so h_i provides a method for judging whether x_i is unusually large or small relative to all the predictor values being used.

The result just described can be extended to the more general case where $p \geq 1$. Let

$$\mathbf{X} = \begin{pmatrix} 1 & x_{11} & \cdots & x_{1p} \\ 1 & x_{21} & \cdots & x_{2p} \\ \vdots & \vdots & & \vdots \\ 1 & x_{n1} & \cdots & x_{np} \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let $\hat{\beta}$ be the vector of OLS estimates, and let $\hat{\beta}(i)$ be the estimate when (y_i, \mathbf{x}_i) is removed. Then the change in the estimates is

$$\hat{\beta} - \hat{\beta}(i) = (\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{x}'_i \frac{r_i}{1 - h_{ii}},$$

where h_{ii} is the i th diagonal element of

$$\mathbf{H} = \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}\mathbf{X}'.$$

The matrix \mathbf{H} is called the *hat matrix* because the vector of predicted y values is given by

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} = \mathbf{Hy}.$$

In particular,

$$\hat{y}_i = \sum_{j=1}^n h_{ij} y_j.$$

In words, the predicted value of y , based on \mathbf{x}_i , is obtained by multiplying each element in the i th row of the hat matrix by y_j and adding the results. Furthermore, when (y_i, \mathbf{x}_i) is removed, the vector of predicted values, $\hat{\mathbf{y}}$, is changed by

$$\hat{\mathbf{y}} - \hat{\mathbf{y}}(i) = \mathbf{X}(\mathbf{X}'\mathbf{X})^{-1}(1, x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip})' \frac{r_i}{1 - h_{ii}},$$

and the change in the i th predicted value, \hat{y}_i , is

$$\hat{y}_i - \hat{y}_i(i) = \frac{h_{ii}}{1 - h_{ii}} r_i.$$

The main point here is that the bigger h_{ii} happens to be, the more impact it has on the OLS estimator and the predicted values. In terms of identifying leverage points, Hoaglin and Welsch (1978) suggest regarding h_{ii} as being large if it exceeds $2(p + 1)/n$. (For more information regarding the hat matrix, and the derivation of relevant results, see Li, 1985; Huber, 1981; Belsley et al., 1980; Cook & Weisberg, 1992; and Staudte & Sheather, 1990. The R function `hat` computes h_{ii} , $i = 1, \dots, n$.)

■ Example

Consider the observations

x : 1 2 3 3 4 4 15 5 6 7
 y : 21 19 23 20 25 30 40 35 30 26.

The h_i values are 0.214, 0.164, 0.129, 0.129, 0.107, 0.107, 0.814, 0.100, 0.107, and 0.129, and $2(p + 1)/n = 2(1 + 1)/10 = 0.4$. Because $h_7 = 0.814 > 0.4$, $x_7 = 15$ would be flagged as a leverage point. The OLS estimate of the slope is 1.43, but if the seventh point is eliminated, the estimate increases to 1.88.

There is an interesting connection between the hat matrix and the conditions under which the OLS estimator is asymptotically normal. In particular, a necessary condition for asymptotic normality is that $h_{ii} \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$ (Huber, 1981). A related result turns out to be relevant in the search for an appropriate M-estimator.

10.8 Generalized M-Estimators

This section takes up the problem of finding a regression estimator that guards against leverage points. A natural strategy is to attach some weight, w_i , to \mathbf{x}_i with the idea that the more outlying or unusual \mathbf{x}_i happens to be, relative to all the \mathbf{x}_i values available, the less weight it is given. In general, it is natural to look for some function of the predictor values that reflects in some sense the extent to which the point \mathbf{x}_i influences the OLS estimator. From the previous section, h_{ii} is one way to measure how unusual \mathbf{x}_i happens to be. Its value satisfies $0 < h_{ii} \leq 1$. If $h_{ii} > h_{jj}$, this suggests that \mathbf{x}_i is having a larger impact on the OLS estimator versus \mathbf{x}_j .

However, there is a concern. Consider, for example, the simple regression model where $h_{ii} = 1/n + (x_i - \bar{x})^2 / \sum(x_i - \bar{x})^2$. The problem is that $(x_i - \bar{x})^2$ is not a robust measure of the extent to which \mathbf{x}_i is an outlier. Practical problems do indeed arise, but there are some advantages to incorporating the leverage points in an estimation procedure, as will be seen.

One way of attaching a weight to \mathbf{x}_i is with $w_i = \sqrt{1 - h_{ii}}$, which satisfies the requirement that if $h_{ii} > h_{jj}$, $w_i < w_j$. In other words, high leverage points get a relatively low weight. One specific possibility is to estimate the regression parameters as those values solving the $p + 1$ equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^n w_i \Psi(r_i/\hat{\tau}) x_{ij} = 0, \quad (10.7)$$

where again $x_{i0} = 1$ and $j = 0, \dots, p$. Eq. (10.7) is generally referred to as an M-estimator using Mallows weights which derives its name from [Mallows \(1975\)](#).

Schwepppe (see [Hill, 1977](#)) took this one step further with the goal of getting a more efficient estimator. The basic idea is to give more weight to the residual r_i if \mathbf{x}_i has a relatively small weight, w_i . (Recall that outlying x values reduce the standard error of the OLS estimator.) Put another way, Mallows weights can result in a loss of efficiency if there are any outlying \mathbf{x} values, and Schwepppe's approach is an attempt at dealing with this problem by dividing r_i by w_i ([Krasker & Welsch, 1982](#)). The resulting M-estimator is now the solution to $p + 1$ equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^n w_i \Psi(r_i/(w_i \hat{\tau})) x_{ij} = 0, \quad (10.8)$$

$j = 0, \dots, p$. (For some technical details related to the choice of Ψ and w_i , see [Hampel, 1968](#); [Krasker, 1980](#); and [Krasker & Welsch, 1982](#).) [Hill \(1977\)](#) compared the efficiency of the Mallows and Schwepppe estimators to several others and found that they dominate, with the Schwepppe method having an advantage. Solving Eq. (10.8), which includes a choice for the measure of scale, τ , is based on a simple iterative procedure described in [Table 10.1](#). For convenience, the estimator will be labeled $\hat{\beta}_m$.

An even more general framework is to consider $w_i = u(\mathbf{x}_i)$, where $u(\mathbf{x}_i)$ is some function of \mathbf{x}_i , chosen to supply some desirable property such as high efficiency. Two choices for $u(\mathbf{x}_i)$, discussed by [Markatou and Hettmansperger \(1990\)](#), are $\sqrt{1 - h_i}$ and $(1 - h_i)/\sqrt{h_i}$. The first choice, already mentioned, is due to Schwepppe and was introduced in [Handshin, Schweppen, Kohlas, and Fiechter \(1975\)](#). The second choice is due to [Welsch \(1980\)](#).

In the context of testing hypotheses, and assuming ϵ has a symmetric distribution, [Markatou and Hettmansperger \(1990\)](#) recommend $w_i = (1 - h_i)/\sqrt{h_i}$. However, when ϵ has an asymmetric distribution, results in [Carroll and Welsh \(1988\)](#) indicate using $w_i = \sqrt{1 - h_i}$ or Mallows weights. The reason is that otherwise, under general conditions, the estimate of β is not consistent, meaning that it does not converge to the correct value as the sample size gets large. In particular, if Eq. (10.8) is written in the more general form

$$\sum w_i \Psi(r_i/(u(\mathbf{x}_i)\hat{\tau})) x_{ij} = 0,$$

Table 10.1: Iteratively Reweighted Least Squares for M Regression, $\hat{\beta}_m$.

To compute an M regression estimator with Schweppe weights, begin by setting $k = 0$ and computing the OLS estimate of the intercept and slope parameters, $\hat{\beta}_{0k}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{pk}$. Proceed as follows:

1. Compute the residuals, $r_{i,k} = y_i - \hat{\beta}_{0k} - \hat{\beta}_{1k}x_{i1} - \dots - \hat{\beta}_{pk}x_{ip}$, let M_k be equal to the median of the largest $n - p$ of the $|r_{i,k}|$, $\hat{\tau}_k = 1.48M_k$, and let $e_{i,k} = r_{i,k}/\hat{\tau}_k$.
2. Form weights,

$$w_{i,k} = \frac{\sqrt{1-h_{ii}}}{e_{i,k}} \Psi \left(\frac{e_{i,k}}{\sqrt{1-h_{ii}}} \right),$$

where

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-K, \min(K, x)]$$

is Huber's Ψ with $K = 2\sqrt{(p+1)/n}$.

3. Compute the residuals, $r_{i,k} = y_i - \hat{\beta}_{0k} - \hat{\beta}_{1k}x_{i1} - \dots - \hat{\beta}_{pk}x_{ip}$, let M_k be equal to the median of the largest $n - p$ of the $|r_{i,k}|$, $\hat{\tau}_k = 1.48M_k$, and let $e_{i,k} = r_{i,k}/\hat{\tau}_k$.
4. Form weights,

$$w_{i,k} = \frac{\sqrt{1-h_{ii}}}{e_{i,k}} \Psi \left(\frac{e_{i,k}}{\sqrt{1-h_{ii}}} \right),$$

where

$$\Psi(x) = \max[-K, \min(K, x)]$$

is Huber's Ψ with $K = 2\sqrt{(p+1)/n}$.

5. Use these weights to obtain a weighted least squares estimates, $\hat{\beta}_{0,k+1}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{p,k+1}$. Increase k by 1.
6. Repeat steps 1–3 until convergence. That is, iterate until the change in the estimated parameters is small.

[Carroll and Welsh \(1988\)](#) show that if $u(\mathbf{x}_i) = 1$, which corresponds to using Mallows weights, the estimate is consistent, but it is not if $u(\mathbf{x}_i) \neq 1$. Thus, this suggests using $w_i = \sqrt{1-h_i}$ versus $w_i = (1-h_i)/\sqrt{h_i}$ because for almost all random sequences, $h_i \rightarrow 0$ as $n \rightarrow \infty$, for any i . In the one predictor case, it is easy to see that $h_i \rightarrow 0$ if the x_i are bounded. In fact, as previously indicated, $h_i \rightarrow 0$ is a necessary condition for the least squares estimator to be asymptotically normal. (An example where h_i does not converge to zero is $x_i = 2^i$, as noted by [Staudte & Sheather, 1990](#).) For completeness, it is pointed out that there are also *Mallows type estimators* where weights are given by the leverage points. In particular, perform weighted least squares with weights

$$w_i = \min \left\{ 1, \left(\frac{b}{h_i} \right)^{j/2} \right\},$$

where $b = h_{(mn)}$, $h_{(r)}$ is the r th ordered leverage value, and j and m are specified; see [Hamilton \(1992\)](#) as well as [McKean, Sheather, and Hettmansperger \(1993\)](#). The choices $j = 1, 2$, and 4 are sometimes labeled GMM1, GMM2, and GMM4 estimators. Little or nothing is known about how these estimators perform under heteroscedasticity, so they are not discussed further.

To provide at least some indication of the efficiency of $\hat{\beta}_m$, the M-estimator with Schweppe weights, suppose $n = 20$ observations are randomly sampled from the model $y_i = x_i + \lambda(x_i)\epsilon_i$ where both x_i and ϵ_i have standard normal distributions. First consider $\lambda(x_i) \equiv 1$, which corresponds to the usual homoscedastic model, and suppose efficiency is measured with R , the estimated standard error of the OLS estimator divided by the estimated standard error of the M-estimator. Then $R < 1$ indicates that OLS is more efficient, and $R > 1$ indicates that the reverse is true. For the situation at hand, a simulation estimate of R , based on 1000 replications, is 0.89, so OLS gives better results. If instead $\lambda(x) = |x|$, meaning that the variance of y increases as x moves away from its mean, zero, $R = 1.09$. For $\lambda(x) = x^2$, $R = 1.9$, and for $\lambda(x) = 1 + 2/(|x| + 1)$, $R = 910$, meaning that the OLS estimator is highly unsatisfactory. In the latter case, the variance of y , given x , is relatively large when x is close to its mean.

Suppose instead ϵ has a symmetric heavy-tailed distribution (a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$). Then the estimated efficiency, R , for the four λ functions considered here, are 3.02, 3.87, 6.0, and 226. Thus, for these four situations, OLS performs poorly, particularly for the last situation considered.

[Wilcox \(1996d\)](#) reports additional values of R , again based on 1000 replications, but using a different set of random numbers (a different seed in the random number generator) yielding $R = 721$ versus 226 for $\lambda(x) = 1 + 2/(|x| + 1)$, and the distributions considered in the previous paragraph. Even if the expected value of R is 10, surely OLS is unsatisfactory. In particular, a large value for R reflects that OLS can yield a wildly inaccurate estimate of the slope when there is a heteroscedastic error term. For example, among the 1000 replications reported in [Wilcox \(1996d\)](#), where $\beta_1 = 1$ and $R = 721$, there is one case where the OLS estimate of the slope is -3140 .

If x has a heavy-tailed distribution, this will favor OLS if ϵ is normal and homoscedastic, but when ϵ is heteroscedastic, OLS can be less efficient than $\hat{\beta}_m$. Suppose for example that x has a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$. Then estimates of R , for the four choices for λ considered here, are 0.89, 1.45, 5.48, and 36. Evidently, there are situations where OLS is slightly more efficient than $\hat{\beta}_m$, but there are situations where $\hat{\beta}_m$ is substantially more efficient than OLS, so $\hat{\beta}_m$ appears to have considerable practical value.

10.8.1 R Function *bmreg*

The R function

```
bmreg(x,y,iter=20,bend=2*sqrt((ncol(x)+1)/nrow(x)),xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,...)
```

computes the bounded influence M regression with Huber's Ψ and Schweppe weights using the iterative estimation procedure described in [Table 10.1](#). The argument *x* is any n -by- p matrix of predictors. If there is only one predictor, *x* can be stored in an R vector as opposed to an R variable having matrix mode. The argument *iter* controls the maximum number of iterations allowed, which defaults to 20 if unspecified. The argument *bend* is K in Huber's Ψ which defaults to $2\sqrt{(p+1)/n}$. The estimate of the regression parameters is returned in *bmreg\$coef*. The function also returns the residuals in *bmreg\$residuals*, and the final weights (the w_i values) are returned in *bmreg\$w*.

■ Example

The file *read.dat* contains data from a reading study conducted by L. Doi. (See [Section 1.8](#) for instructions on how to obtain this data.) One of the goals was to predict *WWISST2*, a word identification score (stored in column 8). One of the predictors is *TAAST1*, a measure of phonological awareness (stored in column 2). The OLS estimates of the slope and intercept are 1.72 and 73.56, respectively. The corresponding estimates returned by *bmreg* are 1.38 and 80.28.

■ Example

Although $\hat{\beta}_m$ offers more resistance than OLS, it is important to keep in mind that $\hat{\beta}_m$ might not be resistant enough. The star data in [Figure 6.3](#) illustrate that problems might arise. The OLS estimates are $\hat{\beta}_1 = -0.41$ and $\hat{\beta}_0 = 6.79$. In contrast, if the data are stored in the R variables *x* and *y*, *bmreg(x,y)* returns $\hat{\beta}_1 = -0.1$ and $\hat{\beta}_0 = 5.53$. As is evident from [Figure 6.3](#), $\hat{\beta}_m$ does a poor job of capturing the relationship among the majority of points, although it is less influenced by the outliers than is OLS. As noted in [Chapter 6](#), there are several outliers, and there is the practical problem that more than one outlier can cause $\hat{\beta}_m$ to be misleading.

10.9 The Coakley–Hettmansperger and Yohai Estimators

The M-estimator $\hat{\beta}_m$, described in the previous section, has a bounded influence function, but a criticism is that its finite sample breakdown point is only $2/n$. That is, it can handle one

outlier, but two outliers might destroy it. Coakley and Hettmansperger (1993) derived an M-estimator that has a breakdown point nearly equal to 0.5, a bounded influence function, and high asymptotic efficiency for the normal model. Their strategy is to start with the LTS estimator and then adjust it, the adjustment being a function of empirically determined weights. More formally, letting $\hat{\beta}_0$ (a vector having length $p + 1$) be the LTS estimator, their estimator is

$$\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}} = \hat{\beta}_0 + (\mathbf{X}' \mathbf{B} \mathbf{X})^{-1} \mathbf{X}' \mathbf{W} \Psi(r_i/(w_i \hat{\tau})) \hat{\tau},$$

where $\mathbf{W} = \text{diag}(w_i)$,

$$\mathbf{B} = \text{diag}(\Psi'(r_i/\hat{\tau} w_i)),$$

\mathbf{X} is the n -by- $(p + 1)$ design matrix (described in Section 10.7), and $\Psi'(x)$ is the derivative of Huber's Ψ . They suggest using $K = 1.345$ in Huber's Ψ if uncertain about which value to use, so this value is assumed here unless stated otherwise. As an estimate of scale, they use $\hat{\tau} = 1.4826(1 + 5/(n - p)) \times \text{med}\{|r_i|\}$. The weight given to \mathbf{x}_i , the i th row of predictor values, is

$$w_i = \min\{1, [b/(\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x)' \mathbf{C}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x)]^{a/2}\},$$

where the quantities \mathbf{m}_x and \mathbf{C} are the minimum volume ellipsoid (MVE) estimators of location and covariance associated with the predictors. (See Section 6.3.1.) These estimators have a breakdown point approximately equal to 0.5. When computing w_i , Coakley and Hettmansperger suggest setting b equal to the 0.95 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with p degrees of freedom and using $a = 2$.

The Coakley–Hettmansperger regression method has high asymptotic efficiency when the error term, ϵ , has a normal distribution. That is, as the sample size gets large, the standard error of the OLS estimator will not be substantially smaller than the standard error of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$. To provide some indication of how the standard error of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ compares to the standard error of OLS when n is small, consider $p = 1$, $a = 2$, $K = 1.345$, and suppose both x and ϵ have standard normal distributions. When there is homoscedasticity, R , the standard error of OLS divided by the standard error of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$, is 0.63 based on a simulation with 1000 replications. If x has a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution instead (a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$), then $R = 0.31$. In contrast, if $\hat{\beta}_m$ is used, which is computed as described in Table 10.1, the ratio is 0.89 for both of the situations considered here. Of course, the lower efficiency of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ must be weighed against the lower breakdown point of $\hat{\beta}_m$. Moreover, if x has a light-tailed distribution, and the distribution of ϵ is heavy-tailed, $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ offers an advantage over OLS. For example, if x is standard normal, but ϵ has a g-and-h distribution with $g = 0$ and $h = 0.5$, $R = 1.71$. However, replacing $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ with $\hat{\beta}_m$, $R = 3$.

It might be thought that the choice for the bending constant in Huber's Ψ , $K = 1.345$, is partly responsible for the low efficiency of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$. If $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ is modified by increasing the bending constant to $K = 2$, $R = 0.62$ when both x and ϵ are standard normal. If x has the symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution considered in the previous paragraph, again $R = 0.31$. It appears that $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ is inefficient because of its reliance on LTS regression, and because it does not take sufficient advantage of good leverage points.

10.9.1 MM-Estimator

Yet another robust regression estimator that should be mentioned is the MM-estimator derived by [Yohai \(1987\)](#), which has certain similarities to the generalized M-estimators in Section 10.8. It has the highest possible breakdown point, 0.5, and high efficiency under normality. The parameters are estimated by solving an equation similar to Eq. (10.8), with Ψ taken to be some redescending function. A popular choice is Tukey's biweight, given in [Table 2.1](#), which will be used here unless stated otherwise. That is, the regression parameters are estimated by determining the solution to $p + 1$ equations

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \Psi(r_i/\hat{\tau})x_{ij} = 0, \quad (10.9)$$

$j = 0, \dots, p$, where again $\hat{\tau}$ is a robust measure of variation based on the residuals and

$$\Psi(r_i; c) = \frac{r_i}{\hat{\tau}} \left(\left(\frac{r_i}{c\hat{\tau}} \right)^2 - 1 \right)^2, \text{ if } |r_i/\hat{\tau}| \leq c;$$

otherwise $\Psi(r_i; c) = 0$. The choice $c = 4.685$ leads to an MM-estimator with 95% efficiency compared to the least squares estimator and is the default value used here. The ratio p/n is relevant to the efficiency of this estimator; see [Maronna and Yohai \(2010\)](#) for details. In addition to having excellent theoretical properties, the small-sample efficiency of the MM-estimator appears to compare well with other robust estimators, but like several other robust estimators it can be sensitive to what is called contamination bias, as described in Section 10.14.1. Also, situations are encountered where the iterative estimation scheme used to compute the MM-estimator does not converge. For an extension of this estimator, in the context of ridge regression, see [Maronna \(2011\)](#).

The R function lmrob, which can be accessed via the R package robustbase, can be used to compute confidence intervals and test hypotheses when using the MM-estimator. The function computes estimates of the standard errors and assumes the null distribution of the test statistics has, approximately, a Student's t distribution with $n - p - 1$ degrees of freedom. However, even under normality and homoscedasticity, control over the probability of a Type I

error is poor when n is small. When testing at the 0.05 level, the actual level exceeds 0.05 by a substantial amount. With $n = 100$ it performs reasonably well, still assuming normality and homoscedasticity. Evidently there are no results regarding how well the method performs under non-normality and heteroscedasticity. (For an extension of this estimator, see [Koller & Stahel, 2011](#).) If there is interest in testing hypotheses based on the MM-estimator, currently the best approach appears to be to use the percentile bootstrap methods in Sections [11.1.1](#) and [11.1.3](#).

For completeness, it is noted that there are additional M regression methods not covered in this chapter (e.g., [Jurečková & Portnoy, 1987](#)).

10.9.2 R Functions chreg and MMreg

The R function

```
chreg(x, y, bend = 1.345, SEED = TRUE, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, pr = TRUE, ...)
```

computes the Coakley–Hettmansperger regression estimator. As with all regression functions, the argument x can be a vector or an n -by- p matrix of predictor values. The argument $bend$ is the value of K used in Huber's Ψ .

The R function

```
MMreg(x, y, RES = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, varfun = pbvar,
      corfun = pbcor, ...)
```

computes Yohai's MM-estimator. Setting $RES=TRUE$, the residuals are returned.

■ Example

If the star data in [Figure 6.3](#) are stored in the R variables `starx` and `stary`, the command

```
chreg(starx,stary)
```

returns an estimate of the slope equal to 4.0. The R function `MMreg` estimates the slope to be 2.25. In contrast, the OLS estimate is -0.41 , and the M-regression estimate, based on the method in [Table 10.1](#), yields $\hat{\beta}_m = -0.1$. ■

10.10 Skipped Estimators

Skipped regression estimators generally refer to the strategy of checking for outliers using one of the multivariate outlier detection methods in Chapter 6, discarding any that are found, and applying some estimator to the data that remain. A natural issue is whether the ordinary least squares estimator might be used after outliers are removed, but checks on this approach by the author found that the small-sample efficiency of this method is rather poor, compared to other estimators, when the error term is normal and homoscedastic.

Consider the goal of achieving good small-sample efficiency, relative to OLS, when the error term is both normal and homoscedastic, and \mathbf{x}_i' is multivariate normal, while simultaneously providing protection against outliers. Then a relatively effective method is to first check for outliers among the $(p + 1)$ -variate data (\mathbf{x}_i', y_i) ($i = 1, \dots, n$) using the MGV or projection method (described in Sections 6.4.7 and 6.4.9), remove any outliers that are found, and then apply the Theil–Sen estimator to the data that remain. Replacing the Theil–Sen estimator with one of the M-estimators previously described has been found to be rather unsatisfactory. (Checks on using the MM-estimator have not been made.) Generally, when using the MGV outlier detection in conjunction with any regression estimator, this will be called an MGV estimator. Here, it is assumed that the Theil–Sen estimator is used unless stated otherwise. When using the projection method for detecting outliers, this will be called an OP estimator, and again the Theil–Sen estimator is assumed.

10.10.1 R Functions *mgvreg* and *opreg*

The R function

```
mgvreg(x,y,regfun=tsreg,cov.fun=rmbs,se=TRUE,varfun=pbvar,corfun=pbcor,SEED=TRUE)
```

computes a skipped regression estimator where outliers are identified and removed using the MGV outlier detection method in Section 6.4.7. Once outliers are eliminated, the regression estimator indicated by the argument regfun is applied and defaults to the Theil–Sen estimator.

The R function

```
opreg(x,y,regfun=tsreg, cop=3, MC=FALSE, varfun=pbvar, corfun=pbcor)
```

is like mgvreg, only the projection detection method in Section 6.4.9 is used to detect outliers. The argument cop determines the measure of location used when checking for outliers. (See Section 6.4.10 for details about the argument cop.) Unlike mgvreg, opreg can take advantage of a multicore processor by setting the argument MC=T. (The arguments varfun and pbcor deal with estimating the strength of the association as described in Section 11.9.)

10.11 Deepest Regression Line

Rousseeuw and Hubert (1999) derived a method of fitting a line to data that searches for the deepest line embedded within a scatterplot. First consider simple regression. Let b_1 and b_0 be any choice for the slope and intercept, respectively, and let r_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) be the corresponding residuals. The candidate fit, (b_0, b_1) , is called a nonfit if a partition of the x values can be found such that all of the residuals for the lower x values are negative (positive), but for all of the higher x values the residuals are positive (negative). So, for example, if all of the points lie above a particular straight line, in which case all of the residuals are positive, this line is called a nonfit. More formally, a candidate fit is called a nonfit if and only if a value for v can be found such that

$$r_i < 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i < v$$

and

$$r_i > 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i > v$$

or

$$r_i > 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i < v$$

and

$$r_i < 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i > v.$$

The regression depth of a fit (b_1, b_0) , relative to $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$, is the smallest number of observations that need to be removed to make (b_1, b_0) a nonfit. The deepest regression estimator corresponds to the values of b_1 and b_0 that maximize regression depth. (See Hubert & Rousseeuw, 1998, for a variation of this method.) Bai and He (1999) derived the limiting distribution of this estimator. When the \mathbf{x}_i are distinct, the breakdown point is approximately 0.33.

The idea can be extended to multiple predictors. Let $r_i(b_0, \dots, b_p)$ be the i th residual based on the candidate fit b_0, \dots, b_p . This candidate fit is called a nonfit if there exists a hyperplane V in \mathbf{x} space such that no \mathbf{x}_i belongs to V and such that $r_i(b_0, \dots, b_p) > 0$ for all \mathbf{x}_i in one of the open halfspaces corresponding to V and $r_i(b_0, \dots, b_p) < 0$ in the other open halfspace. Regression depth is defined as in the $p = 1$ case.

10.11.1 R Functions *rdepth* and *mdepreg*

The R function

```
rdepth(d,x,y)
```

computes the depth of a regression line within a cloud of points for the case of a single independent variable. The argument d should have two values: the intercept followed by the slope.
The R function

```
mdepreg(x,y)
```

computes the deepest regression line. For $p > 1$ predictors it uses an approximation of the depth of a hyperplane.

10.12 A Criticism of Methods with a High Breakdown Point

It seems that no single method is free from criticism, and regression methods that have a high breakdown point are no exception. A potential problem with these methods is that standard diagnostic tools for detecting curvature, by examining the residuals, might fail (Cook, Hawkins, & Weisberg, 1992; McKean et al., 1993). Thus, it is recommended that if a regression method with a high breakdown point is used, possible problems with curvature be examined using some alternative technique. Some possible ways of checking for curvature, beyond the standard methods covered in an introductory regression course, are described in Chapter 11.

10.13 Some Additional Estimators

Some additional regression estimators should be outlined. Although some of these estimators have theoretical properties that do not compete well with some of the estimators already described, they might have practical value. For instance, some of the estimators listed here have been suggested as an initial estimate that is refined in some manner or is used as a preliminary screening device for detecting regression outliers. Graphical checks suggest that these estimators sometimes provide a more reasonable summary of the data versus other estimators covered in the previous section. Also, it is not being suggested that by listing an estimator in this section, it necessarily should be excluded from consideration in applied work. In some cases, certain comparisons with estimators already covered, such as efficiency under heteroscedasticity, have not been explored. (For an extension to the so-called general linear model, see Cantoni & Ronchetti, 2001.)

10.13.1 S-Estimators and τ -Estimators

S-estimators of regression parameters, proposed by Rousseeuw and Yohai (1984), search for the slope and intercept values that minimize some measure of scale associated with the residuals. Least squares, for example, minimizes the variance of the residuals and is a special case of S-estimators. The hope is that by replacing the variance with some measure of scale that is relatively insensitive to outliers, we will obtain estimates of the slope and intercept that are relatively insensitive to outliers as well. As noted in Chapter 3, there are many measures of scale. The main point is that if, for example, we use the percentage bend midvariance (described in Section 3.12.3), situations arise where the resulting estimate of the slope and intercept has advantages over other regression estimators we might use. This is not to say that other measures of scale never provide a more satisfactory estimate of the regression parameters. But for general use, it currently seems that the percentage bend midvariance is a good choice. For relevant asymptotic results, see Davies (1990). Hössjer (1992) showed that S-estimators cannot achieve simultaneously both a high breakdown point and high efficiency under the normal model. Also, Davies (1993) reports results on the inherit instability of S-estimators. Despite this, it may have practical value as preliminary fit to data; see Section 10.13.3.

Here a simple approximation of the S-estimator is used. (There are other ways of computing S-estimators, e.g., Croux et al., 1994; Ferretti, Kelmansky, Yohai, & Zamar, 1999; perhaps they have practical advantages, but it seems that this possibility has not been explored.) Let

$$R_i = y_i - b_1 x_{1i} - \cdots - b_p x_{pi},$$

and use the Nelder–Mead method (mentioned in Chapter 6) to find the values b_1, \dots, b_p that minimize S , some measure of scale based on the values R_1, \dots, R_n . The intercept is taken to be

$$b_0 = M_y - b_1 M_1 - \cdots - b_p M_p,$$

where M_j and M_y are the medians of the x_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n$) and y values, respectively. This will be called method SNM. (Again, for details motivating the Nelder–Mead method, see Olson and Nelson, 1975.)

A related approach in the one-predictor case, called the STS estimator, is to compute the slope between points j and j' , $S_{jj'}$ and take the estimate of the slope to be the value of $S_{jj'}$ that minimizes some measure of scale applied to the values $y_1 - S_{jj'} x_1, \dots, y_n - S_{jj'} x_n$ values. Here, the back-fitting method is used to handle multiple predictors.

For completeness, τ -estimators proposed by Yohai and Zamar (1988) generalize S-estimators by using a broader class of scale estimates. Gervini and Yohai (2002, p. 584) note that tuning these estimators for high efficiency will result in an increase in bias. An extension of

τ -estimators is the class of generalized τ -estimators proposed by Ferretti et al. (1999). Briefly, residuals are weighted, with high leverage values resulting in small weights, and a measure of scale based on these weighted residuals is used to judge a fit to data. For results on computing τ -estimators, see Flores (2010).

10.13.2 R Functions `snmreg` and `stsreg`

The R function

`snmreg(x,y)`

computes the SNM estimate as just described. The measure of scale, S , is taken to be the percentage bend midvariance. (When using the Nelder–Mead method, the initial estimate of the parameters is based on the Coakley–Hettmansperger estimator.) The R function

`stsreg(x,y,sc=pbvar)`

computes the STS estimator, where sc is the measure of scale to be used. By default, the percentage bend midvariance is used. As noted in Section 1.8, the R package WRScpp contains `tstreg_C`, a C++ version of this function.

10.13.3 E-Type Skipped Estimators

Skipped estimators remove any outliers among the cloud of data $(x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip}, y_i), i = 1, \dots, n$, and then fit a regression line to the data that remain. E-type skipped estimators (where E stands for error term) look for outliers among the residuals based on some preliminary fit, remove (or downweight) the corresponding points, and then compute a new fit to the data. Rousseeuw and Leroy (1987) suggested using least median of squares (LMS) to obtain an initial fit, remove any points for which the corresponding standardized residuals are large, and then apply least squares to the data that remain. But He and Portnoy (1992) showed that the asymptotic efficiency is 0.

Another E-type skipped estimator is to apply one of the outlier detection methods in Chapter 3 to the residuals. For example, first fit a line to the data using the STS estimator described in Section 10.13.1. Let r_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) be the usual residuals. Let M_r be the median of the residuals and let MAD_r be the median of the values $|r_1 - M_r|, \dots, |r_n - M_r|$. Then the i th point (x_i, y_i) is declared a regression outlier if

$$|r_i - M_r| > \frac{2(MAD_r)}{0.6745}. \quad (10.10)$$

The final estimate of the slope and intercept is obtained by applying the Theil–Sen estimator to those points not declared regression outliers. When there are p predictors, again compute the residuals based on STS and use Eq. (10.10) to eliminate any points with large residuals. This will be called method *TSTS*.

The STS estimator might have high execution time, in which case it might be preferable to modify the TSTS estimator by replacing the STS estimator with the SNM estimator in Section 10.13.1. This will be called the TSSNM estimator.

Another variation, called an *adjusted M-estimator*, is to proceed as in Table 10.1, but in step 2, set $w_{i,k} = 0$ if (y_i, \mathbf{x}_i) is a regression outlier based, for example, on the regression outlier detection method in Rousseeuw and van Zomeren (1990); see Section 10.15. This estimator will be labeled $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ad}}$.

Gervini and Yohai (2002) used an alternative approach for determining whether any residuals are outliers and they derived some general theoretical results for this class of estimators. In particular, they describe conditions under which the asymptotic breakdown point is not less than the initial estimator, and they find that good efficiency is obtained under normality and homoscedasticity.

The method begins by obtaining an initial fit to the data; Gervini and Yohai focus on LMS and S-estimators to obtain this initial fit. Then the absolute value of the residuals are checked for outliers, any such points are eliminated, and the least squares estimator is applied to the remaining data. But unlike other estimators in this section, an adaptive method for detecting outliers, which is based on the empirical distribution of the residuals, is used to detect outliers. An interesting result is that under general conditions, if the errors are normally distributed, the estimator has full asymptotic efficiency.

To outline the details, let R_i be the residuals based on an initial estimator, and let

$$r_i = \frac{R_i}{S}$$

be the standardized residuals, where S is some measure of scale applied to the R_i values. Following Gervini and Yohai, S is taken to be MADN (MAD divided by 0.6745). Let $|r|_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq |r|_{(n)}$ be the absolute values of the standardized residuals written in ascending order and let $i_0 = \max\{|r|_{(i)} < \eta\}$ for some constant η ; Gervini and Yohai use $\eta = 2.5$. Let

$$d_n = \max \left\{ \Phi(|r|_{(i)}) - \frac{i-1}{n} \right\},$$

where the maximum is taken over all $i > i_0$, and where Φ is the cumulative standard normal distribution. In the event $d_n < 0$, set $d_n = 0$, and let $i_n = n - [d_n]$, where $[d_n]$ is the greatest

integer less than or equal to d_n . The point corresponding to $|r|_{(i)}$ is eliminated (is given zero weight) if $i > i_n$, and the least squares estimator is applied to the data that remain.

For the situations in Table 10.2, the Gervini–Yohai estimator does not compete well in terms of efficiency when using LMS regression as the initial estimate when checking for regression outliers. Switching to the LTS estimator as the initial estimator does not improve efficiency for the situations considered. (Also see Section 10.14.)

10.13.4 R Functions *mbmreg*, *tstsreg*, *tssnmreg* and *gyreg*

The function

```
tstsreg(x,y,sc=pbvar,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,plotit=FALSE,...)
```

computes the E-type estimator described in Section 10.13.3. (A C++ version of this function is available as indicated in Section 1.8.) The argument sc indicates which measure of scale will be used when method STS is employed to detect regression outliers, and the default measure of scale is the percentage bend midvariance. Setting the argument xout=TRUE, leverage points are removed, which are identified using the outlier detection method indicated by the argument outfun, and then the E-type estimator is applied using the remaining data. This function can have relatively high execution time, particularly with more than one covariate. In this case, the function

```
tssnmreg(x,y,sc=pbvar,xout=FALSE,outfun=out,plotit=FALSE,...)
```

might preferred; it applies the TSSNM estimator, which uses the SNM estimator to detect outliers among the residuals.

The function

```
mbmreg(x,y,iter = 20, bend = (2 * sqrt(ncol(x) + 1))/nrow(x),xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,...)
```

computes the so-called adjusted M-estimator. Finally, the function

```
gyreg(x,y,rinit = lmsreg, K = 2.5)
```

computes the Gervini–Yohai estimator where the argument rinit indicates which initial estimator will be used to detect regression outliers. By default, the LMS estimator is used. The argument K corresponds to η .

10.13.5 Methods Based on Robust Covariances

A general approach to regression, briefly discussed by [Huber \(1981\)](#), is based on estimating a robust measure of covariance which in turn can be used to estimate the parameters of the model. For the one predictor case, the slope of the OLS regression line is

$$\beta_1 = \frac{\sigma_{xy}}{\sigma_x^2},$$

where σ_{xy} is the usual covariance between x and y . This suggests estimating the slope with

$$\hat{\beta}_1 = \frac{\hat{\tau}_{xy}}{\hat{\tau}_x^2},$$

where $\hat{\tau}_{xy}$ estimates τ_{xy} , some measure of covariance chosen to have good robustness properties, and $\hat{\tau}_x^2$ is an estimate of some measure of scale. The intercept can be estimated with

$$\hat{\beta}_0 = \hat{\theta}_y - \hat{\beta}_1 \hat{\theta}_x$$

for some appropriate estimate of location, θ . As noted in Chapter 9, there are many measures of covariance. Here, the biweight midcovariance is employed which is described in Section 9.3.8 and is motivated in part by results in [Lax \(1985\)](#) who found that the biweight midvariance is relatively efficient.

For the more general case where $p \geq 1$, let

$$\mathbf{A} = (s_{byx_1}, \dots, s_{byx_p})'$$

be the vector of sample biweight midcovariances between y and the p predictors. The quantity s_{byx_j} estimates the biweight midcovariance between y and the j th predictor, x_j . Let

$$\mathbf{C} = (s_{bx_j x_k})$$

be the p -by- p matrix of estimated biweight midcovariances among the p predictors. By analogy with OLS, the regression parameters $(\beta_1, \dots, \beta_p)'$ are estimated with

$$(\hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_p)' = \mathbf{C}^{-1} \mathbf{A}, \quad (10.11)$$

and an estimate of the intercept is

$$\hat{\beta}_0 = \hat{\mu}_{my} - \hat{\beta}_1 \hat{\mu}_{m1} - \dots - \hat{\beta}_p \hat{\mu}_{mp}, \quad (10.12)$$

where $\hat{\mu}_{my}$ is taken to be the one-step M-estimator based on the y values, and $\hat{\mu}_{mj}$ is the one-step M-estimator based on the n values corresponding to the j th predictor.

The estimation procedure just described performs reasonably well when there is a homoscedastic error term, but it can give poor results when the error term is heteroscedastic. For example, Wilcox (1996e) reports a situation where the error term is heteroscedastic, $\beta_1 = 1$, yet with $n = 100,000$, the estimated slope is approximately equal to 0.5. Apparently the simple estimation procedure described in the previous paragraph is not even consistent when the error term is heteroscedastic. However, a simple iterative procedure corrects this problem.

Set $k = 0$, let $\hat{\beta}_k$ be the $p + 1$ vector of estimated slopes and intercept using Eqs. (10.10) and (10.11), and let r_{ki} be the resulting residuals. Let $\hat{\delta}_k$ be the $p + 1$ vector of estimated slopes and intercept when using \mathbf{x} to predict the residuals. That is, replace y_i with r_{ki} and compute the regression slopes and intercepts using Eqs. (10.10) and (10.11). Then an updated estimate of β is

$$\hat{\beta}_{k+1} = \hat{\beta}_k + \hat{\delta}_k, \quad (10.13)$$

and this process can be repeated until convergence. That is, compute a new set of residuals using the estimates just computed, increase k by 1, and use Eqs. (10.10) and (10.11) to get a new adjustment, $\hat{\delta}_k$. The iterations stop when all of the $p + 1$ values in $\hat{\delta}_k$ are close to zero, say within 0.0001. The final estimate of the regression parameters is denoted by $\hat{\beta}_{\text{mid}}$.

It is noted that for certain measures of scatter, this iteration scheme does not appear to be necessary. For example, Zu and Yuan (2010) used the multivariate measure of scatter derived by Maronna (1976), and checks on this approach indicate that when there is heteroscedasticity, using Eqs. (10.10) and (10.11) suffices.

A concern about some robust covariances is that they do not take into account the overall structure of the data and so might be influenced by properly placed outliers. One could use the skipped correlations described in Chapter 6 for the situation at hand, but there are no results regarding the small-sample properties of this approach.

Another approach to estimating regression parameters is to replace the biweight midcovariance with the Winsorized covariance in the biweight midregression method (cf. Yale & Forsythe, 1976). This will be called *Winsorized regression*. An argument for this approach is that the goal is to estimate the Winsorized mean of y , given x , and the Winsorized mean satisfies the Bickel–Lehmann condition described in Chapter 2. In terms of probability coverage, it seems that there is little or no reason to prefer Winsorized regression over the biweight midregression procedure.

It should be noted that Srivastava, Pan, Sarkar, and Mudholkar (2010) report results on what they call Winsorized regression where all variables are Winsorized as described in Section 9.3.6, after which they apply the usual least squares estimator using the Winsorized values. They demonstrate via simulations that the resulting estimator can be more efficient

Table 10.2: Estimates of R Using Covariance Methods, $n = 20$.

VP	x and ϵ normal			x normal, ϵ heavy-tailed			x heavy-tailed, ϵ normal		
	b_{mid}	$\gamma = 0.1$	$\gamma = 0.2$	b_{mid}	$\gamma = 0.1$	$\gamma = 0.2$	b_{mid}	$\gamma = 0.1$	$\gamma = 0.2$
1	0.94	0.92	0.81	1.10	2.55	2.64	0.61	0.78	0.57
2	1.80	1.69	2.17	2.28	4.49	6.46	24.41	9.08	19.58
3	18.25	13.82	10.26	13.79	9.62	9.64	13.20	2.83	3.57

than least squares. Evidently there are no results on how the efficiency of this estimator compares to other robust estimators in this chapter. And no results were reported regarding the effects of heteroscedasticity.

To provide some indication of how the efficiency of the biweight midregression and Winsorized regression methods compare to OLS regression, Table 10.2 shows estimates of R , the standard error of OLS regression divided by the standard error of the competing method. The columns headed by $\gamma = 0.1$ are the values when 10% Winsorization is used, and $\gamma = 0.2$ is 20%. These estimates correspond to three types of error terms: $\lambda(x) = 1$, $\lambda(x) = x^2$, and $\lambda(x) = 1/|x|$. For convenience, these three choices are labeled VP1, VP2, and VP3. In general, the biweight and Winsorized regression methods compare well to OLS, and in some cases they offer a substantial advantage. Note, however, that when x has a heavy-tailed distribution, and ϵ is normal, OLS offers better efficiency when the error term is homoscedastic. In some cases, $\hat{\beta}_{\text{mid}}$ has better efficiency versus $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ad}}$, but in other situations the reverse is true.

10.13.6 R Functions `bireg`, `winreg` and `COVreg`

The R function

```
bireg(x,y,iter=20,bend=1.28)
```

is supplied for performing the biweight midregression method just described. As usual, x can be a vector when dealing with simple regression ($p = 1$), or it is an n -by- p matrix for the more general case where there are $p \geq 1$ predictors. The argument `iter` indicates the maximum number of iterations allowed. It defaults to 20 which is more than sufficient for most practical situations. If convergence is not achieved, the function prints a warning message. The argument `bend` is the bending constant, K , used in Huber's Ψ when computing the one-step M-estimator. If unspecified, $K = 1.28$ is used. The function returns estimates of the coefficients in `bireg$coef`, and the residuals are returned in `bireg$resid`.

The R function

```
winreg(x,y,iter=20, tr=0.2, iter=20,tr=0.2,xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,...)
```

performs Winsorized regression where tr indicates the amount of Winsorizing, which defaults to 20%. Again, $iter$ is the maximum number of iterations allowed, which defaults to 20.

The R function

```
COVreg(x,y,cov.fun=MARest,loc.fun=MARest,xout=F,outfun=out,...)
```

estimates the slopes and intercept via Eqs. (10.11) and (10.12) without iterations and defaults to using Marrona's M-estimator in Section 6.3.13.

■ Example

For the star data shown in Figure 6.3 of Chapter 6, `bireg` estimates the slope and intercept to be 2.66 and -6.7 , respectively. The OLS estimates are -0.41 and 6.79 . The function `winreg` estimates the slope to be 0.31 using 10% Winsorization ($tr=0.1$), and this is considerably smaller than the estimate of 2.66 returned by `bireg`. Also, `winreg` reports a warning message that convergence was not obtained in 20 iterations. This problem seems to be very rare. Increasing $iter$ to 50, convergence is obtained, and again the slope is estimated to be 0.31 , but the estimate of the intercept drops from 3.62 to 3.61 . Using the default 20% Winsorization ($tr=0.2$), the slope is now estimated to be 2.1 and convergence problems are eliminated.

10.13.7 L-Estimators

A reasonable approach to regression is to compute some initial estimate of the parameters, compute the residuals, and then re-estimate the parameters based in part on the trimmed residuals. This strategy was employed by Welsh (1987a, 1987b) and expanded upon by De Jongh, De Wet, and Welsh (1988). The small-sample efficiency of this approach does not compare well with other estimators such as $\hat{\beta}_m$ or M regression with Schweppe weights (Wilcox, 1996d). In terms of achieving high efficiency when there is heteroscedasticity, comparisons with the better estimators in this chapter have not been made. So even though the details of the method are not described here, it is not being suggested that Welsh's estimator be abandoned.

10.13.8 L_1 and Quantile Regression

Yet another approach is to estimate the regression parameters by minimizing $\sum |r_i|$, the so-called L_1 norm, which is just the sum of the absolute values of the residuals. This approach

predates OLS by about 50 years. This is, of course, a special case of the LTA estimator in Section 10.5. The potential advantage of L_1 (or least absolute value) regression over OLS, in terms of efficiency, was known by Laplace (1818). The L_1 approach reduces the influence of outliers, but the breakdown point is still $1/n$. More precisely, L_1 regression protects against unusual y values, but not leverage points, which can have a large influence on the fit to data. Another concern is that a relatively large weight is being given to observations with the smallest residuals (Mosteller & Tukey, 1977, p. 366). For these reasons, further details are omitted. (For a review of L_1 regression, see Narula, 1987, as well as Dielman & Pfaffenberger, 1982.) Hypothesis testing procedures are described by Birkes and Dodge (1993), but no results are given on how the method performs when the error term is heteroscedastic.

An interesting generalization of the L_1 estimator was proposed by Koenker and Bassett (1978), which is aimed at estimating the q th quantile of y given x . Let

$$\psi_q(u) = u(q - I_{u<0}),$$

where I is the indicator function. Then the slope and intercept of the regression line are determined by minimizing

$$\sum \psi_q(r_i).$$

So $q = 0.5$ corresponds to the least absolute value (or L_1) estimator and yields an estimate of the median of y , given x (cf. Koenker & Portnoy, 1987; Gutenbrunner & Jurečková, 1992). For a quantile regression estimator that takes into account auxiliary information, see Tang and Leng (2012).

A (rank inversion) method for testing hypotheses about the individual parameters was studied by Koenker (1994) and can be applied via the R package quantreg. (Also see Koenker & Xiao, 2002.) The method is limited to testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level. The R function rqfit, described in the next section, applies the method. When the goal is to test at some other level, or if an omnibus test is to be performed, see Section 11.1.6.

Neykova, Čížek, Filzmoser, and Neytchev (2012) consider a generalization of the quantile regression estimator where subsets of the data are considered, with each subset created by removing k points, with k specified by the user. The final estimate of the parameters is based on the subset that minimizes $\sum \psi_q(r_i)$.

10.13.9 R Functions `qreg`, `rqfit`, `qplotreg`

The R function

```
qreg(x,y,qval=0.5, q=NULL, pr=FALSE, xout=FALSE, outfun=out, plotit=FALSE, xlab='X',
      ylab='Y', ...)
```

computes the Koenker–Bassett quantile regression estimator. The argument qval (or the argument q) determines the quantile to be used. As usual, if the argument xout=TRUE, leverage points are removed. (The R function trq computes a trimmed generalization of the quantile regression estimator derived by [Koenker & Portnoy, 1987](#).) On rare occasions, computational issues arise when using qreg, which can be avoided by using the R function Qreg at the expense of slightly higher execution time.

The R function

```
rqfit(x,y,qval=0.5,alpha=0.05,xout=F,outfun=out,res=T,...)
```

tests hypotheses about the individual parameters. As usual, setting the argument xout=T eliminates leverage points. If the argument alpha is not equal to 0.05, an error message is printed indicating that the R function qregci (described in Section [11.1.6](#)) should be used.

For convenience, the function

```
qplotreg(x, y, qval = c(0.2, 0.8), q = NULL, plotit = TRUE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', xout =
FALSE, outfun = out, ...)
```

plots the quantile regression lines indicated by the argument qval. (If the argument q is specified, qval is taken to have the values stored in q.) By default, the 0.2 and 0.8 quantile regression lines are plotted. (The R function qregplots can be used as well.)

10.13.10 Methods Based on Estimates of the Optimal Weights

It is well known that when using weighted least squares, the optimal (most efficient) method of estimating regression parameters, when there is heteroscedasticity, is to use weights $w_i = 1/\sigma_i^2$, where σ_i^2 is the variance of ϵ_i . Several estimation procedures have been designed to handle heteroscedastic error terms based on this result. One such procedure was proposed by [Cohen et al. \(1993\)](#). The general strategy is to start with some robust estimator and then use the residuals to estimate appropriate weights based on an estimate of how the variance of ϵ_i varies with the predictor. Only a single predictor has been considered so far. The method can have high efficiency compared to OLS, and efficiency is very close to OLS when both x and ϵ have standard normal distributions. It remains unclear, in terms of efficiency, whether the method ever offers a practical advantage over various alternative estimators covered here. The method might be particularly effective when the predictor values are fixed and evenly spaced. Also, unlike many robust estimators, the percentile bootstrap method does not provide reasonably accurate confidence intervals for the parameters when n is small ([Wilcox, 1996d](#)).

Because the practical value of the method needs more research, the lengthy computational details are not given here.

[Wilcox \(1996d\)](#) suggests a method of estimating σ_i^2 using a running interval smoother. (Smoothers are described in Chapter 11.) The efficiency of the resulting estimator compares well to OLS, and in various situations it offers a substantial advantage. At the moment, there seems to be little practical advantage to using this approach over other robust estimators that have good efficiency under heteroscedasticity.

[Robinson \(1987\)](#) suggests yet another estimator that uses a smoother to estimate σ_i^2 . All indications are that it offers little advantage over OLS ([Wilcox, 1996d](#)), so no details are given. For a method based on the assumption that σ_i is given by some *known* function depending of x , β_1 and perhaps some additional unknown parameters, see [Carroll and Ruppert \(1982\)](#). For results on how the method performs when the function is incorrectly specified, see [Mak \(1992\)](#).

10.13.11 *Projection Estimators*

[Maronna and Yohai \(1993\)](#) derived yet another regression estimator called *projection regression*. Let $T(\mathbf{x}, y)$ be any estimating functional through the origin that is scale and affine equivariant. Let $s(\lambda' \mathbf{x})$ be a measure of scale based on the projection $\lambda' \mathbf{x}$. For any vectors β and λ having length p , let

$$A(\beta, \lambda) = |T(\lambda' \mathbf{x}, y - \beta\lambda')|s(\lambda' \mathbf{x})$$

$$C(\beta) = \sup A(\beta, \lambda),$$

where the supremum is taken over all λ satisfying $\|\lambda\| = 1$. The projection estimate is the vector β that minimizes $C(\beta)$. Several variations of this estimator are considered by Maronna and Yohai. The variation given by their Eq. (3.11) was considered here but found to have relatively unsatisfactory efficiency under heteroscedasticity. Other variations have not been considered.

10.13.12 *Methods Based on Ranks*

[Naranjo and Hettmansperger \(1994\)](#) suggest estimating regression coefficients by minimizing

$$\sum_{i < j} c_{ij} |r_i - r_j|,$$

where the c_{ij} are (Mallows) weights given by $c_{ij} = h(\mathbf{x}_i)h(\mathbf{x}_j)$,

$$h(\mathbf{x}_i) = \min\{1, (c/(\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x)' \mathbf{C}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x))^{a/2}\}.$$

Letting $d_i = (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x)' \mathbf{C}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{m}_x)$, they suggest using $c = \text{med}\{d_i\} + 3\text{MAD}\{d_i\}$, where $\text{MAD}\{d_i\}$ means that MAD is computed using the d_i values, and med is the median. They report that $a = 2$ is effective in uncovering outliers. The quantities \mathbf{m}_x and \mathbf{C} are the minimum volume ellipsoid estimators of location and scale described in Chapter 6. When $c_{ij} \equiv 1$, their method reduces to [Jaeckel's \(1972\)](#) method, which minimizes a sum that is a function of the ranks of the residuals. For the one predictor case they replace the minimum volume ellipsoid estimators \mathbf{m}_x and \mathbf{C} with $M_x = \text{med}\{x_i\}$ and $C = (1.483\text{MAD}\{x_i\})^2$, where $\text{MAD}\{x_i\}$ is the median of $|x_1 - M_x|, \dots, |x_n - M_x|$, and M_x is the median of the x_i values. The resulting breakdown point appears to be at least 0.15. Evidently, this method can be used to get good control over the probability of a Type I error when testing hypotheses about the regression parameters, even when the error term is heteroscedastic, but its power can be poor ([Wilcox, 1995e](#)). For rank-based diagnostic tools see [McKean, Sheather, and Hettmansperger \(1990\)](#). For other results and methods based on ranks, see [Cliff \(1994\)](#), [Tableman \(1990\)](#), [Hettmansperger \(1984\)](#), [Gutenbrunner, Jurečková, Koenker, and Portnoy \(1993\)](#), [Hettmansperger and McKean \(1977\)](#), and [Dixon and McKean \(1996\)](#). (For results on a multivariate linear model, see [Davis & McKean, 1993](#).)

The method derived by [Hettmansperger and McKean \(1977\)](#) does not protect against leverage points, but their method can be of interest when trying to detect curvature ([McKean et al., 1990, 1993](#)). Consequently, a brief discussion of their method seems warranted. Let $R(y_i - \mathbf{x}'_i \beta)$ be the rank associated with the i th residual. They determine β by minimizing [Jaeckel's \(1972\)](#) dispersion function given by

$$D(\beta) = \sum a(R(y_i - \mathbf{x}'_i \beta)) R(y_i - \mathbf{x}'_i \beta),$$

where

$$a(i) = \phi(i/(n+1))$$

for a nondecreasing function ϕ defined on $(0, 1)$ such that $\int \phi(u)du = 0$ and $\int \phi^2(u)du = 1$. Two common choices for ϕ are $\phi(u) = \sqrt{12}(u - 0.5)$ and $\phi(u) = \text{sign}(u - 0.5)$. The slope parameters can be estimated by minimizing $D(\beta)$, but the intercept cannot. One approach to estimating the intercept, which can be used when the error term has a skewed distribution, is to use the median of the residuals after the slope parameters have been estimated. Estimation and hypothesis testing can be done via the R function Rfit described in Section 10.13.13, but as illustrated, there might be concerns when tied values occur among the dependent variable.

Another approach is to estimate β to be the vector of values that minimizes

$$\frac{1}{n} \sum a(R(y_i - \mathbf{x}'_i \beta)) |r_i|$$

(Hössjer, 1994). Hössjer shows that this estimator can be chosen with a breakdown point of 0.5, and he establishes asymptotic normality. However, Hössjer notes that poor efficiency can result with a breakdown point of 0.5 and suggests designing the method so that its breakdown point is between 0.2 and 0.3, but under normality, the asymptotic relative efficiency is only 0.56. Despite this, the method might have a practical advantage when the error term is heteroscedastic, but this has not been determined. Yet another rank-based method was derived by Chang, McKean, Naranjo, and Sheather (1999). It can have a breakdown point of 0.5, but direct comparisons with some of the better estimators in this chapter have not been made. For some related results, see Hettmansperger and McKean (2011), Gong and Abebe (2012) as well as Kloke, McKean, and Rashid (2009). (For some results on R estimators, see McKean & Sheather, 1991.)

10.13.13 R Functions Rfit and Rfit.est

The R function

Rfit(x,y)

estimates regression parameters via Jaeckel's dispersion function given in the previous section, assuming that the R package Rfit has been installed. The function also tests hypotheses about the parameters assuming homoscedasticity. Heteroscedasticity can result in Type I error probabilities well above or below the nominal level. For example, if $y = \epsilon(|x| + 1)$, where both x and ϵ have standard normal distributions, the actual Type I error probability when testing $H_0: \beta_1 = 0$ at the 0.05 level, $n = 100$, is approximately 0.16. If $y = \epsilon/(|x| + 1)$, the actual level is approximately 0.006. Another concern is situations where tied values occur among the dependent variable: power might be relatively poor. The R function

Rfit.est(x,y)

returns estimates of the slopes and intercept in \$coef, which is convenient when using a bootstrap method to test hypotheses. The function

```
rfitv2(formula, data, subset, yhat0 = NULL, scores = Rfit::wscores, symmetric = FALSE,
      TAU = 'F0', ...)
```

avoids a computational problem that sometimes occurs with the R function Rfit.

10.13.14 Empirical Likelihood Type and Distance-Constrained Maximum Likelihood Estimators

[Bondell and Stefanski \(2013\)](#) derived yet another robust estimator that is an empirical likelihood type estimator. The derivation of the method assumes homoscedasticity. The efficiency of their estimator compares well to the MM-estimator when the sample size is small and the error term has a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution. It is unknown how well their estimator performs when the error term has a skewed distribution or when there is heteroscedasticity. And currently there is no R function for applying it.

Yet another approach was derived by [Maronna and Yohai \(2015\)](#) using what they call a distance-constrained maximum likelihood estimator. Unlike the typical robust estimator, their approach assumes that a parametric family of distributions can be specified and they use some distance or discrepancy measure between densities. Their model assumes a homoscedastic error term.

10.14 Comments About Various Estimators

A few additional comments about the various regression estimators in this chapter might help. We have seen illustrations that certain estimators can have high efficiency versus OLS when the error term is heteroscedastic. Here, some additional results relevant to this issue are summarized. Let R be the standard error of the OLS estimator divided by the standard error of some competing estimator. So if R is less than one, least squares tends to be more accurate, while $R > 1$ indicates the opposite. Suppose observations are generated according to the model $y = x + \lambda(x)\epsilon$, where the function $\lambda(x)$ reflects heteroscedasticity. Setting $\lambda(x) = 1$ corresponds to the homoscedastic case. [Table 10.3](#) shows estimates of R (based on simulations with 5000 replications) for the Theil–Sen (TS) estimator, the MGV estimator the deepest regression line estimator (T^*), TSTS (in Section 10.13.3) and the MM-estimator, where VP 1 corresponds to $\lambda(X) = 1$, VP 2 is where $\lambda(x) = x^2$, and VP 3 is $\lambda(x) = 1/|x|$. So for VP 2, the error term has more variance corresponding to extreme x values and VP 3 is a situation where the opposite is true. The results are limited to situations where the distribution for x is symmetric, but very similar results are obtained when x has an asymmetric distribution instead. In [Table 10.3](#), the distributions for ϵ are taken to be normal (N), a g-and-h distribution with $(g, h) = (0, 0.5)$, which is symmetric and heavy-tailed (SH), a g-and-h distribution with $(g, h) = (0.5, 0)$, which is asymmetric and relatively light-tailed (AL), and a g-and-h distribution with $(g, h) = (0.5, 0.5)$, which is asymmetric and relatively heavy-tailed (AH). Note that all five estimators in [Table 10.3](#) generally compete well with the OLS estimator, the main exception being a situation in which x has a symmetric, heavy-tailed distribution and ϵ has a normal distribution. The MMreg estimator is a popular choice among some statisticians and

**Table 10.3: Estimated Ratios of Standard Errors, x Distribution
Symmetric, $n = 20$.**

x	ϵ	VP	TS	MGV	T^*	TSTS	MM
N	N	1	0.91	0.91	0.76	0.88	0.98
		2	2.64	2.62	3.11	2.36	1.95
		3	96.53	77.70	67.72	100.86	116.27
N	SH	1	4.28	4.27	4.42	3.51	1.13
		2	10.67	10.94	11.03	8.66	1.97
		3	70.96	65.20	57.84	82.019	83.61
N	AL	1	1.13	1.13	0.92	1.05	0.95
		2	3.21	3.21	3.69	2.84	1.96
		3	96.52	77.69	67.72	100.86	116.26
N	AH	1	8.89	8.85	16.41	7.05	1.18
		2	26.66	27.07	25.81	20.89	1.94
		3	70.96	65.20	57.84	82.01	83.61
SH	N	1	0.81	0.80	0.61	0.76	0.95
		2	40.57	42.30	55.47	27.91	7.28
		3	106.50	49.79	58.82	106.28	151.61
SH	SH	1	3.09	2.78	2.88	2.41	1.12
		2	78.43	83.56	90.84	47.64	5.94
		3	106.50	49.79	58.82	106.28	151.61
SH	AL	1	0.99	0.87	0.73	0.90	1.20
		2	46.77	49.18	63.60	31.46	2.54
		3	106.50	49.79	58.82	106.28	151.61
SH	AH	1	6.34	5.64	6.75	4.62	1.19
		2	138.53	146.76	108.86	78.35	2.47
		3	81.95	42.27	53.54	92.65	107.26

N=Normal; SH=Symmetric, heavy-tailed.

AL=Asymmetric, light-tailed, AH=Asymmetric, heavy-tailed.

it performs relatively well for VP 3 for the situations considered in [Table 10.3](#). But for VP 1 and VP 2, the MM-estimator is less satisfactory. Also some caution is needed when using the MM-estimator for reasons described in [Section 10.14.1](#). The OP estimator, described in [Section 10.10](#), is not included in [Table 10.3](#), but it is noted that it performs in a manner very similar to the MGV estimator.

It is not being suggested that if there is heteroscedasticity, it necessarily follows that the robust regression estimators considered here will have a substantially smaller standard error than the least squares estimator. In some situations these robust estimators offer little or no advantage in terms of efficiency. Also, there is a connection between the types of heteroscedasticity considered here and regression outliers. Variance pattern VP 3, for example, has a tendency to generate regression outliers, which can have a relatively large effect on the standard error of the least squares estimator.

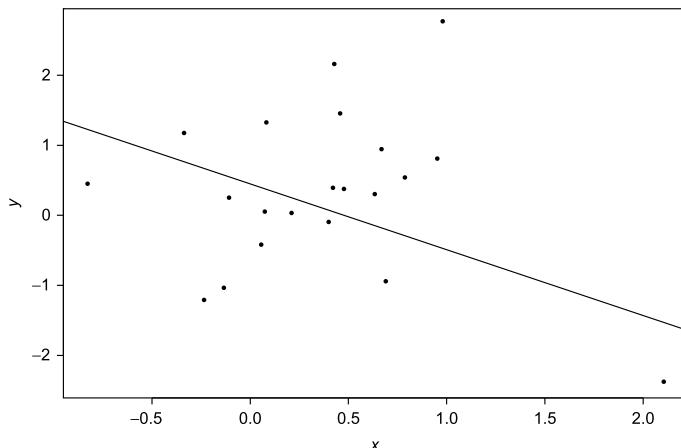


Figure 10.2: Scatterplot of twenty points where $y = x + \epsilon$, with x and ϵ having independent, standard normal distributions, plus two outliers at $(2.1, -2.4)$. The straight line is the LTS regression line which poorly estimates the slope used to generate the majority of the points.

10.14.1 Contamination Bias

Clearly, one goal underlying robust regression is to avoid situations where a small number of points can completely dominate an estimator. In particular, a goal is to avoid getting a poor fit to the bulk of the points. An approach toward achieving this goal is to require that an estimator have a reasonably high finite sample breakdown point. But there are some regression estimators that, despite having a breakdown point reasonably close to 0.5, can be greatly influenced by a few outliers.

■ Example

Twenty points were generated where both x and ϵ have a standard normal distribution, and $y = x + \epsilon$ was computed, so the true slope is one. Then two aberrant points were added to the data at $(x, y) = (2.1, -2.4)$. Figure 10.2 shows a scatterplot of the points plus the LTS regression line which has an estimated slope of -0.94 . So in this case, LTS is a complete disaster in terms of detecting how the majority of the points were generated. The least squares estimate is -0.63 . The Coakley–Hettmansperger estimator relies on LTS as an initial estimate of the slope, and despite its high breakdown point, the estimate of the slope is -0.65 . The MM-estimator, described in Section 10.9.1, estimates the slope to be -0.12 . In contrast, the MGV estimate of the slope is 0.97 and the OP estimate is 0.89 . The deepest regression line estimate is 0.66 , and the STS estimator (described in Section 10.13.1) performs poorly in this particular case, the estimate

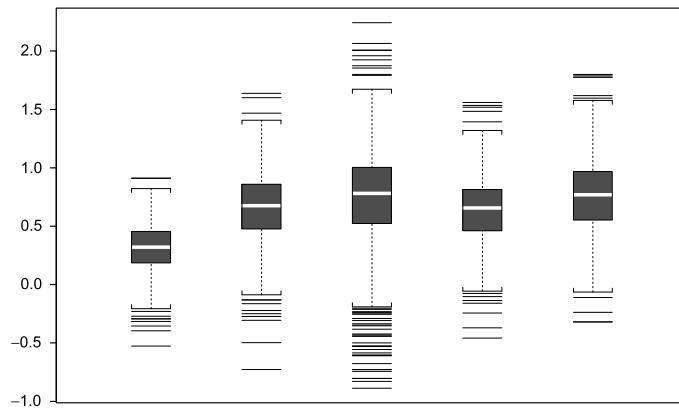


Figure 10.3: Boxplots of five hundred estimates of the slope when data are generated as in [Figure 10.2](#). From left to right, the boxplots are based on the ordinary least squares estimator, an M-estimator with Schweppe weights, the Coakley–Hettmansperger estimator, Theil–Sen, and the deepest regression line. All five estimators suffer from contamination bias.

being -0.98 . The LMS estimate of the slope is 1.7 , so it performs poorly as well in this instance. The TSTS estimator, which is an E-type estimator described in Section 10.13.3, yields an estimate of -0.05 , and the Gervini–Yohai estimator, described in the same section, estimates the slope to be 1.49 . The main point is that the choice of robust estimator is not an academic issue, but this one example is not intended as an argument that the estimators that perform poorly in this particular case should be excluded from consideration. Rather, the point is that despite the robust properties they enjoy, they can perform poorly in some situations where other methods do well. Also, although both the OP and MGV estimators do very well here, this is not to suggest that they be used to the exclusion of all other methods.

■

To add perspective, the process used to generate the data in [Figure 10.2](#) was repeated 500 times, and estimates of the slope were computed using least squares, the M-estimator with Schweppe weights (using the R function `bmreg`), the Coakley–Hettmansperger estimator (`chreg`), the Theil–Sen estimator (`tsreg`), and the deepest regression line (`depreg`). Boxplots of the results are shown in [Figure 10.3](#). Notice that the median of all these estimators differs from one, the value being estimated. This illustrates that these estimators can be sensitive to a type of *contamination bias*. That is, despite having a reasonably high finite sample breakdown point, it is possible for a few unusual points to result in a poor fit to the bulk of the observations. So these estimators, plus many other robust estimators, can provide substantial advantages versus least squares, but they do not eliminate all practical concerns.

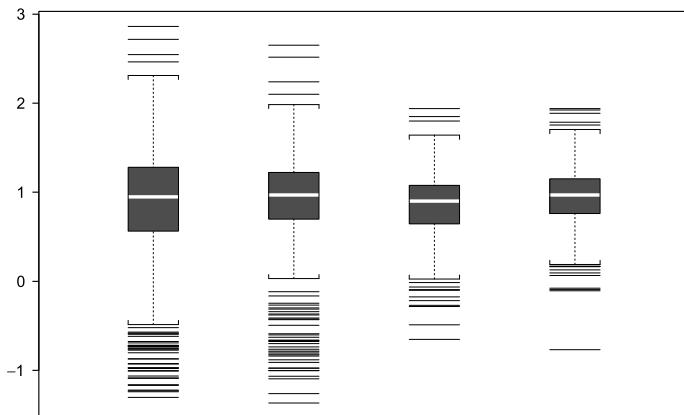


Figure 10.4: Boxplots of five hundred estimates of the slope. From left to right, the boxplots are based on the LTS estimator, the LTA estimator, the OP estimator and the MGV estimator. In contrast to the estimators used in Figure 10.3, all four estimators avoid the contamination bias problem; each is an approximately median unbiased estimator of the slope.

Figure 10.4 shows the results when using the LTS, LTA, MGV and OP estimators (with default settings). The LTA estimator gives results similar to LTS, and the OP estimator gives results similar to MGV. In contrast to the estimators in Figure 10.3, the median of all the estimators is approximately 1. So in this particular situation, these estimators do a better job of avoiding contamination bias. Note that there is considerably more variation among the LTS estimates based on a breakdown point of 0.5.

There is some evidence that generally, the STS estimator gives a better fit to the majority of points versus LTS and LMS. In particular, it seems common to encounter situations where STS is less affected by a few aberrant points. However, exceptions occur, as is illustrated next, so again it seems that multiple methods should be considered.

■ Example

Figure 10.5 shows twenty points that were generated in the same manner as in Figure 10.2. So the two aberrant points located at $(x, y) = (2.1, -2.4)$ are positioned relatively far from the true regression line which again has a slope of one and an intercept of zero. Also shown in Figure 10.5 are the STS, LMS and MGV estimates of the regression line. In this particular case, STS performs poorly; the estimated slope is -0.23 . The LMS estimate of the slope is 1.3 and the estimated slope and intercept based on the MGV estimator are 0.96 and -0.03 , respectively, which are closer to the true values versus the other estimates considered here. The OP estimates are 1.26 and -0.34 . The estimated slope based on the TSTS estimator is 0.58 and least squares returns an estimate of 0.4 .

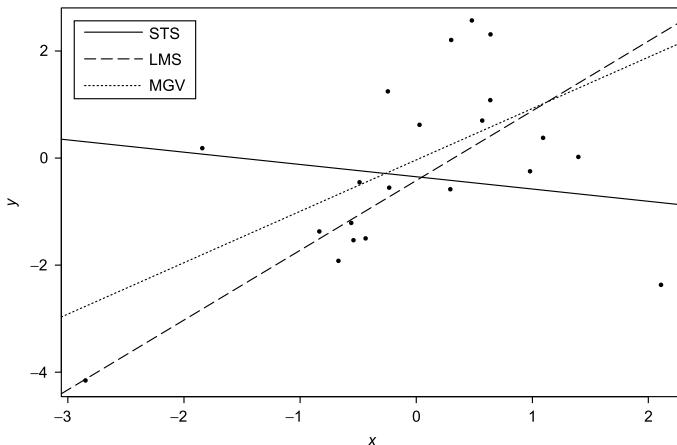


Figure 10.5: Scatterplot of twenty points where $y = x + \epsilon$, with x and ϵ having independent, standard normal distributions, plus two outliers at $(2.1, -2.4)$. This illustrates that only two outliers can have a substantial impact on the STS estimator. The LMS estimate of the slope is 1.3 and MGV estimate is 0.96.

So once again we see that the choice of which robust estimator to use can make a substantial difference in how the association between x and y is summarized. ■

It is stressed, however, that while several estimators compete well with least squares, it is fairly easy to find fault with any estimator that has been proposed. For example, both the MGV and OP estimators have several practical advantages over many other estimators that might be used. But using software written exclusively in R, the execution time required for both of these estimators can be relatively high when using a bootstrap method to test hypotheses. But access to a multicore processor can substantially reduce execution time.

It should be noted that in the theoretical literature, the term contamination bias is used in a different manner. To begin with a simple case, first focus on location estimators. Let T be any functional as described in Chapter 2 and let $T(F) = \theta$. The *contamination bias* associated with T is

$$\sup |T((1-\epsilon)F + \epsilon G) - \theta|,$$

where $0 \leq \epsilon \leq 1$, and the supremum is taken overall all distributions G . Huber (1964) established results on the contamination bias of the median and various extension have appeared in the literature (e.g., He & Simpson, 1993).

The idea can be extended to regression estimators. Following, for example, [Maronna and Yohai \(1993\)](#), let \mathbf{V} be any affine equivariant scatter matrix associated with F , let $H = (1 - \epsilon)F + \epsilon G$, and let $T(F) = \beta$ be the vector of regression parameters. The bias at G is

$$[(T(H) - \beta)' \mathbf{V}^{-1} (T(H) - \beta)]^{1/2}.$$

[Maronna and Yohai \(1993\)](#) derive results related to the maximum bias of the projection estimator. Variations on this approach are described by [He and Simpson \(1993\)](#).

10.15 Outlier Detection Based on a Robust Fit

Several outlier detection methods have been proposed that are based in part on first fitting a robust regression model assuming that Eq. (10.1) is true. Typically these methods assume a homoscedastic error term. Given the issue of contamination bias, it would seem that they should be used with caution. And the issue of how to deal with a heteroscedastic error term seems to warrant consideration. [Billor and Kiral \(2008\)](#) compare several techniques. No single method dominates and the most effective method depends to some extent on where the outliers occur. [Nurunnabi, Nasser, and Imon \(2016\)](#) suggest using a six-step process to identify influential points.

10.15.1 Detecting Regression Outliers

[Rousseeuw and van Zomeren \(1990\)](#) suggest using the LMS estimator to detect what are called *regression outliers*. Roughly, these are points that deviate substantially from the linear pattern for the bulk of the points under study. Their method begins by computing the residuals associated with LMS regression, r_1, \dots, r_n . Next, let M_r be the median of r_1^2, \dots, r_n^2 , the squared residuals, and let

$$\hat{\tau} = 1.4826 \left(1 + \frac{5}{n - p - 1} \right) \sqrt{M_r}.$$

The point $(y_i, x_{i1}, \dots, x_{ip})$ is labeled a regression outlier if the corresponding standardized residual is large. In particular, Rousseeuw and van Zomeren label the i th vector of observations a *regression outlier* if $|r_i|/\hat{\tau} > 2.5$.

10.15.2 R Functions `reglev` and `rmblo`

The R function

```
reglev(x,y,plotit=T)
```

is provided for detecting regression outliers and leverage points using the method described in the previous section. If the i th vector of observations is a regression outlier, the function stores the value of i in the R variable `reglev$regout`. If x_i is an outlier based on the method in Section 6.4.3, it is declared a leverage point and the function stores the value of i in `reglev$levpoints`. The plot created by this function can be suppressed by setting `plotit=F`. The R function

```
rmblo(x,y)
```

removes leverage points and returns the remaining data.

■ Example

If the reading data, described in Section 10.8.1, are stored in the R variables x and y , the command `reglev(x,y)` returns

```
$levpoints:  
[1] 8  
  
$regout:  
[1] 12 44 46 48 59 80
```

This says that x_8 is flagged as a leverage point (it is an outlier among the x values), and the points (y_{12}, x_{12}) , (y_{44}, x_{44}) , (y_{46}, x_{46}) , (y_{48}, x_{48}) , (y_{59}, x_{59}) , and (y_{80}, x_{80}) are regression outliers. Note that even though x_8 is an outlier, the point (y_8, x_8) is not a regression outlier. For this reason, x_8 is called a *good leverage point*. (Recall that extreme x values can lower the standard error of an estimator.) If (y_8, x_8) had been a regression outlier, x_8 would be called a *bad leverage point*. Regression outliers, for which x is not a leverage point, are called *vertical outliers*. In the illustration all of the regression outliers are vertical outliers as well.



■ Example

The reading data used in the last example are considered again, only the predictor is now taken to be the data in column 3 of the file `read.dat`, which is another measure of phonological awareness called sound blending. The plot created by `reglev` is shown in Figure 10.6. Points below the horizontal line that intersects the y -axis at -2.24 are declared regression outliers, as are points above the horizontal line that intersects the y -

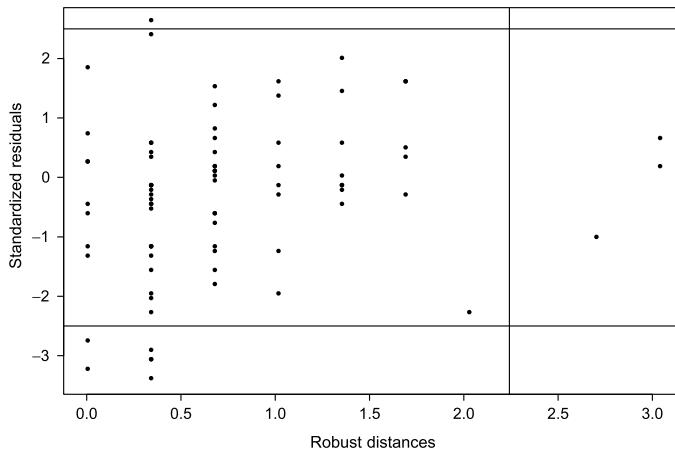


Figure 10.6: The plot created by the function `reglev` based on the reading data. Points to the right of the vertical line located at 2.24 on the x-axis are declared leverage points. Points outside the two horizontal lines are declared regression outliers.

axis at 2.24. There are three points that lie to the right of the vertical line that intersects the x-axis at $\sqrt{\chi^2_{0.975, p}} = 2.24$; these points are flagged as leverage points. These three points are not flagged as regression outliers, so they are deemed to be good leverage points. ■

10.16 Logistic Regression and the General Linear Model

A common situation is where the outcome variable y is binary. In the context of regression, a general approach is to assume that

$$P(y = 1 | \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{x}) = F(\mathbf{x}'\boldsymbol{\beta}), \quad (10.14)$$

where F is some strictly increasing cumulative distribution function and $\boldsymbol{\beta}$ is a vector of unknown parameters. A common choice for F is

$$F(t) = \frac{\exp(t)}{1 + \exp(t)},$$

which yields what is generally known as the logistic regression model. That is, assume that

$$P(y = 1 | \mathbf{X} = \mathbf{x}) = \frac{\exp(\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \cdots + \beta_p x_p)}{1 + \exp(\beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \cdots + \beta_p x_p)}. \quad (10.15)$$

The maximum likelihood estimator of $\beta = (\beta_0, \dots, \beta_p)$ is the vector $\mathbf{b} = (\mathbf{b}_0, \dots, \mathbf{b}_p)$ that minimizes

$$\sum D(y_i, \mathbf{x}'_i \mathbf{b}),$$

where

$$D(y_i, \mathbf{x}'_i \mathbf{b}) = -y_i \ln(F(\mathbf{x}'_i \mathbf{b})) - (1 - y_i) \ln(1 - F(\mathbf{x}'_i \mathbf{b})).$$

This maximum likelihood estimator is routinely used, but it is not robust. Roughly, leverage points can have an inordinate influence on the estimates. [Croux, Flandre, and Haesbroeck \(2002\)](#) discuss its breakdown point. Here the focus is on a variation of a robust estimator derived by [Bianco and Yohai \(1996\)](#), which is motivated by results in [Croux and Haesbroeck \(2003\)](#). Also see [Bianco and Martínez \(2009\)](#). The robust estimate is the value of \mathbf{b} that minimizes

$$\sum w_i \phi(y_i, \mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{b}), \quad (10.16)$$

where

$$\phi(y, t) = y\rho(-\ln(F(t))) + (1 - y)\rho(-\ln(1 - F(t))) + G(F(t)) + G(1 - F(t)) - G(1),$$

$$G(t) = \int_0^t \psi(-\ln u) du,$$

$\psi(t) = \rho'(t)$, and

$$\rho(t) = \begin{cases} te^{-\sqrt{c}} & \text{if } t \leq c \\ -2e^{-\sqrt{c}}(1 + \sqrt{t}) + e^{-\sqrt{c}}(2(1 + \sqrt{c}) + c), & \text{if } t > c, \end{cases}$$

and c is a constant. Following the suggestion by Croux and Haesbroeck, $c = 0.5$ is used here. (Croux and Haesbroeck also provide an analytic form for $G(t)$.) For additional results related to robust estimators for the logistic regression model, some of which are derived in the more general framework of the general linear model outlined in Section 10.16.2, see [Pregibon \(1987\)](#), [Carroll and Pedersen \(1993\)](#), [Christmann \(1994\)](#), and [Rousseeuw and Christmann \(2003\)](#), [Stefanski, Carroll, and Ruppert \(1986\)](#), [Künsch, Stefanski, and Carroll \(1989\)](#), [Morganthaler \(1992\)](#) and [Bondell \(2005, 2008\)](#). When computing confidence intervals for the parameters in this model, the percentile bootstrap method in Section 11.1.3 is recommended. The R function `wlogregci` in Section 11.1.4 performs the calculations. (For a method that guards against misspecified y values, see [Victoria-Feser, 2002](#).)

10.16.1 R Functions *glm*, *logreg*, *wlogreg*, *logreg.plot*

The built-in R function *glm* can be used to compute the maximum likelihood estimate of the parameters in the logistic regression model. And the R function *summary* tests hypotheses. If, for example, the data are stored in the R variables *x* and *y*, use the commands

```
fit=glm(formula=y~x,family=binomial)
summary(fit).
```

For convenience, the R function

```
logreg(x, y, xout = F, outfun = outpro, plotit = F)
```

is provided, which performs both of the R commands *glm* and *summary*. The function also removes any leverage points if the argument *xout*=T; it will use the outlier detection method indicated by the argument *outfun*. By default, the projection method in Section 6.4.9 is used. For a single predictor, if the argument *plotit* = T, the regression line will be plotted.

The Bianco–Yohai estimator is applied with the R function

```
wlogreg(x, y).
```

The function *wlogreg* returns estimates of the standard errors, but using them to compute confidence intervals and test hypotheses is not recommended. (Use the R function *wlogregci*, which is described in Chapter 11.) Finally, the R function

```
logreg.plot(x, y, MLE = F, ROB = T, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'P(X)')
```

plots the robust estimate of the regression line, assuming there is a single predictor. To plot the usual (maximum likelihood) estimate simultaneously, set the argument *MLE*=T. If *ROB*=F, the robust regression line is not plotted.

Note that there are two ways of dealing with leverage points. Use the R function *logreg* with *xout*=T, or use the Bianco–Yohai estimator via the R function *wlogreg*. In terms of achieving a relatively small standard error, all indications are that the Bianco–Yohai estimator is preferable to using the R function *logreg* with *xout*=T. However, each method reacts differently to outliers and it is not completely clear which is preferable for general use in terms of achieving relatively high power and short confidence intervals.

10.16.2 The General Linear Model

Briefly, the *general linear model* model consists of three components. The first is the assumption that an outcome variable y has a distribution that belongs to the exponential family. This family of distributions includes the normal, binomial, Poisson and gamma distributions as special cases. (In practice, one specifies which of these distributions will be assumed.) It is further assumed that the independent random variables y_1, \dots, y_n have the same distribution. In the context of regression, typically homoscedasticity is assumed. (But some generalized linear models are designed to allow heteroscedasticity.) The second component is a set of p predictors \mathbf{x} and associated parameters β . And the third component is a monotone link function g that satisfies

$$g(\mu) = \mathbf{x}\beta.$$

If the link function is taken to be the identity function, we get the usual linear model given by Eq. (10.1). A class of M-estimators for the generalized linear model has been derived, a summary of which can be found in [Heritier, Cantoni, Copt, and Victoria-Feser \(2009, Section 5.3\)](#). For results on testing hypotheses, see [Cantoni and Ronchetti \(2001\)](#). Here it is noted that the generalized linear model provides yet another approach to logistic regression, and it has the advantage of being able to handle discrete data assuming that y has a Poisson distribution.

10.16.3 R Function `glmrob`

Robust estimation and hypothesis testing can be performed via the generalized linear model just described using the R function

```
glmrob(formula, family, data),
```

which belongs to the R package `robustbase`. (Hypothesis testing is accomplished with the R function `summary`.) Mallows or Huber type robust estimators, as described in [Cantoni and Ronchetti \(2001\)](#), are used. In principle, this class of M-estimators can handle continuous outcomes, but currently the R function `glmrob` only allows discrete outcomes where y has a binomial or Poisson distribution. That is, the argument `family` can be equal to “binomial” or “poisson”. (When dealing with continuous outcomes, methods for testing hypotheses that perform well when there is heteroscedasticity are described in Chapter 11.)

10.17 Multivariate Regression

Consider a regression problem where there are p predictors $\mathbf{x}' = (x_1, \dots, x_p)$ and q responses $\mathbf{y} = (y_1, \dots, y_q)$. The usual multivariate regression model is

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}, \quad (10.17)$$

where \mathbf{B} is a $(p \times q)$ slope matrix, \mathbf{a} is a q -dimensional intercept vector, and the errors $\boldsymbol{\epsilon} = (\epsilon_1, \dots, \epsilon_q)$ are independent and identically distributed with mean $\mathbf{0}$ and covariance matrix $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}}$, a positive definite matrix of size q . Let $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ be some measure of location associated with the joint distribution of (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) and let $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ be some measure of scatter. Partitioning (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y}) and $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ in an obvious way yields

$$\boldsymbol{\mu} = \begin{pmatrix} \mu_x \\ \mu_y \end{pmatrix} \text{ and } \boldsymbol{\Sigma} = \begin{pmatrix} \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xx} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{xy} \\ \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{yx} & \boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{yy} \end{pmatrix}.$$

In practice, Eq. (10.17) is typically assumed and the most common choice for $\boldsymbol{\mu}$ is the population mean, which is estimated with the usual sample mean, say $\hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}$, and the estimate of $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}$ is typically taken to be the usual covariance matrix, say $\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}$. The resulting estimates of \mathbf{B} and \mathbf{a} are

$$\hat{\mathbf{B}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{xx}^{-1} \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{xy} \quad (10.18)$$

and

$$\hat{\mathbf{a}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_y - \hat{\mathbf{B}}' \hat{\boldsymbol{\mu}}_x, \quad (10.19)$$

respectively. The estimate of the covariance matrix associated with the error term, $\boldsymbol{\epsilon}$, is

$$\hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{\boldsymbol{\epsilon}} = \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{yy} - \hat{\mathbf{B}}' \hat{\boldsymbol{\Sigma}}_{xx} \hat{\mathbf{B}}. \quad (10.20)$$

It is well known, however, that this classic estimator is extremely sensitive to outliers. Another concern is that when $q = 1$, it is known that the efficiency of the least squares estimator can be poor relative to other estimators that might be used.

Another point worth mentioning is that the estimator just described does not take into account the overall structure of the y values. Indeed, it is tantamount to simply computing the least squares regression line for each of the q response variables y_1, \dots, y_q (e.g., [Jhun & Choi, 2009](#)). From a robustness point of view, a simple strategy is to mimic this approach with some robust estimator. The remainder of this section summarizes some alternative estimators that have been proposed.

10.17.1 The RADA Estimator

Let $\mathbf{z} = (\mathbf{x}, \mathbf{y})$ and let \mathbf{z}_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$) be a random sample of size n . [Rousseeuw, Van Aelst, Van Driessen, and Agulló \(2004\)](#) proposed three robust alternatives to Eq. (10.18) and Eq. (10.19), and they recommended one for general use based on simulation estimates of its efficiency. They begin by computing the MCD estimate based on \mathbf{z}_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$). Recall that the MCD estimator searches for a subset $\{\mathbf{z}_{i_1}, \dots, \mathbf{z}_{i_h}\}$ of size h whose covariance matrix has the smallest determinant, where $\lceil n/2 \rceil \leq h \leq n$. Let $\gamma = (n - h)/n$, so $0 \leq \gamma \leq 0.5$. The estimated center is

$$\hat{\theta} = \sum_{j=1}^h \mathbf{z}_{i_j} / h,$$

and the estimated scatter is

$$\hat{\Sigma} = c_n c_\gamma \frac{1}{h} \sum_{j=1}^h (\mathbf{z}_{i_j} - \hat{\theta})(\mathbf{z}_{i_j} - \hat{\theta})'$$

where c_n is a small-sample correction factor and c_γ is a consistency factor ([Pison, Van Aelst, & Willems, 2002](#)). For the problem at hand, Rousseeuw et al. found that $h \approx 3n/4$ provides relatively good efficiency and this choice is used here unless stated otherwise. Once the MCD estimates of location and scatter, based on \mathbf{z} , are available, their values are used in Eqs. (10.18) and (10.19) to get estimates of the slopes and intercept. But efficiency can be relatively low.

[Rousseeuw et al. \(2004\)](#) consider two strategies for improving efficiency. Briefly, their first strategy uses weighted measures of location and scatter, with the weights computed as follows. Let $d(\mathbf{z}) = ((\mathbf{z}_i - \hat{\theta})' \hat{\Sigma}^{-1} (\mathbf{z}_i - \hat{\theta}))^{1/2}$ and $w_i = I(d^2(\mathbf{z}) \leq q)$, where q is the 0.975 quantile of a chi-squared distribution with $p + q$ degrees of freedom. Then the weighted measure of location and scatter (omitting a consistency factor) are

$$\hat{\theta}_1 = \frac{\sum w_i \mathbf{z}_i}{\sum w_i}, \quad (10.21)$$

and

$$\hat{\Sigma}_1 = \frac{\sum w_i (\mathbf{z}_i - \hat{\theta}_1)(\mathbf{z}_i - \hat{\theta}_1)'}{\sum w_i}, \quad (10.22)$$

respectively. Their second and recommended method uses updated weights based on the residuals associated with Eqs. (10.21) and (10.22). Let \mathbf{r}_i be the residuals. Then the weights are taken to be $w_i = (\mathbf{r}'_i \hat{\Sigma}_\epsilon \mathbf{r}_i)^{1/2}$. One appealing feature of this reweighting scheme is that

good leverage points (outliers among the \mathbf{x} values for which the corresponding residual is not an outlier) are not downweighted. This will be called the RADA estimator henceforth.

[Wilcox \(2009b\)](#) compared the RADA estimator to several other estimators, which included situations where the error term is heteroscedastic. The RADA estimator did not dominate, but it performed reasonably well, particularly when there is dependence among the \mathbf{y} values.

10.17.2 The Least Distance Estimator

[Bai, Chen, Miao, and Rao \(1990\)](#) proposed another estimator that takes into account the dependence among the outcome variables, \mathbf{y} . Called the *least distance estimator*, the regression parameters are estimated with the matrix \mathbf{B} that minimizes

$$\sum_{i=1}^n \|\mathbf{y}_i - \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{x}_i\|, \quad (10.23)$$

where now the design matrix \mathbf{x} is assumed to have a column of 1's when the model includes an intercept term. The least distance estimator generalizes the spatial median estimator of multivariate location. [Jhun and Choi \(2009\)](#) confirm that the efficiency of the least distance estimator compares well to the least absolute estimator, meaning that the univariate least absolute regression estimator is applied for each of the q outcome variables. In particular, the efficiency of the least distance estimator, relative the least absolute regression estimator, improves under normality as the correlation among the outcome variables, \mathbf{y} , increases.

There is some indication that the least distance estimator competes well with the RADA estimator, in terms of mean squared error, when the error term is homoscedastic. When the error term is heteroscedastic, the reverse might be true. A negative feature of the least distance estimator is that it can be a bit biased with $n = 40$, while bias is negligible when using RADA. It is stressed, however, that a systematic comparison of these two estimators has not been made.

10.17.3 R Functions `MULMreg`, `mlrreg` and `Mreglde`

The R function

```
MULMreg(x,y, regfun=MMreg, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, ...)
```

computes the regression parameters for each column of \mathbf{y} using the regression estimator indicated by the argument `regfun`. The R function

```
mlrreg(x,y,cov.fun=cov.mcd)
```

computes the RADA multivariate regression estimator. By default, it uses the MCD estimator, but some other covariance matrix can be used via the argument cov.fun. The function assumes the argument y is a matrix with two or more columns. The R function

```
Mreglde(x,y,xout=F,eout=F,outfun=outpro)
```

computes the least distance estimator. If the argument eout=T, the function combines the columns of data in the arguments x and y into a single matrix and then removes all outliers detected by the method indicated by the argument outfun. If xout=T, the function removes any row of data from both x and y for which the row in x is declared an outlier. By default the projection-type outlier detection method is used.

```
MULR.yhat(x,y,pts=x,regfun=MULMreg,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,...)
```

computes the predicted value of the dependent variables for the points stored in the argument pts using the regression estimator indicated by the argument regfun.

■ Example

A practical issue is whether situations are encountered where the choice of a robust multivariate regression estimator can result in estimates that appear to differ substantially. This can indeed occur as illustrated here using the reading data mentioned in Section 10.8.1. Consider the first two predictors (stored in columns 2 and 3) and the first two outcome variables of interest stored in columns 8 and 9. The estimates returned by the R function mlrreg (the RADA estimator) are

	Y1	Y2
Intercept	66.000739	68.2289879
V2	1.027754	0.6587633
V3	2.587086	2.1111645

The estimates returned by Mreglde (the least distance estimator) are

	Y	Y
INTER	95.444444	89.987654
SLOPE	7.344828	3.444856
SLOPE	7.045528	6.303742

10.17.4 Multivariate Least Trimmed Squares Estimator

Agulló, Croux, and Van Aelst (2008) suggest another approach to multivariate regression based on what they call the least trimmed squares estimators. For the usual least squares estimate of \mathbf{B} , say $\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{LS}$, let

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{LS} = \frac{1}{n-p}(\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{LS})'(\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{LS}).$$

Consider any subset of the \mathbf{z}_i vectors (defined as in Section 10.17.1) having cardinality h . For this subset of the data, and some choice for \mathbf{B} , let $\mathbf{r}_i = \mathbf{y}_i - \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{x}_i$ be the matrix of residuals and

$$\text{cov}(\mathbf{B}) = \frac{1}{h} \sum (\mathbf{r}_i - \bar{\mathbf{r}})(\mathbf{r}_i - \bar{\mathbf{r}})',$$

where $\bar{\mathbf{r}} = \sum \mathbf{r}_i / h$. Their strategy is to first search for the subset of the data that minimizes $|\hat{\Sigma}_{LS}|$. Their multivariate least trimmed squares (MLTS) estimator, $\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{MLTS}$ is the least squares estimate based on this subset of the data. They establish that this is tantamount to choosing \mathbf{B} so as to minimize the determinant of the MCD scatter matrix estimate based on the residuals from \mathbf{B} .

A criticism is that the efficiency of this estimator can be relatively low. Agulló et al. (2008) deal with this issue by using a one-step reweighted estimator. Let

$$\hat{\Sigma}_{MLTS} = \frac{1}{n-p}(\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{MLTS})'(\mathbf{Y} - \mathbf{X}\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{MLTS}).$$

Let $J = \{j : d_j^2(\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{MLTS}, \hat{\Sigma}_{MLTS}) \leq q_\delta\}$, where

$$d_j^2(\mathbf{B}, \Sigma) = \mathbf{r}_i' \Sigma^{-1} \mathbf{r}_i.$$

Agulló et al. take $\delta = 0.01$ and c_δ equal to the $1 - \delta$ quantile of a chi-squared distribution with q degrees of freedom. The reweighted estimate is taken to be $\hat{\mathbf{B}}_{RMLTS}$, the least squares estimate based on the vectors of observations corresponding to the set J .

10.17.5 R Function `MULtsreg`

The R function

```
MULtsreg(x, y, tr = 0.2, RMLTS = T)
```

computes the multivariate least trimmed squares estimator. The argument `RMLTS=T` means the reweighted estimator is returned; otherwise the MLTS estimator is returned.

10.17.6 Other Robust Estimators

Not all multivariate regression estimators, which have been proposed, are listed here. But in case it helps, two others are mentioned. The first uses Eqs. (10.18) and (10.19) to estimate the slopes and intercept but with the usual mean and covariance matrices replaced by some robust analog. Zhou (2009) has studied this approach when using the projection estimate of location and scatter in Section 6.3.7. (The form of the Stahel–Donoho W-estimator suggested by Zuo, Cui, & He, 2004; Zuo, Cui, & Young, 2004, was used.) Currently, execution time can be an issue and little is known about how this approach compares to the estimators in Sections 10.17.1 and 10.17.2. Yet another approach was derived by Ben, Martínez, and Yohai (2006). The regression coefficients and the covariance matrix of the errors are estimated simultaneously by minimizing the determinant of the covariance matrix, subject to a constraint on a robust scale of the Mahalanobis norms of the residuals. They use a τ -estimate of scale. Ben et al. report simulation results indicating that their estimator compares favorably to S-estimates.

10.18 Exercises

1. The average LSAT scores (x) for the 1973 entering classes of 15 American law schools, and the corresponding grade point averages (y), are as follows.

$$\begin{array}{ll} x: & 576 \ 635 \ 558 \ 578 \ 666 \ 580 \ 555 \ 661 \ 651 \ 605 \ 653 \ 575 \ 545 \ 572 \ 594 \\ y: & 3.39 \ 3.30 \ 2.81 \ 3.03 \ 3.44 \ 3.07 \ 3.00 \ 3.43 \ 3.36 \ 3.13 \ 3.12 \ 2.74 \ 2.76 \ 2.88 \ 2.96 \end{array}$$

Using the R function `lsfitci`, verify that the 0.95 confidence interval for the slope, based on the least squares regression line, is (0.0022, 0.0062).

2. Discuss the relative merits of $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$.
3. Using the data in Exercise 1, show that the estimate of the slope given by $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$ is 0.0057. In contrast, the OLS estimate is 0.0045, and $\hat{\beta}_m = 0.0042$. Comment on the difference among the three estimates.
4. Let T be any regression estimator that is affine equivariant. Let \mathbf{A} be any nonsingular square matrix. Argue that the predicted y values, \hat{y}_i , remain unchanged when \mathbf{x}_i is replaced by $\mathbf{x}_i \mathbf{A}$.
5. For the data in Exercise 1, use the R function `reglev` to comment on the advisability of using M regression with Schweppe weights.
6. Compute the hat matrix for the data in Exercise 1. Which x values are identified as leverage points? Relate the result to the previous exercise.
7. The example in Section 6.6.1 reports the results of drinking alcohol for two groups of subjects measured at three different times. Using the group 1 data, compute an OLS estimate of the regression parameters for predicting the time 1 data using the data based on times 2 and 3. Compare the results to the estimates given by $\hat{\beta}_m$ and $\hat{\beta}_{\text{ch}}$.

8. For the data used in the previous exercise, compute 0.95 confidence intervals for the parameters using OLS as well as M regression with Schweppe weights.
9. Referring to Exercise 6, how do the results compare to the results obtained with the R function reglev?
10. For the data in Exercise 6, verify that the 0.95 confidence interval for the regression parameters, using the R function regci with M regression and Schweppe weights, are $(-0.2357, 0.3761)$ and $(-0.0231, 1.2454)$. Also verify that if regci is used with OLS, the confidence intervals are $(-0.4041, 0.6378)$ and $(0.2966, 1.7367)$. How do the results compare to the confidence intervals returned by lsfitci? What might be wrong with confidence intervals based on regci when the OLS estimator is used?
11. The file read.dat contains reading data collected by L. Doi. Of interest is predicting WWISST2, a word identification score (stored in column 8), using TAAST1, a measure of phonological awareness stored in column 2, and SBT1 (stored in column 3), another measure of phonological awareness. Compare the OLS estimates to the estimates given by $\hat{\beta}_m$, $\hat{\beta}_{ad}$, and $\hat{\beta}_{mid}$.
12. For the data used in Exercise 11, compute the hat matrix and identify any leverage points. Also check for leverage points with the R function reglev. How do the results compare.
13. For the data used in Exercise 11, RAN1T1 and RAN2T1 (stored in columns 4 and 5) are measures of digit naming speed and letter naming speed. Use M regression with Schweppe weights to estimate the regression parameters when predicting WWISST2. Use the function elimna, described in Chapter 1, to remove missing values. Compare the results with the OLS estimates and $\hat{\beta}_{ch}$.
14. For the data in Exercise 13, identify any leverage points using the hat matrix. Next, identify leverage points with the function reglev. How do the results compare?
15. Graphically illustrate the difference between a regression outlier and a good leverage point. That is, plot some points for which $y = \beta_1 x + \beta_0$, and then add some points that represent regression outliers and good leverage points.
16. Describe the relative merits of the OP and MGV estimators in Section 10.10.
17. For the star data in Figure 6.3, which are stored in the file star.dat, eliminate the four outliers in the upper left corner of the plot by restricting the range of the x values. Then using the remaining data, estimate the standard error of the least squares estimator, the M-estimator with Schweppe weights, as well as the OP and MGV estimators. Comment on the results.

More Regression Methods

This chapter describes some additional robust regression methods that have been found to have practical value, including some inferential techniques that perform well in simulation studies even when the error term is heteroscedastic. Also covered are methods for testing the hypothesis that two or more of the regression parameters are equal to zero, a method for comparing the slope parameters of independent groups, measures of association based on a given fit to the data, methods for comparing dependent correlations, and methods for dealing with curvilinear relationships.

11.1 Inferences About Robust Regression Parameters

This section deals with testing hypotheses about the parameters in the regression model

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \dots + \beta_p x_{ip} + \epsilon_i,$$

where the error term might be heteroscedastic and some robust regression estimator is used. (Section 10.1 described methods designed specifically for the situation where the least squares estimator is used.) A common goal is testing

$$H_0 : \beta_1 = \dots = \beta_p = 0, \quad (11.1)$$

the hypothesis that all of the slope parameters are equal to zero, but the methods described here can also be used to test

$$H_0 : \beta_1 = \dots = \beta_q = 0,$$

the hypothesis that $q < p$ of the parameters are equal to zero. A more general goal is to test the hypothesis that q parameters are equal to some specified value, and the method described here accomplishes this goal as well. And there is the goal of computing confidence intervals for the individual parameters. It is noted that [Barber and Candès \(2015\)](#) derived an approach aimed at determining which slope parameters are significant when p is large. They focus on controlling the false discovery rate when testing which parameters should be retained. Their

method assumes normality and homoscedasticity. There are some indications that it continues to perform well under non-normality but there appear to be no results on the impact of heteroscedasticity.

Before continuing, a word of caution is in order. The linear model used in this section is routinely adopted and situations are encountered where it appears to provide a reasonably accurate characterization of the association. It is suggested, however, that when dealing with regression, it is prudent to also consider more flexible methods for modeling an association, which can be done via the methods in Section 11.5. This is particularly important when dealing with more than one independent variable. Even with one independent variable, assuming a straight regression line can be misleading and miss important features of an association. A simple strategy for dealing with curvature is to include a quadratic term in the linear model used here. But often a more flexible approach is needed, as will be illustrated.

11.1.1 *Omnibus Tests for Regression Parameters*

Currently, the best methods for testing hypotheses based on robust regression estimators are based on some type of bootstrap method. This section begins with testing Eq. (11.1) and then the goal of computing confidence intervals for the individual parameters is addressed.

When working with robust regression, three strategies for testing hypotheses have received attention in the statistical literature and should be mentioned. The first is based on the so-called *Wald scores*, the second is a *likelihood ratio test*, and the third is based on a measure of *drop in dispersion*. Details about these methods can be found in [Markatou, Stahel, and Ronchetti \(1991\)](#), as well as [Heritier and Ronchetti \(1994\)](#). [Coakley and Hettmansperger \(1993\)](#) suggest using a Wald scores test in conjunction with their estimation procedure, assuming that the error term is homoscedastic. The method estimates the standard error of their estimator which can be used to get an appropriate test statistic for which the null distribution is chi-squared. When both x and ϵ are normal, and the error term is homoscedastic, the method provides reasonably good control over the probability of a Type I error when $n = 50$. However, if ϵ is non-normal, the actual probability of a Type I error can exceed 0.1 when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level, even with $n = 100$ ([Wilcox, 1994e](#)). Consequently, details about the method are not described. [Birkes and Dodge \(1993\)](#) describe drop-in-dispersion methods when working with M regression methods that do not protect against leverage points. Little is known about how this approach performs under heteroscedasticity, so it is not discussed either. Instead, attention is focused on a method that has been found to perform well when there is a heteroscedastic error term. It is not being suggested that the method described here outperforms all other methods that might be used, only that it gives good results over a relatively wide range of situations, and based on extant simulation studies, it is the best method available.

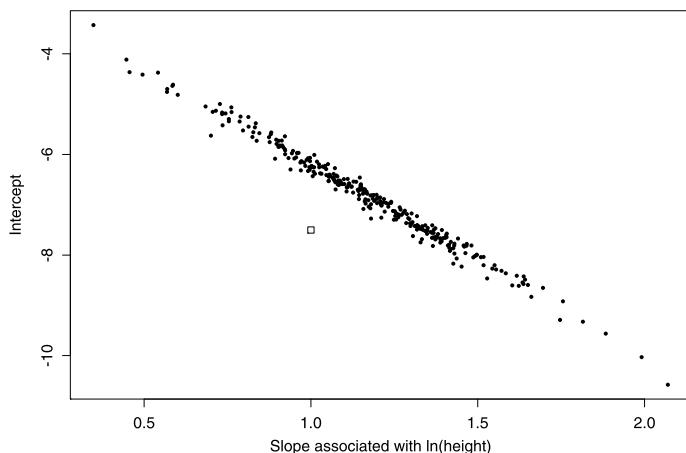


Figure 11.1: Scatterplot of bootstrap estimates using the tree data. The square marks the null values.

The basic strategy is to generate B bootstrap estimates of the parameters and then determine whether the vector of values specified by the null hypothesis is far enough away from the bootstrap samples to warrant rejecting H_0 . This strategy is illustrated with the tree data in the Minitab handbook (Ryan, Joiner, & Ryan, 1985, p. 329). The data consist of tree volume (V), tree diameter (d), and tree height (h). If the trees are cylindrical or cone shaped, then a reasonable model for the data is $y = \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \beta_0$, where $y = \ln(V)$, $x_1 = \ln(d)$, $x_2 = \ln(h)$ with $\beta_1 = 2$ and $\beta_2 = 1$ (Fairley, 1986). The OLS estimate of the intercept is $\hat{\beta}_0 = -6.632$, $\hat{\beta}_1 = 1.98$, and the estimates of the slopes are $\hat{\beta}_2 = 1.12$. Using M regression with Schweppe weights (the R function `bmreg`), the estimates are -6.59 , 1.97 , and 1.11 , respectively.

Suppose bootstrap samples are generated as described in Section 10.1.1 (cf. Salibian-Barrera & Zamar, 2002). That is, rows of data are sampled with replacement. Figure 11.1 shows a scatterplot of 300 bootstrap estimates, using M regression with Schweppe weights, of the intercept, β_0 , and β_2 , the slope associated with log height. The square marks the hypothesized values, $(\beta_0, \beta_2) = (-7.5, 1)$. These bootstrap values provide an estimate of a confidence region for (β_0, β_2) that is centered at the estimated values $\hat{\beta}_0 = -6.59$ and $\hat{\beta}_2 = 1.11$. Figure 11.1 suggests that the hypothesized values might not be reasonable. That is, the point $(-7.5, 1)$ might be far enough away from the bootstrap values to suggest that it is unlikely that β_0 and β_2 simultaneously have the values -7.5 and 1 , respectively. The problem is measuring the distance between the hypothesized values and the estimated values, and then finding a decision rule that rejects the null hypothesis with probability α when H_0 is true.

For convenience, temporarily assume the goal is to test the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.1). A simple modification of the method in Section 8.2.5 can be used where bootstrap samples

are obtained by resampling with replacement rows from

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1, x_{11}, \dots, x_{1J} \\ \vdots \\ y_n, x_{n1}, \dots, x_{nJ} \end{pmatrix}$$

yielding

$$\begin{pmatrix} y_1^*, x_{11}^*, \dots, x_{1J}^* \\ \vdots \\ y_n^*, x_{n1}^*, \dots, x_{nJ}^* \end{pmatrix}.$$

Let $\hat{\beta}_{jb}^*$, $j = 1, \dots, p$; $b = 1, \dots, B$ be an estimate of the j th parameter based on the b th bootstrap sample and any robust estimator described in Chapter 10. Then an estimate of the covariance between $\hat{\beta}_j$ and $\hat{\beta}_k$ is

$$v_{jk} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\hat{\beta}_{jb}^* - \bar{\beta}_j^*)(\hat{\beta}_{kb}^* - \bar{\beta}_k^*),$$

where $\bar{\beta}_j^* = \sum \hat{\beta}_{jb}^*/B$. Here $\hat{\beta}_j$ can be any estimator of interest. Now the distance between the b th bootstrap estimate of the parameters, and the estimate based on the original observations, can be measured with

$$d_b^2 = (\hat{\beta}_{1b}^* - \hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{pb}^* - \hat{\beta}_p) \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\hat{\beta}_{1b}^* - \hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{pb}^* - \hat{\beta}_p)',$$

where \mathbf{V} is the p -by- p covariance matrix with the element in the j th row and k th column equal to v_{jk} . That is, $\mathbf{V} = (v_{jk})$ is the sample covariance matrix based on the bootstrap estimates of the parameters. The square root of d_b^2 , d_b , represents a simple generalization of the Mahalanobis distance. If the point corresponding to the vector of hypothesized values is sufficiently far from the estimated values, relative to the distances d_b , reject H_0 . This strategy is implemented by putting the d_b values in ascending order yielding $d_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq d_{(B)}$, setting $M = [(1 - \alpha)B]$, and letting m be the value of M rounded to the nearest integer. The null hypothesis is rejected if

$$D > d_{(m)}, \quad (11.2)$$

where

$$D = \sqrt{(\hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_p) \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_p)'}$$

The method just described is easily generalized to testing

$$H_0: \beta_1 = \beta_{10}, \beta_2 = \beta_{20}, \dots, \beta_q = \beta_{q0},$$

the hypothesis that q of the $p + 1$ parameters are equal to specified constants, $\beta_{10}, \dots, \beta_{q0}$. Proceed as before, only now

$$d_b = \sqrt{(\hat{\beta}_{1b}^* - \hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{qb}^* - \hat{\beta}_q) \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\hat{\beta}_{1b}^* - \hat{\beta}_1, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{qb}^* - \hat{\beta}_q)'},$$

and \mathbf{V} is a q -by- q matrix of estimated covariances based on the B bootstrap estimates of the q parameters being tested. The critical value, $d_{(m)}$, is computed as before, and the test statistic is

$$D = \sqrt{(\hat{\beta}_1 - \beta_{10}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_q - \beta_{q0}) \mathbf{V}^{-1} (\hat{\beta}_1 - \beta_{10}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_q - \beta_{q0})'}. \quad (11.3)$$

The (generalized) p-value is

$$\hat{p}^* = \frac{1}{B} \sum I(D \leq d_b),$$

where $I(D \leq d_b) = 1$ if $D \leq d_b$, and $I(D \leq d_b) = 0$ if $D > d_b$.

The hypothesis testing method just described can be used with any regression estimator. When using the OLS estimator, it has advantages over the conventional F test, but problems remain. This is illustrated by [Table 11.1](#), which shows the estimated probability of a Type I error for various situations when testing $H_0: \beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$, $\alpha = 0.05$, and where

$$y = \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \lambda(x_1, x_2) \epsilon. \quad (11.3)$$

(For results on testing hypotheses when the function λ is known, see [Zhao & Wang, 2009](#).) In [Table 11.1](#), VP1 corresponds to $\lambda(x_1, x_2) = 1$ (a homoscedastic error term), VP2 is $\lambda(x_1, x_2) = |x_1|$, and VP3 is $\lambda(x_1, x_2) = 1/(|x_1| + 1)$. Both x_1 and x_2 have identical g-and-h distributions, with the g and h values specified by the first two columns. In some cases the conventional F test performs well, but it performs poorly for VP2. The bootstrap method improves matters considerably, but the probability of a Type I error exceeds 0.075 in various situations. In practical terms, when testing hypotheses using OLS, use the methods in [Section 10.1.1](#) rather than the bootstrap method described here.

[Table 11.2](#) shows $\hat{\alpha}$, the estimated probability of a Type I error when using $\hat{\beta}_{\text{mid}}$, the biweight midregression estimator with $n = 20$, and the goal is to test $H_0: \beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$ with $\alpha = 0.05$. Now the probability of a Type I error is less than or equal to the nominal level, but in some cases it is too low, particularly for VP3 where it drops as low as 0.002. (For more details about the simulations used to create [Tables 11.1 and 11.2](#), see [Wilcox, 1996f](#).) Simulations indicate that switching to the Theil–Sen estimator improves the control over the Type I error probability when dealing with heavy-tailed distributions ([Wilcox, 2004d](#)).

Table 11.1: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities Using OLS, $\alpha = 0.05, n = 20$.

x		ϵ		VP1		VP2		VP3	
g	h	g	h	Boot	F	Boot	F	Boot	F
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.072	0.050	0.097	0.181	0.009	0.015
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.028	0.047	0.046	0.135	0.004	0.018
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.052	0.049	0.084	0.174	0.009	0.018
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.028	0.043	0.042	0.129	0.005	0.019
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.022	0.055	0.078	0.464	0.003	0.033
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.014	0.074	0.042	0.371	0.002	0.038
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.017	0.048	0.072	0.456	0.005	0.032
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.011	0.070	0.039	0.372	0.005	0.040
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.054	0.044	0.100	0.300	0.013	0.032
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.024	0.057	0.049	0.236	0.010	0.038
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.039	0.048	0.080	0.286	0.010	0.033
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.017	0.058	0.046	0.217	0.010	0.040
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.013	0.054	0.083	0.513	0.006	0.040
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.009	0.073	0.043	0.416	0.002	0.048
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.013	0.053	0.079	0.505	0.005	0.043
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.006	0.067	0.036	0.414	0.005	0.050

Table 11.2: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$ Using Biweight Midregression, $\alpha = 0.05, n = 20$.

X		ϵ		VP1	VP2	VP3
g	h	g	h			
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.047	0.039	0.015
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.018	0.024	0.008
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.038	0.037	0.011
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.021	0.025	0.003
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.016	0.018	0.002
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.009	0.018	0.002
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.015	0.016	0.002
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.009	0.012	0.003
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.033	0.037	0.012
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.020	0.020	0.006
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.024	0.031	0.009
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.015	0.021	0.005
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.015	0.021	0.002
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.008	0.011	0.002
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.014	0.017	0.002
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.006	0.007	0.002

11.1.2 R Function regtest

The R function

```
regtest(x,y,regfun=tsreg,nboot=600,alpha=0.05,plotit=T,grp=c(1:ncol(x)), nullvec =
c(rep(0,length(grp))))
```

tests hypotheses with the bootstrap method described in the previous section. As usual, x is an n -by- p matrix containing the predictors. The argument `regfun` is any R function that estimates regression coefficients and returns the estimates in the vector `regfun$coef`. If unspecified, `regfun` defaults to `tsreg` which computes the Theil–Sen estimate. The assumption is that the first element of `regfun$coef` contains the estimated intercept, the second contains the estimate of β_1 , and so on. The arguments `nboot` and `alpha` are B , the number of bootstrap samples to be used, and α , respectively. The default values are $B = 599$ and $\alpha = 0.05$. The argument `grp` indicates which parameters are to be tested. By default, the null hypothesis is that all p slope parameters are equal to zero. If, for example, the goal is to test $H_0: \beta_2 = \beta_4 = 0$, type the R command `grp=c(2,4)` in which case the command `regtest(x,y,regfun=bmreg,grp=grp)` would test H_0 for the data in x and y using M regression with Schweppe weights. That is, `grp` is a vector containing the subscripts of the parameters to be tested. Alternatively, use the command `regtest(x,y,grp=c(2,4))`. To test $H_0: \beta_0 = \beta_4 = 0$, the hypothesis that the intercept and fourth slope parameter are equal to zero, use the command `regtest(x,y,grp=c(0,4))`. The optional argument `nullvec` contains the null values. If unspecified, `nullvec` defaults to a vector of zeros. The vectors `nullvec` and `grp` must have the same length. If they do not, the function returns an error message and terminates.

■ Example

For the tree data used to create [Figure 11.1](#), suppose there is reason to believe that $\beta_0 = -7.5$ and $\beta_2 = 1$. If the logarithm of the predictor values are stored in `mtree`, and the logarithm of the volume (the y values) are stored in `ytree`, then the command

```
regtest(mtree,ytree,regfun=bmreg,grp=c(0,2),nullvec=c(-7.5,1))
```

will test the hypothesis that $H_0: \beta_0 = -7.5$ and $\beta_2 = 1$ using the R function `bmreg` to estimate the parameters. The function `regtest` reports a test statistic of 97.24, with a 0.05 critical value of 7.98, so H_0 is rejected. Using the Theil–Sen estimator, the test statistic is 93.8, the 0.05 critical value is 7.06, and the (generalized) p-value is 0.

11.1.3 Inferences About Individual Parameters

When the goal is to compute a confidence interval for the individual parameters in a regression model, a simple percentile bootstrap method appears to perform well, in terms of probability coverage, when used with some robust regression estimator. Essentially, proceed as in [Section 10.1.1](#), but with the least squares estimator replaced by any robust estimator, and when applying the percentile bootstrap method. Unlike the situation in [Section 10.1.1](#), no

adjustment is made when the sample size is small. That is, bootstrap samples are obtained by randomly sampling n vectors of observations, with replacement, which is in contrast to bootstrap methods that resample residuals. Let $\hat{\beta}_j^*$ be any robust estimate of β_j based on the bootstrap sample just obtained. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\beta}_{j1}^*, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{jB}^*$. Then for fixed j , the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_j is

$$(\hat{\beta}_{j(\ell+1)}^*, \hat{\beta}_{j(u)}^*), \quad (11.4)$$

where $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer, $u = B - \ell$, and $\hat{\beta}_{j(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq \hat{\beta}_{j(B)}^*$ are the B bootstrap estimates of β_j written in ascending order. In other words, use the standard percentile bootstrap method, as opposed to the modified method used when working with OLS. A (generalized) p-value can be computed in the usual way. Let \hat{p}^* be the proportion of bootstrap estimates greater than zero. Then the p-value is

$$\hat{p}_m^* = 2 \min(\hat{p}^*, 1 - \hat{p}^*).$$

(Under certain circumstances, when there is one predictor only, an alternative approach to computing a confidence interval for the slope that might have practical value is described by [Adrover & Salibian-Barrera, 2010](#).)

To provide some indication of how well the method performs when using the M-estimator $\hat{\beta}_m$, [Table 11.3](#) shows values of $\hat{\alpha}$, simulation estimates of one minus the actual probability coverage, when $n = 20$ and $\alpha = 0.05$. The notation VP1 indicates a homoscedastic error term ($\lambda(x) = 1$) in Eq. (10.2), VP2 is a heteroscedastic error term where the variance of the error term increases as x moves away from its median value ($\lambda(x) = x^2$), and VP3 is where the variance decreases as x moves away from its median ($\lambda(x) = 1 + 2/(|x| + 1)$). The $\hat{\alpha}$ values never exceed 0.075, but for VP2 they can exceed 0.070. (For results when using the Theil–Sen estimator, see [Wilcox, 1998a, 1998b](#). For results related to the OP estimator in Section 10.10, see [Wilcox, 2004d](#).)

To provide a bit more perspective, [Table 11.4](#) shows simulation estimates of the probability of a Type I error when using the Theil–Sen estimator with $p = 2$. Under VP1, the first entry is the estimated probability of a Type I error using Eq. (11.2), and the second entry is the probability of at least one Type I error when using Eq. (11.4). The same is true for the columns headed by VP2 and VP3. For brevity, only results where x has a symmetric distribution are shown. So for n small, using Eq. (11.2) can result in Type I error probabilities considerably smaller than the nominal level.

Table 11.3: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$ Using $\hat{\beta}_m$, $\alpha = 0.05$, $n = 20$.

x		ϵ		VP1	VP2	VP3
g	h	g	h			
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.054	0.065	0.050
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.051	0.064	0.051
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.057	0.066	0.066
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.055	0.065	0.049
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.058	0.070	0.034
0.0	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.057	0.067	0.035
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.058	0.069	0.036
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.059	0.069	0.037
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	0.049	0.071	0.051
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.5	0.049	0.064	0.047
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.0	0.051	0.068	0.053
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.5	0.050	0.065	0.050
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.0	0.054	0.072	0.043
0.5	0.5	0.0	0.5	0.054	0.071	0.047
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.0	0.056	0.071	0.044
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.056	0.071	0.044

Table 11.4: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$ Using Eqs. (11.2), (11.4) and the Theil-Sen Estimator, $\alpha = 0.05$, $n = 20$.

x	ε		VP1		VP2		VP3	
	h	g	h	(11.2)	(11.4)	(11.2)	(11.4)	(11.2)
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.036	0.033	0.037	0.043	0.017	0.030
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.010	0.031	0.013	0.038	0.007	0.029
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.020	0.033	0.034	0.041	0.013	0.030
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.008	0.032	0.010	0.037	0.001	0.031
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.015	0.033	0.036	0.039	0.007	0.026
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.008	0.032	0.029	0.036	0.004	0.032
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.008	0.035	0.029	0.036	0.004	0.032
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.004	0.031	0.013	0.039	0.002	0.032

11.1.4 R Functions *regci*, *regciMC* and *wlogregci*

The R function

```
regci(x,y, regfun=tsreg, nboot=599, alpha=0.05, SEED=TRUE, pr=TRUE, null.val=NULL,
      xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, plotit=FALSE, xlab='Predictor 1', ylab='Predictor 2', ...)
```

is supplied for computing confidence intervals for regression parameters with the percentile bootstrap method just described. The R function

```
regciMC(x,y, regfun=tsreg, nboot=599, alpha=0.05, SEED=TRUE, pr=TRUE,
        null.val=NULL, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, plotit=FALSE, xlab='Predictor 1',
        ylab='Predictor 2', ...)
```

is the same as `regci`, only it takes advantage of a multicore processor assuming one is available. (The R function `regcits` is the same as `regciMC`, only it defaults to using the Harrell–Davis estimator, which might increase power when there are tied values for the dependent variable.) Here, x can be a vector or a matrix having n rows and p columns. The optional argument `regfun` can be any R function that estimates regression parameters and returns the results in `regfun$coef`. The first element of `regfun$coef` is assumed to be the estimated intercept, the second element is the estimate of β_1 , and so on. Regression methods that come with R follow this convention, as do all of the R regression functions written for this book. For example, `bmreg` returns the estimated values in `bmreg$coef`. If unspecified, `regfun` is `tsreg` which is the Theil–Sen estimator. The default value for `nboot`, which is the number of bootstrap samples to be used, B , is 599.

For the special case where y is binary and the robust estimator given by Eq. (10.16) is used, the R function

```
wlogregci(x,y,nboot=400,alpha=0.05,SEED=T,MC=F,xout=F,outfun=out,...)
```

can be used.

■ Example

As a simple illustration, consider the data

x:	-80 79 -90 11 137 141 116 -54 92 -58 -9 -96 -27 -135 76 -56 19 -93 -19 -158
y:	7 56 -84 -69 88 103 -102 -82 25 84 -69 -78 -127 50 210 -51 120 -212 174 -72

The 0.95 confidence interval for β_1 , returned by the command `regci(x,y)`, is $(-0.0225, 1.21)$. If the function `lsmfitci` is used instead, the 0.95 confidence interval is $(-0.0147, 1.08)$. Eliminating leverage points by setting the argument `xout=TRUE`, now the 0.95 confidence interval is $(2.1, 4.0)$. Note that this interval is shorter than the interval based on `regci`. This was expected because both x and ϵ were generated from normal distributions with $\beta_1 = 1$.

The command `regci(x,y,regfun=lsmfit)` would return a confidence interval based on the OLS estimator, using the standard percentile bootstrap method, but this is not recommended for reasons already explained. However, `regci` appears to give good results when working with nearly all of the robust regression methods described in this chapter. (Exceptions are noted Sections 11.1.5 and 11.1.7.)

■ Example

For the star data in [Figure 6.3](#), the 0.95 confidence interval for the slope returned by the R function `regci`, using the default estimator, is $(-0.78, 5.03)$. Eliminating leverage points by setting the argument `xout=TRUE`, now the 0.95 confidence interval is $(2.1, 4.0)$. If the bounded influence M regression method is used instead, $\hat{\beta}_m$, the 0.95 confidence interval for the slope is $(-1.076, 2.436)$ with `xout=FALSE`. So even among robust estimators, the estimator used, as well as eliminating leverage points, can make a practical difference when computing confidence intervals.

■ Example

For the tree data used in the last example of [Section 11.1.2](#), the hypothesis $H_0: (\beta_0, \beta_2) = (-7.5, 1)$ was rejected using M regression with Schweppe weights. The 0.95 confidence intervals for these two parameters returned by `regci`, again using M regression with Schweppe weights (i.e., setting `regfun=bmreg` when using `regci`) are $(-9.1, -4.9)$ and $(0.65, 1.76)$, respectively, suggesting that the hypothesized values for β_0 and β_2 are reasonable. This illustrates the well-known result that confidence intervals can fail to reject when an omnibus test rejects. (The reason is that the confidence region used by the omnibus test is an ellipse, versus a rectangular confidence region when computing confidence intervals for the individual parameters. See [Fairley, 1986](#), for more details.)

11.1.5 Methods Based on the Quantile Regression Estimator

[Section 10.13.8](#) described a non-bootstrap R function for making inferences about the parameters associated with a quantile regression estimator. Two limitations of the method are that it can be used only when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level, and it does not provide a way of testing the omnibus hypothesis that two or more parameters are equal to zero. Switching to a percentile bootstrap method, simulations indicate that Type I error probabilities greater than the nominal level are avoided. But the actual level can drop well below the nominal level when the sample size is small. A slightly better approach appears to be one based in part on a bootstrap estimate of the standard errors, but again the actual level can be lower than intended. Here, an adjustment is made for dealing with this problem that was suggested by [Wilcox and Costa \(2009\)](#).

Generate B bootstrap estimates of the slope yielding b_1^*, \dots, b_B^* . Then an estimate of the squared standard error of b_1 is

$$S^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (b_b^* - \bar{b})^2,$$

where $\bar{b} = \sum b_b^*/B$. So an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_1 is

$$b_1 \pm z_{1-\alpha/2} S,$$

where $z_{1-\alpha/2}$ is the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution.

To avoid Type I error probabilities well below the nominal level when the sample sizes are small, [Wilcox and Costa \(2009\)](#) found that the following adjusted critical values perform reasonably well in simulations:

1. if $\alpha = 0.1$, $z_a = 1.645 - 1.19/\sqrt{n}$
2. if $\alpha = 0.05$, $z_a = 1.96 - 1.37/\sqrt{n}$
3. if $\alpha = 0.025$, $z_a = 2.24 - 1.18/\sqrt{n}$
4. if $\alpha = 0.01$, $z_a = 2.58 - 1.69/\sqrt{n}$.

That is, an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for β_1 is taken to be

$$b_1 \pm z_a S.$$

This approximation appears to work well when estimating the γ th quantile regression line when $0.2 \leq \gamma \leq 0.8$.

As for testing the global hypothesis given by Eq. (11.1), that all slope parameters are equal to zero, take a bootstrap sample in the usual manner and label the resulting estimate of the slopes b_k^* , $k = 1, \dots, p$. Repeat this process B times yielding $b_{1k}^*, \dots, b_{Bk}^*$. An estimate of the variances and covariances associated with b_1, \dots, b_p is

$$\mathbf{S} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{c=1}^B (\mathbf{b}_c^* - \bar{\mathbf{b}})^2,$$

where $\mathbf{b}_c^* = (b_{c1}^*, \dots, b_{cp}^*)$, $\bar{\mathbf{b}} = (\bar{b}_1^*, \dots, \bar{b}_p^*)$ and $\bar{b}_k^* = \sum b_{bk}^*/B$. A reasonable test statistic is

$$T^2 = n\bar{\mathbf{b}}'\mathbf{S}^{-1}\bar{\mathbf{b}}. \quad (11.5)$$

And from basic principles, a natural strategy is to reject if

$$T^2 \geq \frac{n-1}{n-p} f_{p,n-p},$$

where $f_{p,n-p}$ is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with p and $n - p$ degrees of freedom. All indications are that the actual probability of Type I error is less than the nominal level when the sample size is small, particularly as the number of predictors increases. For

example, when $\gamma = 0.5$, $p = 2$, $n = 20$, $\alpha = 0.05$, and x_1 and x_2 have a bivariate normal distribution with correlation $\rho = 0$, the actual Type I error probability is approximately 0.026. Increasing p to 6, the estimate is now 0.001. But with $n = 60$, the actual probability of a Type I error has been found to be reasonably close to 0.05 ([Wilcox, 2007](#)). Adjusted critical values, when $n < 60$ and $\alpha = 0.1, 0.05, 0.025$ and 0.01 are reported by the R function `rqtest` described in the next section.

It is briefly noted that [He and Zhu \(2003\)](#) derived a method for testing the hypothesis that a specified family of quantile regression models fits the data. In particular, one can test the hypothesis that for some choice for β_0, \dots, β_p , the γ quantile of y , given x_1, \dots, x_p , is given by

$$y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \cdots + \beta_p x_p.$$

A simple variation of their method has been found to reduce execution time considerably ([Wilcox, 2008b](#)). The details are omitted, but an R function (`qrchk`) is supplied for performing the analysis.

11.1.6 R Functions `rqtest`, `qregci` and `qrchk`

The R function

```
rqtest(x,y,qval=0.5,nboot=200,alpha=0.05,SEED=T,xout=F,outfun=out,...)
```

tests the hypothesis that p slope parameters are equal to zero, assuming the parameters are estimated via the quantile regression method. Reject if the reported p-value is less than or equal to the value stored in `adjusted.alpha`. For situations where an adjusted critical value cannot be computed, or when $n > 60$, the function sets `adjusted.alpha` equal to `alpha`.

The R function

```
qregci(x,y,qval=0.5,nboot=200,alpha=0.05,SEED=T,xout=F,outfun=out,...)
```

computes confidence intervals for the slope parameters. If there is a single independent variable, the function will compute a confidence interval for all of the quantiles indicated by the argument `qval`. If there is more than one independent variable, only the first quantile stored in `qval` is used. For computing confidence intervals for both the slopes and the intercepts, for a single quantile, use the R function `regci` with the argument `regfun=qval`.

The R function

```
qrchk(x, y, qval = 0.5, q=NULL, nboot = 1000, com.pval = F, SEED = T, tr=0.2, pr = T,
      xout = F, outfun = out, MC=FALSE, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that for some β_0, \dots, β_p , the γ quantile of y , given x_1, \dots, x_p , is given by

$$y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \dots + \beta_p x_p.$$

The quantile to be used is specified by the argument qval or the argument q. (If q is specified, this quantile is used regardless of the value indicated by qval.) The function contains approximate critical values when dealing with the 0.5 quantile and testing at the 0.1, 0.05, 0.025, and 0.01 levels. A p-value can be computed by setting the argument com.pval=T, which will increase execution time considerably. However, a substantial reduction in execution can be achieved by setting MC=T, assuming that a multicore processor is available. Reject the null hypothesis if the test statistic exceeds the critical value.

■ Example

Data from the Well Elderly 2 study ([Clark et al., 2011](#); [Jackson et al., 2009](#)) are used to illustrate the R function qrchk. A general goal was to assess the efficacy of an intervention strategy aimed at improving the physical and emotional health of older adults. A portion of the study was aimed at understanding the association between a measure of depressive symptoms (CESD) and the cortisol awakening response (CAR). Cortisol is measured upon awakening and about 30–60 minutes later. The cortisol awakening response refers to the change in cortisol (the level upon awakening minus the level taken 30–60 minutes later). Using the data obtained after six months of intervention, the p-value returned by qrchk is 0.052, suggesting that using a straight regression line might be misleading.

11.1.7 Inferences Based on the OP Estimator

When using the skipped estimators in Section 10.10 and when $p > 1$, the bootstrap methods in Sections 11.1.1 and 11.1.3 tend to be too conservative in terms of Type I errors when the sample size is small. That is, when testing at the 0.05 level, the actual probability of a Type I error tends to be considerably less than 0.05 when the sample size is less than 60 ([Wilcox, 2004d](#)). Accordingly, the following modifications are suggested when using the OP estimator. When testing (11.1), the hypothesis that all slope parameters are zero, let \hat{p}^* be the bootstrap estimate of the p-value given in Section 11.1.1. Let $n_a = n$ if $20 \leq n \leq 60$. If $n < 20$, $n_a = 20$, and if $n > 60$, $n_a = 60$. Then the adjusted p-value used here is

$$\hat{p}_a^* = \frac{\hat{p}^*}{2} + \left(\frac{n_a - 20}{40} \right) \frac{\hat{p}^*}{2},$$

and the null hypothesis is rejected if $\hat{p}_a^* \leq \alpha$.

As for testing hypotheses about the individual slope parameters, let

$$C = 1 - \frac{60 - n_a}{80},$$

and let \hat{p}_m^* be computed as in Section 11.1.3. Then the adjusted p-value is

$$\hat{p}_a^* = C \hat{p}_m^*.$$

To control FWE (the probability of at least one Type I error), Hochberg's (1988) method is used. For convenience, let Q_j be the adjusted p-value associated with the bootstrap test of $H_0: \beta_j = 0$. Put the Q_j values in descending order yielding $Q_{[1]} \geq Q_{[2]} \geq \dots \geq Q_{[p]}$. Beginning with $k = 1$, reject all hypotheses if

$$Q_{[k]} \leq \alpha/k.$$

That is, reject all hypotheses if the largest p-value is less than or equal to α . If $Q_{[1]} > \alpha$, proceed as follows:

1. Increment k by 1. If

$$Q_{[k]} \leq \frac{\alpha}{k},$$

stop and reject all hypotheses having a p-value less than or equal $Q_{[k]}$.

2. If $Q_{[k]} > \alpha/k$, repeat step 1.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until a significant result is obtained or all p hypotheses have been tested.

■ Example

Suppose x_1, x_2 and ϵ are independent and have standard normal distributions, and that the goal is to test $H_0: \beta_2 = 0$ at the 0.05 level with $n = 20$ assuming that $y = x_1 + x_2 + \epsilon$. Further imagine that unknown to us, $y = x_1 + x_1 x_2 + \epsilon$. Using the conventional Student's t test of $H_0: \beta_2 = 0$, the actual probability of rejecting is approximately 0.16 (based on a simulation with 1000 replications using the built-in R functions lm and summary). Increasing n to 100, the actual probability of rejecting is again approximately 0.16. Using instead the R function opregpb (described in the next section), with $n = 20$, the probability of rejecting is approximately 0.049.

11.1.8 R Functions *opregpb* and *opregpbMC*

The R function

```
opregpb(x,y,nboot=1000,tr=0.2,om=T,ADJ=T,nullvec=rep(0,ncol(x) + 1),plotit=T,
gval=sqrt(qchisq(0.95,ncol(x) + 1)))
```

tests hypotheses based on the OP estimator and modified bootstrap method just described. Both an omnibus test and confidence intervals for the individual parameters are reported. To avoid the omnibus test, set *om*=F. The argument *gval* is the critical value used by the projection-type outlier detection method. Setting *ADJ*=F, the adjustments of the p-values, described in Section 11.1.7, are not made. The function

```
opregpbMC(x,y,nboot=1000,tr=0.2,om=T,ADJ=T,nullvec=rep(0,ncol(x) + 1),plotit=T,
gval=sqrt(qchisq(0.95,ncol(x) + 1)))
```

is the same as *opregpb*, only it uses a multicore processor, assuming one is available and that the R package parallel has been installed.

11.1.9 Hypothesis Testing when Using a Multivariate Regression Estimator RADA

Consider again the multivariate regression model in Section 10.17.1 where

$$\mathbf{y} = \mathbf{B}'\mathbf{x} + \mathbf{a} + \boldsymbol{\epsilon}, \quad (11.6)$$

\mathbf{B} is a $(p \times q)$ slope matrix, \mathbf{a} is a q -dimensional intercept vector, and the errors $\boldsymbol{\epsilon} = (\epsilon_1, \dots, \epsilon_q)$ are independent and identically distributed with mean $\mathbf{0}$ and covariance matrix $\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\epsilon}$, a positive definite matrix of size q . (That is, for any nonzero vector \mathbf{x} , $\mathbf{x}'\boldsymbol{\Sigma}_{\epsilon}\mathbf{x} > 0$.) When using the multivariate regression estimator RADA, in Section 10.17.1, consider the issue of testing

$$H_0 : \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0}.$$

A natural guess is to proceed along the lines in Section 11.1.1 and use a simple modification of the R function *regtest*. But this method has been found to be unsatisfactory in simulations. A percentile bootstrap method appears to avoid Type I error probabilities above the nominal level. However, the actual level can be substantially smaller than the nominal level suggesting that power might be relatively poor. Imagine, for example, that with $n = 40$, $p = 2$ and $q = 3$, that a p-value is computed in the usual way. Under normality, an actual Type I error probability of 0.05 is achieved if the null hypothesis is rejected when the estimated p-value is less than or equal to 0.16.

Currently, only one method has been found that performs reasonably well in terms of controlling the Type I error probability, including situations where there is heteroscedasticity. Briefly, let \mathbf{C} be a row vector of length pq containing the pq slope estimates. Let $\hat{\Sigma}$, a pq -by- pq matrix, be a bootstrap estimate of the variances and covariances associated with \mathbf{C} . The test statistic is

$$\frac{1}{pq} \mathbf{C} \hat{\Sigma}^{-1} \mathbf{C}',$$

with the null distribution taken to be an F distribution with $v_1 = pq - 1$ and $v_2 = n - pq$ degrees of freedom.

11.1.10 R Function *mlrGtest*

The R function

```
mlrGtest(x,y,regfun=mlrreg,nboot=300,SEED=T)
```

tests the hypothesis

$$H_0 : \mathbf{B} = \mathbf{0},$$

using the method just described. By default, the RADA estimator is used. Any multivariate regression estimator could be used via the argument *regfun*. Currently, however, simulation results regarding the ability of the method to control the probability of a Type I error are limited to the RADA estimator.

11.1.11 Robust ANOVA via Dummy Coding

As noted in Section 10.1.4, a well-known approach to comparing the means of multiple groups is via least squares regression coupled with dummy coding (e.g., [Montgomery & Peck, 1992](#)). An issue of interest is whether this approach might be generalized by replacing the least squares regression estimator with one of the robust estimators described in Chapter 10. When using the Theil–Sen estimator, simulations do not support this strategy: control over the Type I error probability can be poor ([Ng, 2009b](#)). Whether a similar problem occurs when using some other robust regression estimator has not been investigated. [Talib and Midi \(2009\)](#) studied a robust regression estimator aimed at situations where both continuous and categorical regressors are present. But it is unknown how well it performs for the situation at hand.

11.1.12 Confidence Bands for the Typical Value of y Given x

This section deals with computing a confidence band, sometimes called prediction bands, for $m(x) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x$, the typical value of y given x , that allows heteroscedasticity.

More precisely, if the parameters β_0 and β_1 are estimated based on the random sample $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$, the goal is to compute a confidence interval for $m(x_i)$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$) such that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately $1 - \alpha$. And there is the related goal of testing the n hypotheses

$$H_0 : m(x_i) = \theta_0, \quad (11.7)$$

where θ_0 is some specified constant. (For a review of methods based on the least squares estimator that assume normality and homoscedasticity, see [Liu, Lin, & Piegorsch, 2008](#).)

The basic strategy mimics the approach used by the two-sample version of Student's t test. Begin by assuming normality and homoscedasticity, determine an appropriate critical value based on the sample size and the regression estimator that is used in conjunction with an obvious test statistic, and then study the impact of non-normality and heteroscedasticity via simulations.

First consider a single value for the covariate, x . Let τ^2 denote the squared standard error of $\hat{y} = b_0 + b_1 x$, an estimate of $m(x)$, where b_0 and b_1 are estimates of β_0 and β_1 , respectively, based on some regression estimator to be determined. A basic percentile bootstrap method is used to estimate τ^2 (e.g., [Efron & Tibshirani, 1993](#)). More precisely, generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling with replacement n pairs of points from $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$ yielding $(x_1^*, y_1^*), \dots, (x_n^*, y_n^*)$. Based on this bootstrap sample, estimate the intercept and slope and label the results b_0^* and b_1^* , which yields $\hat{y}^* = b_0^* + b_1^* x$. Repeat this B times yielding $\hat{y}_1^*, \dots, \hat{y}_B^*$, in which case an estimate of τ^2 is

$$\hat{\tau}^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum (\hat{y}_b^* - \bar{y}^*)^2,$$

where $\bar{y}^* = \sum \hat{y}_b^*/B$. (In terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, $B = 100$ appears to suffice.) Then the hypothesis given by (11.7) can be tested with

$$W = \frac{\hat{y} - \theta_0}{\hat{\tau}}$$

once an appropriate critical value has been determined.

Momentarily assume that W has a standard normal distribution, in which case a p-value can be determined for each x_i , $i = 1, \dots, n$. Denote the resulting p-values by p_1, \dots, p_n and let $p_m = \min(p_1, \dots, p_n)$. As is evident, if p_α , the α quantile of p_m , can be determined, the

probability of one or more Type I errors can be controlled simply by rejecting i th hypothesis if and only if $p_i \leq p_\alpha$. And in addition, confidence intervals for each $m(x_i)$ can be computed that have simultaneous probability coverage $1 - \alpha$.

The distribution of p_m is approximated in the following manner. Momentarily assume that both the error term ϵ and x have a standard normal distribution and consider the case $\beta_0 = \beta_1 = 0$. Then a simulation can be performed yielding an estimate of the α quantile of the distribution of p_m . In effect, generate n pairs of observations from a bivariate normal distribution having correlation zero yielding $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$. Compute p_m and repeat this process A times yielding p_{m1}, \dots, p_{mA} . Put these A values in ascending order yielding $p_{m(1)} \leq \dots \leq p_{m(A)}$ and let $k = \alpha A$ rounded to the nearest integer. Then the α quantile of p_m , p_α , is estimated with $p_{m(k)}$. Moreover, the simultaneous probability coverage among the n confidence intervals

$$\hat{y}_i \pm z \hat{\tau}_i \quad (i = 1, \dots, n) \quad (11.8)$$

is approximately $1 - \alpha$, where z is the $1 - p_\alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution, $\hat{y}_i = b_0 + b_1 x_i$ and $\hat{\tau}_i$ is the corresponding estimate of the standard error. Here are some estimates of p_α when $1 - \alpha = 0.95$ and when using the Theil–Sen (TS) estimator, the modification of Theil–Sen estimator based on the Harrell–Davis estimator (TSHD), OLS and the quantile regression estimator (QREG):

<i>n</i>	TS	OLS	TSHD	QREG
10	0.011	0.001	0.009	0.011
20	0.010	0.004	0.008	0.009
50	0.010	0.008	0.009	0.009
100	0.010	0.008	0.009	0.008
400	0.011	0.011	0.012	0.009
600	0.010	0.011	0.010	0.010

As can be seen, the value depends on the sample size when using least squares regression, as expected. In contrast, when using the robust regression estimators, the estimated values suggest that there is little or no variation in the value of p_α as a function of the sample size, at least when $10 \leq n \leq 600$.

Of course, a crucial issue is how well the method performs when dealing with non-normality and heteroscedasticity. Simulations indicate that it performs well when testing at the 0.05 level and $n = 20$ (Wilcox, 2016c). Even OLS performed tolerably well, but generally using the Theil–Sen estimator or the quantile regression estimator provides better control over the Type I error probability. (When using least squares regression, Faraway & Sun, 1995, derived an alternative method that allows heteroscedasticity.)

11.1.13 R Functions *regYhat*, *regYci*, and *regYband*

The R function

```
regYhat(x,y, xr=x, regfun=tsreg, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, ...)
```

computes \hat{y} for every x indicated by the argument *xr*. By default the Theil–Sen estimator is used.

The R function

```
regYci(x, y, regfun = tsreg, pts = x, nboot = 100, ADJ = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out,
SEED = TRUE, tr = 0.2, crit = NULL, null.value = 0, plotPV = FALSE, scale = FALSE,
span = 0.75, xlab = 'X', xlab1 = 'X1', xlab2 = 'X2', ylab = 'p-values', theta = 50, phi = 25,
MC = FALSE, nreps = 1000, pch = '*', ...)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $m(x)$ for every x indicated by the argument *pts*. So by default, a confidence interval is computed for each value stored in the argument *x*. Setting *plotPV*=TRUE, the p-values are plotted for each value stored in *x*. Setting the argument *ADJ*=TRUE, the confidence intervals are adjusted so that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately equal to $1 - \alpha$, where α is controlled via the argument *alpha*. The adjusted critical values, when *ADJ*=TRUE, have been determined when the argument *regfun*=*tsreg* (Theil–Sen), *ols*, *tshdreg* (the modification of the Theil–Sen estimator based on the Harrell–Davis estimator) and *qreg* (quantile regression). When using some other regression estimator, an adjusted critical value is computed with the R function

```
regYciCV(n, alpha=0.05, nboot=1000, regfun=tsreg, SEED=TRUE, MC=FALSE,
null.value=0, xout=FALSE, ...)
```

again assuming that there is a single independent variable. (That is, the R function *regYci* calls the R function *regYciCV*.) If for example *alpha*=0.05 and this function returns 0.01, then in effect *regYci* is used with the argument *alpha*=0.01, in which case the probability of one or more Type I errors is approximately 0.05. If the argument *alpha* differs from 0.05, again the R function *regYci* uses the R function *regYciCV* to determine the critical value that is used. However, execution time can be quite high. Execution time can be reduced by setting the argument *MC*=TRUE, assuming that a multicore processor is available. When using the Theil–Sen estimator, execution time can be reduced further by setting the argument *regfun*=*tshdreg_C*, assuming that the R package *WRScpp* has been installed.

The R function

```
regYband(x, y, regfun = tsreg, npts = NULL, nboot = 100, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro,
SEED = TRUE, tr = 0.2, crit = NULL, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', SCAT = TRUE, ADJ = TRUE,
pr = TRUE, nreps = 1000, MC = FALSE, ...)
```

plots the regression line as well as a confidence band for $m(x)$. If the argument ADJ=FALSE, regYband computes a confidence interval for x values evenly spaced between $\min(x)$ and $\max(x)$. The number of points used is controlled by the argument npts and defaults to 20. The ends of the resulting confidence intervals, which are computed with the R function regYci, are used to plot the confidence band. The probability coverage for each confidence interval is $1 - \alpha$, where the argument alpha defaults to 0.05. To get a confidence interval for each value stored in x that has simultaneous probability coverage 0.95, set the argument ADJ=TRUE. So if ADJ=TRUE, when testing n hypotheses about $m(x)$ for each value stored in the argument x , the probability of one or more Type I errors is approximately 0.05. This adjustment assumes that there is a single independent variable. There are indications that with more than one independent variable a different adjustment is required, but this issue is in need of more study before a recommendation can be made.

■ Example

Consider again the example at the end of Section 11.1.6, which deals with the cortisol awakening response (CAR) and its association with a measure of depressive symptoms (CESD). Focusing on positive CAR values (cortisol decreases after awakening) a positive association is found between the CAR and CESD based on the Theil-Sen estimator (with leverage points removed). The p-value is 0.021. So a simple interpretation is that the more cortisol decreases, the higher typical CESD scores tend to be. But to what extent is this a serious health concern? CESD scores greater than 15 are often taken to indicate mild depression. A score greater than 21 indicates the possibility of major depression. Is it the case that CESD scores greater than 15 occur for the typical participant over the range of CAR values that are available? Based on a confidence band having approximately simultaneous probability coverage 0.95, the results indicate that for CAR between zero and 0.10, the typical CESD score is significantly less than 15. Using OLS, the range is zero to 0.07. For CAR greater than 0.23, the typical CESD score is estimated to be greater than 15. But over the entire range of available CAR values (0–0.265), the typical CESD scores are not significantly greater than 15. Perhaps for CAR values greater than 0.265 this would no longer be the case, but this remains to be determined.

11.1.14 R Function regse

When estimating the slope and intercept based on some robust regression estimator, situations might arise where there is an explicit interest in estimates of the standard errors. The R function

```
regse(x,y,xout=FALSE,regfun=tsreg,outfun=outpro,nboot=200,SEED=TRUE,...)
```

is supplied for accomplishing this goal using a bootstrap method. As can be seen, the Theil-Sen estimator is used by default, but any regression estimator can be used via the argument regfun.

11.2 Comparing the Regression Parameters of $J \geq 2$ Groups

This section describes methods for comparing the regression parameters associated with two or more groups. First the focus is on comparing independent groups and then some methods for comparing dependent groups are described.

11.2.1 Methods for Comparing Independent Groups

For $J \geq 2$ independent groups, let $(y_{ij}, \mathbf{x}_{ij})$ be the i th vector of observations in the j th group, $i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, \dots, J$. Suppose

$$y_{ij} = \beta_{0j} + \mathbf{x}'_{ij} \boldsymbol{\beta}_j + \lambda_j(\mathbf{x}_j) \epsilon_{ij},$$

where $\boldsymbol{\beta}_j = (\beta_{1j}, \dots, \beta_{pj})'$ is a vector of slope parameters for the j th group, $\lambda_j(\mathbf{x}_j)$ is some unknown function of \mathbf{x}_j , and ϵ_{ij} has variance σ_j^2 . This section deals with the problem of testing

$$H_0 : \beta_{k1} = \dots = \beta_{kJ}, \forall k, 0 \leq k \leq p. \quad (11.9)$$

That is, the hypothesis is that all J regression lines are identical. The method described here can also be used to test the hypothesis that slope parameters are equal. That is, the goal is to test (11.9) ignoring the intercepts.

Classic methods assume $\sigma_j^2 = \sigma_k^2$ for any $j \neq k$ (between group homoscedasticity) and $\lambda_j(\mathbf{x}_j) \equiv 1$ (within group homoscedasticity). Methods that assume both types of homoscedasticity (e.g., [Huitema, 2011](#)) can perform poorly, in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, when the homoscedasticity assumptions are violated. For example, [Ng and Wilcox \(2012\)](#) illustrate that in terms of Type I errors, classic methods can perform very

poorly when the within group homoscedasticity assumption is violated. [Conerly and Mansfield \(1988\)](#) provide references to other solutions. Included is [Chow's \(1960\)](#) likelihood ratio test, which also is known to fail. The methods in this section allow both within group and between group heteroscedasticity. First attention is focused on methods that are based on least squares regression and then robust regression estimators are considered.

Methods Based on the Least Squares Regression Estimator

As previously noted, the least squares regression estimator is not robust. One concern is that outliers among the dependent variable y can result in a poor fit for the bulk of the points and poor power. Bad leverage points are also a concern, but they can be addressed simply by removing them. Also, in some situations there might be a particular interest in the conditional mean of y given \mathbf{x} even though the population mean is not robust.

The method for testing (11.9), based on the least squares estimator, is based in part on a simple adaptation of a MANOVA (multivariate analysis of variance) test statistic that was derived by [Johansen \(1980\)](#) with the goal of developing a heteroscedastic method for comparing means, which was studied by [Wilcox and Clark \(2015\)](#).

For the j th group, let

$$\hat{\mathbf{B}}_j = (\hat{\beta}_{0j}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{pj})$$

be the OLS estimate of $(\beta_{0j}, \dots, \beta_{pj})$ and let \mathbf{S}_j denote the HC4 estimate of the covariance matrix associated with $\hat{\mathbf{B}}_j$, the least squares estimate of $(\beta_{0j}, \dots, \beta_{pj})$. (The HC4 estimator is described in Section 10.1.1.) Let

$$\mathbf{W}_j = \mathbf{S}_j^{-1}$$

and

$$\mathbf{W} = \sum \mathbf{W}_j.$$

The estimate of the regression parameters, assuming H_0 is true, is

$$(\tilde{\beta}_0, \dots, \tilde{\beta}_p)' = \mathbf{W}^{-1} \sum \mathbf{W}_j \hat{\mathbf{B}}_j'.$$

The test statistic is

$$F = \sum_{j=1}^J \sum_{k=0}^p \sum_{m=0}^p w_{mkj} (\hat{\beta}_{mj} - \tilde{\beta}_m)(\hat{\beta}_{kj} - \tilde{\beta}_k), \quad (11.10)$$

where w_{mkj} is the $(m+1)(k+1)$ th element of \mathbf{W}_j . Based on results in [Johansen \(1980\)](#), when the null hypothesis is true, F has, approximately, a chi-squared distribution with degrees of

freedom $v = (p + 1)(J - 1)$. However, an adjusted critical value derived by Johansen (1980) has been found to perform better in simulations (Wilcox & Clark, 2015), which is computed as follows:

$$A = \frac{1}{2} \sum_{j=1}^J [\{tr(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{W}_j)\}^2 + tr\{(\mathbf{I} - \mathbf{W}^{-1}\mathbf{W}_j)^2\}]/f_j, \quad (11.11)$$

where $f_j = n_j - 1$ and \mathbf{I} is the identity matrix. The null hypothesis is rejected if

$$F \geq c + \frac{c}{2p(J-1)} \left\{ A + \frac{3cA}{p(J-1)+2} \right\}, \quad (11.12)$$

where c is the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of chi-squared distribution with degrees of freedom $v = (p + 1)(J - 1)$. Note that a p-value is readily computed using a pinch process. That is, determine the smallest level α that yields a significant result based on Eq. (11.10). Wilcox and Clark (2015) found that this method controls the probability of a Type I error reasonably well when the groups have a common sample size $n = 20$ and $p = 1$ or 2 . Removing leverage points, the actual Type I error probability can exceed 0.075 when testing at the 0.05 level. Increasing n to 40 corrected this problem among the situations considered. Consequently, because checking on the impact of leverage points can be crucial, it is recommended that the method just described be used with $n \geq 40$.

For completeness, another approach to comparing the slopes is to use a wild bootstrap method in conjunction with the HC4 estimate of the standard errors (Ng & Wilcox, 2010, 2012). Simulations indicate that again, good control over the Type I error probability is achieved with a sample size of $n = 20$. However, the impact of removing leverage points on the probability of a Type I error is unknown and the methods studied were limited to a single covariate. So for the moment, the method based on the test statistic F , given by Eq. (11.10), is recommended.

Multiple Comparisons

A related goal is performing all pairwise comparisons of the slopes in a manner that controls FWE, the probability of one or more Type I errors. And another goal is, for each $j < k$, test the hypothesis that regression lines associated with groups j and k are identical. Regarding the goal of comparing the slopes, when there is a single independent variable, use the test statistic

$$T_w = \frac{\hat{\beta}_{1j} - \hat{\beta}_{1k}}{\sqrt{S_j^2 + S_k^2}},$$

where again S_j^2 and S_k^2 are the HC4 estimates of the squared standard errors. FWE is controlled well via Hochberg's methods (Wilcox & Ma, 2015). In principle the method can be used with more than one independent variable, but there are no simulation results on how it

performs. As for testing the hypothesis that the regression lines are identical, the test statistic F used in conjunction with the adjusted critical value, given by Eq. (11.12), performed well where again Hochberg's method is used to control FWE.

Methods Based on Robust Estimators

First consider the goal of computing a confidence interval for the difference between the slopes. When using any robust estimator with a reasonably high breakdown point, the percentile bootstrap technique appears to give reasonably accurate confidence intervals for a fairly broad range of non-normal distributions and heteroscedastic error terms. This suggests a method for addressing the goals considered here, and simulations support their use. Briefly, the procedure begins by generating a bootstrap sample from the j th group as described, for example, in Section 11.1.1 That is, for the j th group, randomly sample n_j vectors of observations, with replacement, from $(y_{1j}, \mathbf{x}_{1j}), \dots, (y_{nj}, \mathbf{x}_{nj})$. Let $d_k^* = \hat{\beta}_{k1}^* - \hat{\beta}_{k2}^*$ be the difference between the resulting estimates of the k th independent variable, $k = 1, \dots, p$. Repeat this process B times yielding d_1^*, \dots, d_B^* . For each k , put these B values in ascending order yielding $d_{k(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq d_{k(B)}^*$. Let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, $u = (1 - \alpha/2)B$, rounded to the nearest integer, in which case an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\beta_{k1} - \beta_{k2}$ is $(d_{k(\ell+1)}^*, d_{k(u)}^*)$.

To provide some indication of how well the method performs when computing a 0.95 confidence interval, Tables 11.5 and 11.6 show $\hat{\alpha}$, an estimate of one minus the probability coverage, when $n = 20$, $p = 1$, and M regression with Schweppe weights is used. In these tables, VP refers to three types of error terms: $\lambda(x) = 1$, $\lambda(x) = x^2$ and $\lambda(x) = 1 + 2/(|x| + 1)$. For convenience, these three variance patterns are labeled VP1, VP2, and VP3, respectively. The situation VP2 corresponds to large error variances when the value of x is in the tails of its distribution, and VP3 is the reverse. Three additional conditions are considered as well. The first, called C1, is where x_{i1} and x_{i2} , as well as ϵ_{i1} and ϵ_{i2} , have identical distributions. The second condition, C2, is the same as the first condition only $\epsilon_{i2} = 4\epsilon_{i1}$. The third condition, C3, is where for the first group, both x_{i1} and ϵ_{i1} have standard normal distributions, but for the second group, both x_{i2} and ϵ_{i2} have a g-and-h distribution.

Notice that $\hat{\alpha}$ never exceeds 0.06, and in general it is less than 0.05. There is room for improvement, however, because in some situations $\hat{\alpha}$ drops below 0.020. This happens when ϵ has a heavy-tailed distribution, as would be expected based on results in Chapters 4 and 5. Also, VP3, which corresponds to large error variances when x is near the center of its distribution, plays a role. Despite this, all indications are that, in terms of probability coverage, the bootstrap method in conjunction with $\hat{\beta}_m$ (M regression with Schweppe weights) performs reasonably well over a broader range of situations than any other method that has been proposed, and using M regression offers the additional advantage of a relatively efficient estimator for the situations considered. It appears that when using other robust estimators such as Theil–Sen, probability coverage greater than or equal to the nominal level is again ob-

Table 11.5: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$, Using the Method in Section 11.2.1 when x Has a Symmetric Distribution, $n = 20$.

x				ϵ		Condition		
g	h	g	h	VP	C1	C2	C3	
0.0	0.0	0.0	0.0	1	0.029	0.040	0.040	
				2	0.042	0.045	0.045	
				3	0.028	0.039	0.039	
	0.0	0.0	0.5	1	0.029	0.036	0.036	
				2	0.045	0.039	0.039	
				3	0.025	0.037	0.037	
	0.0	0.5	0.0	1	0.026	0.040	0.041	
				2	0.043	0.043	0.043	
				3	0.029	0.040	0.040	
0.0	0.0	0.5	0.5	1	0.028	0.036	0.036	
				2	0.042	0.040	0.040	
				3	0.023	0.037	0.037	
	0.0	0.5	0.0	1	0.024	0.035	0.040	
				2	0.051	0.058	0.046	
				3	0.014	0.023	0.039	
	0.0	0.5	0.5	1	0.023	0.035	0.036	
				2	0.049	0.054	0.039	
				3	0.013	0.020	0.037	
0.0	0.5	0.5	0.0	1	0.022	0.039	0.040	
				2	0.050	0.039	0.043	
				3	0.014	0.022	0.040	
	0.0	0.5	0.5	1	0.024	0.037	0.036	
				2	0.052	0.058	0.040	
				3	0.013	0.020	0.037	

tained. With $n = 30$, there are situations where the actual probability coverage can be as high as 0.975 when computing a 0.95 confidence interval. That is, when testing the hypothesis of equal slopes, the actual level can be as low as 0.025 when testing at the 0.05 level (cf. Luh & Guo, 2000).

As for testing the global hypothesis given by Eq. (11.9), a modification of the test statistic F given by (11.10) can be used. Simply replace the HC4 estimator with a bootstrap estimate of the variances and covariances among the estimators that are being used. More precisely, for the j th group, generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling with replacement n_j vectors of observations from $(y_{ij}, x_{ij1}, \dots, x_{ijp})$ yielding $(y_{ij}^*, x_{ij1}^*, \dots, x_{ijp}^*)$ ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$). Based on this bootstrap sample, denote the estimated intercept and slopes by $(b_{0j}^*, \dots, b_{pj}^*)$. Repeat this process B times yielding $(b_{0jb}^*, \dots, b_{pbj}^*)$ ($b = 1, \dots, B$). Using $B = 100$ appears to suffice. Then the covariance between \bar{b}_{kj}^* and $\bar{b}_{\ell j}^*$ is estimated with

$$s_{k\ell} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum_{b=1}^B (\bar{b}_{kj}^* - \bar{b}_{kj})(\bar{b}_{\ell j}^* - \bar{b}_{\ell j}),$$

**Table 11.6: Values of $\hat{\alpha}$, x Has a Skewed Distribution,
 $n = 20$.**

X		ϵ		VP	Condition		
g	h	g	h		C1	C2	C3
0.5	0.0	0.0	0.0	1	0.026	0.040	0.040
				2	0.044	0.048	0.046
				3	0.032	0.037	0.039
	0.5	0.0	0.5	1	0.028	0.039	0.036
				2	0.041	0.047	0.039
				3	0.030	0.031	0.037
	0.5	0.5	0.0	1	0.025	0.040	0.040
				2	0.046	0.052	0.040
				3	0.032	0.038	0.043
0.5	0.0	0.5	0.5	1	0.024	0.038	0.036
				2	0.041	0.045	0.040
				3	0.031	0.034	0.037
	0.5	0.5	0.0	1	0.018	0.032	0.040
				2	0.049	0.050	0.046
				3	0.019	0.020	0.039
	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.019	0.031	0.036
				2	0.045	0.049	0.039
				3	0.015	0.018	0.037
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.0	1	0.019	0.031	0.040
				2	0.050	0.050	0.043
				3	0.014	0.020	0.040
	0.5	0.5	0.5	1	0.022	0.027	0.036
				2	0.046	0.051	0.040
				3	0.016	0.019	0.037

where $\bar{b}_{kj} = \sum b_{kjb}^*/B$. The corresponding covariance matrix \mathbf{S}_j replaces the HC4 estimate when computing F and of course the least squares estimate of the slopes and intercept are replaced by some robust estimate. Unlike the method based on OLS, an adjusted critical value does not appear to be necessary and in terms of controlling the Type I error probability, removing leverage points does not appear to be an issue. But for reasons noted in Section 10.14.1, it can be important to check on the impact of removing leverage points.

For the special case where $J = 2$ groups are compared, Moses and Klockars (2012) compared several techniques that included the percentile bootstrap method described here, but no results based on the bootstrap estimate of the covariances were reported. They found that a variation of the Theil–Sen estimator (Luh & Guo, 2000) performed well in simulations. The breakdown point of this variation of the Theil–Sen estimator is unknown. The method uses an explicit expression of the standard errors rather than a bootstrap estimator, and it appears to perform well even when there is heteroscedasticity. They considered three non-normal distributions, only of which was skewed; the skewness was 1.6. The largest kurtosis value was 2.86. The

simulation results in [Tables 11.5 and 11.6](#) are based on much more extreme departures from normality. Because situations are encountered where the estimated skewness and kurtosis are substantially larger than those considered by Moses and Klockars, it would be of interest to know whether their approach continues to perform well for the situations considered in [Tables 11.5 and 11.6](#).

As for performing multiple comparisons based on the intercept, simply use Hochberg's method to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. The same can be done when dealing with any of the slopes.

11.2.2 R Functions *reg2ci*, *reg1way*, *reg1wayISO*, *ancGpar*, *ols1way*, *ols1wayISO*, *olsJmcp*, *olsJ2*, *reg1mcp* and *olsWmcp*

The R function

```
reg2ci(x1,y1,x2,y2,regfun=tsreg,nboot=599,alpha=0.05,plotit=TRUE)
```

computes a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for the difference between the regression parameters corresponding to two independent groups using a basic percentile bootstrap method in conjunction with a robust estimator. That is, it tests Eq. (11.13) for each $k = 0, \dots, p$, where p is the number of independent variables. (The R function *reg2ciMC* takes advantage of a multicore processor if one is available.) The function assumes that a robust regression estimator is used. The first two arguments contain the data for the first group, and the data for group 2 are contained in *x2* and *y2*. As usual, *x1* and *x2* can be vectors, matrices or they can be a data frame. The optional argument *regfun* indicates the regression estimator to be used. If not specified, *regfun*=*tsreg*, meaning that the Theil–Sen estimator is used. Setting *regfun*=*MMreg*, for example, results in using the MM-estimator. The default number of bootstrap samples indicated by the argument *nboot* is $B = 599$, and *alpha*, which is α , defaults to 0.05 if unspecified. When the argument *plotit* equals *TRUE*, the function also creates a scatterplot that includes the regression lines for both groups.

Here is an example of what the output looks like when using *reg2ci*:

```
$output
  Parameter ci.lower ci.upper p.value    Group 1    Group 2
[1,]      0 -0.4532324 0.3241021 0.6010017 -0.16716570 -0.02830525
[2,]      1 -0.4513894 0.4360326 0.9983306 -0.05552116 -0.05380437
```

The first row gives the results for the intercepts and the second row contains the results for the slopes. For example, the estimate of the slope for the first group is -0.0555 .

The R function

```
reg1way(x,y, regfun=tsreg, nboot=100, SEED=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,
        alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that $J \geq 2$ independent groups have identical regression lines. A robust regression estimator is used in conjunction with the test statistic given by Eq. (11.14). The arguments x and y are assumed to have list mode. For example, $x[[1]]$ is assumed to contain the values for the independent variables associated with group one. If, for example, there are two independent variables, $x[[1]]$ would contain a matrix with n_1 rows and two columns. And $y[[1]]$ contains the corresponding values of the dependent variable. The R function

```
reg1wayISO(x,y, regfun=tsreg, nboot=100, SEED=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,
            alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that all J groups have identical slopes. So for a single covariate, the hypothesis is that the regression lines are parallel. The R function

```
regGmcp(x,y, regfun=tsreg, SEED=TRUE, nboot=100, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, tr=0.2,
         pr=TRUE, MC=FALSE, ISO=TRUE, ...)
```

performs all pairwise global comparisons of the regression parameters. By default, ISO=TRUE meaning that for every pair of groups, the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.9) is tested excluding the intercepts. If ISO=FALSE, Eq. (11.9) is tested including the intercepts. That is, the hypothesis is that the intercepts as well as the slopes are identical.

For convenience, the R function

```
ancGpar(x1,y1,x2,y2, regfun=tsreg, nboot=100, SEED=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,
         plotit=TRUE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', ISO=FALSE, ...)
```

is supplied for the case where only two groups are to be compared. So unlike reg1way, the data are stored in vectors rather than in list mode. If there are $p \geq 2$ independent variables, the arguments $x1$ and $x2$ can be matrices with p columns or they can be a data frame. By default the argument ISO=FALSE and has the same meaning as when using regGmcp. The R function ancGparMC is the same as ancGpar, only it uses a multicore processor if one is available.

The R function

```
ols2ci(x1,y1,x2,y2, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, alpha=0.05, HC3=FALSE, plotit=TRUE,
        xlab='X', ylab='Y', ...)
```

is like `reg2ci`, only it uses the least squares estimator in conjunction with the HC4 estimate of the standard errors. (Setting the argument `HC3=TRUE`, results in using the HC3 estimator instead.) So this function performs $p + 1$ tests. It compares the intercepts, the slopes associated with the first independent variable, the slopes associated with the second independent variable, and so forth.

The R function

```
ols1way(x,y, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, ...)
```

is exactly like `reg1way` only it uses the least squares estimator and the adjusted critical value indicated by Eq. (11.11). So again, `x` and `y` are assumed to have list mode. To compare the slopes, ignoring the intercepts, use the function

```
ols1wayISO(x,y, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, ...).
```

All pairwise comparisons among $J > 2$ groups are performed by

```
olsJmcp(x,y, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, ...).
```

That is, for each pair of groups, the global hypothesis of identical distributions is performed. For convenience, the R function

```
olsJ2(x1, y1, x2, y2, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, plotit = TRUE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y',  
ISO = FALSE, ...)
```

can be used when comparing two groups only. The argument `ISO=FALSE` means that the hypothesis of identical regression lines is tested. Setting `ISO=TRUE`, the hypothesis of identical slopes is tested.

It is noted that the third edition of this book describes R functions that use bootstrap methods to compare the slopes and intercepts based on the least squares estimator: `tworegwb` and `hc4wmc`. These functions are still available in the R package `WRS` and `Rallfun`, but at the moment there is no known advantage to using these functions rather than the non-bootstrap functions just described.

The R function

```
reg1mcp(x,y, regfun=tsreg, SEED=TRUE, nboot=100, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,  
alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, MC=FALSE, ...)
```

performs all pairwise comparisons for each of the regression parameters. Here is an example of what the output looks like when there are two independent variables, three groups and leverage points are removed by setting the argument xout=TRUE:

```
$n
[1] 40 40 50

$n.keep
[1] 37 40 48

$output
  Group Group   p.value    p.crit    ci.low    ci.hi Sig
Intercept 1     2 0.84808013 0.05000000 -0.9885736 0.77725213 0
Intercept 1     3 0.63439065 0.01666667 -1.0380991 0.71060887 0
Intercept 2     3 0.78797997 0.02500000 -0.5668638 0.46445251 0
slope 1      1     2 0.17362270 0.02500000 -0.2492054 1.00707139 0
slope 1      1     3 0.79465776 0.05000000 -0.6273464 0.45520566 0
slope 1      2     3 0.07345576 0.01666667 -1.0448311 0.05611244 0
slope 2      1     2 0.79465776 0.05000000 -0.8326233 0.63402653 0
slope 2      1     3 0.54424040 0.02500000 -0.4555235 0.86602003 0
slope 2      2     3 0.19031720 0.01666667 -0.1753694 0.73816752 0
```

So the initial sample sizes are 40, 40 and 50 and after leverage points are removed the sample sizes are 37, 40 and 48. For each parameter, the column headed by p.crit indicates the critical p-value based on Hochberg's method. So for each parameter, $(J^2 - J)/2$ tests are performed, where J indicates the number of groups. Here, three tests are performed for each parameter and the goal is to have the probability of one or more Type I errors equal to the value indicated by the argument alpha. That is, make a decision about which group has the larger intercept if the p.value is less than or equal to the p.crit value. For convenience, the final column headed by Sig indicates whether a significant result occurred. A zero indicates that the null hypothesis is not rejected and a one indicates that the p.value is less than or equal to the p.crit value.

The R function

```
olsWmcp(x,y, xout=TRUE, outfun=outpro, alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, BLO=FALSE,
         HC3=FALSE, ...)
```

is the same as the function reg1mcp, only it uses the least squares regression estimator.

■ Example

Consider again the Well Elderly 2 study (Clark et al., 2011; Jackson et al., 2009) described in the example at the end of Section 11.1.6. Another goal was to understand the impact of intervention on a measure of meaningful activities (MAPA), again taking

into account the cortisol awakening response (CAR). Based on the Theil–Sen estimator and with leverage points removed, the estimated slope before intervention (MAPA is the dependent variable and the CAR is the independent variable) is 4.49 and –10.23. The R function `reg2ci` returns a p-value equal to 0.012. The regression lines cross approximately where the CAR is equal to zero suggesting that when cortisol increases after awakening (the CAR is negative), MAPA scores tend to be higher, and when cortisol decreases the reverse is true. A similar result was obtained using the OLS estimator via the R function `ols2ci` again with leverage points removed. A crossover design was used resulting in an opportunity to replicate the result just described. MAPA scores were found to be significantly higher after intervention, regardless of the value of the CAR, but the slopes were not significantly different. Indeed, now both slopes are virtually zero. There are, however, some consistent features of how the groups compare when curvature is taken into account, which are illustrated in Chapter 12.

11.2.3 Methods for Comparing Two Dependent Groups

Next, methods designed for comparing two dependent groups are described, which were studied by Wilcox and Clark (2014) as well as Wilcox (2015c). Evidently, robust methods for testing (11.9) when there are more than two dependent groups have not been investigated. For simplicity, the method is described when dealing with a single independent variable, but the method is readily generalized to situations where there is more than one independent variable. Let $(x_{i1}, y_{i1}, x_{i2}, y_{i2})$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, be a random sample where, for example (x_{i1}, y_{i1}) might indicate pairs of observations taken at time 1 and (x_{i2}, y_{i2}) are pairs observations taken at time two. The resulting estimates of the slopes at times 1 and 2 are denoted by b_{11} and b_{12} , respectively, and the corresponding estimates of the intercepts are b_{01} and b_{02} .

Methods Based on a Robust Estimator

A version of the percentile bootstrap method is used to test (11.9), the hypothesis that the regression lines are identical. Begin by resampling with replacement n vectors of observations from $(x_{i1}, y_{i1}, x_{i2}, y_{i2})$ yielding $(x_{i1}^*, y_{i1}^*, x_{i2}^*, y_{i2}^*)$. Let b_{11}^* , b_{12}^* , b_{01}^* and b_{02}^* be the resulting estimates of the slopes and intercepts, respectively, based on this bootstrap sample. Let $d_k^* = b_{k1}^* - b_{k2}^*$ ($k = 0, 1$). Repeat this process B times yielding d_{kb}^* ($b = 1, \dots, B$). Let D_b denote some measure reflecting the distance of $\mathbf{d}^* = (d_0^*, d_1^*)$ from the center of the bootstrap data cloud, where the center of the data cloud is estimated with some robust estimator. One possibility is to use Mahalanobis distance based on an estimate of the variances and covariances associated with the bootstrap values d_{kb}^* . But when using a robust regression estimator, situations are encountered where the sample covariance matrix based on a bootstrap sample is

singular, which rules out using Mahalanobis distance. Here, to avoid this problem, projection distances are used as described in Section 6.2.5 and computed via the R function `pdis`. Let D_0 denote the distance of the null vector from the center of the bootstrap cloud. Then from general theoretical results in Liu and Singh (1997), a p-value is given by

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum I_{D_0 < D_b},$$

where the indicator function $I_{D_0 < D_b} = 1$ if $D_0 < D_b$, otherwise $I_{D_0 < D_b} = 0$. This method is readily extended to more than one independent variable, but simulations results on how well the method performs are limited to a single independent variable.

Next, consider the goal of testing the hypothesis

$$H_0 : \beta_{k1} = \beta_{k2}. \quad (11.13)$$

So for $k = 0$ the null hypothesis is that the intercepts are equal and for $k = 1$ the hypothesis is that the slopes are equal. This can be accomplished using a basic percentile bootstrap method. For each k , put the d_k^* values in ascending order yielding $d_{k(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq d_{k(B)}^*$. Let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, $u = (1 - \alpha/2)B$, rounded to the nearest integer, in which case an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\beta_{k1} - \beta_{k2}$ is $(d_{k(\ell+1)}^*, d_{k(u)}^*)$.

Methods Based on the Least Squares Estimator

Now the goal is to test the hypothesis that the regression lines are identical when using least squares regression estimator. Let \mathbf{V} be the sample covariance matrix based on the d_{kb}^* values, where b_{k1}^* and b_{k2}^* are the least squares estimates based on a bootstrap sample. That is,

$$v_{k\ell} = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum (d_{kb}^* - \bar{d}_k^*)(d_{\ell b}^* - \bar{d}_\ell^*),$$

where $\bar{d}_k^* = \sum d_{kb}^*/B$. The test statistic is based on a simple modification of Hotelling's T^2 statistic for testing the hypothesis that a multivariate normal distribution has a mean of zero:

$$H = \frac{n(n-2)}{2(n-1)} (d_0, d_1) \mathbf{V}^{-1} (d_0, d_1)' . \quad (11.14)$$

Reject the null hypothesis given by (11.9), at the α level, if H is greater than or equal to the $1 - \alpha$ quantile of an F distribution with $v_1 = 2$ and $v_2 = n - 2$ degrees of freedom. In the event there are p independent variables, proceed in the manner just described, only now $v_1 = p + 1$.

Now consider the goal of testing the hypotheses given by Eq. (11.13). The estimated squared standard error of d_k is $v_{k+1,k+1}$ and the test statistic is

$$T_k = \frac{d_k}{\sqrt{v_{k+1,k+1}}}.$$

The null distribution is approximated by a Student's t distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom. When the sample size is small, say $n = 20$, removing the data associated with leverage points can improve the control over the Type I error probability in some situations when there is heteroscedasticity (Wilcox, 2015d). The method is readily generalized to situations where there are $p > 1$ independent variables.

11.2.4 R Functions *DregG*, *difreg*, *DregGOLS*

The R function

```
DregG(x1,y1,x2,y2, regfun=tshdreg, nboot=500, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, SEED=TRUE,  
plotit=FALSE, pr=TRUE, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.9) when dealing with two dependent groups and when using a robust regression estimator. To test the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.13) for each $k = 0, \dots, p$, where p is the number of independent variables, use the R function

```
difreg(x1,y1,x2,y2, regfun=tshdreg, nboot=500, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, SEED=TRUE,  
plotit=FALSE, pr=TRUE, ...).
```

The function returns confidence intervals as well as p-values.

The R functions

```
DregGOLS(x1,y1,x2,y2, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, SEED=TRUE, nboot=200, ...)
```

and

```
difregOLS(x1,y1,x2,y2,regfun=lsfit,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,nboot=200,  
alpha=0.05,SEED=TRUE,plotit=FALSE,xlab='X',ylab='Y',...)
```

test the same hypotheses as those performed by DregG and difreg, respectively, only they use the least squares estimator.

11.3 Detecting Heteroscedasticity

Yet another way of establishing dependence between some outcome variable y and a some predictor x is to test the hypothesis that the (conditional) variation of y , given x , does not vary

with x . Among the many methods that have been proposed, most do not perform well in simulations (Lyon & Tsai, 1996). Two that do perform well are described in this section and a third method, which performs well when there is curvature, is described in Section 11.6.7.

It is *not* being suggested that the methods in this section be used to justify homoscedastic techniques. That is, if a test of the assumption of homoscedasticity fails to reject, it is not recommended that a homoscedastic regression model would then be used. The reason is that it is unclear when the power of the methods in this section will be high enough to detect a departure from the usual homoscedastic regression model that is important. Rather, the methods in this section are intended as a method for establishing that a certain type of dependence is present. Situations are encountered where the methods in this section reject, yet methods aimed at testing the hypothesis that the slope parameters are equal to zero fail to reject. And methods for testing the hypothesis of a zero correlation can fail to reject as well.

11.3.1 A Quantile Regression Approach

Let

$$y_\gamma = \alpha_\gamma + \beta_\gamma x$$

be the regression line for predicting the γ th quantile of y , given x . The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \beta_{0.2} = \beta_{0.8}$$

which represents a type of homoscedasticity. Of course, other quantiles might be used. The strategy is to choose quantiles different enough to help achieve relatively high power. But if the quantiles are too close to 0 and 1, controlling the Type I error probability can be difficult. Wilcox and Keselman (2006b) considered several methods and found the following to be best among those that were considered.

Compute a bootstrap estimate of the standard error of $d = b_{0.2} - b_{0.8}$ and label the result s_d^* , where b_γ is an estimate of β_γ . Here, $B = 100$ is used. Then an appropriate test statistic is

$$T = \frac{d}{s_d^*}.$$

Assuming that this test statistic has, approximately a standard normal distribution, the actual Type I error probability was found to be less than the nominal level among the situations considered by Wilcox and Keselman (2006b) when testing at the 0.05 level. Even for $n = 100$, the actual level can drop well below the nominal level. (The same problem occurs when using a percentile bootstrap method.) When testing at the 0.05 level, Wilcox and Keselman suggest using an approximate critical value given by

$$q = \Phi^{-1} \left(\frac{-0.104}{\sqrt{n}} + 0.975 \right),$$

where Φ^{-1} is the inverse of the cumulative standard normal distribution. That is, reject if $|T| \geq q$. Nothing is known about how to adjust the critical value when dealing with quantiles other than 0.2 and 0.8, or when testing at some level other than 0.05.

11.3.2 Koenker–Bassett Method

In terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error when testing the hypothesis of homoscedasticity, [Koenker and Bassett \(1981\)](#) method has been found to perform well in simulations by [Lyon and Tsai \(1996\)](#) as well as [Wilcox and Keselman \(2006b\)](#). The method begins by fitting an ordinary least squares regression line. Let r_i be the usual residuals ($i = 1, \dots, n$). If the null hypothesis is true, then

$$\hat{\sigma}^2 = \frac{1}{n} \sum r_i^2$$

provides an estimate of the common variance. Let $A = \sum(r_i^2 - \hat{\sigma}^2)^2/n$ and $\tilde{y} = \sum \hat{y}_i/n$. The test statistic is

$$V = \frac{\{\sum r_i^2(\hat{y}_i - \tilde{y})\}^2}{A \sum (\hat{y}_i - \tilde{y})^2},$$

which has, approximately, a chi-squared distribution with 1 degree of freedom when the null hypothesis is true. The method can be applied with the R function khomreg described in the next section.

11.3.3 R Functions *qhomt* and *khomreg*

The R function

```
qhomt(x, y, nboot = 100, tr = 0.2, qval = c(0.2, 0.8), plotit = T, SEED = T, xlab = 'X',
      ylab = 'Y')
```

tests the hypothesis

$$H_0: \beta_{0.2} = \beta_{0.8}.$$

The quantiles that are used can be altered via the argument qval. For example, qval=c(0.25, 0.75) would test $H_0: \beta_{0.25} = \beta_{0.75}$. The R function

```
khomreg(x, y)
```

performs Koenker's test.

11.4 Curvature and Half-Slope Ratios

This section describes an approach to dealing with curvature where the strategy is to attempt to straighten a regression line by replacing the x values with x^a for some a to be determined. Here, the so-called half-slope ratio is used to help suggest an appropriate choice for a . Another general approach when dealing with curvature is to use some type of nonparametric regression method described in Section 11.5.

Temporarily consider the situation where there is only one predictor ($p = 1$), and let $m = n/2$, rounded down to the nearest integer. Suppose the x values are divided into two groups: x_L , the m smallest x values, and x_R , the $n - m$ largest. Let y_L and y_R be the corresponding y values. For example, if the (x, y) points are $(1, 6)$, $(8, 4)$, $(12, 9)$, $(2, 23)$, $(11, 33)$, and $(10, 24)$, then the (x_L, y_L) values are $(1, 6)$, $(2, 23)$, and $(8, 4)$; and the (x_R, y_R) values are $(10, 24)$, $(11, 33)$, and $(12, 9)$. That is, the x values are sorted into two groups containing the lowest half and the highest half of the values, and the y values are carried along.

Suppose some regression method is used to estimate the slope using the (x_L, y_L) values yielding say $\hat{\beta}_L$. Similarly, let $\hat{\beta}_R$ be the slope corresponding to the other half of the data. The *half-slope ratio* is $H = \hat{\beta}_R/\hat{\beta}_L$. If the regression line is straight, then H should have a value reasonably close to 1. In principle, the method can be extended to $p \geq 1$ predictors. But the practical utility of the method is unclear. Simply choose a particular predictor, say the k th, and then divide the vectors of observations into two groups, the first containing the lowest m values of the k th predictor, and the second containing the $n - m$ highest. Simultaneously the y values and all of the remaining predictor values are carried along. That is, rows of data are sorted according to the values of the predictor being considered. Next, estimate the p slope parameters for the first group, yielding $\hat{\beta}_{Lk1}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{Lkp}$, where the second subscript, k , indicates that the data are divided into two groups based on the k th predictor. Do the same for the second group of observations yielding $\hat{\beta}_{Rk1}, \dots, \hat{\beta}_{Rkp}$, and the half-slope ratios are

$$H_{k\ell} = \hat{\beta}_{Rk\ell}/\hat{\beta}_{Lk\ell},$$

$k = 1, \dots, p$ and $\ell = 1, \dots, p$. That is, $H_{k\ell}$ is the ratio of the estimated regression slopes for the ℓ th predictor when the data are split using the k th predictor.

It is stressed that the half-slope ratio is an exploratory tool that should be used in conjunction with other techniques such as the smoothers described in Section 11.5. A practical advantage is that it might suggest a method of straightening the regression line. In simple regression ($p = 1$), it can suggest a choice for a such that the regression line $y = \beta_1 x^a + \beta_0$ gives a better fit to data, as will be illustrated. However, even when the half-slope ratio appears to be substantially different from 1, replacing x with x^a might have little practical advantage, as will be seen. Also, the half-slope ratio can be highly misleading when, for example, the usual linear model is correct but the slope parameters are close to zero.

Table 11.7: Breast Cancer Rate Versus Solar Radiation.

City	Rate	Daily Calories	City	Rate	Daily Calories
New York	32.75	300	Chicago	30.75	275
Pittsburgh	28.00	280	Seattle	27.25	270
Boston	30.75	305	Cleveland	31.00	335
Columbus	29.00	340	Indianapolis	26.50	342
New Orleans	27.00	348	Nashville	23.50	354
Washington, DC	31.20	357	Salt Lake City	22.70	394
Omaha	27.00	380	San Diego	25.80	383
Atlanta	27.00	397	Los Angeles	27.80	450
Miami	23.50	453	Fort Worth	21.50	446
Tampa	21.00	456	Albuquerque	22.50	513
Las Vegas	21.50	510	Honolulu	20.60	520
El Paso	22.80	535	Phoenix	21.00	520

11.4.1 R Function *hratio*

The R function

```
hratio(x,y,regfun=bmreg)
```

computes the half-slope ratios as just described. As usual, x is an n -by- p matrix containing the predictors. The optional argument `regfun` can be any R regression function that returns the estimated coefficients in `regfun$coef`. If `regfun` is not specified, `bmreg` (the bounded influence M regression estimator with Schweppe weights) is used.

The function returns a p -by- p matrix. The first row reports the half-slope ratios when the data are divided into two groups using the first predictor. The first column is the half-slope ratio for the first predictor, the second column is the half-slope ratio for the second predictor, and so forth. The second row contains the half-slope ratios when the data are divided into two groups using the second predictor, and so on.

■ Example

Table 11.7 shows some data on the rate of breast cancer per 100,000 women and the amount of solar radiation received (in calories per square centimeter) within the indicated city. (These data are also stored in the file `cancer.dat`. See Section 1.8.) The half-slope ratio is estimated to be 0.64 using the default regression function, `bmreg`. The estimates of the slope and intercept, based on all of the data, are -0.030 and 35.3 , respectively.

When the half-slope ratio is between 0 and 1, it might be possible to straighten the regression line by replacing x with x^a , where $0 < a < 1$, but there is no explicit equation for determin-

ing what a should be. However, it is a simple matter to try a few values and see what effect they have on the half-slope ratio. When the half-slope ratio is greater than one, try $a > 1$. If $a < 0$, often it is impossible to find an a that gives a better fit to the data (e.g., [Velleman & Hoaglin, 1981](#)). In the illustration, the half-slope ratio is less than one, so try $a = 0.5$. Replacing x with x^a , the half-slope ratio increases to 0.8, and $a = 0.2$ increases it to 0.9. In this latter case, the slope and intercept are now estimated to be -1.142 and 46.3 . However, a check of the residuals indicates that using $a = 0.2$, rather than $a = 1$, offers little advantage for the data at hand. This is not surprising, based on a cursory examination of a scatterplot of the data, and the smoothers in Section 11.5 also suggest that $a = 1$ will provide a reasonable fit to the data. However, in some situations, this process proves to be valuable.

■ Example

L. Doi conducted a study on variables that predict reading ability. Two predictors of interest were TAAST1, a measure of phonological awareness (auditory analysis), and SBT1, another measure of phonological awareness (sound blending). (The data are stored on the author's web site in the file `read.dat` in columns 2 and 3.) One goal was to predict an individual's score on a word identification test, WWISST2 (column 8 in the file `read.dat`), and more generally to understand the association among the three variables. An issue is whether the model $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \epsilon$ provide a reasonable approximation of the regression surface. The function `hratio` returns

```
[,1]      [,2]
[1,] -0.03739762  0.8340422
[2,]  0.34679647 -0.9352855
```

That is, dividing the data into two groups using the first predictor, the half-slope ratio for the first predictor is estimated to be -0.037 , and the second predictor has an estimated half-slope ratio of 0.83 . Dividing the data into two groups using the second predictor, the estimates are 0.35 and -0.93 . This suggests that a regression plane might be an unsatisfactory representation of how the variables are related. (A method for testing the hypothesis that the regression surface is a plane is described in Section 11.6.1.) ■

11.5 Curvature and Nonparametric Regression

Roughly, nonparametric regression deals with the problem of estimating a conditional measure of location associated with y , given the p predictors x_1, \dots, x_p , assuming only that this conditional measure of location is given by some unknown function $m(x_1, \dots, x_p)$. The

problem, then, is estimating the function m . This is in contrast to specifying m in terms of unknown parameters, where the best-known approach assumes

$$y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \dots + \beta_p x_{ip} + \epsilon_i.$$

There is a vast literature on estimating m nonparametrically with most methods assuming that the measure of location of interest is the mean (e.g., Efromovich, 1999; Eubank, 1999; Fan & Gijbels, 1996; Fox, 2001; Green & Silverman, 1993; Gyöfri, Kohler, Krzyzak, & Walk, 2002; Härdle, 1990; Hastie & Tibshirani, 1990). For $p = 1$ and 2, these techniques provide useful graphical methods for studying curvature. Complete details about all methods cannot be covered here. Instead the focus is on a few methods that appear to have considerable practical value when the focus is on robust measures of location.

11.5.1 Smoothers

Methods for estimating the unknown function m are generally based on what are called smoothing techniques. The basic idea is that if $m(x_1, \dots, x_p)$ is a smooth function, then among n observations, those points near (x_1, \dots, x_p) should contain information about the value of m at (x_1, \dots, x_p) . So a crude description of smoothing techniques is that they identify which points, among n vectors of observations, are close to (x_1, \dots, x_p) , and then some measure of location is computed based on the corresponding y values. The result is $\hat{m}(x_1, \dots, x_p)$, an estimate of the measure of location associated with y at the point (x_1, \dots, x_p) . The estimator \hat{m} is called a *smoother*, and the outcome of a smoothing procedure is called a *smooth* (Tukey, 1977). A slightly more precise description of smoothers is that they are weighted averages of the y values with the weights a function of how close the vector of predictor values is to the point of interest. (For results on estimating a robust measure of scale that allows the usual error term to be heteroscedastic, see Boente, Ruiz, & Zamar, 2010. For general results on computing a confidence band, when $p = 1$ and $m(x_1)$ is taken to be the conditional mean of y given x_1 , see Hall & Horowitz, 2013.)

11.5.2 Kernel Estimators and Cleveland's LOWESS

To elaborate, first consider the case of a single predictor ($p = 1$) and suppose it is desired to estimate some measure of location for y given x . Let w_i be some measure of how close x_i is to x . Then generally, the estimate of $m(x)$ is taken to be

$$\hat{m}(x) = \sum w_i y_i, \quad (11.15)$$

and the goal is to choose the w_i in some reasonable manner.

Kernel Smoothing

One approach is based on what is called *kernel smoothing*. Let the kernel $K(u)$ be a continuous, bounded and symmetric real function such that

$$\int K(u)du = 1.$$

An example is the Epanechnikov kernel in Section 3.2.4. Then an estimate of $m(x)$ is given by Eq. (11.15) where

$$w_i = \frac{1}{W_s} K\left(\frac{x - x_i}{h}\right),$$

$$W_s = \sum K\left(\frac{x - x_i}{h}\right),$$

and h is the span described in Section 3.2.4. Even within the class of kernel smoothers, many variations are possible. One of these variations is outlined here; it represents a very slight modification of the kernel regression estimator in Fan (1993). (In essence, the description given by Bjerve & Doksum, 1993, is used, but with the span taken to be $\min\{s, \text{IQR}/1.34\}$.)

Again let $K(u)$ be the Epanechnikov kernel given in Section 3.2.4 and let

$$h = \min(s, \text{IQR}/1.34).$$

Then given x , $m(x)$ is estimated with $\hat{m}(x) = b_0 + b_1x$, where b_0 and b_1 are estimated via weighted least squares with weights $w_i = K((x_i - x)/h)$. A smooth can be created by taking x to be a grid of points and plotting the results. (The method can be extended to multiple predictors using the multivariate extension of the Epanechnikov kernel described at the end of Section 6.9, but often the smooth seems to be a bit lumpy. Altering the span might improve matters, but this has not been investigated.)

Cleveland's LOWESS

Another approach to smoothing was developed by Cleveland (1979) and is generally known as locally weighted scatterplot smoothing (LOWESS). Briefly, let

$$\delta_i = |x_i - x|.$$

Next, sort the δ_i values and retain the fn pairs of points that have the smallest δ_i values, where f is a number between 0 and 1 and plays the role of a span. Let δ_m be the largest δ_i value among the retained points. Let

$$Q_i = \frac{|x - x_i|}{\delta_m},$$

and if $0 \leq Q_i < 1$, set

$$w_i = (1 - Q_i^3)^3,$$

otherwise set

$$w_i = 0.$$

Next, use weighted least squares to predict y using w_i as weights (cf. [Fan, 1993](#)). That is, determine the values b_1 and b_0 that minimize

$$\sum w_i(y_i - b_0 - b_1x_i)^2$$

and estimate the mean of y corresponding to x to be $\hat{y} = b_0 + b_1x$. Because the weights (the w_i values) change with x , generally a different regression estimate of y is used when x is altered. Finally, let \hat{y}_i be the estimated mean of y given that $x = x_i$ based on the method just described. Then an estimate of the regression line is obtained by the line connecting the points (x_i, \hat{y}_i) ($i = 1, \dots, n$). (For some interesting comments relevant to lowess versus kernel regression methods, see [Hastie & Loader, 1993](#).)

[Cleveland \(1979\)](#) also discussed a robust version of this method. In effect, extreme y values get little or no weight, the result being that multiple outliers among the y values have little or no impact on the smooth. R provides access to a function, called lowess, that performs the computations. (An outline of the computations can be found in [Härdle, 1990](#), p. 192.) For a smoothing method that is based in part on L_1 regression, see [Wang and Scott \(1994\)](#). (Related results are given by [Fan & Hall, 1994](#).) For a method based in part on M-estimators, see [Verboon \(1993\)](#).

11.5.3 R Functions `lplot`, `lplot.pred` and `kerreg`

It is a fairly simple matter to create a plot of the smooth returned by the built-in R function lowess, which applies Cleveland's method described in the previous section. But to facilitate the use of lowess, a function is supplied that creates the plot automatically. It has the form

```
lplot(x, y, low.span=2/3, span=0.75, pyhat=F, eout=F, xout=F, outfun=out, plotit=T,
      expand=0.5, varfun=pbvar, cor.op=F, cor.fun=pbcor, pr=T, scale=F, xlab='X', ylab='Y',
      zlab='', theta=50, phi=25, family='gaussian', duplicate='error', pc='*', ticktype='simple'),
```

where the argument `low.span` is the span, f , when there is a single independent variable. More than one predictor can be handled using a method outlined in Section 11.5.12. Now

the span is indicated by the argument span. With two predictors, setting the argument tick-type='detailed' will result in values indicated on the axes when a plot is created. If the argument pyhat=TRUE and the number of predictors is less than or equal to 4, the function returns the $\hat{m}(x_i)$ values, $i = 1, \dots, n$. If eout=T, the function first eliminates any outliers among the (x_i, y_i) values using the outlier detection method specified by the argument outfun. If xout=T instead, the function removes outliers (leverage points) among the x_i values only. To suppress the plot, set plotit=F. (The argument family is relevant only when $p = 2$; see Section 11.5.12.) The arguments theta and phi can be used to rotate or tilt a three dimensional plot. The arguments xlab, ylab and zlab indicate labels for the x-axis, y-axis and z-axis, respectively. The argument varfun is explained in Section 11.9. When dealing with a single predictor, the argument pc controls how points will be represented in the scatterplot. By default, an * is used. But with n large, this can make it difficult seeing the regression line, in which case pc='.' might be more satisfactory.

The R function

```
lplot.pred(x, y, pts = x, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, span = 2/3, ...)
```

can be used to compute predicted y values based on one or more x vectors. The argument pts is assumed to be a matrix with the number of columns equal to the number of independent variables. By default, all of the points stored in the argument x are used, as is done by the R function lplot. An advantage of the R function lplot.pred, over the R function lplot, is that it can be used when there is an interest in predicting the typical value of y based on points not included in the observed data stored in the R variable x. For example, if there are two independent variables, and the goal is to compute \hat{y} for the point $(0, 0)$, the R commands

```
pts=matrix(c(0,0),ncol=2)
lplot.pred(x,y,pts=pts)
```

accomplishes this goal. This assumes, of course, that there are a sufficient number of points among the observed data, stored in x, that are close to $(0, 0)$. If this is not the case, the value for \hat{y} is returned as NA.

The function

```
kerreg(x,y,pyhat=F,pts=NA,plotit=T,theta=50,phi=25,expand=0.5,
scale=F,zscale=F,eout=F,xout=F,outfun=out,np=100,xlab='X',ylab='Y',zlab='Z',
varfun=pbvar,e.pow=T,pr=T,ticktype='simple')
```

creates a smooth using a slight modification of the method derived by [Fan \(1993\)](#). The arguments are the same as those used by the function `lplot`, except the argument `np`, which determines how many x values are used when creating the smooth. (Details about the argument `np` can be found in the R function `locreg`.) If the argument `pyhat=TRUE`, the function returns the predicted value of y for each value stored in the argument `pts`.

11.5.4 The Running-Interval Smoother

Now we consider how smoothers might be generalized to robust measures of location. To help fix ideas, momentarily focus on the single predictor case ($p = 1$). One approach to estimating m and exploring curvilinearity is with the so-called running-interval smoother. To be concrete, suppose the goal is to use the data in [Table 11.7](#) to estimate the 20% trimmed mean of the breast cancer rate, given that solar radiation is 390. The strategy behind the running-interval smoother is to compute the 20% trimmed mean using all of the y_i values for which the corresponding x_i values are close to the x value of interest, 390. The immediate problem is finding a rule for determining which y values satisfy this criterion.

Let f be some constant that is chosen in a manner to be described and illustrated. Then the point x is said to be close to x_i if

$$|x_i - x| \leq f \times \text{MADN},$$

where MADN is computed using x_1, \dots, x_n . So for normal distributions, x is close to x_i if x is within f standard deviations of x_i . Let

$$N(x_i) = \{j : |x_j - x_i| \leq f \times \text{MADN}\}.$$

That is, $N(x_i)$ indexes the set of all x_j values that are close to x_i . Let $\hat{\theta}_i$ be an estimate of some parameter of interest, based on the y_j values such that $j \in N(x_i)$. That is, use all of the y_j values for which x_j is close to x_i . For example, if x_3, x_8, x_{12}, x_{19} , and x_{21} are the only values close to $x = 390$, then the 20% trimmed mean of y , given that $x = 390$, is estimated by computing the 20% sample trimmed mean using the corresponding y values y_3, y_8, y_{12}, y_{19} , and y_{21} . To get a graphical representation of the regression line, compute $\hat{\theta}_i$, the estimate of y given that $x = x_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, and then plot the points $(x_1, \hat{\theta}_1), \dots, (x_n, \hat{\theta}_n)$. This process will be called a *running-interval smoother*. (For an alternative approach for creating smooths using M-estimators and trimmed means based on generalizations of kernel smoothers for means, see [Härdle, 1990](#), Chapter 6. Also see [Hall & Jones, 1990](#).)

A practical problem is choosing f . If there are no ties among the x values, and if f is chosen small enough, the running-interval smoother produces a scatterplot of the points. If f is too large, the horizontal line $\hat{y} = \hat{\theta}$ is obtained where $\hat{\theta}$ is the estimate of θ using all n of the y

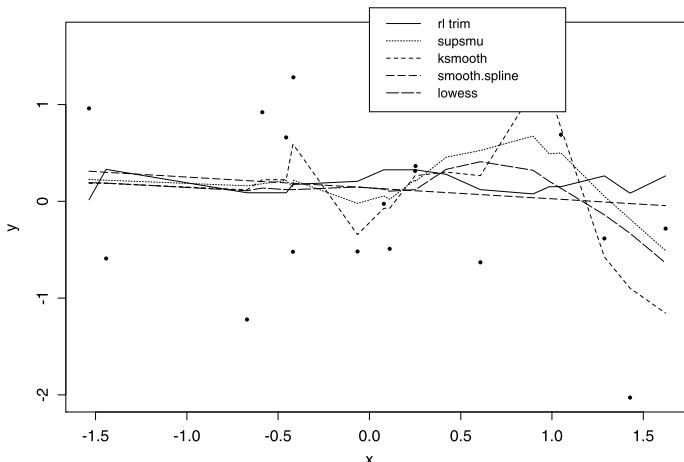


Figure 11.2: Various smoothers, $n = 20$, $f = 1$. The straight line is based on a spline method and gives the best results in this instance. But in other situations, alternative smoothers give superior results.

values. The problem, then, is to choose f large enough so that the resulting plot is reasonably smooth, but not too large so as to mask any nonlinear relationship between x and y . Often the choice $f = 1$ gives good results, but both larger and smaller values might be better, particularly when n is small. As with all smoothers, a good method is to try some values within an interactive-graphics environment, the general strategy being to find the smallest f so that the plot of points is reasonably smooth.

The smoother is first illustrated with some data generated from a known model, to demonstrate how well it performs, and then some additional illustrations are given using data from actual studies. For convenience, it is again assumed that the goal is to predict the 20% trimmed mean of y given x . First consider the situation where both x and ϵ are standard normal, and $\beta_1 = \beta_0 = 0$. Then the correct regression line is $y = 0$. Figure 11.2 shows the running interval smoother, plus several other smoothers for $n = 20$ points, where both x and ϵ were generated from standard normal distributions. The solid line (labeled `rl trim`) is the running interval smoother. Note that the running interval smoother does a relatively good job of capturing the true regression line. The additional smoothers that come with R include a kernel smoother, a super smoother (labeled `supsmu`), Cleveland's method described in Section 11.5.2, and a smoothing spline. (Super smoothers and smoothing splines are discussed in manuals, but the details go beyond the scope of this book.) Of course, this one example is not convincing evidence that the running interval smoother has practical value.

A challenge for any smoother is correctly identifying a straight line when in fact the regression line is straight and n is small. Figure 11.3 illustrates some of the problems that can arise

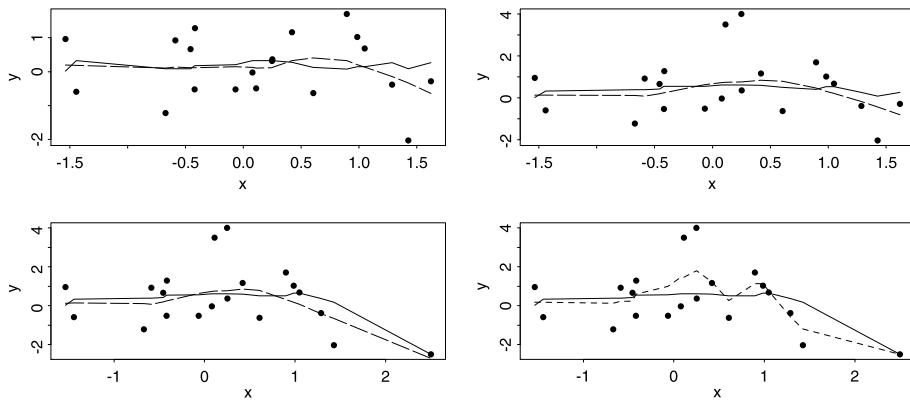


Figure 11.3: A comparison of a running interval smooth versus some smoothers for means, $n = 20$. The upper left panel shows the running interval smooth versus lowess. The upper right panel is the same as the upper left, but with two of the y values increased so that they are outliers. The lower left panel is the same as the upper right, but now with three outliers and one leverage point. The lower right panel shows the same points as the lower left with lowess replaced by a kernel smooth.

using both the running interval smoother and lowess, described in Section 11.5.2. The upper left panel of Figure 11.3 is based on the same data used in Figure 11.2, but only lowess and the running interval smoother are shown. The upper right panel of Figure 11.3 is the same as the upper left, but two of the y values were altered so that they are now outliers. Note that lowess suggests a curved regression line, although the curvature is small enough that it might be discounted. The lower left panel of Figure 11.3 shows the same data as in the upper right panel, only the furthest point to the right is moved to $(x, y) = (-2.5, -2.5)$. That is, both x and y are outliers. The curvature in lowess is more pronounced, but even the running interval smoother suggests that there is curvature. This is because the largest x value is so far removed from the other x values, the corresponding trimmed mean of y is based on only one value, $y = -2.5$. One obvious way of dealing with this problem is to check for any outlying or isolated x values, remove them, and see what effect this has on the smoother. The lower right panel of Figure 11.3 shows what happens when lowess is replaced with a kernel smoother used by R.

The left panel of Figure 11.4 shows a running interval smooth, with $f = 0.75$, based on $n = 20$ points generated from the model $y = x^2 + \epsilon$, with both x and ϵ having standard normal distributions. (Using the default $f = 1$ is a bit less satisfactory.) The right panel is based on $n = 40$ and $f = 1$. The dashed line in both panels is the true regression line, $y = x^2$. The solid, ragged line is the estimate of the regression line using the running interval smoother. (For more about the running interval smoother, see Wilcox, 1995f.)

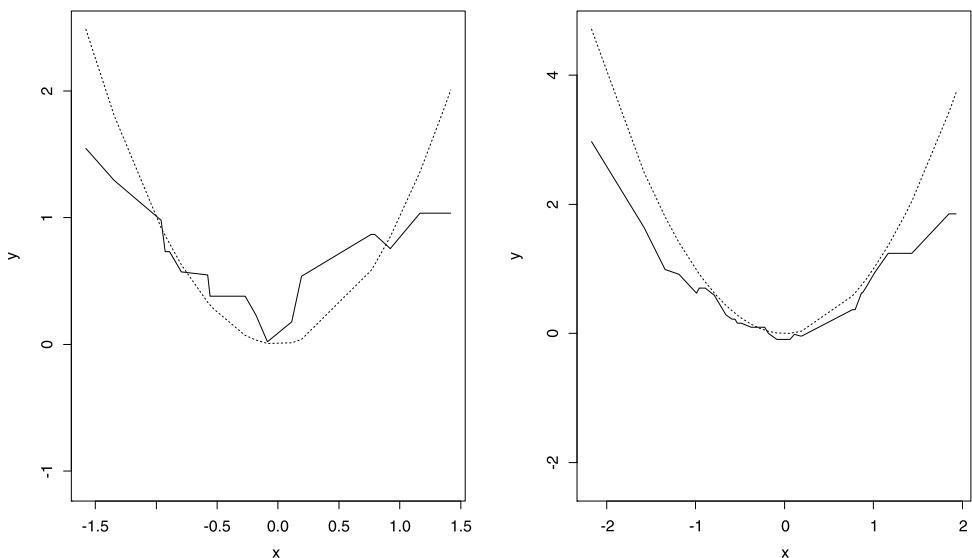


Figure 11.4: Two smooths where data were generated according to the model $y = x^2 + \epsilon$. The left panel is with a span of $f = 0.75$ and the right is with $f = 1$.

Figure 11.5 shows the results of applying the smoother to various data sets. The first scatterplot is based on data from a study of diabetes in children (Socket, Daneman, Carlson, & Ehrich, 1987). The upper-left panel of Figure 11.5 shows the age in months versus the logarithm of serum C-peptide. Also shown is the smoother resulting from the lowess command in R. As is evident, they give similar results. One interesting feature of the data is that the half-slope ratio is approximately zero, so a regression model of the form $\hat{y} = \beta_1 x^a + \beta_0$, for some appropriately chosen a , is not very satisfactory.

The upper-right panel of Figure 11.5 shows data from a reading study where one of the goals is to consider how well a measure of phonological awareness (sound blending as measured by the variable SBT1 in the data file read.dat) predicts a word identification score (WWISST2). It appears that a straight line does a reasonably good job of capturing the relationship between the two random variables being investigated.

The lower-left panel of Figure 11.5 shows a scatterplot of data reported by Mickey, Dunn, and Clark (1967) for $n = 21$ children where the goal is to predict a child's Gesell adaptive score based on age in months when a child utters its first word. There is the suggestion that the regression line decreases sharply for older children, but there are too few observations to be sure. Clearly the two largest x values are outliers. If the outliers are eliminated, the running interval smoother returns a nearly flat line for children 12 months old and younger, but for older children a decreasing regression line appears again. (The details are left as an exercise.)

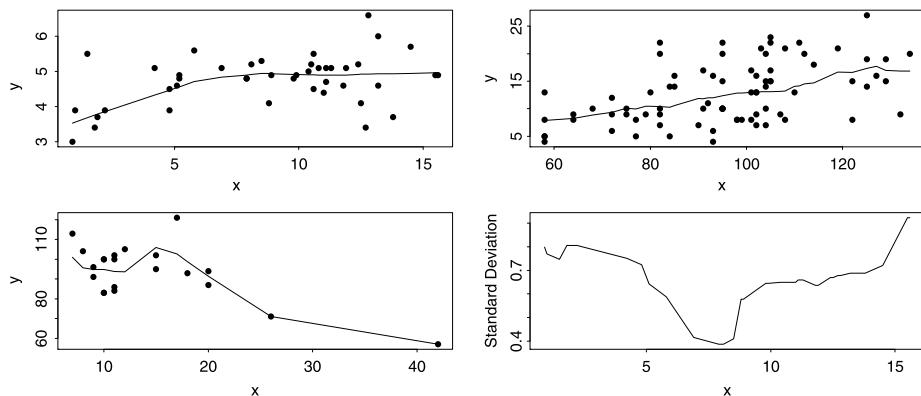


Figure 11.5: The upper-left panel is a smooth for predicting the logarithm of C-peptide with age. The upper-right panel is a smooth for predicting WWISST2 with SBT1. The lower-left panel is a smooth of a Gesell score with age. And the lower-right panel is a smooth of the standard deviation of $\log(\text{C-peptide})$ versus age.

Of course, with only 19 observations left, most of which correspond to children under the age of 12 months, more data are needed to resolve this issue.

An appeal of the running interval smoother is its versatility. Consider the diabetes data in the upper-left panel of Figure 11.5. The lower-right panel of Figure 11.5 shows a running interval smoother where the goal is to predict the standard deviation of the log C-peptide values based on the child's age. Note that the standard deviation drops dramatically, until about the age of 7, and then increases rapidly. Based on results in Chapter 10, this suggests that even if the error term has a normal distribution, OLS regression might be relatively inefficient compared to various robust estimators.

In some situations, particularly when the sample size is small, the running interval smooth can be somewhat ragged compared to other smoothers. A method that might help correct this problem is bootstrap *bagging* (e.g., Davison, Hinkley, & Young, 2003, Bühlmann & Yu, 2002; Breiman, 1996a, 1996b). In the present context, the method begins by applying the running interval smoother yielding, say, $m(x|d_n)$, where $d_n = (x_i, y_i), i = 1, \dots, n$. That is, $m(x|d_n)$ is some measure of location for y , given x , that is based on the n pairs of observations that are available. Generate a bootstrap sample by randomly sampling, with replacement, n pairs of points from d_n . Label the results d^* . Repeat this B times yielding d_1^*, \dots, d_B^* . Then the bagged estimate of $m(x)$ is

$$\hat{m}(x|d) = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B m(x|d_b^*).$$

That is, use the average of the bootstrap estimates of $m(x)$.

Another strategy for dealing with a running interval smoother that is somewhat ragged, which appears to be more effective than bootstrap bagging, is to simply smooth it again using LOWESS described in Section 11.5.2. That is, create a smooth based on $(x_i, \hat{\theta}_i)$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$), where $\hat{\theta}_i$ is the estimated value of y given that $x = x_i$ based on the running interval smoother.

11.5.5 R Functions *rplot* and *runYhat*

The R function

```
rplot(x, y, est = tmean, scat = TRUE, fr = NA, plotit = TRUE, pyhat = FALSE, efr = 0.5,
      theta = 50, phi = 25, scale = TRUE, expand = 0.5, SEED = TRUE, varfun = pbvar,
      outfun = outpro, nmin = 0, xout = FALSE, eout = FALSE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y',
      zscale = FALSE, zlab = ' ', pr = TRUE, duplicate = 'error', ticktype = 'simple', LP = TRUE,
      OLD = FALSE, pch = '.', ...)
```

applies the running interval smoother. It consolidates several variations of the running interval smoother that were described in the third edition of this book. (They are the R functions *runmean*, *rungen*, and *runhat*.) The function *rplot* defaults to using a 20% trimmed mean. That is, the goal is to estimate the trimmed mean of y corresponding to x_i ($i = 1, \dots, n$), but any estimator can be used via the argument *est*. For example, to use the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median, use the command *rplot(x,y,est=hd)*. The argument *scat*=TRUE means that a scatterplot is created when plotting the regression line and the argument *pch* indicates the symbol used by the scatterplot. Setting *scat*=FALSE eliminates the scatterplot. This might be done, for example, when the goal is to see how a measure of scale associated with y varies with x . Care must be taken because *scat*=F means that a plot of the smoothed values versus x is created, and this might affect one's perspective on the degree of curvature. (See Exercise 14 at the end of this chapter.)

The argument *LP*=TRUE means that the initial fit is smoothed again using LOWESS. Setting the argument *pyhat*=TRUE, the function returns the estimate of the typical value of y for each value in the argument x . The argument *fr* corresponds to the span, f , which is used to determine which of the x_i values is close to a given point. If not specified, *fr*=1 is used when there is a single independent variable. (For two independent variables, *fr*=0.8 is used by default.) For example, the R command *rplot(x,y,fr=0.75)* would use $f = 0.75$ when creating the running interval smoother. If unsure, first try *fr*=1, and if the line seems smooth and straight, try *fr*=0.75 to see what happens. Similarly, the command *runmean(x,y,tr=0.1)* would cause the running interval smoother to use the 10% trimmed mean. The command

`runmean(x,y,tr=0.1,plotit=F)` would suppress the plot of the smooth. Most of the smooths in Figures 11.1–11.4 were created in this manner.

As usual, the argument `xout` eliminates leverage points using the function indicated by the argument `outfun`, which defaults to `outpro`. So for a single independent variable the MAD-median rule is used. Setting `eout=TRUE` eliminates outliers among both the independent and dependent variables. The arguments `varfun` and `OLD` control how the explanatory strength of the association is estimated, which is covered in Section 11.9. (The arguments `efr`, `theta`, `phi` and `scale` have to do with situations where there are two independent variables, which is covered in Section 11.5.11.)

The last argument, `...`, can be any additional arguments required by the function associated with the argument `est`. For example, the command `rplot(x,y,est=hd,q=0.25)` would result in a running interval smoother that predicts the 0.25 quantile of `y` given `x`.

A smoother does not provide an explicit equation for predicting `y` given `x`. So the R function

```
runYhat(x, y, pts = x, est = tmean, fr = 1, nmin = 1, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, ...)
```

is supplied, which computes $\hat{m}(x)$ for each of the values stored in the vector `pts`. The argument `est` defaults to the function `tmean`, which computes a 20% trimmed mean. If, for example, it is desired to compute $\hat{m}(x)$ for $x = 1$ and 3 , using a 10% trimmed mean, the command

```
runYhat(x,y, pts=c(1,3),mean, tr=0.1, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, ...)
```

accomplishes this goal. (The R function `runhat` is the same as `runYhat` when there is one independent variable. Unlike the function `runhat`, `runYhat` can be used with more than one independent variable.)

■ Example

A controversial issue is whether teachers' expectancies influence intellectual functioning. A generic title for studies that address this issue is Pygmalion in the classroom. [Rosenthal and Jacobson \(1968\)](#) argue that teachers' expectancies influence intellectual functioning and others argue that it does not. A brief summary of some of the counterarguments can be found in [Snow \(1995\)](#). Snow illustrates his concerns with data collected by Rosenthal where children in grades 1 and 2 were used. Here, other issues are examined using robust regression methods.

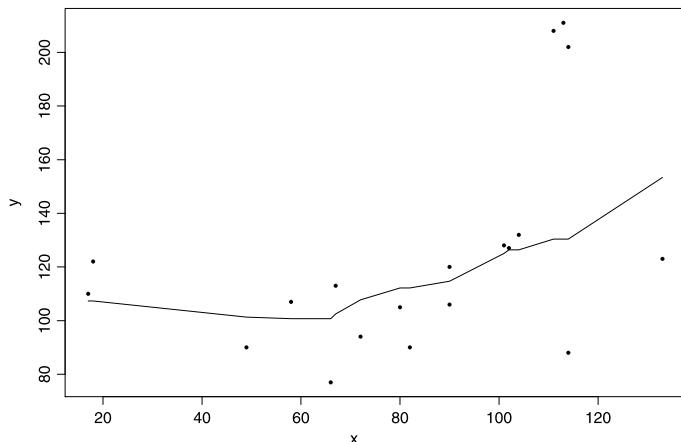


Figure 11.6: A smooth of the pygmalion data for the experimental group.

One of the analyses performed by Rosenthal involved comparing an experimental group of children, for whom positive expectancies had been suggested to teachers, to a control group for whom no expectancies had been suggested. One measure was a reasoning IQ pretest score, and a second was a reasoning IQ posttest score. The data are given in [Elashoff and Snow \(1970\)](#) and they are stored in the files pyge.dat and pygc.dat. (The file pyge.dat contains the results for the experimental group, and pgyc.dat contains data for the control.) [Figure 11.6](#) shows the plot created by rplot using $f = 1$ using the data in the experimental group. Notice that the regression line is fairly straight for the bulk of the data, but the left end of the line curves up. It is evident that this is due to the two lowest x values. Because there are so few x values in this region, the smooth might be misleading for $x \leq 50$. It is left as an exercise to try $f = 0.75$.

Bootstrap bagging can be applied via the R function rplotsm in Section [11.5.11](#). This might provide a more accurate estimate of the regression surface when the sample size is small. The relative merits of using bootstrap bagging, versus smoothing using rplot with LP=TRUE, are unknown.

11.5.6 Smoothers for Estimating Quantiles

This section deals with smoothers designed for estimating conditional quantiles associated with some dependent variable y given x . An approach that appears to perform relatively well is to use the running interval smoother in Section [11.5.4](#), used in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator.

Another approach is based on what are called splines. They are a compromise between polynomial regression, which has been criticized due to the global nature of its fit, and other smoothers that have an explicit local nature. Regression splines compromise by employing a piecewise polynomial. The region that defines the pieces are separated by a sequence of knots or breakpoints. (For a summary of data-driven methods for choosing the knots, see for example [Hastie & Tibshirani 1990](#), Chapter 9. For general results on B-splines, see for example [de Boor, 1978](#).) A common goal is to force the piecewise polynomials to join smoothly at the knots. One popular choice consists of piecewise cubic polynomials constrained to be continuous and to have continuous first and second derivatives at the knots. Informal comparisons with other smoothers suggest that certain variations of methods based on splines are not quite as satisfactory as other smoothers that might be used ([Härdle, 1990](#)). A variation designed specifically for quantiles (e.g., [He & Ng, 1999](#); [Koenker & Ng, 2005](#); cf. [Doksum & Koo, 2000](#)) is called constrained B-spline smoothing (COBS). The Koenker–Ng method improves on a computational method studied by [He and Ng \(1999\)](#) and builds upon results in [Koenker, Ng, and Portnoy \(1994\)](#). The method can be applied via the R package COBS, but using default settings, it can poorly approximate the true regression line. More specifically, it might indicate substantially more curvature than is actually present ([Wilcox, 2016b](#)). Wilcox found that generally the running interval smoother gives more satisfactory results. Another advantage of the running interval smoother is that it can be used with two covariates based on the strategy described in Section 11.5.10. COBS can only be applied with a single covariate. For results based on a K nearest neighbor approach, see [Ma, He, and Shia \(2016\)](#).

11.5.7 R Function *qhds*m

The R function

```
qhds(x, y, qval = 0.5, q = NULL, pr = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, plotit = TRUE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = 'Z', pyhat = FALSE, fr = NULL, LP = TRUE, theta = 50, phi = 25, ticktype = "simple", nmin = 0, scale = TRUE, pr.qhd = TRUE, pch = '.', ...)
```

creates a quantile smooth based on the running interval smoother in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. The argument qval (or q) can be used to specify the quantiles of interest. By default, the 0.5 quantile regression line is plotted. If there is one covariate, multiple quantile regression lines can be plotted. For example

```
qhds(x,y,q=c(0.25,0.5,0.75))
```

will plot the regression lines for predicting the 0.25, 0.5 and 0.75 quartiles. (When the argument `pr.qhd = TRUE`, the function prints a message about the argument scale. To avoid the message, set `pr.qhd = FALSE`.) The R function `qsmcobs` creates a smooth using COBS, but it should be used with caution for reasons explained in the previous section.

11.5.8 Special Methods for Binary Outcomes

When y is binary, now $m(x)$ is taken to be the (conditional) probability that $y = 1$ given x . Smoothers based on means can again be used, but some smoothers cannot be recommended. Examples are Cleveland's LOWESS estimator and the kernel estimator in Section 11.5.2. Both of these estimators can yield an estimate of $m(x)$ that is substantially smaller than 0 or larger than 1. However, there are estimators that deal explicitly with binary outcomes that guarantee that $0 \leq m(x) \leq 1$. One relevant study is by [Copas \(1983\)](#). [Hosmer and Lemeshow \(1989, p. 85\)](#) suggest using an estimator that is motivated in part by general results in [Kay and Little \(1987\)](#). Here, a slight modification of the Hosmer–Lemeshow estimator is used. The estimate of $m(x)$ is taken to be

$$\hat{m}(x) = \frac{\sum w_i y_i}{\sum w_i}, \quad (11.16)$$

where

$$w_i = I_h e^{-(x_i - x)^2},$$

and $I_h = 1$ if $|x_i - x| < h$, otherwise $I_h = 0$. Also, unless stated otherwise, it is assumed that the x values have been standardized by subtracting the median and dividing by MADN. That is, if the observed predictors are X_1, \dots, X_n , use $x_i = (X_i - M)/\text{MADN}$. If the predictors are not standardized, a change in scale can have a major impact on \hat{m} yielding highly inaccurate and misleading results. The choice $h = 1.2$ appears to perform relatively well. Yet another approach is to use the running interval smoother in Section 11.5.4 with the amount of trimming set equal to zero.

Other variations have been studied by [Signorini and Jones \(2004\)](#) that are based in part on kernel density estimators. Let $f(x)$ be the probability density function of x , given that $y = 1$, and let $g(x)$ be the density given that $y = 0$. One of the estimators they studied has the form

$$\hat{m}(x) = \frac{n_1 f(x)}{n_1 \hat{f}(x) + n_0 \hat{g}(x)}, \quad (11.17)$$

where n_j is the number of times $y = j$, $j = 0, 1$. (So, for example, n_1 is the observed number of successes.) Here, $\hat{f}(x)$ and $\hat{g}(x)$ are taken to be adaptive kernel estimators described in Section 3.2.4.

A limitation of Eq. (11.16) is that it can handle only a single predictor. A slight variation of this estimator, which can handle more than one predictor, is to take

$$w_i = I_h e^{-d_i}, \quad (11.18)$$

where d_i is the squared Mahalanobis distance between \mathbf{x}_i and \mathbf{x} , but with the usual covariance matrix replaced by the MVE estimator. That is,

$$d_i = (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x})' \mathbf{S}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}),$$

where \mathbf{S} is the MVE measure of scatter. When using Eq. (11.18), now $h = 2$ appears to be good a choice for general use with $I_h = 1$ if $\sqrt{d_i} < h$; otherwise $I_h = 0$. Of course, the MVE estimator could be replaced by some other robust measure of scatter, but the practical advantages of doing so are unknown.

None of the estimators listed in this section dominate in terms of mean squared error and bias, but the estimator given by Eq. (11.18) appears to perform relatively well with the running interval another good choice ([Wilcox, 2010d](#)).

11.5.9 R Functions *logSM*, *logSMPred*, *bkreg* and *rplot.bin*

The R functions in this section are designed with the explicit goal of creating a smooth when the outcome variable y is binary. The function

```
logSM(x,y, pyhat=F, plotit=T, xlab='X', ylab='Y', zlab='Z', xout=F, outfun=outpro, pr=T,
theta=50, phi=25, duplicate='error', expand=0.5, scale=F, fr=2, ...)
```

computes the smooth given by Eq. (11.16), where the argument fr is h . (This function replaces the R function logrsm, which was limited to a single independent variable.) When there is more than one independent variable, the function applies the method based on Eq. (11.18) and appears to be a relatively good choice when y is binary.

```
logSMPred(x, y, pts, fr = 2, LP = TRUE, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, SEED = TRUE, ...)
```

can be used to estimate the probability of y given that the independent variable has the values stored in the argument pts .

The R function

```
bkreg(x, y, kerfun = akerd, pyhat = F, plotit = T, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = 'Z', xout = F,
outfun = outpro, pr = T, theta = 50, phi = 25, duplicate = 'error', expand = 0.5, scale = F, ...)
```

uses a variation of the estimator given by Eq. (11.17). By default, the adaptive kernel density estimator is used, but other kernel density estimators can be used via the argument kerfun. It can be used with more than one predictor. Limited results suggest that bkreg offers little advantage over other estimators in terms of mean squared error and bias, and situations arise where the reverse is true.

Finally, the R function

```
rplot.bin(x, y, est = mean, scat = T, fr = 1.2, plotit = TRUE, pyhat = FALSE, efr = 0.5,
          theta = 50, phi = 25, scale = F, expand = 0.5, SEED = T, nmin = 0, xout = FALSE,
          outfun = out, eout = F, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = ' ', pr = TRUE, duplicate = 'error',
          zscale = TRUE, ...)
```

uses the running interval smoother assuming that there is only one independent variable. It is essentially the same as the R function rplot, but for convenience it is designed specifically for situations where y is binary.

11.5.10 Smoothing with More than One Predictor

The running interval smoother can be generalized to more than one predictor by replacing MADN with the minimum volume ellipsoid estimate of scatter, \mathbf{M} , introduced in Chapter 6, and by measuring the distance between \mathbf{x}_i and \mathbf{x}_j with

$$D_{ij} = \sqrt{(\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j)' \mathbf{M}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_i - \mathbf{x}_j)}.$$

When trying to predict y , given \mathbf{x}_i , simply compute the trimmed mean of all y_j values such that \mathbf{x}_j is close to \mathbf{x}_i . More formally, compute the trimmed mean of all the y_j values for which the subscript j satisfies $D_{ij} \leq f$. The choice $f = 1$ or 0.8 often gives good results. When there are only two predictors, adjustments can be made as in the previous subsection. That is, start with $f = 1$, generate a graph of the three dimensional smooth, and try other choices for f to see how the graph is affected. (For $p = 2$ and when estimating quantiles, also see He, Ng, & Portnoy, 1998.)

The running interval smoother described in this section performs reasonably well with two predictors. As the number of predictors increases, there are concerns due to the so-called *curse of dimensionality*: neighborhoods with a fixed number of points become less local as the dimensions increase (Bellman, 1961). Currently, little is known about how well any smoother performs when dealing with $p = 3$ predictors. Note that the linear model in Section 11.1, which is commonly used, simply ignores any concerns about the curse of dimensionality.

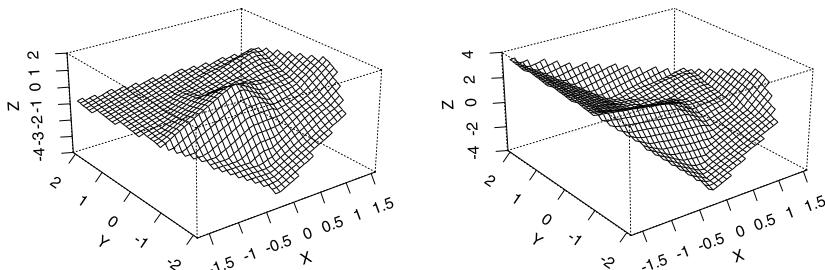


Figure 11.7: Illustrations of how runm3d performs under normality with a small sample size.

To provide some indication of how well the method performs with two predictors, first suppose $y = x_1 + x_2 + \epsilon$. The left panel of Figure 11.7 shows a smooth based on $f = 1$ and $n = 20$ observations, where x_1 , x_2 , and ϵ all have a standard normal distribution. As can be seen, the shape of the regression plane is captured reasonably well. The right panel of Figure 11.7 shows a smooth when $y = x_1^2 + x_2 + \epsilon$, otherwise the situation is the same as before. Again the shape of the regression surface is captured. Of course, it is not being suggested that the correct surface is always reflected with only 20 points. Even with only one predictor, a smooth might suggest there is some curvature when data are generated from a straight line. Also, any smooth might be unreliable for extreme x_1 and x_2 values simply because there might be few points available for estimating the trimmed mean of y .

A possible concern with using D_{ij} , a robust analog of Mahalanobis distance, is that an ellipsoid is being used to identify the points close to \mathbf{x}_i . This might suffice, but a more flexible approach is to use projection distances instead. That is, use approximation A1 in Section 6.2.3.

A criticism of the running interval smoother is that with a small sample size, the regression surface can be relatively ragged when it should be smooth. One way of improving the method is to apply the bootstrap bagging method as described at the end of Section 11.5.4. A seemingly more effective strategy is to simply smooth the initial smooth using LOESS as mentioned at the end of Section 11.5.4. But the relative merits of these two approaches are not well understood.

11.5.11 R Functions rplot, runYhat, rplotsm and runpd

The R function

```
rplot(x,y, est=tmean, scat=TRUE, fr=NA, plotit=TRUE, pyhat=FALSE, efr=0.5, theta=50,
phi=25, scale=TRUE, expand=0.5, SEED=TRUE, varfun=pbvar, outfun=outpro, nmin=0,
xout=FALSE, out=FALSE, eout=FALSE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', zscale=FALSE, zlab=' ',
pr=TRUE, duplicate='error', ticktype='simple', LP=TRUE, OLD=FALSE, pch='.', ...)
```

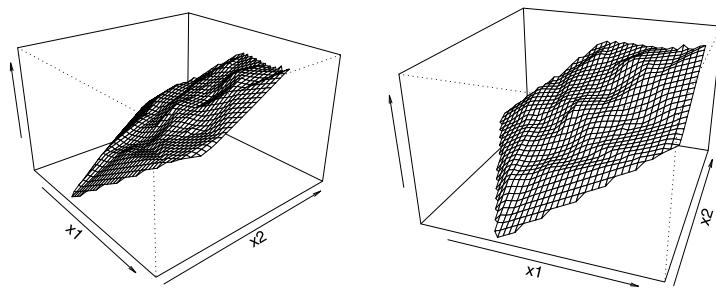


Figure 11.8: An illustration of what happens when the argument theta is altered in the R function `runm3d`.

introduced in Section 11.5.5, can be used to create a smooth when there are two independent variables. (This function replaces the R functions `runm3d`, `run3hat`, and `rung3d`, which were used in the third edition of this book.) When x is an n -by-2 matrix, the function automatically plots the estimated regression surface. To avoid the plot, set the argument `plotit=FALSE`. For a three dimensional plot, setting the argument `ticktype='detailed'` will create ticks as done when creating a two dimensional plot. If the argument `pyhat=TRUE` and the argument `est=tmean`, the function returns the estimated 20% trimmed mean of y for each of the n vectors of predictors stored in the n -by- p matrix, x . Setting `est=hd`, for example, the median of y would be returned based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. If the data are not stored in an R variable having matrix mode, the function prints an error message and terminates.

The argument `nmin` can be used to modify how the regression surface is estimated. By default, `nmin` is 0 meaning that the regression surface is estimated using all n rows of x . If, for example, `nmin=2`, the regression surface is estimated using only those points \mathbf{x}_i for which the number of points close to \mathbf{x}_i is greater than 2. Put another way, the regression surface is estimated using only those points for which the sample trimmed mean of y is based on more than `nmin` values. Setting the argument `xout=T` eliminates outliers among the \mathbf{x} values before creating the plot, and `eout=T` removes outliers among the (\mathbf{x}, y) vectors.

When there is no association, and the regression surface is a flat, horizontal plane, using `scale=FALSE` typically gives the best visual representation. But when there is an association, often `scale=TRUE` provides a better perspective. The arguments `theta` and `phi` control the orientation of the plot. The argument `theta` controls the azimuthal direction and `phi` the co-latitude. The left graph in Figure 11.8 shows a plot of $y = x_1 + x_2$ using the default values for `theta` and `phi`. The right panel is the same plot but with `theta = 20`. (Changing the argument `phi` tilts the plot forward or backward.)

The R function

```
runYhat(x, y, pts = x, est = tmean, fr = 1, nmin = 1, xout = FALSE, outfun = outpro, ...)
```

introduced in Section 11.5.5, can be used to compute $\hat{m}(x)$ for each vector stored in the R argument pts, where now pts is assumed to be a matrix with two or more columns. (This function replaces the R function rung3hat.) As usual, the measure of location is indicated by the argument est, which defaults to a 20% trimmed mean.

■ Example

If tp is a 2-by-3 matrix with the elements of the first row equal to zero and the second equal to 1, the command runYhat(x,y,est=onestep,pts=tp) returns two values in \$Y.hat: the predicted one-step M-estimate of y given that x is equal to $(0, 0, 0)$, and the predicted value when x is equal to $(1, 1, 1)$. The function also returns, in the R variable \$nval, the number of y values used to compute the measure of location. Here, the first value in \$nval is the number of predictors that are close to $(0, 0, 0)$, and the second value is the number of predictors close to $(1, 1, 1)$. For example, if the first value in nval is 8, there were eight points close to $(0, 0, 0)$, which in turn means that the predicted value of y is based on eight values as well.

The R function

```
rplotsm(x, y, est = tmean, fr = 1, plotit = T, pyhat = F, nboot = 40, atr = 0, nmin = 0, outfun =
out, eout = F, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', scat = T, SEED = T, expand = 0.5, scale = F, varfun =
pbvar, pr = T, ticktype='simple', ...)
```

can be used to create a bagged version of the running interval smoother; see the end of Section 11.5.4. This function can give substantially better results, compared to rplot, when the sample size is relatively small. The relative merits of using rplotsm, versus rplot with LP = TRUE, are not well understood.

■ Example

This example illustrates that a smooth, based on bagging, can make a practical difference. Using R, 50 values were generated from a standard normal distribution for both x and ϵ and $y = x + \epsilon$ was computed. Then a smooth of the conditional variance of y , given x , was created with the command rplot(x,y,est=var,scat=F). The result is shown in the left panel of Figure 11.9. Then a bagged version of the smooth was created with the command rplotsm(x,y,est=var,scat=F) and the result is shown in the right panel of

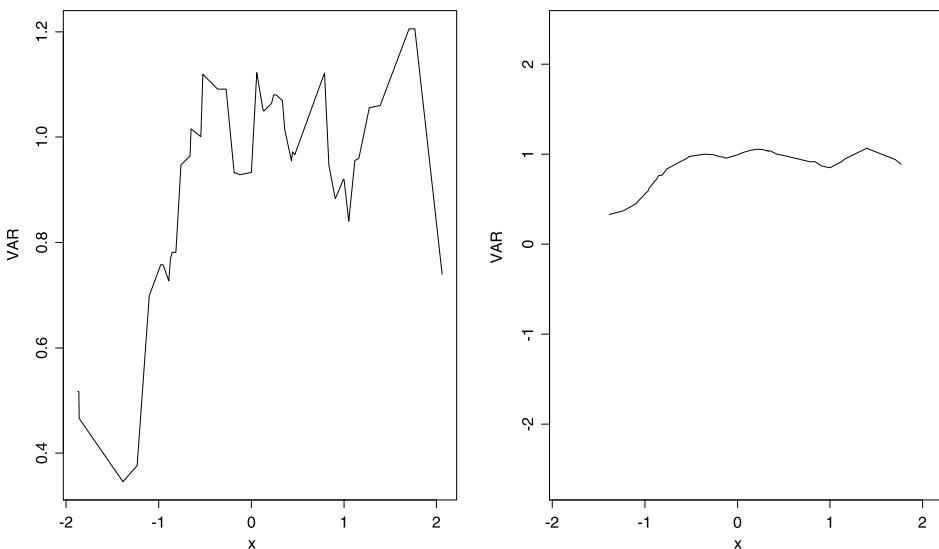


Figure 11.9: The left panel shows a smooth of y , given x , where the conditional variance of y , given any x , is one. The right panel shows a bagged version of the smooth created by the function `rplotsm`.

Figure 11.9. As is evident, the bagged version gives a much more accurate indication of the conditional variance of y given x . ■

When dealing with $p > 1$ predictors, the R functions previously described in this section determine which points are close to some specified \mathbf{x} using a robust analog of Mahalanobis distance based on the MVE covariance matrix. So the closest points to \mathbf{x} are based on ellipsoids. A more flexible approach to identifying the closest points is to use projection distances instead. This is done by the R function

```
runpd(x, y, pts = x, est = tmean, fr = 0.8, plotit = TRUE, pyhat = FALSE, nmin = 0, scale = F,
expand = 0.5, xout = F, outfun = out, pr = TRUE, xlab = 'X1', ylab = 'X2', zlab = '',
LP=TRUE, theta = 50, phi = 25, duplicate = 'error', MC = FALSE, ...).
```

The function runpd uses the R function

```
pdclose(x, pts = x, fr = 1, MM = FALSE, MC = FALSE)
```

to determine which points stored in x are close to the points stored in the argument pts . The argument MM controls how the projection distances are scaled. See the description of the R

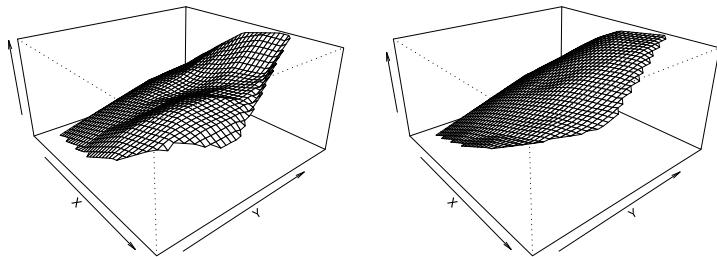


Figure 11.10: An illustration of how nonnormality might affect smooths created by lowess. The left panel shows a smooth using the default settings of the function lplot. The right panel is a plot of the same data, but with outliers removed by setting the argument eout=T.

function pdis in Section 6.2.6 for further details. At least in some situations, using a robust analog of Mahalanobis distance, via the R function rplot, gives better results. For example, if $n = 100$, $y = x_1 + x_2^2 + \epsilon$, where both x and ϵ have standard normal distributions, the R function rplot tends to capture the shape of the regression surface better than the R function runpd. However, extensive comparisons of these two methods have not been made.

11.5.12 LOESS

There is an extension of the smoother lowess (described in Section 11.5.2) to multiple predictors that was derived by Cleveland and Devlin (1988); it can be applied with the function loess, which comes with R. (In recent years, the terms lowess and loess have been used interchangeably.) The R function lplot, described in Section 11.5.3, uses loess to create a plot when there are $p = 2$ independent variables. Like lowess, the goal is to estimate the conditional mean of y , but unlike lowess (which handles $p = 1$ only), when using the default settings of the function, a single outlier can grossly distort the estimate of the regression surface and non-normality can greatly influence the plot. One way of addressing this problem is to set the argument family="symmetric" when using the function lplot. Another possibility is to eliminate all outliers by setting the argument eout=T and use the default value for the argument family.

■ Example

As an illustration, $n = 100$ points were generated from the model $y = x_1 + x_2 + \epsilon$ where x_1 and x_2 are independent standard normal random variables and ϵ has a g-and-h distribution with $g = h = 0.5$. The left panel of Figure 11.10 shows the plot created by lplot using the default settings, and the right panel is the plot with eout=T, which eliminates all outliers before creating the plot.

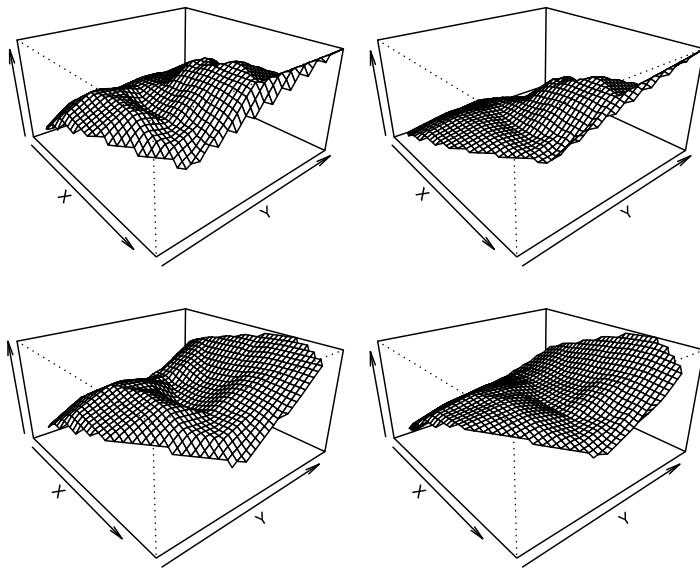


Figure 11.11: Four different smooths based on the reading data.

■ Example

Using the reading data described in Section 11.4.1, with the two independent variables taken to be TAAST1 and SBT1 (which are measures of phonological awareness and stored in columns two and three of the file `read.dat`), and the dependent variable taken to be OCT2 (a measure of orthographic ability and stored in column ten), Figure 11.11 shows an estimate of the regression surface using four different smoothers. The upper-left graph was created by `lplot` using the default values for the arguments. The upper-right graph was created by `rplot`, again using the default values. The lower-left graph was created by `lplot` but with `xout=T` so that leverage points are eliminated before creating the smooth. The lower-right graph was created by `rplot` but with `xout=T`.

■ Example

To illustrate `runYhat`, again using the reading data, suppose it is desired to estimate `WWISST2` (a word identification score stored in column 8) when `TASST1` (stored in column 2) is 15 and `SBT1` (stored in column 3) is 8. Then there is only one point of interest, so store the values 15 and 8 in any 1 by 2 matrix. For example, the R command `val=matrix(c(15,8),1,2)` could be used. Assuming the values of the predictors are

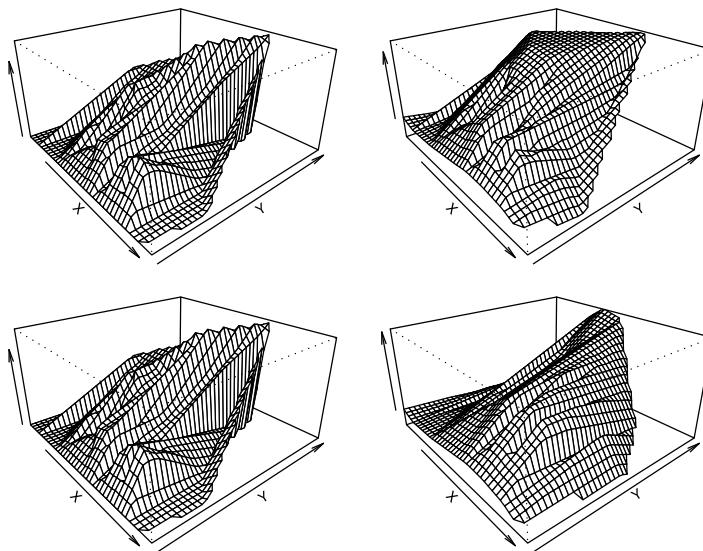


Figure 11.12: Four smooths based on the kyphosis data.

stored in the R variable x , and the WWISST2 values are stored in y , the command $\text{runYhat}(x,y,\text{val})$ returns the value 106.2 in the R variable $\$Y.\text{hat}$. That is, the estimated 20% trimmed mean of WWISST2, given that TASST1 is 15 and SBT1 is 8, is equal to 107.5. If instead it is desired to compute \hat{y} for the points $(15, 8)$ and $(15, 9)$, now use the R command $\text{val}=\text{matrix}(\text{c}(15,8,15,9),2,2,\text{byrow}=T)$. Then the first row of the matrix val contains $(15, 8)$, the second row contains $(15, 9)$, and the command $\text{runYhat}(x,y,\text{val})$ returns the values 107.5 and 108.6.

■

■ Example

Kyphosis is a postoperative spinal deformity. R has built-in data, stored in the R variable kypho , reporting the presence or absence of kyphosis versus the age of the patient, in months, the number of vertebrae involved in the spinal operation, and a variable called start , which is the beginning of the range of vertebrae involved. Suppose it is desired to estimate the probability of kyphosis based on age and the number of vertebrae involved. The function rplots accomplishes this goal by setting the argument tr equal to zero, or the function rplot.bin could be used. (Of course, another option is to use the smoother in Section 11.5.8 via the R function logSM in Section 11.5.9.) The top two graphs in Figure 11.12 show the resulting estimate of the regression surface using rplot (with $\text{tr}=0$)

and LP=FALSE) and Iplot (shown on the right). The bottom two graphs were again created by rplot and Iplot, but both functions used xout=TRUE to eliminate any outliers among the independent variables. (Three outliers were found using the MVE method.) Also, rplot used fr=1.1 to smooth the plot. (Standard logistic regression is typically used when y is binary. See Section 10.16 for some robust alternatives.) ■

11.5.13 Other Approaches

Yet another approach when dealing with two or more predictors is to use what is called a *generalized additive model*. That is, assume that

$$y = \beta_0 + \sum_{j=1}^p g_j(x_j) + \epsilon \quad (11.19)$$

where $g_1(x_1), \dots, g_p(x_p)$ are unknown functions to be estimated based on the available data. This is in contrast to assuming

$$y = g(x_1, \dots, x_p) + \epsilon. \quad (11.20)$$

A concern about the more general model given by Eq. (11.20) is the *curse of dimensionality* comes into play, which was described in Section 11.5.10. Regardless of the extent Eq. (11.20) improves upon Eq. (11.19), the additive model provides an interesting generalization of the usual linear model $y_i = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_{i1} + \dots + \beta_p x_{ip} + \epsilon_i$, when testing hypotheses and trying to gain insight into any associations that might exist. (Illustrations are given in Section 11.6.) A general concern with the generalized additive model is that it might not be flexible enough so as to capture the nature of the regression surface in a reasonably accurate manner. (It assumes that there is no interaction as described in Section 11.7.)

When dealing with robust measures of location, the generalized additive model given by Eq. (11.19) can be fit to data using the running interval smoother in conjunction with the so-called *backfitting algorithm* (e.g., Friedman & Stuetzle, 1981). More generally, virtually any smoother can be used, including the many smoothers designed specifically for means. The backfitting algorithm is applied as follows. Set $k = 0$ and let g_j^0 be some initial estimate of g_j . Here, $g_j^0 = S_j(y|x_j)$, where $S_j(y|x_j)$ is the running interval smooth based on the j th predictor, ignoring the other $p - 1$ predictors that are available. Next, iterate as follows.

1. Increment k by 1.
2. For each j , $j = 1, \dots, p$, let

$$g_j^k = S_j(y - \sum_{\ell \neq j} g_\ell^{k-1} | x_j).$$

3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 until convergence.

(For general theoretical results on the backfitting algorithm, see [Buja, Hastie, & Tibshirani, 1989](#).)

Finally, estimate β_0 with

$$b_0 = m(y - \sum g_j^k),$$

where m indicates the measure of location used when computing the smooths. R contains functions that estimate the generalized additive model given by Eq. (11.19) when the goal is to estimate the mean of y . Again, when the goal is to get a more robust version of these methods, a simple approach is to remove any outliers before using these R functions.

Methods have been derived that are a blend of both a parametric model and a nonparametric smoother (e.g., [Ruppert, Wand, & Carroll, 2003](#)). For results on how this approach might be implemented in a robust manner, see [Boente and Rodríguez \(2010\)](#).

11.5.14 R Functions `adrunk`, `adrunl`, `gamplot`, `gamplotINT`

The R function

```
adrunk(x, y, est = tmean, iter = 10, pyhat = F, plotit = T, fr = 1, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab =  
  ' ', theta = 50, phi = 25, expand = 0.5, scale = F, zscale = T, xout = F, eout = xout,  
  outfun = out, ticktype = 'simple', ...)
```

fits the additive model given by Eq. (11.19) in conjunction with the running interval smoother. As usual, the arguments theta and phi control the orientation of the plot; see Section 11.5.14. The measure of location is specified by the argument est and defaults to a 20% trimmed mean. The command `adrunk(x,y,est=mean,tr=0.1)`, for example, would result in a smooth based on a 10% trimmed mean instead. Setting the argument `pyhat=T` causes the function to return the estimates of y for each design point, and `fr` specifies the span. For bivariate data, the function plots the smooth if `plotit=TRUE`. To avoid the plot, set `plotit=FALSE`. As p , the number of predictors, gets large, caution must be exercised. Situations can arise where the fit to data is wildly inaccurate due to the span being too small. So at a minimum it is suggested to check the output with `pyhat=T` to make sure the function is returning reasonable results. The function

```
adrnul(x, y, est = tmean, iter = 10, pyhat = F, plotit = T, fr = 0.8, xlab = 'x1', ylab = 'x2',
zlab = ' ', theta = 50, phi = 25, expand = 0.5, scale = F, zscale = T, xout = F, outfun = out,
ticktype = 'simple', ...)
```

is like the function `adrn`, only the running interval smoother is replaced by `lowess`.

The R function

```
gamplot(x,y, pyhat=F, sop=T, plotit=T, theta=50, phi=25, scale=F, eout=F, outfun=out,
        ticktype='simple',)
```

creates a plot based on an additive fit for means that is computed via a call to the built-in R function `gam`. (Splines are used to create the smooth. With the argument `sop=F`, the usual linear model is used.) The R function `gam` has many more options for modeling the regression surface than are used by the function `gamplot`. For two predictors, the function `gamplot` is intended as way of graphing the regression surface assuming that Eq. (11.19) holds. The current version is limited to $p = 4$. The other arguments are the same as those described in Section 11.5.11 in conjunction with `rplot`. (When y is binary, the function `logadr` fits a generalized additive model in conjunction with Copas's method previously described.) The R function

```
gamplotINT(x, y, pyhat = F, plotit = T, theta = 50, phi = 25, expand = 0.5, scale = F,
           zscale = T, eout = F, outfun = out, ticktype = 'simple',)
```

is like `gamplot`, only it is limited to $p = 2$ predictors and is based on the model $y = g_1(x_1) + g_2(x_2) + g_3(x_1, x_2) + \epsilon$ rather than $y = g_1(x_1) + g_2(x_2) + \epsilon$. This is useful when checking for interactions as described in Section 11.7.

11.6 Checking the Specification of a Regression Model

Typically, when testing hypotheses, a particular parametric form for a regression model is specified and inferences are made about the parameters assuming that the model is correct. A practical concern is that the assumed parametric form might represent a poor approximation of the true regression surface, which in turn can lead to erroneous conclusions. As a simple example, values for x were generated by the author from a bivariate normal distribution with $\rho = 0$, the marginal distributions as well as ϵ had a standard normal distribution, $n = 20$, and the error term was homoscedastic. Now imagine we assume that $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \epsilon$ and the goal is to test $H_0: \beta_2 = 0$. Furthermore, based on how the data were generated, power is

approximately 0.26 when testing at the 0.05 level. Is it reasonable to conclude that the model is a good approximation of how the data were generated and that indeed, $\beta_2 \neq 0$? Here, such a conclusion would be erroneous; the data were generated using the model $y = \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2^2 + \epsilon$. So an issue is whether it is reasonable to assume that for some β_0 , β_1 and β_2 , $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \epsilon$. Of course, exploratory graphical methods, already covered, help address this issue. Here the goal is to describe some additional tools for dealing with this problem.

There are, in fact, many methods for testing the hypothesis that a regression equation has a particular parametric form. Typically these methods are based on estimates of the conditional mean of y given \mathbf{x} . Included are methods that begin with a kernel-type smooth and then compare the fitted y values to those obtained by an assumed parametric model. Miles and Mora (2003) summarize and compare a variety of these methods assuming normality. More generally, there is the problem of testing the hypothesis that a regression surface belongs to some particular family of models. For example, can we rule out the possibility that a generalized additive model generated the data? Samarov (1993) provides an interesting overview of various models and how they might be investigated. It seems that few results are available on how extensions of these methods to robust estimators perform.

11.6.1 Testing the Hypothesis of a Linear Association

Given p predictors, x_1, \dots, x_p , let \mathcal{M} be the family of all regression equations having the form $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \dots + \beta_p x_p + \epsilon$, where the error term may be heteroscedastic. This section describes a test of the hypothesis

$$H_0 : m(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathcal{M} \quad (11.21)$$

where, as usual, $m(\mathbf{x})$ represents some conditional measure of location given \mathbf{x} . That is, the null hypothesis is that the data are generated from the model $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \dots + \beta_p x_p + \epsilon$. If, for example, $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1^2 + \epsilon$, the null hypothesis is false. The method described here stems from Stute, González-Manteiga, and Presedo-Quindimil (1998).

Let \hat{y} be some regression estimate of y . Least squares could be used, but it has been shown that this can lead to problems in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error (Wilcox, 1999), so it is suggested that some robust estimator be used instead. For fixed j ($1 \leq j \leq n$), set $I_i = 1$ if $\mathbf{x}_i \leq \mathbf{x}_j$, otherwise $I_i = 0$, and let

$$\begin{aligned} R_j &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum I_i (y_i - \hat{y}_i) \\ &= \frac{1}{\sqrt{n}} \sum I_i r_i, \end{aligned} \quad (11.22)$$

where $r_i = y_i - \hat{y}_i$ are the usual residuals. The (Kolmogorov) test statistic is the maximum absolute value of all the R_j values. That is, the test statistic is

$$D = \max |R_j|, \quad (11.23)$$

where max means that D is equal to the largest of the $|R_j|$ values. As in Section 9.5, a Cramér–von Mises test statistic can be used instead where now

$$D = \frac{1}{n} \sum R_j^2. \quad (11.24)$$

A critical value is determined using the wild bootstrap method. Generate n observations from a uniform distribution and label the results U_1, \dots, U_n . Next, for $i = 1, \dots, n$, set

$$V_i = \sqrt{12}(U_i - 0.5),$$

$$r_i^* = r_i V_i,$$

and

$$y_i^* = \hat{y}_i + r_i^*.$$

Then based $(\mathbf{x}_1, y_1^*), \dots, (\mathbf{x}_n, y_n^*)$, compute the test statistic and label it D^* . Repeat this process B times and label the resulting test statistics D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* . Finally, put these B values in ascending order yielding $D_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq D_{(B)}^*$. The critical value is $D_{(u)}^*$, where $u = (1 - \alpha)B$ rounded to the nearest integer. That is, reject if

$$D \geq D_{(u)}^*.$$

(Wang & Qu, 2007, propose another approach, but it is unknown how it compares to the method covered here. For a method aimed specifically at L_1 regression, see Horowitz & Spokoiny, 2002. For yet another method dealing with quantile regression, see He & Zhu, 2003.)

11.6.2 R Function `lintest`

The R function

```
lintest(x,y,regfun=tsreg,nboot=500,alpha=0.05)
```

tests the hypothesis that a regression surface is a plane (more generally that the regression surface corresponds to a linear model) using the method just described. (Execution time is fairly fast with one predictor, but it might be slow when there are multiple predictors. This problem can be greatly reduced by using `regfun=chreg`, which uses the Coakley–Hettmansperger M-estimator.) When reading the output, the Kolmogorov test statistic is labeled `dstat` and its critical value is labeled `critd`. The Cramér–von Mises test statistic is labeled `wstat`. The default regression method (indicated by the argument `regfun`) is Theil–Sen.

■ Example

For the diabetes data shown in Figure 11.5, suppose the goal is to test the hypothesis that there is a linear association between the logarithm of the C-peptide values and age. That is, the hypothesis is that for some β_0 and β_1 , $y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x + \epsilon$, where x is age. The Kolmogorov test statistic returned by the R version of `lintest` is $D = 0.179$, it reports a 0.05 critical value of 0.269, so fail to reject. If both predictors (age and base deficit) are used, again we fail to reject at the 0.05 level.



11.6.3 Testing the Hypothesis of a Generalized Additive Model

This section describes a variation and extension of the test of linearity given in Section 11.6.1. Here, rather than test the hypothesis of a linear association, the goal is to test the hypothesis that the data were generated from a generalized additive model. More formally, given p predictors, x_1, \dots, x_p , now let \mathcal{M} be the family of all regression equations having the form given by Eq. (11.19). The goal is to test the hypothesis

$$H_0 : m(\mathbf{x}) \in \mathcal{M}, \quad (11.25)$$

where as usual $m(\mathbf{x})$ represents some conditional measure of location given \mathbf{x} . When there are $p = 2$ independent variables, rejecting this hypothesis is one way of detecting an interaction. That is, approximating the regression surface appears to require some function of both independent variables rather than simple additive model given by that (11.19). There are various ways this problem might be addressed. For example, some obvious extension of the method in Dette (1999) might be used, but so far no such variation has been found that performs well in simulations. Another approach is suggested by results in Samarov (1993), but again there are no simulation results supporting this strategy. Another possibility is to fit the additive model and test the hypothesis that the regression surface for the residuals, versus \mathbf{x} , is a horizontal plane, which can be done along the lines in Section 9.5, or one might compare the fit of the additive model to the fit obtain by the method in Section 11.5.10. Wild bootstrap methods based on these last two strategies have, so far, proven to be rather unsatisfactory in simulations.

Currently, the only method that performs well in simulations, when the sample size is small, is applied exactly as in Section 11.6.1, only rather than compute \hat{y} based on some robust regression estimator, use $\hat{y} = \hat{m}(\mathbf{x})$ based on the additive fit described in Section 11.5.13 (Wilcox, 2003e). Here it is assumed that the additive fit is obtained using the 20% trimmed mean. The method does not perform well when using means and nothing is known about how it performs when using an M-estimator.

There is, however, a practical concern about the choice of the span when applying the running interval smoother to get the additive fit. If $p = 2$ and the span is too large, the actual Type I error probability can drop well below the nominal level. For this special case, and when testing at the 0.05 level, approximations of a good choice for the span corresponding to the sample sizes 20, 30, 50, 80 and 150 are 0.4, 0.36, 0.18, 0.15 and 0.09, respectively. It is suggested that when $20 \leq n \leq 150$, interpolation based on these values be used, and for $n > 150$ simply use a span equal to 0.09. So for n sufficiently large, perhaps the actual Type I error probability might be well below the nominal level, but exactly how the span should be modified when $n > 150$ is an issue that is in need of further investigation. For $p = 3$, the choice of the span seems less sensitive to the sample size, with a span of $f = 0.8$ being a reasonable choice for $n < 100$. What happens when $p > 3$ has not been investigated.

11.6.4 R Function *adtest*

The R function

```
adtest(x,y,est=tmean,nboot=100,alpha=0.05,fr=NA,xout=F,outfun=out,SEED=T,...)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.25). This one way of testing the hypothesis of no interaction. If $xout=T$, outliers among the \mathbf{x} values are first identified and (y_i, \mathbf{x}_i) is eliminated if \mathbf{x}_i is flagged an outlier.

11.6.5 Inferences About the Components of a Generalized Additive Model

Inferences about the components of a generalized additive model, based on the running interval smoother, can be made as follows. For convenience, assume the goal is to test

$$H_0 : g_1(x_1) = 0.$$

Fit the generalized additive model yielding

$$\hat{y}_i = b_0 + \hat{g}_2(x_{i2}) + \cdots + \hat{g}_p(x_{ip}).$$

Let $r_i = y_i - \hat{y}_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. The strategy is to test the hypothesis that the association between the residuals and x_1 is a straight horizontal line, and this can be done with the wild bootstrap method in Section 9.5 (cf. Härdle & Korostelev, 1996).

When using the running interval smoother, the choice of the span can be crucial in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error (Wilcox, 2006a). Letting f be the span used in Section 11.5.4. The choice for f when using means or a 20% trimmed mean are as follows:

n	20% trimming	Mean
20	1.20	0.80
40	1.0	0.70
60	0.85	0.55
80	0.75	0.50
120	0.65	0.50
160	0.65	0.50

So, for example, if $n = 60$ and a generalized additive model based on the running interval smoother and a 20% trimmed mean is to be used to test H_0 , choose the span to be $f = 0.85$.

In principle, the method is readily extended to situations where something other than the running interval smoother is used to fit the generalized additive model, but currently there are no results on the resulting probability of a Type I error.

11.6.6 R Function `adcom`

The R function

```
adcom(x, y, est = mean, tr = 0, nboot = 600, tr=0.2, fr = NA, jv = NA, ...)
```

tests hypotheses about the components of a generalized additive model using the method just described. With the argument `fr=NA`, the function chooses the appropriate span, as a function of the sample size, using linear interpolation where necessary. By default, all components are tested. The argument `jv` can be used to limit which components are tested. For example, `jv=2` would test only $H_0: g_2(x_2) = 0$.

11.6.7 Detecting Heteroscedasticity Based on Residuals

This section describes a method for testing the homoscedasticity assumption based on the residuals associated with some fit to the data. (This approach has an obvious connection with what is known as the Tukey–Anscombe plot.) Let $m(x)$ denote some conditional measure of location associated with y , given x , and let $r_i = y_i - \hat{m}(x_i)$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$) denote the usual residuals based on some estimate of $m(x)$. Here, $m(x)$ is estimated using the running interval smoother in Section 11.5.4 or the Theil–Sen estimator. Homoscedasticity implies that a regression line used to predict $|r|$, given x , will be a straight horizontal line and there are several ways of testing the hypothesis that this regression line is indeed straight and horizontal. One way is to assume the regression line is straight with an unknown slope β_r and test the hypothesis $H_0: \beta_r = 0$. Here, this hypothesis is tested using the percentile bootstrap method in

Section 11.1.3 in conjunction with the Theil–Sen estimator or the running interval smoother. Given the residuals, a second strategy is to test the hypothesis that the Winsorized correlation between $|r|$ and x is zero. A third possibility is to test the hypothesis that the regression line for $|r|$ and x is both straight and horizontal using method INDT in Section 9.5. (For relevant simulation results, see Wilcox, 2006g.) There are, of course, many other variations that might be used, but there are no results on the extent they provide a practical advantage over the variations just described.

11.6.8 R Function *rhom*

The R function

```
rhom(x,y, op=1, op2=FALSE, tr=0.2, plotit=TRUE, xlab='NA', ylab='NA', zlab='ABS(res)',  
est=median, sm=FALSE, SEED=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis that there is homoscedasticity using the method described in the previous section. There are three choices for the argument op:

- op=1: Test $H_0: \beta_r = 0$ using the Theil–Sen estimator in conjunction with the percentile bootstrap method in Section 11.1.3.
- op=2: Test the hypothesis that the 20% Winsorized correlation between $|r|$ and x is zero using the method in Section 9.3.6.
- op=3: Test the hypothesis that the regression line for predicting $|r|$ with x is both straight and horizontal using method INDT in Section 9.5.

If the argument op2=FALSE, the Theil–Sen estimator is used when computing the residuals; otherwise the running interval smoother is used.

11.7 Regression Interactions and Moderator Analysis

Regarding the method in Section 11.6.3, note that it provides a flexible approach to the so-called regression interaction problem. Consider the two predictor case and let c_1 and c_2 be two distinct values for the second predictor, x_2 . Roughly, no interaction refers to a situation where the regression line between y and x_1 , given that $x_2 = c_1$, is parallel to the regression line between y and x_1 , given that $x_2 = c_2$. An early approach to modeling interactions assumes that

$$y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \beta_3 x_1 x_2 + \epsilon, \quad (11.26)$$

where an interaction is said to exist if $\beta_3 \neq 0$ (e.g., [Saunders, 1956](#)). This model often plays a role in what is called a *moderator analysis*, roughly meaning that the goal is to determine the extent to which knowing the value of one variable, x_2 here, alters the association between y and x_1 . Note that Eq. (11.26) can be written as

$$y = (\beta_0 + \beta_2 x_2) + (\beta_1 + \beta_3 x_2)x_1 + \epsilon,$$

so the slope for x_1 changes as a linear function of x_2 . (An R function, called `ols.plot.inter`, described in Section 11.7.1, plots the regression surface when using the least squares estimate of the parameters.) Currently, a commonly used method for testing the hypothesis of no interaction is to test $H_0: \beta_3 = 0$, meaning that the slope for x_1 does not depend on x_2 .

A more general approach to testing the hypothesis of no interaction is to use a variation of the method in Section 11.6.1 to test the hypothesis that for some functions g_1 and g_2 , $y = g_1(x_1) + g_2(x_2) + \epsilon$. This can be done with the function `adtest` in Section 11.6.4. Another way of stating the problem is described, for example, by [Barry \(1993\)](#) who uses an ANOVA-type decomposition. Essentially, write

$$m(x_1, x_2) = \beta_0 + g_1(x_1) + g_2(x_2) + g_3(x_1, x_2) + \epsilon,$$

in which case the hypothesis of no interaction is

$$H_0: g_3(x_1, x_2) \equiv 0.$$

[Barry \(1993\)](#) derived a Bayesian-type test of this hypothesis assuming the mean of y is to be estimated and that prior distributions for g_1 , g_2 and g_3 can be specified. Another approach is outlined by [Samarov \(1993\)](#), but when dealing with robust measures of location, the details have not been investigated. Note that this last hypothesis can be tested with the function `adcom` in Section 11.6.6. How this approach compares to using the function `adtest` is unknown.

Now we describe graphical methods that might be useful when studying interactions. The first simply plots a smooth of y versus x_1 given a particular value for x_2 . So if there is no interaction, and this plot is created at say $x_2 = c_1$ and $x_2 = c_2$, $c_1 \neq c_2$, the regression lines should be parallel. Here, creating this plot is tackled using a simple extension of the kernel estimator (the modification of Fan's method) described in Section 11.5.2. (Many alternative versions are possible and might have practical value.)

Momentarily consider a single predictor x . In Section 11.5.2, an estimate of the conditional mean of y at x is obtained using weighted least squares with weights $K\{(x - x_i)/h\}$. One possibility for extending this method to estimating $m(x_1)$, given that $x_2 = c$, which is used here, begins with a bivariate Epanechnikov kernel, where, if $1 - x_1^2 - x_2^2 < 1$,

$$K(x_1, x_2) = \frac{2}{\pi}(1 - x_1^2 - x_2^2),$$

otherwise $K(x_1, x_2) = 0$. An estimate of the bivariate density $f(\mathbf{x})$, based on (x_{i1}, x_{i2}) , $i = 1, \dots, n$, is

$$\hat{f}(\mathbf{x}) = \frac{1}{nh^2} \sum_{i=1}^n K\left\{\frac{1}{h}(\mathbf{x} - \mathbf{x}_i)\right\},$$

where as usual, h is the span. For the j th predictor, let $u_j = \min(s_j, \text{IQR}_j/1.34)$, where s_j and IQR_j are the sample standard deviation and interquartile range (estimated with the ideal fourths) based on x_{1j}, \dots, x_{nj} . Here the span is taken to be

$$h = 1.77n^{-1/6}\sqrt{u_1^2 + u_2^2}.$$

(See [Silverman, 1986](#), pp. 86–87.) Then an estimate of $m(x_{i1})$, given that $x_{i2} = c$, is obtained via weighted least squares applied to (y_i, x_{i1}) , $i = 1, \dots, n$, with weights

$$w_i = \frac{K(x_{i1}, x_{i2} = c)}{K_2(x_{i2} = c)},$$

where K_2 is the Epanechnikov kernel used to estimate the probability density function of x_2 .

Let \hat{y}_i be the estimate of y based on (x_{i1}, x_{i2}) and the generalized additive model given by Eq. (11.19). Another approach to gaining insight regarding any interaction is to plot (x_{i1}, x_{i2}) versus the residuals $y_i - \hat{y}_i$, $i = 1, \dots, n$.

Yet one more possibility is to split the data into two groups according to whether x_{i2} is less than some constant. For example, one might let M_2 be the median of the x_{i2} values, then take the first group to be the (x_{i1}, y_i) values for which $x_{i2} < M_2$, and the second group would be the (x_{i1}, y_i) values for which $x_{i2} \geq M_2$, and then a smooth for both groups could be created. If there is no interaction, the two smooths should be reasonably parallel.

11.7.1 R Functions `kercon`, `riplot`, `runsm2g`, `ols.plot.inter`, `olshc4.inter`, `reg.plot.inter` and `regci.inter`

The R functions in Section 11.5.14 can be used to get some graphical information about how regression surfaces compare when no interaction is assumed versus situations where an interaction term is included. This section summarizes some additional R functions that might be useful.

The R function

```
ols.plot.inter(x, y, pyhat = F, eout = F, xout = F, outfun = out, plotit = T, expand = 0.5,
scale = F, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = ' ', theta = 50, phi = 25, family = 'gaussian',
duplicate = 'error', ticktype = 'simple',)
```

plots the regression surface assuming that Eq. (11.26) is true and that the least squares estimates of the parameters are used. Because this model is often used, an issue of interest is how the estimated regression surface compares to other plots that are based on a more flexible non-parametric estimator.

The R function

```
reg.plot.inter(x, y, regfun = tsreg, pyhat = F, eout = F, xout = F, outfun = out, plotit = T,
               expand = 0.5, scale = F, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = ' ', theta = 50, phi = 25,
               family = 'gaussian', duplicate = 'error', ticktype = 'simple',)
```

is exactly like the function `ols.plot.inter`, only it can be used with any regression estimator that returns the residuals in `$residuals`. By default, the Theil–Sen estimator is used.

■ Example

A portion of a study conducted by Shelley Tom and David Schwartz dealt with the association between a Totagg score and two predictors: grade point average (GPA) and a measure of academic engagement. The Totagg score was a sum of peer nomination items that were based on an inventory that included descriptors focusing on adolescents' behaviors and social standing. (The peer nomination items were obtained by giving children a roster sheet and asking them to nominate a certain amount of peers who fit particular behavioral descriptors.) The sample size is $n = 336$. The left panel of Figure 11.13 shows the plot of the regression surface created with the R function `ols.plot.inter`. Compare this to the right panel, which is an estimate of the regression surface using LOESS and created by the R function `Iplot`. This suggests that using the usual interaction model is unsatisfactory for the situation at hand. Testing $H_0: \beta_3 = 0$, assuming Eq. (11.26) is true and using ordinary least squares, the resulting p-value returned by the R function `olshc4` is 0.64. The R function `adtest` returns a p-value less than 0.01 indicating that an interaction exists.

The R function

```
kercon(x,y,cval=NA,eout=F,xout=F, outfun=out,xlab='X',ylab='Y',pch('.'))
```

creates a plot using the first of the two methods described in the previous section. It assumes there are two predictors and terminates with an error message if this is not the case. For convenience, let `x1` and `x2` represent the data in columns one and two of the R variable `x`. The

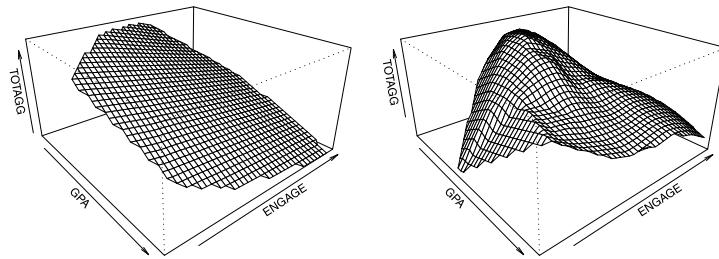


Figure 11.13: Plots of the estimated regression surface based on the peer nomination data. The left panel shows the plot created by `ols.plot.inter`, which assumes that an interaction can be modeled with $Y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 X_1 + \beta_2 X_2 + \beta_3 X_1 X_2 + e$ and where the least squares estimate of the parameters is used. The right panel shows an approximation of the regression surface based on the R function `lplot`.

function estimates the quartiles of the data stored in `x2` using the ideal fourths, and then creates three smooths between `y` and `x1`. By default, the smooths correspond to the regression lines between `y` and `x1` given that `x2` is equal to the estimated lower quartile, the median, and the upper quartile. If it is desired to use other values for `x2`, this can be done via the argument `eval`. The arguments are used in the same manner as described, for example, in Section 11.5.5.

The R function

```
riplot(x,y,adfun=adrn,plotfun=lplot,eout=FALSE,xout=TRUE)
```

fits a model to data using the function specified by the argument `adfun`, which defaults to the generalized additive model given by Eq. (11.19). It then computes the residuals and plots them versus the data in `x`. Again, `x` must be a matrix with two columns of data. Note that the function automatically removes leverage points.

The R function

```
runsm2g(x1,y1,x2,val=median(x2),est=tmean,sm=F,...)
```

splits the `x1` and `y1` values into two groups according to whether `x2` is less than the value stored in the argument `val`. By default, `val` is the median of the values stored in `x2`. It then creates a smooth for both groups. Setting the argument `sm=T` results in a bagged version of the smooths. With small sample sizes, setting `sm=T` can be beneficial.

■ Example

Two hundred values were generated for x_1 , x_2 and ϵ , where x_1 , x_2 and ϵ are independent and have standard normal distributions. The left panel of Figure 11.14 shows the

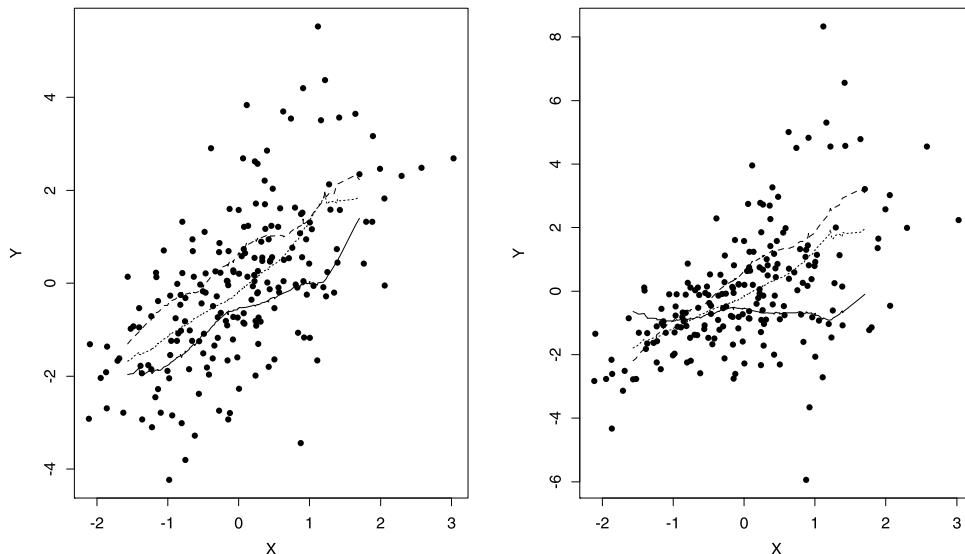


Figure 11.14: An illustration of the plot created by the function kercon.

output from kercon when $y = x_1 + x_2 + \epsilon$. The solid line is the smooth for y and x_1 given that x_2 is equal to the estimate of its lower quartile. The middle line is the smooth given that x_2 is equal to its estimated median, and the upper line is the smooth for the upper quartile. The right panel shows the output where now $y = x_1 + x_2 + x_1x_2 + \epsilon$.

The R function

```
olshc4.inter(x,y, tr = 0.2, xout = FALSE, outfun = out, ...)
```

tests hypotheses about the regression parameters in the interaction model given by Eq. (11.26) using the least squares regression estimator and the HC4 method in Section 10.1.1. Because this method of modeling an interaction is often inadequate, and because OLS is not robust, this function should be used with caution. It is supplied primarily for convenience in situations where it is desired to compare the results based on this standard model to the result based on some other method. To test hypotheses based on some robust estimator, again based on the model given by Eq. (11.26), the R function

```
regci.inter(x, y, regfun = tsreg, nboot = 599, tr = 0.2, SEED = TRUE, pr = TRUE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out, ...)
```

can be used.

11.7.2 Mediation Analysis

This section provides some very brief comments about what is generally known as *mediation analysis*. (For a book dedicated to this topic, see MacKinnon, 2008.) Mediation analysis is similar to a moderator analysis in the sense that the goal is to understand how the association between two variables is related to a third (mediating) variable. (Blends of the two methods, yielding what are called moderated-mediation analyses, have been proposed as well. See, for example, Preacher, Rucker, & Hayes, 2007.) In the parlance of researchers working on this problem, an *indirect effect*, also known as a *mediation effect*, refers to a situation where two variables of interest are associated via a third variable. For example, stress and obesity are believed to be associated through cortisol secretion (Rosmond, Dallman, & Björntorp, 1998). The strategy behind a mediation analysis is to assume that the three variables of interest satisfy three linear models. The first is that two primary variables of interest x and y (e.g., stress and obesity) are related via the usual linear model

$$y = \beta_{01} + \beta_{11}x + \epsilon_1. \quad (11.27)$$

The second assumption is that the mediating variable (cortisol in the example), which here is labeled x_m , is related to x via

$$x_m = \beta_{02} + \beta_{12}x + \epsilon_2. \quad (11.28)$$

And finally, it is assumed that

$$y = \beta_{03} + \beta_{13}x + \beta_{23}x_m + \epsilon_3. \quad (11.29)$$

Briefly, there are four steps associated with a mediation analysis:

1. Establish that there is an association between y and x . This step establishes that there is an effect that might be mediated.
2. Establish that there is an association between x and x_m .
3. Establish that there is an association between y and x_m .
4. To establish that x_m completely mediates the association between x and y relationship, the association between x and y controlling for x_m should be zero.

There are many issues associated with a mediation analysis that go beyond the scope of this book. Roughly, if $\beta_{13} = 0$, this is said to constitute full mediation (Judd & Kenny, 1981a, 1981b). If $\beta_{13} < \beta_{11}$, there is said to be partial mediation. (A possible way of assessing whether the strength of the association between x and y is reduced, when the mediator is included, is to use explanatory power in conjunction with method IBS in Section 11.10.6.)

Various strategies have been proposed for assessing whether x_m mediates the association between y and x (e.g., Zhao, Lynch, & Chen, 2010.) One is to focus on testing $H_0: \beta_{11} = \beta_{13}$.

Another is to focus on the product $\beta_{12}\beta_{23}$, which has been called the *mediated effect* or *indirect effect*. This latter approach arises by noting that if Eq. (11.28) is substituted into Eq. (11.29), the total effect represented by the slope in Eq. (11.27) satisfies $\beta_{11} = \beta_{12}\beta_{23} + \beta_{13}$. (See MacKinnon, Warsi, & Dwyer, 1995, for more details.) Consequently, a common goal is testing

$$H_0 : \beta_{12}\beta_{23} = 0. \quad (11.30)$$

Under normality and homoscedasticity, a bootstrap method for testing this hypothesis, using the least squares estimator, has been found to perform reasonably well in simulations. But under non-normality, or when there is heteroscedasticity, this is no longer the case (Ng, 2009a). Replacing the least squares estimator with the Theil–Sen estimator, Ng (2009a) found that a percentile bootstrap method performs well in simulations when $\beta_{12} = \beta_{23} = 0$. But otherwise, control over the probability of a Type I error can be unsatisfactory in some situations. Biesanz, Falk, and Savalei (2010) compared several alternative methods. But the results relevant to non-normality were limited to a single non-normal distribution that is skewed with a relatively light tail. No results on the effects of heteroscedasticity were reported.

Another approach when performing a mediation analysis is to compute a confidence interval for $\beta_{11} - \beta_{13}$ using some robust regression estimator and a percentile bootstrap method. Briefly, take a bootstrap sample in the usual way assuming Eq. (11.29) is true, which yields a bootstrap estimate of β_{13} , say b_{13}^* . Using this same bootstrap sample, compute a bootstrap estimate of β_{11} assuming that Eq. (11.27) is true, yielding b_{11}^* . Let $d^* = b_{11}^* - b_{13}^*$. Repeat this process B times yields a confidence interval for $\beta_{11} - \beta_{13}$, and a p-value when testing $H_0: \beta_{11} = \beta_{13}$, by proceeding along the lines in Section 11.2. Limited simulation studies suggest that when testing at the 0.05 level, the actual level can drop well below 0.05 when the sample size is less than or equal to 40. With $n = 80$, this does not seem to be an issue.

Zu and Yuan (2010) derived an approach to testing Eq. (11.30) based on a Huber-type M-estimator that is used in conjunction with a percentile bootstrap method. Briefly, their method begins by computing the multivariate measure of location and scatter derived by Maronna (1976) based on (x_i, x_{mi}, y_i) , $i = 1, \dots, n$, yielding say $\hat{\mu}$ and $\hat{\Sigma}$. They then estimate the regression parameters via the method in Section 10.13.5. Finally, Eq. (11.30) is tested via a percentile bootstrap method. (Zu and Yuan also consider hypothesis testing techniques based on an estimate of the standard errors.) The percentile bootstrap method appears to perform relatively well in terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, but situations are encountered where it can be unsatisfactory. For example, under normality with $n = 40$, $\beta_{23} = 0.5$ and $\beta_{12} = 0$, if there is heteroscedasticity in the form where the error term is $\epsilon_3/(|x| + 1)$, the actual level of the test is approximately 0.09 when testing at the 0.05 level. Increasing n to 60, the actual level drops to about 0.056. But with $n = 60$ and a homoscedastic error term, if two additional points are added at $(x, x_m, y) = (3, -2, -3)$, the actual level is

again approximately 0.09. Using instead the Theil–Sen estimator in conjunction with a percentile bootstrap method for testing $H_0: \beta_{11} = \beta_{13}$, the actual level is approximately 0.025. But a criticism of this latter approach is that in various situations, the actual level can drop well below the nominal level. Currently, the best method for dealing with these problems is to modify slightly the Zu and Yuan method. In particular, use their method after excluding any (x_i, x_{mi}, y_i) for which x_i is an outlier among the values x_1, \dots, x_n . Another seemingly natural strategy is to instead eliminate any (x_i, x_{mi}, y_i) for which (x_i, x_{mi}) is an outlier. But this can result in poor control over the probability of a Type I error.

[Yuan and MacKinnon \(2014\)](#) report simulation results when using the least absolute value regression estimator to test Eq. (11.30). They found that a bias corrected bootstrap method performed well in their simulations, which were based on three symmetric distributions: normal, Student's t with two degrees of freedom and the mixed normal given by Eq. (1.2). Good control over the Type I error probability was maintained when there is heteroscedasticity.

[Green, Ha, and Bullock \(2010\)](#) have raised some concerns about mediation analyses in the context of establishing causality. The stated goal in the abstract of their paper is “to puncture the widely held view that it is a relatively simple matter to establish the mechanism by which causality is transmitted. This means puncturing the faith that has been placed in commonly used statistical methods of establishing mediation.” Other concerns and how they might be addressed are summarized by [Cole and Maxwell \(2003\)](#).

11.7.3 R Functions *ZYmediate*, *regmed2* and *regmediate*

The R function

```
ZYmediate(x, y, nboot = 2000, tr = 0.2, kappa = 0.05, SEED = T, xout = F, outfun = out)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.30) using the method derived by [Zu and Yuan \(2010\)](#), which was outlined in the previous section. By default, the functions eliminates any point for which x_i is an outlier. This improves control over the probability of a Type I error when there is heteroscedasticity. Currently, it seems to be one of the better methods when the sample size is small.

In case it helps, the R function

```
regmed2(x, y, regfun = tsreg, nboot = 400, tr = 0.2, xout = F, outfun = out, MC = F,
        SEED = T, pr = T, ...)
```

tests the two hypotheses $H_0: \beta_{12} = 0$ and $H_0: \beta_{22} = 0$, which are relevant to a mediation analysis as explained in the previous section. By default the Theil–Sen estimator is used, but other regression estimators can be used via the argument regfun. As usual, setting the argument xout=T results in leverage points being removed.

The R function

```
regmediate(x,y,regfun=tsreg,nboot=400,alpha=0.05,xout=F,outfun=out,MC=F,SEED=T,...)
```

computes a confidence interval for $\beta_{11} - \beta_{13}$, and a p-value when testing $H_0: \beta_{11} = \beta_{13}$ is returned as well. Again by default, the Theil–Sen estimator is used. For relevant software, beyond what is covered here, see [MacKinnon, Lockwood, and Williams \(2004\)](#).

11.8 Comparing Parametric, Additive and Nonparametric Fits

One way of comparing two different fits to data is to simply compute $m(\mathbf{x}_i)$, $i = 1, \dots, n$ using both methods and then plot the results. That is, if \hat{y}_{i1} is $m(\mathbf{x}_i)$ based on the fit using the first method, and \hat{y}_{i2} is $m(\mathbf{x}_i)$ based on the second fit, plot \hat{y}_{i1} versus \hat{y}_{i2} . So, for example, if data are generated according to a generalized additive model, then a plot of \hat{y}_{i1} obtained by a method that assumes a generalized additive model generated the data, versus \hat{y}_{i2} obtained by the running interval smooth in Section 11.5.10, should consist of points that are reasonably close to a line having slope one and intercept zero. For one or two independent variables, another approach to comparing two fits is to simply inspect a plot of the regression lines or surfaces. This can be done with the R functions regplot, lplot and rplot. The approach described in this section can be used when dealing with more than two independent variables, but there is the issue of the curse of dimensionality described in Section 11.5.10. With more than two independent variables, perhaps both parametric and nonparametric fits are unsatisfactory.

11.8.1 R Functions adpchk and pmodchk

The R function

```
adpchk(x,y,adfun=adrunk,gfun=rplot,xout=T,outfun=out,...)
```

computes the \hat{y}_{i1} values using the method specified by the argument adfun, which defaults to the generalized additive model given by Eq. (11.19) in Section 11.5.13. It then computes \hat{y}_{i2} using the method specified by the argument gfun, which defaults to the running interval

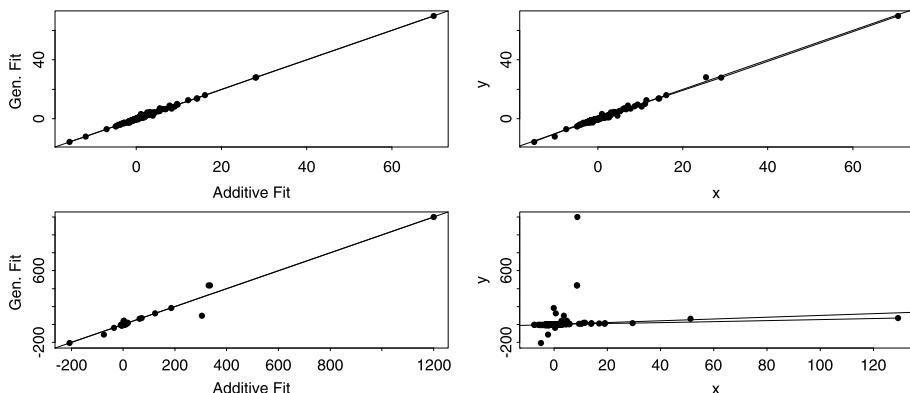


Figure 11.15: Illustration of the plots created by the functions adpchk and pmodchk.

smoother. It is assumed that the function indicated by the argument gfun returns the predicted y values in \$yhat, as is done by the R function rplot. Then the function adpchk plots \hat{y}_1 versus \hat{y}_2 , as well as a straight line having slope one and intercept zero. If the two methods agree, the plotted points should be tightly centered around a line having slope one and intercept zero. Here, $p > 2$ is allowed.

The R function

```
pmodechk(x,y,regun=tsreg,gfun=rplot,op=1,xout=F,eout=F)
```

is like adpchk, only the argument regfun is assumed to be some parametric fit. The default method is the Theil–Sen estimator. The function also plots a line having slope one and intercept zero.

■ Example

Values for x_1 , x_2 and ϵ were generated from a g-and-h distribution with x_1 , x_2 and ϵ independent and $g = h = 0.5$. The upper two panels of Figure 11.15 show the plots created by adpchk and pmodchk when $y = x_1 + x_2 + \epsilon$. (The graph created by adpchk is in the left panel.) In this case the model assumed by the third arguments (adfun and tsreg) is correct and all points are tightly clustered around the line having slope 1. The lower panels show the plots where now $y = x_1 + x_1 x_2^2 + \epsilon$. So now the models, assumed by the third argument, are wrong, and the graphs indicate that in some instances, there are relatively large discrepancies between the assumed models and the more general model indicated by the fourth argument, gfun.

11.9 Measuring the Strength of an Association Given a Fit to the Data

The measures of association, covered in Chapter 9, are not based on any particular regression model or fit to the data. Pearson's correlation has a well-known connection to the least squares regression line, but for the bulk of the robust correlations, there is no explicit connection to any of the robust regression methods covered in Chapter 10. This section is aimed at filling this gap. There are, in fact, various ways one might proceed. The immediate goal is to describe how this might be done based on simple generalizations of the notion of explanatory power, which was studied in a general context by [Doksum and Samarov \(1995\)](#).

Let \hat{y} be some predicted value of y , given the values of p predictors x_1, \dots, x_p . Explanatory power is

$$\frac{\sigma^2(\hat{y})}{\sigma^2(y)},$$

the usual variance of the predicted values divided by the variance of the observed y values. If \hat{y} is based on the usual least squares regression line, and when there is $p = 1$ predictor, explanatory power reduces to ρ^2 , the coefficient of determination. To see this, note that from basic principles, the least squares regression line can be written as

$$\hat{y} = \beta_0 + \rho \frac{\sigma_y}{\sigma_x} x.$$

So $\sigma^2(\hat{y}) = \rho^2(\sigma_y^2/\sigma_x^2)\sigma_x^2 = \rho^2\sigma_y^2$. Dividing this last quantity by σ_y^2 yields ρ^2 .

A robust generalization of explanatory power consists of simply replacing the usual variance with some robust analog and taking \hat{y} to be the predicted value of y based on any regression estimator or smoother. In symbols, let $\tau^2(y)$ be any measure of variation. Then a robust analog of explanatory power is

$$\eta^2 = \frac{\tau^2(\hat{y})}{\tau^2(y)}. \tag{11.31}$$

The explanatory strength of association is the (positive) square root of explanatory power, η . From Chapter 3, there are several reasonable choices for τ^2 . Here, unless stated otherwise, τ^2 is taken to be the percentage bend midvariance, which is computed as described in [Table 3.9](#). Perhaps other robust measures of variation offer a practical advantage when measuring the strength of association, but this has not been explored. R functions previously described that report the explanatory strength of association include `lplot` (LOWESS) and `tsreg` (the Theil–Sen estimator).

In principle, explanatory power can be estimated when using any regression method or smoother. First, compute the percentage bend midvariance based on predicted y values, say

$\hat{\tau}^2(\hat{y})$, compute the percentage bend midvariance based on the observed y values, $\hat{\tau}^2(y)$, in which case the estimate of η^2 is

$$\hat{\eta}^2 = \frac{\hat{\tau}^2(\hat{y})}{\hat{\tau}^2(y)}. \quad (11.32)$$

But a fundamental issue is whether the choice of method for obtaining the predicted y values make a practical difference when estimating η^2 . For small to moderate sample sizes, it has been found that it does (e.g., [Wilcox, 2010b](#)). Two regression estimators that seem to perform relatively well, given the goal of estimating η^2 , are the Theil–Sen estimator when the regression surface is a plane, and Cleveland’s smoother (LOESS), described in Section 11.5.2, when there is curvature.

Section 11.5.3 described an R function, `lplot`, for plotting Cleveland’s nonparametric regression line (LOESS). One of the arguments is `varfun`, which can now be explained. It indicates the measure of variation used when estimating explanatory power and defaults to the percentage bend midvariance. The R function `tsreg`, which computes the Theil–Sen estimator, also contains the argument `varfun`, which again indicates how explanatory power is computed. When using the running interval smoother, what appears to be a relatively good estimate of explanatory power is to first compute \hat{y}_i using a leave-one-out cross validation method ($i = 1, \dots, n$) and then use these values to compute $\hat{\tau}^2(\hat{y})$.

[Renaud and Victoria-Feser \(2010\)](#) compared several other robust analogs of R^2 , the coefficient of determination, which are based in part on a fit to the data obtained via the MM-estimator in Section 10.9.1. Their approach represents a generalization of a measure of association suggested by [Maronna, Martin, and Yohai \(2006, p. 171\)](#). For yet another approach to getting a robust version of R^2 , see [Croux and Dehon \(2003\)](#).

Let $\Psi(r_i; c)$ be defined as in Section 10.9.1. In principle, some other choice for Ψ , associated with some M-estimator, could be used, but the focus here is on the choice used by the MM-estimator. The measure of association proposed by [Maronna et al. \(2006\)](#) is

$$R_{MM}^2 = 1 - \frac{\sum \Psi\left(\frac{r_i}{\hat{\tau}}\right)}{\sum \Psi\left(\frac{y_i - \hat{\mu}}{\hat{\tau}}\right)},$$

where $\hat{\mu}$ is some robust measures of location, taken here to be the M-measure of location associated with Ψ .

For convenience, write $w_i = \Psi(r_i; c)$. The generalization of R_{MM}^2 , suggested by Renaud and Victoria-Feser is

$$R_w^2 = \frac{\sum w_i (\hat{y} - \tilde{y})^2}{\sum w_i (\hat{y}_i - \tilde{y})^2 + a \sum w_i (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2},$$

where a is a correction factor for achieving consistency, $\tilde{y} = (1/\sum w_i) \sum w_i \hat{y}_i$ and \hat{y}_i are the predicted y values produced by the MM-estimator. The motivation for this generalization is that it reduces the bias associated with R_{MM}^2 . Following Renaud and Victoria-Feser, $a = 1.2067$ is used.

Note that when dealing with a quantile regression estimator, as described in Section 10.13.8, a measure of association similar to R_{MM}^2 could be used for any quantile q . Let $\rho_q(u)$ be defined as indicated in Section 10.13.8. Let r_1, \dots, r_n be the residuals based on the quantile regression estimator and let $m_i = y_i - \hat{\theta}_q$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$), where $\hat{\theta}_q$ is the Harrell–Davis estimate of the q th quantile based on y_1, \dots, y_n . (Of course, some other quantile estimator could be used, the relative merits of which have not been investigated.) The strength of an association is estimated with

$$r_q^2 = 1 - \frac{\sum \rho_q(r_i)}{\sum \rho_q(m_i)}. \quad (11.33)$$

Another approach to measuring the strength of the association, based on a quantile regression estimator, was suggested by [Li, Li, and Tsai \(2015\)](#). Let $Q_{\tau,Y}$ be the τ th (unconditional) quantile of Y and assume that the τ th quantile of Y , given X , is $Q_{\tau,Y}(X) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 X$. A method for estimating the unknown parameters β_0 and β_1 , for any q , was derived by [Koenker and Bassett \(1978\)](#), which is discussed in more detail in Section 10.13.8. Briefly, the slope and intercept are estimated by the values b_0 and b_1 that minimize

$$\sum \psi_q(r_i)$$

where r_1, \dots, r_n are the usual residuals,

$$\psi_q(u) = u(q - I_{u<0})$$

and I is the indicator function. That is, $I_{u<0} = 1$ if $u < 0$ otherwise $I_{u<0} = 0$. A correlation based on this regression estimator was derived by [Li et al. \(2015\)](#). They begin by defining a quantile covariance:

$$\text{cov}_q(X, Y) = E\{\psi_q(Y - Q_{\tau,Y})(X - E(X))\}.$$

The quantile correlation is defined to be

$$\rho_q(X, Y) = \frac{\text{cov}_q(X, Y)}{\sqrt{(\tau - \tau^2)\sigma_X^2}}, \quad (11.34)$$

where $\sigma_X^2 = \text{VAR}(X)$. It follows that $-1 \leq \rho_q(X, Y) \leq 1$. The quantile correlation is estimated with

$$r_q(X, Y) = \frac{1}{\sqrt{(\tau - \tau^2)s_X^2}} \frac{1}{n} \sum \psi_q(Y_i - \hat{Q}_{\tau, Y})(X_i - \bar{X}).$$

Here, $\hat{Q}_{\tau, Y}$ is based on a single order statistic, $Y_{(k)}$, where k is $qn + 0.5$ rounded down to the nearest integer and $Y_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq Y_{(n)}$. Any practical advantages of using some alternative estimate of $Q_{\tau, Y}$ have not been established.

It should be noted that $r_q(X, Y)$ is not necessarily equal to $r_q(Y, X)$, in contrast to the correlation coefficients described in this Chapter 9. Indeed, situations are encountered where $r_q(Y, X)$ is positive but $r_q(X, Y)$ is negative.

Li et al. establish that $\rho_q(X, Y) = 0$ corresponds to $\beta_1 = 0$. So the hypothesis

$$H_0 : \rho_q(X, Y) = 0$$

can be tested with techniques described in Section 10.13.9. Another approach is to use a percentile bootstrap method, but simulation results regarding the small sample properties of this approach have not been studied. An alternative approach to measuring the strength of the association when dealing with quantiles is to use Eq. (11.31).

11.9.1 R Functions RobRsq, qcorp1 and qcor

The R function

`RobRsq(x,y)`

computes R_w^2 , the measure of association derived by Renaud and Victoria-Feser (2010). The R function

`qcorp1(x,y,q=0.5, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, plotit=FALSE)`

computes r_q , the square root of the measure of association based on the quantile regression estimator given by Eq. (11.33), where the argument x can be vector or a matrix. Quantiles associated with the marginal distributions are estimated with the Harrell–Davis estimator. The R function

`qcor(x,y, q=0.5, qfun=qest, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro)`

computes the quantile correlation given by Eq. (11.34). The quantiles of the marginal distribution are estimated using the function denoted by argument qfun. By default, a single order statistic is used as described by Eq. (3.10). To use the Harrell–Davis estimator, set qfun=hd.

11.9.2 Comparing Two Independent Groups via the LOWESS Version of Explanatory Power

For two independent groups, let η_j^2 be the explanatory power associated with the j th group ($j = 1, 2$) based on the LOWESS smoother in Section 11.5.2. Here it is assumed that for each group, there is a single covariate. This section describes a modified percentile bootstrap method for testing

$$H_0 : \eta_1^2 = \eta_2^2. \quad (11.35)$$

A simple strategy is to use a percentile bootstrap method. That is, generate bootstrap samples from the j th group, estimate η_j^2 yielding say $\tilde{\eta}_j^2$, repeat this B times yielding $\tilde{\eta}_{jb}^2$ ($b = 1, \dots, B$), in which case a p-value is $p = 2 \min(P, 1 - P)$, where P is the proportion of times $\tilde{\eta}_1^2 > \tilde{\eta}_2^2$. Imagine that the goal is to test at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level, in which case H_0 is rejected if $p \leq 0.05$. Then the actual level of the percentile bootstrap method just described is very close to 0.05 with sample sizes $n_1 = n_2 = 200$ (Wilcox, 2009c). But for smaller sample sizes the actual level is substantially smaller than 0.05, particularly when both sample sizes are less than 100. However, Wilcox (2009c) found that the actual level of the test was fairly stable among the non-normal distributions that were considered, which suggests a simple modification: determine an adjusted level α_a with the goal of achieving a 0.05 Type I error probability if the null hypothesis is rejected when $p \leq \alpha_a$. First consider $n_1 = n_2 = n$. For standard normal distributions it was found that for $n = 30, 50$ and 100 , $\alpha_a = 0.3, 0.21$ and 0.08 , respectively. For other sample sizes, simple linear interpolation is suggested. More precisely, if $30 < n < 50$, use linear interpolation based on n and the α_a values 0.3 and 0.21. For $50 < n < 100$ interpolate using the α_a values 0.21 and 0.08, and for $100 < n < 200$ use the values 0.08 and 0.05. As for $n_1 \neq n_2$, let α_1 and α_2 be the values of α_a corresponding to n_1 and n_2 , respectively. Then the adjusted level is taken to be $(n_2\alpha_1 + n_1\alpha_2)/(n_1 + n_2)$. For example, with $n_1 = 30$ and $n_2 = 100$, this yields, $\alpha_a = 0.249$, which is nearly equal to the estimate of α_a based on simulations, namely 0.24. And the simulation estimate of the actual Type I error probability remains 0.05. For $n_1 = 30$ and $n_2 = 50$, this yields 0.266, the simulation estimate is 0.26, and the level of the test using 0.266 is again 0.05.

A related goal is testing

$$H_0 : \eta_1 = \eta_2, \quad (11.36)$$

which generalizes methods for testing the hypothesis that two independent groups have equal Pearson correlations. When there is curvature, an obvious way of attaching a sign to the square root of $\hat{\eta}^2$ is to use the positive square root if the association is monotonic increasing, otherwise use the negative square root. If the regression line is not monotonic, a possibility

is to attach a sign indicating whether in general the regression line is increasing. For convenience, assume $x_1 \leq \dots \leq x_n$, let

$$S = \sum_{i=2}^n \text{sign}(\hat{y}_i - \hat{y}_{i-1}),$$

and let $I=1$ if $S \geq 0$, otherwise $I=-1$. Then use $I\hat{\eta}$ as the measure of association. (Choosing the sign in this manner has similarities to Kendall's tau.)

As for testing Eq. (11.36), a slight modification of the method for testing Eq. (11.35) is needed to avoid Type I error probabilities well above the nominal level when the sample size is small. For $n \geq 50$, determine α_a exactly as done when testing (11.35). But for $n < 50$, extrapolate using the α_a values 0.21 and 0.08, which correspond to the sample sizes 50 and 100, respectively.

11.9.3 R Functions smcorcom and smstrcom

The R function

```
smcorcom(x1, y1, x2, y2, nboot = 200, pts = NA, plotit = T, SEED = T, varfun = pbvar)
```

tests Eq. (11.35). If the argument `plotit=T`, the two regression lines are plotted (by calling the R function `lplot2g` in Section 12.2.6). The R function

```
smstrcom(x1, y1, x2, y2, nboot = 200, plotit = T, SEED = T, varfun = pbvar, xout = F,
          outfun = out, ...)
```

tests the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.36).

11.10 Comparing Predictors

When dealing with two or more predictors, an issue that has received considerable attention is determining which predictors are best. Numerous methods have been proposed, many of which are known to be unsatisfactory. Relatively well-known methods that have proven to be unsatisfactory include stepwise regression (e.g., [Montgomery & Peck, 1992](#), Section 7.2.3; [Derksen & Keselman, 1992](#)), a related (forward selection) method ([Kuo & Mallick, 1998](#);

Huberty, 1989; Chatterjee & Hadi, 1988), methods based on R^2 (the squared multiple correlation), and the classic F statistic that tests the hypothesis that all slopes are zero. A homoscedastic approach based on

$$C_p = \frac{1}{\hat{\sigma}^2} \sum (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2 - n + 2p,$$

called Mallow's (1973) C_p criterion, cannot be recommended either (Miller, 1990). Another approach is based on what is called ridge regression, but it suffers from problems listed by Breiman (1995). Briefly, ridge regression is not scale invariant. If the scale of the predictors is changed, the ridge coefficients do not change inversely proportional to the changes in the variable scale. An approach to this criticism is to standardize each predictor so that they each have mean 0 and variance 1. Breiman notes, for example, that if the interquartile range were used instead of the usual variance to normalize the predictors, this would give different results.

Breiman (1995) derived the nonnegative garrote technique for dealing with these concerns. For results on a robust version of the nonnegative garrote, see Gijbels and Vrinssen (2015). Yet another method for identifying the best predictors is based on what is called the lasso (Tibshirani, 1996). And a related approach is least angle regression; see Efron, Hastie, Johnstone, and Tibshirani (2004). For a review of the literature dealing with least angle regression, see Zhang and Zamar (2014). Also see Wang and Leng (2007), as well as Radchenko and James (2011). Two alternative approaches, versions of which are described later in this section, are cross-validation and bootstrap methods known as the 0.632 estimator. Efron and Tibshirani (1993) provide additional details regarding the 0.632 estimator.

This section begins by describing methods for comparing Pearson correlations as well as robust analogs. A criticism of these methods is that they do not take into account which independent variables are included in the model. That is, the nature of the association between y and x_1 , for example, can depend on whether x_2 is included in the model, a fact that is not addressed when comparing correlations. Methods for dealing with this issue are described as well.

11.10.1 Comparing Correlations

This section describes methods for comparing predictors via measures of association. Pearson's correlation is considered first followed by methods based on robust measures of association. As previously stressed, Pearson's correlation is not robust, but perhaps there are situations where comparing Pearson correlations has practical value. Many methods have been derived, comparisons of which are reported in Wilcox (2009d).

The first method deals with what is known as the overlapping case. It is based on a slight modification of a method derived by [Zou \(2007\)](#). Rather than use Fisher's r-to-z transformation to compute confidence intervals for the individual correlations, as done by Zou, the HC4 method for computing a confidence interval is used, which was described in Section [9.3.14](#).

For notational convenience, let ρ_{jk} be the correlation between x_j and x_k ($j = 1, 2, 3; k = 1, 2, 3$), where all three variables are possibly dependent. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \rho_{12} = \rho_{13}. \quad (11.37)$$

Typically x_1 is some outcome variable y while x_2 and x_3 are two predictor variables. This situation is often called the overlapping case because both r_{12} and r_{13} involve the first variable x_1 . Let (l_1, u_1) and (l_2, u_2) be $1 - \alpha$ confidence intervals for ρ_{12} and ρ_{13} , respectively, which are based on the HC4 method. Then a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\rho_{12} - \rho_{13}$ is

$$(L, U),$$

where

$$L = r_{12} - r_{13} - \sqrt{(r_{12} - l_1)^2 + (u_2 - r_{13})^2 - 2\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{13})(r_{12} - l_1)(u_2 - r_{13})},$$

$$U = r_{12} - r_{13} + \sqrt{(u_1 - r_{12})^2 + (r_{23} - l_2)^2 - 2\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{13})(u_1 - r_{12})(r_{23} - l_2)},$$

and

$$\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{13}) = \frac{(r_{23} - 0.5r_{12}r_{23})(1 - r_{12}^2 - r_{13}^2 - r_{23}^2) + r_{23}^2}{(1 - r_{12}^2)(1 - r_{13}^2)}.$$

In terms of avoiding a Type I error well above the nominal level, this method performs well. But if all three variables have a reasonably strong association, the actual Type I error probability can be well below the nominal level, even under normality and homoscedasticity ([Wilcox, 2009d](#)). For example, with $n = 30$ and $\rho_{jk} = 0.5$ for all $j \neq k$, the actual level is 0.002 when testing at the 0.05 level raising the concern that this results in relatively low power. This problem persists with $n = 100$. So in terms of computing a confidence interval for which the actual probability coverage is reasonably close to the nominal level, a completely satisfactory method has not been found when using Pearson's correlation.

Now consider four variables x_1, x_2, x_3 and x_4 and again let ρ_{jk} be the correlation between x_j and x_k ($j = 1, 2, 3, 4; k = 1, 2, 3, 4$). The goal is to compute a confidence interval for

$$\rho_{12} - \rho_{34},$$

which is sometimes called comparing non-overlapping dependent correlations. Now (l_1, u_1) and (l_2, u_2) are $1 - \alpha$ confidence intervals for ρ_{12} and ρ_{34} , respectively, which are based on

the modified bootstrap method in Section 9.3.13. Using instead the HC4 in Section 9.3.13 can result in poor control over the probability of Type I error (the actual level can be substantially less than the nominal level) and relatively lower power. The $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\rho_{12} - \rho_{34}$ is (L, U) , where

$$L = r_{12} - r_{34} - \sqrt{(r_{12} - l_1)^2 + (u_2 - r_{34})^2 - 2\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{34})(r_{12} - l_1)(u_2 - r_{34})},$$

$$U = r_{12} - r_{34} + \sqrt{(u_1 - r_{12})^2 + (r_{34} - l_2)^2 - 2\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{34})(u_1 - r_{12})(r_{34} - l_2)},$$

$$\widehat{corr}(r_{12}, r_{13}) = \frac{T1 - T2}{T3},$$

$$T1 = 0.5r_{12}r_{34}(r_{13}^2 - r_{14}^2 + r_{23}^2 + r_{24}^2) + r_{13}r_{24} + r_{14}r_{23},$$

$$T2 = r_{12}r_{13}r_{14} + r_{12}r_{23}r_{24} + r_{13}r_{23}r_{34} + r_{14}r_{24}r_{34}$$

and

$$T3 = (1 - r_{12}^2)(1 - r_{34}^2).$$

When using a robust measure of association, a basic percentile bootstrap method has been found to perform well in simulations ([Wilcox, in press-b](#)). That is, proceed as follows:

1. Generate a bootstrap sample in the usual manner by resampling with replacement n points from (x_{i1}, x_{i2}, x_{i3}) ($i = 1, \dots, n$).
2. Compute robust correlation coefficients based on this bootstrap sample yielding $\hat{\xi}_{12}^*$ and $\hat{\xi}_{13}^*$, the correlation between x_1 and x_2 and the correlation between x_1 and x_3 , respectively, and let $d^* = \hat{\xi}_{12}^* - \hat{\xi}_{13}^*$.
3. Repeat steps 1 and 2 B times and let d_b^* ($b = 1, \dots, B$) denote the resulting d^* values.
4. Put the d_1^*, \dots, d_B^* values in ascending order and label the results $d_{(1)}^* \leq \dots \leq d_{(B)}^*$.
5. Let $\ell = \alpha B/2$, rounded to the nearest integer and $u = B - \ell$. Then the $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $\xi_1 - \xi_2$ is

$$(d_{(\ell+1)}^*, d_{(u)}^*). \quad (11.38)$$

Simulations indicate that when using a 20% Winsorized correlation or Spearman's correlation, good control over the Type I error probability is achieved, even when all three variables have a reasonably strong association, in contrast to the method based on Pearson's correlation.

The method just described can be used for the situation where the goal is to compare the association between y and x_j to the association between y and x_k . That is, there are p independent variables, and the goal is to test $H_0: \xi_{yj} = \xi_{yk}$ for each $j < k$, where ξ_{yj} is a measure

of the association between y and x_j . Simply apply the method just described and control the probability of one or more Type I errors using Hochberg's method or Hommel's method.

The non-overlapping case is handled in the same manner. When using the skipped correlation in Section 9.4.3, the actual level is generally less than or equal to 0.02 when testing at the 0.05 level with sample size $n = 20$ and 40, particularly for the overlapping case.

11.10.2 R Functions *TWOOpov*, *TWOpNOV*, *corCOMmcp*, *twoDcorR*, and *twoDNOV*

The R function

`TWOOpov(x, y, tr=0.2)`

computes a confidence interval for the difference between Pearson correlations for the overlapping case using the method in Section 11.10.1. The argument x is assumed to be a matrix with two columns corresponding to two predictors. In the notation of the previous section, r_{12} is Pearson's correlation based on the data in $x[,1]$ and y . And r_{13} is Pearson's correlation based on the data in $x[,2]$ and y . The R function

`TWOOpovPV(x, y, tr=0.2)`

is exactly like the R function `TWOOpov`, only a p-value is returned as well. The R function

```
corCOMmcp(x,y, corfun=wincor, alpha=0.05, nboot=500, SEED=TRUE, MC=FALSE,
           xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, method='hommel', ...)
```

tests $H_0: \xi_{yj} = \xi_{yk}$ for each $j < k$ and it reports adjusted p-values using the technique indicated by the argument `method`. The R function

`TWOOpNOV(x,y,HC4=FALSE,alpha=0.05)`

deals with the non-overlapping case, again using Pearson's correlation. By default, it uses the modified bootstrap method, which is limited to testing at the 0.05 level. Setting `HC4=TRUE`, the function uses instead the HC4 method, which can be used when testing at some level other than 0.05. As previously indicated, using `HC4=TRUE` when testing at the 0.05 level can result in a loss of power. The R function

`TWOOpNOVPV(x, y, tr=0.2)`

is exactly like the R function `TWOpNOV` only a p-value is returned as well. By necessity, `TWOpNOVPV` uses `HC4=TRUE`, so the results might differ from those obtained with `TWOpNOV` when `HC4=TRUE` rather than the default value `HC4=FALSE`. The R function

```
twoDcorR(x,y,corfun=wincor,alpha=0.05,nboot=500,SEED=TRUE,MC=FALSE)
```

deals with the overlapping case when using a robust correlation. By default a 20% Winsorized correlation is used but any other robust estimator can be used via the argument `corfun`. Setting `MC=TRUE`, the function takes advantage of a multicore processor if one is available, which can be useful in terms of reducing execution time when using a skipped correlation. The R function

```
twoDNOV(x,y,corfun=wincor,alpha=0.05,nboot=500,SEED=TRUE,MC=FALSE)
```

deals with the non-overlapping case. The arguments `x` and `y` are assumed to be matrices with two columns. The function compares the correlation associated with the data stored in `x` with the correlation associated with the data in `y`.

11.10.3 Methods Based on Prediction Error

This section describes two methods for comparing predictors based on the notion of prediction error. The first approach is called the 0.632 bootstrap method, which allows heteroscedasticity. The other uses a leave-one-out cross-validation method.

Imagine that the n pairs of values $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$ are used to determine the regression line $\hat{y} = b_0 + b_1x$. Now imagine that a new x value is observed, which is labeled x_0 , in which case the predicted value of y , based on the original n pairs of points, is $\hat{y}_0 = b_0 + b_1x_0$. *Prediction error* refers to the discrepancy between the predicted value of y , \hat{y}_0 , and the actual value of y , y_0 , if it could be observed. One way of measuring the typical amount of prediction error is with

$$E[(y_0 - \hat{y}_0)^2],$$

the expected squared difference between the observed and predicted value of Y . And another possibility is

$$E[|y_0 - \hat{y}_0|],$$

the expected absolute error. As is evident, the notion of prediction error is easily generalized to multiple predictors. The basic idea is that via some method we get a predicted value for y , which we label \hat{y} , and the goal is to measure the discrepancy between \hat{y}_0 (the predicted

value of y based on a future collection of x values) and the actual value of y , y_0 , if it could be observed.

A simple estimate of prediction error is the apparent error rate, which is just the average error when predicting the observed y values with \hat{y} . More formally, let $Q(y, \hat{y})$ be some measure of the discrepancy between an observation, y , and its predicted value, \hat{y} . So squared error corresponds to

$$Q(y, \hat{y}) = (y - \hat{y})^2.$$

The goal is to estimate the typical amount of error for future observations. In symbols, the goal is to estimate

$$\eta = E[Q(y_0, \hat{y}_0)],$$

the expected error between a predicted value for y , based on a future value of x , and the actual value of y , y_0 , if it could be observed. A simple estimate of η is the *apparent error*:

$$\hat{\eta}_{\text{ap}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum Q(y_i, \hat{y}_i).$$

So for squared error, the apparent error is

$$\hat{\eta}_{\text{ap}} = \frac{1}{n} \sum (y_i - \hat{y}_i)^2,$$

the average of the squared residuals. (For results on estimating prediction error when using the MM-estimator, see [Khan, van Aelst, & Zamar, 2010](#).)

A practical concern is that the apparent error is biased downward because the data used to come up with a prediction rule (\hat{y}) are also being used to estimate error ([Efron & Tibshirani, 1993](#)). That is, it tends to underestimate the true error rate, η . The so-called 0.632 bootstrap estimator is designed to address this problem and currently seems to be a relatively good choice for identifying the best predictors.

The 0.632 Estimator

The 0.632 estimator is applied as follows. Generate a bootstrap sample, only rather than sample n vectors of observations with replacement, as is typically done, sample $m < n$ vectors of observations instead. (Setting $m = n$, [Shao, 1996](#), shows that the probability of selecting the correct model may not converge to one as n gets large.) Here, $m = 5 \log(n)$ is used, which was derived from results reported by [Shao \(1996\)](#). Let \hat{y}_i^* be the estimate of y_i based on the

bootstrap sample, $i = 1, \dots, n$. Repeat this process B times yielding \hat{y}_{ib}^* , $b = 1, \dots, B$. Then an estimate of η is

$$\hat{\eta}_{\text{Boot}} = \frac{1}{nB} \sum_{b=1}^B \sum_{i=1}^n Q(y_i, \hat{y}_{ib}^*).$$

A refinement of $\hat{\eta}_{\text{Boot}}$ is to take into account whether a y_i value is contained in the bootstrap sample used to compute \hat{y}_{ib}^* . Let

$$\hat{\epsilon}_0 = \frac{1}{n} \sum_{i=1}^n \frac{1}{B_i} \sum_{b \in C_i} Q(y_i, \hat{y}_{ib}^*),$$

where C_i is the set of indices of the b th bootstrap sample not containing y_i and B_i is the number of such bootstrap samples. Then the 0.632 estimate of the prediction error is

$$\hat{\eta}_{0.632} = 0.368\hat{\eta}_{\text{ap}} + 0.632\hat{\epsilon}_0. \quad (11.39)$$

This estimator arises in part from a theoretical argument showing that 0.632 is approximately the probability that a given observation appears in a bootstrap sample of size n .

The Leave-One-Out Cross-Validation Method

Prediction error using the leave-one-out cross-validation method is applied as follows. Momentarily omit the i th point (x_i, y_i) and fit a regression model to the data. Based on this fit, let \hat{y}_{-i} be the estimate of y using x_i . Let $e_i = y_i - \hat{y}_{-i}$. Then prediction error is measured via some measure of variation applied to the e_i values ($i = 1, \dots, n$). Here the percentage bend midvariance is used unless stated otherwise, but this is not to suggest that alternative measures of variation should be ruled out.

11.10.4 R Functions `regpre` and `regpreCV`

The R function

```
regpre(x, y, regfun=lsfit, error=absfun, nboot=100, adz=T, mval=round(5*log(length(y))),
       model=NULL, locfun=mean, pr=T, xout=F, outfun=out, plotit=T, xlab='Model Number',
       ylab='Prediction Error', SEED=T, ...)
```

estimates prediction error using the 0.632 bootstrap method. By default, least squares regression is used, but results in [Wilcox \(2008d\)](#) indicate that the Theil–Sen estimator is better for general use. This can be done by setting the argument `regfun=tsreg`. With `adz=T`, the function

includes an estimate of prediction error based on using only the measure of location indicated by the argument locfun. That is, no predictors are used. The argument mval is m, the number of observations sampled when generating bootstrap samples. The argument error=absfun means that absolute error is used by default. Setting error=sqfun would use squared error. Other robust measures of variation might be used as well. For example, error=winvar would use the 20% Winsorized variance.

The R function

```
regpreCV(x, y, regfun=tsreg, varfun=pbvar, adz=T, model=NULL, locfun=mean, xout=F,
          outfun=out, plotit=T, xlab='Model Number', ylab = 'Prediction Error', ...)
```

performs the leave-one-out cross-validation estimate of prediction error based on the regression estimator indicated by the argument regfun.

■ Example

The R function `regpre` is illustrated with the reading data described in the first example of Section 10.8.1. Here we consider how well the first three predictors, stored in columns 2–4, compare when predicting a word identification score (stored in column 8 of the file `read.dat`). Assuming the data are stored in the R variable `read`, the command `regpre(read[,2:4],read[,8],regfun=tsreg,locfun=median)` returns

```
$estimates
  apparent.error boot.est  err.632 var.used rank
[1,]      12.48052 13.36920 13.25599      1     4
[2,]      11.99610 12.74614 12.70693      2     2
[3,]      14.87278 16.12612 16.08528      3     8
[4,]      11.47575 12.51257 12.55914     12     1
[5,]      12.76048 14.33530 14.27367     13     6
[6,]      11.90024 13.24456 13.28122     23     5
[7,]      11.30447 13.30425 13.21919    123     3
[8,]        NA       NA 14.30223      0     7
```

The column headed by `var.used` indicates the predictors used in the model. The entry 12 means that both predictors 1 and 2 were used, ignoring predictor 3. The entry 123 is the case where all three predictors are used. The last column provides an easy way of identifying which combination of predictors produced the lowest prediction error. Here, using both predictors 1 and 2 performed best. The worst model was using predictor 3, ignoring the other predictors. The last row is for the case where all predictors are ignored. So here, using predictor 3 is worse than using no predictors at all, meaning that

one simply uses the median of the y values to predict future observations. Using instead the R function `regpreCV`, the results are:

	est.error	var.used	rank
[1,]	302.4256	1	5
[2,]	248.9536	2	4
[3,]	459.2516	3	8
[4,]	231.9329	12	2
[5,]	308.1499	13	6
[6,]	245.4202	23	3
[7,]	225.8654	123	1
[8,]	403.2488	0	7

The R functions automatically generate all possible combinations of predictors, assuming the number of predictors is at most 5. The argument `model`, which is assumed to have list mode, can be used to analyze only models that are of specific interest. For example, setting `model[[1]]=1` and `model[[2]]=c(1,2,3)`, and then setting the argument `model=model`, prediction error would be estimated when using predictor 1, as well as using predictors 1, 2 and 3 simultaneously, but no other models would be considered.

11.10.5 R Function `larsR`

As previously noted, another method for identifying the best predictors is based on what is called the lasso ([Tibshirani, 1996](#)). And a related approach is least angle regression. Both the lasso and least angle regression can be applied with the R function

`larsR(x,y,type='lasso',xout=F,outfun=outpro).`

By default, the lasso method is used. To use least angle regression, set the argument `type='lar'`. To eliminate leverage points via the function indicated by the argument `outfun`, set the argument `xout=T`. The function returns estimates of which independent variables are best, in descending order. Unlike the R functions `regpre` and `regpreCV`, `larsR` does not provide information about which subsets of variables are best. That is, it does not indicate, for example, whether predictors 1 and 2, taken together, are better in some sense than using predictor 1 only. Rather, it estimates which independent variable is best. Suppose this is independent variable 3. It then estimates which of the remaining independent variables is best when used in conjunction with independent variable 3. And it continues in this fashion using the remaining independent variables. (For results on bootstrapping the lasso estimator, see [Chatterjee &](#)

Lahiri, 2013.) Kwon, Lee, and Kim (2015) note that the lasso can select too many noisy variables and they report results on how this issue might be addressed. Another issue is that the method is based on the least squares estimator raising concerns about robustness. A simple way of dealing with leverage points is to simply remove them. For alternative approaches, see McCann and Welsch (2007), and Khan, van Aelst, and Zamar (2007).

11.10.6 Inferences About Which Predictors Are Best

The method in Section 11.10.3, as well as the lasso and least angle regression methods mentioned in Section 11.10.5, suggest which independent variables are most important. For convenience, momentarily consider the situation where there are two independent variables and note that these methods do not address a fundamental issue: how strong is the empirical evidence that the first independent variable is indeed more or less important than the second independent variable? As previously noted, comparing measures of association via the techniques in Section 11.10.1 does not take into account the impact of including both independent variables in the model. That is, from basic principles, including the second independent variable in the model can substantially alter the association between y and the first independent variable compared to simply ignoring the second independent variable. This can occur when the two independent variables are correlated. If there are three independent variables, is it reasonable to conclude that first two independent variables are more or less important than the third independent variable?

To elaborate on how these issues might be addressed, first focus on the model

$$y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + (\lambda_1(x_1) + \lambda_2(x_2))\epsilon,$$

where ϵ has some unknown variance σ^2 , $E(\epsilon) = 0$, and ϵ is independent of x_1 and x_2 . The functions λ_1 and λ_2 are used to model heteroscedasticity. For convenience, let

$$m(x_1, x_2) = \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2$$

denote some conditional measure of location given x_1 and x_2 . Recall that the numerator of explanatory power (introduced in Section 11.9) is based on some measure of dispersion associated with $m(x_1, x_2)$. Let $m_j(x_j) = \beta_j x_j$, where it is stressed that β_j is the slope associated with x_j when the other independent variable is included in the model. Let η_j^2 be some measure of variation associated with $m_j(x_j)$ over the range of possible x_j values. That is, η_j^2 is the numerator of explanatory power given by Eq. (11.31) based on the slope associated with the j th independent variable. The goal is to test

$$H_0 : \eta_1^2 = \eta_2^2. \quad (11.40)$$

Note that testing this hypothesis can play a role in a mediation analysis as described in Section 11.7.2.

Now consider the linear model

$$y = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2 + \beta_3 x_3 + (\lambda_1(x_1) + \lambda_2(x_2) + \lambda_3(x_3))\epsilon.$$

Let $m_{12}(x_1, x_2) = \beta_1 x_1 + \beta_2 x_2$ and let $m_3(x_3) = \beta_3 x_3$, where β_1 , β_2 and β_3 are the slopes when all three independent variables are included in the model. Let η_{12}^2 be some measure of dispersion associated with $m_{12}(x_1, x_2)$ and let η_3^2 be some measure of dispersion associated with $m_3(x_3)$. To determine whether the first two independent variables are more important than the third independent variable, one can test

$$H_0 : \eta_{12}^2 = \eta_3^2. \quad (11.41)$$

Or in terms of Tukey's three decision rule, is it reasonable to make a decision about whether η_{12}^2 is less than or greater than η_3^2 based on the available data? As is evident, this approach is readily generalized to more than three independent variables.

There is, however, a limitation that should be stressed. While the method in this section provides a valid way of making inferences about the relative importance of x_1 and x_2 taken together, versus x_3 , the method is meaningless regarding the relative importance of x_1 and x_2 taken together, versus x_2 . That is, it is pointless testing $H_0 : \eta_{12}^2 = \eta_2^2$ because it is generally the case that $\eta_{12}^2 > \eta_2^2$.

Method IBS

Based on results previously summarized, a natural way of dealing with non-normality is to use some robust estimate of the slopes and use some robust measure of dispersion, then use a basic percentile bootstrap method. Here, the measure of dispersion is taken to be the 20% Winsorized variance. When using the quantile regression estimator, this approach performs poorly in terms of controlling the Type I error probability. When testing at the 0.05 level, and when the slopes differ from zero, the actual level can exceed 0.10.

Consider the goal of testing Eq. (11.40). Wilcox (2016f) considered a slight modification of the standard percentile bootstrap method that consists of using independent bootstrap samples. That is, generate a bootstrap sample and estimate η_1^2 yielding $\hat{\eta}_1^2$. Then generate a new bootstrap sample and estimate η_2^2 yielding $\hat{\eta}_2^2$. Repeat this B times and use the results to estimate $P(\hat{\eta}_1^2 < \hat{\eta}_2^2)$. Also, rather than use the standard estimate of this probability, the method described in Section 5.7.1 is used, which is denoted by \hat{p} . So in effect, B^2 pairs of values are used when computing \hat{p} . Then a p-value is $2 \min(\hat{p}, 1 - \hat{p})$ (cf. Racine & MacKinnon, 2007b). Extant simulations indicate that now, even when the slopes differ from zero, the actual Type I

**Table 11.8: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities, $p = 2$,
 $n = 50$, $\alpha = 0.05$.**

g	h	VP	$\beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$		$\beta_1 = \beta_2 = 1$	
			$\rho = 0$	$\rho = 0.6$	$\rho = 0$	$\rho = 0.6$
0.0	0.0	1	0.001	0.002	0.022	0.066
		2	0.002	0.001	0.050	0.065
		3	0.001	0.001	0.029	0.046
	0.2	1	0.001	0.002	0.030	0.067
		2	0.001	0.001	0.035	0.060
		3	0.002	0.001	0.031	0.052
	0.2	1	0.001	0.001	0.032	0.056
		2	0.002	0.001	0.038	0.065
		3	0.001	0.001	0.030	0.045
0.2	0.2	1	0.001	0.001	0.035	0.067
		2	0.001	0.001	0.036	0.058
		3	0.002	0.001	0.031	0.051

error probability is substantially smaller than the nominal level, still using the quantile regression estimator. Wilcox found, however, that using instead the Theil–Sen estimator, reasonably good control over the Type I error probability is achieved. Limited simulations suggest that when using the MM-estimator, again control over the Type I error probability is good. As is evident, a similar approach can be used when testing Eq. (11.41). This method is substantially better than a related technique derived by [Wilcox \(2011b\)](#).

Table 11.8 shows some estimated Type I error probabilities when testing Eq. (11.40) and when testing at the 0.05 level and when using the Theil–Sen estimator in conjunction with the 20% Winsorized variance. The sample size is $n = 50$. The independent variables were generated from a bivariate normal distribution having correlation $\rho = 0$ or 0.6. The error term was generated from a g-and-h distribution. Heteroscedasticity was modeled with $\lambda_j(x_j) = |x_j| + 1$ ($j = 1, 2$), labeled VP 2 in **Table 11.8**, or $\lambda_j(x_j) = 1/(|x_j| + 1)$ (VP 3). VP 1 corresponds to homoscedasticity. As can be seen, the Type I error probability is estimated to be well below the nominal level when $\beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$. This was expected because for this special case, there is no distinction between the strength of the association when the slope estimates have the same absolute value. The main point is that when the slope parameters differ from zero, control over the Type I error probability is reasonably good, the estimates ranging between 0.022 and 0.066. Similar results were obtained when the independent variables have a chi-squared distribution with four degrees of freedom.

Simulations also indicate that method IBS continues to perform reasonably well when testing Eq. (11.41), again using the Theil–Sen estimator and the 20% Winsorized variance. **Table 11.9** shows some estimates of the actual Type I error probability, again testing at the 0.05

**Table 11.9: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities, $p = 3$,
 $n = 50$, $\alpha = 0.05$.**

g	h	VP	$\beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$		$\beta_1 = \beta_2 = 1, \beta_3 = \sqrt{2}$	
			$\rho = 0$	$\rho = 0.6$	$\rho = 0$	$\rho = 0.6$
0.0	0.0	1	0.003	0.001	0.028	0.039
		2	0.002	0.001	0.034	0.041
		3	0.000	0.001	0.026	0.044
	0.2	1	0.003	0.000	0.031	0.035
		2	0.002	0.001	0.018	0.025
		3	0.004	0.001	0.025	0.045
	0.2	0.0	0.003	0.000	0.032	0.029
		2	0.001	0.001	0.034	0.042
		3	0.003	0.002	0.028	0.048
	0.2	0.2	0.002	0.000	0.029	0.036
		2	0.002	0.000	0.019	0.026
		3	0.003	0.001	0.028	0.049

level, where now VP 2 corresponds to an error term having the form

$$(\lambda_1(x_1) + \lambda_2(x_2) + \varrho\lambda_3(x_3))\epsilon,$$

VP 3 corresponds to

$$\left(\frac{1}{\lambda_1(x_1)} + \frac{1}{\lambda_2(x_2)} + \frac{\varrho}{\lambda_3(x_3)} \right) \epsilon,$$

$\lambda_j(x_j)$ is defined as in the previous paragraph and ϱ is a constant chosen so that the variance of $\hat{m}_{12}(x_1, x_2)$ is equal to the variance of $\hat{m}_3(x_3)$. (Using $\beta_3 = \sqrt{2 + 2\rho_{12}}$ follows from the fact that the marginal distributions have variance one.) Again, the estimates are well below the nominal level when all three slope parameters are equal to zero. Otherwise the estimates never exceed the nominal level and there are only two instances where the estimates are less than 0.025. Simulations with $\varrho = 1$ (a type of heteroscedasticity) result in estimates similar to those in Table 11.9. Limited simulations indicate that the method continues to perform well when using the MM-estimator, or when dealing with four independent variables.

Method BTS

Yet another approach to comparing two explanatory variables is to estimate the strength of the association based on the Theil–Sen estimator and then use a percentile bootstrap method to test

$$H_0 : \eta_1^2 = \eta_2^2,$$

where now η_j^2 is explanatory power when using predictor x_j . The approach used here differs from method IBS in a crucial way: the slope associated with x_1 is the slope obtained when the other explanatory variable, x_2 is ignored. That is, x_2 is not used when estimating β_1 . In a similar manner, the slope associated with x_2 is the slope when x_1 is ignored. If the correlations have the same sign, one could instead compare correlations as described in Section 11.10.1. The method described here might be of interest when the correlations have opposite signs.

Like method IBS, the standard percentile bootstrap method performs poorly. As the correlation between x_1 and x_2 increases, the actual level of this method can drop well below the nominal level, even with a sample size of $n = 100$. Taking independent bootstrap samples, the first from (x_{i1}, y_i) and the second from (x_{i2}, y_i) , has been found to improve matters (Wilcox, 2011b). Imagine that this is done yielding $D^* = \tilde{\eta}_1^2 - \tilde{\eta}_2^2$, the difference between the two estimates of η^2 . Repeating this process B times yields D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* , which can be used to estimate $P = P(D < 0)$ in the manner already described, which in turn yields the generalized p value. But again, control over the probability of a Type I error has been found to be not quite satisfactory: when testing at the 0.05 level, the actual level can be substantially smaller than 0.05. Some improvement is obtained if rather than estimate $P = P(D < 0)$ with the bootstrap samples in the usual way, a kernel density estimate is used instead, a strategy motivated by results in Racine and MacKinnon (2007b). When computing a confidence interval, adjustments are also made based on an estimate of Kendall's tau for the two independent variables. The method is limited to computing a 0.95 confidence interval; it is unknown how to adjust the confidence interval when computing a $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval, $\alpha \neq 0.05$. In contrast to method IBS, there are no results regarding how method BTS might be extended to more than two independent variables.

Here the adaptive kernel estimator in Section 3.2.4 is used, in which case the distribution of D is estimated with

$$\hat{f}(d) = \frac{1}{nh} \sum_{i=1}^B K\left(\frac{d - D_i}{h}\right),$$

where K is taken to be the Epanechnikov kernel and h is the span. An estimate of $P(D < 0)$ is

$$\hat{P}(D < 0) = \frac{1}{nh} \sum_{i=1}^n \int_{\ell}^0 K\left(\frac{t - D_i}{h}\right) dt.$$

The method just described performs well in simulations when $\rho_{12} = 0$, but again the actual level can drop well below the nominal level when $\rho_{12} \neq 0$. Let ρ_{k12} be Kendall's tau for x_1

and x_2 . Compute a 0.95 confidence interval for ρ_{k12} using the method in Section 9.3.13. If this interval contains 0, let $\tilde{p} = 0$; otherwise

$$\tilde{p} = 0.352|r_{k12}| + 0.049. \quad (11.42)$$

For $n \leq 100$, reject at the 0.05 level if the p-value is less than or equal to \tilde{p} . For $n > 100$, use the p-value in the usual manner.

Method SM

Method BTS can be extended to the situation where explanatory power is estimated via LOWESS, described in Section 11.5.2, when testing at the 0.05 level. Again there are no results on how to deal with more than two independent variables or $\alpha \neq 0.05$. Let

$$\check{p} = 0.25|r_{k12}| + 0.05 + (100 - n)/10000, \quad (11.43)$$

$\check{p} = \max(0.05, \check{p})$, and reject if $p \leq \check{p}$. For $n > 200$, \check{p} is taken to be 0.05.

11.10.7 R Functions *regIVcom*, *ts2str* and *sm2strv7*

The R function

```
regIVcom(x,y, IV1=1, IV2=2, regfun=qreg, nboot=200, xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro,
SEED=TRUE, MC=FALSE, tr=0.2, ...)
```

performs method IBS. The arguments IV1 and and IV2 indicate which independent variables are to be compared. For example, the R commands IV1=c(1,2) and IV2=3 would compare the strength of the association between independent variables 1 and 2 and the dependent variable, to the strength of the association between the third independent variable and the dependent variable. That is, the function would test Eq. (11.41). The argument tr indicates the amount of Winsorizing. The function returns a p-value, estimates of η^2 labeled est.1 and est.2, their ratio labeled ratio, estimates of explanatory power labeled e.pow1 and e.pow2, the square root of e.pow1 and e.pow2 labeled strength.assoc.1 and strength.assoc.2 (analogs of Pearson's correlation), and the ratio of these values, which is labeled strength.ratio.

The R function

```
ts2str(x, y, nboot = 400, SEED = T)
```

performs method BTS, where the argument x is assumed to be a matrix with two columns containing the data for two predictors, and the function

```
sm2strv7(x, y, nboot = 100, SEED = T, xout = F, outfun = outpro, ...)
```

performs method SM.

11.11 Marginal Longitudinal Data Analysis: Comments on Comparing Groups

There is a vast literature dealing with a *longitudinal data* analyses (e.g., [Diggle, Heagerty, Liang, & Zeger, 2002](#); [Molenberghs & Verbeke, 2005](#)). Roughly, the goal is to deal with situations where measures are taken over time. As a concrete example, consider again the data in Section 1.9 dealing with an orthodontic growth study. The measure of interest is the distance between the pituitary and pterygomaxillary fissure, which was measured at ages 8, 10, 12, and 14 years of age. As noted in Section 1.9, the first 10 rows of the data are:

	distance	age	Subject	Sex
1	26.0	8	M01	Male
2	25.0	10	M01	Male
3	29.0	12	M01	Male
4	31.0	14	M01	Male
5	21.5	8	M02	Male
6	22.5	10	M02	Male
7	23.0	12	M02	Male
8	26.5	14	M02	Male
9	23.0	8	M03	Male
10	22.5	10	M03	Male

There are 16 males and 11 females.

Many goals arise when dealing with longitudinal data. And often one of three models is used. The first is a marginal regression model where the goal is to understand the typical outcome (distance in the example) given the value of some explanatory variable, which here is age. The other two models are a random effects model and a transitional model where the covariate effects and the within-subject association are modeled through a single equation. Transitional models go beyond the scope of this book. Indeed, only a few comments are made about a narrow range of problems that are relevant to longitudinal data. From a robustness point of view, progress has been made, but more research in this area is needed for reasons outlined at the end of this section.

A common approach to longitudinal data is to fit some type of linear regression model that takes into account in some manner the time at which measures were taken. A simple approach is to assume

$$y_{ij} = \beta_0 + \beta_1 t_j + \epsilon_{ij},$$

where t_j is some measure taken at the j th time point. In the orthodontic example, t_1, \dots, t_4 correspond to ages 8, 10, 12 and 14, respectively. So a single slope and intercept are used to characterize the association between y and t for the population of individuals under study. A semiparametric regression model for longitudinal data was studied by [Chen and Zhong \(2010\)](#) where an empirical likelihood method is used to test hypotheses. Their simulations indicate that the method performs well under normality, but it seems that a robust version of this approach has not been derived. Recall from Section 4.7 that in the one-sample case, the empirical likelihood method can be relatively unsatisfactory when dealing with heavy-tailed distributions.

A variation of this approach fits a regression line for each individual. [Diggle et al. \(2002\)](#) describe a number of situations where this approach appears to be reasonable. For example, for each participant in the orthodontic growth data, the strategy would be to fit a regression model that relates distance to the age of the child. In more formal terms, assume that for the i th participant

$$y_{ij} = \beta_{0i} + \beta_{1i}t_{ij} + \epsilon_{ij}.$$

So each individual is characterized by a slope and intercept, with the slopes and intercepts possibly varying among the population of participants.

Imagine that the goal is to compare males and females. One approach is to use the between-by-within ANOVA method described in Section 8.6. Another approach is to compare the groups using a multivariate measure of location as described, for example, in Sections 6.8, 6.9 or 6.11. In terms of the orthodontic data, we have four measures for each individual, and so the groups could be compared, for example, based on the multivariate OP measure of location. For the k th group, let $(\theta_{0k}, \theta_{1k})$ represent some measure of location associated with $(\beta_{01k}, \beta_{11k}), \dots, (\beta_{0nk}, \beta_{1nk})$ where β_{0ik} and β_{1ik} are the intercept and slope, respectively, associated with the k th group ($k = 1, 2$). For example, θ_{1k} might be the median of the slopes associated with group k . Yet another approach is to test

$$H_0 : (\theta_{01}, \theta_{11}) = (\theta_{02}, \theta_{12}). \quad (11.44)$$

So the p -variate data has been reduced to two variables, and these two variables could be compared, for example, using the methods in Sections 6.8 or 6.9.

A broader, more involved approach toward longitudinal data, based on a marginal model and the MM-estimator in Section 10.9.1, is summarized by [Heritier, Cantoni, Copt, and Victoria-Feser \(2009, Section 6.2\)](#). Included is an inferential technique that is based in part on appropriate estimates of the standard errors; the test statistic is assumed to be approximately standard normal. Evidently, there are no results on the ability of this approach to control Type I errors when dealing with skewed distributions or heteroscedasticity. In simpler

situations, skewness is a serious concern when using M-estimators and a hypothesis testing method is based on a (non-bootstrap) technique that is a function of estimated standard errors. So caution seems warranted for the situation at hand. For robust methods based on a random effects model, see [Mills, Field, and Dupuis \(2002\)](#), [Sinha \(2004\)](#), and [Noh and Lee \(2007\)](#). The basic strategy is estimate parameters assuming observations are randomly sampled from a class of distributions that includes normal distributions as a special case. For example, Mills et al. assume that sampling is from a mixture of normal and t distributions, which results in a bounded influence function. Certainly these methods are an improvement on methods that assume normality. Again, what is unclear is the extent skewness and heteroscedasticity affect efficiency and Type I error probabilities. How well do these methods handle contamination bias as described in Section 10.14.1? If practical problems are found, perhaps some bootstrap method can provide more satisfactory results, but this remains to be determined.

11.11.1 R Functions *long2g*, *longreg*, *longreg.plot* and *xypplot*

The R function

```
long2g(x, x.col, y.col, s.id, grp.id, regfun = tsreg, MAR = T, tr = 0.2)
```

compares two groups based on estimates of the slope and intercept for each participant. The data are assumed to be stored in a matrix or data frame as illustrated by the orthodontic data in the previous section. The arguments x.col and y.col indicate the columns of x where the covariate and outcome variables are stored, respectively. The argument s.id is the column containing the subject's identification and grp.id is the column indicating group membership, which is assumed to have two possible values only. The regression line for each participant is fitted with the regression estimator indicated by the argument regfun, which defaults to tsreg, the Theil–Sen estimator. If MAR=T, the slopes and intercepts are compared using Yuen's method for trimmed means, which is described in Section 5.3. If MAR=F, the hypothesis given by Eq. (11.44) is tested using the OP estimator in conjunction with the method in Section 6.8.

The R function

```
longreg(x, x.col, y.col, s.id, regfun = tsreg, est = tmean)
```

computes the slope and intercept for each participant, using the regression estimator indicated by the argument regfun, and returns the results in a matrix labeled S.est. The typical slope and intercept are returned as well, which are based on the estimator indicated by the argument est. The R function

```
longreg.plot(x,x.col,y.col,s.id,regfun=tsreg,scat=T,xlab='X',ylab='Y')
```

plots the regression lines based on the R function longreg. A scatterplot of the points can be created with the R function xyplot, which is in the R package lattice. If the orthodontic data are stored in the R variable x, the R command library(lattice) followed by

```
xyplot(x[,1]~x[,2],group=x[,3])
```

accomplishes this goal. To add line segments connecting the responses for each participant, include the argument type='b'. (Spaghetti plots can also be created using the R function spag.plot in Section 6.4.14.) The command

```
long2g(x,2,1,3,4)
```

would compare the slopes and intercepts using Yuen's method.

11.12 Exercises

- For the data in Exercise 1 of Chapter 10, the 0.95 confidence interval for the slope, based on the least squares regression line, is (0.0022, 0.0062). Using R, the 0.95 confidence interval for the slope returned by lsfitci is (0.003, 0.006). The 0.95 confidence interval returned by the R function regci (using the Theil–Sen estimator) is (0.003, 0.006). Verify this result.
- Section 8.6.2 reports data on the effects of consuming alcohol on three different occasions. Using the data for group 1, suppose it is desired to predict the response at time 1 using the responses at times 2 and 3. Test $H_0: \beta_1 = \beta_2 = 0$ using the R function regtest and $\hat{\beta}_m$.
- For the data in Exercise 1, test $H_0: \beta_1 = 0$ with the functions regci and regtest. Comment on the results.
- Use the function winreg to estimate the slope and intercept of the star data using 20% Winsorization. (The data are stored in the file star.dat. See Section 1.8 on how to obtain the data.)
- For the Pygmalion data in Section 11.5.5, use the function reglev to determine which points, if any, are regression outliers. (The data for the control group are stored in pygc.dat, and the data for the experimental group are stored in pyge.dat.)
- Use rplot to plot a smooth of the Pygmalion data using $f = 0.75$ and 20% trimmed means. Create a plot for both the control and experimental groups when the goal is to predict post IQ scores with pretest scores. Comment on how the results compare to using $f = 1$.

7. Based on the results of Exercise 6, speculate about what a nonrobust smoother might look like. Check your answer with the smoother lowess using the R function lplot.
8. For the reading data in file read.dat, let x be the data in column 2 (TAAST1), and suppose it is desired to predict y , the data in column 8 (WWISST2). Speculate on whether there are situations where it would be beneficial to use x^2 to predict y taking into account the value stored in column 3 (SBT1). Use the functions in this chapter to address this issue.
9. For the reading data in the file read.dat, use the R function rplot to investigate the shape of the regression surface when predicting the 20% trimmed mean of WWISST2 (the data in column 8) with RAN1T1 and RAN2T1 (the data in columns 4 and 5).
10. The data in the lower left panel of Figure 11.5 are stored in the file agegesell.dat. Remove the two pairs of points having the largest x value and create a running interval smoother using the data that remain.
11. Using the Pygmalion data, compare the slope of the regression line of the experimental group to the control group using the biweight midregression estimator.
12. For the reading data in the upper right panel of Figure 11.5, recreate the smooth. If you wanted to find a parametric regression equation, what might be tried? Examine how well your suggestions perform.
13. For the experimental group of the Pygmalion data in Section 11.2.2, create a plot of the smooth using $f = 1$ and the function rplot. Recreate the plot, but this time omit the scatterplot of the points by setting the argument scat to F for false. What does this illustrate?
14. Generate 25 observations from a standard normal distribution and store the results in the R variable x. Generate 25 more observations and store them in y. Use rungen to plot a smooth based on the Harrell–Davis estimator of the median. Also create a smooth with the argument scat=F. Comment on how the two smooths differ.
15. Generate 25 pairs of observations from a bivariate normal distribution having correlation zero and store them in x. (The R function rmul, written for this book, can be used.) Generate 25 more observations and store them in y. Create a smooth using rplot using scale=T and compare it to the smooth when scale=F.
16. Generate data from a bivariate normal distribution with the R command `x=rmul(200)`. Then enter the R command `y=x[,1]+x[,2]+x[,1]*x[,2]+rnorm(200)` and examine the plot returned by the R command `gamplot(x,y,scale=T)`. Compare this to the plot returned by R command `gamplotINT(x,y,scale=T)`.

ANCOVA

This chapter deals with what is commonly known as the analysis of covariance (ANCOVA) where the goal is to compare groups in terms of some measure of location while taking into account some covariate. Consider, for example, two independent groups. For the j th group, let $m_j(x)$ be some conditional population measure of location associated with y given x . Given x , a basic problem is determining how the typical value of y in the first group compares to the typical value in the second.

There is a vast literature on the analysis of covariance. For an entire book devoted to the subject, see [Huitema \(2011\)](#). Also see [Rutherford \(1992\)](#) and [Harwell \(2003\)](#) as well as [Ceyhan and Goad \(2009\)](#). Obviously all relevant methods cannot be described here. Rather, attention is focused on the methods that currently seem best in terms of dealing with heteroscedasticity, non-parallel regression lines, non-normality, outliers and curvature.

The classic and best-known ANCOVA method arises as follows. Assume that for the j th group,

$$y_{ij} = \beta_{0j} + \beta_{1j}x + \lambda(x_j)\epsilon_j, \quad (12.1)$$

where ϵ_j has mean zero and variance σ_j^2 and $\lambda(x_j)$ is some unknown function that models how the conditional variance of y , given x , varies with x . So it is assumed that the conditional mean of y_{ij} , given x , is

$$m_j(x) = \beta_{0j} + \beta_{1j}x.$$

That is, it is assumed that a straight regression line provides a reasonably good approximation of the true regression line. The standard ANCOVA method also assumes that $\sigma_1^2 = \sigma_2^2$, called between group homoscedasticity, and that $\lambda(x_j) \equiv 1$, which is called within group homoscedasticity, $\beta_{11} = \beta_{12}$, parallel regression lines, and that the error term, ϵ_j , has a normal distribution. If these assumptions are true, then the groups can be compared simply by comparing the intercepts using in part the least squares regression estimator. But violating even one of these assumptions can render this classic ANCOVA method unsatisfactory in terms of both Type I errors and power, and violating more than one of these assumptions only makes matters worse.

The assumption of parallel regression lines can be tested using the method in Section 11.2, but how much power should this test have in order to be reasonably certain that the regression lines are, for all practical purposes, sufficiently parallel? Also, if the slopes are not parallel what should be done instead? There is a solution based on means and the assumption that the error term within each group is homoscedastic ([Wilcox, 1987b](#)), but one of the goals here is to allow the error term to be heteroscedastic. Also, testing the homoscedasticity assumptions can be unsatisfactory: the ability to detect situations where heteroscedasticity is a practical issue can be poor.

Based on results covered in Chapter 11, as well as Chapter 5, a reasonable speculation is that a percentile bootstrap procedure will provide fairly accurate probability coverage when working with some robust regression estimator. However, simulations do not support this approach. In fact, probability coverage can be poor, at least when $n \leq 50$. An alternative approach, which has been found to perform reasonably well in simulations, is to use a bootstrap estimate of the standard error of $\hat{m}_j(x)$, where $\hat{m}_j(x)$ is some estimate of $m_j(x)$ based on some regression estimator, and then use a pivotal test statistic in conjunction with some appropriate critical value with the goal of making inferences about $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$. Details are given in Section 12.1.

Yet another problem is determining what to do if there is curvature. In some cases it might help to replace x with x^a , for some constant a , but as noted in Section 11.5, this method of straightening a regression line is not always effective. Several nonparametric methods have been proposed for testing $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$ for any x (e.g., [Bowman & Young, 1996](#); [Delgado, 1993](#); [Dette & Neumeyer, 2001](#); [Ferreira & Stute, 2004](#); [Härdle & Marron, 1990](#); [Hall & Hart, 1990](#); [Hall, Huber, & Speckman, 1997](#); [King, Hart, & Wherly, 1991](#); [Kulasekera, 1995](#); [Kulasekera & Wang, 1997](#); [Munk & Dette, 1998](#); [Neumeyer & Dette, 2003](#); [Young & Bowman, 1995](#); [Srihera & Stute, 2010](#); [Zou, Liu, Wang, & Zhang, 2010](#)). Typically they are based on kernel-type regression estimators where $m(x)$ is the conditional mean of y given x . Many of these methods make rather restrictive assumptions, such as homoscedasticity or equal design points, but recent efforts have yielded methods that remove these restrictions (e.g., [Dette & Neumeyer, 2001](#); [Neumeyer & Dette, 2003](#)). The method derived by [Srihera and Stute \(2010\)](#) allows heteroscedasticity, but it is unknown how well it performs under non-normality. There are various ways these methods might be extended to robust measures of location, so far simulations do not support their use, but many variations have yet to be investigated. [Feng, Zou, Wang, and Zhu \(2015\)](#) derived a robust method based on a generalized likelihood ratio test that uses a Wilcoxon-type artificial likelihood function. The method assumes that the usual error term has a symmetric distribution. Evidently there are no results on how well the method performs when this assumption is violated. [Boente and Pardo-Fernández \(2016\)](#) derived a method that deals effectively with curvature that is aimed at testing the global hypothesis that $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$, against one-sided alternatives, for all x in some

subset of the sample space. Their method uses a robust smoother. Their hypothesis testing method assumes that the error term has a symmetric distribution and is homoscedastic.

12.1 Methods Based on Specific Design Points and a Linear Model

This section describes methods for testing

$$H_0 : m_1(x) = m_2(x), \quad (12.2)$$

for one or more values of the covariate x assuming that

$$m_j(x) = \beta_{0j} + \beta_{1j}x.$$

Unlike the classic ANCOVA method, both between group and within group heteroscedasticity are allowed and the assumption of parallel regression lines is not required. Currently, the only known methods that performs well in simulations, when the sample sizes are relatively small, use a bootstrap estimate of the standard error of $\hat{m}_j(x)$ followed by a pivotal test statistic (Wilcox, 2013).

For fixed j , generate a bootstrap sample from the random sample

$$(x_{1j}, y_{1j}), \dots, (x_{nj}, y_{nj})$$

yielding

$$(x_{1j}^*, y_{1j}^*), \dots, (x_{nj}^*, y_{nj}^*).$$

Estimate the slope and intercept based on this bootstrap sample and some appropriate regression estimator yielding b_{1j}^* and b_{0j}^* , respectively. For x specified, let $\hat{m}_j^*(x) = b_{0j}^* + b_{1j}^*x$. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{m}_{jb}^*(x)$ ($b = 1, \dots, B$). Then, from basic principles (e.g., Efron & Tibshirani, 1997), an estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{m}_j(x) = b_{0j} + b_{1j}x$ is

$$\hat{\tau}_j^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum (\hat{m}_{jb}^*(x) - \bar{m}_j^*(x))^2, \quad (12.3)$$

where $\bar{m}_j^*(x) = \sum \hat{m}_{jb}^*(x)/B$. In terms of controlling the probability of a Type I error, $B = 100$ appears to suffice. Letting z be the $1 - \alpha/2$ quantile of a standard normal distribution, an approximate $1 - \alpha$ confidence interval for $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$ is

$$\hat{m}_1(x) - \hat{m}_2(x) \pm z\sqrt{\hat{\tau}_1^2 + \hat{\tau}_2^2}. \quad (12.4)$$

(This is a robust generalization of a technique derived by Johnson & Neyman, 1936.)

There remains the issue of choosing the covariate values for which (12.2) will be tested and then controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors. Of course, there might be interest in specific values based on substantive reasons. Here, two strategies for choosing the covariate values are considered, which are called methods S1 and S2.

12.1.1 Method S1

The first strategy is to pick $K = 5$ covariate values and then control the probability of one or more Type I errors using the K -variate Studentized maximum distribution with infinite degrees of freedom. One strategy would be to pick the smallest and largest covariate values that were observed as well as three points evenly spaced between these two extremes. (Another strategy is to pick the covariate values as described in Section 12.2.1.) Simulation results indicate that fairly good control over the Type I error probability is obtained with sample sizes of 30 when using the Theil–Sen estimator, the MM-estimator, the rank-based estimator in Section 10.13.12 that is based on Jaeckel’s dispersion function, and somewhat surprisingly, even the least squares estimator (Ma, 2015). Ma found that the least trimmed squares estimator in Section 10.4 does not perform well. The actual Type I error probability was estimated to be considerably less than the nominal level and it had relatively low power. Another strategy is to control FWE (the probability of one or more Type I errors) using Hochberg’s method, which was described in Section 7.4.7. With $n_1 = n_2 = 20$, the first approach seems to have a slight advantage over Hochberg’s method (Wilcox, 2013). For $n_1 = n_2 = 30$, Hochberg’s method performs reasonably well, even when using the least squares estimator (Ma, 2015). In general, all indications are that there is little difference between using the Studentized maximum distribution versus Hochberg’s method.

12.1.2 Method S2

A concern about using only $K = 5$ covariate values is that this might not provide sufficient detail about where and how the regression lines differ. In particular, some other choice for the covariate values might have an important impact on power. One could of course increase K , but when using the Studentized maximum distribution or Hochberg’s method for controlling FWE, all indications are that an alternative approach, called method S2, generally offers a distinct power advantage (Wilcox, 2016e). By default, method S2 uses $K = 25$ covariate values evenly spaced between $\min(x_{ij})$ and $\max(x_{ij})$, the minimum and maximum values among the observed covariate values.

Imagine that the goal is to test Eq. (12.2) for each of the covariate values x_1, \dots, x_K . Unlike method S1, FWE is controlled in the following manner. Let \hat{p}_k be the p-value when testing (12.2) based on x_k ($k = 1, \dots, K$) and the confidence interval given by (12.4). Let

$$p_{\min} = \min\{\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_K\}.$$

Let p_c be the α quantile associated with the distribution of p_{\min} . Then the probability of one or more Type I errors is α if (12.2) is rejected for any covariate value x_k for which $p_k \leq p_c$.

Table 12.1: Estimates of p_c when Testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ Level, $n_1 = n_2 = n$.

<i>n</i>	<i>K</i>	<i>p_c</i>
20	25	0.018
20	100	0.019
30	25	0.015
30	100	0.015
50	25	0.014
50	100	0.015
100	25	0.014
100	100	0.015
200	25	0.016
200	100	0.015
300	25	0.015
300	100	0.014
500	25	0.013
500	100	0.016

The strategy used to determine p_c is to proceed in a manner similar in spirit to Student's t test: determine p_c when sampling from normal distributions where there is no association and there is homoscedasticity. This is done via simulations. An interesting feature of this approach is that as K increases, p_c does not appear to converge to zero. Estimates of p_c , based on a simulation with 4000 replications, are reported in Table 12.1 when using the Theil–Sen estimator and testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level. Very similar results are obtained with $K = 10$ or when using the quantile regression estimator in Section 10.13.8. These results suggest that for $\min(n_1, n_2) \geq 30$, $\alpha = 0.05$ and $K \geq 10$, the estimate of p_c is approximately 0.015 when using the Theil–Sen estimator, but there is no proof that this is the case. It is stressed, however, that different results are obtained when using OLS. The estimates are smaller.

There is, of course, the issue of how well the method performs when there is heteroscedasticity and non-normality. Table 12.2 reports some estimates of the actual Type I error probability when testing at the 0.05 level based on the Theil–Sen estimator and the quantile regression estimator. Three choices for λ were used in Eq. (12.1): $\lambda(x) = 1$, $\lambda(x) = |x| + 1$ and $\lambda(x) = 1/(|x| + 1)$. For convenience, these three choices are denoted by variance patterns (VP) 1, 2 and 3. As is evident, VP 1 corresponds to the usual homoscedasticity assumption. Data were generated where both x and ϵ have one of four g-and-h distributions: standard normal ($g = h = 0$), a symmetric heavy-tailed distribution ($h = 0.2$, $g = 0.0$), an asymmetric distribution with relatively light tails ($h = 0$, $g = 0.2$), and an asymmetric distribution with heavy tails ($g = h = 0.2$). As can be seen, control over the Type I error probability is generally good. The main difficulty is that with a heavy-tailed distribution, the estimates drop below 0.025 for VP 3. The lowest estimates are 0.020 and 0.014 using the Theil–Sen and quantile estimator respectively.

Table 12.2: Estimated Probability of One or More Type I Errors, $\alpha = 0.05$, $n = 30$, $K = 25$ Covariate Values.

<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	VP	TS	QREG
0.0	0.0	1	0.050	0.050
0.0	0.0	2	0.041	0.053
0.0	0.0	3	0.032	0.032
0.0	0.2	1	0.032	0.035
0.0	0.2	2	0.046	0.043
0.0	0.2	3	0.023	0.017
0.2	0.0	1	0.041	0.043
0.2	0.0	2	0.056	0.056
0.2	0.0	3	0.032	0.033
0.2	0.2	1	0.032	0.032
0.2	0.2	2	0.041	0.041
0.2	0.2	3	0.020	0.014

TS=Theil-Sen.

QREG=Quantile Regression.

Table 12.3: Estimated Power when Using Methods S1 and S2, $\alpha = 0.05$ Level, $n_1 = n_2 = 50$.

<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	S1 ($K = 5$)	S1 ($K = 25$)	S2
0.0	0.0	0.490	0.673	0.825
0.0	0.2	0.396	0.769	0.894
0.2	0.0	0.455	0.679	0.852
0.2	0.2	0.349	0.742	0.894

To provide at least some indication of how the power of S1 compares to S2, consider the situation where both the covariate and the error term have one of the four *g*-and-*h* distributions used in [Table 12.2](#). For the first group, the slope is $\beta_{11} = 0$ and for the second group the slope is $\beta_{12} = 0.8$. Both intercepts are taken to be zero. Estimated power when using S1 with $K = 5$, S1 with $K = 25$ and S2 are reported in [Table 12.3](#). If instead both slopes are zero and the regression lines differ only in terms of the intercepts, again method S2 has a distinct power advantage.

12.1.3 Dealing with Two Covariates

Once covariate points are chosen, the strategy used by method S2, when dealing with one covariate, can be extended to two covariates in an obvious way. However, choosing covariate points is not as straightforward and the number covariate points impacts the critical p-value, p_c . A simple strategy is to use the deepest point as well as those points on the 0.5 depth

contour associated with the covariate for group 1. However, a concern is that typically this results in using a fairly small number of covariate points, which in turn might result in an unsatisfactory sense of where and how the regression surfaces differ. Another approach is to use the deepest half of the covariate values associated with one of the groups or even both groups. Here, the deepest half is determined by projection distances, which are computed as described in connection with approximation A1 of half space depth in Section 6.2.3. Yet another strategy is to use all of the covariate points associated with one of the groups, which results in a decrease in the critical p-value, p_c . If the regression planes are parallel, this can result in a slight decrease in power compared to using the deepest half of the covariate points. But otherwise there are situations where using all of covariate points can have substantially higher power (Wilcox, 2016e).

Consider the situation where the quantile regression estimator is used, the deepest half of the covariate values are used, and the desired FWE is 0.05. An R function for computing p_c is described in the next section. But execution time might be an issue. To make method S2 more practical when dealing with two covariates, it is noted that using $\hat{p}_c = 0.012$, when testing at the 0.05 level, controls the probability of a Type I error reasonably well, at least for sample sizes as large as 500. For larger sample sizes it might be better to use an estimate of p_c obtained via the R function ancJNmpcp described in the next section.

A concern about the methods in this section, particularly when dealing with more than one covariate, is the assumption that a linear model provides an adequate fit. Methods that allow curvature can make a substantial difference as illustrated by the next to last example in Section 12.3.4.

12.1.4 R Functions *ancJN*, *ancJNmp*, *ancJNmpcp*, *anclin*, *reg2plot* and *reg2g.p2plot*

The R function

```
ancJN(x1,y1,x2,y2, pts=NULL, Dpts=FALSE, regfun=tsreg, fr1=1, fr2=1, SCAT=TRUE,
      pch1 = '+', pch2 = 'o', alpha=0.05, plotit=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=out, nboot=100,
      SEED=TRUE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', ...)
```

performs the robust generalization of the Johnson–Neyman method based on method S1 described in Section 12.1.2. By default, the Theil–Sen estimator is used but other estimators can be used via the argument regfun. Least squares regression can be used by setting the argument regfun=ols. The covariate values, for which the hypothesis given by Eq. (12.2) is to be tested, can be specified by the argument pts. By default, the function picks five covariate values evenly spaced between the smallest and largest covariate values stored in the arguments x1 and x2. Setting Dpts=TRUE, covariate points are chosen as described in Section 12.2.1.

(Earlier versions of this function used the method in Section 12.2.1 by default.) The probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled by using a critical value based on a K-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution with infinite degrees of freedom. Adjusted p-values, based on Hochberg's method and related techniques described in Section 7.4.7, can be computed via the R function `p.adjust` in Section 7.4.8. The arguments `pch1` and `pch2` determine the symbols used when creating a scatterplot. Setting `SCAT=FALSE`, no scatterplot is created, only the regression lines are plotted.

The R function

```
anclin(x1,y1,x2,y2,regfun=tsreg, pts=NULL, ALL=FALSE, npts=25, plotit=TRUE,
SCAT=TRUE, pch1='*', pch2='+', nboot=100, ADJ=TRUE, xout=FALSE, outfun=out,
SEED=TRUE, p.crit=0.015, alpha=0.05, crit=NULL, null.value=0, plotPV=FALSE,
scale=TRUE, span=0.75, xlab='X', xlab1='X1', xlab2='X2', ylab='p-values', ylab2='Y',
theta=50, phi=25, MC=FALSE, nreps=1000, pch='*', ...)
```

applies method S2, described in Section 12.1.2, when there is one covariate only. The argument `ALL=FALSE` means that the covariate values are chosen to be values evenly spaced between the minimum value and maximum values observed. The number of covariate values is controlled by the argument `npts`. If `ALL=TRUE`, the hypothesis given by (12.2) is tested for each of the unique values among all of the covariate values. Again, FWE is controlled using the method described in Section 12.1.2. If the desired probability of one or more Type I errors, indicated by the argument `alpha`, differs from 0.05, the function computes an estimate of p_c with the number of replications used in the simulation controlled by the argument `nreps`. If a multicore processor is available, setting `MC=TRUE` can reduce execution time considerably. By default, the regression lines are plotted with the labels for the x-axis and y-axis controlled by the arguments `xlab` and `ylab2`, respectively. If the argument `plotPV=TRUE` and `plot=FALSE`, the p-values are plotted and now the argument `ylab` controls the label for the y-axis. The arguments `pch1` and `pch2` control the symbol used when creating a scatterplot for group 1 and 2, respectively. If the argument `SCAT=FALSE`, no scatterplot is created.

The R function

```
ancJNmp(x1, y1, x2, y2, regfun = qreg, p.crit = NULL, DEEP = TRUE, plotit = TRUE,
xlab = 'X1', ylab = 'X2', null.value = 0, FRAC = 0.5, cov1 = FALSE, SMM = TRUE,
tr = 0.2, nreps = 1000, MC = FALSE, pts = NULL, SEED = TRUE, nboot = 100,
xout = FALSE, outfun = out, ...)
```

is like the R functions `ancJN` and `anclin`, only it is designed for two or more covariates and it has no option for plotting the regression line for the special case where only one covariate

is being used. In contrast to the function `ancJN`, the quantile regression estimator is used by default.

By default, the covariate points are chosen to be the deepest covariate point and the covariate points that lie on the 0.5 depth contour as described in Section 12.1.3. The probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled using the Studentized maximum modulus distribution. If the argument `DEEP=TRUE`, the deepest half of the covariate points stored in the argument `x1` is used. (A projection-type measure of the depth of a point is used, which corresponds to approximation A1 of half space depth in Section 6.2.3. This is done via the R function `fdepth`.)

If it is desired to use all of the deepest (unique) covariate points stored in both `x1` and `x2`, set `cov1=TRUE` and `DEEP=FALSE`, in which case an approximate critical p-value, p_c , is used when the argument `alpha=0.05`; it performs fairly well in simulations. For other values of `alpha`, an estimate of p_c is computed via the R function

```
ancJNmpcp(n1, n2, regfun = qreg, nreps = 1000, tr = 0.2, MC = FALSE, SEED = TRUE,
           cov1 = TRUE, DEEP = TRUE).
```

This function can also be used to get a slightly more accurate estimate of p_c compared to the approximate value that is used by default. If, for example, p_c is estimated to be 0.011, set the argument `p.crit` in `ancJNmp` equal to 0.011.

The covariate points used by `ancJNmp` can be specified via the argument `pts`. When this is done, the probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled using the Studentized maximum modulus distribution. The function can be used with more than two covariates. But now the probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled via the Studentized maximum modulus distribution because nothing is known about how well estimates of p_c perform.

Some of the functions previously described in this section have an option for plotting the regression lines being compared. In case it helps, the R function

```
reg2plot(x1,y1,x2,y2, regfun=tsreg, xlab='X', ylab='Y', xout=FALSE, outfun=out,
          STAND=TRUE, ...)
```

can be used to plot two regression lines based on the regression estimator indicated by the argument `regfun`. The R function

```
reg2g.p2plot(x1,y1,x2,y2, xout=FALSE, outfun=out, xlab='Var 1', ylab='Var 2',
              zlab='Var 3', regfun=tsreg, COLOR=TRUE, STAND=TRUE, tick.marks=TRUE, type='p',
              pr=TRUE, ticktype='simple', ...)
```

can be used to plot the regression planes when there are two independent variables. The R function

```
reg2difplot(x1, y1, x2, y2, regfun = tsreg, pts = x1, xlab = 'VAR 1', ylab = 'VAR 2', zlab =
  'Group 2 minus Group 1', xout = FALSE, outfun = out, ALL = TRUE, pts.out = FALSE,
  SCAT = FALSE, theta = 50, phi = 25, ...)
```

plots the regression plane where $\hat{y}_1 - \hat{y}_2$ is the dependent variable, assuming that there are two independent variables. By default, the data for the independent variables, which are used when creating the plot, are the vectors stored in both x_1 and x_2 . If it is desired to use only the covariate points in say x_1 , set the argument $ALL=FALSE$ and the argument $pts=x1$. (This function uses the R function `rplot`, which returns a measure of association equal to `NULL`. The strength of the association, based on `rplot`, is meaningless for the situation at hand.)

12.2 Methods when There Is Curvature and a Single Covariate

This section describes several methods for making inferences about how $m_1(x)$ compares to $m_2(x)$, where for the j th group, again $m_j(x)$ is some conditional measure of location associated with y , given x . But unlike the methods in Section 12.1, no parametric assumption is made about the shape of the regression line. In particular, when there is a single covariate, it is not assumed that the regression lines are straight. Furthermore, complete heteroscedasticity is allowed, meaning that the error term for each group can be heteroscedastic, and nothing is assumed about how the variance of the error term in the first group is related to the variance of the error term associated with the second group. The first general goal is to test

$$H_0 : m_1(x) = m_2(x), \text{ for each } x \in \{x_1, \dots, x_K\}, \quad (12.5)$$

where x_1, \dots, x_K are K specified values for the covariate. Methods for testing the global hypothesis

$$H_0 : m_1(x) = m_2(x), \forall x \in \{x_1, \dots, x_K\}, \quad (12.6)$$

are described as well. The general strategy is to approximate the regression lines with a running interval smoother and then use the components of the smoother to make comparisons at appropriate design points. There are many variations of these methods that might prove to be useful, as will become evident. In principle, $m_j(x)$ can be any measure of location. The primary focus is on the 20% trimmed mean, but bootstrap versions of the basic strategy can be used with other measures of location.

12.2.1 Method Y

This section describes the most basic version, called method Y, which is based in part on the running interval smoother in Section 11.5.4. Subsequent sections describe some alternative methods that might increase power or provide a more detailed understanding of where and how the regression lines differ.

First consider the situation where a single covariate value x has been chosen with the goal of computing a confidence interval for $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$. For the j th group, let x_{ij} , $i = 1, \dots, n_j$ be values of the covariate variables that are available. For the moment, assume that $m_j(x)$ is estimated with the trimmed mean of the y_{ij} values such that i is an element of the set

$$N_j(x) = \{i : |x_{ij} - x| \leq f_j \times \text{MADN}_j\}.$$

That is, for fixed j , estimate $m_j(x)$ using the y_{ij} values corresponding to the x_{ij} values that are close to x . As noted in Chapter 11, the choice $f_j = 0.8$ or $f_j = 1$ generally gives good results, but some other value might be desirable. Let $M_j(x)$ be the cardinality of the set $N_j(x)$. That is, $M_j(x)$ is the number of points in the j th group that are close to x , which in turn is the number of y_{ij} values used to estimate $m_j(x)$. When $m_j(x)$ is the 20% trimmed mean of y , given x , the two regression lines are defined to be *comparable* at x if $M_1(x) \geq 12$ and $M_2(x) \geq 12$. The idea is that if the sample sizes used to estimate $m_1(x)$ and $m_2(x)$ are sufficiently large, then a reasonably accurate confidence interval for $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$ can be computed using the methods in Chapter 5. Yuen's method often gives satisfactory results. As is evident, a bootstrap-t or percentile bootstrap could be used as well, including situations where some robust estimator other than a 20% trimmed mean is of interest.

When comparing the regression lines at more than one design point, confidence intervals for $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$, having simultaneous probability coverage approximately equal to $1 - \alpha$, can be computed as described in Chapter 7. When this is done for the situation at hand, the value for the span, f , that is used is related to how close the actual simultaneous probability coverage is to the nominal level.

Suppose it is desired to compare the regression lines at five x values: z_1, z_2, z_3, z_4 , and z_5 . Of course, in practice, an investigator might have some substantive reason for picking certain design points, but this process is difficult to study via simulations. For illustrative purposes, suppose the design points are chosen using the following process. First, for notational convenience, assume that for fixed j , the x_{ij} values are in ascending order. That is, $x_{1j} \leq \dots \leq x_{nj}$. Suppose z_1 is taken to be the smallest x_{i1} value for which the regression lines are comparable. That is, search the first group for the smallest x_{i1} such that $M_1(x_{i1}) \geq 12$. If $M_2(x_{i1}) \geq 12$, in which case the two regression lines are comparable at x_{i1} , set $z_1 = x_{i1}$. If $M_2(x_{i1}) < 12$, consider the next largest x_{i1} value and continue until it is simultaneously

true that $M_1(x_{i1}) \geq 12$ and $M_2(x_{i1}) \geq 12$. Let i_1 be the value of i . That is, i_1 is the smallest integer such that $M_1(x_{i_11}) \geq 12$ and $M_2(x_{i_11}) \geq 12$. Similarly, let z_5 be the largest x value in the first group for which the regression lines are comparable. That is, z_5 is the largest x_{i1} value such that $M_1(x_{i1}) \geq 12$ and $M_2(x_{i1}) \geq 12$. Let i_5 be the corresponding value of i . Let $i_3 = (i_1 + i_5)/2$, $i_2 = (i_1 + i_3)/2$, and $i_4 = (i_3 + i_5)/2$. Round i_2 , i_3 , and i_4 down to the nearest integer and set $z_2 = x_{i_21}$, $z_3 = x_{i_31}$, and $z_4 = x_{i_41}$. Finally, consider computing confidence intervals for $m_1(z_q) - m_2(z_q)$, $q = 1, \dots, 5$ by applying the methods for trimmed means described in Chapter 5. One possibility is to perform Yuen's test using the y values for which the corresponding x values are close to the design point z_q , and control the probability of at least one Type I error among the five tests by using the critical value given by the five-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution. Another possibility is to replace Yuen's method with the percentile bootstrap method and control the probability of at least one Type I error via Hochberg's method or Hommel's method. An advantage of this last approach is that robust measures of location other than a trimmed mean can be used. A bootstrap-t method can be used as well.

Table 12.4 shows some simulation results when x and ϵ are generated from various g-and-h distributions and Yuen's method is used. Column five shows a simulation estimate of the actual probability of at least one Type I error, $\hat{\alpha}$, when $\alpha = 0.05$, $y = x + \epsilon$, $n = 30$, and $f = 1$. The control over the probability of a Type I error is reasonably good, the main problem being that the actual probability of a Type I error can drop slightly below 0.025 when ϵ has a heavy-tailed distribution. Simulations are not reported for $n = 20$ because situations arise where five design points cannot always be found for which the regression lines are comparable.

Column six shows the results when $y = x^2 + \epsilon$, $n = 40$, and $f = 1$. When x is highly skewed and has a very heavy tailed distribution ($g = h = 0.5$), $\hat{\alpha}$ can exceed 0.075, the highest estimate being equal to 0.082. With $n = 30$, not shown in **Table 12.4**, the estimate goes as high as 0.089. There is the additional problem that $f = 1$ might not be sufficiently small, as previously illustrated. If $f = 0.75$ is used, $\hat{\alpha}$ never exceeds 0.05, but in a few cases it drops below 0.025, the lowest estimate being equal to 0.018. Increasing n to 40, the lowest estimate is 0.026. Results in Chapter 5 suggest that even better probability coverage can be obtained using a bootstrap method, but the extent to which the probability coverage is improved for the problem at hand has not been determined. (For more details about the simulations, see [Wilcox, 1997b](#).)

Another positive feature of the method described here is that its power compares well with the conventional approach to ANCOVA when the standard assumptions of normality, homogeneity of variance, and parallel regression lines are true. For example, if both groups have sample sizes of 40, $y_{i1} = x_{i1} + \epsilon_{i1}$, but $y_{i2} = x_{i2} + \epsilon_{i2} + 1$, the conventional approach to ANCOVA has power approximately equal to 0.867 when testing at the 0.05 level. The method

Table 12.4: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities, $\alpha = 0.05$.

X		ϵ		$Y = X$	$Y = X^2$	$Y = X^2$	$Y = X^2$	$Y = X^2$
g	h	g	h	$n = 30$	$n = 40$	$n = 30$	$n = 40$	$n = 40$
				$f = 1$	$f = 1$	$f = 0.75$	$f = 0.75$	$f = 0.5$
0	0	0	0	0.046	0.049	0.045	0.045	0.039
0	0	0	0.5	0.024	0.034	0.030	0.027	0.023
0	0	0.5	0	0.034	0.055	0.045	0.043	0.037
0	0	0.5	0.5	0.022	0.038	0.032	0.031	0.024
0	0.5	0	0	0.042	0.065	0.045	0.059	0.041
0	0.5	0	0.5	0.027	0.049	0.030	0.037	0.031
0	0.5	0.5	0	0.041	0.073	0.043	0.052	0.031
0	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.027	0.041	0.035	0.026	0.021
0.5	0	0	0	0.042	0.071	0.029	0.059	0.039
0.5	0	0	0.5	0.027	0.046	0.021	0.037	0.031
0.5	0	0.5	0	0.041	0.066	0.026	0.052	0.035
0.5	0	0.5	0.5	0.026	0.043	0.018	0.026	0.021
0.5	0.5	0	0	0.044	0.082	0.039	0.060	0.044
0.5	0.5	0	0.5	0.033	0.056	0.024	0.036	0.033
0.5	0.5	0.5	0	0.045	0.078	0.041	0.057	0.035
0.5	0.5	0.5	0.5	0.032	0.053	0.028	0.031	0.023

described here has power 0.828, where power is the probability that the null hypothesis is rejected for at least one of the empirically chosen design points, z_1, \dots, z_5 . If the error terms have heavy-tailed distributions, the traditional approach has relatively low power, as is evident from results described in previous chapters. Even under normality and homoscedasticity, the classic ANCOVA method, described in the introduction to this chapter, can have relatively low power. For example, if $y_{i1} = x_{i1} + \epsilon_{i1}$, but $y_{i2} = 0.5x_{i2} + \epsilon_{i2}$, standard ANCOVA has power 0.039 versus 0.225 for the method based on trimmed means, again with sample sizes of 40. Even when the classic ANCOVA method has relatively good power, an advantage of using a trimmed mean with a running interval smoother is that the goal is to determine where the regression lines differ and by how much, and this is done without assuming that the regression lines are straight. A negative feature is that if indeed the regression line is straight, method S1 in Section 12.1.1 can have more power (e.g., Ma, 2015). There are, however, several ways of improving the power of method Y. How well these improvements compare to methods that assume a straight line, when indeed the regression line is approximately straight, has not been determined.

12.2.2 Method BB: Bootstrap Bagging

An early attempt at improving the power of method Y combines the running-interval smoother with bootstrap bagging. In effect, a nested bootstrap method is used where for each

bootstrap sample, bootstrap bagging is applied. Let $D = \hat{m}_1^*(x) - \hat{m}_2^*(x)$, where $\hat{m}_1^*(x)$ and $\hat{m}_2^*(x)$ are estimates of $m_1(x)$ and $m_2(x)$, respectively, based on bootstrap bagging. Repeat this process B times yielding D_1, \dots, D_B . Then a (generalized) p-value when testing $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$ is

$$P = \frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B (I_{D_b < 0} + 0.5I_{D_b = 0}), \quad (12.7)$$

where the indicator function $I_{D_b < 0} = 1$ if $D_b < 0$; otherwise $I_{D_b < 0} = 0$. This will be called method BB henceforth.

12.2.3 Method UB

Currently, it appears that there are two alternative methods for improving power that perform better than method BB at the expense of relatively high execution time. (Execution time can be reduced substantially when a multicore processor is available.) The first, called method UB, is based on what might be termed an unconditional bootstrap method, which is based on a simple modification of a method studied by [Wilcox \(2014\)](#). The second is method TAP described in the next section.

Rather than take bootstrap samples based on the y_{ij} values such that i is an element of the set

$$N_j(x) = \{i : |x_{ij} - x| \leq f_j \times \text{MADN}_j\},$$

as done by method Y, method UB uses bootstrap samples based on all of the data. That is, begin by generating a bootstrap sample by resampling with replacement n_1 rows of data from (x_{i1}, y_{i1}) and n_2 rows of data from (x_{i2}, y_{i2}) yielding (x_{ij}^*, x_{ij}^*) , $i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, 2$. Let $m_j^*(x)$ be the estimate of $m_j(x)$ based on this bootstrap sample and let $D^* = m_1^*(x) - m_2^*(x)$. Repeat this process B times yielding D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* . Let

$$\tilde{p} = \frac{1}{B} \sum I(D_b^* < 0) + 0.5I(D_b^* = 0),$$

where the indicator function $I(D_b^* < 0) = 1$ if $D_b^* < 0$; otherwise $I(D_b^* < 0) = 0$. Then a (generalized) p-value is $\hat{p} = 2\min(\tilde{p}, 1 - \tilde{p})$.

Method UB chooses covariate values in one of two ways. The first is to proceed in the same manner as method Y in which case $K = 5$ covariate values are chosen. The second approach is to choose the covariate values based on estimates of the quantiles associated with the first group. The default approach is to use the median as well as the lower and upper quartiles,

but this can be altered when using the R function `ancovaUB` in Section 12.2.6. Let \hat{p}_k be the p-value when testing (12.5) and $x = z_k$ ($k = 1, \dots, K$), let

$$p_{\min} = \min\{\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_K\}$$

and let p_c be the α quantile associated with the distribution of p_{\min} . Then a test of $H_0: m_1(z_k) = m_2(z_k)$, with the goal that the probability of one or more Type I errors is less than or equal α , would be to reject for any k such that $p_k \leq p_c$ (cf. Martínez-Camblor, 2014). The strategy used to determine p_c is to proceed in a manner similar in spirit to the derivation of Student's t test: determine p_c when sampling from normal distributions. This is done via simulations for the situation where there is no association. More precisely, generate data x_{ij} and y_{ij} ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, 2$) from a standard normal distribution, compute p_{\min} as previously described and label the result \tilde{p} . Repeat this process G times yielding $\tilde{p}_1, \dots, \tilde{p}_G$. Here $G = 1000$ is used by default and p_c is taken to be the α quantile of the distribution of p_{\min} , which is estimated based on $\tilde{p}_1, \dots, \tilde{p}_G$ and the Harrell–Davis estimator.

12.2.4 Method TAP

By default, both methods Y and UB are based on five covariate values that are chosen as described in Section 12.2.1. A possible concern is that a relatively small number of covariate values is used, which might result in missing important details about where and how the regression lines differ. A simple way of dealing with this concern is to use a larger number of covariate values but this might result in relatively low power when using the K-variate Studentized maximum modulus distribution as done by method Y. When $K = 5$ covariate values are used, in which case five hypotheses are tested, FWE (the probability of one or more Type I errors) tends to be reasonably close to the nominal level. But as the number of covariate values increases, this is no longer the case: the actual level can be substantially smaller than the nominal level, which raises the concern that power will be relatively low as well. In principle, method UB can be used when $K > 5$ covariate values are used, but here a slight variation of method UB is used instead, called method TAP, which has been found to perform well in simulations even when dealing with two covariates.

Method TAP uses an adjusted p-value in a manner similar to method UB. The default number of covariate values used by method TAP is $K = 25$, which are taken to be the points evenly spaced between z_1 and z_5 as defined in connection with method Y. Interestingly, the adjusted p-value appears to be virtually the same when for example $K = 100$ is used. More broadly, as K gets large, the adjusted p-value used here does not appear to go to zero, but rather a value that can have a practical advantage in terms of power due to the more detailed comparison of the groups. However, there is no proof that the adjusted p-value does not converge to zero. Like method UB, a critical p-value, p_c , is determined via simulations assuming normality

and that there is no association. Two main differences are that TAP uses Yuen's test for each of the K tests to be performed, rather than a bootstrap method as done by method UP, and a larger number of covariate values is used. Of course, an issue is whether good control over the probability of a Type I error can be achieved under non-normality as well as curvature and all indications are that it performs very well (Wilcox, 2016e). Another issue is how TAP compares to other methods in terms of power. Simulations indicate that at least in some situations it has a distinct advantage compared to method Y.

Recall that z_1 and z_5 are the smallest and largest covariate values used by method Y, which are computed as described in Section 12.2.1. Method TAP uses K covariate values evenly spaced between z_1 and z_5 . For notational convenience, relabel z_1 and z_5 as d_1 and d_K , in which case the goal is to test Eq. (12.5) for each of the K covariate values $d_1 \leq \dots \leq d_K$. As previously noted, $K = 25$ is assumed but larger values for K can be accommodated. Proceeding in a manner similar to method UB, let p_1, \dots, p_K be the K p-values based on method Y, let

$$p_{\min} = \min\{\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_K\}$$

and let p_c be the α quantile associated with the distribution of p_{\min} . An estimate of p_c is obtained in exactly the same manner as method UB, except that the p-values p_1, \dots, p_K are based on Yuen's method rather than a percentile bootstrap method. Then a test of H_0 : $m_1(d_k) = m_2(d_k)$ for each $k = 1, \dots, K$, with the goal that the probability of one or more Type I errors is less than or equal α , can be performed: reject for any k such that $p_k \leq p_c$.

To provide at least some perspective, imagine that method Y is applied with $K = 25$ covariate values. Even with infinite degrees of freedom, in effect each test is performed at the 0.002 level. In contrast, with sample sizes $n_1 = n_2 = 30$, method TAP performs each test at the $p_c = 0.008$ level. (The simulation estimate of p_c was based on 5000 replications.) For $K = 100$, again using TAP, each test is performed at the $p_c = 0.007$ level. Here are some estimates of p_c when $n_1 = n_2 = n$:

n	p_c								
30	0.00824	50	0.00581	60	0.00544	70	0.00550	80	0.00476
100	0.00417	150	0.00441	200	0.00441	300	0.00381	400	0.00365
500	0.00345	600	0.00363	700	0.00337	800	0.00335		

12.2.5 Method G

The method in this section is like method Y, only it tests the global hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6). By default, it is based on the same $K = 5$ covariate values used by method Y. The method can have more power than method Y, but based on limited results, it does not appear

to have a striking advantage over methods BB, UB and TAP. (For relevant simulation results, see Wilcox, 2016a.)

Let $\hat{\theta}_{jk}$ be some location estimator based on the y_{ij} values for which $i \in N_j(x_k)$. Let $\hat{\delta}_k = \hat{\theta}_{1k} - \hat{\theta}_{2k}$ and let δ_k denote the population analog of $\hat{\delta}_k$ ($k = 1, \dots, K$). Then the global hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6) corresponds to

$$H_0 : \delta_1 = \delta_2 = \dots = \delta_K = 0. \quad (12.8)$$

The basic strategy for testing (12.8) is to generate bootstrap samples from each group, compute $\hat{\delta}_k$ based on these bootstrap samples, repeat this B times, and then measure how deeply the null vector $\mathbf{0}$ is nested in the bootstrap cloud of points via Mahalanobis distance.

To elaborate, let (x_{ij}^*, y_{ij}^*) be a bootstrap sample from the j th group, which is obtained by resampling with replacement n_j pairs of points from (x_{ij}, y_{ij}) ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$; $j = 1, 2$). Let $\hat{\delta}_k^*$ be the estimate of δ_k based on the bootstrap samples from the two groups. Repeat this process B times yielding $\hat{\Delta}_b^* = (\hat{\delta}_{1b}^*, \dots, \hat{\delta}_{pb}^*)$, $b = 1, \dots, B$. Let \mathbf{S} be the covariance matrix based on the B vectors $\hat{\Delta}_1^*, \dots, \hat{\Delta}_B^*$. Note that the center of the bootstrap cloud being estimated by these B bootstrap samples is known. It is $\hat{\Delta} = (\hat{\delta}_1, \dots, \hat{\delta}_K)$, the estimate of $\Delta = (\delta_1, \dots, \delta_p)$ based on the (x_{ij}, y_{ij}) values. Let

$$d_b^2 = (\hat{\Delta}_b^* - \hat{\Delta})\mathbf{S}^{-1}(\hat{\Delta}_b^* - \hat{\Delta})',$$

where for $b = 0$, $\hat{\Delta}_0^*$ is taken to be the null vector $\mathbf{0}$. Then a (generalized) p-value is

$$\frac{1}{B} \sum_{b=1}^B I(d_0^2 \leq d_b^2), \quad (12.9)$$

where the indicator function $I(d_0^2 \leq d_b^2) = 1$ if $d_0^2 \leq d_b^2$; otherwise $I(d_0^2 \leq d_b^2) = 0$.

The obvious decision rule is to reject the null hypothesis if the p-value is less than or equal to the nominal level. When testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level, simulations indicate that this approach performs well, in term of controlling the Type I error probability, when $K = 3$ and the x_k values are taken to be the quartiles corresponding to the x_{i1} values. But when $K = 5$ and the x_k values are chosen as described in connection with method Y, the actual level can exceed 0.075 when testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ level with $n_1 = n_2 = 30$. This problem persists with $n_1 = n_2 = 50$. However, Wilcox found that the actual level is relatively stable among the situations considered in simulations. This suggests using a strategy similar to Gosset's (Student's) approach to comparing means: Assume normality, determine an appropriate critical value using a reasonable test statistic, and continue using this critical value when dealing with non-normal distributions.

Given n_1 and n_2 , this strategy is implemented by first generating, for each j , n_j pairs of observations from a bivariate normal distribution having a correlation $\rho = 0$. Based on this generated data, determine $K = 5$ values of the covariate as done in connection with method Y and then compute the p-value given by (12.9). Denote this p-value by \hat{p} . Repeat this process A times yielding $\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_A$. Then an α level critical p-value, say \hat{p}_c , is taken to be the α quantile of the $\hat{p}_1, \dots, \hat{p}_A$ values, which here is estimated via the Harrell–Davis estimator. That is, letting p_o denote the p-value based on (12.9), reject (12.8) if $p_o \leq \hat{p}_c$.

Note that once p_c has been determined, a $1 - \alpha$ confidence region for $\Delta = (\delta_1, \dots, \delta_K)$ can be computed. A confidence region consists of the convex hull containing the $(1 - \hat{p}_c)B$ $\hat{\Delta}_b$ vectors that have the smallest d_b^2 values. This confidence region provides a perspective on why the global test considered here can have more power than method Y. Situations are encountered where the null vector is not contained in the confidence region, yet the confidence intervals for each of the K differences contain zero.

A possible appeal of method G is that it can have more power than method Y, sometimes substantially so, but it does not dominate in terms of maximizing power (Wilcox, 2016c). Consider, for example, the situation where $n_1 = n_2 = 50$, both x and the error term have standard normal distributions. If for the first group $\beta_1 = \beta_0 = 0$, while for the second group $y = 0.5 + \epsilon$, method G has power approximately equal to 0.51 when using a 20% trimmed mean, while for method Y the probability of detecting one or more true differences is 0.38. Using method BB instead, the probability of detecting one or more true differences is 0.46. However, at least in some situations, method UB can have more power than methods G and BB. For the situation at hand, but with $y = x + \epsilon$ for the second group, the power of methods G, BB and UB is approximately 0.65, 0.69 and 0.84, respectively. If method UB is used in conjunction with adjusted p-values via Hochberg’s method, rather than using the critical p-value \hat{p}_c , power is 0.69. So based on very limited information, a speculation is that method UB might tend to have the higher power than methods Y and BB. But the extent this is the case needs further research.

When the hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6) is rejected, a reasonable decision rule is to reject $H_0: m_1(x_k) = m_2(x_k)$ corresponding to the smallest p-value. However, this leaves open the issue of whether the null hypothesis can be rejected for other covariate values of interest. So an argument might be that methods BB, UB and TAP are better for general use.

12.2.6 R Functions *ancova*, *ancovaWMW*, *ancpb*, *rplot2g*, *runmean2g*, *lplot2g*, *ancdifplot*, *ancboot*, *ancbbpb*, *qhds2g*, *ancovaUB*, *ancovaUB.pv*, *ancdet*, *ancmng1* and *ancGLOB*

Several R functions are supplied with the hope that one of them matches the needs of the reader when dealing with ANCOVA. The first is

```
ancova(x1,y1,x2,y2, fr1=1, fr2=1, tr=0.2, alpha=0.05, plotit=T, pts=NA, sm=F, xout=F,
       outfun=out, LP=TRUE, ...)
```

which compares trimmed means using Method Y in Section 12.2.1. The data for group 1 are stored in *x1* and *y1*, and for group two they are stored in *x2* and *y2*. The arguments *fr1* and *fr2* are the values of *f* (the span) for the first and second group, respectively, that are used by the running interval smoother, which default to 1 if unspecified. If the degree of curvature is sufficiently high, setting the spans to 0.8 might improve the control over the Type I error probability as illustrated in Table 12.4. The argument *tr* is the amount of trimming which defaults to 0.2. The default value for the argument *alpha* (α), the probability of at least one Type I error, is 0.05. If the argument *pts*=NA, five design points are chosen as described in connection with method Y in the previous section. The results are returned in the matrix *ancova\$output*, as illustrated in the next example. If values are stored in *pts*, the function compares groups at the values specified. So if *pts* contains the values 5, 8 and 12, the function will test H_0 : $m_1(x) = m_2(x)$ at $x = 5, 8$ and 12 , and it controls the probability of a Type I error by determining a critical value based on the Studentized maximum modulus distribution (as described in Chapter 7). When *plotit*=T, the function creates a scatterplot and smooth for both groups by calling the function

```
runmean2g(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr = 0.8, est = tmean, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', SCAT = TRUE,
           sm = FALSE, nboot = 40, SEED = TRUE, eout = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out,
           LP = TRUE, pch1 = '*', pch2 = '+', ...).
```

(The R function *rplot2g* can be used in place of *runmean2g*.) The smooth for the first group is indicated by a solid line and a dashed line is used for the other. Setting the argument *sm*=T results in using a bagged version of the smooth, which can be useful when the sample size is small. More precisely, a running interval smoother can be a bit ragged looking. Setting *LP*=TRUE means that the initial smooth is smoothed again using LOESS. Currently, this seems to be more satisfactory than using bootstrap bagging. If the argument *xout*=TRUE, leverage points are removed when plotting the regression lines. The arguments *pch1* and *pch2* control the symbol used when creating a scatterplot. For example, *pch1*='o' indicates that points associated with the data in *x1* and *y1* will be indicated by an o.

The function

```
ancovaWMW(x1,y1,x2,y2, fr1=1, fr2=1, alpha=0.05, plotit=TRUE, pts=NA, xout=FALSE,
            outfun=out, LP=TRUE, sm=FALSE, est=hd, ...)
```

is like the function *ancova*, only it compares groups in terms of the likelihood that a randomly sampled observation from the first group is less than a random sampled observation from the

second group. This is done via Cliff's method in Section 5.7.2, which represents an improvement on the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test. The argument est indicates which measure of location will be used when plotting the regression lines.

The R function

```
ancovaUB(x1=NULL, y1=NULL, x2=NULL, y2=NULL, fr1=1, fr2=1, p.crit=NULL,
  padj=FALSE, pr=TRUE, method='hochberg', FAST=TRUE, est=tmean, alpha=0.05,
  plotit=TRUE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', pts=NULL, qpts=FALSE, qvals=c(0.25,0.5,0.75),
  sm=FALSE, xout=FALSE, eout=FALSE, outfun=out, LP=TRUE, nboot=500, SEED=TRUE,
  nreps=2000, MC=FALSE, nmin=12, q=0.5, SCAT=TRUE, pch1='*', pch2='+', ...)
```

applies method UB. By default, FAST=TRUE, meaning that the critical p-value, \hat{p}_c , will be computed quickly if in addition the argument alpha=0.05. Otherwise \hat{p}_c must be estimated via a simulation, which can require a relatively high execution time. The argument nreps controls how many replications are used when computing \hat{p}_c . Setting the argument MC=TRUE can reduce execution time considerably if a multicore processor is available. The function ancovaUB determines the critical p-value, p_c , by calling the function

```
ancovaUB.pv(n1,n2, nreps=2000, MC=FALSE, qpts=FALSE, qvals = c(0.25, 0.5, 0.75),
  nboot=500, SEED=TRUE, est=tmean, alpha=0.05).
```

The value of \hat{p}_c depends only on the sample sizes, so once it is known it can be specified via the argument p.crit. If the argument qpts=TRUE, the covariate points are chosen to be the quantiles associated with the data in x1; the quantiles used are controlled by the argument qvals. If qpts=FALSE, the covariate values are chosen as done by method Y in Section 12.2.1.

If the argument padj=TRUE, the function reports adjusted p-values using the method indicated by the argument method. Hochberg's method is used by default. Hommel's method can be used by setting the argument method='hommel.' A possible appeal of using padj=TRUE is that execution time is very low when the goal is to test hypotheses at some level other than 0.05, but power might be reduced. If qpts=TRUE, covariate values are chosen based on the quantiles indicated by the argument qvals in conjunction with the data in the argument x1.

The R function

```
ancdet(x1,y1,x2,y2,fr1=1,fr2=1,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,plotit=TRUE,plot.dif=FALSE,
  pts=NA,sm=FALSE,pr=TRUE,xout=FALSE,outfun=out,MC=FALSE,
  npts=25,p.crit=NULL,nreps=5000,SEED=TRUE,EST=FALSE,SCAT=TRUE,
  xlab='X',ylab='Y',pch1='*',pch2='+',...)
```

applies method TAP. The argument npts indicates how many covariate values will be used, which defaults to 25. With plotit=TRUE, the function plots a smooth for both regression lines. Setting plot.dif=TRUE, the function plots the difference between the regression lines, $\hat{m}_1(x) - \hat{m}_2(x)$, based on the covariate values that were used. A confidence band is also plotted based on the adjusted p-value, \hat{p}_c . That is, the simultaneous probability coverage among the K confidence intervals is approximately $1 - \alpha$, where α is specified via the argument alpha, defaults to 0.05. The value of \hat{p}_c can be indicated via the argument p.crit. If not specified, the function determines \hat{p}_c in the following manner. When the argument EST=FALSE, and if the argument alpha=0.05, \hat{p}_c is approximated using a smooth (LOESS) in conjunction with values reported at the end of Section 12.2.4. (Two estimates of \hat{p}_c are computed based on the smooth. The first estimate is based on $1/n_1$, the second is based on $1/n_2$, and the results are averaged.) If EST=TRUE, or alpha differs from 0.05, a simulation estimate of \hat{p}_c is used where the number of replications is controlled by the argument nreps. Setting MC=TRUE can reduce execution if a multicore processor is available. The confidence intervals that are returned are adjusted so that the simultaneous probability coverage is approximately equal to alpha. The last column of the output indicates whether a significant result is obtained based on the corresponding confidence interval.

■ Example

Data from the Well Elderly 2 study, described in Section 11.1.5, are used to illustrate the R functions described in this section. Of particular interest is how the results compare to a method that assumes the usual linear model where the least squares regression estimator is used. After six months of intervention, one of the goals was to compare males and females in terms of a life satisfaction measure (SF36) using the cortisol awakening response as a covariate. First, suppose the groups are compared using method S1 in Section 12.1.1 using the least squares regression estimator. Assuming that the data for males are stored in x1 and y1, and the data for females are stored in x2 and y2, this was accomplished with the command

```
ancJN(x1,y1,x2,y2, xout=T, outfun=outbox, xlab='CAR',ylab='SF36', plotit=T,
      regfun=ols)
```

which performs the heteroscedastic method in Section 12.1 using the least squares regression estimator with leverage points removed. Here is a portion of the output:

```
$output
    X     Est1     Est2      DIF      TEST      se    ci.low
[1,] -0.32160000 47.47286 40.78677 6.6860850 2.4272872 2.754550 -0.3931095
[2,] -0.14490072 45.75017 40.79015 4.9600156 2.8930128 1.714481  0.5537994
```

```
[3,] -0.01307176 44.46493 40.79267 3.6722575 2.4353167 1.507918 -0.2030914
[4,] 0.08277492 43.53049 40.79451 2.7359887 1.5076466 1.814741 -1.9278967
[5,] 0.26549698 41.74909 40.79800 0.9510864 0.3216437 2.956956 -6.6482914
      ci.hi      p.value
[1,] 13.765279 0.015212206
[2,] 9.366232 0.003815657
[3,] 7.547606 0.014878761
[4,] 7.399874 0.131644995
[5,] 8.550464 0.747722624
```

So based on the confidence intervals, and assuming a linear model, a significant result is obtained at the 0.05 level for one covariate value only, namely the second value, -0.14490072 . As can be seen, the corresponding p-value is 0.0038. The adjusted p-value (via the R function `p.adjust` using Hochberg's method) is 0.019. All of the other four adjusted p-values are greater than 0.059. The left panel of [Figure 12.1](#) shows the plot created by the function `ancJN` where the solid line is the regression line for males. Using instead the Theil-Sen estimator, a significant result is obtained for the first four covariate values.

Now the groups are compared using method UB in Section [12.2.3](#) by setting the argument `padj=TRUE` when using the R function `ancovaUB`. Here are the results:

```
$output
      X      p.values p.adjusted
[1,] -0.32160000 0.009029345 0.02708804
[2,] -0.14490072 0.000000000 0.000000000
[3,] -0.01307176 0.004000000 0.016000000
[4,]  0.08277492 0.088000000 0.176000000
[5,]  0.26549698 0.952380952 0.952380952
```

So for the first three covariate values, a significant result is obtained at the 0.05 level, in contrast to the results based on the least squares estimator. From the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, decide that for the negative CAR values, males have higher SF36 scores compared to females. For the positive CAR values, no decision is made. The right panel of [Figure 12.1](#) shows the plot created by `ancovaUB`. Note that compared to the left panel, this plot gives a decidedly different impression about the nature of the association for males. For CAR negative, the two regression lines in the right panel appear to be nearly parallel. But when the CAR is greater than zero, differences between the two regression lines diminish as the CAR increases. Method TAP, applied via the R function `ancdet`, indicates a significant difference for CAR values ranging between -0.32 to -0.077 .

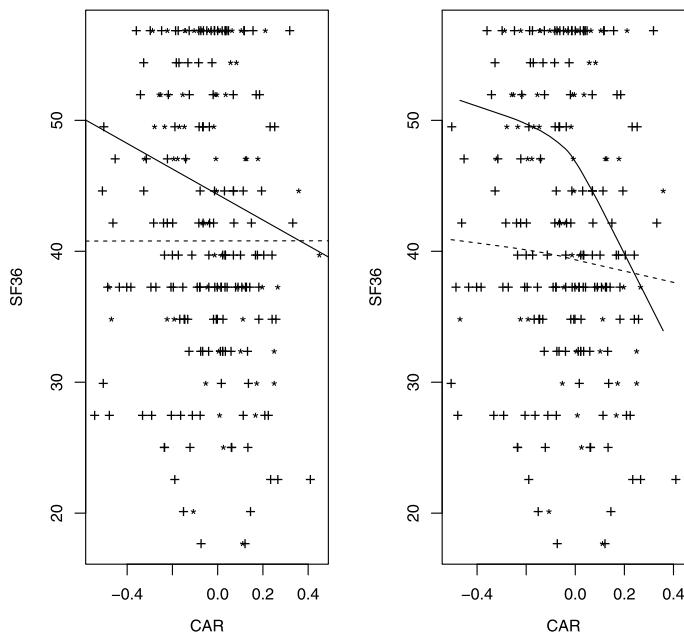


Figure 12.1: The left panel shows the plot returned by `ancJN` when using the least squares regression estimator. The solid regression line corresponds to males. The right panel shows the plot returned by `ancovaV2` based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. In contrast to the left panel, the nature of the association for males appears to change rather abruptly approximately where CAR is zero.

■ Example

The last example in Section 11.2.2 dealt with the Well Elderly 2 study where the goal was to compare a control group to an intervention group based on a measure of meaningful activities (MAPA) and the cortisol awakening response (CAR). Two analyses were reported each using two independent groups of participants. The first analysis indicated crossing regression lines, assuming that the regression lines are straight. The second analysis, essentially aimed at determining the extent to which the first analysis can be replicated, found that the regression lines do not cross. Indeed, the regression lines appear to be virtually parallel. Figure 12.2 shows a smooth using the data from this latter situation. The output from the R function `ancdet` indicates that MAPA scores differ significantly for CAR values between -0.13 and 0.048 . That is, using a method that deals with curvature in a relatively flexible manner, significant differences are found, in contrast to an analysis that assumes the regression lines are straight.

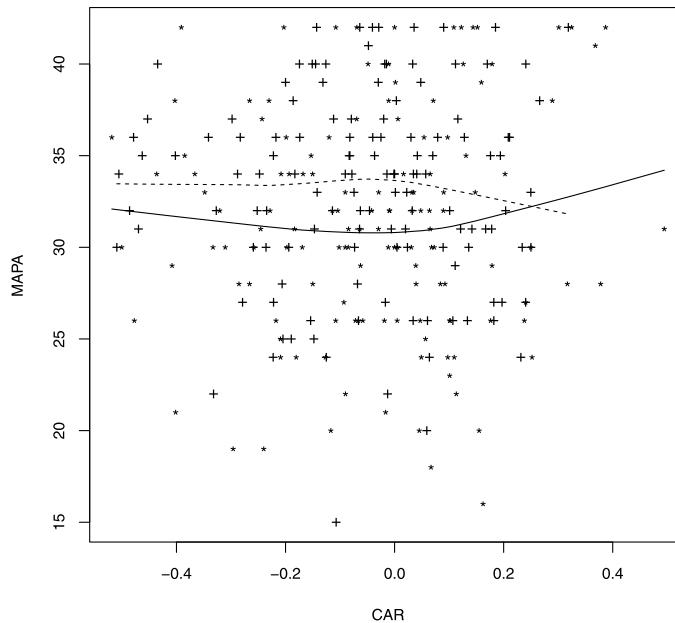


Figure 12.2: Shown are the smooths for predicting MAPA scores based on the CAR. The solid line is the smooth prior to intervention.

The function

```
ancpb(x1,y1,x2,y2, est=hd, pts=NA, nboot=599, plotit=T, LP=TRUE, ...)
```

is like the function ancova, only any measure of location can be used, which is specified by the argument est, and a percentile bootstrap method is used to compute confidence intervals. By default, the Harrell–Davis estimate of the median is used. The arguments are the same as those associated with the R function ancova except the argument nboot, which indicates B , how many bootstrap samples are used. When LP=TRUE, the initial smooth is smoothed again using LOESS.

The function

```
ancboot(x1,y1,x2,y2,fr1=1,fr2=1,tr=0.2,nboot=599,pts=NA,plotit=TRUE)
```

is exactly like the function ancova, only a bootstrap-t method is used to compute confidence intervals and test hypotheses based on trimmed means.

The R function

```
ancbbpb(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1=1, fr2=1, est=tmean, nboot=200, pts=NA, plotit=T, SEED=T,
tr=0.2, RNA=T, ...)
```

is like the R function `ancova`, only bootstrap bagging is used. So it has the potential of more power at the cost of higher execution time. There are some indications that method UB, applied via the R function `ancovaUB`, is better for general use, but a more detailed study is needed to better understand their relative merits.

■ Example

Consider the Pygmalion data described in Section 11.5.5. Based on the default settings for the R function `ancova`, no differences between the groups are found. Using instead the R function `ancbbpb`, the results are:

```
$output
      X n1 n2      DIF    c1.low    c1.hi   p.value
[1,] 72 12 63 12.03672 -2.7430218 22.37841 0.16528926
[2,] 82 16 68 16.24183  0.8489948 24.69427 0.03007519
[3,] 101 14 59 28.32713  3.5099184 48.23010 0.01398601
[4,] 111 12 47 31.94660  8.9667976 70.64249 0.01273885
[5,] 114 12 43 34.23546  7.4661331 71.24803 0.01149425
```

So now significant differences are found at four of the five design points when testing at the 0.05 level.

The R function

```
lplot2g(x1,y1,x2,y2, fr=0.8, est=tmean, xlab='X', ylab='Y', xout=F, eout=F, outfun=out, ...)
```

is like `runmean2g`, only it plots the regression lines corresponding to two groups using Cleveland's smoother instead.

The R function

```
ancdifplot(x1,y1,x2,y2, fr1=1, fr2=1, tr=0.2, alpha=0.05, pr=TRUE, xout=FALSE,
outfun=out, LP=TRUE, nmin=8, scat=TRUE, xlab='X', ylab='Y', report=FALSE, ...)
```

plots the estimated difference, $m_1(x) - m_2(x)$, for each of the covariate values used by the R function `ancova`. Confidence intervals, having simultaneous probability coverage approximately equal to the value of the argument `alpha`, are plotted as well. The R function

```
qhdsm2g(x1, y1, x2, y2, q=0.5, qval=NULL, LP=TRUE, fr=0.8, xlab='X', ylab='Y',
xout=FALSE, outfun=outpro, ...)
```

plots two quantile regression lines using the running interval smoother in conjunction with the Harrell–Davis estimator. (The function cobs2g uses COBS to plot the regression lines, but it should be used with caution for reasons summarized in Section 11.5.6.) The argument q indicates which quantile will be used. Setting q=0.75, for example, the plots are based on estimates of the upper quartiles.

The R function

```
ancmg1(x, y, pool=TRUE, jcen=1, fr=1, depfun=fdepth, nmin=8, op=3, tr=0.2, SEED=TRUE,
pr=TRUE, pts=NA, con=0, nboot=NA, tr=0.2, bhop=FALSE)
```

can be used to compare multiple groups when there is a single covariate. The argument x can be a matrix with J columns where J is the number of groups. The argument op determines how the groups are compared. There are four options:

- op=1: omnibus test for trimmed means, based on the R function t1way, with the amount of trimming controlled via the argument tr.
- op=2: omnibus test for medians based on the R function med1way. (Not recommended when there are tied values, use op=4).
- op=3: multiple comparisons using trimmed means and a percentile bootstrap via the R function linconpb.
- op=4: multiple comparisons using medians and percentile bootstrap via the R function medpb.

(When there are two covariates, the function ancgm in Section 12.3.4 can be used.) The results for the first covariate point are returned in the R variable \$points[[1]], the results for the second covariate point are in \$points[[2]] and so on. So by default, \$points[[k]] contains the results for all pairwise comparisons among the J groups based on the k th covariate point, $k = 1, \dots, p$. The argument con can be used to specify the linear contrasts of interest. For example, in a 2-by-2 design, the hypothesis of no interaction can be tested by setting con=con2way(2,2)\$conAB.

The R function

```
ancGLOB(x1,y1,x2,y2,xout=FALSE,outfun=outpro,est=tmean,p.crit=NULL,nreps=500,
alpha=0.05,pr=TRUE,nboot=500,SEED=TRUE,MC=FALSE,CR=FALSE,
nmin=12,pts=NULL,fr1=1,fr2=1,plotit=TRUE,SCAT=TRUE,pch1='+',pch2='o',
xlab='X',ylab='Y',LP=TRUE,cpp=FALSE,...)
```

applies method G in Section 12.2.5. (A C++ version is available as noted in Section 1.8.) The argument nreps determines how many replications are used to determine the critical p-value,

\hat{p}_c . The critical p-value depends only on the sample sizes. Once it is known, it can be specified via the argument `p.crit`, which reduces execution time to a very low value. When the critical p-value is not known, setting `MC=TRUE` can reduce execution time considerably assuming a multicore processor is available. As usual, the argument `nboot` controls the number of bootstrap samples and `xout` determines whether leverage points are removed.

12.3 Dealing with Two Covariates when There Is Curvature

Experience with the robust smoothers in Section 11.5 suggest that when dealing with more than one covariate, standard linear models are more likely to provide an unsatisfactory approximation of the regression surface. When there is curvature (the regression surface is not well approximated by a plane), there are various ways the methods described in Section 12.2 might be extended to the case of multiple covariates. Due to the curse of dimensionality, mentioned in Section 11.5.3, there are limits to what can be done as the number of covariates increases. For two covariates, effective methods have been derived, which are described in this section. To what extent, if any, more than two covariates can be accommodated is unknown.

This section begins with a simple generalization of method Y in Section 12.2.1, called method MC1. Then some possible concerns with method MC1 are described followed by methods MC2 and MC3, which are designed to address these concerns at the expense of higher execution time.

12.3.1 Method MC1

Momentarily focus on the i th value of the covariate in the first group, \mathbf{x}_{i1} . Then proceeding along the lines in Section 11.5.10, it is a simple matter to determine the set

$$N_1(\mathbf{x}_{i1}) = \{j : D_{1ij} \leq f\},$$

where D_{1ij} is some measure of the distance between \mathbf{x}_{j1} between \mathbf{x}_{i1} , f is some constant to be determined, in which case set N_1 identifies all \mathbf{x}_{j1} values that are close to \mathbf{x}_{i1} . One possible choice for D_{1ij} is

$$D_{1ij} = \sqrt{(\mathbf{x}_{i1} - \mathbf{x}_{j1})' \mathbf{M}^{-1} (\mathbf{x}_{i1} - \mathbf{x}_{j1})},$$

where \mathbf{M} is some measure of covariance. The default choice used here is the MVE covariance matrix in Section 6.3.1. All of the points in the second group that are close to \mathbf{x}_{i1} can be identified in a similar manner.

Let

$$N_2(\mathbf{x}_{i1}) = \{j : D_{2ij} \leq f\},$$

where D_{2ij} measures the distance between \mathbf{x}_{i1} and \mathbf{x}_{j2} . Then the y_{j1} values, such that $j \in N_1$, can be compared to the y_{j2} values, $j \in N_2$, using some measure of location. If there is interest in some particular \mathbf{x}_{i1} , this approach is readily implemented, but otherwise, how should \mathbf{x}_{i1} be chosen?

The approach used by MC1 is to use covariate point having the largest halfspace depth. Another possibility is to pool the \mathbf{x}_{i1} and \mathbf{x}_{i2} and compare the groups based on the covariate point having the largest halfspace depth among the pooled data. Of course, alternative methods for choosing the covariate points might be used. For example, use the points on the 0.5 depth contour.

When testing $H_0: m_1(\mathbf{x}) = m_2(\mathbf{x})$ using Yuen's method for trimmed means, critical values based on the Studentized maximum modulus distribution can be used to control the probability of one or more Type I errors. Another approach is to use the Hochberg or Hommel improvements on the Bonferroni method, which were described in Section 7.4.7. An advantage of this latter approach is that it can be used for a broader range of situations, such as when a percentile bootstrap method is used.

Notice that the method described in this section is readily extended to comparing more than two groups. Again pick design points for each of the J groups to be compared, determine observed covariate values that are close to the chosen design points, then use methods in Chapter 7 to test hypotheses about the corresponding y values.

12.3.2 Method MC2

A fundamental issue associated with method MC1 is whether the design points have been chosen so as to detect any true differences, and perhaps more importantly whether they reveal where and by how much the groups differ. When choosing the deepest point as well those points that lie on the 0.5 depth contour, for example, typically very few points are chosen, which raises the concern that important details might be missed. A way of dealing with these concerns is to simply use more design points, but as the number points increases, this can negatively impact power when controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors with Hochberg's method or some related technique.

Roughly, method MC2 deals with these concerns by testing $H_0: m_1(\mathbf{x}) = m_2(\mathbf{x})$ for each \mathbf{x} that is deeply nested among the cloud of covariate points associated with the first group, which are determined using approximation A1 of halfspace depth described in Section 6.2.3. (The R function `fdepth` is used.) Another possibility is to use the deepest covariate points among all $n_1 + n_2$ covariate points. The extent to which this latter approach offers a practical advantage is unknown. Deeply nested points generally correspond to situations where the regression surfaces can be estimated in a relatively accurate manner. If a point \mathbf{x} is not deeply

nested in the cloud of covariate values, finding a sufficiently large number of other points that are close to \mathbf{x} might be impossible.

Once the covariate points have been chosen, there are at least three ways of proceeding. The first is to test the global hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6) using a function of the resulting p-values. This is the approach used by method MC2. From the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, if the global test rejects, decide which group has the larger measure of location at the design point having the smallest p-value. A second option is to adjust the p-values using say Hochberg's method, described in Section 7.4.7, with the goal of controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors. A third option is to use some extension of method TAP in Section 12.2.4.

Note that from an exploratory point of view plotting the p-values might help provide an overall sense of where it is reasonable to make a decision about which group has the larger measure of location. And of course a plot of the estimated differences among all of the design points can be used as well.

To elaborate, method MC2 begins exactly like MC1, only now $H_0: m_1(\mathbf{x}) = m_2(\mathbf{x})$ is tested for each $\mathbf{x} \in \{\mathbf{x}_1, \dots, \mathbf{x}_K\}$, where K/n_1 might be relatively large and n_1 is the sample size associated with the first group. Here, $K/n_1 = 1/2$ is used by default but this fraction can be altered when using the R functions in the next section. Let p_1, \dots, p_K be the resulting p-values. First focus on the goal of testing some global hypothesis. Perhaps the best-known method based on these p-values is a technique derived by [Fisher \(1932\)](#). But there are two concerns. First, the method assumes the p-values are independent, which is not necessarily the case here because the intersection of $N_j(x_k)$ and $N_j(x_\ell)$, $k < \ell$, is not necessarily empty. Second, [Zaykin, Zhivotovsky, Westfall, and Weir \(2002\)](#) note that the ordinary Fisher product test loses power in cases where there are a few large p-values. They suggest using instead a truncated product method (TPM), which is based on the test statistic

$$W = \prod_{k=1}^K p_k^{I(p_k \leq \tau)} \quad (12.10)$$

where I is the indicator function. Setting $\tau = 1$ yields Fisher's method, but Zaykin et al. suggest using $\tau = 0.05$ (cf. [Li & Siegmund, 2015](#)). Zaykin et al. derive the null distribution of W when all K tests are independent. But again the K tests performed here are not necessarily independent. Yet one more possible test statistic is

$$\bar{Q} = \frac{1}{K} \sum_{k=1}^K p_k. \quad (12.11)$$

To deal with the dependence among the p-values, method MC2 proceeds as follows, still assuming that there are two covariates. Momentarily assume that for each j , $(y_{ij}, \mathbf{x}_{ij})$ ($i = 1, \dots, n_j; j = 1, 2$) has a trivariate normal distribution where all correlations are zero. Generate a random sample from both groups and compute the test statistic W . Repeat this process B times yielding W_1, \dots, W_B . Put these B values in ascending order yielding $W_{(1)} \leq \dots \leq W_{(B)}$. Then the α level critical value is estimated to be $W_{(c)}$, where c is αB rounded to the nearest integer. That is, (12.6) is rejected at the α level if $W \leq w$. Of course the same process can be used in conjunction with the test statistic \bar{Q} . Simulations reported by Wilcox (in press-a) found that both versions of this method perform well in terms of controlling the Type I error probability when dealing with non-normal distributions, including situations where there is curvature. The simulations also suggest that generally, \bar{Q} tends to have more power than W , but the only certainty is that the reverse can occur. Moreover, the p-values associated with W and \bar{Q} can differ substantially as will be illustrated. In particular, situations are encountered where W rejects at the 0.01 level but \bar{Q} fails to reject at the 0.10 level.

12.3.3 Method MC3

A limitation of method MC2 is that it might suggest where significant results appear to occur, but in essence, little can be said about how reasonable it is to make a decision about whether $m_1(\mathbf{x})$ is larger $m_2(\mathbf{x})$ among the covariate points that were used. A way of dealing with this issue is to use an analog of method TAP in Section 12.2.4 (Wilcox, in press-a). First, choose covariate points as done by method MC2. Based on this process for choosing covariate points, determine p_c , the α quantile of the distribution of the minimum p-value returned by method MC2. This is done via a simulation under normality and when there is no association among six variables. Then, from the point of view of Tukey's three decision rule, make a decision about whether $m_1(\mathbf{x})$ is larger than $m_2(\mathbf{x})$ for any covariate point for which the corresponding p-value is less than or equal to p_c . Otherwise, no decision is made. So, compared to method MC2, method MC3 has the potential of providing more detail about where the regression surfaces differ. At least in some situations method MC2 can have substantially more power than MC3, where power is taken to be the probability of at least one significant difference. But an example in the next section demonstrates that situations are encountered where MC3 rejects when MC2 does not.

Simulation estimates of p_c can result in relatively high execution time. To help deal with this issue, Table 12.5 reports some estimates of p_c when $n_1 = n_2 = n$. The estimates are based on 4000 replications. For unequal sample sizes, p_c is estimated as indicated in Section 12.3.4 in connection with the R function ancdet2C.

Table 12.5: Estimates of p_c Based on 4000 Replications and $\alpha = 0.05$.

<i>n</i>	p_c
50	0.004585
55	0.003120
60	0.002820
70	0.002594
80	0.002481
100	0.001861
200	0.001420
300	0.001423
400	0.001314
500	0.001352
600	0.001075
800	0.000959

Table 12.6: Estimated Type I Error Probabilities when Testing at the $\alpha = 0.05$ Level, $n_1 = n_2 = 50$.

<i>g</i>	<i>h</i>	<i>S</i>	VP 1	VP 2	VP3
0.0	0.0	1	0.050	0.052	0.050
0.0	0.0	2	0.056	0.050	0.048
0.0	0.2	1	0.046	0.039	0.049
0.0	0.2	2	0.048	0.050	0.053
0.2	0.0	1	0.052	0.050	0.044
0.2	0.0	2	0.054	0.048	0.050
0.2	0.2	1	0.051	0.048	0.048
0.2	0.2	2	0.055	0.040	0.044

To provide at least some information about the ability of method MC3 to control the probability of one or more Type I errors, consider two types of regression surfaces. The first deals with the situation where $Y_{ij} = \lambda(\mathbf{X})\epsilon$, which is labeled S1. The second, labeled S2, is $Y_{ij} = X_{ij}^2 + \lambda(\mathbf{X})\epsilon$. Three choices for $\lambda(\mathbf{X})$ are considered: $\lambda(\mathbf{X}_i) \equiv 1$ (VP 1), $\lambda(\mathbf{X}_i) = |X_{i1}| + 1$ (VP 2) and $\lambda(\mathbf{X}_i) = 1/(|X_{i1}| + 1)$ (VP 3). Estimated Type I error probabilities are reported in [Table 12.6](#). (The columns headed by *g* and *h* refer to the same *g*-and-*h* distributions used in [Table 12.2](#).)

12.3.4 R Functions *ancovamp*, *ancovampG*, *ancmppb*, *ancmg*, *ancov2COV*, *ancdes* and *ancdet2C*

The R function

```
ancovamp(x1,y1,x2,y2,fr1=1,fr2=1,tr=0.2,alpha=0.05,pts=NA)
```

compares two groups based on trimmed means and takes into account multiple covariates using method MC1 in the previous section. The arguments are the same as those associated with the R function ancova in Section 12.2.5, only now x_1 and x_2 are assumed to be matrices with two or more columns. By default, pts=NA meaning that the points among the covariates at which the groups will be compared are determined by the function ancdes; it finds a point among the x_1 values that has the deepest halfspace depth, plus the points on the 0.5 depth contour, and the groups are compared at these points provided that the corresponding sample sizes are at least 10. Should one want to pool the data and then find the deepest point, plus the points on the 0.5 depth contour, this can be done as indicated by some of the R functions to be described. The function controls the familywise error rate by determining a critical value via the Studentized maximum modulus distribution (as described in Chapter 7). The MVE covariance matrix is used when determining the points that are close to \mathbf{x}_k .

The R function

```
ancovampG(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, tr = 0.2, pts = NULL, SEED = TRUE,
test = yuen, DH = FALSE, FRAC = 0.5, cov.fun = skip.cov, pr = FALSE, q = 0.5,
plotit = FALSE, pv = FALSE, theta = 50, xlab = ' ', ylab = ' ', SCAT = FALSE, zlab = ' ', ...)
```

also applies method MC1 but unlike the R function ancovamp, it is not limited to comparing trimmed means and it is more flexible in other ways as well. The argument test can be used to specify the method for comparing measures of location that will be used, which defaults to Yuen's method for trimmed means. Two other choices are qcomhd and qcomhdMC, which can be used to compare quantiles, in which case the argument q determines the quantile that will be used. For example, test=qcomhd and q=0.25 would compare the lower quartiles using the Harrell–Davis estimator. Setting plotit=TRUE, the function plots the estimates of $m_1(\mathbf{x}) - m_2(\mathbf{x})$ as a function of the covariate points. If pv=TRUE the function plots instead p-values as a function of the covariate points. The argument cov.fun controls the covariance matrix that is used when determining the points that are close to \mathbf{x}_k using a robust analog of Mahalanobis distance. By default a skipped covariance matrix is used. Consequently, although both ancovampG and ancovamp compare 20% trimmed means by default, the results typically differ due to different strategies for determining the covariate points that are close to \mathbf{x}_k . If DH=TRUE, the covariate points are chosen as described in Section 12.3.2 in connection with method MC2. (The covariate points are chosen via the R function ancdes.) As a result, the hypothesis given by Eq. (12.5) is tested for every \mathbf{x} that is in the deepest half of the covariate points. If, for example, FRAC=0.3, the deepest 70% of the covariate points would be used. But the probability of one or more Type I errors is controlled via Hochberg's method, which can result in relatively low power compared to using method MC3, which can be applied with the R function ancdet2C described later in this section.

The R function

```
ancmppb(x1,y1,x2,y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, pts = NA, est = tmean, nboot = NA, bhop = F,
SEED = T, cov.fun = skip, cop = NULL, COV.both = FALSE, ...)
```

is like ancovamp, only a percentile bootstrap method is used and any measure of location can be employed. The argument cov.fun indicates which measure of location will be used to determine the center of the covariate data, assuming the estimate is returned in \$location. By default, a 20% trimmed mean is used to compare the two groups. In essence, the function determines groups as described in connection with method MC2, then it compares the corresponding y values by calling the function pbmcnp in Section 7.6.3, where the argument bhop is explained. (It determines the approach used to control the probability of at least one Type I error among the tests performed.) The argument pts can be used to specify the covariate points where the groups will be compared. If it is desired to pool the data in x_1 and x_2 when determining the covariate points where the groups are to be compared, set the argument COV.both=TRUE.

The R function

```
ancmgl(x, y, pool = T, jcen = 1, fr = 1, depfun = fdepth, nmin = 8, op = 3, tr = 0.2, pts = NA,
SEED = T, pr = T, cop = 3, con = 0, nboot = NA, tr=0.2, bhop = F)
```

can be used to compare multiple groups when there are multiple covariates. The arguments are basically the same as the arguments for the function ancmg1 in Section 12.2.6. The main difference is that now the argument x can be a matrix with Jp columns where J is the number of groups and p is the number of covariates. The first p columns correspond to group 1, the next p columns correspond to group 2, and so on. Or x can have list mode where $x[[j]]$ contains the covariate values for the j th group, which can be a matrix with p columns. For the moment, this function should be used only when $p = 2$. How it performs with $p > 2$ covariates is unknown. Presumably as the number of covariates increases, at some point it will perform poorly due to the curse of dimensionality. The argument op determines how the groups are compared. The four options are the same as those described in Section 12.2.6. As was the case with the R function ancmg1, the results for the first covariate point are returned in the R variable \$points[[1]], the results for the second covariate point are in \$points[[2]] and so on. As can be seen, the default is op=3, meaning that multiple comparisons are performed based on trimmed means via the R function linconpb.

One way of storing the data, when using ancmg, is in list mode. Imagine that three groups are to be compared based on two covariates. Then $x[[1]]$ would contain a matrix of data

with n_1 rows and $p = 2$ columns, $\mathbf{x}[[2]]$ would contain a matrix of data with n_2 rows and $p = 2$ columns, $\mathbf{x}[[3]]$ would contain a matrix of data with n_3 rows and $p = 2$ columns, and $\mathbf{y}[[1]]$, $\mathbf{y}[[2]]$ and $\mathbf{y}[[3]]$ would contain the outcome measures to be compared. Another option is to store the covariate data in a matrix with Jp columns, assuming all J groups have the same sample size. And \mathbf{y} could be a matrix with J columns. Like the R function `ancmg`, the argument `con` can be used to specify the linear contrasts of interest. For example, in a 2-by-2 design, the hypothesis of no interaction can be tested by setting `con=con2way(2,2)$conAB`.

Here is an example of some of the output from `ancmg` when dealing with three groups:

```
$points.chosen
      [,1]      [,2]
[1,] -0.1168167 -0.1021651
[2,] -0.7254685  0.7561923
[3,] -0.3523684 -1.1417145

$sample.sizes
      [,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]   21   15   19
[2,]   11    8   10
[3,]    8    9   10

$point
$point[[1]]
  con.num     psihat p.value     p.crit ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]      1 0.16028098  0.721 0.01666667 -0.9078780 1.0857720
[2,]      2 0.07353133  0.831 0.02500000 -0.7167843 0.8219238
[3,]      3 -0.08674966  0.871 0.05000000 -1.0805465 0.9926640

$point[[2]]
  con.num     psihat p.value     p.crit ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]      1 0.12370772  0.895 0.05000000 -1.3665729 1.435669
[2,]      2 0.17065563  0.735 0.01666667 -0.9817933 1.438490
[3,]      3 0.04694791  0.857 0.02500000 -1.0503887 1.458355

$point[[3]]
  con.num     psihat p.value     p.crit ci.lower ci.upper
[1,]      1 0.09949583  0.820 0.05000000 -1.128347 1.2756405
[2,]      2 -0.62844012  0.171 0.01666667 -1.565212 0.4625049
[3,]      3 -0.72793596  0.192 0.02500000 -1.847244 0.5851383

$contrast.coef
      [,1] [,2] [,3]
[1,]    1    1    0
[2,]   -1    0    1
[3,]    0   -1   -1
```

For example, for the first covariate point, indicated by row 1 of `$points.chosen`, the results for the multiple comparisons are returned in `$point[[1]]`. More generally, the results for the k th

point are returned in `$point[[k]]`. When dealing with multiple comparisons, the corresponding linear contrast coefficients are returned in `$contrast.coef`.

The R function

```
ancov2COV(x1, y1, x2, y2, tr = 0.2, test = yuen, cr = NULL, pr = TRUE, DETAILS =
FALSE, cp.value = FALSE, plotit = FALSE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', zlab = NULL, span =
0.75, PV = TRUE, FRAC = 0.5, MC = FALSE, q = 0.5, iter = 1000, tr = 0.2, TPM = FALSE,
tau = 0.05, est = tmean, fr = 1, ...)
```

tests the global hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6) using method MC2. By default, trimmed means are compared via Yuen's method, but quantiles can be compared by setting the argument `test=qcomhd` or `qcomhdMC`, in which case the argument `q` controls the quantile that will be used. (Quantiles are estimated via the Harrell–Davis estimator.) The default is `q=0.5`, the median. The function does not have an option for eliminating leverage points; this is not necessary because the method performs the analysis on the deepest covariate values. The default test statistic is \bar{Q} given by Eq. (12.11) in Section 12.3.2. The critical value can be determined quickly when testing at the 0.05 level. When testing at the $\alpha \neq 0.05$ level or when using the test statistic given by Eq. (12.10) (method TPM), a critical value must be computed, which can increase execution time considerably. Execution time can be reduced by setting `MC=TRUE`, assuming that a multicore processor is available and that the R package parallel has been installed.

If `plotit=TRUE` and `PV=FALSE`, the function plots $m_1(\mathbf{x}) - m_2(\mathbf{x})$ as a function of the two covariates using LOESS. If `PV=TRUE`, the function creates a plot of the p-values as a function of the two covariates. If the argument `DETAILS=TRUE`, all p-values are returned, in which case they can be adjusted using Hochberg's or Hommel's method (via the R function `p.adjust`) with the goal of controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors. Setting the argument `cp.value=TRUE`, the function returns a p-value based on the test statistic that was used to test the global hypothesis given by Eq. (12.6). This can increase execution time considerably. Again, execution time can be reduced by setting `MC=TRUE`, assuming that a multicore processor is available.

The covariate points, where the regression surfaces are compared, are determined via the function

```
ancdes(x, depfun=fdepth, DH=FALSE, FRAC=0.5, ...).
```

This function determines the halfspace depth of the points in `x`, where the depth of points is determined using the function indicated by the argument `depfun`, which defaults to `fdepth` described in Section 6.2.4. The argument `FRAC` controls the proportion of the least deep points

that are ignored. For example, setting FRAC=0.3, the deepest 70% of the covariate points would be used. The critical value is known when using FRAC=0.5, the default value. But otherwise the critical value must be computed, which increases execution time considerably. Again, setting MC=TRUE can reduce execution time considerably.

■ Example

Consider again the Well Elderly 2 study, described in Section 11.1.5, where the general goal was to assess the efficacy of an intervention program aimed at improving the health and wellbeing of older adults. One of the goals was to compare a measure of meaningful activities (MAPA) associated with a control group and a group receiving intervention. Here, these two groups are compared using method MC2 where a measure of depressive symptoms (CESD) and the cortisol awakening response (CAR) are the covariates. Here is a portion of output returned by the R function `ancov2COV` when `cp.value=TRUE`:

```
$num.points.used
[1] 74

$test.stat
[1] 0.1193853

$crit.value
[1] 0.2459744

$GLOBAL.p.value
[1] 0.008

$min.p.val.point
[1] -0.2176042 4.0000000

$min.p.value
  p.value
0.002299862
```

So 74 covariate points were chosen. The test statistic is $\bar{Q} = 0.1193853$, the 0.05 critical value is 0.2459744 (the approximate critical value when `cp.value=FALSE` is 0.27) and the p-value is 0.008. The minimum p-value among the 74 hypotheses that were tested is 0.002299862, which occurred at $CAR=-0.2176042$ and $MAPA=4$. Using TPM, the global p-value is now 0.021. Figure 12.3 shows a plot of the p-values. So the data indicate that the groups differ significantly and the strongest evidence that the control group and the experimental group differ significantly occurs when CESD is low. Both `ancovampG` and `ancovamp` use only three covariate points when using default settings.

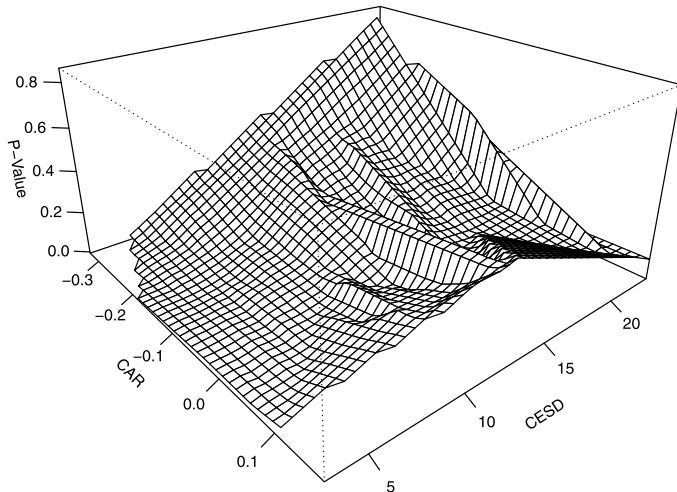


Figure 12.3: Shown are the p-values when comparing MAPA scores before and after intervention using two covariates: CESD and CAR.

The function `ancovamp` returns a significant result for one of these points when testing at the 0.05 level; `ancovampG` fails to reject. ■

■ Example

This next example illustrates that when using method MC2 in Section 12.3.2, the choice between TPM and \bar{Q} can yield a fairly different result. Again the Well Elderly 2 data are used, only now the dependent variable is taken to be a measure of life satisfaction. Using \bar{Q} via the R function `ancov2COV`, the global p-value is 0.126. In contrast, using TPM, it is 0.009. So despite simulation results suggesting that TPM tends to have lower power, situations are encountered where TPM is highly significant when \bar{Q} fails to reject at the 0.05 level. Both `ancovampG` and `ancovamp` fail to reject using default settings. The power of these two methods depends on the pattern of the p-values. Also, assuming the regression surfaces are a plane, and using the function `ancJNmp` in Section 12.1.4 finds no significant results. That is, using a method that allows curvature can make a practical difference. ■

The R function

```
ancdet2C(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, test = yuen, q = 0.5, tr = 0.2, plotit = TRUE,
          op = FALSE, pts = NA, sm = FALSE, FRAC = 0.5, pr = TRUE, xout = FALSE,
```

```
outfun = outpro, MC = FALSE, p.crit = NULL, nreps = 2000, SEED = TRUE,
FAST = TRUE, ticktype = 'detail', xlab = 'X1', ylab = 'X2', zlab = 'Y', pch1 = '*',  
pch2 = '+', ...)
```

applies method MC3. By default, trimmed means are compared using Yuen's method. Setting the argument test=qcomhd or qcomhdMC, quantiles will be compared instead based on the Harrell–Davis estimator. The argument q controls the quantile that will be used, which default to 0.5, the median. If the argument plotit=TRUE, the function creates a scatterplot of the covariate values. If the argument op=FALSE, covariate points where a significant result was obtained are indicated by the symbol given by the argument pch2. Points where a non-significant result was obtained are indicated by the symbol given by the argument pch1. If op=TRUE, a smooth is created where the z-axis indicates an estimate of $m_1(\mathbf{x}) - m_2(\mathbf{x})$ given values for the two covariates. The argument p.crit corresponds to p_c , which depends only on the sample sizes n_1 and n_2 . An approximation of p_c is used with the argument FAST=TRUE and alpha=0.05. The approximation is based on a smooth (LOESS) applied to the sample sizes and estimates of p_c in [Table 12.5](#). If $n_1 = n_2 = n$, the smooth uses $1/n$ as the independent variable. If $n_1 \neq n_2$, p_c is estimated using $1/n_1$, as well as $1/n_2$ and the results are averaged. If FAST=FALSE or alpha is not equal to 0.05, a simulation estimate of p_c is used which is computed via the R function

```
ancdet2C.pv(n1, n2, nreps = 2000, tr = 0.2, FRAC = 0.5, tr = 0.2, MC = FALSE,  
SEED = TRUE).
```

The number of replications is controlled via the argument nreps. To provide some sense of how well FAST=TRUE performs when using unequal sample sizes, suppose $n_1 = 50$ and $n_2 = 500$. Then ancdet2C.pv estimates p_c to be 0.0021. If $n_1 = 500$ and $n_2 = 50$, the estimate is 0.002. Using FAST=TRUE, p_c is estimated to be 0.0027.

■ Example

The previous example is repeated, only now method MC3 is applied via the R function ancdet2C. No significant results are found when testing at the 0.05 level. However, if the dependent variable (life satisfaction) is replaced by a measure of perceived physical health, now MC2 fails to reject even though the minimum observed p-value is 3.591197e-07. In contrast, method MC3 finds nine significant results among the 74 covariate points that were used. They occur where the CAR is negative and CESD is relatively low.

12.4 Some Global Tests

The methods in the previous section are aimed at comparing groups at specific design points. This section describes methods where the goal is to test the hypothesis that two independent groups do not differ for any design point.

12.4.1 Method TG

Method TG is a global test based on trimmed means and is limited to a single covariate. It is assumed that x has been standardized based on some robust measure of location and scale. Unless stated otherwise, the median and median absolute deviation are used. That is, if we begin with the covariate z , we work with

$$x = \frac{z - M}{\text{MADN}}.$$

The goal is to test

$$H_0 : m_1(x) = m_2(x) \quad \forall x. \quad (12.12)$$

The method is based in part on a simple generalization of the notion of regression depth. Recall from Section 10.11 that when estimating the slope and intercept of the usual linear model, a candidate fit, (b_0, b_1) , is called a nonfit if a partition of the x values can be found such that all of the residuals for the lower x values are negative (positive), but for all of the higher x values the residuals are positive (negative). For the random sample $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$, and letting $r_i = y_i - b_0 - b_1 x_i$, a candidate fit is called a nonfit if and only if a value for v can be found such that

$$r_i < 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i < v$$

and

$$r_i > 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i > v$$

or

$$r_i > 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i < v$$

and

$$r_i < 0 \quad \text{for all } x_i > v.$$

Rousseeuw and Hubert define the regression depth of a fit (b_1, b_0) , relative to $(x_1, y_1), \dots, (x_n, y_n)$, as the smallest number of observations that need to be removed to make (b_1, b_0)

a nonfit. Their deepest regression line estimator corresponds to the values of b_1 and b_0 that maximize regression depth.

Now consider any fit $\hat{y}_i = m(x_i)$, which might be obtained via any of the nonparametric regression methods previously described. Given a fit, the depth of the fit can be measured using a simple extension of the Rousseeuw and Hubert approach because their notion of depth is based entirely on the residuals and the values of the covariate. In particular, it does not require that the regression line be straight. That is, now $r_i = y_i - \hat{y}_i$, and given x_1, \dots, x_n , depth is defined as before.

Using a simple modification of the computational algorithm in [Rousseeuw and Hubert \(1999\)](#), the depth of a nonparametric regression line can be computed as follows. First, reorder the covariate values so that $x_1 \leq \dots \leq x_n$. Then the regression depth of $m(x)$ is

$$D = \min_{1 \leq i \leq n} (\min\{L^+(x_i) + R^-(x_i), R^+(x_i) + L^-(x_i)\}),$$

where

$$L^+(v) = \#\{j; x_j \leq v \text{ and } r_j \geq 0\},$$

$$R^-(v) = \#\{j; x_j > v \text{ and } r_j \leq 0\},$$

and L^- and R^+ are defined accordingly. Note that regression depth is scale invariant. From Theorem 1 in Rousseeuw and Hubert, it follows that the maximum possible value for D is greater than or equal to $\lceil n/3 \rceil$ and less than or equal to n , where the ceiling $\lceil z \rceil$ is the smallest integer $\geq z$.

Let (y_{ij}, x_{ij}) be a random sample from the j th group ($i = 1, \dots, n_j$), and imagine that a nonparametric regression line is fitted to the data in the first group. Then in general, this fit can be used to estimate y given any value for x simply by computing the trimmed mean of the y_{i1} values for which the corresponding x_{i1} values are close to x . In particular, an estimate can be computed for the covariate values corresponding to the second group: $x_{i2}, i = 1, \dots, n_2$. This assumes, of course, that given x_{i2} , there are one or more x_{i1} values that are close to x_{i2} that can be used to compute $m_1(x_{i2})$.

Let

$$\hat{y}_{ijk} = m_j(x_{ik}; x_{1j}, \dots, x_{n_j j})$$

be the predicted value of y corresponding to the i th observation in the k th group using the fit obtained from the j th group. That is, \hat{y}_{ijk} is the 20% trimmed mean of the y_{ij} values for which x_{ij} is close to x_{ik} . Let $r_{ijk} = y_{ijk} - \hat{y}_{ijk}$, and let D_{jk} be the resulting regression depth.

So D_{11} , for example, is the depth of the first smooth relative to the points in the first group, and D_{12} is the depth of the first smooth relative to the second group. If H_0 is true, it should be the case that $D_{11} - D_{21}$, as well as $D_{12} - D_{22}$, are relatively small, suggesting the test statistic

$$T = D_{11} - D_{21} + D_{12} - D_{22}. \quad (12.13)$$

Because regression depth is scale invariant, T is scale invariant as well. If H_0 is rejected when $T \geq t$, the problem is determining t so as to control the probability of a Type I error. Note that T has a discrete distribution, so in general choosing t so that the Type I error probability is exactly α cannot be accomplished in most cases.

Momentarily assume the running-interval smoother is used. The only known method that has been found to perform well in simulations begins by pooling the data from both groups and using bootstrap samples to estimate the null distribution of T (Wilcox, 2010a). Note that if the null hypothesis is true, the individual smooths estimate the same regression line estimated by the pooled estimate. Let $N = n_1 + n_2$ and generate a bootstrap sample by sampling with replacement N pairs of points from the pooled data. Based on this bootstrap sample, use the first n_1 pairs of points to compute the depths D_{11} and D_{21} , and label the results D_{11}^* and D_{21}^* . In a similar manner, the remaining n_2 points are used to compute D_{12} and D_{22} and the results are labeled D_{12}^* and D_{22}^* . Let

$$T^* = D_{11}^* - D_{21}^* + D_{12}^* - D_{22}^*.$$

Repeat this process B times yielding T_1^*, \dots, T_B^* and let

$$P = \frac{1}{B} \sum I_{T > T^*},$$

where $I_{T > T^*} = 1$ if $T > T^*$; otherwise $I_{T > T^*} = 0$. Then a (generalized) p-value is

$$p = 1 - P.$$

If H_0 is rejected when $p \leq 0.05$, simulations indicate that, generally, the actual level is reasonably close to 0.05 when the span is $f = 1$ and both sample sizes are between 40 and 150. However, for smaller or larger sample sizes, an alternative choice for f is required. If the smallest sample size is greater than 150, $f = 0.2$ was found to give good results with sample sizes as large as 800. If $\max(n_1, n_2) < 35$, use $f = 0.5$. For sample sizes between 150 and 180, both $f = 0.2$ and $f = 1$ perform well. But for $\min(n_1, n_2) > 200$, $f = 0.2$ should be used.

The choice of smoother is important. It is unknown, for example, how to control Type I errors reasonably well, in simulations, when the running interval smoother is replaced by LOWESS.

Simulations do indicate that when using the quantile smoother COBS, the probability of a Type I error will not exceed the nominal level when using sample sizes of at least 30. However, when testing at the 0.05 level, the actual level can be as low as 0.01 in some situations. Also, for reasons summarized in Section 11.5.6, COBS should be used with caution.

It might seem that regression depth could be used to determine a nonparametric regression line, but this strategy is unsatisfactory. Note that if $x_i \neq x_j$ for all $i \neq j$, then the maximum possible depth, $D = n$, is achieved by taking $m(x_i) = y_i$. The point here is that given a nonparametric fit, based on some appropriate choice for the span, its regression depth can be computed, which in turn can be used to test the hypothesis given by Eq. (12.12).

There is a feature of the global tests in this section that should be stressed, which is relevant to the classic ANCOVA method as well. Imagine that for the first group, the range of the covariate values, x , is 0–10, and for the second group the range is 30–40. Classic ANCOVA would assume that the regression lines are parallel and compare the intercepts. If the usual linear model holds, the methods in this section are aimed at testing the hypothesis that the slopes, as well as the intercepts, are equal. More generally, the methods in this section ignore the fact that the two groups do not have any covariate values in common. But based on the ANCOVA methods in Section 12.1, comparisons would not be made. For instance, it might be of interest to determine whether the groups differ when the covariate $x = 5$. Because data are not available for the second group when $x = 5$, comparisons cannot be made based on the methods in Section 11.11.1. Perhaps comparisons should not be made by imposing assumptions such as those made by the classic ANCOVA model.

12.4.2 R Functions *ancsm* and *Qancsm*

The R function

```
ancsm(x1, y1, x2, y2, nboot=200, SEED=T, est=tmean, fr=NULL, plotit=T, sm=F, tr=0.2,
      xout=F, outfun=out, ...)
```

applies method TG using the running interval smoother. By default, a 20% trimmed mean is used. Setting $sm=T$, the plots of the regression lines will be based on bootstrap bagging. (But the test of the null hypothesis of identical regression lines is based on the running interval smoother without bootstrap bagging.) The function

```
Qancsm(x1,y1,x2,y2,crit.mat=NULL,nboot=200,SEED=T,REP.CRIT=F,
       qval=0.5,xlab='X',ylab='Y',plotit=T,pr=T,xout=F,outfun=out,...)
```

is like *ancsm*, only COBS is used to estimate the quantile regression lines. The argument *qval* determines the quantile that is used and defaults to 0.5, the median. However, this function should be used with caution for reasons outlined in Section 11.5.6.

12.5 Methods for Dependent Groups

This section considers the situation where there are two outcome measures that are possibly dependent, and there is also a covariate. What is observed is $(x_{i1}, y_{i1}, x_{i2}, y_{i2})$, $i = 1, \dots, n$. For example, y_{i1} and y_{i2} might be measures taken at two different times and the goal is to take into account a covariates x_{i1} and x_{i2} . Let θ_1 and θ_2 be some population measure of location associated with y_{i1} and y_{i2} , respectively, and let θ_d be the corresponding measure of location associated with $y_{i1} - y_{i2}$. As noted in Section 5.9, under general conditions $\theta_1 - \theta_2 \neq \theta_d$. So when dealing with a covariate, some thought is required about which perspective is most appropriate. And there is a third perspective that might be of interest as noted in Section 5.9.9.

12.5.1 Methods Based on a Linear Model

Let $y_{di} = y_{i1} - y_{i2}$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$) and assume that the typical value of y_d , given x , is given by $m(x) = \beta_0 + \beta_1 x$. (Of course, x could be a difference score as well.) Then the method in Section 11.1.12 and the R functions in Section 11.1.13 can be used to make inferences about $m(y_d)$. In particular, $H_0: m(x) = 0$ can be tested for a range of x values via the R function in Section 11.1.13.

As for testing $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$ when y_{i1} and y_{i2} are dependent, the ANCOVA methods described in Section 12.1 are readily modified to handle this situation. What is observed is $(x_{i1}, x_{i2}, y_{i1}, y_{i2})$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, where two or more of these random variables are possibly dependent. Let $\hat{m}_j(x)$ be some estimate of $m_j(x)$ based on (x_{ij}, y_{ij}) ($j = 1, 2$) and let $\delta = m_1(x) - m_2(x)$. The first step is to estimate the squared standard error of $\hat{\delta} = \hat{m}_1(x) - \hat{m}_2(x)$ in a manner that takes into account that the corresponding estimates are dependent.

Let $(x_{i1}^*, y_{i1}^*, x_{i2}^*, y_{i2}^*)$, $i = 1, \dots, n$, be a bootstrap sample. Based on this bootstrap sample, and for a single value of the covariate, x , let $\hat{m}_j^*(x) = b_0^* + b_1^* x$, where b_0^* and b_1^* are estimates of the intercept and slope, respectively, based on (x_{ij}^*, y_{ij}^*) , $j = 1, 2$. Let

$$D^* = \hat{m}_1^*(x) - \hat{m}_2^*(x).$$

Repeat this process B times yielding D_b^* ($b = 1, \dots, B$). Then an estimate of the squared standard error of $\hat{\delta}$ is

$$\hat{\tau}^2 = \frac{1}{B-1} \sum (D_b^* - \bar{D}^*)^2,$$

where $\bar{D}^* = \sum D_b^*/B$. An appropriate test statistic for testing $H_0: \delta = \theta_0$, where θ_0 is some specified constant, is

$$W = \frac{D - \theta_0}{\hat{\tau}}.$$

When using the Theil–Sen estimator, simulations indicate that W has, approximately, a standard normal distribution. When using least squares regression, assume W has, approximately, a Student's t distribution with $n - 1$ degrees of freedom (Wilcox & Clark, 2014).

One strategy for choosing the covariate values when testing $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$ is to proceed along the lines in Section 12.2.1 using the data associated with the first covariate. This approach is assumed unless stated otherwise. As for controlling the probability of one or more Type I errors when testing K hypotheses based on K values of the covariate, using the Studentized maximum modulus distribution with infinite degrees of freedom appears to perform well when $K = 5$. (As for least squares regression, again the degrees of freedom are taken to be $n - 1$.)

12.5.2 R Functions *Dancts* and *Dancols*

The R function

```
Dancts(x1,y1,x2,y2, pts=NULL, regfun=tsreg, fr1=1, fr2=1, alpha=0.05, plotit=TRUE,
xout=FALSE, outfun=out, BLO=FALSE, nboot=100, SEED=TRUE, xlab='X', ylab='Y',
pr=TRUE, ...)
```

tests $H_0: m_1(x) = m_2(x)$. When the argument `pts=NULL`, it picks five covariate values where the regression lines are compared. These covariate values are chosen based on the values stored in `x1` in conjunction with the method described in Section 12.2.1.

```
Dancols(x1, y1, x2, y2, pts = NULL, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, plotit = TRUE, xout = FALSE,
outfun = out, nboot = 100, SEED = TRUE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', CR = FALSE, ...)
```

is like the function `Dancts`, only it is designed specifically for the least squares regression estimator.

12.5.3 Dealing with Curvature: Methods DY, DUB and DTAP

The ANCOVA methods designed to deal with curvature when comparing independent groups are readily extended to situations where dependent groups are compared.

Consider, for example, method Y in Section 12.2.1. Covariate values can be chosen in the exact same manner for the situation at hand and the K hypotheses indicated by Eq. (12.5) can be tested based on a trimmed mean by replacing Yuen's test with the method in Section 5.9.5.

This will be called method DY. Other robust measures of location can be used via a percentile bootstrap method as described in Section 5.9.11.

Method UB in Section 12.2.3, which is based on the running interval smoother, can be extended to the case where there is a single covariate measured at two different times, and there are two outcome measures that are dependent. Now bootstrap samples are based on resampling with replacement from $(x_{i1}, y_{i1}, x_{i2}, y_{i2})$ yielding $(x_{i1}^*, y_{i1}^*, x_{i2}^*, y_{i2}^*)$ ($i = 1, \dots, n$). For some specified value for the covariate, x , let $m_j^*(x)$ be the estimate of $m_j(x)$ ($j = 1, 2$) based on this bootstrap sample and let $D^* = m_1^*(x) - m_2^*(x)$. Repeat this process B times yielding D_1^*, \dots, D_B^* . Let

$$\tilde{p} = \frac{1}{B} \sum I(D_b^* < 0) + 0.5I(D_b^* = 0),$$

where the indicator function $I(D_b^* < 0) = 1$ if $D_b^* < 0$; otherwise $I(D_b^* < 0) = 0$. Then a (generalized) p-value is $\hat{p} = 2\min(\tilde{p}, 1 - \tilde{p})$. This will be called method DUB.

A positive feature of method DUB is that it can have higher power than method DY, but at the expense of higher execution time. Execution time can be reduced substantially if a multicore processor is available.

Method DTAP is exactly like method TAP in Section 12.2.4, only it compares trimmed means using the method in Section 5.9.5 (Wilcox, 2014). That is, it uses a non-bootstrap method for comparing the trimmed means of two dependent variables. DTAP estimates p_c (the critical p-value as defined in Section 12.2.3) assuming that the four variables are independent, each having a standard normal distribution with a common correlation $\rho = 0.0$. There are indications that power might be improved if the correlation among the variables under study could be taken into account when estimating p_c , but this issue is in need of more study.

One remaining issue is how to deal with two covariates when there is curvature. Simple modifications of the methods in Section 12.3, aimed at dealing with dependent groups, might be used. But more extensive simulation are needed before such modifications can be recommended.

12.5.4 R Functions *Dancova*, *Dancovapb*, *DancovaUB* and *Dancdet*

The R function

```
Dancova(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, tr = 0.2, plotit = TRUE, pts = NA,
sm = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out, DIF = FALSE, LP = TRUE, xlab = 'X',
ylab = 'Y', pch1 = '*', pch2 = '+', ...)
```

performs method DY, where the arguments y_1 and y_2 are dependent variables. By default, the marginal trimmed means are compared. Setting the argument DIF=T, difference scores are used instead.

The R function

```
Dancovapb(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, est = hd, tr = 0.2, nboot = 500, pr = TRUE,
SEED = TRUE, plotit = TRUE, pts = NA, sm = FALSE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out,
DIF = FALSE, na.rm = TRUE, ...)
```

is the same as Dancova, only a bootstrap method is used when comparing the marginal measures of location or when testing hypotheses based on the difference scores. If there are missing values, setting na.rm=FALSE and DIF=FALSE, the function uses all of the available data rather than performing case wise deletion.

The R function

```
DancovaUB(x1 = NULL, y1 = NULL, x2 = NULL, y2 = NULL, xy = NULL, fr1 = 1,
fr2 = 1, p.crit = NULL, est = tmean, tr = 0.2, plotit = TRUE, xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y',
qvals = c(0.25, 0.5, 0.75), sm = FALSE, xout = FALSE, eout = FALSE, outfun = out,
DIF = FALSE, LP = TRUE, nboot = 500, SEED = TRUE, nreps = 2000, MC = TRUE,
cpp = FALSE, SCAT = TRUE, pch1 = '*', pch2 = '+', nmin = 12, q = 0.5, ...)
```

applies method DUB. Setting the argument cpp=TRUE can reduce execution time considerably, assuming that the R package WRScpp has been installed. By default, MC=TRUE, meaning that the function uses parallel processing via the R package parallel, assuming that a multicore processor is available.

■ Example

Consider again the Well Elderly 2 study. Another goal was to assess the impact of intervention on a measure of perceived health (SF36) before and after intervention using the cortisol awakening response (CAR) as a covariate. [Figure 12.4](#) shows a plot of the smooths. Prior to intervention, the regression line appears to be reasonably straight, but after intervention this is no longer the case. Assuming the data prior to intervention are stored in $xx1$ (CAR) and $yy1$ (SF36), and the data after intervention are stored in $xx2$ and $yy2$, the command

```
DancovaUB(xx1,yy1,xx2,yy2,cpp=T)
```

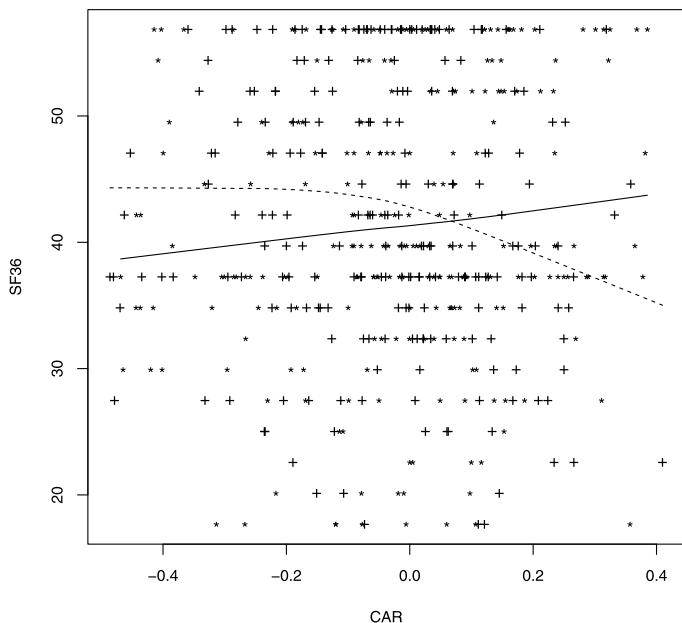


Figure 12.4: The regression lines for predicting the typical SF36 score as a function of the CAR. The solid line is the regression line prior to intervention and the dashed line is the regression line after intervention. Points prior to intervention are indicated by an ‘o.’

performs method DUB and creates the plot shown in Figure 12.4. The function returns a significant result for $CAR = -0.099$ and 0.317 . So the results suggest that when the CAR is negative, perceived health is higher after intervention. For CAR positive, at some point the reverse is true.

The R function

```
Dancdet(x1, y1, x2, y2, fr1 = 1, fr2 = 1, tr = 0.2, DIF = TRUE, tr = 0.2, plotit = TRUE,
plot.dif = FALSE, pts = NA, sm = FALSE, pr = TRUE, xout = FALSE, outfun = out,
MC = FALSE, npts = 25, p.crit = NULL, nreps = 2000, SEED = TRUE, SCAT = TRUE,
xlab = 'X', ylab = 'Y', pch1 = '*', pch2 = '+', ...)
```

applies method DTAP. The argument `npts` controls how many covariate values will be used. The argument `p.crit` corresponds to p_c , the adjusted level so that the probability of one or more Type I errors is approximately equal to the value given by the argument `alpha`. By default `p.crit` is `NULL`, which means that it will be computed based on a simulation where the

number of replications is controlled via the argument `nreps`. Execution time can be high, but it can be reduced substantially if a multicore processor is available by setting the argument `MC=TRUE`. The estimate of p_c depends only on the sample size, so once it has been estimated, specifying its value via the argument `p.crit` results in very low execution time.

12.6 Exercises

1. Comment on the relative merits of using a linear model versus a smoother in the context of the analysis of covariance.
2. Repeat the first example in Section 12.2.6, only use the measure of meaningful activities stored in column 214 of the Well Elderly data. (The variable label is `MAPAFREQ_SUM` and gender is indicated by the variable `BK_SEX` in column 268. The data are stored on the author's web page in the files `B1` and `A3`.)
3. Using the same variables as in the last exercise, perform the analysis using the R function `ancova`.
4. Comment generally on why method `UB` and `TAP` can give different results. Why will they tend to differ in terms of power?
5. For the variables used in Exercise 2, use method `UB` and `TAP`. Explain any differences in the results.
6. Repeat the first example in Section 12.2.6, only use the measure of meaningful activities stored on column 253 of the Well Elderly data. (The variable label is `MAPAGLOB`.)
7. Repeat the previous exercise, but now use method `TAP`. Compare the plot returned by the R function `ancdet` to the plot created by `ancJN` and comment on the results. (Gender is indicated by the variable `BK_SEX` in column 268.)

Index

A

A-estimators, 98
affine equivariance, 246
affine equivariant, 533
affine invariance, 238
Agresti–Coull method, 230
all pairs power, 349
ANCOVA
 and least squares, 696
 method TG, 731
apparent error, 677

B

B robust, 30
backfitting algorithm, 647
bad leverage point, 521
bagdistance, 315
bagging, 632
band, 271
band depth, 271
Bartlett correction, 140
Beal’s method, 200
Benjamini–Hochberg Method,
 363
bias
 contamination, 568
binomial
 Agresti–Coull confidence
 interval, 230
 Beal, 201
 KMS method, 201
 Pratt’s confidence interval,
 229
 Storer–Kim, 200

biweight midvariance, 94
Bonferroni, 361
bootstrap
 0.632, 676, 677
 bagging, 632
 equal-tailed, 123
 p-value, 122
 parametric, 320
 percentile-t, 123
 sample, 46, 121
 symmetric confidence
 interval, 124
 wild, 510
bootstrap-t, 123
boxplot rule, 101
Bradley’s criterion, 141
breakdown point, 30
 defined, 31
BTS, 684
BWBMC, 461

C

C++, 13
central limit theorem, 2, 121
CHMCP, 394
classification analysis, 315
COBS, 636
Cohen’s d, 176
completely effective, 146
contaminated normal, 2
control
 comparisons with, 350
correlation
 and explanatory power, 666

compare, 672
heteroscedasticity, 489
non-overlapping, 673
OP, 505
overlapping, 673
Pearson, 485
product moment, 485
quantile, 668
skipped, 504, 505
type M, 490
type O, 490, 504
Winsorized, 496
correlations
 comparing, 513
covariance
 Winsorized, 223
cross-validation, 676
curse of dimensionality, 639,
 647, 725

D

data management
 bbw2list, 482
 bw2list, 454, 482
 fac2list, 326
depth
 0.5 contour, 242
 halfspace, 236
 Mahalanobis, 236
discriminate analysis, 315
dispersion
 measures of, 38, 97
drop in dispersion, 586

E

effect size, 176
dependent groups, 423
difference scores, 213
explanatory, 179, 322
one sample, 116
efficiency, 95
empirical likelihood, 140
Euclidean norm, 238
expected frequency curve, 50
explanatory power, 666
exponential tilting, 132

F

false discovery rate, 346, 363
familywise error rate, 348
finite sample breakdown point, 66
Fisher
 r-to-Z, 488
formula, 323
functional data, 270
 regression, 517
FWE, 348, 707

G

general linear model, 401, 576
general position, 238
generalized additive model, 647
generalized variance
 robust, 280
good leverage point, 521
gross error sensitivity, 30

H

h distribution, 108
half-slope ratio, 621
Hampel identifier, 89
hat matrix, 540
HC3 estimator, 523
HC4 estimator, 524
histogram
 shifted, 49
HMOM, 89

Hochberg

 multiple comparisons, 361
Hodges–Lehmann estimator, 37, 89
Hommel
 multiple comparisons, 362
Hommel’s Method, 362
homoscedasticity
 between groups, 606
 within groups, 606
Hotelling’s T^2 , 282

I

IBS, 682
ideal fourths, 99
indicator function, 668
indirect effect, 661, 662
infinitesimal robustness, 30
influence curve, 7
influence function, 7, 29
 defined, 30
interaction, 656
 and curvature, 656
 curvature, 653
 regression, 656
 three-way, 357
 two-way, 356
interactions, 649
IQR, 49

J

Johansen’s Method, 335
Johnson–Neyman method, 695

K

k-FWER, 363, 365
kernel smoothing, 625
KMS method, 201
Kolmogorov distance, 4
Kolmogorov–Smirnov, 149
Kruskal–Wallis test, 389

L

L-estimators, 70
least distance estimator, 579

least squares

 iteratively reweighted, 87
least upper bound, 28
leverage points, 521
likelihood ratio test, 586
linear mixed model, 433
location
 defined, 26
 equivariance, 26
 invariance, 38
 tau, 87

LOESS, 667

logistic regression model, 573
longitudinal data, 687
LSB, 377

M

M-measure of location, 35
MAD, 39, 50
MADN, 50
Mahalanobis
 depth, 236
 distance, 236
Mallow’s C_p , 672
MANOVA, 400
margin of error, 368
masking, 100
MBD, 272
MCAR, 223
MCD estimator, 247
Mean Deviation from the Mean, 38
Mean Deviation from the Median, 38
medcouple, 103
median
 sample, 8
 spatial, 278
 tied values, 136, 169
 Tukey, 250
median absolute deviation, 39, 50
medians
 global test, dependent, 435

-
- pairwise, dependent, 438, 444
 mediated effect, 662
 mediation analysis, 661
 explanatory power, 682
 mediation effect, 661
 MGV estimator, 549
 minimum variance vector, 248
 missing values, 222, 433
 mixed linear model, 433
 mixed normal, 2
 MM-estimator, 667
 moderator analysis, 656
 modified band depth, 272
 modified one-step M-estimator, 89
 MOM, 89
 Morgan–Pitman test, 227
 multiple comparisons
 Benjamini–Hochberg, 363
 Bonferroni, 361
 Hochberg, 361
 Hommel, 363
 k-FWER, 363, 365
 Rom, 361
 SR, 383
 multivariate analysis of variance, 400
 MVV, 248
- N**
- nested design, 409
 nonnegative garrote, 672
 normal distribution
 contaminated, 2
 mixed, 2
 normality
 testing for, 6
- O**
- OLS, 526
 one-step M-estimator, 85
 one-wild distribution, 91
 OP-estimator, 277, 549
 scatter, 277
- order statistic, 57
 outliers
 minimum generalized variance, 263
 projection method, 266
 outside rate per observation, 101, 263
- P**
- p-value
 and three decision rule, 116
 generalized, 122
 parametric bootstrap, 320
 partially effective, 146
 PCA, 302
 percentage bend midvariance, 96
 power
 all pairs, 349
 Pratt's method, 229
 prediction error, 676
 principal component
 scores, 303, 307
 principal components, 303
 HRVB, 306
 Maronna, 305
 OP, 306
 PPCA, 307
 SPCA, 305
 spherical, 305
 projection distance, 242, 243
- Q**
- q -quantile range, 39
 qualitative robustness, 27
 quality index, 296
 quantiles
 tied values, 136
- R**
- R
 acbinomci, 231
 adcom, 654
 ajout, 104
 adjoutbox, 104
- adpchk, 664
 adrnl, 649
 adtest, 653
 akerd, 53
 apk.effect, 180
 ancbbpb, 716
 ancboot, 716
 ancdes, 724, 727
 ancdet, 712
 ancdet2C, 730
 ancdet2C.pv, 730
 ancdifplot, 717
 ancGLOB, 718
 ancGLOB_pv_C, 14
 ancGpar, 613
 ancGparMC, 613
 ancJN, 699
 ancJNmp, 700
 ancJNmpcp, 701
 anclin, 700
 ancmg, 725
 ancmg1, 718
 ancmppb, 725
 ancova, 711
 ancovamp, 723
 ancovampG, 724
 ancovaUB, 712
 ancovaUB.pv, 712
 ancovaWMW, 711
 ancpb, 716
 ancsm, 734
 anova.nestA, 412
 anova.nestAP, 413
 apanova, 449
 b1way, 380
 bbbmcp, 356
 bbbmcppb, 366
 bbbtrim, 361
 bbmcp, 355
 bbmcppb, 365
 bbmcppb.sub, 366
 bbtrim, 360
 bbw2list, 21, 482
 bbwmcnp, 483
 bbwmcppb, 484

bbwtrim, 481	con3way, 357, 361	FBplot, 272
bbwtrimbt, 481	conCON, 351	fdepth, 242
bd1way, 434	corb, 504	fdepthv2, 242
bdm, 391	corCOMmcP, 675	fdepthv2_C, 14
bdm2way, 397	correg, 534	Flplot, 273
bi2CR, 202	cov.mve, 261, 505	Flplot2g, 372
bi2KMS, 202	covmcd, 262	formula, 323
bicov, 499	covmve, 262	func.out, 273
binband, 203	COVreg, 559	funloc, 274
binomci, 231	cumrelf, 203	funlocpb, 274
binomLCO, 231	D.akp.effect, 120, 215	funyuenpb, 372
bireg, 558	Dancdet, 739	g2plot, 162
bivar, 96	Dancols, 736	g5plot, 161
bkreg, 638	Dancova, 737	gamplot, 649
bmean, 90	Dancovapb, 738	gamplotINT, 649
bmp, 195	DancovaUB, 738	ghdist, 114
bmreg, 545	Dancts, 736	ghtrim, 115
bootdpci, 221	dcov, 251	glm, 575
bootse, 47	ddep, 435	glmrob, 576
box1way, 328	ddepGMC_C, 14, 435	gvar, 235
boxplot, 102	depth, 241	gvar2g, 288
bprm, 449	depth2, 241	gvarg, 280
btrim, 333	depthg2, 298	gyreg, 555
bw2list, 21, 403, 454, 481	devtools, 13	hc4test, 527
bwamcp, 463	dfried, 302	hc4wmc, 614
bwbmcp, 463	difQpcf, 211	hc4wttest, 527
bwimcp, 464, 465	difreg, 618	hd, 72
bwimcpES, 464	difregOLS, 618	hdci, 138
bwmcp, 463	disc2.chi.sq, 203	hdpb, 123
bwmcppb, 465	disc2com, 203	hdseb, 73
bwrmpc, 472	disc2comSK, 203	hochberg, 369
bwtrim, 451	dmean, 250	hotel1.tr, 284
bwtrimbt, 456	dmedian, 245, 256	hratio, 622
bwwmcp, 484	dmedpb, 444	idealf, 99
bwwmcppb, 484	Dqcomhd, 211	idealfQR, 100
bwwtrim, 481	Dqdif, 211	idrange, 100
bwwtrimbt, 481	DregG, 618	indt, 512
chreg, 548	DregGOLS, 618	indtall, 512
cid, 195	dtrimpb, 444	interaction.plot, 274
cidM, 396	ees.ci, 180	kdplot, 53
cidmulv2, 395	esmcp, 323	kercon, 658
cidv2, 195	fac2BBMlist, 16, 408	kerden, 52
cobs2g, 718	fac2list, 15, 16, 18, 326,	kerreg, 627
comdvar, 228	345	kerSORT, 52
con2way, 355	fac2Mlist, 16, 408	khomreg, 620

Kmeans, 314	M2gbt, 187	mscor, 509
Kmeans.grp, 314	m2l, 22	msmed, 170
knn, 316	M2m.loc, 23	msmedse, 66
KNNDist, 316	mad, 78	MULAOVp, 403
L1medcen, 279	MARest, 256	MULMreg, 579
l2drmc1, 219	mat2grp, 20, 286	MULR.yhat, 580
l2v, 22	matrix2list, 22	MULtr.anova, 403
larsR, 680	matsplit, 19, 286	MULtsreg, 581
lincon, 349	mbmreg, 555	mulwmw, 291
linconb, 359	mcdcen, 262	mulwmwv2, 292
linconbt, 359	mcp.nestA, 412	mvecen, 262
linconnm, 384	mcp.nestAP, 413	mwmw, 294
linconMpb, 407	mcp2a, 388	na.omit, 23
linconpb, 365	mcp2atm, 355	ogk, 255
lindepbt, 444	mcp2med, 355	ols.plot.inter, 657
lindm, 437	mcp3atm, 357	ols.pred.ci, 526
lintest, 651	mcp3med, 357	ols1way, 614
list.dif, 424	mcpKadjp, 364	ols1wayISO, 614
list2mat, 22	mcpOV, 438	ols2ci, 613
lloc, 60	mdepreg, 551	olshc4, 527
lmrob, 547	mean, 59	olshc4.inter, 660
lmsreg, 535	med.effect, 181	olsJ2, 614
loc2dif, 219	med1way, 330	olsJmcp, 614
loc2plot, 197	med2mcp, 366	olsWmcp, 615
logadr, 649	med2way, 341	onesampb, 122
logreg, 575	med3mcp, 366	onestep, 86
logreg.plot, 575	medcurve, 274	opreg, 549
logrsm, 638	medhd2g, 186	opregpb, 600
logSM, 638	medind, 513	out, 102, 262
logSMPred, 638	medpb, 366	out3d, 269
long2g, 689	mest, 80	outbox, 102
long2mat, 21	mestci, 132	outfun, 314
longcov2mat, 21	mestse, 83	outmgv, 265
longreg, 689	mestseb, 84	outmgvad, 270
longreg.plot, 690	mgvar_C, 14	outmgv_C, 14
lplot, 626	mgvcov, 279	outpca, 308
lplot, explanatory power,	mgvmean, 280	outpro, 268
667	mgvreg, 549	outpread, 270
lplot2g, 717	mjse, 71	outpro_C, 14
lpot.pred, 627	mlrGtest, 601	p.adjust, 364
lsqs3, 298	mlrreg, 579	pairdepb, 429
ltareg, 537	MMReg, 548	pbad2way, 388
ltsgreg, 536	mom, 90	pbadepth, 380
ltsreg, 536	momci, 133	pball, 495
m2ci, 186	Mregilde, 580	pbcor, 493

pbmcp, 385	rdplot, 53	rmul, 114
pbvar, 98	reg.plot.inter, 658	rngh, 115
pcorb, 504	reg1mcp, 614	robPCA, 308
pcorhc4, 504	reg1way, 613	robPCA\$, 308
pdclose, 643	reg1wayISO, 613	RobRsq, 669
pdepth, 244	reg2ci, 612	rplot, 633, 640
pdis, 243	reg2ciMC, 612	rplot2g, 711
pdisMC, 244	reg2difplot, 702	rplotsm, 642
pmodchk, 665	reg2g.p2plot, 701	rqfit, 561
Ppca, 309	reg2plot, 701	rqttest, 597
Ppca.summary, 309	regci, 593	run3hat, 641
prcomp, 304	regci.inter, 660	rung3d, 641
prodepth, 245	regciMC, 593	rung3hat, 642
Q2anova, 341	regcits, 594	rungen, 633
q2by2, 367	regGmcp, 613	runhat, 633, 634
q2gci, 160	regIVcom, 686	runm3d, 641
Q3anova, 346	reglev, 571	runmean, 633
Qancsm, 734	regp2plot, 535	runmean2g, 711
Qanova, 330	regpca, 305	runpd, 643
qci, 138	regplot, 534	runsm2g, 659
qcipb, 139	regpre, 678	runYhat, 634, 641
qcomhd, 160	regpreCV, 679	s2plot, 203
qcomhdMC, 160	regse, 606	sample, 46
qcor, 669	regtest, 590	scor, 508
qcorp1, 669	regYband, 605	scorci, 509
qdec2, 211	regYci, 604	scorciMC, 509
qdmcpdif, 445	regYciCV, 604	sdwe, 253
qest, 72	regYhat, 604	shiftddh, 210
qhat, 181	relplot, 260	shiftdh, 160
qhdsms, 636	rfanova, 391	sint, 139
qhdsms2g, 717	Rfit, 564	sintv2, 139
qhomt, 620	Rfit.est, 564	skerd, 52
qint, 139	rfitv2, 564	skip, 279
Qmcp, 366	rimul, 400	skip_C, 14
qmjci, 138	riplot, 659	skipcov, 279
qplotreg, 561	rm2miss, 227	sm2strv7, 687
qrchk, 597	rm3mcp, 483	smcorcom, 671
qreg, 560	rmanova, 418	smean, 278
Qreg, 561	rmanovab, 427	smean2, 286
qregci, 597	rmbla, 253	smeancr, 283
qregplots, 561	rmblo, 572	smeancrv2, 283
qse, 69	rmdzero, 440	smgvcr, 285
qsmcobs, 637	rmmcp, 424	smmcrt, 350
qsplitt, 20	rmmcppb, 443	smmcrt01, 350
rananova, 376	rmmismcp, 226, 424, 435	snmreg, 553

-
- spag.plot, 273
 spat, 279
 SPCA, 308
 spear, 502
 split, 15
 splot, 53
 splotg2, 203
 spmcpa, 463
 spmcpb, 464
 spmcpi, 465
 sppba, 458
 sppbb, 458
 sppbi, 459
 stein1.tr, 426
 stein2.tr, 426
 stepmcp, 353
 stsreg, 553
 stsreg_C, 14
 t1way, 323
 t1waybt, 331
 t1wayF, 327
 t1wayv2, 323
 t2way, 18, 337
 t3way, 343
 tau, 502
 tauloc, 88
 taureg, 502
 tauvar, 99
 tbs, 249
 ticktype, 627
 TKmeans, 314
 Tkmeans.grp, 314
 tmcppb, 365
 tmean, 60
 trimci, 120
 trimcibt, 130
 trimcimul, 424
 trimciv2, 120
 trimpb, 130
 trimse, 65
 trq, 561
 ts2str, 686
 tshdreg, 534
 tshdreg_C, 14, 534
 tsplit, 452
 tsplittb, 456
 tsreg, 533
 tsreg, explanatory power, 667
 tsreg_C, 14
 tsregCPP, 534
 tssnmreg, 555
 tstsreg, 555
 tstsreg_C, 14
 twobici, 202
 twobinom, 201
 twocor, 514
 twoDcorR, 676
 twoDNOV, 676
 twohc4cor, 514
 twopcor, 514
 TWOOpNOV, 675
 TWOOpNOVPV, 675
 TWOOpov, 675
 TWOOpovPV, 675
 tworegbw, 614
 unidepth, 241
 unstack, 16
 wilcox.test, 203
 win, 65
 winall, 497
 winci, 120
 wincor, 497
 winmean, 65
 winreg, 558
 winse, 65
 winvar, 65
 wlogreg, 575
 wlogregci, 594
 wmcppb, 444
 wmwanova, 395
 wmwloc, 197
 wmwpb, 197
 wmwplot, 197
 WRS package, 13
 WRS2 package, 13
 WRScpp, 13
 wwmcp, 466
 wwwmcppb, 466, 467
 wwtrim, 466
 wwtrimbt, 466
 wwwmcp, 483
 wwwmcppb, 484
 wwwtrim, 481
 wwwtrimbt, 481
 xout, 314, 561, 575
 xyplot, 690
 ydbt, 217
 yuen, 169
 yuend, 215
 yuendv2, 215
 yuenv2, 180
 YYanova, 405
 YYmcp, 408
 zdist, 245
 zoudepth, 245
 R Studio, 13
 r-to-Z transformation, 488
 Rademacher, 524
 Rallfun, 12
 rank-based, 190
 rdepth, 551
 regression
 comparing dependent groups, 616
 comparing independent groups, 606
 HC4, 524
 interactions, 649
 least median of squares, 535
 least-trimmed squares, 535
 logistic model, 573
 MGV, 549
 multivariate, 577
 OP, 549
 outliers, 571
 standard error, 606
 STS, 552
 TSTS, 554
 regression outlier, 521
 resistance, 66
 ridge regression, 672
 RMBA estimator, 253
 robust, 25

Rom's Method, 361
Rust–Fligner test, 389

S

S-estimators, 248
saddlepoint approximation, 132
scale
 equivariance, 26, 38
 measures of, 38
scale estimator, 93
sequentially rejective, 361
SHB, 377
shift function, 147
sign invariance, 38
Silverman
 rule of thumb, 49
slash distribution, 91
SM, 686
smooth, 624
smoother, 624
 for quantiles, 635
 kernel, 625
 LOWESS, 625
 running-interval, 628
 splines, 636
SNM method, 552
spaghetti plot, 273, 274
spatial median, 278
spherical PCA, 305

splines, 629, 636
SR, 383
step-down, 349, 364
Storer–Kim, 200
strength of association
 explanatory, 666
sup, 28
supremum, 28

T

tau measure of location, 87
tau measure of variation, 98
TBS estimator, 248
three decision rule, 116
TPM, 721
triefficiency, 95
trimmed mean
 confidence interval, 116
truncated product, 721
Tukey–Anscombe plot, 654
Tukey's decision rule, 116, 166,
 207
Tukey's median, 250
two-way ANOVA
 fac2list, 18, 19

V

varfun, 667
variance
 generalized, 235

W

W-estimators, 86
Wald scores, 586
Wald statistic, 524
Walsh averages, 89
Welch test, 166
Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney, 191,
 712

Winsorize, 32

Winsorized
 covariance, 223
 distribution, 32
 mean, 32, 62
 sample, 62
 sample mean, 62
 sample variance, 63
 variance, 39

Winsorized expected values, 41

Winsorized mean
 confidence interval, 119
Winsorized regression, 557
WMCD estimator, 277
WMVE estimator, 277
WMWAOV, 394
WRSC, 12
WRScpp, 14

Y

Yuen's method, 166

References

- Acion, L., Peterson, J. J., Temple, S., & Arndt, S. (2006). Probabilistic index: An intuitive non-parametric approach to measuring the size of treatment effects. *Statistics in Medicine*, 25, 591–602.
- Adrover, J., & Salibian-Barrera, M. (2010). Globally robust confidence intervals for simple linear regression. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 2899–2913.
- Adrover, J., & Yohai, V. (2002). Projection estimates of multivariate location. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 1760–1781.
- Agresti, A., & Caffo, B. (2000). Simple and effective confidence intervals for proportions and differences of proportions result from adding two successes and two failures. *American Statistician*, 54, 280–288.
- Agresti, A., & Coull, B. A. (1998). Approximate is better than “exact” for interval estimation of binomial proportions. *American Statistician*, 52, 119–126.
- Agresti, A., & Pendergast, J. (1986). Comparing mean ranks for repeated measures data. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 15, 1417–1433.
- Agulló, J., Croux, C., & Van Aelst, S. (2008). The multivariate least trimmed squares estimator. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 99, 311–338.
- Akritis, M. G. (1990). The rank transform method in some two-factor designs. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 73–78.
- Akritis, M. G., & Arnold, S. F. (1994). Fully nonparametric hypotheses for factorial designs I: Multivariate repeated measures designs. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 336–343.
- Akritis, M. G., Arnold, S. F., & Brunner, E. (1997). Nonparametric hypotheses and rank statistics for unbalanced factorial designs. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 258–265.
- Akritis, M. G., Murphy, S. A., & LaValley, M. P. (1995). The Theil–Sen estimator with doubly censored data and applications to astronomy. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 170–177.
- Algina, J., Keselman, H. J., & Penfield, R. D. (2005). An alternative to Cohen’s standardized mean difference effect size: A robust parameter and confidence interval in the two independent groups case. *Psychological Methods*, 10, 317–328.
- Algina, J., & Olejnik, S. F. (1984). Implementing the Welch–James procedure with factorial designs. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 44, 39–48.
- Algina, J., Oshima, T. C., & Lin, W.-Y. (1994). Type I error rates for Welch’s test and James’s second-order test under nonnormality and inequality of variance when there are two groups. *Journal of Educational and Behavioral Statistics*, 19, 275–291.
- Ammann, L. P. (1993). Robust singular value decompositions: A new approach to projection pursuit. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 505–514.
- Anaya-Izquierdo, K., Critchley, F., & Vines, K. (2011). Orthogonal simple component analysis: A new, exploratory approach. *Annals of Applied Statistics*, 5, 486–522.
- Andrews, D. F., Bickel, P. J., Hampel, F. R., Huber, P. J., Rogers, W. H., & Tukey, J. W. (1972). *Robust estimates of location*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Arcones, M. A., Chen, Z., & Gine, E. (1994). Estimators related to U-processes with applications to multivariate medians: Asymptotic normality. *Annals of Statistics*, 44, 587–601.

References

- Arnold, B. C., Balakrishnan, N., & Nagaraja, H. N. (1992). *A first course in order statistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Atkinson, A. C. (1994). Fast very robust methods for the detection of multiple outliers. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 1329–1339.
- Babu, G. J. (1986). A note on bootstrapping the variance of sample quantile. *Annals of the Institute of Statistical Mathematics*, 38, 439–443. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/BF02482530>.
- Bai, Z.-D., Chen, X. R., Miao, B. Q., & Rao, C. R. (1990). Asymptotic theory of least distance estimate in multivariate linear model. *Statistics*, 21, 503–519.
- Bai, Z.-D., & He, X. (1999). Asymptotic distributions of the maximal depth estimators for regression and multivariate location. *Annals of Statistics*, 27, 1616–1637.
- Bailey, B. J. R. (1980). Accurate normalizing transformations of Student's t variate. *Applied Statistics*, 29, 304–306.
- Bakker, M., & Wicherts, J. M. (2014). Outlier removal, sum scores, and the inflation of the type I error rate in t tests. *Psychological Methods*, 19, 409–427.
- Balakrishnan, N., & Kannan, N. (2003). Variance of a Winsorized mean when the sample contains multiple outliers. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 32, 139–150.
- Banik, S., & Kibria, B. M. G. (2010). Comparison of some parametric and nonparametric type one sample confidence intervals for estimating the mean of a positively skewed distribution. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 39, 361–380.
- Bansal, N. K., & Bhandry, M. (1994). Robust M-estimation of the intraclass correlation coefficient. *Australian Journal of Statistics*, 36, 287–301.
- Barber, R. F., & Candès, E. J. (2015). Controlling the false discovery rate via knockoffs. *Annals of Statistics*, 43, 2055–2085.
- Barrett, J. P. (1974). The coefficient of determination—Some limitations. *Annals of Statistics*, 28, 19–20.
- Barry, D. (1993). Testing for additivity of a regression function. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 235–254.
- Basu, S., & DasGupta, A. (1995). Robustness of standard confidence intervals for location parameters under departures from normality. *Annals of Statistics*, 23, 1433–1442.
- Bathke, A. C., Solomon, W. H., & Madden, L. V. (2008). How to compare small multivariate samples using non-parametric tests. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 4951–4965.
- Baumgartner, W., Weiss, P., & Schindler, H. (1998). A nonparametric test for the general two-sample problem. *Biometrics*, 54, 1129–1135.
- Beal, S. L. (1987). Asymptotic confidence intervals for the difference between two binomial parameters for use with small samples. *Biometrics*, 43, 941–950.
- Beasley, T. M. (2000). Nonparametric tests for analyzing interactions among intra-block ranks in multiple group repeated measures designs. *Journal of Educational and Behavioral Statistics*, 25, 20–59.
- Beasley, T. M., & Zumbo, B. D. (2003). Comparison of aligned Friedman rank and parametric methods for testing interactions in split-plot designs. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 42, 569–593.
- Bechhofer, R. E., & Dunnett, C. W. (1982). Multiple comparisons for orthogonal contrasts. *Technometrics*, 24, 213–222.
- Becker, C., & Gather, U. (1999). The masking breakdown point of multivariate outlier detection rules. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 947–955.
- Becker, R. A., Chambers, J. M., & Wilks, A. R. (1988). *The new S language*. Pacific Grove, CA: Wadsworth & Brooks/Cole.
- Bedall, P. J., & Zimmermann, H. (1979). AS 143: The median centre. *Applied Statistics*, 28, 325–328.
- Bellman, R. E. (1961). *Adaptive control processes*. Princeton, NJ: Princeton University Press.
- Belsley, D. A., Kuh, E., & Welsch, R. E. (1980). *Regression diagnostics: Identifying influential data and sources of collinearity*. New York: Wiley.
- Ben, M. G., Martínez, E., & Yohai, V. J. (2006). Robust estimation for the multivariate linear model based on a τ -scale. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 90, 1600–1622.

- Benjamini, Y. (1983). Is the t test really conservative when the parent distribution is long-tailed? *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 78, 645–654.
- Benjamini, Y., & Hochberg, Y. (1995). Controlling the false discovery rate: A practical and powerful approach to multiple testing. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 57, 289–300.
- Benjamini, Y., & Yekutieli, D. (2001). The control of the false discovery rate in multiple testing under dependency. *Annals of Statistics*, 29, 1165–1188.
- Berger, R. L. (1996). More powerful tests from confidence interval p values. *American Statistician*, 50, 314–318.
- Berk, K. N., & Booth, D. E. (1995). Seeing a curve in multiple regression. *Technometrics*, 37, 385–398.
- Bernhardson, C. (1975). Type I error rates when multiple comparison procedures follow a significant F test of ANOVA. *Biometrics*, 31, 719–724.
- Bernholdt, T., & Fischer, P. (2004). The complexity of computing the MCD-estimator. *Theoretical Computer Science*, 326, 383–393.
- Bertsimas, D., & Mazumder, R. (2014). *Annals of Statistics*, 42, 2494–2525.
- Bessel, F. W. (1818). *Fundamenta astronomiae pro anno MDCCCLV deducta ex observationibus viri incomparabilis James Bradley in specula astronomica Grenovicensi per annos 1750–1762 institutis*. Königsberg: Friedrich Nicolovius.
- Bianco, A. M., & Martínez, E. (2009). Robust testing in the logistic regression model. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 53, 4095–4105.
- Bianco, A. M., & Yohai, V. J. (1996). Robust estimation in the logistic regression model. In H. Reider (Ed.), *Lecture notes in statistics: Vol. 109. Robust statistics, data analysis, and computer intensive methods* (pp. 17–34). New York: Springer.
- Bickel, P. J., & Lehmann, E. L. (1975). Descriptive statistics for nonparametric models II. Location. *Annals of Statistics*, 3, 1045–1069.
- Bickel, P. J., & Lehmann, E. L. (1976). Descriptive statistics for nonparametric models III. Dispersion. *Annals of Statistics*, 4, 1139–1158.
- Biesanz, J. C., Falk, C. F., & Savalei, V. (2010). Assessing mediational models: Testing and interval estimation for indirect effects. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 45, 661–701.
- Billor, N., & Kiral, G. (2008). A comparison of multiple outlier detection methods for regression data. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 37, 521–545.
- Birkes, D., & Dodge, Y. (1993). *Alternative methods of regression*. New York: Wiley.
- Bishara, A., & Hittner, J. A. (2012). Testing the significance of a correlation with nonnormal data: Comparison of Pearson, Spearman, transformation, and resampling approaches. *Psychological Methods*, 17, 399–417.
- Bjerve, S., & Doksum, K. (1993). Correlation curves: Measures of association as functions of covariate values. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 890–902.
- Blair, R. C., & Lawson, S. B. (1982). Another look at the robustness of the product-moment correlation coefficient to population non-normality. *Florida Journal of Educational Research*, 24, 11–15.
- Blyth, C. R. (1986). Approximate binomial confidence limits. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 81, 843–855.
- Boente, G., & Pardo-Fernández, J. C. (2016). Robust testing for superiority between two regression curves. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 97, 151–168.
- Boente, G., & Rodriguez, D. (2010). Robust inference in generalized partially linear models. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 2942–2966.
- Boente, G., Ruiz, M., & Zamar, R. H. (2010). On a robust local estimator for the scale function in heteroscedastic nonparametric regression. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 80, 1185–1195.
- Boik, R. J. (1987). The Fisher-Pitman permutation test: A non-robust alternative to the normal theory F test when variances are heterogeneous. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 40, 26–42.
- Bondell, H. D. (2005). Minimum distance estimation for the logistic regression model. *Biometrika*, 92, 724–731.
- Bondell, H. D. (2008). A characteristic function approach to the biased sampling model, with application to robust logistic regression. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 138, 742–755.

References

- Bondell, H. D., & Stefanski, L. A. (2013). Efficient robust regression via two-stage generalized empirical likelihood. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 108, 644–655.
- Bonett, D. G., & Price, R. M. (2002). Statistical inference for a linear function of medians: Confidence intervals, hypothesis testing, and sample size requirements. *Psychological Methods*, 7, 370–383.
- Booth, J. G., & Sarkar, S. (1998). Monte Carlo approximation of bootstrap variances. *American Statistician*, 52, 354–357.
- Borkowf, C. B. (2002). Computing the nonnull asymptotic variance and the asymptotic relative efficiency of Spearman's rank correlation. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 39, 271–286.
- Bowman, A., & Young, S. (1996). Graphical comparison of nonparametric curves. *Applied Statistics*, 45, 83–98.
- Box, G. E. P. (1954). Some theorems on quadratic forms applied in the study of analysis of variance problems, I. Effect of inequality of variance in the one-way model. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, 25, 290–302.
- Bradley, J. V. (1978). Robustness? *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 31, 144–152.
- Breiman, L. (1995). Better subset regression using the nonnegative garrote. *Technometrics*, 37, 373–384.
- Breiman, L. (1996a). Heuristics of instability and stabilization in model selection. *Annals of Statistics*, 24, 2350–2383.
- Breiman, L. (1996b). Bagging predictors. *Machine Learning*, 24, 123–140.
- Breiman, L. (2001). Random forests. *Machine Learning*, 45, 5–32.
- Brown, B. M. (1983). Statistical uses of the spatial median. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 45, 25–30.
- Brown, L., & Li, X. (2005). Confidence intervals for two sample binomial distribution. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 130, 359–375.
- Brown, L. D., Cai, T. T., & DasGupta, A. (2002). Confidence intervals for a binomial proportion and asymptotic expansions. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 160–201.
- Brown, M. B., & Forsythe, A. (1974). The small sample behavior of some statistics which test the equality of several means. *Technometrics*, 16, 129–132.
- Bruffaerts, C., Verardi, V., & Vermandele, C. (2014). A generalized boxplot for skewed and heavy-tailed distributions. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 95, 110–117.
- Brunner, E., & Denker, M. (1994). Rank statistics under dependent observations and applications to factorial designs. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 42, 353–378.
- Brunner, E., & Dette, H. (1992). Rank procedures for the two-factor mixed model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 87, 884–888.
- Brunner, E., Dette, H., & Munk, A. (1997). Box-type approximations in non-parametric factorial designs. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 1494–1502.
- Brunner, E., Domhof, S., & Langer, F. (2002). *Nonparametric analysis of longitudinal data in factorial experiments*. New York: Wiley.
- Brunner, E., & Munzel, U. (2000). The nonparametric Behrens–Fisher problem: Asymptotic theory and small-sample approximation. *Biometrical Journal*, 42, 17–25.
- Brunner, E., Munzel, U., & Puri, M. L. (1999). Rank-score tests in factorial designs with repeated measures. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 70, 286–317.
- Brunner, E., & Puri, M. L. (2002). A class of rank-score tests in factorial designs. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 103, 331–360.
- Brys, G., Hubert, M., & Struyf, A. (2004). A robust measure of skewness. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 13, 996–1017.
- Bühlmann, P., & Yu, B. (2002). Analyzing bagging. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 927–961.
- Buja, A., Hastie, T., & Tibshirani, R. (1989). Linear smoothers and additive models (with discussion). *Annals of Statistics*, 17, 453–555.
- Büning, H. (2001). Kolmogorov–Smirnov and Cramer von Mises type two-sample tests with various weights. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 30, 847–866.

- Butler, R. W., Davies, P. L., & Jhun, M. (1993). Asymptotics for the minimum covariance determinant estimator. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 1385–1400.
- Cantoni, E., & Ronchetti, E. (2001). Robust inference for generalized linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 96, 1022–1030.
- Carling, K. (2000). Resistant outlier rules and the non-Gaussian case. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 33, 249–258.
- Carroll, R. J., & Pedersen, S. (1993). On robustness in the logistic regression model. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 55, 693–706.
- Carroll, R. J., & Ruppert, D. (1982). Robust estimation in heteroscedastic linear models. *Annals of Statistics*, 10, 429–441.
- Carroll, R. J., & Ruppert, D. (1988). *Transformation and weighting in regression*. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- Carroll, R. J., & Welsh, A. H. (1988). A note on asymmetry and robustness in linear regression. *American Statistician*, 42, 285–287.
- Cerioli, A. (2010). Multivariate outlier detection with high-breakdown estimators. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 105, 147–156.
- Cerioli, A., & Farcomeni, A. (2011). Error rates for multivariate outlier detection. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 55, 544–553.
- Ceyhan, E., & Goad, C. L. (2009). A comparison of analysis of covariate-adjusted residuals and analysis of covariance. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 2019–2038.
- Chakraborty, B. (1999). On multivariate median regression. *Bernoulli*, 5, 683–703.
- Chakraborty, B. (2001). On affine equivariant multivariate quantiles. *Annals of the Institute of Statistical Mathematics*, 53, 380–403.
- Chambers, J. M. (1998). *Programming with data. A guide to the S language*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Chambers, J. M., & Hastie, T. J. (1992). *Statistical models in S*. New York: Chapman & Hall.
- Chang, W. H., McKean, J. W., Naranjo, J. D., & Sheather, S. J. (1999). High-breakdown rank regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 205–219.
- Chaouch, M., & Goga, C. (2010). Design-based estimation for geometric quantiles with applications to outlier detection. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 54, 2214–2229.
- Chatterjee, A., & Lahiri, S. N. (2013). Rates of convergence of the adaptive LASSO estimators to the Oracle distribution and higher order refinements by the bootstrap. *Annals of Statistics*, 41, 1232–1259.
- Chatterjee, S., & Hadi, A. S. (1988). *Sensitivity analysis in linear regression analysis*. New York: Wiley.
- Chaudhuri, P. (1996). On a geometric notion of quantiles for multivariate data. *Journal of the American Association*, 91, 862–872.
- Chen, H. (1990). The accuracy of approximate intervals for a binomial parameter. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 514–518.
- Chen, L. (1995). Testing the mean of skewed distributions. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 767–772.
- Chen, S. X., & Van Keilegom, I. (2009). A review on empirical likelihood methods for regression. *Test*, 18, 415–447.
- Chen, S. X., & Zhong, P.-S. (2010). ANOVA for longitudinal data with missing values. *Annals of Statistics*, 38, 3630–3659.
- Chen, T., Martin, E., & Montague, G. (2009). Robust probabilistic PCA with missing data and contribution analysis for outlier detection. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 53, 3706–3716.
- Chen, T.-C., & Victoria-Feser, M.-P. (2002). High-breakdown estimation of multivariate mean and covariance with missing observations. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 55, 317–336.
- Chen, Z., & Tyler, D. E. (2002). The influence function and maximum bias of Tukey's median. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 1737–1760.
- Chernick, M. R. (1999). *Bootstrap methods: A practitioner's guide*. New York: Wiley.

References

- Choi, K., & Marden, J. (1997). An approach to multivariate rank tests in multivariate analysis of variance. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 1581–1590.
- Chow, G. C. (1960). Tests of equality between sets of coefficients in two linear regressions. *Econometrica*, 28, 591–606.
- Chowdhury, N., Cook, D., Hofmann, H., Majumder, M., Lee, E.-K., & Toth, A. (2015). Using visual statistical inference to better understand random class separations in high dimension, low sample size data. *Computational Statistics*, 30, 293–316.
- Christmann, A. (1994). Least median of weighted squares in logistic regression with large strata. *Biometrika*, 81, 413–417.
- Chung, E., & Romano, J. P. (2013). Exact and asymptotically robust permutation tests. *Annals of Statistics*, 41, 484–507.
- Claeskens, G., Hubert, M., Slaets, L., & Vakili, K. (2014). Multivariate functional halfspace depth. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 109, 411–423.
- Clark, F., Jackson, J., Carlson, M., Chou, C.-P., Cherry, B. J., Jordan-Marsh, M., et al. (2011). Effectiveness of a lifestyle intervention in promoting the well-being of independently living older people: Results of the Well Elderly 2 Randomised Controlled Trial. *Journal of Epidemiology and Community Health*, 66, 782–790. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1136/jech.2009.099754>.
- Clements, A., Hurn, S., & Lindsay, K. (2003). Mobius-like mappings and their use in kernel density estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 98, 993–1000.
- Cleveland, W. S. (1979). Robust locally weighted regression and smoothing scatterplots. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 74, 829–836.
- Cleveland, W. S. (1985). *The elements of graphing data*. New York: Chapman & Hall.
- Cleveland, W. S., & Devlin, S. J. (1988). Locally-weighted regression: An approach to regression analysis by local fitting. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 83, 596–610.
- Cliff, N. (1993). Dominance statistics: Ordinal analyses to answer ordinal questions. *Psychological Bulletin*, 114, 494–509.
- Cliff, N. (1994). Predicting ordinal relations. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 47, 127–150.
- Cliff, N. (1996). *Ordinal methods for behavioral data analysis*. Mahwah, NJ: Erlbaum.
- Coakley, C. W., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1993). A bounded influence, high breakdown, efficient regression estimator. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 872–880.
- Coe, P. R., & Tamhane, A. C. (1993). Small sample confidence intervals for the difference, ratio, and odds ratio of two success probabilities. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 22, 925–938.
- Cohen, J. (1988). *Statistical power analysis for the behavioral sciences* (2nd ed.). New York: Academic Press.
- Cohen, M., Dalal, S. R., & Tukey, J. W. (1993). Robust, smoothly heterogeneous variance regression. *Applied Statistics*, 42, 339–354.
- Cole, D. A., & Maxwell, S. E. (2003). Testing mediational models with longitudinal data: Questions and tips in the use of structural equation modeling. *Journal of Abnormal Psychology*, 112, 558–577.
- Conerly, M. D., & Mansfield, E. R. (1988). An approximate test for comparing heteroscedastic regression models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 83, 811–817.
- Cook, R. D., & Hawkins, D. M. (1990). Discussion of unmasking multivariate outliers and leverage points by P. Rousseeuw and B. van Zomeren. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 640–644.
- Cook, R. D., Hawkins, D. M., & Weisberg, S. (1992). Comparison of model misspecification diagnostics using residuals from least mean of squares and least median of squares fit. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 87, 419–424.
- Cook, R. D., & Weisberg, S. (1992). *Residuals and influence in regression*. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- Cook, R. D., & Weisberg, S. (1994). *An introduction to regression graphics*. New York: Wiley.
- Copas, J. B. (1983). Plotting p against x . *Applied Statistics*, 32, 25–31.

- Copt, S., & Heritier, S. (2007). Robust alternatives to the F-Test in mixed linear models based on MM-estimates. *Biometrics*, 63, 1045–1052.
- Cramer, H. (1946). *Mathematical methods of statistics*. Princeton: Princeton University Press.
- Crawley, M. J. (2007). *The R book*. New York: Wiley.
- Cressie, N. A. C., & Whitford, H. J. (1986). How to use the two sample t-test. *Biometrical Journal*, 28, 131–148.
- Cribari-Neto, F. (2004). Asymptotic inference under heteroscedasticity of unknown form. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 45, 215–233.
- Cribari-Neto, F., & Lima, M. (2014). New heteroskedasticity-robust standard errors for the linear regression model. *Brazilian Journal of Probability and Statistics*, 28, 83–95.
- Cribari-Neto, F., Souza, T. C., & Vasconcellos, K. L. P. (2007). Inference under heteroskedasticity and leveraged data. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 36, 1977–1988 [Erratum (2008), 37, 3329–3330].
- Cribbie, R. A., Fiksenbaum, L., Keselman, H. J., & Wilcox, R. R. (2012). Effects of nonnormality on test statistics for one-way independent groups designs. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 65, 56–73.
- Croux, C. (1994). Efficient high-breakdown M-estimators of scale. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 19, 371–379.
- Croux, C., & Dehon, C. (2003). Estimators of the multiple correlation coefficient: Local robustness and confidence intervals. *Statistical Papers*, 44, 315–334.
- Croux, C., & Dehon, C. (2010). Influence functions of the Spearman and Kendall correlation measures. *Statistical Methods and Applications*, 19, 497–515.
- Croux, C., Filzmoser, P., & Oliveira, M. R. (2007). Algorithms for projection-pursuit robust principal component analysis. *Chemometrics and Intelligent Laboratory Systems*, 87, 218–225.
- Croux, C., Flandre, C., & Haesbroeck, G. (2002). The breakdown behavior of the maximum likelihood estimator in the logistic regression model. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 60, 377–386.
- Croux, C., & Haesbroeck, G. (2000). Principal component analysis based on robust estimators of the covariance or correlation matrix: Influence functions and efficiencies. *Biometrika*, 87, 603–618.
- Croux, C., & Haesbroeck, G. (2003). Implementing the Bianco and Yohai estimator for logistic regression. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 44, 273–295.
- Croux, C., Joossens, K., & Lemmens, A. (2007). Trimmed bagging. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 362–368.
- Croux, C., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Hössjer, O. (1994). Generalized S-estimators. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 1271–1281.
- Croux, C., & Ruiz-Gazen, A. (2005). High breakdown estimators for principal components: The projection-pursuit approach revisited. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 95, 206–226.
- Crumpacker, D. W., Cederlof, R., Friberg, L., Kimberling, W. J., Sorensen, S., Vandenberg, S. G., et al. (1979). A twin methodology for the study of genetic and environmental control of variation in human smoking behavior. *Acta Geneticae Medicae et Gemellologiae*, 28, 173–195.
- Cuesta-Albertos, J. A., Gordaliza, A., & Matran, C. (1997). Trimmed k-means: An attempt to robustify quantizers. *Annals of Statistics*, 25, 553–576.
- Cuevas, A., Febrero, M., & Fraiman, R. (2004). An ANOVA test for functional data. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 47, 111–122.
- Cushny, A. R., & Peebles, A. R. (1904). The action of optical isomers II. Hyoscines. *Journal of Physiology*, 32, 501–510.
- Dahlquist, G., & Björck, A. (1974). *Numerical methods*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- Dana, E. (1990). *Salience of the self and salience of standards: Attempts to match self to standard* (Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation). University of Southern California.
- Daniell, P. J. (1920). Observations weighted according to order. *American Journal of Mathematics*, 42, 222–236.
- Danilov, M., Yohai, V. J., & Zamar, R. H. (2012). Robust estimation of multivariate location and scatter in the presence of missing data. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 107, 1178–1186.

References

- Davidson, R., & MacKinnon, J. G. (2000). Bootstrap tests: How many bootstraps? *Econometric Reviews*, 19, 55–68.
- Davies, L., & Gather, U. (1993). The identification of multiple outliers (with discussion). *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 782–792.
- Davies, P. L. (1987). Asymptotic behavior of S-estimates of multivariate location parameters and dispersion matrices. *Annals of Statistics*, 15, 1269–1292.
- Davies, P. L. (1990). The asymptotics of S-estimators in the linear regression model. *Annals of Statistics*, 18, 1651–1675.
- Davies, P. L. (1993). Aspects of robust linear regression. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 1843–1899.
- Davis, J. B., & McKean, J. W. (1993). Rank-based method for multivariate linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 245–251.
- Davison, A. C., & Hinkley, D. V. (1997). *Bootstrap methods and their application*. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Davison, A. C., Hinkley, D. V., & Young, G. A. (2003). Recent developments in bootstrap methodology. *Statistical Science*, 18, 141–157.
- Dawkins, B. P. (1995). Investigation the geometry of a p-dimensional data set. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 350–359.
- de Boor, C. (1978). *A practical guide to splines*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Debruyne, M., Hubert, M., & van Horebeek, J. V. (2010). Detecting influential observations in kernel PCA. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 54, 3007–3019.
- De Jongh, P. J., De Wet, T., & Welsh, A. H. (1988). Mallows-type bounded-influence-regression trimmed means. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 83, 805–810.
- Delattre, S., & Roquain, E. (2015). New procedures controlling the false discovery proportion via Romano–Wolf's heuristic. *Annals of Statistics*, 43, 1141–1177.
- Delgado, M. A. (1993). Testing the equality of nonparametric regression curves. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 17, 199–204.
- DerkSEN, S., & Keselman, H. J. (1992). Backward, forward and stepwise automated subset selection algorithms: Frequency of obtaining authentic and noise variables. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 45, 265–282.
- Devlin, S. J., Gnanadesikan, R., & Kettenring, J. R. (1981). Robust estimation of dispersion matrices and principal components. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 76, 354–362.
- Dette, H. (1999). A consistent test for the functional form of a regression based on a difference of variances estimator. *Annals of Statistics*, 27, 1012–1040.
- Dette, H., & Neumeyer, N. (2001). Nonparametric analysis of covariance. *Annals of Statistics*, 29, 1361–1400.
- Devroye, L., & Lugosi, G. (2001). *Combinatorial methods in density estimation*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- DiCiccio, T., Hall, P., & Romano, J. (1991). Empirical likelihood is Bartlett-correctable. *Annals of Statistics*, 19, 1053–1061.
- Dielman, T., Lowry, C., & Pfaffenberger, R. (1994). A comparison of quantile estimators. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 23, 355–371.
- Dielman, T., & Pfaffenberger, R. (1982). LAV (least absolute value) estimation in linear regression: A review. In S. H. Zanakis, & J. Rustagi (Eds.), *Optimization on statistics*. New York: North-Holland.
- Dielman, T., & Pfaffenberger, R. (1988a). Bootstrapping in least absolute value regression: An application to hypothesis testing. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 17, 843–856.
- Dielman, T., & Pfaffenberger, R. (1988b). Least absolute value regression: Necessary sample sizes to use normal theory inference procedures. *Decision Sciences*, 19, 734–743.
- Dielman, T., & Pfaffenberger, R. (1990). Tests of linear hypotheses and LAV estimation: A Monte Carlo comparison. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 19, 1179–1199.
- Dietz, E. J. (1987). A comparison of robust estimators in simple linear regression. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 16, 1209–1227.

- Dietz, E. J. (1989). Teaching regression in a nonparametric statistics course. *American Statistician*, 43, 35–40.
- Diggle, P. J., Heagerty, P. J., Liang, K.-Y., & Zeger, S. L. (2002). *Analysis of longitudinal data* (2nd ed.). Oxford: Oxford University Press.
- Dixon, S. L., & McKean, J. W. (1996). Rank-based analysis of the heteroscedastic linear model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 699–712.
- Dixon, W. J., & Tukey, J. W. (1968). Approximate behavior of the distribution of Winsorized t (Trimming/Winsorization 2). *Technometrics*, 10, 83–98.
- Doksum, K. A. (1974). Empirical probability plots and statistical inference for nonlinear models in the two-sample case. *Annals of Statistics*, 2, 267–277.
- Doksum, K. A. (1977). Some graphical methods in statistics. A review and some extensions. *Statistica Neerlandica*, 31, 53–68.
- Doksum, K. A., Blyth, S., Bradlow, E., Meng, X., & Zhao, H. (1994). Correlation curves as local measures of variance explained by regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 571–582.
- Doksum, K. A., & Koo, J.-Y. (2000). On spline estimators and prediction intervals in nonparametric regression. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 35, 67–82.
- Doksum, K. A., & Samarov, A. (1995). Nonparametric estimation of global functionals and a measure of the explanatory power of covariates in regression. *Annals of Statistics*, 23, 1443–1473.
- Doksum, K. A., & Sievers, G. L. (1976). Plotting with confidence: Graphical comparisons of two populations. *Biometrika*, 63, 421–434.
- Doksum, K. A., & Wong, C.-W. (1983). Statistical tests based on transformed data. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 78, 411–417.
- Donoho, D. L. (1982). *Breakdown properties of multivariate location estimators* (PhD qualifying paper). Harvard University.
- Donoho, D. L., & Gasko, M. (1992). Breakdown properties of the location estimates based on halfspace depth and projected outlyingness. *Annals of Statistics*, 20, 1803–1827.
- Dorfman, A. H. (1991). Sound confidence intervals in the heteroscedastic linear model through releveraging. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 53, 441–452.
- Draper, N. R. (1994). Applied regression analysis bibliography update 1992–93. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 23, 2701–2731.
- Ducharme, G. R. (1995). Uniqueness of the least-distance estimator in regression with multivariate response. *Canadian Journal of Statistics*, 23, 421–424.
- Duncan, G. T., & Layard, M. W. (1973). A Monte-Carlo study of asymptotically robust tests for correlation. *Biometrika*, 60, 551–558.
- Dunnett, C. W. (1980). Pairwise multiple comparisons in the unequal variance case. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 75, 796–800.
- Dyckerhoff, R., & Mozharovskyi, P. (2016). Exact computation of the half space depth. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 98, 19–30.
- Edgell, S. E., & Noon, S. M. (1984). Effect of violation of normality on the t test of the correlation coefficient. *Psychological Bulletin*, 95, 576–583.
- Efromovich, S. (1999). *Nonparametric curve estimation: Methods, theory and applications*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Efron, B. (1987). Better bootstrap confidence intervals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 82, 171–185.
- Efron, B., Hastie, T., Johnstone, I., & Tibshirani, R. (2004). Least angle regression (with discussion and rejoinder). *Annals of Statistics*, 32, 407–499.
- Efron, B., & Tibshirani, R. J. (1993). *An introduction to the bootstrap*. New York: Chapman & Hall.
- Efron, B., & Tibshirani, R. J. (1997). Improvements on cross-validation: The .632+ bootstrap method. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 548–560.

References

- Elashoff, J. D., & Snow, R. E. (1970). *A case study in statistical inference: Reconsideration of the Rosenthal-Jacobson data on teacher expectancy* (Technical Report No. 15). School of Education, Stanford University.
- Ellis, R. L. (1844). On the method of least squares. *Transactions of the Cambridge Philosophical Society*, 8, 204–219.
- Emerson, J. D., & Hoaglin, D. C. (1983a). Resistant lines for y versus x. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. W. Tukey (Eds.), *Understanding robust and exploratory data analysis*. New York: Wiley.
- Emerson, J. D., & Hoaglin, D. C. (1983b). Resistant multiple regression, one variable at a time. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. W. Tukey (Eds.), *Exploring data tables, trends and shapes*. New York: Wiley.
- Emerson, J. D., & Stoto, M. A. (1983). Transforming data. In D. C. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. W. Tukey (Eds.), *Understanding robust and exploratory data analysis*. New York: Wiley.
- Engelen, S., Hubert, M., & Vanden Branden, K. (2005). A comparison of three procedures for robust PCA in high dimensions. *Australian Journal of Statistics*, 2, 117–126.
- Erceg-Hurn, D. M., & Steed, L. G. (2011). Does exposure to cigarette health warnings elicit psychological reactance in smokers? *Journal of Applied Social Psychology*, 41, 219–237. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/j.1559-1816.2010.00710.x>.
- Eubank, R. L. (1999). *Nonparametric regression and spline smoothing*. New York: Marcel Dekker.
- Everitt, B. S., Landau, S., Leese, M., & Stahl, D. (2011). *Cluster analysis* (5th ed.). New York: Wiley.
- Fairley, D. (1986). Cherry trees with cones? *American Statistician*, 40, 138–139.
- Fan, J. (1993). Local linear smoothers and their minimax efficiencies. *The Annals of Statistics*, 21, 196–216.
- Fan, J. (1996). Test of significance based on wavelet thresholding and Neyman's truncation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 674–688.
- Fan, J., & Gijbels, I. (1996). *Local polynomial modeling and its applications*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Fan, J., & Hall, P. (1994). On curve estimation by minimizing mean absolute deviation and its implications. *The Annals of Statistics*, 22, 867–885.
- Faraway, J. J., & Sun, J. (1995). Simultaneous confidence bands for linear regression with heteroscedastic error terms. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 1094–1098.
- Frbrero, M., Galeano, P., & González-Manteiga, W. (2008). Outlier detection in functional data by depth measures, with application to identify abnormal NO_x levels. *Environmetrics*, 19, 331–345.
- Frbrero-Bande, M., & de la Fuente, M. O. (2012). Statistical computing in functional data analysis: The R package fda.usc. *Journal of Statistical Software*, 51. <http://www.jstatsoft.org/>.
- Feng, D., & Cliff, N. (2004). Monte Carlo evaluation of ordinal d with improved confidence interval. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 3(2), Article 6. <http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/jmasm/vol3/iss2/6>.
- Feng, L., Zou, C., Wang, Z., & Zhu, L. (2015). Robust comparison of regression curves. *Test*, 24, 185–204.
- Fenstad, G. U. (1983). A comparison between U and V tests in the Behrens–Fisher problem. *Biometrika*, 70, 300–302.
- Ferraty, F., & Vieu, P. (2006). *Nonparametric functional data analysis: Theory and practice*. New York: Springer.
- Ferreira, E., & Stute, W. (2004). Testing for differences between conditional means in a time series context. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 99, 169–174.
- Ferretti, N., Kelmansky, D., Yohai, V. J., & Zamar, R. H. (1999). A class of locally and globally robust regression estimates. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 174–188.
- Filzmoser, P., Garrett, R. G., & Reimann, C. (2010). Multivariate outlier detection in exploration geochemistry. *Computers & Geosciences*, 31, 579–587.
- Filzmoser, P., Maronna, R., & Werner, M. (2008). Outlier identification in high dimensions. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 52, 1694–1711.
- Fisher, R. A. (1922). On the mathematical foundations of theoretical statistics. *Philosophical Transactions of the Royal Astronomical Society of London, Series A*, 222, 309–368.
- Fisher, R. A. (1932). *Statistical methods for research workers*. London: Oliver and Boyd.
- Fix, E., & Hodges, J. L. (1951). *Discriminatory analysis—nonparametric discrimination: Consistency properties* (Technical Report 4). Randolph Field, TX: USAF School of Aviation Medicine.

- Fligner, M. A., & Policello II, G. E. (1981). Robust rank procedures for the Behrens–Fisher problem. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 76, 162–168.
- Flores, S. (2010). On the efficient computation of robust regression estimators. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 54, 3044–3056.
- Fox, J. (1999). *Applied regression analysis, linear models, and related methods*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Fox, J. (2001). *Multiple and generalized nonparametric regression*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Fox, J. (2002). *An R and S-PLUS companion to applied regression*. Thousand Oaks, CA: Sage.
- Frahm, G., & Jaekel, U. (2010). A generalization of Tyler's M-estimators to the case of incomplete data. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 374–393.
- Freedman, D., & Diaconis, P. (1981). On the histogram as density estimator: L_2 theory. *Zeitschrift für Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und verwandte Gebiete*, 57, 453–476.
- Freedman, D., & Diaconis, P. (1982). On inconsistent M-estimators. *Annals of Statistics*, 10, 454–461.
- Freidlin, B., & Gastwirth, J. L. (2000). Should the median test be retired from general use? *American Statistician*, 54, 161–164.
- Friedman, J. H., & Stuetzle, W. (1981). Projection pursuit regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 76, 817–823.
- Frigge, M., Hoaglin, D. C., & Iglewicz, B. (1989). Some implementations of the Boxplot. *American Statistician*, 43, 50–54.
- Fritz, H., Filzmoser, P., & Croux, C. (2012). A comparison of algorithms for the multivariate L_1 median. *Computational Statistics*, 27, 393–410.
- Fung, K. Y. (1980). Small sample behaviour of some nonparametric multi-sample location tests in the presence of dispersion differences. *Statistica Neerlandica*, 34, 189–196.
- Fung, W.-K. (1993). Unmasking outliers and leverage points: A confirmation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 515–519.
- Gail, M. H., Santner, T. J., & Brown, C. C. (1980). An analysis of comparative carcinogenesis experiments with multiple times to tumor. *Biometrics*, 36, 255–266.
- Galeano, P., Joseph, E., & Lillo, R. E. (2015). The Mahalanobis distance for functional data with applications to classifications. *Technometrics*, 57, 281–291.
- García, B., Martínez, M., & Yohai, V. J. (2006). Robust estimation for the multivariate linear model based on a τ -scale. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 90, 1600–1622.
- Gather, U., & Hilker, T. (1997). A note on Tyler's modification of the MAD for the Stahel–Donoho estimator. *Annals of Statistics*, 25, 2024–2026.
- Gatto, R., & Ronchetti, E. (1996). General saddlepoint approximations of marginal densities and tail probabilities. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 666–673.
- Genton, M. G., & Lucas, A. (2003). Comprehensive definitions of breakdown points for independent and dependent observations. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 65, 81–94.
- Gervini, D. (2002). The influence function of the Stahel–Donoho estimator of multivariate location and scatter. *Statistics & Probability Letters*, 60, 425–435.
- Gervini, D. (2012). Outlier detection and trimmed estimation for general functional data. *Statistica Sinica*, 22, 1639–1660.
- Gervini, D., & Yohai, V. J. (2002). A class of robust and fully efficient regression estimators. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 583–616.
- Ghosh, M., Parr, W. C., Singh, K., & Babu, G. J. (1985). A note on bootstrapping the sample median. *Annals of Statistics*, 12, 1130–1135. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1214/aos/1176346731>.
- Gijbels, I., & Vrinssen, I. (2015). Robust nonnegative garrote variable selection in linear regression. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 85, 1–22.
- Gleason, J. R. (1993). Understanding elongation: The scale contaminated normal family. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 327–337.

References

- Glen, N. L., & Zhao, Y. (2007). Weighted empirical likelihood estimates and their robustness properties. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 51, 5130–5141.
- Gnanadesikan, R., & Kettenring, J. R. (1972). Robust estimates, residuals and outlier detection with multiresponse data. *Biometrics*, 28, 81–124.
- Godfrey, L. G. (2006). Tests for regression models with heteroskedasticity of unknown form. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 50, 2715–2733.
- Goldberg, K. M., & Igglewick, B. (1992). Bivariate extensions of the boxplot. *Technometrics*, 34, 307–320.
- Golub, G. H., & van Loan, C. F. (1983). *Matrix computations*. Baltimore, MD: Johns Hopkins University Press.
- Gong, Y., & Abebe, A. (2012). On the iteratively reweighted rank regression estimator. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 41, 155–166.
- Good, P. (2000). *Permutation tests*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Górecki, T., & Smaga, L. (2015). A comparison of tests for the one-way ANOVA problem for functional data. *Computational Statistics*, 30, 987–1010. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00180-015-0555-0>.
- Graybill, F. A. (1976). *Theory and application of the linear model*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.
- Graybill, F. A. (1983). *Matrices with applications in statistics*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.
- Green, D. P., Ha, S. E., & Bullock, J. G. (2010). Enough already about ‘Black Box’ experiments: Studying mediation is more difficult than most scholars suppose. *Annals of the American Academy of Political and Social Science*, 628, 200–208.
- Green, P. J., & Silverman, B. W. (1993). *Nonparametric regression and generalized linear models: A roughness penalty approach*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Grissom, R. J. (2000). Heterogeneity of variance in clinical data. *Journal of Consulting and Clinical Psychology*, 68, 155–165.
- Guo, J. H., Billard, L., & Luh, W.-M. (2010). New heterogeneous test statistics for the unbalanced fixed-effect nested design. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 64, 259–276.
- Guo, J. H., & Luh, W. M. (2000). An invertible transformation two-sample trimmed t-statistic under heterogeneity and nonnormality. *Statistics & Probability Letters*, 49, 1–7.
- Guo, W., He, L., & Sarkar, S. K. (2014). Further results on controlling the false discovery proportion. *Annals of Statistics*, 42, 1070–1101.
- Gupta, A. K., & Rathie, P. N. (1983). On the distribution of the determinant of sample correlation matrix from multivariate Gaussian population. *Metron*, 61, 43–56.
- Gutenbrunner, C., & Jurečková, J. (1992). Regression rank scores and regression quantiles. *Annals of Statistics*, 20, 305–330.
- Gutenbrunner, C., Jurečková, J., Koenker, R., & Portnoy, S. (1993). Tests of linear hypotheses based on regression rank scores. *Journal of Nonparametrics*, 2, 307–331.
- Györfi, L., Kohler, M., Krzyżk, A., & Walk, H. (2002). *A distribution-free theory of nonparametric regression*. New York: Springer Verlag.
- Haldane, J. B. S. (1948). Note on the median multivariate distribution. *Biometrika*, 35, 414–415.
- Hall, P. (1986). On the number of bootstrap simulations required to construct a confidence interval. *Annals of Statistics*, 14, 1431–1452.
- Hall, P. (1988a). On symmetric bootstrap confidence intervals. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 50, 35–45.
- Hall, P. (1988b). Theoretical comparison of bootstrap confidence intervals. *Annals of Statistics*, 16, 927–953.
- Hall, P. (1992). On the removal of skewness by transformation. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 54, 221–228.
- Hall, P., & Hart, J. D. (1990). Bootstrap test for difference between means in nonparametric regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 1039–1049.
- Hall, P., & Horowitz, J. (2013). A simple bootstrap method for constructing nonparametric confidence bands for functions. *Annals of Statistics*, 41, 1892–1921.

- Hall, P., Huber, C., & Speckman, P. L. (1997). Covariate-matched one-sided tests for the difference between functional means. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 1074–1083.
- Hall, P., & Jones, M. C. (1990). Adaptive M-estimation in nonparametric regression. *Annals of Statistics*, 18, 1712–1728.
- Hall, P., & Padmanabhan, A. R. (1992). On the bootstrap and the trimmed mean. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 41, 132–153.
- Hall, P., & Presnell, B. (1999). Biased bootstrap methods for reducing the effects of contamination. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 61, 661–680.
- Hall, P., & Sheather, S. J. (1988). On the distribution of a Studentized quantile. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 50, 380–391.
- Hall, P., & Welsh, A. H. (1985). Limit theorems for the median deviation. *Annals of the Institute of Statistical Mathematics*, 37, 27–36.
- Hall, P. G., & Hall, D. (1995). *The bootstrap and edgeworth expansion*. New York: Springer Verlag.
- Hallin, M., Paindaveine, D., & Verdebout, T. (2014). Efficient R-estimation of principal and common principal components. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 109, 1071–1083.
- Hamilton, L. C. (1992). *Regression with graphics: A second course in applied statistics*. Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole.
- Hampel, F. R. (1968). *Contributions to the theory of robust estimation* (Unpublished Ph.D. dissertation). Berkeley: University of California.
- Hampel, F. R. (1973). Robust estimation: A condensed partial survey. *Zeitschrift für Wahrscheinlichkeitstheorie und verwandte Gebiete*, 27, 87–104.
- Hampel, F. R. (1974). The influence curve and its role in robust estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 62, 1179–1186.
- Hampel, F. R. (1975). Beyond location parameters: Robust concepts and methods (with discussion). *Bulletin of the ISI*, 46, 375–391.
- Hampel, F. R., Ronchetti, E. M., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Stahel, W. A. (1986). *Robust statistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Hand, A. (1998). *A history of mathematical statistics from 1750 to 1930*. New York: Wiley.
- Handschin, E., Schweppé, F. C., Kohlas, J., & Fiechter, A. (1975). Bad data analysis for power system state estimation. *IEEE Transactions on Power Apparatus and Systems*, PAS-94, 329–337.
- Härdle, W. (1990). *Applied nonparametric regression*. Econometric Society Monographs No. 19. Cambridge, UK: Cambridge University Press.
- Härdle, W., & Korostelev, A. (1996). Search for significant variables in nonparametric additive regression. *Biometrika*, 83, 541–549.
- Härdle, W., & Marron, J. S. (1990). Semiparametric comparison of regression curves. *Annals of Statistics*, 18, 63–89.
- Harpole, J. K., Woods, C. M., Rodebaugh, T. L., Levinson, C. A., & Lenze, E. J. (2014). How bandwidth selection algorithms impact exploratory data analysis using kernel density estimation. *Psychological Methods*, 19, 428–443.
- Harrell, F. E., & Davis, C. E. (1982). A new distribution-free quantile estimator. *Biometrika*, 69, 635–640.
- Harwell, M. (2003). Summarizing Monte Carlo results in methodological research: The single-factor, fixed effects ANCOVA case. *Journal of Educational and Behavioral Statistics*, 28, 45–70.
- Hastie, T. J., & Loader, C. (1993). Local regression: Automatic kernel carpentry. *Statistical Science*, 8, 120–143.
- Hastie, T. J., & Tibshirani, R. J. (1990). *Generalized additive models*. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- Hawkins, D. G., & Simonoff, J. S. (1993). Algorithm AS 282: High breakdown regression and multivariate estimation. *Applied Statistics*, 42, 423–431.
- Hawkins, D. M., & Olive, D. (1999). Applications and algorithms for least trimmed sum of absolute deviations regression. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 32, 119–134.
- Hawkins, D. M., & Olive, D. (2002). Inconsistency of resampling algorithms for high-breakdown regression estimators and a new algorithm. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 97, 136–147.

References

- Hayes, A. F., & Cai, L. (2007). Further evaluating the conditional decision rule for comparing two independent means. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 60, 217–244.
- Hayes, A. F., & Preacher, K. J. (2010). Quantifying and testing indirect effects in simple mediation models when the constituent paths are nonlinear. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 45, 627–660.
- He, X., & Ng, P. (1999). Quantile splines with several covariates. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 75, 343–352.
- He, X., Ng, P., & Portnoy, S. (1998). Bivariate quantile smoothing splines. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 60, 537–550.
- He, X., & Portnoy, S. (1992). Reweighted LS estimators converge at the same rate as the initial estimator. *Annals of Statistics*, 20, 2161–2167.
- He, X., & Simpson, D. G. (1993). Lower bounds for contamination bias: Global minimax versus locally linear estimation. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 314–337.
- He, X., Simpson, D. G., & Portnoy, S. L. (1990). Breakdown robustness of tests. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 446–452.
- He, X., & Wang, G. (1997). Convergence of depth contours for multivariate data sets. *Annals of Statistics*, 25, 495–504.
- He, X., & Zhu, L.-X. (2003). A lack-of-fit test for quantile regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 98, 1013–1022.
- Headrick, T. C., Kowalchuk, R. K., & Sheng, Y. (2008). Parametric probability densities and distribution functions for Tukey g-and-h transformations and their use for fitting data. *Applied Mathematical Sciences*, 2, 449–462.
- Hedges, L. V., & Olkin, I. (1984). Nonparametric estimators of effect size in meta-analysis. *Psychological Bulletin*, 96, 573–580.
- Hedges, L. V., & Olkin, I. (1985). *Statistical methods for meta-analysis*. New York, NY: Academic Press.
- Herbert, R. D., Hayen, A., Macaskill, P., & Walter, S. D. (2011). Interval estimation for the difference of two independent variances. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 40, 744–758.
- Heritier, S., Cantoni, E., Copt, S., & Victoria-Feser, M.-P. (2009). *Robust methods in biostatistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Heritier, S., & Ronchetti, E. (1994). Robust bounded-influence tests in general linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 897–904.
- Herwindati, D. E., Djauhari, M. A., & Mashuri, M. (2007). Robust multivariate outlier labeling. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 36, 1287–1294.
- Hettmansperger, T. P. (1984). *Statistical inference based on ranks*. New York: Wiley.
- Hettmansperger, T. P., & McKean, J. W. (1977). A robust alternative based on ranks to least squares in analyzing linear models. *Technometrics*, 19, 275–284.
- Hettmansperger, T. P., & McKean, J. W. (1998). *Robust nonparametric statistical methods*. London: Arnold.
- Hettmansperger, T. P., & McKean, J. W. (2011). *Robust nonparametric statistical methods* (2nd ed.). London: Arnold.
- Hettmansperger, T. P., & Sheather, S. J. (1986). Confidence interval based on interpolated order statistics. *Statistical Probability Letters*, 4, 75–79.
- Hettmansperger, T. P., & Sheather, S. J. (1992). A cautionary note on the method of least median of squares. *American Statistician*, 46, 79–83.
- Hill, M., & Dixon, W. J. (1982). Robustness in real life: A study of clinical laboratory data. *Biometrics*, 38, 377–396.
- Hill, R. W. (1977). *Robust regression when there are outliers in the carriers* (Unpublished PhD dissertation). Harvard University.
- Hill, R. W., & Holland, P. W. (1977). Two robust alternatives to robust regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 72, 828–833.
- Hilton, J. F., Mehta, C. R., & Patel, N. R. (1994). An algorithm for conducting exact Smirnov tests. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 19, 351–361.

- Hoaglin, D. C. (1985). Summarizing shape numerically: The g-and-h distribution. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. Tukey (Eds.), *Exploring data tables trends and shapes* (pp. 461–515). New York: Wiley.
- Hoaglin, D. C., & Iglewicz, B. (1987). Fine-tuning some resistant rules for outlier labeling. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 82, 1147–1149.
- Hoaglin, D. C., Mosteller, F., & Tukey, J. W. (1991). *Fundamentals of exploratory analysis of variance*. New York: Wiley.
- Hoaglin, D. C., & Welsch, R. (1978). The hat matrix in regression and ANOVA. *American Statistician*, 32, 17–22.
- Hochberg, Y. (1975). Simultaneous inference under Behrens–Fisher conditions: A two sample approach. *Communications in Statistics*, 4, 1109–1119.
- Hochberg, Y. (1988). A sharper Bonferroni procedure for multiple tests of significance. *Biometrika*, 75, 800–802.
- Hochberg, Y., & Tamhane, A. C. (1987). *Multiple comparison procedures*. New York: Wiley.
- Hodges, J. L., & Lehmann, E. L. (1963). Estimates of location based on rank tests. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, 34, 598–611.
- Hogg, R. V. (1974). Adaptive robust procedures: A partial review and some suggestions for future applications and theory. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 69, 909–922.
- Hollander, M., & Wolfe, D. A. (1973). *Nonparametric statistical methods*. New York: Wiley.
- Holm, S. (1979). A simple sequentially rejective multiple test procedure. *Scandinavian Journal of Statistics*, 6, 65–70.
- Hommel, G. (1988). A stagewise rejective multiple test procedure based on a modified Bonferroni test. *Biometrika*, 75, 383–386.
- Hope, A. C. A. (1968). A simplified Monte Carlo significance test procedure. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 30, 582–598.
- Horowitz, J. L., & Spokoiny, V. G. (2002). An adaptive, rate-optimal test of linearity for median regression models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 97, 822–835.
- Hosmer, D. W., & Lemeshow, S. (1989). *Applied logistic regression*. New York: Wiley.
- Hössjer, O. (1992). On the optimality of S-estimators. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 14, 413–419.
- Hössjer, O. (1994). Rank-based estimates in the linear model with high breakdown point. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 149–158.
- Hössjer, O., & Croux, C. (1995). Generalizing univariate signed rank statistics for testing and estimating a multivariate location parameter. *Non-parametric Statistics*, 4, 293–308.
- Huber, P. (1993). Projection pursuit and robustness. In S. Morgenthaler, E. Ronchetti, & W. Stahel (Eds.), *New directions in statistical data analysis and robustness* (pp. 139–146). Boston: Birkhäuser Verlag.
- Huber, P. J. (1964). Robust estimation of location parameters. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics*, 35, 73–101.
- Huber, P. J. (1981). *Robust statistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Huber, P. J., & Ronchetti, E. (2009). *Robust statistics* (2nd ed.). New York: Wiley.
- Hubert, M., & Rousseeuw, P. J. (1998). The catline for deep regression. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 66, 270–296.
- Hubert, M., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Segaert, P. (2015). Multivariate and functional classification using depth and distance. arXiv:1504.01128.
- Hubert, M., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Vanden Branden, K. (2005). ROBPCA: A new approach to robust principal component analysis. *Technometrics*, 47, 64–79.
- Hubert, M., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Verboven, S. (2002). A fast method for robust principal components with applications to chemometrics. *Chemometrics and Intelligent Laboratory Systems*, 60, 101–111.
- Hubert, M., Rousseeuw, P. J., & Verdonck, T. (2012). A deterministic algorithm for robust location and scatter. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 21, 618–637.
- Hubert, M., & Vandervieren, E. (2008). An adjusted boxplot for skewed distributions. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 52, 5186–5201.
- Huberty, C. J. (1989). Problems with stepwise methods—better alternatives. *Advances in Social Science Methodology*, 1, 43–70.

References

- Huberty, C. J. (1994). *Applied discriminant analysis*. New York: Wiley.
- Huitema, B. E. (2011). *The analysis of covariance and alternatives* (2nd ed.). New York: Wiley.
- Hussain, S. S., & Sprent, P. (1983). Non-parametric regression. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, 146*, 182–191.
- Hwang, J., Jorn, H., & Kim, J. (2004). On the performance of bivariate robust location estimators under contamination. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 44*, 587–601.
- Hyndman, R. J., & Fan, Y. (1996). Sample quantiles in statistical packages. *American Statistician, 50*, 361–365.
- Hyndman, R. J., & Shang, H. L. (2010). Rainbow plots, bagplots, and boxplots for functional data. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics, 19*, 29–45.
- Iglewicz, B. (1983). Robust scale estimators and confidence intervals for location. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. Tukey (Eds.), *Understanding robust and exploratory data analysis* (pp. 404–431). New York: Wiley.
- Jackson, J., Mandel, D., Blanchard, J., Carlson, M., Cherry, B., Azen, S., et al. (2009). Confronting challenges in intervention research with ethnically diverse older adults: The USC Well Elderly II trial. *Clinical Trials, 6*, 90–101.
- Jaeckel, L. A. (1972). Estimating regression coefficients by minimizing the dispersion of residuals. *Annals of Mathematical Statistics, 43*, 1449–1458.
- Janssen, A., & Pauls, T. (2005). How do bootstrap and permutation tests work? *Annals of Statistics, 31*, 786–806.
- Jeyaratnam, S., & Othman, A. R. (1985). Test of hypothesis in one-way random effects model with unequal error variances. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation, 21*, 51–57.
- Jhun, M., & Choi, I. (2009). Bootstrapping least distance estimator in the multivariate regression model. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis, 53*, 4221–4227.
- Jöckel, K.-H. (1986). Finite sample properties and asymptotic efficiency of Monte Carlo tests. *Annals of Statistics, 14*, 336–347.
- Johansen, S. (1980). The Welch–James approximation of the distribution of the residual sum of squares in weighted linear regression. *Biometrika, 67*, 85–92.
- Johansen, S. (1982). Amendments and corrections: The Welch–James approximation to the distribution of the residual sum of squares in a weighted linear regression. *Biometrika, 69*, 491.
- Johnson, N. J. (1978). Modified t tests and confidence intervals for asymmetrical populations. *Journal of the American Statistical Association, 73*, 536–544.
- Johnson, N. L., & Kotz, S. (1970). *Distributions in statistics: Continuous univariate distributions-2*. New York: Wiley.
- Johnson, P., & Neyman, J. (1936). Tests of certain linear hypotheses and their application to some educational problems. *Statistical Research Memoirs, 1*, 57–93.
- Johnson, W. D., & Romer, J. E. (2016). Hypothesis testing of population percentiles via the Wald test with bootstrap variance estimates. *Open Journal of Statistics, 6*, 14–24. <http://dx.doi.org/10.4236/ojs.2016.61003>.
- Johnstone, I. M., & Velleman, P. F. (1985). The resistant line and related regression methods. *Journal of the American Statistical Association, 80*, 1041–1054.
- Jones, L. V., & Tukey, J. W. (2000). A sensible formulation of the significance test. *Psychological Methods, 5*, 411–414.
- Jorgensen, J. O., Gilles, R. B., Hunt, D. R., Caplehorn, J. R. M., & Lumley, T. (1995). A simple and effective way to reduce postoperative pain after laparoscopic cholecystectomy. *Australian and New Zealand Journal of Surgery, 65*, 466–469.
- Judd, C. M., & Kenny, D. A. (1981a). *Estimating the effects of social interventions*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Judd, C. M., & Kenny, D. A. (1981b). Process analysis: Estimating mediation in treatment evaluations. *Evaluation Review, 5*, 602–619.
- Jurečková, J., & Portnoy, S. (1987). Asymptotics for one-step M-estimators with application to combining efficiency and high breakdown point. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods, 16*, 2187–2199.

- Kaizar, E. E., Li, Y., & Hsu, J. C. (2011). Permutation multiple tests of binary features do not uniformly control error rates. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 106, 1067–1074.
- Kallenberg, W. C., & Ledwina, T. (1999). Data-driven rank tests for independence. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 285–310.
- Kay, R., & Little, S. (1987). Transformation of the explanatory variables in the logistic regression model for binary data. *Biometrika*, 74, 495–501.
- Kent, J. T., & Tyler, D. E. (1996). Constrained M -estimation for multivariate location and scatter. *Annals of Statistics*, 24, 1346–1370.
- Keppel, G. (1991). *Design and analysis: A researcher's handbook*. Englewood Cliffs, NJ: Prentice Hall.
- Keselman, H. C., Huberty, C. J., Lix, L. M., Olejnik, S., Cribbie, R. A., Donahue, B., et al. (1998). Statistical practices of educational researchers: An analysis of their ANOVA, MANOVA and ANCOVA analyses. *Review of Educational Research*, 68, 350–386.
- Keselman, H. C., Keselman, J. C., & Lix, L. M. (1995). The analysis of repeated measurements: Univariate tests, multivariate tests, or both? *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 48, 319–338.
- Keselman, H. C., Wilcox, R. R., Lix, L. M., Algina, J., & Fradette, K. (2003). *Adaptive robust estimation and testing* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Manitoba.
- Keselman, H. C., Wilcox, R. R., Othman, A. R., & Fradette, K. (2002). Trimming, transforming statistics, and bootstrapping: Circumventing the biasing effects of heteroscedasticity and nonnormality. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 1, 288–309.
- Keselman, H. J., Algina, J., Kowalchuk, R. K., & Wolfinger, R. D. (1999). A comparison of recent approaches to the analysis of repeated measurements. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 52, 62–78.
- Keselman, H. J., Algina, J., Wilcox, R. R., & Kowalchuk, R. K. (2000). Testing repeated measures hypotheses when covariance matrices are heterogeneous: Revisiting the robustness of the Welch–James test again. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 60, 925–938.
- Keselman, H. J., Carriere, K. C., & Lix, L. M. (1993). Testing repeated measures hypotheses when covariance matrices are heterogeneous. *Journal of Educational Statistics*, 18, 305–319.
- Keselman, H. J., & Miller, C. E. (2012). Correction to many tests of significance: New methods for controlling type I errors. *Psychological Methods*, 17, 679.
- Keselman, H. J., Miller, C. W., & Holland, B. (2011). Many tests of significance: New methods for controlling type I errors. *Psychological Methods*, 16, 420–431. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1037/a0025810>.
- Keselman, H. J., Othman, A. R., & Wilcox, R. R. (2016). Generalized linear model analyses for treatment group equality when data are non-normal. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 15.
- Keselman, H. J., Othman, A. R., Wilcox, R. R., & Fradette, K. (2004). The new and improved two-sample t test. *Psychological Science*, 15, 47–51.
- Khan, J. A., van Aelst, S., & Zamar, R. (2007). Robust linear model selection based on least angle regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 102, 1289–1299.
- Khan, J. A., van Aelst, S., & Zamar, R. (2010). Fast robust estimation of prediction error based on resampling. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 3121–3130.
- Khuri, A. I. (1992). Tests concerning a nested mixed model with heteroscedastic random effects. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 30, 33–44.
- Kim, J., & Hwang, J. (2001). Asymptotic properties of location estimators based on projection depth. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 49, 293–299.
- Kim, P. J., & Jennrich, R. I. (1973). Tables of the exact sampling distribution of the two-sample Kolmogorov–Smirnov criterion, D_{mn} , $m \leq n$. In H. L. Harter, & D. B. Owen (Eds.), *Selected tables in mathematical statistics, Vol. I*. Providence, RI: American Mathematical Society.
- Kim, S.-J. (1992a). A practical solution to the multivariate Behrens–Fisher problem. *Biometrika*, 79, 171–176.
- Kim, S.-J. (1992b). The metrically trimmed mean as a robust estimator of location. *Annals of Statistics*, 20, 1534–1547.

References

- King, E. C., Hart, J. D., & Wherly, T. E. (1991). Testing the equality of two regression curves using linear smoothers. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 12, 239–247.
- Kirk, R. E. (1995). *Experimental design*. Pacific Grove, CA: Brooks/Cole.
- Kloke, J., McKean, J., & Rashid, M. (2009). Rank-based estimation and associated inferences for linear models with cluster correlated errors. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 104, 384–390.
- Knight, K. (1998). Limiting distributions for L_1 regression estimators under general conditions. *Annals of Statistics*, 26, 755–770.
- Koenker, R. (1994). Confidence intervals for regression quantiles. In P. Mandl, & M. Huskova (Eds.), *Asymptotic statistics. Proceedings of the fifth Prague symposium* (pp. 349–359).
- Koenker, R. (2005). *Quantile regression*. New York: Cambridge University Press.
- Koenker, R., & Bassett, G. (1978). Regression quantiles. *Econometrica*, 46, 33–50.
- Koenker, R., & Bassett, G. (1981). Robust tests for heteroscedasticity based on regression quantiles. *Econometrica*, 50, 43–61.
- Koenker, R., & Ng, P. (2005). Inequality constrained quantile regression. *Sankhya: The Indian Journal of Statistics*, 67, 418–440.
- Koenker, R., Ng, P., & Portnoy, S. (1994). Quantile smoothing splines. *Biometrika*, 81, 673–680.
- Koenker, R., & Portnoy, S. (1987). L-estimation for linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 82, 851–857.
- Koenker, R., & Xiao, Z. J. (2002). Inference on the quantile regression process. *Econometrica*, 70, 1583–1612.
- Koller, M. (2013). *Robust estimation of linear mixed models* (Unpublished PhD dissertation). Department of Mathematics, ETH Zurich.
- Koller, M., & Stahel, W. A. (2011). Sharpening Wald-type inference in robust regression for small samples. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 55, 2504–2515.
- Kosinski, A. (1999). A procedure for the detection of multivariate outliers. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 29, 145–161.
- Kowalchuk, R. K., & Headrick, T. C. (2010). Simulating multivariate g-and-h distributions. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 63, 63–74.
- Kowalski, C. J. (1972). On the effects of non-normality on the distribution of the sample product-moment correlation coefficient. *Applied Statistics*, 21, 1–12.
- Kraemer, H. C., & Kupfer, D. J. (2006). Size of treatment effects and their importance to clinical research and practice. *Biological Psychiatry*, 59, 990–996.
- Krasker, W. S. (1980). Estimation in linear regression models with disparate data points. *Econometrica*, 48, 1333–1346.
- Krasker, W. S., & Welsch, R. E. (1982). Efficient bounded influence regression estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 77, 595–604.
- Krause, A., & Olson, M. (2002). *The basics of S-PLUS*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Krishnamoorthy, K., Lu, F., & Mathew, T. (2007). A parametric bootstrap approach for ANOVA with unequal variances: Fixed and random models. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 51, 5731–5742.
- Kulasekera, K. B. (1995). Comparison of regression curves using quasi-residuals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 1085–1093.
- Kulasekera, K. B., & Wang, J. (1997). Smoothing parameter selection for power optimality in testing of regression curves. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 500–511.
- Kulinskaya, E., Morgenthaler, S., & Staudte, R. (2010). Variance stabilizing the difference of two binomial proportions. *American Statistician*, 64, 350–356.
- Kulinskaya, E., & Staudte, R. G. (2006). Interval estimates of weighted effect sizes in the one-way heteroscedastic ANOVA. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 59, 97–111.
- Künsch, H., Stefanski, L., & Carroll, R. (1989). Conditionally unbiased bounded influence estimation in general regression models, with applications to generalized linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 84, 460–466.

- Kuo, L., & Mallick, B. (1998). Variable selection for regression models. *Sankhya, Series B*, 60, 65–81.
- Kuonen, D. (2005). Studentized bootstrap confidence intervals based on M-estimates. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 32, 443–460.
- Kwon, S., Lee, S., & Kim, Y. (2015). Moderately clipped LASSO. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 92, 53–67.
- Laird, N. M., & Ware, J. H. (1982). Random-effects models for longitudinal data. *Biometrics*, 38, 963–974.
- Lambert, D. (1985). Robust two-sample permutation test. *Annals of Statistics*, 13, 606–625.
- Laplace, P. S. (1818). *Deuxieme supplement a la theorie analytique des probabilites*. Paris: Courcier.
- Lax, D. A. (1985). Robust estimators of scale: Finite-sample performance in long-tailed symmetric distributions. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 80, 736–741.
- Lee, H., & Fung, K. F. (1985). Behavior of trimmed F and sine-wave F statistics in one-way ANOVA. *Sankhya: The Indian Journal of Statistics*, 47, 186–201.
- Leger, C., Politis, D. N., & Romano, J. P. (1992). Bootstrap technology and applications. *Technometrics*, 34, 378–398.
- Leger, C., & Romano, J. P. (1990a). Bootstrap adaptive estimation: The trimmed mean example. *The Canadian Journal of Statistics*, 18, 297–314.
- Leger, C., & Romano, J. P. (1990b). Bootstrap choice of tuning parameters. *Annals of the Institute of Mathematical Statistics*, 42, 709–735.
- Lehmann, E. L., & Romano, J. P. (2005). Generalizations of the familywise error rate. *Annals of Statistics*, 33, 1138–1154.
- Levy, P. (1967). Substantive significance of significant differences between two groups. *Psychological Bulletin*, 67, 37–40.
- Li, G. (1985). Robust regression. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. Tukey (Eds.), *Exploring data tables, trends and shapes*. New York: Wiley.
- Li, G., & Chen, Z. (1985). Projection-pursuit approach to robust dispersion and principal components: Primary theory and Monte Carlo. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 80, 759–766.
- Li, G., Li, Y., & Tsai, C.-L. (2015). Quantile correlations and quantile autoregressive modeling. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 110, 246–261.
- Li, G., Tiwari, R. C., & Wells, M. T. (1996). Quantile comparison functions in two-sample problems, with application to comparisons of diagonal markers. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 689–698.
- Li, J., Cuesta-Albertos, J., & Liu, R. (2012). DD-classifier: Nonparametric classification procedure based on DD-plot. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 107, 737–753.
- Li, J., & Siegmund, D. (2015). Higher criticism: P-values and criticism. *Annals of Statistics*, 43, 1323–1350.
- Lin, P., & Stivers, L. (1974). On the difference of means with missing values. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 61, 634–636.
- Little, R. J. A., & Rubin, D. B. (2002). *Statistical analysis with missing data*. New York: Wiley.
- Liu, R. C., & Brown, L. D. (1993). Nonexistence of informative unbiased estimators in singular problems. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 1–14.
- Liu, R. G., & Singh, K. (1997). Notions of limiting P values based on data depth and bootstrap. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 92, 266–277.
- Liu, R. Y. (1988). Bootstrap procedure under some non-i.i.d. models. *Annals of Statistics*, 16, 1696–1708.
- Liu, R. Y. (1990). On a notion of data depth based on random simplices. *Annals of Statistics*, 18, 405–414.
- Liu, R. Y., Parelius, J. M., & Singh, K. (1999). Multivariate analysis by data depth: Descriptive statistics, graphics and inference. *Annals of Statistics*, 27, 783–858.
- Liu, R. Y., & Singh, K. (1993). A quality index based on data depth and multivariate rank tests. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 252–260.
- Liu, W., Lin, S., & Piegorsch, W. W. (2008). Construction of exact simultaneous confidence bands for a simple linear regression model. *International Statistical Review*, 76(1), 39–57. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/j.1751-5823.2007.00027.x>.

References

- Livavcic-Rojas, P., Vallejo, G., & Fernández, P. (2010). Analysis of Type I error rates of univariate and multivariate procedures in repeated measures designs. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 39, 624–640.
- Lix, L. M., & Keselman, H. J. (1998). To trim or not to trim: Tests of mean equality under heteroscedasticity and nonnormality. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 58, 409–429.
- Lix, L. M., Keselman, H. J., & Hinds, A. (2005). Robust tests for the multivariate Behrens–Fisher problem. *Computer Methods and Programs in Biomedicine*, 77, 129–139.
- Locantore, N., Marron, J. S., Simpson, D. G., Tripoli, N., & Zhang, J. T. (1999). Robust principal components for functional data. *Test*, 8, 1–28.
- Loh, W.-Y. (1987a). Calibrating confidence coefficients. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 82, 155–162.
- Loh, W.-Y. (1987b). Does the correlation coefficient really measure the degree of clustering around a line? *Journal of Educational Statistics*, 12, 235–239.
- Lombard, F. (2005). Nonparametric confidence bands for a quantile comparison function. *Technometrics*, 47, 364–369.
- Long, J. S., & Ervin, L. H. (2000). Using heteroscedasticity consistent standard errors in the linear regression model. *American Statistician*, 54, 217–224.
- López-Pintado, S., & Romo, J. (2009). On the concept of depth for functional data. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 104, 718–734.
- Lopuhaä, H. P. (1989). On the relation between S-estimators and M-estimators of multivariate location and covariance. *Annals of Statistics*, 17, 1662–1683.
- Lopuhaä, H. P. (1991). τ -estimators for location and scatter. *Canadian Journal of Statistics*, 19, 307–321.
- Lopuhaä, H. P. (1999). Asymptotics of reweighted estimators of multivariate location and scatter. *Annals of Statistics*, 27, 1638–1665.
- Lopuhaä, H. P., & Rousseeuw, P. J. (1991). Breakdown points of affine equivariant estimators of multivariate location and covariance matrices. *Annals of Statistics*, 19, 229–248.
- Luh, W., & Guo, J. (2000). Approximate transformation trimmed mean methods to the test of simple linear regression slope equality. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 27, 843–857.
- Luh, W. M., & Guo, J. H. (1999). A powerful transformation trimmed mean method for one-way fixed effects ANOVA model under non-normality and inequality of variance. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 52, 303–320.
- Luh, W. M., & Guo, J. H. (2010). Approximate sample size formulas for the two-sample trimmed mean test with unequal variances. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 60, 137–146.
- Lumley, T. (1996). Generalized estimating equations for ordinal data: A note on working correlation structures. *Biometrics*, 52, 354–361.
- Lunneborg, C. E. (2000). *Data analysis by resampling: Concepts and applications*. Pacific Grove, CA: Duxbury.
- Lyon, J. D., & Tsai, C.-L. (1996). A comparison of tests for homogeneity. *Statistician*, 45, 337–350.
- Ma, J. (2015). *Robustness of rank-based and other robust estimators when comparing groups* (Unpublished dissertation). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Ma, J., & Wilcox, R. R. (2013). Robust within groups ANOVA: Dealing with missing values. In *Mathematics and statistics*, Vol. 1 (pp. 1–4). Horizon Research Publishing.
- Ma, X., He, X., & Shia, X. (2016). A variant of K nearest neighbor quantile regression. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 43, 526–537. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02664763.2015.1070807>.
- MacKinnon, D. P. (2008). *Introduction to statistical mediation analysis*. Clifton, NJ: Psychology Press.
- MacKinnon, D. P., Lockwood, C. M., & Williams, J. (2004). Confidence limits for the indirect effect: Distribution of the product and resampling methods. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 39, 99–128. http://dx.doi.org/10.1207/s15327906mbr3901_4.
- MacKinnon, D. P., Warsi, G., & Dwyer, J. H. (1995). A simulation study of mediated effect measures. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 30, 41–62.

- MacKinnon, J. G., & White, H. (1985). Some heteroskedasticity consistent covariance matrix estimators with improved finite sample properties. *Journal of Econometrics*, 29, 53–57.
- Mak, T. K. (1992). Estimation of parameters in heteroscedastic linear models. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 54, 649–655.
- Malec, P., & Schienle, M. (2014). Nonparametric kernel density estimation near the boundary. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 72, 57–76.
- Mallows, C. L. (1973). Some comments on C_p . *Technometrics*, 15, 661–675.
- Mallows, C. L. (1975). *On some topics in robustness* (Technical memorandum). Bell Telephone Laboratories.
- Mammen, E. (1993). Bootstrap and wild bootstrap for high dimensional linear models. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 255–285.
- Marazzi, A. (1993). *Algorithms, routines, and S functions for robust statistics*. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- Mardia, K. V., Kent, J. T., & Bibby, J. M. (1979). *Multivariate analysis*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.
- Maritz, J. S., & Jarrett, R. G. (1978). A note on estimating the variance of the sample median. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 73, 194–196.
- Markatou, M., & He, X. (1994). Bounded influence and high breakdown point testing procedures in linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 543–549.
- Markatou, M., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1990). Robust bounded-influence tests in linear models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 187–190.
- Markatou, M., Stahel, W. A., & Ronchetti, E. (1991). Robust M-type testing procedures for linear models. In W. Stahel, & S. Weisberg (Eds.), *Directions in robust statistics diagnostics. Part I* (pp. 201–220). New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Markowski, C. A., & Markowski, E. P. (1990). Conditions for the effectiveness of a preliminary test of variance. *American Statistician*, 44, 322–326.
- Marmolejo-Ramos, F., & Tian, T. S. (2010). The shifting boxplot. A boxplot based on essential summary statistics around the mean. *International Journal of Psychological Research*, 3, 37–45.
- Maronna, R. A. (1976). Robust M-estimators of multivariate location and scatter. *Annals of Statistics*, 4, 51–67.
- Maronna, R. A. (2005). Principal components and orthogonal regression based on robust scales. *Technometrics*, 47, 264–273.
- Maronna, R. A. (2011). Robust ridge regression for high-dimensional data. *Technometrics*, 53, 44–53.
- Maronna, R. A., Martin, D. R., & Yohai, V. J. (2006). *Robust statistics: Theory and methods*. New York: Wiley.
- Maronna, R. A., & Morgenthaler, S. (1986). Robust regression through robust covariances. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 15, 1347–1365.
- Maronna, R. A., & Yohai, V. J. (1993). Bias-robust estimates of regression based on projections. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 965–990.
- Maronna, R. A., & Yohai, V. J. (1995). The behavior of the Stahel–Donoho robust estimator. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 330–341.
- Maronna, R. A., & Yohai, V. J. (2010). Correcting MM estimates for “fat” data sets. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 3168–3173.
- Maronna, R. A., & Yohai, V. J. (2013). Robust functional linear regression based on splines. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 65, 42–55.
- Maronna, R. A., & Yohai, V. J. (2015). High finite-sample efficiency and robustness based on distance-constrained maximum likelihood. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 83, 262–272.
- Maronna, R. A., & Zamar, R. H. (2002). Robust estimates of location and dispersion for high-dimensional datasets. *Technometrics*, 44, 307–317.
- Maronna, R. A., & Zamar, R. H. (2010). Correcting MM estimates for “fat” data sets. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 3168–3173.
- Martin, R. A., & Zamar, R. H. (1993). Efficiency-constrained bias-robust estimation of location. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 338–354.

References

- Martin, R. A., Yohai, V. J., & Zamar, R. H. (1989). Asymptotically min–max bias robust regression. *Annals of Statistics*, 17, 1608–1630.
- Martínez-Camblor, P. (2014). On correlated z-values distributions in hypothesis testing. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 79, 30–43.
- Masse, J.-C., & Plante, J.-F. (2003). A Monte Carlo study of the accuracy and robustness of ten bivariate location estimators. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 42, 1–26.
- Maxwell, S. E., & Delaney, H. D. (1990). *Designing experiments and analyzing data: A model comparison perspective*. Belmont, CA: Wadsworth.
- McCann, L., & Welsch, R. E. (2007). Robust variable selection using least angle regression and elemental set sampling. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 52, 249–257.
- McCulloch, C. E. (1987). Tests for equality of variance for paired data. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 16, 1377–1391.
- McKean, J. W., & Schrader, R. M. (1984). A comparison of methods for studentizing the sample median. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 13, 751–773.
- McKean, J. W., & Sheather, S. J. (1991). Small sample properties of robust analyses of linear models based on R-estimates: A survey. In W. Stahel, & S. Weisberg (Eds.), *Directions in robust statistics and diagnostics. Part II*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- McKean, J. W., Sheather, S. J., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1990). Regression diagnostics for rank-based methods. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 1018–1029.
- McKean, J. W., Sheather, S. J., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1993). The use and interpretation of residuals based on robust estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 1254–1263.
- Mee, R. W. (1990). Confidence intervals for probabilities and tolerance regions based on a generalization of the Mann–Whitney statistic. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 793–800.
- Messer, K., & Goldstein, L. (1993). A new class of kernels for nonparametric curve estimation. *Annals of Statistics*, 21, 179–195.
- Micceri, T. (1989). The unicorn, the normal curve, and other improbable creatures. *Psychological Bulletin*, 105, 156–166.
- Mickey, M. R., Dunn, O. J., & Clark, V. (1967). Note on the use of stepwise regression in detecting outliers. *Computational Biomedical Research*, 1, 105–111.
- Miles, D., & Mora, J. (2003). On the performance of nonparametric specification tests in regression models. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 42, 477–490.
- Miller, A. J. (1990). *Subset selection in regression*. London: Chapman and Hall.
- Miller, R. G. (1966). *Simultaneous statistical inference*. New York: McGraw-Hill.
- Mills, J. E., Field, C. A., & Dupuis, D. J. (2002). Marginally specified generalized mixed models: A robust approach. *Biometrics*, 58, 727–734.
- Mizera, I. (2002). On depth and deep points: A calculus. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 1681–1736.
- Molenberghs, G., & Verbeke, G. (2005). *Models for discrete longitudinal data*. New York: Springer.
- Montgomery, D. C., & Peck, E. A. (1992). *Introduction to linear regression analysis*. New York: Wiley.
- Mooney, C. Z., & Duval, R. D. (1993). *Bootstrapping: A nonparametric approach to statistical inference*. Newbury Park, CA: Sage.
- Morgenthaler, S. (1992). Least-absolute deviations fit for generalized linear models. *Biometrika*, 79, 747–754.
- Morgenthaler, S., & Tukey, J. W. (1991). *Configural polysampling*. New York: Wiley.
- Moser, B. K., Stevens, G. R., & Watts, C. L. (1989). The two-sample t-test versus Satterthwaite's approximate F test. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 18, 3963–3975.
- Moses, T., & Klockars, A. J. (2012). Traditional and proposed tests of slopehomogeneity for non-normal and heteroscedastic data. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 65, 402–426.
- Mosteller, F., & Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Data analysis and regression*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Möttönen, J., & Oja, H. (1995). Multivariate spatial sign and rank methods. *Nonparametric Statistics*, 5, 201–213.

- Mount, D. M., Netanyahu, N. S., Piatko, A. Y., Wu, A. R., & Silverman, R. (2016). A practical approximation algorithm for the LTS estimator. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 99, 148–170.
- Mudholkar, G. S., Wilding, G. E., & Mietlowski, W. L. (2003). Robustness properties of the Pitman–Morgan test. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 32, 1801–1816.
- Muirhead, R. J. (1982). *Aspects of multivariate statistical theory*. New York: Wiley.
- Munk, A., & Dette, H. (1998). Nonparametric comparison of several regression functions: Exact and asymptotic theory. *Annals of Statistics*, 26, 2339–2386.
- Munzel, U., & Brunner, E. (2000). Nonparametric test in the unbalanced multivariate one-way design. *Biometrical Journal*, 42, 837–854.
- Myers, J. L. (1979). *Fundamentals of experimental design*. Boston, MA: Allyn and Bacon.
- Nanayakkara, N., & Cressie, N. (1991). Robustness to unequal scale and other departures from the classical linear model. In W. Stahel, & S. Weisberg (Eds.), *Directions in robust statistics and diagnostics. Part II* (pp. 65–113). New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Naranjo, J. D., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1994). Bounded influence rank regression. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, B*, 56, 209–220.
- Narula, S. C. (1987). The minimum sum of absolute errors regression. *Journal of Quality Technology*, 19, 37–45.
- Nelder, J. A., & Mead, R. (1965). A simplex method for function minimization. *Computer Journal*, 7, 308–313.
- Neuhäuser, M. (2003). A note on the exact test based on the Baumgartner–Weiss–Schindler statistic in the presence of ties. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 42, 561–568.
- Neuhäuser, M., Lösch, C., & Jöckel, K-H. (2007). The Chen–Luo test in case of heteroscedasticity. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 51, 5055–5060.
- Neumeyer, N., & Dette, H. (2003). Nonparametric comparison of regression curves: An empirical process approach. *Annals of Statistics*, 31, 880–920.
- Newcomb, S. (1882). Discussion and results of observations on transits of Mercury from 1677 to 1881. *Astronomical Papers*, 1, 363–487.
- Newcomb, S. (1886). A generalized theory of the combination of observations so as to obtain the best result. *American Journal of Mathematics*, 8, 343–366.
- Newcombe, R. G. (1998). Improved confidence intervals for the difference between binomial proportions based on paired data. *Statistics in Medicine*, 17, 2635–2650.
- Newcombe, R. G. (2006a). Confidence intervals for an effect size measure based on the Mann–Whitney statistic. Part 1: General issues and tail-area-based methods. *Statistics in Medicine*, 25, 543–557.
- Newcombe, R. G. (2006b). Confidence intervals for an effect size measure based on the Mann–Whitney statistic. Part 2: Asymptotic methods and evaluation. *Statistics in Medicine*, 25, 559–573.
- Neykova, N. M., Čížek, P., Filzmoser, P., & Neytchev, P. N. (2012). The least trimmed quantile regression. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 56, 1757–1770.
- Ng, M. (2009a). *A comparison of bootstrap techniques for evaluating indirect effects* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Ng, M. (2009b). *Significance testing in regression analyses* (Unpublished doctoral dissertation). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Ng, M., & Wilcox, R. R. (2009). Level robust methods based on the least squares regression estimator. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 8, 384–395.
- Ng, M., & Wilcox, R. R. (2010). Comparing the slopes of regression lines. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 63, 319–340.
- Ng, M., & Wilcox, R. R. (2011). A comparison of two-stage procedures for testing least-squares coefficients under heteroscedasticity. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 64, 244–258.
- Ng, M., & Wilcox, R. R. (2012). Bootstrap methods for comparing independent regression slopes. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 65, 282–301.
- Ng, P. (1996). An algorithm for quantile smoothing splines. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 22, 99–118.

References

- Noh, M., & Lee, Y. (2007). Robust modeling for inference from generalized linear model classes. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 102, 1059–1072.
- Nurunnabi, A. A. M., Nasser, M., & Imon, A. H. M. R. (2016). Identification and classification of multiple outliers, high leverage points and influential observations in linear regression. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 43, 509–525. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/02664763.2015.1070806>.
- Oberhelman, D., & Kadiyala, R. (2007). A test for the equality of parameters of separate regression models in the presence of heteroskedasticity. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 36, 99–121.
- Olive, D. J. (2004). A resistant estimator of multivariate location and dispersion. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 46, 93–102.
- Olive, D. J. (2010). The number of samples for resampling algorithms. Preprint. www.math.siu.edu/olive/preprints.htm.
- Olive, D. J., & Hawkins, D. M. (2010). Robust multivariate location and dispersion. Preprint. www.math.siu.edu/olive/preprints.htm.
- Olsson, D. M. (1974). A sequential simplex program for solving minimization problems. *Journal of Quality Technology*, 6, 53–57.
- Olsson, D. M., & Nelson, L. S. (1975). The Nelder–Mead simplex procedure for function minimization. *Technometrics*, 17, 45–51.
- Othman, A. R., Keselman, H. J., Wilcox, R. R., Fradette, K., & Padmanabhan, A. R. (2002). A test of symmetry. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 1, 310–315.
- Owen, A. (2001). Empirical likelihood for linear models. *Annals of Statistics*, 19, 1725–1747.
- Özdemir, A. F. (2013). Comparing two independent groups: A test based on a one-step M-estimator and bootstrap-t. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 66, 322–337.
- Özdemir, A. F., & Wilcox, R. R. (2010). *New results on the small-sample properties of some robust estimators* (Technical report). Izmir, Turkey: Department of Statistics, Dokuz Eylul University.
- Özdemir, A. F., & Wilcox, R. R. (2015). *Comparing J independent groups with a method based on trimmed means* (Technical report). Izmir, Turkey: Department of Statistics, Dokuz Eylul University.
- Özdemir, A. F., Wilcox, R. R., & Yildiztepe, E. (2010). *Comparing measures of location: Some small-sample results when distributions differ in skewness* (Technical report). Izmir, Turkey: Department of Statistics, Dokuz Eylul University.
- Parrish, R. S. (1990). Comparison of quantile estimators in normal sampling. *Biometrics*, 46, 247–257.
- Patel, K. M., & Hoel, D. G. (1973). A nonparametric test for interaction in factorial experiments. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 68, 615–620.
- Patel, K. R., Mudholkar, G. S., & Fernando, J. L. I. (1988). Student's t approximations for three simple robust estimators. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 83, 1203–1210.
- Pearson, E. S., & Please, N. W. (1975). Relation between the shape of the population distribution and the robustness of four simple statistics. *Biometrika*, 62, 223–241.
- Pedersen, W. C., Miller, L. C., Putcha-Bhagavatula, A. D., & Yang, Y. (2002). Evolved sex differences in sexual strategies: The long and the short of it. *Psychological Science*, 13, 157–161.
- Peña, D., & Prieto, F. J. (2001). Multivariate outlier detection and robust covariance matrix estimation. *Technometrics*, 43, 286–299.
- Peña, D., & Yohai, V. (1999). A fast procedure for outlier diagnostics in large regression problems. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 434–445.
- Peng, H., Wang, S., & Wang, X. (2008). Consistency and asymptotic distribution of the Theil–Sen estimator. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 138, 1836–1850.
- Pernet, C. R., Wilcox, R., & Rousselet, G. A. (2013). Robust correlation analyses: A Matlab toolbox for psychology research. *Frontiers in Quantitative Psychology and Measurement*. <http://dx.doi.org/10.3389/fpsyg.2012.00606>.
- Pesarin, F. (2001). *Multivariate permutation tests*. New York: Wiley.

- Pison, G., Van Aelst, S., & Willems, G. (2002). Small sample corrections for LTS and MCD. *Metrika*, 55, 111–123.
- Politis, D. N., & Romano, J. P. (1997). Multivariate density estimation with general flat-top kernels of infinite order. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 68, 1–25.
- Poon, W.-Y., Lew, S.-F., & Poon, Y. S. (2000). A local influence approach to identifying multiple outliers. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 53, 255–273.
- Pothoff, R. F., & Roy, S. N. (1964). A generalized multivariate analysis of variance model useful especially for growth curve problem. *Biometrika*, 51, 313–326.
- Pratt, J. W. (1964). Robustness of some procedures for the two-sample location problem. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 59, 665–680.
- Pratt, J. W. (1968). A normal approximation for binomial, F, beta, and other common, related tail probabilities, I. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 63, 1457–1483.
- Preacher, K. J., Rucker, D. D., & Hayes, A. F. (2007). Addressing moderated mediation hypotheses: Theory, methods, and prescriptions. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 42, 185–227.
- Pregibon, D. (1987). Resistant fits for some commonly used logistic models with medical applications. *Biometrics*, 38, 485–498.
- Price, R. M., & Bonett, D. G. (2001). Estimating the variance of the median. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 68, 295–305.
- R Development Core Team (2010). *R: A language and environment for statistical computing*. Vienna, Austria: R Foundation for Statistical Computing, ISBN 3-900051-07-0. <http://www.R-project.org>.
- Racine, J., & MacKinnon, J. G. (2007a). Simulation-based tests than can use any number of simulations. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 36, 357–365.
- Racine, J., & MacKinnon, J. G. (2007b). Inference via kernel smoothing of bootstrap P values. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 51, 5949–5957.
- Radchenko, P., & James, G. (2011). Improved variable selection with Forward–Lasso adaptive shrinkage. *Annals of Applied Statistics*, 5, 427–448.
- Raine, A., Buchsbaum, M., & LaCasse, L. (1997). Brain abnormalities in murderers indicated by positron emission tomography. *Biological Psychiatry*, 42, 495–508.
- Ramsay, J., Hooker, G., & Graves, S. (2009). *Functional data analysis with R and MATLAB*. New York: Springer.
- Ramsay, J. O., & Silverman, B. W. (2005). *Functional data analysis* (2nd ed.). New York: Springer Verlag.
- Ramsey, P. H. (1980). Exact type I error rates for robustness of Student's t test with unequal variances. *Journal of Educational Statistics*, 5, 337–349.
- Randal, J. A. (2008). A reinvestigation of robust scale estimation in finite samples. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 52, 5014–5021.
- Randles, R. H., & Wolfe, D. A. (1979). *Introduction to the theory of nonparametric statistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Rao, C. R. (1948). Tests of significance in multivariate analysis. *Biometrika*, 35, 58–79.
- Rao, P. S. R. S., Kaplan, J., & Cochran, W. G. (1981). Estimators for one-way random effects model with unequal error variances. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 76, 89–97.
- Rasch, D., Teuscher, F., & Guiard, V. (2007). How robust are tests for two independent samples? *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 137, 2706–2720.
- Rasmussen, J. L. (1989). Data transformation, type I error rate and power. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 42, 203–211.
- Reed, J. F. (1998). Contributions to adaptive estimation. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 25, 651–669.
- Reed, J. F. (2004). Comparing two small binomial proportions. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 3(1), Article 27. <http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/jmasm/vol3/iss1/27>.
- Reed, J. F., & Stark, D. B. (1996). Hinge estimators of location: Robust to asymmetry. *Computer Methods and Programs in Biomedicine*, 49, 11–17.
- Reiczigel, J., Abonyi-Tóth, Z., & Singer, J. (2008). *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 5046–5053.
- Reider, H. (1994). *Robust asymptotic statistics*. New York: Springer-Verlag.

References

- Renaud, O., & Victoria-Feser, M.-P. (2010). A robust coefficient of determination for regression. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 140, 1852–1862.
- Rivest, L.-P. (1994). Statistical properties of Winsorized means for skewed distributions. *Biometrika*, 81, 373–383.
- Rizzo, M. L., & Székely, G. (2010). DISCO analysis: A nonparametric extension of analysis of variance. *Annals of Applied Statistics*, 4, 1034–1055.
- Roberts, S., Martin, M. A., & Zheng, L. (2015). An adaptive, automatic multiple-case deletion technique for detecting influence in regression. *Technometrics*, 57, 408–417.
- Robinson, J., Ronchetti, E., & Young, G. A. (2003). Saddlepoint approximations and tests based on multivariate M-estimates. *Annals of Statistics*, 31, 1154–1169.
- Robinson, P. M. (1987). Asymptotically efficient estimation in the presence of heteroskedasticity of unknown form. *Econometrica*, 55, 875–891.
- Rocke, D. M. (1996). Robustness properties of S-estimators of multivariate location and shape in high dimension. *Annals of Statistics*, 24, 1327–1345.
- Rocke, D. M., & Woodruff, D. L. (1993). Computation of robust estimates of multivariate location and shape. *Statistica Neerlandica*, 47, 27–42.
- Rocke, D. M., & Woodruff, D. L. (1996). Identification of outliers in multivariate data. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 1047–1061.
- Rom, D. M. (1990). A sequentially rejective test procedure based on a modified Bonferroni inequality. *Biometrika*, 77, 663–666.
- Romanazzi, M. (1997). A schematic plot for bivariate data. *Student*, 2, 149–158.
- Romano, J. P. (1990). On the behavior of randomization tests without a group invariance assumption. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 686–692.
- Rosenberger, J. L., & Gasko, M. (1983). Comparing location estimators: Trimmed means, medians, and trimean. In D. Hoaglin, F. Mosteller, & J. Tukey (Eds.), *Understanding robust and exploratory data analysis* (pp. 297–336). New York: Wiley.
- Rosenthal, R., & Jacobson, L. (1968). *Pygmalion in the classroom: Teacher expectations and pupil's intellectual development*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston.
- Rosmond, R., Dallman, M. F., & Björntorp, P. (1998). Stress-related cortisol secretion in men: Relationships with abdominal obesity and endocrine, metabolic and hemodynamic abnormalities. *Journal of Clinical Endocrinology & Metabolism*, 83, 1853–1859.
- Rousseeuw, P. J. (1984). Least median of squares regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 79, 871–880.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Christmann, A. (2003). Robustness against separation and outliers in logistic regression. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 43, 315–332.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Croux, C. (1993). Alternative to the median absolute deviation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 1273–1283.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Hubert, M. (1999). Regression depth. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 388–402.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Leroy, A. M. (1987). *Robust regression & outlier detection*. New York: Wiley.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Ruts, I. (1996). AS 307: Bivariate location depth. *Applied Statistics*, 45, 516–526.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Struyf, A. (1998). Computing location depth and regression depth in higher dimensions. *Statistics and Computing*, 8, 193–203.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., Van Aelst, S., Van Driessen, K., & Agulló, J. (2004). Robust multivariate regression. *Technometrics*, 46, 293–305.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & van Driessen, K. (1999). A fast algorithm for the minimum covariance determinant estimator. *Technometrics*, 41, 212–223.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & van Zomeren, B. C. (1990). Unmasking multivariate outliers and leverage points. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 633–639.

- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Verboven, S. (2002). Robust estimation in very small samples. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 40, 741–758.
- Rousseeuw, P. J., & Yohai, V. (1984). Robust regression by means of S-estimators. In *Lecture notes in statistics: Vol. 26. Nonlinear time series analysis* (pp. 256–272). New York: Springer.
- Rubin, A. S. (1983). The use of weighted contrasts in analysis of models with heterogeneity of variance. In *Proceedings of the business and economics statistics section* (pp. 347–352). American Statistical Association.
- Ruppert, D. (1992). Computing S estimators for regression and multivariate location/dispersion. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 1, 253–270.
- Ruppert, D., & Carroll, R. J. (1980). Trimmed least squares estimation in the linear model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 75, 828–838.
- Ruppert, D., Wand, M. P., & Carroll, R. J. (2003). *Semiparametric regression*. Cambridge: Cambridge University Press.
- Ruscio, J., & Mullen, T. (2012). Confidence intervals for the probability of superiority effect size measure and the area under a receiver operating characteristic curve. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 47, 201–223.
- Rust, S. W., & Fligner, M. A. (1984). A modification of the Kruskal–Wallis statistic for the generalized Behrens–Fisher problem. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 13, 2013–2027.
- Rutherford, A. (1992). Alternatives to traditional analysis of covariance. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 45, 197–224.
- Ryan, B. F., Joiner, B. L., & Ryan, T. A. (1985). *MINITAB handbook*. Boston: PWS-KENT.
- Ryu, E., & Agresti, A. (2008). Modeling and inference for an ordinal effect size measure. *Statistics in Medicine*, 27, 1703–1717.
- Sakaori, F. (2002). Permutation test for equality of correlation coefficients in two populations. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 31, 641–652.
- Salibián-Barrera, M., Van Aelst, S., & Willems, G. (2006). PCA based on multivariate MM-estimators with fast and robust bootstrap. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 101, 1198–1211.
- Salibian-Barrera, M., & Zamar, R. H. (2002). Bootstrapping robust estimates of regression. *Annals of Statistics*, 30, 556–582.
- Salk, L. (1973). The role of the heartbeat in the relations between mother and infant. *Scientific American*, 235, 26–29.
- Samarov, A. M. (1993). Exploring regression structure using nonparametric functional estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 836–847.
- Sarkar, S. K. (2008). Generalizing Simes' test and Hochberg's stepup procedure. *Annals of Statistics*, 36, 337–363.
- Saunders, D. R. (1956). Moderator variables in prediction. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 16, 209–222.
- Sawilowsky, S. S. (2002). The probable difference between two means when $\sigma_1 \neq \sigma_2$: The Behrens–Fisher problem. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 1, 461–472.
- Sawilowsky, S. S., & Blair, R. C. (1992). A more realistic look at the robustness and Type II error properties of the t test to departures from normality. *Psychological Bulletin*, 111, 352–360.
- Schapire, R. E., & Freund, Y. (2012). *Boosting: Foundations and algorithms*. Cambridge, MA: MIT Press.
- Scheffè, H. (1959). *The analysis of variance*. New York: Wiley.
- Schilling, M., & Doi, J. (2014). A coverage probability approach to finding an optimal binomial confidence procedure. *American Statistician*, 68, 133–145.
- Schlölkopf, S., Smola, A., & Müller, K. R. (1998). Nonlinear component analysis as a kernel eigenvalue problem. *Neural Computation*, 10, 1299–1319.
- Schnys, M., Haesbroeck, G., & Critchley, F. (2010). RelaxMCD: Smooth optimisation for the minimum covariance determinant estimator. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 54, 843–857.
- Scholz, F. W. (1978). Weighted median regression estimates. *Annals of Statistics*, 6, 603–609.
- Schrader, R. M., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1980). Robust analysis of variance. *Biometrika*, 67, 93–101.

References

- Schro  r, G., & Trenkler, D. (1995). Exact and randomization distributions of Kolmogorov-Smirnov tests two or three samples. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 20, 185-202.
- Schwertman, N. C., & de Silva, R. (2007). Identifying outliers with sequential fences. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 51, 3800-3810.
- Scott, D. W. (1979). On optimal and data-based histograms. *Biometrika*, 66, 605-610.
- Scott, D. W. (1992). *Multivariate density estimation. Theory, practice, and visualization*. New York: Wiley.
- Sen, P. K. (1968). Estimate of the regression coefficient based on Kendall's tau. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 63, 1379-1389.
- Serfling, R. J. (1980). *Approximation theorems of mathematical statistics*. New York: Wiley.
- Serfling, R., & Wang, Y. (2016). On Liu's simplicial depth and Randles' interdirection. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 99, 235-247.
- Serneels, S., & Verdonck, T. (2008). Principal components analysis for data containing outliers and missing elements. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 52, 1712-1727.
- Serroyen, J., Molenbergs, G., Verbeke, G., & Davidian, M. (2009). Nonlinear models for longitudinal data. *American Statistician*, 63, 378-388.
- Sfakianakis, M. E., & Verginis, D. G. (2008). A new family of nonparametric quantile estimators. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 37, 337-345.
- Shao, J. (1996). Bootstrap model selection. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 91, 655-665.
- Shao, J., & Tu, D. (1995). *The jackknife and the bootstrap*. New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Sheather, S. J., & Marron, J. S. (1990). Kernel quantile estimators. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 410-416.
- Sheather, S. J., & McKean, J. W. (1987). A comparison of testing and confidence intervals for the median. *Statistical Probability Letters*, 6, 31-36.
- Shoemaker, L. H. (2003). Fixing the F test for equal variances. *American Statistician*, 57, 105-114.
- Shoemaker, L. H., & Hettmansperger, T. P. (1982). Robust estimates and tests for the one- and two-sample scale models. *Biometrika*, 69, 47-54.
- Sievers, G. L. (1978). Weighted rank statistics for simple linear regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 73, 628-631.
- Signorini, D. F., & Jones, M. C. (2004). Kernel estimators for univariate binary regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 99, 119-126.
- Silvapulle, M. J. (1992). Robust Wald-type tests of one-sided hypotheses in the linear model. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 87, 156-161.
- Silverman, B. W. (1986). *Density estimation for statistics and data analysis*. New York: Chapman and Hall.
- Simonoff, J. S. (1996). *Smoothing methods in statistics*. New York: Springer.
- Simpson, D. G., Ruppert, D., & Carroll, R. J. (1992). Bounded-influence regression on one-step GM estimates and stability of inferences in linear regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 87, 439-450.
- Singh, K. (1998). Breakdown theory for bootstrap quantiles. *Annals of Statistics*, 26, 1719-1732.
- Sinha, S. K. (2004). Robust analysis of generalized linear mixed models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 99, 451-460.
- Snedecor, G. W., & Cochran, W. (1967). *Statistical methods* (6th ed.). Ames, IA: University Press.
- Snow, R. E. (1995). Pygmalion and intelligence? *Current Directions in Psychological Science*, 4, 169-172.
- Sockett, E. B., Daneman, D., Carlson, C., & Ehrlich, R. M. (1987). Factors affecting and patterns of residual insulin secretion during the first year of type I (insulin dependent) diabetes mellitus in children. *Diabetes*, 30, 453-459.
- Srihera, R., & Stute, W. (2010). Nonparametric comparison of regression functions. *Journal of Multivariate Analysis*, 101, 2039-2059.
- Srivastava, D. K., Pan, J., Sarkar, I., & Mudholkar, G. S. (2010). Robust Winsorized regression using bootstrap approach. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 39, 45-67.

- Srivastava, M. S., & Awan, H. M. (1984). On the robustness of the correlation coefficient in sampling from a mixture of two bivariate normals. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 13, 371–382.
- Stahel, W. A. (1981). *Breakdown of covariance estimators* (Research Report 31). Fachgruppe für Statistik, ETH Zürich.
- Staudte, R. G., & Sheather, S. J. (1990). *Robust estimation and testing*. New York: Wiley.
- Steele, C. M., & Aronson, J. (1995). Stereotype threat and the intellectual test performance of African Americans. *Journal of Personality and Social Psychology*, 69, 797–811.
- Stefanski, L., Carroll, D., & Ruppert, D. (1986). Optimally bounded score functions for generalized linear models with applications to logistic regression. *Biometrika*, 73, 413–424.
- Stein, C. (1945). A two-sample test for a linear hypothesis whose power is independent of the variance. *Annals of Statistics*, 16, 243–258.
- Sterne, T. E. (1954). Some remarks on confidence or fiducial limits. *Biometrika*, 41, 275–278.
- Stigler, S. M. (1973). Simon Newcomb, Percy Daniel, and the history of robust estimation 1885–1920. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 68, 872–879.
- Storer, B. E., & Kim, C. (1990). Exact properties of some exact test statistics for comparing two binomial proportions. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 146–155.
- Stromberg, A. J. (1993). Computation of high breakdown nonlinear regression parameters. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 88, 237–244.
- Struyf, A., & Rousseeuw, P. J. (2000). High-dimensional computation of the deepest location. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 34, 415–426.
- Stuart, V. M. (2009). *Exploring robust alternatives to Pearson's r through secondary analysis of published behavioral science data* (Unpublished PhD dissertation). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Stute, W., Gonzalez Manteiga, W. G., & Presedo Quindimil, M. P. (1998). Bootstrap approximations in model checks for regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 93, 141–149.
- Sun, Y., & Genton, M. G. (2011). Functional boxplots. *Journal of Computational and Graphical Statistics*, 20, 316–334.
- Tableman, M. (1990). Bounded-influence rank regression: A one-step estimator based on Wilcoxon scores. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 508–513.
- Tableman, M. (1994). The asymptotics of the least trimmed absolute deviation (LTAD) estimators. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 19, 387–398.
- Talib, B. A., & Midi, H. (2009). Robust estimator to deal with regression models having both continuous and categorical regressors: A simulation study. *Malaysian Journal of Mathematical Sciences*, 3, 161–181.
- Talwar, P. P. (1991). A simulation study of some non-parametric regression estimators. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 15, 309–327.
- Tamura, R., & Boos, D. (1986). Minimum Hellinger distance estimation for multivariate location and covariance. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 81, 223–229.
- Tan, W. Y. (1982). Sampling distributions and robustness of t, F, and variance-ratio of two samples and ANOVA models with respect to departure from normality. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 11, 2485–2511.
- Tang, C. Y., & Leng, C. (2012). An empirical likelihood approach to quantile regression with auxiliary information. *Statistics and Probability Letters*, 82, 29–36.
- Theil, H. (1950). A rank-invariant method of linear and polynomial regression analysis. *Indagationes Mathematicae*, 12, 85–91.
- Thompson, G. L., & Amman, L. P. (1990). Efficiencies of interblock rank statistics for repeated measures designs. *Journal of the American Association*, 85, 519–528.
- Thomson, A., & Randall-Maciver, R. (1905). *Ancient races of the Thebaid*. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press.
- Tian, T., & Wilcox, R. R. (2009). *A comparison of the Brunner–Puri and Agresti–Pendergast methods* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.

References

- Tibshirani, R. (1996). Regression shrinkage and selection via the lasso. *Journal of the Royal Statistical Society, Series B*, 58, 267–288.
- Tingley, M., & Field, C. (1990). Small-sample confidence intervals. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 427–434.
- Todorov, V., & Filzmoser, P. (2010). Robust statistic for the one-way MANOVA. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 54, 37–48.
- Todorov, V., Templ, M., & Filzmoser, P. (2011). Detection of multivariate outliers in business survey data with incomplete information. *Advances in Data Analysis and Classification*, 5, 37–56.
- Tomarken, A., & Serlin, R. (1986). Comparison of ANOVA alternatives under variance heterogeneity and specific noncentrality structures. *Psychological Bulletin*, 99, 90–99.
- Troendle, J. F. (1990). A stepwise resample method of multiple hypothesis testing. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 90, 370–378.
- Tukey, J. W. (1960). A survey of sampling from contaminated normal distributions. In I. Olkin, S. Ghurye, W. Hoeffding, W. Madow, & H. Mann (Eds.), *Contributions to probability and statistics* (pp. 448–485). Stanford, CA: Stanford University Press.
- Tukey, J. W. (1975). Mathematics and the picturing of data. In *Proceedings of the international congress of mathematicians*, Vol. 2 (pp. 523–531).
- Tukey, J. W. (1977). *Exploratory data analysis*. Reading, MA: Addison-Wesley.
- Tukey, J. W. (1991). The philosophy of multiple comparisons. *Statistical Science*, 6, 100–116.
- Tukey, J. W., & McLaughlin, D. H. (1963). Less vulnerable confidence and significance procedures for location based on a single sample: Trimming/Winsorization 1. *Sankhya A*, 25, 331–352.
- Tyler, D. E. (1991). Some issues in the robust estimation of multivariate location and scatter. In W. Stahel, & S. Weisberg (Eds.), *Directions in robust statistics and diagnostics. Part II* (pp. 327–336). New York: Springer-Verlag.
- Tyler, D. E. (1994). Finite sample breakdown points of projection based multivariate location and scatter statistics. *Annals of Statistics*, 22, 1024–1044.
- Vakili, K., & Schmitt, E. (2014). Finding multivariate outliers with FastPCS. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 69, 54–66. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1016/j.csda.2013.07.021>.
- Vallejo, G., & Ato, M. (2012). Robust tests for multivariate factorial designs under heteroscedasticity. *Behavior Research*, 44, 471–489.
- Van Aelst, S., Vandervieren, E., & Willems, G. (2012). A Stahel–Donoho estimator based on huberized outlyingness. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 56, 531–542.
- Vanden Branden, K., & Verboven, S. (2009). Robust data imputation. *Computational Biology and Chemistry*, 33, 7–13.
- Vargha, A., & Delaney, H. D. (2000). A critique and improvement of the CL common language effect size statistics of McGraw and Wong. *Journal of Educational and Behavioral Statistics*, 25, 101–132.
- Velleman, P. F., & Hoaglin, D. C. (1981). *Applications, basics, and computing of exploratory data analysis*. Boston, MA: Duxbury Press.
- Venables, W. N., & Ripley, B. D. (2000). *S programming*. New York: Springer.
- Venables, W. N., & Ripley, B. D. (2002). *Modern applied statistics with S*. New York: Springer.
- Venables, W. N., & Smith, D. M. (2002). *An introduction to R*. Bristol, UK: Network Theory Ltd.
- Verboon, P. (1993). Robust nonlinear regression analysis. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 46, 77–94.
- Verzani, J. (2004). *Using R for introductory statistics*. Boca Raton, FL: CRC Press.
- Vexler, A., Liu, S., Kang, L., & Hutson, A. D. (2009). Modifications of the empirical likelihood interval estimation with improved coverage probabilities. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 2171–2183.
- Victoria-Feser, M.-P. (2002). Robust inference with binary data. *Psychometrika*, 67, 21–32.
- Wand, M. P., & Jones, M. C. (1995). *Kernel smoothing*. London: Chapman & Hall.

- Wang, F. T., & Scott, D. W. (1994). The L_1 method for robust nonparametric regression. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 65–76.
- Wang, H., & Leng, C. (2007). Unified LASSO estimation by least squares approximation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 102, 1039–1048.
- Wang, L., & Qu, A. (2007). Robust tests in regression models with omnibus alternatives and bounded influence. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 102, 347–358.
- Wang, N., & Raftery, A. E. (2002). Nearest-neighbor variance estimation (NNVE): Robust covariance estimation via nearest-neighbor cleaning. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 97, 994–1006.
- Welch, B. L. (1938). The significance of the difference between two means when the population variances are unequal. *Biometrika*, 29, 350–362.
- Welch, B. L. (1951). On the comparison of several mean values: An alternative approach. *Biometrika*, 38, 330–336.
- Welsch, R. E. (1980). Regression sensitivity analysis and bounded-influence estimation. In J. Kmenta, & J. B. Ramsey (Eds.), *Evaluation of econometric models* (pp. 153–167). New York: Academic Press.
- Welsh, A. H. (1987a). One-step L-estimators for the linear model. *The Annals of Statistics*, 15, 626–641.
- Welsh, A. H. (1987b). The trimmed mean in the linear model (with discussion). *The Annals of Statistics*, 15, 20–45.
- Welsh, A. H., Carroll, R. J., & Ruppert, D. (1994). Fitting heteroscedastic regression models. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 100–116.
- Welsh, A. H., & Morrison, H. L. (1990). Robust L estimation of scale with an application in astronomy. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 85, 729–743.
- Westfall, P. H., & Young, S. S. (1993). *Resampling based multiple testing*. New York: Wiley.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1986). Improved simultaneous confidence intervals for linear contrasts and regression parameters. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 15, 917–932.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1987a). New designs in analysis of variance. *Annual Review of Psychology*, 38, 29–60.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1987b). Pairwise comparisons of J independent regression lines over a finite interval, simultaneous comparison of their parameters, and the Johnson–Neyman technique. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 40, 80–93.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1989). Percentage points of a weighted Kolmogorov–Smirnov statistics. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 18, 237–244.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1990a). Comparing the means of two independent groups. *Biometrical Journal*, 32, 771–780.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1990b). Determining whether an experimental group is stochastically larger than a control. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 43, 327–333.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1990c). Comparing variances and means when distributions have non-identical shapes. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 19, 155–173.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1991a). Bootstrap inferences about the correlation and variance of paired data. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 44, 379–382.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1991b). Testing whether independent treatment groups have equal medians. *Psychometrika*, 56, 381–396.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1991c). A step-down heteroscedastic multiple comparison procedure. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 20, 1087–1097.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1992a). Comparing one-step M-estimators of location corresponding to two independent groups. *Psychometrika*, 57, 141–154.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1992b). Comparing the medians of dependent groups. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 45, 151–162.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1993a). Comparing the biweight midvariances of two independent groups. *The Statistician*, 42, 29–35.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1993b). Some results on a Winsorized correlation coefficient. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 46, 339–349.

References

- Wilcox, R. R. (1993c). Analyzing repeated measures or randomized block designs using trimmed means. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 46, 63–76.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1993d). Comparing one-step M-estimators of location when there are more than two groups. *Psychometrika*, 58, 71–78.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1994a). Some results on the Tukey–McLaughlin and Yuen methods for trimmed means when distributions are skewed. *Biometrical Journal*, 36, 259–306.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1994b). A one-way random effects model for trimmed means. *Psychometrika*, 59, 289–306.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1994c). Estimating Winsorized correlations in a univariate or bivariate random effects model. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 47, 167–183.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1994d). The percentage bend correlation coefficient. *Psychometrika*, 59, 601–616.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1994e). Computing confidence intervals for the slope of the biweight midregression and Winsorized regression lines. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 47, 355–372.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995a). Comparing two independent groups via multiple quantiles. *The Statistician*, 44, 91–99.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995b). *Comparing the deciles of two dependent groups* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995c). Three multiple comparison procedures for trimmed means. *Biometrical Journal*, 37, 643–656.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995d). Some small-sample results on a bounded influence rank regression method. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 24, 881–888.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995e). A regression smoother for resistant measures of location. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 48, 189–204.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1995f). Simulation results on solutions to the multivariate Behrens–Fisher problem via trimmed means. *Statistician*, 44, 213–225.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996a). *Statistics for the social sciences*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996b). A note on testing hypotheses about trimmed means. *Biometrical Journal*, 38, 173–180.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996c). Confidence intervals for the slope of a regression line when the error term has non-constant variance. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 22, 89–98.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996d). Estimation in the simple linear regression model when there is heteroscedasticity of unknown form. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 25, 1305–1324.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996e). Confidence intervals for two robust regression lines with a heteroscedastic error term. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 49, 163–170.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996f). *Comparing the variances of dependent groups* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996g). *Testing hypotheses about regression parameters when the error term is heteroscedastic* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1996h). *Simulation results on performing pairwise comparisons of trimmed means* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1997a). Pairwise comparisons using trimmed means or M-estimators when working with dependent groups. *Biometrical Journal*, 39, 677–688.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1997b). ANCOVA based on comparing a robust measure of location at empirically determined design points. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 50, 93–103.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1997c). Comparing the slopes of two independent regression lines when there is complete heteroscedasticity. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 50, 309–317.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1997d). Tests of independence and zero correlations among p random variables. *Biometrical Journal*, 39, 183–193.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1998a). A note on the Theil–Sen regression estimator when the regressor is random and the error term is heteroscedastic. *Biometrical Journal*, 40, 261–268.
- Wilcox, R. R. (1998b). Simulation results on extensions of the Theil–Sen regression estimator. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 27, 1117–1126.

- Wilcox, R. R. (1999). Comments on Stute, Manteiga, and Quindimil. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 659–660.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2001a). Pairwise comparisons of trimmed means for two or more groups. *Psychometrika*, 66, 343–356.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2001b). Comments on Long and Ervin. *American Statistician*, 55, 374–375.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2001c). Rank-based tests for interactions in a two-way design when there are ties. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 53, 145–153.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2002). Comparing the variances of independent groups. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 55, 169–176.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003a). Approximating Tukey's depth. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 32, 977–985.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003b). Two-sample, bivariate hypothesis testing methods based on Tukey's depth. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 38, 225–246.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003c). *Applying contemporary statistical techniques*. San Diego, CA: Academic Press.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003d). Inferences based on multiple skipped correlations. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 44, 223–236.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003e). *Testing the hypothesis that a regression model is additive* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2003f). Multiple hypothesis testing based on the ordinary least squares estimator when there is heteroscedasticity. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 63, 758–764.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2004a). Extension of Hochberg's two-stage multiple comparison method. In N. Mukhopadhyay, S. Datta, & S. Chattopadhyay (Eds.), *Applied sequential methodologies: Real world examples with data analysis*. New York: Dekker.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2004b). An extension of Stein's two-stage method to pairwise comparisons among dependent groups based on trimmed means. *Sequential Analysis*, 23, 63–74.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2004c). Inferences based on a skipped correlation coefficient. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 31, 131–144.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2004d). Some results on extensions and modifications of the Theil–Sen regression estimator. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 57, 265–280.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2005a). Depth and a multivariate generalization of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test. *American Journal of Mathematical and Management Sciences*, 25, 343–364.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2005b). An affine invariant rank-based method for comparing dependent groups. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 58, 33–42.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006a). Inference about the components of a generalized additive model. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 5, 309–316.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006b). Pairwise comparisons of dependent groups based on medians. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 50, 2933–2941.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006c). Comparing medians. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 51, 1934–1943.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006d). A note on inferences about the median of difference scores. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 66, 624–630.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006e). Comparing robust generalized variances and comments on efficiency. *Statistical Methodology*, 3, 211–223.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006f). Some results on comparing the quantiles of dependent groups. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 35, 893–900.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2006g). Testing the hypothesis of a homoscedastic error term in simple, nonparametric regression. *Educational and Psychological Measurement*, 66, 85–92.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2007). An omnibus test when using a quantile regression estimator with multiple predictors. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 6, 361–366.

References

- Wilcox, R. R. (2008a). Some small-sample properties of some recently proposed multivariate outlier detection techniques. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 78, 701–712.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2008b). Quantile regression: A simplified approach to a lack-of-fit test. *Journal of Data Science*, 6, 547–556.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2008c). Robust principal components: A generalized variance perspective. *Behavioral Research Methods*, 40, 102–108.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2008d). Post-hoc analyses in multiple regression based on prediction error. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 35, 9–17.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2008e). A test of independence via quantiles that is sensitive to curvature. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistics*, 7, 11–20.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2009a). Robust ANCOVA using a smoother with bootstrap bagging. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 62, 427–437.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2009b). Robust multivariate regression when there is heteroscedasticity. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 1–13.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2009c). Comparing robust measures of association estimated via a smoother. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 1969–1979.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2009d). Comparing Pearson correlations: Dealing with heteroscedasticity and non-normality. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 2220–2234.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010a). Comparing robust nonparametric regression lines via regression depth. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 80, 379–387.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010b). Measuring and detecting associations: Methods based on robust regression estimators or smoothers that allow curvature. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 63, 379–393.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010c). *A note on principal components via a robust generalized variance* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010d). *Nonparametric regression when estimating the probability of success* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010e). Regression: Comparing predictors and groups of predictors based on robust measures of association. *Journal of Data Science*, 8, 429–441.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2010f). Inferences about the population mean: Empirical likelihood versus bootstrap-t. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 9, 9–14.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2011a). *Nested ANOVA design: Methods that are robust and allow heteroscedasticity* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2011b). Comparing the strength of association of two predictors via smoothers or robust regression estimators. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 10, 8–18.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2011c). Comparing two dependent groups: Dealing with missing values. *Journal of Data Science*, 9, 1–13.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2011d). Inferences about a probabilistic measure of effect size when dealing with more than two groups. *Journal of Data Science*, 9, 471–486.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2012a). Comparing two independent groups via a quantile generalization of the Wilcoxon–Mann–Whitney test. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 11, 296–302.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2012b). Nonparametric regression when estimating the probability of success. *Journal of Statistical Theory and Practice*, 6, 1–9.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2013). A heteroscedastic method for comparing regression lines at specified design points when using a robust regression estimator. *Journal of Data Science*, 11, 281–291.
- Wilcox, R. (2014). Within groups ANCOVA: Multiple comparisons at specified design points using a robust measure of location when there is curvature. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/00949655.2014.962536>.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2015a). Comparing the variances of two dependent variables. *Journal of Statistical Distributions and Applications*, 2(7). <http://dx.doi.org/10.1186/s40488-015-0030-z>.

- Wilcox, R. R. (2015b). Global comparisons of medians and other quantiles in a one-way design when there are tied values. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/03610918.2015.1071388>.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2015c). *Within groups comparisons of least squares regression lines when there is heteroscedasticity* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2015d). Inferences about the skipped correlation coefficient: Dealing with heteroscedasticity and non-normality. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 14, 2–8.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2016a). ANCOVA: A heteroscedastic global test when there is curvature and two covariates. *Computational Statistics*, 1–14. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00180-015-0640-4>.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2016b). Comparisons of two quantile regression smoothers. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 15.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2016c). ANCOVA: A global test based on a robust measure of location or quantiles when there is curvature. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 15.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2016d). *Linear regression: Heteroscedastic confidence bands for the typical value of Y, given X, having some specified simultaneous probability coverage* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (2016e). *Robust ANCOVA: Heteroscedastic confidence bands that have some specified simultaneous probability coverage* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. (2016f). *Regression: An inferential method for determining which independent variables are most important* (Unpublished technical report). Department of Psychology, University of Southern California.
- Wilcox, R. R. (in press-a). Robust ANCOVA: Confidence intervals that have some specified simultaneous probability coverage when there is curvature and two covariates. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 15. <http://digitalcommons.wayne.edu/jmasm/>.
- Wilcox, R. R. (in press-b). Comparing dependent robust correlations. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1111/bmsp.12069>.
- Wilcox, R. R., Charlin, V. L., & Thompson, K. L. (1986). New Monte Carlo results on the robustness of the ANOVA F, W, and F^* statistics. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 15, 933–944.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Clark, F. (2013). Robust regression estimators when there are tied values. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 12, 20–34.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Clark, F. (2014). Comparing robust regression lines associated with two dependent groups when there is heteroscedasticity. *Computational Statistics*, 29, 1175–1186. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1007/s00180-014-0485-2>.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Clark, F. (2015). Heteroscedastic global tests that the regression parameters for two or more independent groups are identical. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 44, 773–786. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/03610918.2013.784986>.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Costa, K. (2009). Quantile regression: On inferences about the slopes corresponding to one, two or three quantiles. *Journal of Modern and Applied Statistical Methods*, 8, 368–375.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Erceg-Hurn, D. (2012). Comparing two dependent groups via quantiles. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 39, 2655–2664.
- Wilcox, R. R., Erceg-Hurn, D., Clark, F., & Carlson, M. (2014). Comparing two independent groups via the lower and upper quantiles. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 84, 1543–1551. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1080/00949655.2012.754026>.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Keselman, H. J. (2002). Within groups multiple comparisons based on robust measures of location. *Journal of Modern Applied Statistical Methods*, 1, 281–287.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Keselman, H. J. (2006a). A skipped multivariate measure of location: One- and two-sample hypothesis testing. In S. Sawilowsky (Ed.), *Real data analysis* (pp. 125–138). Charlotte, NC: IAP.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Keselman, H. J. (2006b). Detecting heteroscedasticity in a simple regression model via quantile regression slopes. *Journal of Statistical Computation and Simulation*, 76, 705–712.

References

- Wilcox, R. R., & Ma, J. (2015). Heteroscedastic methods for performing all pairwise comparisons of regression lines associated with J independent groups. *Methodology*, 11, 110–115. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1027/1614-2241/a000097>.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Muska, J. (1999). Measuring effect size: A nonparametric analog of ω^2 . *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 52, 93–110.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Muska, J. (2001). Inferences about correlations when there is heteroscedasticity. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 54, 39–47.
- Wilcox, R. R., & Tian, T. (2011). Measuring effect size: A robust heteroscedastic approach for two or more groups. *Journal of Applied Statistics*, 38, 1359–1368.
- Wilcox, R. R., Vigen, C., Clark, F., & Carlson, M. (2013). Comparing discrete distributions when the sample space is small. *Universitas Psychologica*, 12, 1583–1595. <http://dx.doi.org/10.11144/Javeriana.UPSY12-5.cdds>.
- Williams, V. S. L., Jones, L. V., & Tukey, J. W. (1999). Controlling error in multiple comparisons, with examples from state-to-state differences in educational achievement. *Journal of Educational and Behavioral Statistics*, 24, 42–69.
- Wisnowski, J. W., Simpson, J. R., Montgomery, D. C., & Runger, G. C. (2003). Resampling methods for variable selection in robust regression. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 43, 341–355.
- Woodruff, D. L., & Rocke, D. M. (1994). Computable robust estimation of multivariate location and shape in high dimension using compound estimators. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 89, 888–896.
- Wright, S. P. (1992). Adjusted P-values for simultaneous inference. *Biometrics*, 48, 1005–1013.
- Wu, C. F. J. (1986). Jackknife, bootstrap, and other resampling methods in regression analysis. *The Annals of Statistics*, 14, 1261–1295.
- Wu, M., & Zuo, Y. (2009). Trimmed and Winsorized means based on a scaled deviation. *Journal of Statistical Planning and Inference*, 139, 350–365.
- Wu, P.-C. (2002). *Central limit theorem and comparing means, trimmed means one-step M-estimators and modified one-step M-estimators under non-normality* (Unpublished doctoral dissertation). Department of Education, University of Southern California.
- Xu, G., & Genton, M. G. (2015). Efficient maximum approximated likelihood inference for Tukey's g-and-h distribution. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 91, 78–91.
- Xu, Y., Iglewicz, B., & Chervoneva, I. (2014). Robust estimation of the parameters of g-and-h distributions, with applications to outlier detection. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 75, 66–80.
- Yale, C., & Forsythe, A. B. (1976). Winsorized regression. *Technometrics*, 18, 291–300.
- Yanagihara, H., & Yuan, K. H. (2005). Three approximate solutions to the multivariate Behrens–Fisher problem. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 34, 975–988.
- Yang, L., & Marron, J. S. (1999). Iterated transformation-kernel density estimation. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 94, 580–589.
- Yohai, V. J. (1987). High breakdown point and high efficiency robust estimates for regression. *The Annals of Statistics*, 15, 642–656.
- Yohai, V. J., & Zamar, R. H. (1988). High breakdown point estimates of regression by means of the minimization of an efficient scale. *Journal of the American Statistical Association*, 83, 406–414.
- Yohai, V. J., & Zamar, R. H. (2004). Robust non-parametric inference for the median. *Annals of Statistics*, 32, 1841–1857.
- Yoshizawa, C. N., Sen, P. K., & Davis, C. E. (1985). Asymptotic equivalence of the Harrell–Davis median estimator and the sample median. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 14, 2129–2136.
- Young, S. G., & Bowman, A. W. (1995). Nonparametric analysis of covariance. *Biometrics*, 51, 920–931.
- Yuan, Y., & MacKinnon, D. P. (2014). Robust mediation analysis based on median regression. *Psychological Methods*, 19, 1–20.
- Yuen, K. K. (1974). The two sample trimmed t for unequal population variances. *Biometrika*, 61, 165–170.
- Zani, S., Riani, M., & Corbellini, A. (1998). Robust bivariate boxplots and multiple outlier detection. *Computational Statistics & Data Analysis*, 28, 257–270.

- Zaykin, D. V., Zhivotovsky, L. A., Westfall, P. H., & Weir, B. S. (2002). Truncated product method for combining p-values. *Genetic Epidemiology*, 22, 170–185.
- Zhang, H., & Zamar, R. H. (2014). Least angle regression for model selection. *WIREs Computational Statistics*, 6, 116–123. <http://dx.doi.org/10.1002/wics.1288>.
- Zhang, J., Olive, D. J., & Ye, P. (2012). Robust covariance matrix estimation with canonical correlation analysis. *International Journal of Statistics and Probability*, 1, 119–136.
- Zhang, J.-T. (2011). Two-way MANOVA with unequal cell sizes and unequal cell covariance matrices. *Technometrics*, 53, 426–439.
- Zhang, J.-T. (2013). *Analysis of variance for functional data*. London: Chapman and Hall.
- Zhang, J.-T., & Liang, X. (2014). One-way ANOVA for functional data via globalizing the pointwise F-test. *Scandinavian Journal of Statistics*, 41, 51–71.
- Zhao, J., & Wang, J. (2009). Robust testing procedures in heteroscedastic linear models. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 244–256.
- Zhao, X., Lynch Jr., J. G., & Chen, Q. (2010). Reconsidering Baron and Kenny: Myths and truths about mediation analysis. *Journal of Consumer Research*, 37, 197–206.
- Zhou, W. (2008). Statistical inference for $P(X < Y)$. *Statistics in Medicine*, 27, 257–279.
- Zhou, W. (2009). Robust dimension reduction based on canonical correlation. *Communications in Statistics – Simulation and Computation*, 38, 1292–1307.
- Zimmerman, D. W. (2004). A note on preliminary tests of equality of variances. *British Journal of Mathematical and Statistical Psychology*, 57, 173–182.
- Zou, C., Liu, Y., Wang, Z., & Zhang, R. (2010). Adaptive nonparametric comparison of regression curves. *Communications in Statistics – Theory and Methods*, 39, 1299–1320.
- Zou, G. Y. (2007). Toward using confidence intervals to compare correlations. *Psychological Methods*, 12, 399–413.
- Zu, J., & Yuan, K. H. (2010). Local influence and robust procedures for mediation analysis. *Multivariate Behavioral Research*, 45, 1–44.
- Zuo, Y. (2003). Projection-based depth functions and associated medians. *Annals of Statistics*, 31, 1460–1490.
- Zuo, Y. (2010). Is the t confidence interval $\bar{X} \pm t_\alpha(n-1)s/\sqrt{n}$ optimal? *American Statistician*, 64, 170–173.
- Zuo, Y. (2013). Multidimensional medians and uniqueness. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 66, 82–88.
- Zuo, Y., Cui, H., & He, X. (2004). On the Stahel–Donoho estimator and depth-weighted means of multivariate data. *Annals of Statistics*, 32, 167–188.
- Zuo, Y., Cui, H., & Young, D. (2004). Influence function and maximum bias of projection depth based estimators. *Annals of Statistics*, 32, 189–218.
- Zuo, Y., & He, X. (2006). On the limiting distributions of multivariate depth-based rank sum statistics and related tests. *Annals of Statistics*, 34, 2879–2896.
- Zuo, Y., & Serfling, R. (2000a). General notions of statistical depth functions. *Annals of Statistics*, 28, 461–482.
- Zuo, Y., & Serfling, R. (2000b). Structural properties and convergence results for contours of sample statistical depth functions. *Annals of Statistics*, 28, 483–499.
- Zuo, Y. J., & Lai, S. Y. (2011). Exact computation of bivariate projection depth and the Stahel–Donoho estimator. *Computational Statistics and Data Analysis*, 55, 1173–1179.
- Zuur, A. F., Ieno, E. N., & Meesters, E. (2009). *A beginner's guide to R*. New York: Springer.